



भारत का संविधान

[1 मई, 2024 को यथाविद्यमान]

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

[As on 1st May, 2024]

2024

भारत सरकार
विधि और न्याय मंत्रालय
विधायी विभाग, राजभाषा खण्ड
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
MINISTRY OF LAW AND JUSTICE
LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT, OFFICIAL LANGUAGES WING

PREFACE

This is the sixth pocket size edition of the Constitution of India in the diglot form. In this edition, the text of the Constitution of India has been brought up-to-date by incorporating therein all the amendments up to the Constitution (One Hundred and Sixth Amendment) Act, 2023. The foot notes below the text indicate the Constitution Amendment Acts by which such amendments have been made.

The Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015 containing details of acquired and transferred territories between the Governments of India and Bangladesh has been provided in Appendix I.

The Constitution (Application to Jammu and Kashmir) Order, 2019 and the declaration under article 370(3) of the Constitution have been provided respectively in Appendix II and Appendix III for reference.

New Delhi;
1st May, 2024

Dr. Rajiv Mani,
Secretary to the Government of India.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED

Art., arts.	<i>for</i> Article, articles.
Cl., cls.	" Clause, clauses.
C.O.	" Constitution Order.
Ins.	" Inserted.
P., pp.	" Page, pages.
Pt.	" Part.
Rep.	" Repealed.
Ss., ss.	" Section, sections.
Sch.	" Schedule.
Subs.	" Substituted.
w.e.f.	" with effect from.
w.r.e.f.	" with retrospective effect from.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

CONTENTS

PREAMBLE

PART I

THE UNION AND ITS TERRITORY

ARTICLES

1. Name and territory of the Union.
2. Admission or establishment of new States.
- [2A. Sikkim to be associated with the Union.—*Omitted.*]
3. Formation of new States and alteration of areas, boundaries or names of existing States.
4. Laws made under articles 2 and 3 to provide for the amendment of the First and the Fourth Schedules and supplemental, incidental and consequential matters.

PART II

CITIZENSHIP

5. Citizenship at the commencement of the Constitution.
6. Rights of citizenship of certain persons who have migrated to India from Pakistan.
7. Rights of citizenship of certain migrants to Pakistan.
8. Rights of citizenship of certain persons of Indian origin residing outside India.
9. Persons voluntarily acquiring citizenship of a foreign State not to be citizens.
10. Continuance of the rights of citizenship.
11. Parliament to regulate the right of citizenship by law.

ARTICLES

PART III

FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS

General

12. Definition.
13. Laws inconsistent with or in derogation of the fundamental rights.

Right to Equality

14. Equality before law.
15. Prohibition of discrimination on grounds of religion, race, caste, sex or place of birth.
16. Equality of opportunity in matters of public employment.
17. Abolition of Untouchability.
18. Abolition of titles.

Right to Freedom

19. Protection of certain rights regarding freedom of speech, etc.
20. Protection in respect of conviction for offences.
21. Protection of life and personal liberty.
- 21A. Right to education.
22. Protection against arrest and detention in certain cases.

Right against Exploitation

23. Prohibition of traffic in human beings and forced labour.
24. Prohibition of employment of children in factories, etc.

Right to Freedom of Religion

25. Freedom of conscience and free profession, practice and propagation of religion.
26. Freedom to manage religious affairs.
27. Freedom as to payment of taxes for promotion of any particular religion.
28. Freedom as to attendance at religious instruction or religious worship in certain educational institutions.

ARTICLES*Cultural and Educational Rights*

- 29. Protection of interests of minorities.
- 30. Right of minorities to establish and administer educational institutions.
- [31. Compulsory acquisition of property —*Omitted.*]

Saving of Certain Laws

- 31A. Saving of Laws providing for acquisition of estates, etc.
- 31B. Validation of certain Acts and Regulations.
- 31C. Saving of laws giving effect to certain directive principles.
- [31D. Saving of laws in respect of anti-national activities.—*Omitted.*]

Right to Constitutional Remedies

- 32. Remedies for enforcement of rights conferred by this Part.
- [32A. Constitutional validity of State laws not to be considered in proceedings under article 32.—*Omitted.*]
- 33. Power of Parliament to modify the rights conferred by this Part in their application to Forces, etc.
- 34. Restriction on rights conferred by this Part while martial law is in force in any area.
- 35. Legislation to give effect to the provisions of this Part.

PART IV**DIRECTIVE PRINCIPLES OF STATE POLICY**

- 36. Definition.
- 37. Application of the principles contained in this Part.
- 38. State to secure a social order for the promotion of welfare of the people.
- 39. Certain principles of policy to be followed by the State.
- 39A. Equal justice and free legal aid.

ARTICLES

40. Organisation of village panchayats.
41. Right to work, to education and to public assistance in certain cases.
42. Provision for just and humane conditions of work and maternity relief.
43. Living wage, etc., for workers.
- 43A. Participation of workers in management of Industries.
- 43B. Promotion of co-operative societies.
44. Uniform civil code for the citizens.
45. Provision for early childhood care and education to children below the age of six years.
46. Promotion of educational and economic interests of Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and other weaker sections.
47. Duty of the State to raise the level of nutrition and the standard of living and to improve public health.
48. Organisation of agriculture and animal husbandry.
- 48A. Protection and improvement of environment and safeguarding of forests and wild life.
49. Protection of monuments and places and objects of national importance.
50. Separation of judiciary from executive.
51. Promotion of international peace and security.

PART IVA

FUNDAMENTAL DUTIES

- 51A. Fundamental duties.

PART V

THE UNION

CHAPTER I.—THE EXECUTIVE

The President and Vice-President

52. The President of India.
53. Executive power of the Union.
54. Election of President.

ARTICLES

55. Manner of election of President.
56. Term of office of President.
57. Eligibility for re-election.
58. Qualifications for election as President.
59. Conditions of President's office.
60. Oath or affirmation by the President.
61. Procedure for impeachment of the President.
62. Time of holding election to fill vacancy in the office of President and the term of office of person elected to fill casual vacancy.
63. The Vice-President of India.
64. The Vice-President to be *ex officio* Chairman of the Council of States.
65. The Vice-President to act as President or to discharge his functions during casual vacancies in the office, or during the absence, of President.
66. Election of Vice-President.
67. Term of office of Vice-President.
68. Time of holding election to fill vacancy in the office of Vice-President and the term of office of person elected to fill casual vacancy.
69. Oath or affirmation by the Vice-President.
70. Discharge of President's functions in other contingencies.
71. Matters relating to, or connected with, the election of a President or Vice-President.
72. Power of President to grant pardons, etc., and to suspend, remit or commute sentences in certain cases.
73. Extent of executive power of the Union.
Council of Ministers
74. Council of Ministers to aid and advise President.
75. Other provisions as to Ministers.
The Attorney-General for India
76. Attorney-General for India.

ARTICLES*Conduct of Government Business*

- 77. Conduct of business of the Government of India.
- 78. Duties of Prime Minister as respects the furnishing of information to the President, etc.

CHAPTER II.—PARLIAMENT*General*

- 79. Constitution of Parliament.
- 80. Composition of the Council of States.
- 81. Composition of the House of the People.
- 82. Readjustment after each census.
- 83. Duration of Houses of Parliament.
- 84. Qualification for membership of Parliament.
- 85. Sessions of Parliament, prorogation and dissolution.
- 86. Right of President to address and send messages to Houses.
- 87. Special address by the President.
- 88. Rights of Ministers and Attorney-General as respects Houses.

Officers of Parliament

- 89. The Chairman and Deputy Chairman of the Council of States.
- 90. Vacation and resignation of, and removal from, the office of Deputy Chairman.
- 91. Power of the Deputy Chairman or other person to perform the duties of the office of, or to act as, Chairman.
- 92. The Chairman or the Deputy Chairman not to preside while a resolution for his removal from office is under consideration.
- 93. The Speaker and Deputy Speaker of the House of the People.
- 94. Vacation and resignation of, and removal from, the offices of Speaker and Deputy Speaker.
- 95. Power of the Deputy Speaker or other person to perform the duties of the office of, or to act as, Speaker.

ARTICLES

96. The Speaker or the Deputy Speaker not to preside while a resolution for his removal from office is under consideration.
97. Salaries and allowances of the Chairman and Deputy Chairman and the Speaker and Deputy Speaker.
98. Secretariat of Parliament.

Conduct of Business

99. Oath or affirmation by members.
100. Voting in Houses, power of Houses to act notwithstanding vacancies and quorum.

Disqualifications of Members

101. Vacation of seats.
102. Disqualifications for membership.
103. Decision on questions as to disqualifications of members.
104. Penalty for sitting and voting before making oath or affirmation under article 99 or when not qualified or when disqualified.

Powers, Privileges and Immunities of Parliament and its Members

105. Powers, privileges, etc., of the Houses of Parliament and of the members and committees thereof.
106. Salaries and allowances of members.

Legislative Procedure

107. Provisions as to introduction and passing of Bills.
108. Joint sitting of both Houses in certain cases.
109. Special procedure in respect of Money Bills.
110. Definition of “Money Bills”.
111. Assent to Bills.

Procedure in Financial Matters

112. Annual financial statement.
113. Procedure in Parliament with respect to estimates.
114. Appropriation Bills.

ARTICLES

- 115. Supplementary, additional or excess grants.
- 116. Votes on account, votes of credit and exceptional grants.
- 117. Special provisions as to financial Bills.
Procedure Generally
 - 118. Rules of procedure.
 - 119. Regulation by law of procedure in Parliament in relation to financial business.
 - 120. Language to be used in Parliament.
 - 121. Restriction on discussion in Parliament.
 - 122. Courts not to inquire into proceedings of Parliament.
- CHAPTER III.—LEGISLATIVE POWERS OF THE PRESIDENT
 - 123. Power of President to promulgate Ordinances during recess of Parliament.
- CHAPTER IV.—THE UNION JUDICIARY
 - 124. Establishment and constitution of the Supreme Court.
 - 124A. National Judicial Appointments Commission.
 - 124B. Functions of Commission.
 - 124C. Power of Parliament to make law.
 - 125. Salaries, etc., of Judges.
 - 126. Appointment of acting Chief Justice.
 - 127. Appointment of *ad hoc* Judges.
 - 128. Attendance of retired Judges at sittings of the Supreme Court.
 - 129. Supreme Court to be a court of record.
 - 130. Seat of Supreme Court.
 - 131. Original jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.
 - [131A. Exclusive jurisdiction of the Supreme Court in regard to questions as to constitutional validity of Central laws.—*Omitted.*]
 - 132. Appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court in appeals from High Courts in certain cases.
 - 133. Appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court in appeals from High Courts in regard to civil matters.
 - 134. Appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court in regard to criminal matters.

ARTICLES

- 134A. Certificate for appeal to the Supreme Court.
- 135. Jurisdiction and powers of the Federal Court under existing law to be exercisable by the Supreme Court.
- 136. Special leave to appeal by the Supreme Court.
- 137. Review of judgments or orders by the Supreme Court.
- 138. Enlargement of the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.
- 139. Conferment on the Supreme Court of powers to issue certain writs.
- 139A. Transfer of certain cases.
- 140. Ancillary powers of the Supreme Court.
- 141. Law declared by Supreme Court to be binding on all courts.
- 142. Enforcement of decrees and orders of the Supreme Court and orders as to discovery, etc.
- 143. Power of the President to consult the Supreme Court.
- 144. Civil and judicial authorities to act in aid of the Supreme Court.
- [144A. Special provisions as to disposal of questions relating to constitutional validity of laws.—*Omitted.*]
- 145. Rules of Court, etc.
- 146. Officers and servants and the expenses of the Supreme Court.
- 147. Interpretation.
 - CHAPTER V.—COMPTROLLER AND AUDITOR-GENERAL OF INDIA
- 148. Comptroller and Auditor-General of India.
- 149. Duties and powers of the Comptroller and Auditor-General.
- 150. Form of accounts of the Union and of the States.
- 151. Audit reports.

PART VI
THE STATES
CHAPTER I.—GENERAL

- 152. Definition.

ARTICLES**CHAPTER II.—THE EXECUTIVE***The Governor*

- 153. Governors of States.
- 154. Executive power of State.
- 155. Appointment of Governor.
- 156. Term of office of Governor.
- 157. Qualifications for appointment as Governor.
- 158. Conditions of Governor's office.
- 159. Oath or affirmation by the Governor.
- 160. Discharge of the functions of the Governor in certain contingencies.
- 161. Power of Governor to grant pardons, etc., and to suspend, remit or commute sentences in certain cases.
- 162. Extent of executive power of State.

Council of Ministers

- 163. Council of Ministers to aid and advise Governor.
- 164. Other provisions as to Ministers.

The Advocate-General for the State

- 165. Advocate-General for the State.
- Conduct of Government Business*
- 166. Conduct of business of the Government of a State.
 - 167. Duties of Chief Minister as respects the furnishing of information to Governor, etc.

CHAPTER III.—THE STATE LEGISLATURE*General*

- 168. Constitution of Legislatures in States.
- 169. Abolition or creation of Legislative Councils in States.
- 170. Composition of the Legislative Assemblies.

ARTICLES

171. Composition of the Legislative Councils.
172. Duration of State Legislatures.
173. Qualification for membership of the State Legislature.
174. Sessions of the State Legislature, prorogation and dissolution.
175. Right of Governor to address and send messages to the House or Houses.
176. Special address by the Governor.
177. Rights of Ministers and Advocate-General as respects the Houses.

Officers of the State Legislature

178. The Speaker and Deputy Speaker of the Legislative Assembly.
179. Vacation and resignation of, and removal from, the offices of Speaker and Deputy Speaker.
180. Power of the Deputy Speaker or other person to perform the duties of the office of, or to act as, Speaker.
181. The Speaker or the Deputy Speaker not to preside while a resolution for his removal from office is under consideration.
182. The Chairman and Deputy Chairman of the Legislative Council.
183. Vacation and resignation of, and removal from, the offices of Chairman and Deputy Chairman.
184. Power of the Deputy Chairman or other person to perform the duties of the office of, or to act as, Chairman.
185. The Chairman or the Deputy Chairman not to preside while a resolution for his removal from office is under consideration.
186. Salaries and allowances of the Speaker and Deputy Speaker and the Chairman and Deputy Chairman.
187. Secretariat of State Legislature.

Conduct of Business

188. Oath or affirmation by members.
189. Voting in Houses, power of Houses to act notwithstanding vacancies and quorum.

Disqualifications of Members

190. Vacation of seats.

ARTICLES

191. Disqualifications for membership.
192. Decision on questions as to disqualifications of members.
193. Penalty for sitting and voting before making oath or affirmation under article 188 or when not qualified or when disqualified.
Powers, privileges and immunities of State Legislatures and their Members
194. Powers, privileges, etc., of the Houses of Legislatures and of the members and committees thereof.
195. Salaries and allowances of members.
Legislative Procedure
196. Provisions as to introduction and passing of Bills.
197. Restriction on powers of Legislative Council as to Bills other than Money Bills.
198. Special procedure in respect of Money Bills.
199. Definition of “Money Bills”.
200. Assent to Bills.
201. Bills reserved for consideration.
Procedure in Financial Matters
202. Annual financial statement.
203. Procedure in Legislature with respect to estimates.
204. Appropriation Bills.
205. Supplementary, additional or excess grants.
206. Votes on account, votes of credit and exceptional grants.
207. Special provisions as to financial Bills.
Procedure Generally
208. Rules of procedure.
209. Regulation by law of procedure in the Legislature of the State in relation to financial business.

ARTICLES

- 210. Language to be used in the Legislature.
- 211. Restriction on discussion in the Legislature.
- 212. Courts not to inquire into proceedings of the Legislature.
- CHAPTER IV.—LEGISLATIVE POWER OF THE GOVERNOR
- 213. Power of Governor to promulgate Ordinances during recess of Legislature.
- CHAPTER V.—THE HIGH COURTS IN THE STATES
- 214. High Courts for States.
- 215. High Courts to be courts of record.
- 216. Constitution of High Courts.
- 217. Appointment and conditions of the office of a Judge of a High Court.
- 218. Application of certain provisions relating to Supreme Court to High Courts.
- 219. Oath or affirmation by Judges of High Courts.
- 220. Restriction on practice after being a permanent Judge.
- 221. Salaries, etc., of Judges.
- 222. Transfer of a Judge from one High Court to another.
- 223. Appointment of acting Chief Justice.
- 224. Appointment of additional and acting Judges.
- 224A. Appointment of retired Judges at sittings of High Courts.
- 225. Jurisdiction of existing High Courts.
- 226. Power of High Courts to issue certain writs.
- [226A. Constitutional validity of Central laws not to be considered in proceedings under article 226.—*Omitted.*]
- 227. Power of superintendence over all courts by the High Court.
- 228. Transfer of certain cases to High Court.
- [228A. Special provisions as to disposal of questions relating to constitutional validity of State laws.—*Omitted.*]

ARTICLES

- 229. Officers and servants and the expenses of High Courts.
- 230. Extension of jurisdiction of High Courts to Union territories.
- 231. Establishment of a common High Court for two or more States.
- [232. Articles 230, 231 and 232 substituted by articles 230 and 231].
CHAPTER VI.—SUBORDINATE COURTS
- 233. Appointment of district judges.
- 233A. Validation of appointments of, and judgments, etc., delivered by, certain district judges.
- 234. Recruitment of persons other than district judges to the judicial service.
- 235. Control over subordinate courts.
- 236. Interpretation.
- 237. Application of the provisions of this Chapter to certain class or classes of magistrates.

[PART VII.—Omitted]

THE STATES IN PART B OF THE FIRST SCHEDULE

[238. *Omitted.*]

PART VIII

THE UNION TERRITORIES

- 239. Administration of Union territories.
- 239A. Creation of local Legislatures or Council of Ministers or both for certain Union territories.
- 239AA. Special provisions with respect to Delhi.
- 239AB. Provision in case of failure of constitutional machinery.
- 239B. Power of administrator to promulgate Ordinances during recess of Legislature.
- 240. Power of President to make regulations for certain Union territories.
- 241. High Courts for Union territories.
- [242. Coorg.—*Omitted.*]

PART IX

THE PANCHAYATS

- 243. Definitions.

ARTICLES

- 243A. Gram Sabha.
- 243B. Constitution of Panchayats.
- 243C. Composition of Panchayats.
- 243D. Reservation of seats.
- 243E. Duration of Panchayats, etc.
- 243F. Disqualifications for membership.
- 243G. Powers, authority and responsibilities of Panchayats.
- 243H. Powers to impose taxes by, and Funds of, the Panchayats.
- 243-I. Constitution of Finance Commission to review financial position.
- 243J. Audit of accounts of Panchayats.
- 243K. Elections to the Panchayats.
- 243L. Application to Union territories.
- 243M. Part not to apply to certain areas.
- 243N. Continuance of existing laws and Panchayats.
- 243-O. Bar to interference by courts in electoral matters.

PART IXA

THE MUNICIPALITIES

- 243P. Definitions.
- 243Q. Constitution of Municipalities.
- 243R. Composition of Municipalities.
- 243S. Constitution and composition of Wards Committees, etc.
- 243T. Reservation of seats.
- 243U. Duration of Municipalities, etc.
- 243V. Disqualifications for membership.
- 243W. Powers, authority and responsibilities of Municipalities, etc.
- 243X. Power to impose taxes by, and Funds of, the Municipalities.
- 243Y. Finance Commission.

ARTICLES

- 243Z. Audit of accounts of Municipalities.
- 243ZA. Elections to the Municipalities.
- 243ZB. Application to Union territories.
- 243ZC. Part not to apply to certain areas.
- 243ZD. Committee for district planning.
- 243ZE. Committee for Metropolitan planning.
- 243ZF. Continuance of existing laws and Municipalities.
- 243ZG. Bar to interference by courts in electoral matters.

PART IXB

THE CO-OPERATIVE SOCIETIES

- 243ZH. Definitions.
- 243Z-I. Incorporation of co-operative societies.
- 243ZJ. Number and term of members of board and its office bearers.
- 243ZK. Election of members of board.
- 243ZL. Supersession and suspension of board and interim management.
- 243ZM. Audit of accounts of co-operative societies.
- 243ZN. Convening of general body meetings.
- 243Z-O. Right of a member to get information.
- 243ZP. Returns.
- 243ZQ. Offences and penalties.
- 243ZR. Application to multi-State co-operative societies.
- 243ZS. Application to Union territories.
- 243ZT. Continuance of existing laws.

PART X

THE SCHEDULED AND TRIBAL AREAS

- 244. Administration of Scheduled Areas and Tribal Areas.
- 244A. Formation of an autonomous State comprising certain tribal areas in Assam and creation of local Legislature or Council of Ministers or both therefor.

ARTICLES

PART XI**RELATIONS BETWEEN THE UNION AND THE
STATES****CHAPTER I.—LEGISLATIVE RELATIONS***Distribution of Legislative Powers*

- 245. Extent of laws made by Parliament and by the Legislatures of States.
- 246. Subject-matter of laws made by Parliament and by the Legislatures of States.
- 246A. Special provision with respect to goods and services tax.
- 247. Power of Parliament to provide for the establishment of certain additional courts.
- 248. Residuary powers of legislation.
- 249. Power of Parliament to legislate with respect to a matter in the State List in the national interest.
- 250. Power of Parliament to legislate with respect to any matter in the State List if a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation.
- 251. Inconsistency between laws made by Parliament under articles 249 and 250 and laws made by the Legislatures of States.
- 252. Power of Parliament to legislate for two or more States by consent and adoption of such legislation by any other State.
- 253. Legislation for giving effect to international agreements.
- 254. Inconsistency between laws made by Parliament and laws made by the Legislatures of States.
- 255. Requirements as to recommendations and previous sanctions to be regarded as matters of procedure only.

CHAPTER II.—ADMINISTRATIVE RELATIONS*General*

- 256. Obligation of States and the Union.
- 257. Control of the Union over States in certain cases.
- [257A. Assistance to States by deployment of armed forces or other forces of the Union.—*Omitted.*]
- 258. Power of the Union to confer powers, etc., on States in certain cases.

ARTICLES

- 258A. Power of the States to entrust functions to the Union.
- [259. Armed Forces in States in Part B of the First Schedule.—
Omitted.]
260. Jurisdiction of the Union in relation to territories outside India.
261. Public acts, records and judicial proceedings.

Disputes relating to Waters
262. Adjudication of disputes relating to waters of inter-State rivers or river valleys.

Co-ordination between States
263. Provisions with respect to an inter-State Council.
- PART XII**
- FINANCE, PROPERTY, CONTRACTS AND SUITS
- CHAPTER I.—FINANCE
- General*
264. Interpretation.
265. Taxes not to be imposed save by authority of law.
266. Consolidated Funds and public accounts of India and of the States.
267. Contingency Fund.

Distribution of Revenues between the Union and the States
268. Duties levied by the Union but collected and appropriated by the States.
- [268A. Service tax levied by Union and collected by the Union and the States.—*Omitted.*]
269. Taxes levied and collected by the Union but assigned to the States.
- 269A. Levy and collection of goods and services tax in course of inter-State trade or commerce.
270. Taxes levied and distributed between the Union and the States.
271. Surcharge on certain duties and taxes for purposes of the Union.
- [272. Taxes which are levied and collected by the Union and may be distributed between the Union and the States.—*Omitted.*]
273. Grants in lieu of export duty on jute and jute products.
274. Prior recommendation of President required to Bills affecting taxation in which States are interested.

ARTICLES

- 275. Grants from the Union to certain States.
- 276. Taxes on professions, trades, callings and employments.
- 277. Savings.
- [278. Agreement with States in Part B of the First Schedule with regard to certain financial matters.—*Omitted.*]
- 279. Calculation of “net proceeds”, etc.
- 279A. Goods and Services Tax Council.
- 280. Finance Commission.
- 281. Recommendations of the Finance Commission.

Miscellaneous Financial Provisions

- 282. Expenditure defrayable by the Union or a State out of its revenues.
- 283. Custody, etc., of Consolidated Funds, Contingency Funds and moneys credited to the public accounts.
- 284. Custody of suitors’ deposits and other moneys received by public servants and courts.
- 285. Exemption of property of the Union from State taxation.
- 286. Restrictions as to imposition of tax on the sale or purchase of goods.
- 287. Exemption from taxes on electricity.
- 288. Exemption from taxation by States in respect of water or electricity in certain cases.
- 289. Exemption of property and income of a State from Union taxation.
- 290. Adjustment in respect of certain expenses and pensions.
- 290A. Annual payment to certain Devaswom Funds.
- [291. Privy purse sums of Rulers.—*Omitted.*]

CHAPTER II.—BORROWING

- 292. Borrowing by the Government of India.
- 293. Borrowing by States.

ARTICLES**CHAPTER III.— PROPERTY, CONTRACTS, RIGHTS, LIABILITIES,
OBLIGATIONS AND SUITS**

- 294. Succession to property, assets, rights, liabilities and obligations in certain cases.
- 295. Succession to property, assets, rights, liabilities and obligations in other cases.
- 296. Property accruing by escheat or lapse or as *bona vacantia*.
- 297. Things of value within territorial waters or continental shelf and resources of the exclusive economic zone to vest in the Union.
- 298. Power to carry on trade, etc.
- 299. Contracts.
- 300. Suits and proceedings.

CHAPTER IV.—RIGHT TO PROPERTY

- 300A. Persons not to be deprived of property save by authority of law.

PART XIII**TRADE, COMMERCE AND INTERCOURSE
WITHIN THE TERRITORY OF INDIA**

- 301. Freedom of trade, commerce and intercourse.
- 302. Power of Parliament to impose restrictions on trade, commerce and intercourse.
- 303. Restrictions on the legislative powers of the Union and of the States with regard to trade and commerce.
- 304. Restrictions on trade, commerce and intercourse among States.
- 305. Saving of existing laws and laws providing for State monopolies.
- [306. Power of certain States in Part B of the First Schedule to impose restrictions on trade and commerce.—*Omitted*]
- 307. Appointment of authority for carrying out the purposes of articles 301 to 304.

PART XIV**SERVICES UNDER THE UNION AND THE STATES****CHAPTER I.—SERVICES**

- 308. Interpretation.

ARTICLES

- 309. Recruitment and conditions of service of persons serving the Union or a State.
- 310. Tenure of office of persons serving the Union or a State.
- 311. Dismissal, removal or reduction in rank of persons employed in civil capacities under the Union or a State.
- 312. All-India services.
- 312A. Power of Parliament to vary or revoke conditions of service of officers of certain services.
- 313. Transitional provisions.
- [314. Provision for protection of existing officers of certain services.—*Omitted.*]

CHAPTER II.—PUBLIC SERVICE COMMISSIONS

- 315. Public Service Commissions for the Union and for the States.
- 316. Appointment and term of office of members.
- 317. Removal and suspension of a member of a Public Service Commission.
- 318. Power to make regulations as to conditions of service of members and staff of the Commission.
- 319. Prohibition as to the holding of offices by members of Commission on ceasing to be such members.
- 320. Functions of Public Service Commissions.
- 321. Power to extend functions of Public Service Commissions.
- 322. Expenses of Public Service Commissions.
- 323. Reports of Public Service Commissions.

**PART XIVA
TRIBUNALS**

- 323A. Administrative tribunals.
- 323B. Tribunals for other matters.

ARTICLES

PART XV
ELECTIONS

- 324. Superintendence, direction and control of elections to be vested in an Election Commission.
- 325. No person to be ineligible for inclusion in, or to claim to be included in a special, electoral roll on grounds of religion, race, caste or sex.
- 326. Elections to the House of the People and to the Legislative Assemblies of States to be on the basis of adult suffrage.
- 327. Power of Parliament to make provision with respect to elections to Legislatures.
- 328. Power of Legislature of a State to make provision with respect to elections to such Legislature.
- 329. Bar to interference by courts in electoral matters.
- [329A. Special provision as to elections to Parliament in the case of Prime Minister and Speaker.—*Omitted.*]

PART XVI
SPECIAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO CERTAIN CLASSES

- 330. Reservation of seats for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes in the House of the People.
- 330A. Reservation of seats for women in the House of the People.
- 331. Representation of the Anglo-Indian community in the House of the People.
- 332. Reservation of seats for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes in the Legislative Assemblies of the States.
- 332A. Reservation of seats for women in the Legislative Assemblies of the States.
- 333. Representation of the Anglo-Indian community in the Legislative Assemblies of the States.
- 334. Reservation of seats and special representation to cease after certain period.
- 334A. Reservation of seats for women take effect.
- 335. Claims of Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes to services and posts.

ARTICLES

- 336. Special provision for Anglo-Indian community in certain services.
- 337. Special provision with respect to educational grants for the benefit of Anglo-Indian Community.
- 338. National Commission for Scheduled Castes.
- 338A. National Commission for Scheduled Tribes.
- 338B. National Commission for Backward Classes.
- 339. Control of the Union over the administration of Scheduled Areas and the welfare of Scheduled Tribes.
- 340. Appointment of a Commission to investigate the conditions of backward classes.
- 341. Scheduled Castes.
- 342. Scheduled Tribes.
- 342A. Socially and educationally backward classes.

PART XVII

OFFICIAL LANGUAGE

CHAPTER I.—LANGUAGE OF THE UNION

- 343. Official language of the Union.
- 344. Commission and Committee of Parliament on official language.

CHAPTER II.—REGIONAL LANGUAGES

- 345. Official language or languages of a State.
- 346. Official language for communication between one State and another or between a State and the Union.
- 347. Special provision relating to language spoken by a section of the population of a State.

**CHAPTER III.—LANGUAGE OF THE SUPREME COURT,
HIGH COURTS, ETC.**

- 348. Language to be used in the Supreme Court and in the High Courts and for Acts, Bills, etc.
- 349. Special procedure for enactment of certain laws relating to language.

ARTICLES

CHAPTER IV.—SPECIAL DIRECTIVES

- 350. Language to be used in representations for redress of grievances.
- 350A. Facilities for instruction in mother-tongue at primary stage.
- 350B. Special Officer for linguistic minorities.
- 351. Directive for development of the Hindi language.

PART XVIII
EMERGENCY PROVISIONS

- 352. Proclamation of Emergency.
- 353. Effect of Proclamation of Emergency.
- 354. Application of provisions relating to distribution of revenues while a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation.
- 355. Duty of the Union to protect States against external aggression and internal disturbance.
- 356. Provisions in case of failure of constitutional machinery in States.
- 357. Exercise of legislative powers under Proclamation issued under article 356.
- 358. Suspension of provisions of article 19 during emergencies.
- 359. Suspension of the enforcement of the rights conferred by Part III during emergencies.
- [359A. Application of this Part to the State of Punjab.—*Omitted.*]
- 360. Provisions as to financial emergency.

PART XIX
MISCELLANEOUS

- 361. Protection of President and Governors and Rajpramukhs.
- 361A. Protection of publication of proceedings of Parliament and State Legislatures.
- 361B. Disqualification for appointment on remunerative political post.
- [362. Rights and privileges of Rulers of Indian States.—*Omitted.*]
- 363. Bar to interference by courts in disputes arising out of certain treaties, agreements, etc.
- 363A. Recognition granted to Rulers of Indian States to cease and privy purses to be abolished.

ARTICLES

- 364. Special provisions as to major ports and aerodromes.
- 365. Effect of failure to comply with, or to give effect to, directions given by the Union.
- 366. Definitions.
- 367. Interpretation.

PART XX

AMENDMENT OF THE CONSTITUTION

- 368. Power of Parliament to amend the Constitution and procedure therefor.

PART XXI

**TEMPORARY, TRANSITIONAL AND
SPECIAL PROVISIONS**

- 369. Temporary power to Parliament to make laws with respect to certain matters in the State List as if they were matters in the Concurrent List.
- 370. Temporary provisions with respect to the State of Jammu and Kashmir.
- 371. Special provision with respect to the States of Maharashtra and Gujarat.
- 371A. Special provision with respect to the State of Nagaland.
- 371B. Special provision with respect to the State of Assam.
- 371C. Special provision with respect to the State of Manipur.
- 371D. Special provisions with respect to the State of Andhra Pradesh or the State of Telangana.
- 371E. Establishment of Central University in Andhra Pradesh.
- 371F. Special provisions with respect to the State of Sikkim.
- 371G. Special provision with respect to the State of Mizoram.
- 371H. Special provision with respect to the State of Arunachal Pradesh.
- 371-I. Special provision with respect to the State of Goa.
- 371J. Special provisions with respect to the State of Karnataka.
- 372. Continuance in force of existing laws and their adaptation.
- 372A. Power of the President to adapt laws.

ARTICLES

- 373. Power of President to make order in respect of persons under preventive detention in certain cases.
- 374. Provisions as to Judges of the Federal Court and proceedings pending in the Federal Court or before His Majesty in Council.
- 375. Courts, authorities and officers to continue to function subject to the provisions of the Constitution.
- 376. Provisions as to Judges of High Courts.
- 377. Provisions as to Comptroller and Auditor-General of India.
- 378. Provisions as to Public Service Commissions.
- 378A. Special provision as to duration of Andhra Pradesh Legislative Assembly.
- [379. Provisions as to provisional Parliament and the Speaker and Deputy Speaker thereof.—*Omitted.*]
- [380. Provision as to President.—*Omitted.*]
- [381. Council of Ministers of the President.—*Omitted.*]
- [382. Provisions as to provisional Legislatures for States in Part A of the First Schedule. —*Omitted.*]
- [383. Provision as to Governors of Provinces. —*Omitted.*]
- [384. Council of Ministers of the Governors.—*Omitted.*]
- [385. Provision as to provisional Legislatures in States in Part B of the First Schedule.—*Omitted.*]
- [386. Council of Ministers for States in Part B of the First Schedule.
—*Omitted.*]
- [387. Special provision as to determination of population for the purposes of certain elections.—*Omitted.*]
- [388. Provisions as to the filling of casual vacancies in the provisional Parliament and provisional Legislatures of the States. —*Omitted.*]
- [389. Provision as to Bills pending in the Dominion Legislatures and in the Legislatures of Provinces and Indian States.—*Omitted.*]

ARTICLES

- [390. Money received or raised or expenditure incurred between the commencement of the Constitution and the 31st day of March, 1950. —*Omitted.*]
- [391. Power of the President to amend the First and Fourth Schedules in certain contingencies.—*Omitted.*]
- 392. Power of the President to remove difficulties.

PART XXII

SHORT TITLE, COMMENCEMENT,
AUTHORITATIVE TEXT
IN HINDI AND REPEALS

- 393. Short title.
- 394. Commencement.
- 394A. Authoritative text in the Hindi language.
- 395. Repeals.

SCHEDULES

FIRST SCHEDULE

- I. —The States.
- II. —The Union territories.

SECOND SCHEDULE

- PART A—Provisions as to the President and the Governors of States.
- PART B—[Omitted.]
- PART C—Provisions as to the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the House of the People and the Chairman and the Deputy Chairman of the Council of States and the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the Legislative Assembly and the Chairman and the Deputy Chairman of the Legislative Council of a State.
- PART D— Provisions as to the Judges of the Supreme Court and of the High Courts.
- PART E— Provisions as to the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India.

THIRD SCHEDULE— Forms of Oaths or Affirmations.

ARTICLES

FOURTH SCHEDULE—Allocation of seats in the Council of States.

FIFTH SCHEDULE—

Provisions as to the Administration and Control of Scheduled Areas and Scheduled Tribes

PART A—General.

PART B—Administration and Control of Scheduled Areas and Scheduled Tribes.

PART C— Scheduled Areas.

PART D—Amendment of the Schedule.

SIXTH SCHEDEULE—

Provisions as to the Administration of Tribal Areas in the States of Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram.

SEVENTH SCHEDEULE—

List I— Union List.

List II— State List.

List III— Concurrent List.

EIGHTH SCHEDEULE— Languages.

NINTH SCHEDEULE—Validation of certain Acts and Regulations.

TENTH SCHEDEULE— Provisions as to disqualification on ground of defection.

ELEVENTH SCHEDEULE—Powers, authority and responsibilities of Panchayats.

TWELFTH SCHEDEULE—Powers, authority and responsibilities of Municipalities, etc.

APPENDICES

APPENDIX I.—The Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015.

APPENDIX II.—The Constitution (Application to Jammu and Kashmir) Order, 2019.

APPENDIX III.— Declaration under article 370(3) of the Constitution.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

PREAMBLE

WE, THE PEOPLE OF INDIA, having solemnly resolved to constitute India into a ¹[SOVEREIGN SOCIALIST SECULAR DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC] and to secure to all its citizens:

JUSTICE, social, economic and political;

LIBERTY of thought, expression, belief, faith and worship;

EQUALITY of status and of opportunity;

and to promote among them all

FRATERNITY assuring the dignity of the individual and the ²[unity and integrity of the Nation];

IN OUR CONSTITUENT ASSEMBLY this twenty-sixth day of November, 1949, do HEREBY ADOPT, ENACT AND GIVE TO OURSELVES THIS CONSTITUTION.

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s.2, for "SOVEREIGN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC" (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 2. Subs. by s. 2, *ibid.*, for "Unity of the Nation" (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

PART I

THE UNION AND ITS TERRITORY

1. Name and territory of the Union.—(1) India, that is Bharat, shall be a Union of States.

¹[(2) The States and the territories thereof shall be as specified in the First Schedule.]

(3) The territory of India shall comprise—

(a) the territories of the States;

²[(b) the Union territories specified in the First Schedule; and]

(c) such other territories as may be acquired.

2. Admission or establishment of new States.—Parliament may by law admit into the Union, or establish, new States on such terms and conditions as it thinks fit.

³[**2A.** [*Sikkim to be associated with the Union.*].—Omitted by the Constitution (Thirty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 5 (w.e.f. 26-4-1975).]

3. Formation of new States and alteration of areas, boundaries or names of existing States.—Parliament may by law—

(a) form a new State by separation of territory from any State or by uniting two or more States or parts of States or by uniting any territory to a part of any State;

(b) increase the area of any State;

(c) diminish the area of any State;

(d) alter the boundaries of any State;

(e) alter the name of any State:

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 2, for cl. (2) (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. Subs. by s. 2 *ibid.* for sub-clause (b) (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-fifth Amendment) Act, 1974, s. 2 (w.e.f. 1-3-1975).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part I.—Union and its territory)

¹[Provided that no Bill for the purpose shall be introduced in either House of Parliament except on the recommendation of the President and unless, where the proposal contained in the Bill affects the area, boundaries or name of any of the States ^{2***}, the Bill has been referred by the President to the Legislature of that State for expressing its views thereon within such period as may be specified in the reference or within such further period as the President may allow and the period so specified or allowed has expired.]

³[*Explanation I.*—In this article, in clauses (a) to (e), “State” includes a Union territory, but in the proviso, “State” does not include a Union territory.]

Explanation II.—The power conferred on Parliament by clause (a) includes the power to form a new State or Union territory by uniting a part of any State or Union territory to any other State or Union territory.]

4. Laws made under articles 2 and 3 to provide for the amendment of the First and the Fourth Schedules and supplemental, incidental and consequential matters.—(1) Any law referred to in article 2 or article 3 shall contain such provisions for the amendment of the First Schedule and the Fourth Schedule as may be necessary to give effect to the provisions of the law and may also contain such supplemental, incidental and consequential provisions (including provisions as to representation in Parliament and in the Legislature or Legislatures of the State or States affected by such law) as Parliament may deem necessary.

(2) No such law as aforesaid shall be deemed to be an amendment of this Constitution for the purposes of article 368.

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifth Amendment) Act, 1955, s. 2, for the proviso (w.e.f. 24-12-1955).
 2. The words and letters "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Eighteenth Amendment) Act, 1966, s. 2 (w.e.f. 27-8-1966).

PART II

CITIZENSHIP

5. Citizenship at the commencement of the Constitution.—At the commencement of this Constitution, every person who has his domicile in the territory of India and—

- (a) who was born in the territory of India; or
- (b) either of whose parents was born in the territory of India; or
- (c) who has been ordinarily resident in the territory of India for not less than five years immediately preceding such commencement, shall be a citizen of India.

6. Rights of citizenship of certain persons who have migrated to India from Pakistan.—Notwithstanding anything in article 5, a person who has migrated to the territory of India from the territory now included in Pakistan shall be deemed to be a citizen of India at the commencement of this Constitution if—

- (a) he or either of his parents or any of his grand-parents was born in India as defined in the Government of India Act, 1935 (as originally enacted); and

- (b)(i) in the case where such person has so migrated before the nineteenth day of July, 1948, he has been ordinarily resident in the territory of India since the date of his migration, or

- (ii) in the case where such person has so migrated on or after the nineteenth day of July, 1948, he has been registered as a citizen of India by an officer appointed in that behalf by the Government of the Dominion of India on an application made by him therefor to such officer before the commencement of this Constitution in the form and manner prescribed by that Government:

Provided that no person shall be so registered unless he has been resident in the territory of India for at least six months immediately preceding the date of his application.

7. Rights of citizenship of certain migrants to Pakistan.—Notwithstanding anything in articles 5 and 6, a person who has after the first day of March, 1947, migrated from the territory of India to the territory now included in Pakistan shall not be deemed to be a citizen of India:

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part II.—Citizenship)

Provided that nothing in this article shall apply to a person who, after having so migrated to the territory now included in Pakistan, has returned to the territory of India under a permit for resettlement or permanent return issued by or under the authority of any law and every such person shall for the purposes of clause (b) of article 6 be deemed to have migrated to the territory of India after the nineteenth day of July, 1948.

8. Rights of citizenship of certain persons of Indian origin residing outside India.—Notwithstanding anything in article 5, any person who or either of whose parents or any of whose grand-parents was born in India as defined in the Government of India Act, 1935 (as originally enacted), and who is ordinarily residing in any country outside India as so defined shall be deemed to be a citizen of India if he has been registered as a citizen of India by the diplomatic or consular representative of India in the country where he is for the time being residing on an application made by him therefor to such diplomatic or consular representative, whether before or after the commencement of this Constitution, in the form and manner prescribed by the Government of the Dominion of India or the Government of India.

9. Persons voluntarily acquiring citizenship of a foreign State not to be citizens.—No person shall be a citizen of India by virtue of article 5, or be deemed to be a citizen of India by virtue of article 6 or article 8, if he has voluntarily acquired the citizenship of any foreign State.

10. Continuance of the rights of citizenship.—Every person who is or is deemed to be a citizen of India under any of the foregoing provisions of this Part shall, subject to the provisions of any law that may be made by Parliament, continue to be such citizen.

11. Parliament to regulate the right of citizenship by law.—Nothing in the foregoing provisions of this Part shall derogate from the power of Parliament to make any provision with respect to the acquisition and termination of citizenship and all other matters relating to citizenship.

PART III
FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS
General

12. Definition.—In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires, “the State” includes the Government and Parliament of India and the Government and the Legislature of each of the States and all local or other authorities within the territory of India or under the control of the Government of India.

13. Laws inconsistent with or in derogation of the fundamental rights.—(1) All laws in force in the territory of India immediately before the commencement of this Constitution, in so far as they are inconsistent with the provisions of this Part, shall, to the extent of such inconsistency, be void.

(2) The State shall not make any law which takes away or abridges the rights conferred by this Part and any law made in contravention of this clause shall, to the extent of the contravention, be void.

(3) In this article, unless the context otherwise requires,—

(a) “law” includes any Ordinance, order, bye-law, rule, regulation, notification, custom or usage having in the territory of India the force of law;

(b) “laws in force” includes laws passed or made by a Legislature or other competent authority in the territory of India before the commencement of this Constitution and not previously repealed, notwithstanding that any such law or any part thereof may not be then in operation either at all or in particular areas.

¹[(4) Nothing in this article shall apply to any amendment of this Constitution made under article 368.]

Right to Equality

14. Equality before law.—The State shall not deny to any person equality before the law or the equal protection of the laws within the territory of India.

15. Prohibition of discrimination on grounds of religion, race, caste, sex or place of birth.—(1) The State shall not discriminate against any citizen on grounds only of religion, race, caste, sex, place of birth or any of them.

(2) No citizen shall, on grounds only of religion, race, caste, sex, place of birth or any of them, be subject to any disability, liability, restriction or condition with regard to—

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 2 (w.e.f. 5-11-1971).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

(a) access to shops, public restaurants, hotels and places of public entertainment; or

(b) the use of wells, tanks, bathing ghats, roads and places of public resort maintained wholly or partly out of State funds or dedicated to the use of the general public.

(3) Nothing in this article shall prevent the State from making any special provision for women and children.

¹[(4) Nothing in this article or in clause (2) of article 29 shall prevent the State from making any special provision for the advancement of any socially and educationally backward classes of citizens or for the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes.]

²[(5) Nothing in this article or in sub-clause (g) of clause (1) of article 19 shall prevent the State from making any special provision, by law, for the advancement of any socially and educationally backward classes of citizens or for the Scheduled Castes or the Scheduled Tribes in so far as such special provisions relate to their admission to educational institutions including private educational institutions, whether aided or unaided by the State, other than the minority educational institutions referred to in clause (1) of article 30.]

³[(6) Nothing in this article or sub-clause (g) of clause (1) of article 19 or clause (2) of article 29 shall prevent the State from making,—

(a) any special provision for the advancement of any economically weaker sections of citizens other than the classes mentioned in clauses (4) and (5); and

(b) any special provision for the advancement of any economically weaker sections of citizens other than the classes mentioned in clauses (4) and (5) in so far as such special provisions relate to their admission to educational institutions including private educational institutions, whether aided or unaided by the State, other than the minority educational institutions referred to in clause (1) of article 30, which in the case of reservation would be in addition to the existing reservations and subject to a maximum of ten per cent. of the total seats in each category.

1. Added by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 2 (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).

2. Ins. by the Constitution (Ninety-third Amendment) Act, 2005, s. 2 (w.e.f. 20-1-2006).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Third Amendment) Act, 2019, s. 2 (w.e.f. 14-1-2019).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

Explanation.—For the purposes of this article and article 16, "economically weaker sections" shall be such as may be notified by the State from time to time on the basis of family income and other indicators of economic disadvantage.]

16. Equality of opportunity in matters of public employment.—(1) There shall be equality of opportunity for all citizens in matters relating to employment or appointment to any office under the State.

(2) No citizen shall, on grounds only of religion, race, caste, sex, descent, place of birth, residence or any of them, be ineligible for, or discriminated against in respect of, any employment or office under the State.

(3) Nothing in this article shall prevent Parliament from making any law prescribing, in regard to a class or classes of employment or appointment to an office¹[under the Government of, or any local or other authority within, a State or Union territory, any requirement as to residence within that State or Union territory] prior to such employment or appointment.

(4) Nothing in this article shall prevent the State from making any provision for the reservation of appointments or posts in favour of any backward class of citizens which, in the opinion of the State, is not adequately represented in the services under the State.

²[(4A) Nothing in this article shall prevent the State from making any provision for reservation³[in matters of promotion, with consequential seniority, to any class] or classes of posts in the services under the State in favour of the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes which, in the opinion of the State, are not adequately represented in the services under the State.]

⁴[(4B) Nothing in this article shall prevent the State from considering any unfilled vacancies of a year which are reserved for being filled up in that year in accordance with any provision for reservation made under clause (4) or clause (4A) as a separate class of vacancies to be filled up in any succeeding year or years and such class of vacancies shall not be considered together with the vacancies of the year in which they are being filled up for determining the ceiling of fifty per cent. reservation on total number of vacancies of that year.]

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch., for "under any State specified in the First Schedule or any local or other authority within its territory, any requirement as to residence within that State" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 2. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventy-seventh Amendment) Act, 1995, s. 2 (w.e.f. 17-6-1995).
 3. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-fifth Amendment) Act, 2001, s. 2, for certain words (retrospectively) (w.e.f. 17-6-1995).
 4. Ins. by the Constitution (Eighty-first Amendment) Act, 2000, s. 2 (w.e.f. 9-6-2000).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

(5) Nothing in this article shall affect the operation of any law which provides that the incumbent of an office in connection with the affairs of any religious or denominational institution or any member of the governing body thereof shall be a person professing a particular religion or belonging to a particular denomination.

¹[(6) Nothing in this article shall prevent the State from making any provision for the reservation of appointments or posts in favour of any economically weaker sections of citizens other than the classes mentioned in clause (4), in addition to the existing reservation and subject to a maximum of ten per cent. of the posts in each category.]

17. Abolition of Untouchability.—“Untouchability” is abolished and its practice in any form is forbidden. The enforcement of any disability arising out of “Untouchability” shall be an offence punishable in accordance with law.

18. Abolition of titles.—(1) No title, not being a military or academic distinction, shall be conferred by the State.

(2) No citizen of India shall accept any title from any foreign State.

(3) No person who is not a citizen of India shall, while he holds any office of profit or trust under the State, accept without the consent of the President any title from any foreign State.

(4) No person holding any office of profit or trust under the State shall, without the consent of the President, accept any present, emolument, or office of any kind from or under any foreign State.

Right to Freedom

19. Protection of certain rights regarding freedom of speech, etc.—

(1) All citizens shall have the right—

- (a) to freedom of speech and expression;
- (b) to assemble peaceably and without arms;
- (c) to form associations or unions ²[or co-operative societies];
- (d) to move freely throughout the territory of India;

1. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Third Amendment) Act, 2019, s. 3 (w.e.f. 14-1-2019).

2. Ins. by the Constitution (Ninety-seventh Amendment) Act, 2011, s. 2 (w.e.f. 8-2-2012).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

(e) to reside and settle in any part of the territory of India; ¹[and]

²[(f)* * * * *]

(g) to practise any profession, or to carry on any occupation, trade or business.

³[(2) Nothing in sub-clause (a) of clause (1) shall affect the operation of any existing law, or prevent the State from making any law, in so far as such law imposes reasonable restrictions on the exercise of the right conferred by the said sub-clause in the interests of ⁴[the sovereignty and integrity of India], the security of the State, friendly relations with foreign States, public order, decency or morality, or in relation to contempt of court, defamation or incitement to an offence.]

(3) Nothing in sub-clause (b) of the said clause shall affect the operation of any existing law in so far as it imposes, or prevent the State from making any law imposing, in the interests of ⁴[the sovereignty and integrity of India or] public order, reasonable restrictions on the exercise of the right conferred by the said sub-clause.

(4) Nothing in sub-clause (c) of the said clause shall affect the operation of any existing law in so far as it imposes, or prevent the State from making any law imposing, in the interests of ⁴[the sovereignty and integrity of India or] public order or morality, reasonable restrictions on the exercise of the right conferred by the said sub-clause.

(5) Nothing in ⁵[sub-clauses (d) and (e)] of the said clause shall affect the operation of any existing law in so far as it imposes, or prevent the State from making any law imposing, reasonable restrictions on the exercise of any of the rights conferred by the said sub-clauses either in the interests of the general public or for the protection of the interests of any Scheduled Tribe.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 2 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

2. Sub-clause (f) omitted by s.2, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

3. Subs. by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 3, for cl. (2) (with retrospective effect).

4. Ins. by the Constitution (Sixteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 2 (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

5. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 2, for "sub-clauses (d), (e) and (f)" (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

(6) Nothing in sub-clause (g) of the said clause shall affect the operation of any existing law in so far as it imposes, or prevent the State from making any law imposing, in the interests of the general public, reasonable restrictions on the exercise of the right conferred by the said sub-clause, and, in particular,
¹[nothing in the said sub-clause shall affect the operation of any existing law in so far as it relates to, or prevent the State from making any law relating to,—

(i) the professional or technical qualifications necessary for practising any profession or carrying on any occupation, trade or business; or

(ii) the carrying on by the State, or by a corporation owned or controlled by the State, of any trade, business, industry or service, whether to the exclusion, complete or partial, of citizens or otherwise.]

20. Protection in respect of conviction for offences.—(1) No person shall be convicted of any offence except for violation of a law in force at the time of the commission of the Act charged as an offence, nor be subjected to a penalty greater than that which might have been inflicted under the law in force at the time of the commission of the offence.

(2) No person shall be prosecuted and punished for the same offence more than once.

(3) No person accused of any offence shall be compelled to be a witness against himself.

21. Protection of life and personal liberty.—No person shall be deprived of his life or personal liberty except according to procedure established by law.

²[**21A. Right to education.**—The State shall provide free and compulsory education to all children of the age of six to fourteen years in such manner as the State may, by law, determine.]

22. Protection against arrest and detention in certain cases.—(1) No person who is arrested shall be detained in custody without being informed, as soon as may be, of the grounds for such arrest nor shall he be denied the right to consult, and to be defended by, a legal practitioner of his choice.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 3, for certain words (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).

2 Ins. by the Constitution (Eighty-sixth Amendment) Act, 2002, s. 2 (w.e.f. 1-4-2010).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

(2) Every person who is arrested and detained in custody shall be produced before the nearest magistrate within a period of twenty-four hours of such arrest excluding the time necessary for the journey from the place of arrest to the court of the magistrate and no such person shall be detained in custody beyond the said period without the authority of a magistrate.

(3) Nothing in clauses (1) and (2) shall apply—

(a) to any person who for the time being is an enemy alien; or

(b) to any person who is arrested or detained under any law providing for preventive detention.

^{*}(4) No law providing for preventive detention shall authorise the detention of a person for a longer period than three months unless—

(a) an Advisory Board consisting of persons who are, or have been, or are qualified to be appointed as, Judges of a High Court has reported before the expiration of the said period of three months that there is in its opinion sufficient cause for such detention:

^{*} Cl. (4) shall stand substituted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 3 (date yet to be notified) as—

"(4) No law providing for preventive detention shall authorise the detention of a person for a longer period than two months unless an Advisory Board constituted in accordance with the recommendations of the Chief Justice of the appropriate High Court has reported before the expiration of the said period of two months that there is in its opinion sufficient cause for such detention:

Provided that an Advisory Board shall consist of a Chairman and not less than two other members, and the Chairman shall be a serving Judge of the appropriate High Court and the other members shall be serving or retired Judges of any High Court :

Provided further that nothing in this clause shall authorise the detention of any person beyond the maximum period prescribed by any law made by Parliament under sub-clause (a) of clause (7).

Explanation.—In this clause, "appropriate High Court" means,—

(i) in the case of the detention of a person in pursuance of an order of detention made by the Government of India or an officer or authority subordinate to that Government, the High Court for the Union territory of Delhi;

(ii) in the case of the detention of a person in pursuance of an order of detention made by the Government of any State (other than a Union territory), the High Court for that State; and

(iii) in the case of the detention of a person in pursuance of an order of detention made by the administrator of a Union territory or an officer or authority subordinate to such administrator, such High Court as may be specified by or under any law made by Parliament in this behalf".

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

Provided that nothing in this sub-clause shall authorise the detention of any person beyond the maximum period prescribed by any law made by Parliament under sub-clause (b) of clause (7); or

(b) such person is detained in accordance with the provisions of any law made by Parliament under sub-clauses (a) and (b) of clause (7).

(5) When any person is detained in pursuance of an order made under any law providing for preventive detention, the authority making the order shall, as soon as may be, communicate to such person the grounds on which the order has been made and shall afford him the earliest opportunity of making a representation against the order.

(6) Nothing in clause (5) shall require the authority making any such order as is referred to in that clause to disclose facts which such authority considers to be against the public interest to disclose.

(7) Parliament may by law prescribe—

*(a) the circumstances under which, and the class or classes of cases in which, a person may be detained for a period longer than three months under any law providing for preventive detention without obtaining the opinion of an Advisory Board in accordance with the provisions of sub-clause (a) of clause (4);

**(b) the maximum period for which any person may in any class or classes of cases be detained under any law providing for preventive detention; and

(c) the procedure to be followed by an Advisory Board in an inquiry under *sub-clause (a) of clause (4).

* Sub-clause (a) shall stand omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 3(b)(i) (date to be notified).

** Sub-clause (b) shall stand re-lettered as sub-clause (a) by s. 3(b)(ii), *ibid.* (date to be notified).

*** Sub-clause (c) shall stand re-lettered as sub-clause (b) by s. 3(b)(iii), *ibid.* (date to be notified).

**** Sub-clause (a) of clause (4) shall stand substituted as "clause (4)" by s. 3(b)(iii), *ibid.* (date to be notified).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

*Right against Exploitation***23. Prohibition of traffic in human beings and forced labour.**—(1)

Traffic in human beings and *begar* and other similar forms of forced labour are prohibited and any contravention of this provision shall be an offence punishable in accordance with law.

(2) Nothing in this article shall prevent the State from imposing compulsory service for public purposes, and in imposing such service the State shall not make any discrimination on grounds only of religion, race, caste or class or any of them.

24. Prohibition of employment of children in factories, etc.—No child below the age of fourteen years shall be employed to work in any factory or mine or engaged in any other hazardous employment.

Right to Freedom of Religion

25. Freedom of conscience and free profession, practice and propagation of religion.—(1) Subject to public order, morality and health and to the other provisions of this Part, all persons are equally entitled to freedom of conscience and the right freely to profess, practice and propagate religion.

(2) Nothing in this article shall affect the operation of any existing law or prevent the State from making any law—

(a) regulating or restricting any economic, financial, political or other secular activity which may be associated with religious practice;

(b) providing for social welfare and reform or the throwing open of Hindu religious institutions of a public character to all classes and sections of Hindus.

Explanation I.—The wearing and carrying of *kirpans* shall be deemed to be included in the profession of the Sikh religion.

Explanation II.—In sub-clause (b) of clause (2), the reference to Hindus shall be construed as including a reference to persons professing the Sikh, Jaina or Buddhist religion, and the reference to Hindu religious institutions shall be construed accordingly.

26. Freedom to manage religious affairs.—Subject to public order, morality and health, every religious denomination or any section thereof shall have the right—

(a) to establish and maintain institutions for religious and charitable purposes;

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

- (b) to manage its own affairs in matters of religion;
- (c) to own and acquire movable and immovable property; and
- (d) to administer such property in accordance with law.

27. Freedom as to payment of taxes for promotion of any particular religion.—No person shall be compelled to pay any taxes, the proceeds of which are specifically appropriated in payment of expenses for the promotion or maintenance of any particular religion or religious denomination.

28. Freedom as to attendance at religious instruction or religious worship in certain educational institutions.—(1) No religious instruction shall be provided in any educational institution wholly maintained out of State funds.

(2) Nothing in clause (1) shall apply to an educational institution which is administered by the State but has been established under any endowment or trust which requires that religious instruction shall be imparted in such institution.

(3) No person attending any educational institution recognised by the State or receiving aid out of State funds shall be required to take part in any religious instruction that may be imparted in such institution or to attend any religious worship that may be conducted in such institution or in any premises attached thereto unless such person or, if such person is a minor, his guardian has given his consent thereto.

Cultural and Educational Rights

29. Protection of interests of minorities.—(1) Any section of the citizens residing in the territory of India or any part thereof having a distinct language, script or culture of its own shall have the right to conserve the same.

(2) No citizen shall be denied admission into any educational institution maintained by the State or receiving aid out of State funds on grounds only of religion, race, caste, language or any of them.

30. Right of minorities to establish and administer educational institutions.—(1) All minorities, whether based on religion or language, shall have the right to establish and administer educational institutions of their choice.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

¹[(1A) In making any law providing for the compulsory acquisition of any property of an educational institution established and administered by a minority, referred to in clause (1), the State shall ensure that the amount fixed by or determined under such law for the acquisition of such property is such as would not restrict or abrogate the right guaranteed under that clause.]

(2) The State shall not, in granting aid to educational institutions, discriminate against any educational institution on the ground that it is under the management of a minority, whether based on religion or language.

2* * * *

31. [Compulsory acquisition of property].—Omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 6 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

³[Saving of Certain Laws]

⁴[31A. Saving of laws providing for acquisition of estates, etc.—

⁵[(1) Notwithstanding anything contained in article 13, no law providing for—

(a) the acquisition by the State of any estate or of any rights therein or the extinguishment or modification of any such rights; or

(b) the taking over of the management of any property by the State for a limited period either in the public interest or in order to secure the proper management of the property; or

(c) the amalgamation of two or more corporations either in the public interest or in order to secure the proper management of any of the corporations; or

(d) the extinguishment or modification of any rights of managing agents, secretaries and treasurers, managing directors, directors or managers of corporations, or of any voting rights of shareholders thereof; or

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 4 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

2. Sub-heading "Right to Property" omitted by s. 5, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 3 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

4. Ins. by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 4, (with retrospective effect).

5. Subs. by the Constitution (Fourth Amendment) Act, 1955, s. 3, for cl. (1) (with retrospective effect).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

(e) the extinguishment or modification of any rights accruing by virtue of any agreement, lease or licence for the purpose of searching for, or winning, any mineral or mineral oil, or the premature termination or cancellation of any such agreement, lease or licence,

shall be deemed to be void on the ground that it is inconsistent with, or takes away or abridges any of the rights conferred by¹[article 14 or article 19]:

Provided that where such law is a law made by the Legislature of a State, the provisions of this article shall not apply thereto unless such law, having been reserved for the consideration of the President, has received his assent:]

²[Provided further that where any law makes any provision for the acquisition by the State of any estate and where any land comprised therein is held by a person under his personal cultivation, it shall not be lawful for the State to acquire any portion of such land as is within the ceiling limit applicable to him under any law for the time being in force or any building or structure standing thereon or appurtenant thereto, unless the law relating to the acquisition of such land, building or structure, provides for payment of compensation at a rate which shall not be less than the market value thereof.]

(2) In this article,—

³[(a) the expression “estate” shall, in relation to any local area, have the same meaning as that expression or its local equivalent has in the existing law relating to land tenures in force in that area and shall also include—

(i) any *jagir*, *inam* or *muafī* or other similar grant and in the States of⁴[Tamil Nadu] and Kerala, any *janmam* right;

(ii) any land held under ryotwari settlement;

(iii) any land held or let for purposes of agriculture or for purposes ancillary thereto, including waste land, forest land, land for pasture or sites of buildings and other structures occupied by cultivators of land, agricultural labourers and village artisans;]

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 7, for "article 14, article 19 or article 31" (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

2. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventeenth Amendment) Act, 1964, s. 2(i) (w.e.f. 20-6-1964).

3. Subs. by s.2(ii), *ibid.*, for sub-clause (a) (with retrospective effect).

4. Subs. by the Madras State (Alteration of Name) Act, 1968 (53 of 1968), s. 4, for "Madras" (w.e.f. 14-1-1969).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

(b) the expression “rights”, in relation to an estate, shall include any rights vesting in a proprietor, sub-proprietor, under-proprietor, tenure-holder, ¹[*raiyat, under-raiyat*] or other intermediary and any rights or privileges in respect of land revenue.]

²[31B. Validation of certain Acts and Regulations.]—Without prejudice to the generality of the provisions contained in article 31A, none of the Acts and Regulations specified in the Ninth Schedule nor any of the provisions thereof shall be deemed to be void, or ever to have become void, on the ground that such Act, Regulation or provision is inconsistent with, or takes away or abridges any of the rights conferred by, any provisions of this Part, and notwithstanding any judgment, decree or order of any court or Tribunal to the contrary, each of the said Acts and Regulations shall, subject to the power of any competent Legislature to repeal or amend it, continue in force.]

³[31C. Saving of laws giving effect to certain directive principles.]—Notwithstanding anything contained in article 13, no law giving effect to the policy of the State towards securing ⁴[all or any of the principles laid down in Part IV] shall be deemed to be void on the ground that it is inconsistent with, or takes away or abridges any of the rights conferred by ⁵[article 14 or article 19;] ⁶[and no law containing a declaration that it is for giving effect to such policy shall be called in question in any court on the ground that it does not give effect to such policy]:

Provided that where such law is made by the Legislature of a State, the provisions of this article shall not apply thereto unless such law, having been reserved for the consideration of the President, has received his assent.]

⁷31D. [Saving of laws in respect of anti-national activities].—Omitted by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 2 (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).

-
1. Ins. by the Constitution (Fourth Amendment) Act, 1955, s. 3 (with retrospective effect).
 2. Ins. by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 5 (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-fifth Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 3 (w.e.f. 20-4-1972).
 4. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 4, for “the principles specified in clause (b) or clause (c) of article 39” (w.e.f. 3-1-1977). Section 4 has been declared invalid by the Supreme Court in *Minerva Mills Ltd. and Others Vs Union of India and Others*, AIR 1980 SC 1789.
 5. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 8, for “article 14, article 19 or article 31” (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 6. The words in italics struck down by the Supreme Court in *Kesavananda Bharati vs. State of Kerala*, AIR 1973, SC 1461.
 7. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 5 (w.e.f. 03-01-1977).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part III.—Fundamental Rights)

Right to Constitutional Remedies

32. Remedies for enforcement of rights conferred by this Part.—(1) The right to move the Supreme Court by appropriate proceedings for the enforcement of the rights conferred by this Part is guaranteed.

(2) The Supreme Court shall have power to issue directions or orders or writs, including writs in the nature of *habeas corpus*, *mandamus*, prohibition, *quo warranto* and *certiorari*, whichever may be appropriate, for the enforcement of any of the rights conferred by this Part.

(3) Without prejudice to the powers conferred on the Supreme Court by clauses (1) and (2), Parliament may by law empower any other court to exercise within the local limits of its jurisdiction all or any of the powers exercisable by the Supreme Court under clause (2).

(4) The right guaranteed by this article shall not be suspended except as otherwise provided for by this Constitution.

¹32A. [Constitutional validity of State laws not to be considered in proceedings under article 32].—Omitted by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 3 (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).

²33. Power of Parliament to modify the rights conferred by this Part in their application to Forces, etc.—Parliament may, by law, determine to what extent any of the rights conferred by this Part shall, in their application to,—

(a) the members of the Armed Forces; or

(b) the members of the Forces charged with the maintenance of public order; or

(c) persons employed in any bureau or other organisation established by the State for purposes of intelligence or counter intelligence; or

(d) person employed in, or in connection with, the telecommunication systems set up for the purposes of any Force, bureau or organisation referred to in clauses (a) to (c),

be restricted or abrogated so as to ensure the proper discharge of their duties and the maintenance of discipline among them.]

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 6 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Fiftieth Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 2, for art. 33 (w.e.f. 11-9-1984).

34. Restriction on rights conferred by this Part while martial law is in force in any area.—Notwithstanding anything in the foregoing provisions of this Part, Parliament may by law indemnify any person in the service of the Union or of a State or any other person in respect of any act done by him in connection with the maintenance or restoration of order in any area within the territory of India where martial law was in force or validate any sentence passed, punishment inflicted, forfeiture ordered or other act done under martial law in such area.

35. Legislation to give effect to the provisions of this Part.—Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

(a) Parliament shall have, and the Legislature of a State shall not have power to make laws—

(i) with respect to any of the matters which under clause (3) of article 16, clause (3) of article 32, article 33 and article 34 may be provided for by law made by Parliament; and

(ii) for prescribing punishment for those acts which are declared to be offences under this Part,

and Parliament shall, as soon as may be after the commencement of this Constitution, make laws for prescribing punishment for the acts referred to in sub-clause (ii);

(b) any law in force immediately before the commencement of this Constitution in the territory of India with respect to any of the matters referred to in sub-clause (i) of clause (a) or providing for punishment for any act referred to in sub-clause (ii) of that clause shall, subject to the terms thereof and to any adaptations and modifications that may be made therein under article 372, continue in force until altered or repealed or amended by Parliament.

Explanation.—In this article, the expression "law in force" has the same meaning as in article 372.

PART IV

DIRECTIVE PRINCIPLES OF STATE POLICY

36. Definition.—In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires, “the State” has the same meaning as in Part III.

37. Application of the principles contained in this Part.—The provisions contained in this Part shall not be enforceable by any court, but the principles therein laid down are nevertheless fundamental in the governance of the country and it shall be the duty of the State to apply these principles in making laws.

38. State to secure a social order for the promotion of welfare of the people.—¹[(1)] The State shall strive to promote the welfare of the people by securing and protecting as effectively as it may a social order in which justice, social, economic and political, shall inform all the institutions of the national life.

²[(2) The State shall, in particular, strive to minimise the inequalities in income, and endeavour to eliminate inequalities in status, facilities and opportunities, not only amongst individuals but also amongst groups of people residing in different areas or engaged in different vocations.]

39. Certain principles of policy to be followed by the State.—The State shall, in particular, direct its policy towards securing—

(a) that the citizens, men and women equally, have the right to an adequate means of livelihood;

(b) that the ownership and control of the material resources of the community are so distributed as best to subserve the common good;

(c) that the operation of the economic system does not result in the concentration of wealth and means of production to the common detriment;

(d) that there is equal pay for equal work for both men and women;

(e) that the health and strength of workers, men and women, and the tender age of children are not abused and that citizens are not forced by economic necessity to enter avocations unsuited to their age or strength;

1. Art. 38 renumbered as cl. (1) by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 9 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

2. Ins. by s. 9, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part IV.— Directive Principles of State Policy)

¹[(f) that children are given opportunities and facilities to develop in a healthy manner and in conditions of freedom and dignity and that childhood and youth are protected against exploitation and against moral and material abandonment.]

²[**39A. Equal justice and free legal aid.**—The State shall secure that the operation of the legal system promotes justice, on a basis of equal opportunity, and shall, in particular, provide free legal aid, by suitable legislation or schemes or in any other way, to ensure that opportunities for securing justice are not denied to any citizen by reason of economic or other disabilities.]

40. Organisation of village panchayats.—The State shall take steps to organise village panchayats and endow them with such powers and authority as may be necessary to enable them to function as units of self-government.

41. Right to work, to education and to public assistance in certain cases.—The State shall, within the limits of its economic capacity and development, make effective provision for securing the right to work, to education and to public assistance in cases of unemployment, old age, sickness and disablement, and in other cases of undeserved want.

42. Provision for just and humane conditions of work and maternity relief.—The State shall make provision for securing just and humane conditions of work and for maternity relief.

43. Living wage, etc., for workers.—The State shall endeavour to secure, by suitable legislation or economic organisation or in any other way, to all workers, agricultural, industrial or otherwise, work, a living wage, conditions of work ensuring a decent standard of life and full enjoyment of leisure and social and cultural opportunities and, in particular, the State shall endeavour to promote cottage industries on an individual or co-operative basis in rural areas.

³[**43A. Participation of workers in management of industries.**—The State shall take steps, by suitable legislation or in any other way, to secure the participation of workers in the management of undertakings, establishments or other organisations engaged in any industry.]

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 7, for cl. (f) (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

2. Ins. by s. 8, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

3. Ins. by s. 9, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part IV.— Directive Principles of State Policy)

¹[**43B. Promotion of co-operative societies.**—The State shall endeavour to promote voluntary formation, autonomous functioning, democratic control and professional management of co-operative societies.]

44. Uniform civil code for the citizens.—The State shall endeavour to secure for the citizens a uniform civil code throughout the territory of India.

²[**45. Provision for early childhood care and education to children below the age of six years.**—The State shall endeavour to provide early childhood care and education for all children until they complete the age of six years.]

46. Promotion of educational and economic interests of Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and other weaker sections.—The State shall promote with special care the educational and economic interests of the weaker sections of the people, and, in particular, of the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes, and shall protect them from social injustice and all forms of exploitation.

47. Duty of the State to raise the level of nutrition and the standard of living and to improve public health.—The State shall regard the raising of the level of nutrition and the standard of living of its people and the improvement of public health as among its primary duties and, in particular, the State shall endeavour to bring about prohibition of the consumption except for medicinal purposes of intoxicating drinks and of drugs which are injurious to health.

48. Organisation of agriculture and animal husbandry.—The State shall endeavour to organise agriculture and animal husbandry on modern and scientific lines and shall, in particular, take steps for preserving and improving the breeds, and prohibiting the slaughter, of cows and calves and other milch and draught cattle.

³[**48A. Protection and improvement of environment and safeguarding of forests and wild life.**—The State shall endeavour to protect and improve the environment and to safeguard the forests and wild life of the country.]

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Ninety-seventh Amendment) Act, 2011, s. 3 (w.e.f. 15-2-2012).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-sixth Amendment) Act, 2002, s. 3, for art. 45 (w.e.f. 1-4-2010).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 10 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

(Part IV.— Directive Principles of State Policy)

49. Protection of monuments and places and objects of national importance.—It shall be the obligation of the State to protect every monument or place or object of artistic or historic interest, ¹[declared by or under law made by Parliament] to be of national importance, from spoliation, disfigurement, destruction, removal, disposal or export, as the case may be.

50. Separation of judiciary from executive.—The State shall take steps to separate the judiciary from the executive in the public services of the State.

51. Promotion of international peace and security.—The State shall endeavour to—

- (a) promote international peace and security;
- (b) maintain just and honourable relations between nations;
- (c) foster respect for international law and treaty obligations in the dealings of organised peoples with one another; and
- (d) encourage settlement of international disputes by arbitration.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 27, for "declared by Parliament by law" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

¹[PART IVA

FUNDAMENTAL DUTIES

51A. Fundamental duties.—It shall be the duty of every citizen of India—

- (a) to abide by the Constitution and respect its ideals and institutions, the National Flag and the National Anthem;
 - (b) to cherish and follow the noble ideals which inspired our national struggle for freedom;
 - (c) to uphold and protect the sovereignty, unity and integrity of India;
 - (d) to defend the country and render national service when called upon to do so;
 - (e) to promote harmony and the spirit of common brotherhood amongst all the people of India transcending religious, linguistic and regional or sectional diversities; to renounce practices derogatory to the dignity of women;
 - (f) to value and preserve the rich heritage of our composite culture;
 - (g) to protect and improve the natural environment including forests, lakes, rivers and wild life, and to have compassion for living creatures;
 - (h) to develop the scientific temper, humanism and the spirit of inquiry and reform;
 - (i) to safeguard public property and to abjure violence;
 - (j) to strive towards excellence in all spheres of individual and collective activity so that the nation constantly rises to higher levels of endeavour and achievement;]
- ²[(k) who is a parent or guardian to provide opportunities for education to his child or, as the case may be, ward between the age of six and fourteen years.]

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 11 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

2. Ins. by the Constitution (Eighty-sixth Amendment) Act, 2002, s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-4-2010).

PART V

THE UNION

CHAPTER I.—THE EXECUTIVE

The President and Vice-President

52. The President of India.—There shall be a President of India.

53. Executive power of the Union.—(1) The executive power of the Union shall be vested in the President and shall be exercised by him either directly or through officers subordinate to him in accordance with this Constitution.

(2) Without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing provision, the supreme command of the Defence Forces of the Union shall be vested in the President and the exercise thereof shall be regulated by law.

(3) Nothing in this article shall—

(a) be deemed to transfer to the President any functions conferred by any existing law on the Government of any State or other authority; or

(b) prevent Parliament from conferring by law functions on authorities other than the President.

54. Election of President.—The President shall be elected by the members of an electoral college consisting of—

(a) the elected members of both Houses of Parliament; and

(b) the elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of the States.

¹[*Explanation.*—In this article and in article 55, “State” includes the National Capital Territory of Delhi and the Union territory of *Puducherry.]

55. Manner of election of President.—(1) As far as practicable, there shall be uniformity in the scale of representation of the different States at the election of the President.

(2) For the purpose of securing such uniformity among the States *inter se* as well as parity between the States as a whole and the Union, the number of votes which each elected member of Parliament and of the Legislative Assembly of each State is entitled to cast at such election shall be determined in the following manner:—

(a) every elected member of the Legislative Assembly of a State shall have as many votes as there are multiples of one thousand in the quotient obtained by dividing the population of the State by the total number of the elected members of the Assembly;

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventieth Amendment) Act, 1992, s. 2 (w.e.f. 1-6-1995).

* Now Puducherry *vide* the Pondicherry (Alteration of Name) Act, 2006 (44 of 2006), s. 3 (w.e.f. 1-10-2006).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

(b) if, after taking the said multiples of one thousand, the remainder is not less than five hundred, then the vote of each member referred to in sub-clause (a) shall be further increased by one;

(c) each elected member of either House of Parliament shall have such number of votes as may be obtained by dividing the total number of votes assigned to the members of the Legislative Assemblies of the States under sub-clauses (a) and (b) by the total number of the elected members of both Houses of Parliament, fractions exceeding one-half being counted as one and other fractions being disregarded.

(3) The election of the President shall be held in accordance with the system of proportional representation by means of the single transferable vote and the voting at such election shall be by secret ballot.

¹[*Explanation*.—In this article, the expression “population” means the population as ascertained at the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published:

Provided that the reference in this *Explanation* to the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published shall, until the relevant figures for the first census taken after the year ²[2026] have been published, be construed as a reference to the 1971 census.]

56. Term of office of President.—(1) The President shall hold office for a term of five years from the date on which he enters upon his office:

Provided that—

(a) the President may, by writing under his hand addressed to the Vice-President, resign his office;

(b) the President may, for violation of the Constitution, be removed from office by impeachment in the manner provided in article 61;

(c) the President shall, notwithstanding the expiration of his term, continue to hold office until his successor enters upon his office.

(2) Any resignation addressed to the Vice-President under clause (a) of the proviso to clause (1) shall forthwith be communicated by him to the Speaker of the House of the People.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 12, for the *Explanation* (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-fourth Amendment) Act, 2001, s. 2, for "2000" (w.e.f. 21-2-2002).

(Part V.—The Union)

57. Eligibility for re-election.—A person who holds, or who has held, office as President shall, subject to the other provisions of this Constitution, be eligible for re-election to that office.

58. Qualifications for election as President.—(1) No person shall be eligible for election as President unless he—

- (a) is a citizen of India,
- (b) has completed the age of thirty-five years, and
- (c) is qualified for election as a member of the House of the People.

(2) A person shall not be eligible for election as President if he holds any office of profit under the Government of India or the Government of any State or under any local or other authority subject to the control of any of the said Governments.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this article, a person shall not be deemed to hold any office of profit by reason only that he is the President or Vice-President of the Union or the Governor^{1***} of any State or is a Minister either for the Union or for any State.

59. Conditions of President's office.—(1) The President shall not be a member of either House of Parliament or of a House of the Legislature of any State, and if a member of either House of Parliament or of a House of the Legislature of any State be elected President, he shall be deemed to have vacated his seat in that House on the date on which he enters upon his office as President.

(2) The President shall not hold any other office of profit.

(3) The President shall be entitled without payment of rent to the use of his official residences and shall be also entitled to such emoluments, allowances and privileges as may be determined by Parliament by law and, until provision in that behalf is so made, such emoluments, allowances and privileges as are specified in the Second Schedule.

(4) The emoluments and allowances of the President shall not be diminished during his term of office.

60. Oath or affirmation by the President.—Every President and every person acting as President or discharging the functions of the President shall, before entering upon his office, make and subscribe in the presence of the Chief Justice of India or, in his absence, the senior-most Judge of the Supreme Court available, an oath or affirmation in the following form, that is to say—

1. The words "or Rajpramukh or Uparajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

"I, A.B., do swear in the name of God that I will faithfully execute the office solemnly affirm

of President (or discharge the functions of the President) of India and will to the best of my ability preserve, protect and defend the Constitution and the law and that I will devote myself to the service and well-being of the people of India."

61. Procedure for impeachment of the President.—(1) When a President is to be impeached for violation of the Constitution, the charge shall be preferred by either House of Parliament.

(2) No such charge shall be preferred unless—

(a) the proposal to prefer such charge is contained in a resolution which has been moved after at least fourteen days' notice in writing signed by not less than one-fourth of the total number of members of the House has been given of their intention to move the resolution, and

(b) such resolution has been passed by a majority of not less than two-thirds of the total membership of the House.

(3) When a charge has been so preferred by either House of Parliament, the other House shall investigate the charge or cause the charge to be investigated and the President shall have the right to appear and to be represented at such investigation.

(4) If as a result of the investigation a resolution is passed by a majority of not less than two-thirds of the total membership of the House by which the charge was investigated or caused to be investigated, declaring that the charge preferred against the President has been sustained, such resolution shall have the effect of removing the President from his office as from the date on which the resolution is so passed.

62. Time of holding election to fill vacancy in the office of President and the term of office of person elected to fill casual vacancy.—(1) An election to fill a vacancy caused by the expiration of the term of office of President shall be completed before the expiration of the term.

(2) An election to fill a vacancy in the office of President occurring by reason of his death, resignation or removal, or otherwise shall be held as soon as possible after, and in no case later than six months from, the date of occurrence of the vacancy; and the person elected to fill the vacancy shall, subject to the provisions of article 56, be entitled to hold office for the full term of five years from the date on which he enters upon his office.

63. The Vice-President of India.—There shall be a Vice-President of India.

64. The Vice-President to be *ex officio* Chairman of the Council of States.—The Vice-President shall be *ex officio* Chairman of the Council of the States and shall not hold any other office of profit:

(Part V.—The Union)

Provided that during any period when the Vice-President acts as President or discharges the functions of the President under article 65, he shall not perform the duties of the office of Chairman of the Council of States and shall not be entitled to any salary or allowance payable to the Chairman of the Council of States under article 97.

65. The Vice-President to act as President or to discharge his functions during casual vacancies in the office, or during the absence, of President.—(1) In the event of the occurrence of any vacancy in the office of the President by reason of his death, resignation or removal, or otherwise, the Vice-President shall act as President until the date on which a new President elected in accordance with the provisions of this Chapter to fill such vacancy enters upon his office.

(2) When the President is unable to discharge his functions owing to absence, illness or any other cause, the Vice-President shall discharge his functions until the date on which the President resumes his duties.

(3) The Vice-President shall, during, and in respect of, the period while he is so acting as, or discharging the functions of, President, have all the powers and immunities of the President and be entitled to such emoluments, allowances and privileges as may be determined by Parliament by law and, until provision in that behalf is so made, such emoluments, allowances and privileges as are specified in the Second Schedule.

66. Election of Vice-President.—(1) The Vice-President shall be elected by the ¹[members of an electoral college consisting of the members of both Houses of Parliament] in accordance with the system of proportional representation by means of the single transferable vote and the voting at such election shall be by secret ballot.

(2) The Vice-President shall not be a member of either House of Parliament or of a House of the Legislature of any State, and if a member of either House of Parliament or of a House of the Legislature of any State be elected Vice-President, he shall be deemed to have vacated his seat in that House on the date on which he enters upon his office as Vice-President.

(3) No person shall be eligible for election as Vice-President unless he—

- (a) is a citizen of India;
- (b) has completed the age of thirty-five years; and

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Eleventh Amendment) Act, 1961, s. 2, for "members of both Houses of Parliament assembled at a joint meeting" (w.e.f. 19-12-1961).

(Part V.—The Union)

(c) is qualified for election as a member of the Council of States.

(4) A person shall not be eligible for election as Vice-President if he holds any office of profit under the Government of India or the Government of any State or under any local or other authority subject to the control of any of the said Governments.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this article, a person shall not be deemed to hold any office of profit by reason only that he is the President or Vice-President of the Union or the Governor^{1***} of any State or is a Minister either for the Union or for any State.

67. Term of office of Vice-President.—The Vice-President shall hold office for a term of five years from the date on which he enters upon his office:

Provided that—

(a) a Vice-President may, by writing under his hand addressed to the President, resign his office;

(b) a Vice-President may be removed from his office by a resolution of the Council of States passed by a majority of all the then members of the Council and agreed to by the House of the People; but no resolution for the purpose of this clause shall be moved unless at least fourteen days' notice has been given of the intention to move the resolution;

(c) a Vice-President shall, notwithstanding the expiration of his term, continue to hold office until his successor enters upon his office.

68. Time of holding election to fill vacancy in the office of Vice-President and the term of office of person elected to fill casual vacancy.—

(1) An election to fill a vacancy caused by the expiration of the term of office of Vice-President shall be completed before the expiration of the term.

(2) An election to fill a vacancy in the office of Vice-President occurring by reason of his death, resignation or removal, or otherwise shall be held as soon as possible after the occurrence of the vacancy, and the person elected to fill the vacancy shall, subject to the provisions of article 67, be entitled to hold office for the full term of five years from the date on which he enters upon his office.

69. Oath or affirmation by the Vice-President.—Every Vice-President shall, before entering upon his office, make and subscribe before the

1. The words "or Rajpramukh or Uparajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part V.—The Union)

President, or some person appointed in that behalf by him, an oath or affirmation in the following form, that is to say—

"I, A.B., do swear in the name of God that I will bear true faith and solemnly affirm

allegiance to the Constitution of India as by law established and that I will faithfully discharge the duty upon which I am about to enter.".

70. Discharge of President's functions in other contingencies.—Parliament may make such provision as it thinks fit for the discharge of the functions of the President in any contingency not provided for in this Chapter.

[71. Matters relating to, or connected with, the election of a President or Vice-President.]—(1) All doubts and disputes arising out of or in connection with the election of a President or Vice-President shall be inquired into and decided by the Supreme Court whose decision shall be final.

(2) If the election of a person as President or Vice-President is declared void by the Supreme Court, acts done by him in the exercise and performance of the powers and duties of the office of President or Vice-President, as the case may be, on or before the date of the decision of the Supreme Court shall not be invalidated by reason of that declaration.

(3) Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, Parliament may by law regulate any matter relating to or connected with the election of a President or Vice-President.

(4) The election of a person as President or Vice-President shall not be called in question on the ground of the existence of any vacancy for whatever reason among the members of the electoral college electing him.]

72. Power of President to grant pardons, etc., and to suspend, remit or commute sentences in certain cases.—(1) The President shall have the power to grant pardons, reprieves, respites or remissions of punishment or to suspend, remit or commute the sentence of any person convicted of any offence—

(a) in all cases where the punishment or sentence is by a Court Martial;

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Thirty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 2 (w.e.f 10-8-1975) and further subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 10. (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

(b) in all cases where the punishment or sentence is for an offence against any law relating to a matter to which the executive power of the Union extends;

(c) in all cases where the sentence is a sentence of death.

(2) Nothing in sub-clause (a) of clause (1) shall affect the power conferred by law on any officer of the Armed Forces of the Union to suspend, remit or commute a sentence passed by a Court Martial.

(3) Nothing in sub-clause (c) of clause (1) shall affect the power to suspend, remit or commute a sentence of death exercisable by the Governor ^{1***} of a State under any law for the time being in force.

73. Extent of executive power of the Union.—(1) Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, the executive power of the Union shall extend—

(a) to the matters with respect to which Parliament has power to make laws; and

(b) to the exercise of such rights, authority and jurisdiction as are exercisable by the Government of India by virtue of any treaty or agreement:

Provided that the executive power referred to in sub-clause (a) shall not, save as expressly provided in this Constitution or in any law made by Parliament, extend in any State ^{2***} to matters with respect to which the Legislature of the State has also power to make laws.

(2) Until otherwise provided by Parliament, a State and any officer or authority of a State may, notwithstanding anything in this article, continue to exercise in matters with respect to which Parliament has power to make laws for that State such executive power or functions as the State or officer or authority thereof could exercise immediately before the commencement of this Constitution.

1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. The words and letters "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

Council of Ministers

74. Council of Ministers to aid and advise President.—¹[(1) There shall be a Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister at the head to aid and advise the President who shall, in the exercise of his functions, act in accordance with such advice:]

²[Provided that the President may require the Council of Ministers to reconsider such advice, either generally or otherwise, and the President shall act in accordance with the advice tendered after such reconsideration.]

(2) The question whether any, and if so what, advice was tendered by Ministers to the President shall not be inquired into in any court.

75. Other provisions as to Ministers.—(1) The Prime Minister shall be appointed by the President and the other Ministers shall be appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister.

³[(1A) The total number of Ministers, including the Prime Minister, in the Council of Ministers shall not exceed fifteen per cent. of the total number of members of the House of the People.

(1B) A member of either House of Parliament belonging to any political party who is disqualified for being a member of that House under paragraph 2 of the Tenth Schedule shall also be disqualified to be appointed as a Minister under clause (1) for duration of the period commencing from the date of his disqualification till the date on which the term of his office as such member would expire or where he contests any election to either House of Parliament before the expiry of such period, till the date on which he is declared elected, whichever is earlier.]

(2) The Ministers shall hold office during the pleasure of the President.

(3) The Council of Ministers shall be collectively responsible to the House of the People.

(4) Before a Minister enters upon his office, the President shall administer to him the oaths of office and of secrecy according to the forms set out for the purpose in the Third Schedule.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s.13, for cl. (1) (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

2. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 11 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (Ninety-first Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2 (w.e.f. 1-1-2004).

(Part V.—The Union)

(5) A Minister who for any period of six consecutive months is not a member of either House of Parliament shall at the expiration of that period cease to be a Minister.

(6) The salaries and allowances of Ministers shall be such as Parliament may from time to time by law determine and, until Parliament so determines, shall be as specified in the Second Schedule.

The Attorney-General for India

76. Attorney-General for India.—(1) The President shall appoint a person who is qualified to be appointed a Judge of the Supreme Court to be Attorney-General for India.

(2) It shall be the duty of the Attorney-General to give advice to the Government of India upon such legal matters, and to perform such other duties of a legal character, as may from time to time be referred or assigned to him by the President, and to discharge the functions conferred on him by or under this Constitution or any other law for the time being in force.

(3) In the performance of his duties the Attorney-General shall have right of audience in all courts in the territory of India.

(4) The Attorney-General shall hold office during the pleasure of the President, and shall receive such remuneration as the President may determine.

Conduct of Government Business

77. Conduct of business of the Government of India.—(1) All executive action of the Government of India shall be expressed to be taken in the name of the President.

(2) Orders and other instruments made and executed in the name of the President shall be authenticated in such manner as may be specified in rules¹ to be made by the President, and the validity of an order or instrument which is so authenticated shall not be called in question on the ground that it is not an order or instrument made or executed by the President.

(3) The President shall make rules for the more convenient transaction of the business of the Government of India, and for the allocation among Ministers of the said business.

2(4) * * *

1. See notifiin No. S.O. 2297, dated the 3rd November, 1958, Gazette of India, Extraordinary, Pt. II, Sec. 3 (ii), p. 1315, as amended from time to time.

2. Cl. (4) was ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s.14 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977) and omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 12 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

(Part V.—The Union)

78. Duties of Prime Minister as respects the furnishing of information to the President, etc.—It shall be the duty of the Prime Minister—

(a) to communicate to the President all decisions of the Council of Ministers relating to the administration of the affairs of the Union and proposals for legislation;

(b) to furnish such information relating to the administration of the affairs of the Union and proposals for legislation as the President may call for; and

(c) if the President so requires, to submit for the consideration of the Council of Ministers any matter on which a decision has been taken by a Minister but which has not been considered by the Council.

CHAPTER II.—PARLIAMENT

General

79. Constitution of Parliament.—There shall be a Parliament for the Union which shall consist of the President and two Houses to be known respectively as the Council of States and the House of the People.

80. Composition of the Council of States.—(1) ^{1[2***]} The Council of States] shall consist of—

(a) twelve members to be nominated by the President in accordance with the provisions of clause (3); and

(b) not more than two hundred and thirty-eight representatives of the States ^{3[and of the Union territories].}

(2) The allocation of seats in the Council of States to be filled by representatives of the States ^{3[and of the Union territories]} shall be in accordance with the provisions in that behalf contained in the Fourth Schedule.

(3) The members to be nominated by the President under sub-clause (a) of clause (1) shall consist of persons having special knowledge or practical experience in respect of such matters as the following, namely:—

Literature, science, art and social service.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Thirty-fifth Amendment) Act, 1974, s. 3, for "The Council of States" (w.e.f. 1-3-1975).

2. The words "Subject to the provisions of para. 4 of the Tenth Schedule," omitted by the Constitution (Thirty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 5 (w.e.f. 26-4-1975).

3. Added by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 3 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

(4) The representatives of each State ^{1***} in the Council of States shall be elected by the elected members of the Legislative Assembly of the State in accordance with the system of proportional representation by means of the single transferable vote.

(5) The representatives of the ²[Union territories] in the Council of States shall be chosen in such manner as Parliament may by law prescribe.

³[**81. Composition of the House of the People.**—(1) ⁴[Subject to the provisions of article 331 ^{5***}], the House of the People shall consist of—

(a) not more than ⁶[five hundred and thirty members] chosen by direct election from territorial constituencies in the States; and

(b) not more than ⁷[twenty members] to represent the Union territories, chosen in such manner as Parliament may by law provide.

(2) For the purposes of sub-clause (a) of clause (1),—

(a) there shall be allotted to each State a number of seats in the House of the People in such manner that the ratio between that number and the population of the State is, so far as practicable, the same for all States; and

(b) each State shall be divided into territorial constituencies in such manner that the ratio between the population of each constituency and the number of seats allotted to it is, so far as practicable, the same throughout the State:

⁸[Provided that the provisions of sub-clause (a) of this clause shall not be applicable for the purpose of allotment of seats in the House of the People to any State so long as the population of that State does not exceed six millions.]

-
1. The words and letters "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 3 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 2. Subs. by s. 3, *ibid.*, for "States specified in Part C of First Schedule" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 3. Subs. by s. 4, *ibid.*, for arts. 81 and 82 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 4. Subs. by the Constitution (Thirty-fifth Amendment) Act, 1974, s. 4, for "subject to the provisions of art. 331" (w.e.f. 1-3-1975).
 5. The words and figure "and para. 4 of the Tenth Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Thirty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 5 (w.e.f. 26-4-1975).
 6. Subs. by the Goa, Daman and Diu Reorganisation Act, 1987 (18 of 1987), s. 63, for "five hundred and twenty-five members" (w.e.f. 30-5-1987).
 7. Subs. by the Constitution (Thirty-first Amendment) Act, 1973, s. 2, for "twenty-five members" (w.e.f. 17-10-1973).
 8. Ins. by s. 2, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 17-10-1973).

(Part V.—The Union)

(3) In this article, the expression "population" means the population as ascertained at the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published:

¹[Provided that the reference in this clause to the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published shall, until the relevant figures for the first census taken after the year ²[2026] have been published, ³[be construed,—

(i) for the purposes of sub-clause (*a*) of clause (2) and the proviso to that clause, as a reference to the 1971 census; and

(ii) for the purposes of sub-clause (*b*) of clause (2) as a reference to the ⁴[2001] census.]]

82. Readjustment after each census.—Upon the completion of each census, the allocation of seats in the House of the People to the States and the division of each State into territorial constituencies shall be readjusted by such authority and in such manner as Parliament may by law determine:

Provided that such readjustment shall not affect representation in the House of the People until the dissolution of the then existing House:

⁵[Provided further that such readjustment shall take effect from such date as the President may, by order, specify and until such readjustment takes effect, any election to the House may be held on the basis of the territorial constituencies existing before such readjustment:

Provided also that until the relevant figures for the first census taken after the year ⁶[2026] have been published, it shall not be necessary to ⁷[readjust,—

1. Added by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 15 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-fourth Amendment) Act, 2001, s. 3, for "2000" (w.e.f. 21-2-2002).

3. Subs. by s.3, *ibid.*, for certain words (w.e.f. 21-2-2002).

4. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-seventh Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2, for "1991" (w.e.f. 22-6-2003).

5. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 16 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

6. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-fourth Amendment) Act, 2001, s. 4, for "2000" (w.e.f. 21-2-2002).

7. Subs. by s.4, *ibid.*, for certain words (w.e.f. 21-2-2002).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

- (i) the allocation of seats in the House of the People to the States as readjusted on the basis of the 1971 census; and
- (ii) the division of each State into territorial constituencies as may be readjusted on the basis of the ¹[2001] census,
under this article.]

83. Duration of Houses of Parliament.—(1) The Council of States shall not be subject to dissolution, but as nearly as possible one-third of the members thereof shall retire as soon as may be on the expiration of every second year in accordance with the provisions made in that behalf by Parliament by law.

(2) The House of the People, unless sooner dissolved, shall continue for ²[five years] from the date appointed for its first meeting and no longer and the expiration of the said period of ²[five years] shall operate as a dissolution of the House:

Provided that the said period may, while a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation, be extended by Parliament by law for a period not exceeding one year at a time and not extending in any case beyond a period of six months after the Proclamation has ceased to operate.

84. Qualification for membership of Parliament.—A person shall not be qualified to be chosen to fill a seat in Parliament unless he—

³[(a) is a citizen of India, and makes and subscribes before some person authorised in that behalf by the Election Commission an oath or affirmation according to the form set out for the purpose in the Third Schedule;]

(b) is, in the case of a seat in the Council of States, not less than thirty years of age and, in the case of a seat in the House of the People, not less than twenty-five years of age; and

(c) possesses such other qualifications as may be prescribed in that behalf by or under any law made by Parliament.

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-seventh Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 3, for "1991" (w.e.f. 22-6-2003).
 2. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 17, for "five years" (w.e.f. 3-1-1977) and further subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 13, for "six years" (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 3. Subs. by the Constitution (Sixteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 3, for cl.(a) (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

(Part V.—The Union)

¹[**85. Sessions of Parliament, prorogation and dissolution.**—(1) The President shall from time to time summon each House of Parliament to meet at such time and place as he thinks fit, but six months shall not intervene between its last sitting in one session and the date appointed for its first sitting in the next session.

(2) The President may from time to time—

- (a) prorogue the Houses or either House;
- (b) dissolve the House of the People.]

86. Right of President to address and send messages to Houses.—(1) The President may address either House of Parliament or both Houses assembled together, and for that purpose require the attendance of members.

(2) The President may send messages to either House of Parliament, whether with respect to a Bill then pending in Parliament or otherwise, and a House to which any message is so sent shall with all convenient despatch consider any matter required by the message to be taken into consideration.

87. Special address by the President.—(1) At the commencement of ²[the first session after each general election to the House of the People and at the commencement of the first session of each year] the President shall address both Houses of Parliament assembled together and inform Parliament of the causes of its summons.

(2) Provision shall be made by the rules regulating the procedure of either House for the allotment of time for discussion of the matters referred to in such address ^{3***}.

88. Rights of Ministers and Attorney-General as respects Houses.—Every Minister and the Attorney-General of India shall have the right to speak in, and otherwise to take part in the proceedings of, either House, any joint sitting of the Houses, and any committee of Parliament of which he may be named a member, but shall not by virtue of this article be entitled to vote.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 6, for art. 85 (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 7, for "every session" (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).

3. The words "and for the precedence of such discussion over other business of the House" omitted by s. 7, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).

(Part V.—The Union)

Officers of Parliament

89. The Chairman and Deputy Chairman of the Council of States.—(1) The Vice-President of India shall be *ex officio* Chairman of the Council of States.

(2) The Council of States shall, as soon as may be, choose a member of the Council to be Deputy Chairman thereof and, so often as the office of Deputy Chairman becomes vacant, the Council shall choose another member to be Deputy Chairman thereof.

90. Vacation and resignation of, and removal from, the office of Deputy Chairman.—A member holding office as Deputy Chairman of the Council of States—

(a) shall vacate his office if he ceases to be a member of the Council;

(b) may at any time, by writing under his hand addressed to the Chairman, resign his office; and

(c) may be removed from his office by a resolution of the Council passed by a majority of all the then members of the Council:

Provided that no resolution for the purpose of clause (c) shall be moved unless at least fourteen days' notice has been given of the intention to move the resolution.

91. Power of the Deputy Chairman or other person to perform the duties of the office of, or to act as, Chairman.—(1) While the office of Chairman is vacant, or during any period when the Vice-President is acting as, or discharging the functions of, President, the duties of the office shall be performed by the Deputy Chairman, or, if the office of Deputy Chairman is also vacant, by such member of the Council of States as the President may appoint for the purpose.

(2) During the absence of the Chairman from any sitting of the Council of States the Deputy Chairman, or, if he is also absent, such person as may be determined by the rules of procedure of the Council, or, if no such person is present, such other person as may be determined by the Council, shall act as Chairman.

92. The Chairman or the Deputy Chairman not to preside while a resolution for his removal from office is under consideration.—(1) At any sitting of the Council of States, while any resolution for the removal of the Vice-President from his office is under consideration, the Chairman, or while any resolution for the removal of the Deputy Chairman from his office is under consideration, the Deputy Chairman, shall not, though he is present, preside, and the provisions of clause (2) of article 91 shall apply in relation to every such sitting as they apply in relation to a sitting from which the Chairman, or, as the case may be, the Deputy Chairman, is absent.

(Part V.—The Union)

(2) The Chairman shall have the right to speak in, and otherwise to take part in the proceedings of, the Council of States while any resolution for the removal of the Vice-President from his office is under consideration in the Council, but, notwithstanding anything in article 100, shall not be entitled to vote at all on such resolution or on any other matter during such proceedings.

93. The Speaker and Deputy Speaker of the House of the People.—The House of the People shall, as soon as may be, choose two members of the House to be respectively Speaker and Deputy Speaker thereof and, so often as the office of Speaker or Deputy Speaker becomes vacant, the House shall choose another member to be Speaker or Deputy Speaker, as the case may be.

94. Vacation and resignation of, and removal from, the offices of Speaker and Deputy Speaker.—A member holding office as Speaker or Deputy Speaker of the House of the People—

(a) shall vacate his office if he ceases to be a member of the House of the People;

(b) may at any time, by writing under his hand addressed, if such member is the Speaker, to the Deputy Speaker, and if such member is the Deputy Speaker, to the Speaker, resign his office; and

(c) may be removed from his office by a resolution of the House of the People passed by a majority of all the then members of the House:

Provided that no resolution for the purpose of clause (c) shall be moved unless at least fourteen days' notice has been given of the intention to move the resolution:

Provided further that, whenever the House of the People is dissolved, the Speaker shall not vacate his office until immediately before the first meeting of the House of the People after the dissolution.

95. Power of the Deputy Speaker or other person to perform the duties of the office of, or to act as, Speaker.—(1) While the office of Speaker is vacant, the duties of the office shall be performed by the Deputy Speaker or, if the office of Deputy Speaker is also vacant, by such member of the House of the People as the President may appoint for the purpose.

(2) During the absence of the Speaker from any sitting of the House of the People the Deputy Speaker or, if he is also absent, such person as may be determined by the rules of procedure of the House, or, if no such person is present, such other person as may be determined by the House, shall act as Speaker.

(Part V.—The Union)

96. The Speaker or the Deputy Speaker not to preside while a resolution for his removal from office is under consideration.—(1) At any sitting of the House of the People, while any resolution for the removal of the Speaker from his office is under consideration, the Speaker, or while any resolution for the removal of the Deputy Speaker from his office is under consideration, the Deputy Speaker, shall not, though he is present, preside, and the provisions of clause (2) of article 95 shall apply in relation to every such sitting as they apply in relation to a sitting from which the Speaker, or, as the case may be, the Deputy Speaker, is absent.

(2) The Speaker shall have the right to speak in, and otherwise to take part in the proceedings of, the House of the People while any resolution for his removal from office is under consideration in the House and shall, notwithstanding anything in article 100, be entitled to vote only in the first instance on such resolution or on any other matter during such proceedings but not in the case of an equality of votes.

97. Salaries and allowances of the Chairman and Deputy Chairman and the Speaker and Deputy Speaker.—There shall be paid to the Chairman and the Deputy Chairman of the Council of States, and to the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the House of the People, such salaries and allowances as may be respectively fixed by Parliament by law and, until provision in that behalf is so made, such salaries and allowances as are specified in the Second Schedule.

98. Secretariat of Parliament.—(1) Each House of Parliament shall have a separate secretarial staff:

Provided that nothing in this clause shall be construed as preventing the creation of posts common to both Houses of Parliament.

(2) Parliament may by law regulate the recruitment, and the conditions of service of persons appointed, to the secretarial staff of either House of Parliament.

(3) Until provision is made by Parliament under clause (2), the President may, after consultation with the Speaker of the House of the People or the Chairman of the Council of States, as the case may be, make rules regulating the recruitment, and the conditions of service of persons appointed, to the secretarial staff of the House of the People or the Council of States, and any rules so made shall have effect subject to the provisions of any law made under the said clause.

Conduct of Business

99. Oath or affirmation by members.—Every member of either House of Parliament shall, before taking his seat, make and subscribe before the President, or some person appointed in that behalf by him, an oath or affirmation according to the form set out for the purpose in the Third Schedule.

100. Voting in Houses, power of Houses to act notwithstanding vacancies and quorum.—(1) Save as otherwise provided in this Constitution, all questions at any sitting of either House or joint sitting of the Houses shall be determined by a majority of votes of the members present and voting, other than the Speaker or person acting as Chairman or Speaker.

The Chairman or Speaker, or person acting as such, shall not vote in the first instance, but shall have and exercise a casting vote in the case of an equality of votes.

(2) Either House of Parliament shall have power to act notwithstanding any vacancy in the membership thereof, and any proceedings in Parliament shall be valid notwithstanding that it is discovered subsequently that some person who was not entitled so to do sat or voted or otherwise took part in the proceedings.

¹[(3) Until Parliament by law otherwise provides, the quorum to constitute a meeting of either House of Parliament shall be one-tenth of the total number of members of the House.

(4) If at any time during a meeting of a House there is no quorum, it shall be the duty of the Chairman or Speaker, or person acting as such, either to adjourn the House or to suspend the meeting until there is a quorum.]

Disqualifications of Members

101. Vacation of seats.—(1) No person shall be a member of both Houses of Parliament and provision shall be made by Parliament by law for the vacation by a person who is chosen a member of both Houses of his seat in one House or the other.

1. Cls. (3) and (4) omitted by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 18 (date not notified). This amendment was omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 45 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

(Part V.—The Union)

(2) No person shall be a member both of Parliament and of a House of the Legislature of a State ^{1***}, and if a person is chosen a member both of Parliament and of a House of the Legislature of ^{2[a State]}, then, at the expiration of such period as may be specified in rules* made by the President, that person's seat in Parliament shall become vacant, unless he has previously resigned his seat in the Legislature of the State.

(3) If a member of either House of Parliament—

- (a) becomes subject to any of the disqualifications mentioned in ^{3[clause (1) or clause (2) of article 102]; or}
- ^{4[(b) resigns his seat by writing under his hand addressed to the Chairman or the Speaker, as the case may be, and his resignation is accepted by the Chairman or the Speaker, as the case may be.]}

his seat shall thereupon become vacant:

^{5[Provided that in the case of any resignation referred to in sub-clause (b), if from information received or otherwise and after making such inquiry as he thinks fit, the Chairman or the Speaker, as the case may be, is satisfied that such resignation is not voluntary or genuine, he shall not accept such resignation.]}

(4) If for a period of sixty days a member of either House of Parliament is without permission of the House absent from all meetings thereof, the House may declare his seat vacant:

Provided that in computing the said period of sixty days no account shall be taken of any period during which the House is prorogued or is adjourned for more than four consecutive days.

1. The words and letters "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. Subs. by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.*, for "such a State" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

* See the Prohibition of Simultaneous Membership Rules, 1950, published with the Ministry of Law, notifn. No. F. 46/50-C, dated the 26th January, 1950, Gazette of India, Extraordinary, P. 678.

3. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifty-second Amendment) Act, 1985, s. 2, for "cl. (1) of art. 102" (w.e.f. 1-3-1985).

4. Subs. by the Constitution (Thirty-third Amendment) Act, 1974, s. 2 (w.e.f. 19-5-1974).

5. Ins. by s.2, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 19-5-1974).

(Part V.—The Union)

102. Disqualifications for membership.—(1) A person shall be disqualified for being chosen as, and for being, a member of either House of Parliament—

¹[(a) if he holds any office of profit under the Government of India or the Government of any State, other than an office declared by Parliament by law not to disqualify its holder;]

(b) if he is of unsound mind and stands so declared by a competent court;

(c) if he is an undischarged insolvent;

(d) if he is not a citizen of India, or has voluntarily acquired the citizenship of a foreign State, or is under any acknowledgment of allegiance or adherence to a foreign State;

(e) if he is so disqualified by or under any law made by Parliament.

²[Explanation.—For the purposes of this clause] a person shall not be deemed to hold an office of profit under the Government of India or the Government of any State by reason only that he is a Minister either for the Union or for such State.

³[(2) A person shall be disqualified for being a member of either House of Parliament if he is so disqualified under the Tenth Schedule.]

103. Decision on questions as to disqualifications of members.—

(1) If any question arises as to whether a member of either House of Parliament has become subject to any of the disqualifications mentioned in clause (1) of article 102, the question shall be referred for the decision of the President and his decision shall be final.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 19 to read as "(a) if he holds any such office of profit under the Government of India or the Government of any State as is declared by Parliament by law to disqualify its holder" (date not notified). This amendment was omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 45 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
2. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifty-second Amendment) Act, 1985, s. 3, for "(2) for the purposes of this art." (w.e.f. 1-3-1985).
3. Ins. by s. 3, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-3-1985).
4. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 20, for art. 103 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977) and further subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 14, for art. 103 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

(Part V.—The Union)

(2) Before giving any decision on any such question, the President shall obtain the opinion of the Election Commission and shall act according to such opinion.]

104. Penalty for sitting and voting before making oath or affirmation under article 99 or when not qualified or when disqualified.—If a person sits or votes as a member of either House of Parliament before he has complied with the requirements of article 99, or when he knows that he is not qualified or that he is disqualified for membership thereof, or that he is prohibited from so doing by the provisions of any law made by Parliament, he shall be liable in respect of each day on which he so sits or votes to a penalty of five hundred rupees to be recovered as a debt due to the Union.

Powers, Privileges and Immunities of Parliament and its Members

105. Powers, privileges, etc., of the Houses of Parliament and of the members and committees thereof.—(1) Subject to the provisions of this Constitution and to the rules and standing orders regulating the procedure of Parliament, there shall be freedom of speech in Parliament.

(2) No member of Parliament shall be liable to any proceedings in any court in respect of anything said or any vote given by him in Parliament or any committee thereof, and no person shall be so liable in respect of the publication by or under the authority of either House of Parliament of any report, paper, votes or proceedings.

¹[(3) In other respects, the powers, privileges and immunities of each House of Parliament, and of the members and the committees of each House, shall be such as may from time to time be defined by Parliament by law, and, until so defined, ²[shall be those of that House and of its members and committees immediately before the coming into force of section 15 of the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978.]].

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 21 (date to be notified). This amendment was omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 45 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 15, for certain words (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

(Part V.—The Union)

(4) The provisions of clauses (1), (2) and (3) shall apply in relation to persons who by virtue of this Constitution have the right to speak in, and otherwise to take part in the proceedings of, a House of Parliament or any committee thereof as they apply in relation to members of Parliament.

106. Salaries and allowances of members.—Members of either House of Parliament shall be entitled to receive such salaries and allowances as may from time to time be determined by Parliament by law and, until provision in that respect is so made, allowances at such rates and upon such conditions as were immediately before the commencement of this Constitution applicable in the case of members of the Constituent Assembly of the Dominion of India.

Legislative Procedure

107. Provisions as to introduction and passing of Bills.—(1) Subject to the provisions of articles 109 and 117 with respect to Money Bills and other financial Bills, a Bill may originate in either House of Parliament.

(2) Subject to the provisions of articles 108 and 109, a Bill shall not be deemed to have been passed by the Houses of Parliament unless it has been agreed to by both Houses, either without amendment or with such amendments only as are agreed to by both Houses.

(3) A Bill pending in Parliament shall not lapse by reason of the prorogation of the Houses.

(4) A Bill pending in the Council of States which has not been passed by the House of the People shall not lapse on a dissolution of the House of the People.

(5) A Bill which is pending in the House of the People, or which having been passed by the House of the People is pending in the Council of States, shall, subject to the provisions of article 108, lapse on a dissolution of the House of the People.

108. Joint sitting of both Houses in certain cases.—(1) If after a Bill has been passed by one House and transmitted to the other House—

(a) the Bill is rejected by the other House; or

(b) the Houses have finally disagreed as to the amendments to be made in the Bill; or

(c) more than six months elapse from the date of the reception of the Bill by the other House without the Bill being passed by it,

(Part V.—The Union)

the President may, unless the Bill has elapsed by reason of a dissolution of the House of the People, notify to the Houses by message if they are sitting or by public notification if they are not sitting, his intention to summon them to meet in a joint sitting for the purpose of deliberating and voting on the Bill:

Provided that nothing in this clause shall apply to a Money Bill.

(2) In reckoning any such period of six months as is referred to in clause (1), no account shall be taken of any period during which the House referred to in sub-clause (c) of that clause is prorogued or adjourned for more than four consecutive days.

(3) Where the President has under clause (1) notified his intention of summoning the Houses to meet in a joint sitting, neither House shall proceed further with the Bill, but the President may at any time after the date of his notification summon the Houses to meet in a joint sitting for the purpose specified in the notification and, if he does so, the Houses shall meet accordingly.

(4) If at the joint sitting of the two Houses the Bill, with such amendments, if any, as are agreed to in joint sitting, is passed by a majority of the total number of members of both Houses present and voting, it shall be deemed for the purposes of this Constitution to have been passed by both Houses:

Provided that at a joint sitting—

(a) if the Bill, having been passed by one House, has not been passed by the other House with amendments and returned to the House in which it originated, no amendment shall be proposed to the Bill other than such amendments (if any) as are made necessary by the delay in the passage of the Bill;

(b) if the Bill has been so passed and returned, only such amendments as aforesaid shall be proposed to the Bill and such other amendments as are relevant to the matters with respect to which the Houses have not agreed, and the decision of the person presiding as to the amendments which are admissible under this clause shall be final.

(5) A joint sitting may be held under this article and a Bill passed thereat, notwithstanding that a dissolution of the House of the People has intervened since the President notified his intention to summon the Houses to meet therein.

109. Special procedure in respect of Money Bills.—(1) A Money Bill shall not be introduced in the Council of States.

(Part V.—The Union)

(2) After a Money Bill has been passed by the House of the People it shall be transmitted to the Council of States for its recommendations and the Council of States shall within a period of fourteen days from the date of its receipt of the Bill return the Bill to the House of the People with its recommendations and the House of the People may thereupon either accept or reject all or any of the recommendations of the Council of States.

(3) If the House of the People accepts any of the recommendations of the Council of States, the Money Bill shall be deemed to have been passed by both Houses with the amendments recommended by the Council of States and accepted by the House of the People.

(4) If the House of the People does not accept any of the recommendations of the Council of States, the Money Bill shall be deemed to have been passed by both Houses in the form in which it was passed by the House of the People without any of the amendments recommended by the Council of States.

(5) If a Money Bill passed by the House of the People and transmitted to the Council of States for its recommendations is not returned to the House of the People within the said period of fourteen days, it shall be deemed to have been passed by both Houses at the expiration of the said period in the form in which it was passed by the House of the People.

110. Definition of “Money Bills”.—(1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a Bill shall be deemed to be a Money Bill if it contains only provisions dealing with all or any of the following matters, namely:—

- (a) the imposition, abolition, remission, alteration or regulation of any tax;
- (b) the regulation of the borrowing of money or the giving of any guarantee by the Government of India, or the amendment of the law with respect to any financial obligations undertaken or to be undertaken by the Government of India;
- (c) the custody of the Consolidated Fund or the Contingency Fund of India, the payment of moneys into or the withdrawal of moneys from any such Fund;
- (d) the appropriation of moneys out of the Consolidated Fund of India;
- (e) the declaring of any expenditure to be expenditure charged on the Consolidated Fund of India or the increasing of the amount of any such expenditure;

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

(f) the receipt of money on account of the Consolidated Fund of India or the public account of India or the custody or issue of such money or the audit of the accounts of the Union or of a State; or

(g) any matter incidental to any of the matters specified in sub-clauses (a) to (f).

(2) A Bill shall not be deemed to be a Money Bill by reason only that it provides for the imposition of fines or other pecuniary penalties, or for the demand or payment of fees for licences or fees for services rendered, or by reason that it provides for the imposition, abolition, remission, alteration or regulation of any tax by any local authority or body for local purposes.

(3) If any question arises whether a Bill is a Money Bill or not, the decision of the Speaker of the House of the People thereon shall be final.

(4) There shall be endorsed on every Money Bill when it is transmitted to the Council of States under article 109, and when it is presented to the President for assent under article 111, the certificate of the Speaker of the House of the People signed by him that it is a Money Bill.

111. Assent to Bills.—When a Bill has been passed by the Houses of Parliament, it shall be presented to the President, and the President shall declare either that he assents to the Bill, or that he withholds assent therefrom:

Provided that the President may, as soon as possible after the presentation to him of a Bill for assent, return the Bill if it is not a Money Bill to the Houses with a message requesting that they will reconsider the Bill or any specified provisions thereof and, in particular, will consider the desirability of introducing any such amendments as he may recommend in his message, and when a Bill is so returned, the Houses shall reconsider the Bill accordingly, and if the Bill is passed again by the Houses with or without amendment and presented to the President for assent, the President shall not withhold assent therefrom.

Procedure in Financial Matters

112. Annual financial statement.—(1) The President shall in respect of every financial year cause to be laid before both the Houses of Parliament a statement of the estimated receipts and expenditure of the Government of India for that year, in this Part referred to as the "annual financial statement".

(2) The estimates of expenditure embodied in the annual financial statement shall show separately—

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

(a) the sums required to meet expenditure described by this Constitution as expenditure charged upon the Consolidated Fund of India; and

(b) the sums required to meet other expenditure proposed to be made from the Consolidated Fund of India,

and shall distinguish expenditure on revenue account from other expenditure.

(3) The following expenditure shall be expenditure charged on the Consolidated Fund of India—

(a) the emoluments and allowances of the President and other expenditure relating to his office;

(b) the salaries and allowances of the Chairman and the Deputy Chairman of the Council of States and the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the House of the People;

(c) debt charges for which the Government of India is liable including interest, sinking fund charges and redemption charges, and other expenditure relating to the raising of loans and the service and redemption of debt;

(d) (i) the salaries, allowances and pensions payable to or in respect of Judges of the Supreme Court;

(ii) the pensions payable to or in respect of Judges of the Federal Court;

(iii) the pensions payable to or in respect of Judges of any High Court which exercises jurisdiction in relation to any area included in the territory of India or which at any time before the commencement of this Constitution exercised jurisdiction in relation to any area included in¹ [a Governor's Province of the Dominion of India];

(e) the salary, allowances and pension payable to or in respect of the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India;

(f) any sums required to satisfy any judgment, decree or award of any court or arbitral tribunal;

(g) any other expenditure declared by this Constitution or by Parliament by law to be so charged.

113. Procedure in Parliament with respect to estimates.—(1) So much of the estimates as relates to expenditure charged upon the Consolidated Fund of India shall not be submitted to the vote of Parliament, but nothing in this clause shall be construed as preventing the discussion in either House of Parliament of any of those estimates.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch., for "a Province corresponding to a State specified in Part A of the First Schedule" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part V.—The Union)

(2) So much of the said estimates as relates to other expenditure shall be submitted in the form of demands for grants to the House of the People, and the House of the People shall have power to assent, or to refuse to assent, to any demand, or to assent to any demand subject to a reduction of the amount specified therein.

(3) No demand for a grant shall be made except on the recommendation of the President.

114. Appropriation Bills.—(1) As soon as may be after the grants under article 113 have been made by the House of the People, there shall be introduced a Bill to provide for the appropriation out of the Consolidated Fund of India of all moneys required to meet—

(a) the grants so made by the House of the People; and

(b) the expenditure charged on the Consolidated Fund of India but not exceeding in any case the amount shown in the statement previously laid before Parliament.

(2) No amendment shall be proposed to any such Bill in either House of Parliament which will have the effect of varying the amount or altering the destination of any grant so made or of varying the amount of any expenditure charged on the Consolidated Fund of India, and the decision of the person presiding as to whether an amendment is inadmissible under this clause shall be final.

(3) Subject to the provisions of articles 115 and 116, no money shall be withdrawn from the Consolidated Fund of India except under appropriation made by law passed in accordance with the provisions of this article.

115. Supplementary, additional or excess grants.—(1) The President shall—

(a) if the amount authorised by any law made in accordance with the provisions of article 114 to be expended for a particular service for the current financial year is found to be insufficient for the purposes of that year or when a need has arisen during the current financial year for supplementary or additional expenditure upon some new service not contemplated in the annual financial statement for that year; or

(b) if any money has been spent on any service during a financial year in excess of the amount granted for that service and for that year, cause to be laid before both the Houses of Parliament another statement showing the estimated amount of that expenditure or cause to be presented to the House of the People a demand for such excess, as the case may be.

(Part V.—The Union)

(2) The provisions of articles 112, 113 and 114 shall have effect in relation to any such statement and expenditure or demand and also to any law to be made authorising the appropriation of moneys out of the Consolidated Fund of India to meet such expenditure or the grant in respect of such demand as they have effect in relation to the annual financial statement and the expenditure mentioned therein or to a demand for a grant and the law to be made for the authorisation of appropriation of moneys out of the Consolidated Fund of India to meet such expenditure or grant.

116. Votes on account, votes of credit and exceptional grants.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in the foregoing provisions of this Chapter, the House of the People shall have power—

(a) to make any grant in advance in respect of the estimated expenditure for a part of any financial year pending the completion of the procedure prescribed in article 113 for the voting of such grant and the passing of the law in accordance with the provisions of article 114 in relation to that expenditure;

(b) to make a grant for meeting an unexpected demand upon the resources of India when on account of the magnitude or the indefinite character of the service the demand cannot be stated with the details ordinarily given in an annual financial statement;

(c) to make an exceptional grant which forms no part of the current service of any financial year,

and Parliament shall have power to authorise by law the withdrawal of moneys from the Consolidated Fund of India for the purposes for which the said grants are made.

(2) The provisions of articles 113 and 114 shall have effect in relation to the making of any grant under clause (1) and to any law to be made under that clause as they have effect in relation to the making of a grant with regard to any expenditure mentioned in the annual financial statement and the law to be made for the authorisation of appropriation of moneys out of the Consolidated Fund of India to meet such expenditure.

117. Special provisions as to financial Bills.—(1) A Bill or amendment making provision for any of the matters specified in sub-clauses (a) to (f) of clause (1) of article 110 shall not be introduced or moved except on the recommendation of the President and a Bill making such provision shall not be introduced in the Council of States:

Provided that no recommendation shall be required under this clause for the moving of an amendment making provision for the reduction or abolition of any tax.

(Part V.—The Union)

(2) A Bill or amendment shall not be deemed to make provision for any of the matters aforesaid by reason only that it provides for the imposition of fines or other pecuniary penalties, or for the demand or payment of fees for licences or fees for services rendered, or by reason that it provides for the imposition, abolition, remission, alteration or regulation of any tax by any local authority or body for local purposes.

(3) A Bill which, if enacted and brought into operation, would involve expenditure from the Consolidated Fund of India shall not be passed by either House of Parliament unless the President has recommended to that House the consideration of the Bill.

Procedure Generally

118. Rules of procedure.—(1) Each House of Parliament may make rules for regulating, subject to the provisions of this Constitution, its procedure* and the conduct of its business.

(2) Until rules are made under clause (1), the rules of procedure and standing orders in force immediately before the commencement of this Constitution with respect to the Legislature of the Dominion of India shall have effect in relation to Parliament subject to such modifications and adaptations as may be made therein by the Chairman of the Council of States or the Speaker of the House of the People, as the case may be.

(3) The President, after consultation with the Chairman of the Council of States and the Speaker of the House of the People, may make rules as to the procedure with respect to joint sittings of, and communications between, the two Houses.

(4) At a joint sitting of the two Houses the Speaker of the House of the People, or in his absence such person as may be determined by rules of procedure made under clause (3), shall preside.

119. Regulation by law of procedure in Parliament in relation to financial business.—Parliament may, for the purpose of the timely completion of financial business, regulate by law the procedure of, and the conduct of business in, each House of Parliament in relation to any financial matter or to any Bill for the appropriation of moneys out of the Consolidated Fund of India, and, if and so far as any provision of any law so made is inconsistent with any rule made by a House of Parliament under clause (1) of article 118 or with any rule or standing order having effect in relation to Parliament under clause (2) of that article, such provision shall prevail.

* The brackets and words "(including the quorum to constitute a meeting of the House" ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 22 (date not notified). This amendment was omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 45 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

(Part V.—The Union)

120. Language to be used in Parliament.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in Part XVII, but subject to the provisions of article 348, business in Parliament shall be transacted in Hindi or in English:

Provided that the Chairman of the Council of States or Speaker of the House of the People, or person acting as such, as the case may be, may permit any member who cannot adequately express himself in Hindi or in English to address the House in his mother-tongue.

(2) Unless Parliament by law otherwise provides, this article shall, after the expiration of a period of fifteen years from the commencement of this Constitution, have effect as if the words “or in English” were omitted therefrom.

121. Restriction on discussion in Parliament.—No discussion shall take place in Parliament with respect to the conduct of any Judge of the Supreme Court or of a High Court in the discharge of his duties except upon a motion for presenting an address to the President praying for the removal of the Judge as hereinafter provided.

122. Courts not to inquire into proceedings of Parliament.—(1) The validity of any proceedings in Parliament shall not be called in question on the ground of any alleged irregularity of procedure.

(2) No officer or member of Parliament in whom powers are vested by or under this Constitution for regulating procedure or the conduct of business, or for maintaining order, in Parliament shall be subject to the jurisdiction of any court in respect of the exercise by him of those powers.

CHAPTER III.—LEGISLATIVE POWERS OF THE PRESIDENT

123. Power of President to promulgate Ordinances during recess of Parliament.—(1) If at any time, except when both Houses of Parliament are in session, the President is satisfied that circumstances exist which render it necessary for him to take immediate action, he may promulgate such Ordinances as the circumstances appear to him to require.

(2) An Ordinance promulgated under this article shall have the same force and effect as an Act of Parliament, but every such Ordinance—

(a) shall be laid before both Houses of Parliament and shall cease to operate at the expiration of six weeks from the reassembly of Parliament, or, if before the expiration of that period resolutions disapproving it are passed by both Houses, upon the passing of the second of those resolutions; and

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

(b) may be withdrawn at any time by the President.

Explanation.—Where the Houses of Parliament are summoned to reassemble on different dates, the period of six weeks shall be reckoned from the later of those dates for the purposes of this clause.

(3) If and so far as an Ordinance under this article makes any provision which Parliament would not under this Constitution be competent to enact, it shall be void.

¹(4)*

* * * *

CHAPTER IV.—THE UNION JUDICIARY

124. Establishment and constitution of the Supreme Court.—(1)

There shall be a Supreme Court of India consisting of a Chief Justice of India and, until Parliament by law prescribes a larger number, of not more than *[seven] other Judges.

(2) Every Judge of the Supreme Court shall be appointed by the President by warrant under his hand and seal ²[on the recommendation of the National Judicial Appointments Commission referred to in article 124A] and shall hold office until he attains the age of sixty-five years:

³[* * * *]

⁴[Provided that]—

(a) a Judge may, by writing under his hand addressed to the President, resign his office;

(b) a Judge may be removed from his office in the manner provided in clause (4).

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 2 (with retrospective effect) and omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 16 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

* Now "thirty-three" *vide* the Supreme Court (Number of Judges) Amendment Act, 2019 (37 of 2019), s. 2 (w.e.f. 9-8-2019).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Ninety-ninth Amendment) Act, 2014, s. 2, for "after consultation with such of the Judges of the Supreme Court and of the High Court in the States as the President may deem necessary for the purpose" (w.e.f. 13-4-2015). This amendment has been struck down by the Supreme Court in the case of Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association and another Vs. Union of India in its judgment dated 16-10-2015, AIR 2016 SC 117.

3. The first proviso was omitted by s. 2, *ibid*. The proviso was as under:—

"Provided that in the case of appointment of a Judge other than the Chief Justice, the Chief Justice of India shall always be consulted;" This amendment has been struck down by the Supreme Court in the case of Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association and another Vs. Union of India in its judgment dated 16-10-2015, AIR 2016 SC 117.

4. Subs. by s. 2, *ibid*, for "provided further that" This amendment has been struck down by the Supreme Court in the Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association and another Vs Union of India judgment dated 16-10-2015, AIR 2016 SC 117.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

¹[(2A) The age of a Judge of the Supreme Court shall be determined by such authority and in such manner as Parliament may by law provide.]

(3) A person shall not be qualified for appointment as a Judge of the Supreme Court unless he is a citizen of India and—

- (a) has been for at least five years a Judge of a High Court or of two or more such Courts in succession; or
- (b) has been for at least ten years an advocate of a High Court or of two or more such Courts in succession; or
- (c) is, in the opinion of the President, a distinguished jurist.

Explanation I.—In this clause "High Court" means a High Court which exercises, or which at any time before the commencement of this Constitution exercised, jurisdiction in any part of the territory of India.

Explanation II.—In computing for the purpose of this clause the period during which a person has been an advocate, any period during which a person has held judicial office not inferior to that of a district judge after he became an advocate shall be included.

(4) A Judge of the Supreme Court shall not be removed from his office except by an order of the President passed after an address by each House of Parliament supported by a majority of the total membership of that House and by a majority of not less than two-thirds of the members of that House present and voting has been presented to the President in the same session for such removal on the ground of proved misbehaviour or incapacity.

(5) Parliament may by law regulate the procedure for the presentation of an address and for the investigation and proof of the misbehaviour or incapacity of a Judge under clause (4).

(6) Every person appointed to be a Judge of the Supreme Court shall, before he enters upon his office, make and subscribe before the President, or some person appointed in that behalf by him, an oath or affirmation according to the form set out for the purpose in the Third Schedule.

(7) No person who has held office as a Judge of the Supreme Court shall plead or act in any court or before any authority within the territory of India.

²[124A. **National Judicial Appointments Commission.**—(1) There shall be a Commission to be known as the National Judicial Appointments Commission consisting of the following, namely:—

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Fifteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 2 (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

2. Ins. by the Constitution (Ninety-ninth Amendment) Act, 2014, s. 3 (w.e.f. 13-4-2015). This amendment has been struck down by the Supreme Court in the case of Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association and another Vs Union of India in its judgment dated 16-10-2015, AIR 2016 SC 117.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

(a) the Chief Justice of India, Chairperson, *ex officio*;

(b) two other senior Judges of the Supreme Court next to the Chief Justice of India—Members, *ex officio*;

(c) the Union Minister in charge of Law and Justice—Member, *ex officio*;

(d) two eminent persons to be nominated by the committee consisting of the Prime Minister, the Chief Justice of India and the Leader of Opposition in the House of the People or where there is no such Leader of Opposition, then, the Leader of single largest Opposition Party in the House of the People—Members:

Provided that one of the eminent person shall be nominated from amongst the persons belonging to the Scheduled Castes, the Scheduled Tribes, Other Backward Classes, Minorities or Women:

Provided further that an eminent person shall be nominated for a period of three years and shall not be eligible for renomination.

(2) No act or proceedings of the National Judicial Appointments Commission shall be questioned or be invalidated merely on the ground of the existence of any vacancy or defect in the constitution of the Commission.

124B. Functions of Commission.—It shall be the duty of the National Judicial Appointments Commission to—

(a) recommend persons for appointment as Chief Justice of India, Judges of the Supreme Court, Chief Justices of High Courts and other Judges of High Courts;

(b) recommend transfer of Chief Justices and other Judges of High Courts from one High Court to any other High Court; and

(c) ensure that the person recommended is of ability and integrity.

124C. Power of Parliament to make law.—Parliament may, by law, regulate the procedure for the appointment of Chief Justice of India and other Judges of the Supreme Court and Chief Justices and other Judges of High Courts and empower the Commission to lay down by regulations the procedure for the discharge of its functions, the manner of selection of persons for appointment and such other matters as may be considered necessary by it.]

125. Salaries, etc., of Judges.—¹[(1) There shall be paid to the Judges of the Supreme Court such salaries as may be determined by Parliament by law and, until provision in that behalf is so made, such salaries as are specified in the Second Schedule.]

(2) Every Judge shall be entitled to such privileges and allowances and to such rights in respect of leave of absence and pension as may from time to time be determined by or under law made by Parliament and, until so determined, to such privileges, allowances and rights as are specified in the Second Schedule:

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1986, s. 2, for cl. (1) (w.e.f. 1-4-1986).

(Part V.—The Union)

Provided that neither the privileges nor the allowances of a Judge nor his rights in respect of leave of absence or pension shall be varied to his disadvantage after his appointment.

126. Appointment of acting Chief Justice.—When the office of Chief Justice of India is vacant or when the Chief Justice is, by reason of absence or otherwise, unable to perform the duties of his office, the duties of the office shall be performed by such one of the other Judges of the Court as the President may appoint for the purpose.

127. Appointment of *ad hoc* Judges.—(1) If at any time there should not be a quorum of the Judges of the Supreme Court available to hold or continue any session of the Court, ¹[the National Judicial Appointments Commission on a reference made to it by the Chief Justice of India, may with the previous consent of the President] and after consultation with the Chief Justice of the High Court concerned, request in writing the attendance at the sittings of the Court, as an *ad hoc* Judge, for such period as may be necessary, of a Judge of a High Court duly qualified for appointment as a Judge of the Supreme Court to be designated by the Chief Justice of India.

(2) It shall be the duty of the Judge who has been so designated, in priority to other duties of his office, to attend the sittings of the Supreme Court at the time and for the period for which his attendance is required, and while so attending he shall have all the jurisdiction, powers and privileges, and shall discharge the duties, of a Judge of the Supreme Court.

128. Attendance of retired Judges at sittings of the Supreme Court.—Notwithstanding anything in this Chapter, ²[the National Judicial Appointments Commission] may at any time, with the previous consent of the President, request any person who has held the office of a Judge of the Supreme Court or of the Federal Court ³[or who has held the office of a Judge of a High Court and is duly qualified for appointment as a Judge of the Supreme Court] to sit and act as a Judge of the Supreme Court, and every such person so requested shall, while so sitting and acting, be entitled to such allowances as the President may by order determine and have all the jurisdiction, powers and privileges of, but shall not otherwise be deemed to be, a Judge of that Court:

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Ninety-ninth Amendment) Act, 2014, s. 4, for "the Chief Justice of India may, with the previous consent of the President" (w.e.f. 13-4-2015). This amendment has been struck down by the Supreme Court in the case of Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association and another vs. Union of India in its judgment dated 16-10-2015, AIR 2016 SC 117.
 2. Subs. by s. 5, *ibid.*, for "the Chief Justice of India" (w.e.f. 13-4-2015). This amendment has been struck down by the Supreme Court in the case of Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association and another Vs. Union of India in its judgment dated 16-10-2015, AIR 2016 SC 117.
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Fifteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 3 (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

(Part V.—The Union)

Provided that nothing in this article shall be deemed to require any such person as aforesaid to sit and act as a Judge of that Court unless he consents so to do.

129. Supreme Court to be a court of record.—The Supreme Court shall be a court of record and shall have all the powers of such a court including the power to punish for contempt of itself.

130. Seat of Supreme Court.—The Supreme Court shall sit in Delhi or in such other place or places, as the Chief Justice of India may, with the approval of the President, from time to time, appoint.

131. Original jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.—Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, the Supreme Court shall, to the exclusion of any other court, have original jurisdiction in any dispute—

- (a) between the Government of India and one or more States; or
- (b) between the Government of India and any State or States on one side and one or more other States on the other; or
- (c) between two or more States,

if and in so far as the dispute involves any question (whether of law or fact) on which the existence or extent of a legal right depends:

¹[Provided that the said jurisdiction shall not extend to a dispute arising out of any treaty, agreement, covenant, engagement, *sandad* or other similar instrument which, having been entered into or executed before the commencement of this Constitution, continues in operation after such commencement, or which provides that the said jurisdiction shall not extend to such a dispute.]

²[**131A. Exclusive jurisdiction of the Supreme Court in regard to questions as to constitutional validity of Central laws.**.—Omitted by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 4 (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).]

132. Appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court in appeals from High Courts in certain cases.—(1) An appeal shall lie to the Supreme Court from any judgment, decree or final order of a High Court in the territory of India, whether in a civil, criminal or other proceeding, ³[if the High Court certifies under article 134A] that the case involves a substantial question of law as to the interpretation of this Constitution.

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 5, for the proviso (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 2. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 23 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977).
 3. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 17, for "if the High Court certifies" (w.e.f. 1-8-1979).

(Part V.—The Union)

¹(2)* * * *

(3) Where such a certificate is given,^{2***} any party in the case may appeal to the Supreme Court on the ground that any such question as aforesaid has been wrongly decided^{2***}.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this article, the expression “final order” includes an order deciding an issue which, if decided in favour of the appellant, would be sufficient for the final disposal of the case.

133. Appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court in appeals from High Courts in regard to civil matters.—³[(1) An appeal shall lie to the Supreme Court from any judgment, decree or final order in a civil proceeding of a High Court in the territory of India ⁴[if the High Court certifies under article 134A—]

(a) that the case involves a substantial question of law of general importance; and

(b) that in the opinion of the High Court the said question needs to be decided by the Supreme Court.]

(2) Notwithstanding anything in article 132, any party appealing to the Supreme Court under clause (1) may urge as one of the grounds in such appeal that substantial question of law as to the interpretation of this Constitution has been wrongly decided.

(3) Notwithstanding anything in this article, no appeal shall, unless Parliament by law otherwise provides, lie to the Supreme Court from the judgment, decree or final order of one Judge of a High Court.

134. Appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court in regard to criminal matters.—(1) An appeal shall lie to the Supreme Court from any judgment, final order or sentence in a criminal proceeding of a High Court in the territory of India if the High Court—

(a) has on appeal reversed an order of acquittal of an accused person and sentenced him to death; or

(b) has withdrawn for trial before itself any case from any court subordinate to its authority and has in such trial convicted the accused person and sentenced him to death; or

(c)⁵[certifies under article 134A] that the case is a fit one for appeal to the Supreme Court:

1. Cl. (2) omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 17, for “if the High Court certifies” (w.e.f. 1-8-1979).

2. Certain words omitted by s. 17, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-8-1979).

3. Subs. by the Constitution (Thirty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1972, s. 2, for cl. (1) (w.e.f. 27-2-1973).

4. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 18, for “if the High Court certifies.” (w.e.f. 1-8-1979).

5. Subs. by s. 19, *ibid.*, for “certifies” (w.e.f. 1-8-1979).

(Part V.—The Union)

Provided that an appeal under sub-clause (c) shall lie subject to such provisions as may be made in that behalf under clause (1) of article 145 and to such conditions as the High Court may establish or require.

(2) Parliament may by law confer on the Supreme Court any further powers to entertain and hear appeals from any judgment, final order or sentence in a criminal proceeding of a High Court in the territory of India subject to such conditions and limitations as may be specified in such law.

¹[134A. Certificate for appeal to the Supreme Court.]—Every High Court, passing or making a judgment, decree, final order, or sentence, referred to in clause (1) of article 132 or clause (1) of article 133, or clause (1) of article 134,—

(a) may, if it deems fit so to do, on its own motion; and

(b) shall, if an oral application is made, by or on behalf of the party aggrieved, immediately after the passing or making of such judgment, decree, final order or sentence,

determine, as soon as may be after such passing or making, the question whether a certificate of the nature referred to in clause (1) of article 132, or clause (1) of article 133 or, as the case may be, sub-clause (c) of clause (1) of article 134, may be given in respect of that case.]

135. Jurisdiction and powers of the Federal Court under existing law to be exercisable by the Supreme Court.—Until Parliament by law otherwise provides, the Supreme Court shall also have jurisdiction and powers with respect to any matter to which the provisions of article 133 or article 134 do not apply if jurisdiction and powers in relation to that matter were exercisable by the Federal Court immediately before the commencement of this Constitution under any existing law.

136. Special leave to appeal by the Supreme Court.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Chapter, the Supreme Court may, in its discretion, grant special leave to appeal from any judgment, decree, determination, sentence or order in any cause or matter passed or made by any court or tribunal in the territory of India.

(2) Nothing in clause (1) shall apply to any judgment, determination, sentence or order passed or made by any court or tribunal constituted by or under any law relating to the Armed Forces.

137. Review of judgments or orders by the Supreme Court.—Subject to the provisions of any law made by Parliament or any rules made under article 145, the Supreme Court shall have power to review any judgment pronounced or order made by it.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 20 (w.e.f. 1-8-1979).

(Part V.—The Union)

138. Enlargement of the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.—(1) The Supreme Court shall have such further jurisdiction and powers with respect to any of the matters in the Union List as Parliament may by law confer.

(2) The Supreme Court shall have such further jurisdiction and powers with respect to any matter as the Government of India and the Government of any State may by special agreement confer, if Parliament by law provides for the exercise of such jurisdiction and powers by the Supreme Court.

139. Conferment on the Supreme Court of powers to issue certain writs.—Parliament may by law confer on the Supreme Court power to issue directions, orders or writs, including writs in the nature of *habeas corpus*, *mandamus*, prohibition, *quo warranto* and *certiorari*, or any of them, for any purposes other than those mentioned in clause (2) of article 32.

¹[**139A. Transfer of certain cases.**—²[(1) Where cases involving the same or substantially the same questions of law are pending before the Supreme Court and one or more High Courts or before two or more High Courts and the Supreme Court is satisfied on its own motion or on an application made by the Attorney-General of India or by a party to any such case that such questions are substantial questions of general importance, the Supreme Court may withdraw the case or cases pending before the High Court or the High Courts and dispose of all the cases itself:

Provided that the Supreme Court may after determining the said questions of law return any case so withdrawn together with a copy of its judgment on such questions to the High Court from which the case has been withdrawn, and the High Court shall on receipt thereof, proceed to dispose of the case in conformity with such judgment.]

(2) The Supreme Court may, if it deems it expedient so to do for the ends of justice, transfer any case, appeal or other proceedings pending before any High Court to any other High Court.]

140. Ancillary powers of the Supreme Court.—Parliament may by law make provision for conferring upon the Supreme Court such supplemental powers not inconsistent with any of the provisions of this Constitution as may appear to be necessary or desirable for the purpose of enabling the Court more effectively to exercise the jurisdiction conferred upon it by or under this Constitution.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 24 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977).
 2. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 21, for cl. (1) (w.e.f. 1-8-1979).

(Part V.—The Union)

141. Law declared by Supreme Court to be binding on all courts.—The law declared by the Supreme Court shall be binding on all courts within the territory of India.

142. Enforcement of decrees and orders of the Supreme Court and orders as to discovery, etc.—(1) The Supreme Court in the exercise of its jurisdiction may pass such decree or make such order as is necessary for doing complete justice in any cause or matter pending before it, and any decree so passed or order so made shall be enforceable throughout the territory of India in such manner as may be prescribed by or under any law made by Parliament and, until provision in that behalf is so made, in such manner as the President may by order¹ prescribe.

(2) Subject to the provisions of any law made in this behalf by Parliament, the Supreme Court shall, as respects the whole of the territory of India, have all and every power to make any order for the purpose of securing the attendance of any person, the discovery or production of any documents, or the investigation or punishment of any contempt of itself.

143. Power of the President to consult the Supreme Court.—(1) If at any time it appears to the President that a question of law or fact has arisen, or is likely to arise, which is of such a nature and of such public importance that it is expedient to obtain the opinion of the Supreme Court upon it, he may refer the question to that Court for consideration and the Court may, after such hearing as it thinks fit, report to the President its opinion thereon.

(2) The President may, notwithstanding anything in ^{2***} the proviso to article 131, refer a dispute of the kind mentioned in the ³[said proviso] to the Supreme Court for opinion and the Supreme Court shall, after such hearing as it thinks fit, report to the President its opinion thereon.

144. Civil and judicial authorities to act in aid of the Supreme Court.—All authorities, civil and judicial, in the territory of India shall act in aid of the Supreme Court.

⁴[**144A. [Special provisions as to disposal of questions relating to constitutional validity of laws.]**—Omitted by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 5 (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).]

145. Rules of Court, etc.—(1) Subject to the provisions of any law made by Parliament, the Supreme Court may from time to time, with the approval of the President, make rules for regulating generally the practice and procedure of the Court including—

(a) rules as to the persons practising before the Court;

1. See the Supreme Court (Decrees and Orders) Enforcement Order, 1954 (C.O. 47).

2. The words, brackets and figure "clause (i) of" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. Subs. by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.*, for "said clause" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

4. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 25 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part V.—The Union)

(b) rules as to the procedure for hearing appeals and other matters pertaining to appeals including the time within which appeals to the Court are to be entered;

(c) rules as to the proceedings in the Court for the enforcement of any of the rights conferred by Part III;

¹[(cc) rules as to the proceedings in the Court under ²[article 139A];]

(d) rules as to the entertainment of appeals under sub-clause (c) of clause (1) of article 134;

(e) rules as to the conditions subject to which any judgment pronounced or order made by the Court may be reviewed and the procedure for such review including the time within which applications to the Court for such review are to be entered;

(f) rules as to the costs of and incidental to any proceedings in the Court and as to the fees to be charged in respect of proceedings therein;

(g) rules as to the granting of bail;

(h) rules as to stay of proceedings;

(i) rules providing for the summary determination of any appeal which appears to the Court to be frivolous or vexatious or brought for the purpose of delay;

(j) rules as to the procedure for inquiries referred to in clause (1) of article 317.

(2) Subject to the ³[provisions of ^{4***} clause (3)], rules made under this article may fix the minimum number of Judges who are to sit for any purpose, and may provide for the powers of single Judges and Division Courts.

(3) ⁵[^{4***}The minimum number] of Judges who are to sit for the purpose of deciding any case involving a substantial question of law as to the interpretation of this Constitution or for the purpose of hearing any reference under article 143 shall be five:

-
1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 26 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977).
 2. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 6, for "articles 131A and 139A" (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).
 3. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 26, for "provisions of clause (3)" (w.e.f. 1-2-1977).
 4. Certain words omitted by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 6 (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).
 5. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 26, for "The minimum number" (w.e.f. 1-2-1977).

(Part V.—The Union)

Provided that, where the Court hearing an appeal under any of the provisions of this Chapter other than article 132 consists of less than five Judges and in the course of the hearing of the appeal the Court is satisfied that the appeal involves a substantial question of law as to the interpretation of this Constitution the determination of which is necessary for the disposal of the appeal, such Court shall refer the question for opinion to a Court constituted as required by this clause for the purpose of deciding any case involving such a question and shall on receipt of the opinion dispose of the appeal in conformity with such opinion.

(4) No judgment shall be delivered by the Supreme Court save in open Court, and no report shall be made under article 143 save in accordance with an opinion also delivered in open Court.

(5) No judgment and no such opinion shall be delivered by the Supreme Court save with the concurrence of a majority of the Judges present at the hearing of the case, but nothing in this clause shall be deemed to prevent a Judge who does not concur from delivering a dissenting judgment or opinion.

146. Officers and servants and the expenses of the Supreme Court.—

(1) Appointments of officers and servants of the Supreme Court shall be made by the Chief Justice of India or such other Judge or officer of the Court as he may direct:

Provided that the President may by rule require that in such cases as may be specified in the rule, no person not already attached to the Court shall be appointed to any office connected with the Court, save after consultation with the Union Public Service Commission.

(2) Subject to the provisions of any law made by Parliament, the conditions of service of officers and servants of the Supreme Court shall be such as may be prescribed by rules made by the Chief Justice of India or by some other Judge or officer of the Court authorised by the Chief Justice of India to make rules for the purpose:

Provided that the rules made under this clause shall, so far as they relate to salaries, allowances, leave or pensions, require the approval of the President.

(3) The administrative expenses of the Supreme Court, including all salaries, allowances and pensions payable to or in respect of the officers and servants of the Court, shall be charged upon the Consolidated Fund of India, and any fees or other moneys taken by the Court shall form part of that Fund.

(Part V.—The Union)

147. Interpretation.—In this Chapter and in Chapter V of Part VI, references to any substantial question of law as to the interpretation of this Constitution shall be construed as including references to any substantial question of law as to the interpretation of the Government of India Act, 1935 (including any enactment amending or supplementing that Act), or of any Order in Council or order made thereunder, or of the Indian Independence Act, 1947, or of any order made thereunder.

CHAPTER V.—COMPTRROLLER AND AUDITOR-GENERAL OF INDIA

148. Comptroller and Auditor-General of India.—(1) There shall be a Comptroller and Auditor-General of India who shall be appointed by the President by warrant under his hand and seal and shall only be removed from office in like manner and on the like grounds as a Judge of the Supreme Court.

(2) Every person appointed to be the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India shall, before he enters upon his office, make and subscribe before the President, or some person appointed in that behalf by him, an oath or affirmation according to the form set out for the purpose in the Third Schedule.

(3) The salary and other conditions of service of the Comptroller and Auditor-General shall be such as may be determined by Parliament by law and, until they are so determined, shall be as specified in the Second Schedule:

Provided that neither the salary of a Comptroller and Auditor-General nor his rights in respect of leave of absence, pension or age of retirement shall be varied to his disadvantage after his appointment.

(4) The Comptroller and Auditor-General shall not be eligible for further office either under the Government of India or under the Government of any State after he has ceased to hold his office.

(5) Subject to the provisions of this Constitution and of any law made by Parliament, the conditions of service of persons serving in the Indian Audit and Accounts Department and the administrative powers of the Comptroller and Auditor-General shall be such as may be prescribed by rules made by the President after consultation with the Comptroller and Auditor-General.

(6) The administrative expenses of the office of the Comptroller and Auditor-General, including all salaries, allowances and pensions payable to or in respect of persons serving in that office, shall be charged upon the Consolidated Fund of India.

149. Duties and powers of the Comptroller and Auditor-General.—

The Comptroller and Auditor-General shall perform such duties and exercise such powers in relation to the accounts of the Union and of the States and of any other authority or body as may be prescribed by or under any law made by Parliament and, until provision in that behalf is so made, shall perform such duties and exercise such powers in relation to the accounts of the Union and of the States as were conferred on or exercisable by the Auditor-General of India immediately before the commencement of this Constitution in relation to the accounts of the Dominion of India and of the Provinces respectively.

¹[**150. Form of accounts of the Union and of the States.**—The accounts of the Union and of the States shall be kept in such form as the President may, ²[on the advice of] the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India, prescribe.]

151. Audit reports.—(1) The reports of the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India relating to the accounts of the Union shall be submitted to the President, who shall cause them to be laid before each House of Parliament.

(2) The reports of the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India relating to the accounts of a State shall be submitted to the Governor ^{3***} of the State, who shall cause them to be laid before the Legislature of the State.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 27, for art.150 (w.e.f. 1-4-1977).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 22, for "after consultation with" (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

3. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

PART VI

THE STATES^{1***}

CHAPTER I.—GENERAL

152. Definition.—In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires, the expression “State”²[does not include the State of Jammu and Kashmir].

CHAPTER II.—THE EXECUTIVE

The Governor

153. Governors of States.—There shall be a Governor for each State:

³[Provided that nothing in this article shall prevent the appointment of the same person as Governor for two or more States.]

154. Executive power of State.—(1) The executive power of the State shall be vested in the Governor and shall be exercised by him either directly or through officers subordinate to him in accordance with this Constitution.

(2) Nothing in this article shall—

(a) be deemed to transfer to the Governor any functions conferred by any existing law on any other authority; or

(b) prevent Parliament or the Legislature of the State from conferring by law functions on any authority subordinate to the Governor.

155. Appointment of Governor.—The Governor of a State shall be appointed by the President by warrant under his hand and seal.

156. Term of office of Governor.—(1) The Governor shall hold office during the pleasure of the President.

(2) The Governor may, by writing under his hand addressed to the President, resign his office.

(3) Subject to the foregoing provisions of this article, a Governor shall hold office for a term of five years from the date on which he enters upon his office:

1. The words "IN PART A OF THE FIRST SCHEDEULE" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. Subs. by s. 29 and Sch. *ibid.*, for "means a State specified in Part A of the First Schedule" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. Added by s. 6, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

Provided that a Governor shall, notwithstanding the expiration of his term, continue to hold office until his successor enters upon his office.

157. Qualifications for appointment as Governor.—No person shall be eligible for appointment as Governor unless he is a citizen of India and has completed the age of thirty-five years.

158. Conditions of Governor's office.—(1) The Governor shall not be a member of either House of Parliament or of a House of the Legislature of any State specified in the First Schedule, and if a member of either House of Parliament or of a House of the Legislature of any such State be appointed Governor, he shall be deemed to have vacated his seat in that House on the date on which he enters upon his office as Governor.

(2) The Governor shall not hold any other office of profit.

(3) The Governor shall be entitled without payment of rent to the use of his official residences and shall be also entitled to such emoluments, allowances and privileges as may be determined by Parliament by law and, until provision in that behalf is so made, such emoluments, allowances and privileges as are specified in the Second Schedule.

¹[(3A) Where the same person is appointed as Governor of two or more States, the emoluments and allowances payable to the Governor shall be allocated among the States in such proportion as the President may by order determine.]

(4) The emoluments and allowances of the Governor shall not be diminished during his term of office.

159. Oath or affirmation by the Governor.—Every Governor and every person discharging the functions of the Governor shall, before entering upon his office, make and subscribe in the presence of the Chief Justice of the High Court exercising jurisdiction in relation to the State, or, in his absence, the senior most Judge of that Court available, an oath or affirmation in the following form, that is to say—

“I, A. B., do swear in the name of God that I will faithfully execute the solemnly affirm

office of Governor (or discharge the functions of the Governor) of(*name of the State*) and will to the best of my ability preserve, protect and defend the Constitution and the law and that I will devote myself to the service and well-being of the people of(*name of the State*).”.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 7 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

160. Discharge of the functions of the Governor in certain contingencies.—The President may make such provision as he thinks fit for the discharge of the functions of the Governor of a State in any contingency not provided for in this Chapter.

161. Power of Governor to grant pardons, etc., and to suspend, remit or commute sentences in certain cases.—The Governor of a State shall have the power to grant pardons, reprieves, respites or remissions of punishment or to suspend, remit or commute the sentence of any person convicted of any offence against any law relating to a matter to which the executive power of the State extends.

162. Extent of executive power of State.—Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, the executive power of a State shall extend to the matters with respect to which the Legislature of the State has power to make laws:

Provided that in any matter with respect to which the Legislature of a State and Parliament have power to make laws, the executive power of the State shall be subject to, and limited by, the executive power expressly conferred by this Constitution or by any law made by Parliament upon the Union or authorities thereof.

Council of Ministers

163. Council of Ministers to aid and advise Governor.—(1) There shall be a Council of Ministers with the Chief Minister at the head to aid and advise the Governor in the exercise of his functions, except in so far as he is by or under this Constitution required to exercise his functions or any of them in his discretion.

(2) If any question arises whether any matter is or is not a matter as respects which the Governor is by or under this Constitution required to act in his discretion, the decision of the Governor in his discretion shall be final, and the validity of anything done by the Governor shall not be called in question on the ground that he ought or ought not to have acted in his discretion.

(3) The question whether any, and if so what, advice was tendered by Ministers to the Governor shall not be inquired into in any court.

164. Other provisions as to Ministers.—(1) The Chief Minister shall be appointed by the Governor and the other Ministers shall be appointed by the Governor on the advice of the Chief Minister, and the Ministers shall hold office during the pleasure of the Governor:

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part VI.—The States)

Provided that in the States of ¹[Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand], Madhya Pradesh and ²[Odisha] there shall be a Minister in charge of tribal welfare who may in addition be in charge of the welfare of the Scheduled Castes and backward classes or any other work.

³[(1A) The total number of Ministers, including the Chief Minister, in the Council of Ministers in a State shall not exceed fifteen per cent. of the total number of members of the Legislative Assembly of that State:

Provided that the number of Ministers, including the Chief Minister in a State shall not be less than twelve:

Provided further that where the total number of Ministers including the Chief Minister in the Council of Ministers in any State at the commencement of the Constitution (Ninety-first Amendment) Act, 2003 exceeds the said fifteen per cent. or the number specified in the first proviso, as the case may be, then the total number of Ministers in that State shall be brought in conformity with the provisions of this clause within six months from such date⁴ as the President may by public notification appoint.

(1B) A member of the Legislative Assembly of a State or either House of the Legislature of a State having Legislative Council belonging to any political party who is disqualified for being a member of that House under paragraph 2 of the Tenth Schedule shall also be disqualified to be appointed as a Minister under clause (1) for duration of the period commencing from the date of his disqualification till the date on which the term of his office as such member would expire or where he contests any election to the Legislative Assembly of a State or either House of the Legislature of a State having Legislative Council, as the case may be, before the expiry of such period, till the date on which he is declared elected, whichever is earlier.]

(2) The Council of Ministers shall be collectively responsible to the Legislative Assembly of the State.

(3) Before a Minister enters upon his office, the Governor shall administer to him the oaths of office and of secrecy according to the forms set out for the purpose in the Third Schedule.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Ninety-fourth Amendment) Act, 2006, s. 2, for "Bihar" (w.e.f. 12-6-2006).

2. Subs. by the Orissa (Alteration of Name) Act, 2011 (15 of 2011), s. 4, for "Orissa" (w.e.f. 1-11-2011).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (Ninety-first Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 3 (w.e.f. 1-1-2004).

4. 7-1-2004, *vide* notification number S.O. 21(E), dated 7-1-2004.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part VI.—The States)

(4) A Minister who for any period of six consecutive months is not a member of the Legislature of the State shall at the expiration of that period cease to be a Minister.

(5) The salaries and allowances of Ministers shall be such as the Legislature of the State may from time to time by law determine and, until the Legislature of the State so determines, shall be as specified in the Second Schedule.

The Advocate-General for the State

165. Advocate-General for the State.—(1) The Governor of each State shall appoint a person who is qualified to be appointed a Judge of a High Court to be Advocate-General for the State.

(2) It shall be the duty of the Advocate-General to give advice to the Government of the State upon such legal matters, and to perform such other duties of a legal character, as may from time to time be referred or assigned to him by the Governor, and to discharge the functions conferred on him by or under this Constitution or any other law for the time being in force.

(3) The Advocate-General shall hold office during the pleasure of the Governor, and shall receive such remuneration as the Governor may determine.

Conduct of Government Business

166. Conduct of Business of the Government of a State.—(1) All executive action of the Government of a State shall be expressed to be taken in the name of the Governor.

(2) Orders and other instruments made and executed in the name of the Governor shall be authenticated in such manner as may be specified in rules to be made by the Governor, and the validity of an order or instrument which is so authenticated shall not be called in question on the ground that it is not an order or instrument made or executed by the Governor.

(3) The Governor shall make rules for the more convenient transaction of the business of the Government of the State, and for the allocation among Ministers of the said business in so far as it is not business with respect to which the Governor is by or under this Constitution required to act in his discretion.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part VI.—The States)

¹(4)*

*

*

*

*

167. Duties of Chief Minister as respects the furnishing of information to Governor, etc.—It shall be the duty of the Chief Minister of each State—

(a) to communicate to the Governor of the State all decisions of the Council of Ministers relating to the administration of the affairs of the State and proposals for legislation;

(b) to furnish such information relating to the administration of the affairs of the State and proposals for legislation as the Governor may call for; and

(c) if the Governor so requires, to submit for the consideration of the Council of Ministers any matter on which a decision has been taken by a Minister but which has not been considered by the Council.

CHAPTER III.—THE STATE LEGISLATURE

General

168. Constitution of Legislatures in States.—(1) For every State there shall be a Legislature which shall consist of the Governor, and—

(a) in the States of ^{2***} ³[Andhra Pradesh], Bihar, ^{4***} ⁵[Madhya Pradesh], ^{6***} ⁷[Maharashtra], ⁸[Karnataka], ^{9***}

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 28 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977) and omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 23 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
2. The words "Andhra Pradesh," omitted by the Andhra Pradesh Legislative Council (Abolition) Act, 1985 (34 of 1985), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-6-1985).
3. Ins. by the Andhra Pradesh Legislative Council Act, 2005 (1 of 2006), s. 3 (w.e.f. 30-3-2007).
4. The word "Bombay" omitted by the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960 (11 of 1960) s. 20 (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).
5. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 8 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
6. The words "Tamil Nadu," omitted by the Tamil Nadu Legislative Council (Abolition) Act, 1986 (40 of 1986), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-11-1986).
7. Ins. by the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960 (11 of 1960), s. 20 (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).
8. Subs. by the Mysore State (Alteration of Name) Act, 1973 (31 of 1973), s. 4, for "Mysore" (w.e.f. 1-11-1973), which was inserted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 8(1) (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
9. The word "Punjab," omitted by the Punjab Legislative Council (Abolition) Act, 1969 (46 of 1969), s. 4 (w.e.f. 7-1-1970).

(Part VI.—The States)

¹[²[Tamil Nadu, Telangana]] ³[and Uttar Pradesh], two Houses;

(b) in other States, one House.

(2) Where there are two Houses of the Legislature of a State, one shall be known as the Legislative Council and the other as the Legislative Assembly, and where there is only one House, it shall be known as the Legislative Assembly.

169. Abolition or creation of Legislative Councils in States.—(1)

Notwithstanding anything in article 168, Parliament may by law provide for the abolition of the Legislative Council of a State having such a Council or for the creation of such a Council in a State having no such Council, if the Legislative Assembly of the State passes a resolution to that effect by a majority of the total membership of the Assembly and by a majority of not less than two-thirds of the members of the Assembly present and voting.

(2) Any law referred to in clause (1) shall contain such provisions for the amendment of this Constitution as may be necessary to give effect to the provisions of the law and may also contain such supplemental, incidental and consequential provisions as Parliament may deem necessary.

(3) No such law as aforesaid shall be deemed to be an amendment of this Constitution for the purposes of article 368.

⁴[170. Composition of the Legislative Assemblies.—(1)] Subject to the provisions of article 333, the Legislative Assembly of each State shall consist of not more than five hundred, and not less than sixty, members chosen by direct election from territorial constituencies in the State.

(2) For the purposes of clause (1), each State shall be divided into territorial constituencies in such manner that the ratio between the population of each constituency and the number of seats allotted to it shall, so far as practicable, be the same throughout the State.

2. The words "Tamil Nadu" ins. by the Tamil Nadu Legislative Council Act, 2010 (16 of 2010), s. 3 (date to be notified).
2. Subs. by the Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2014 (6 of 2014), s. 96, for "Tamil Nadu" (w.e.f. 1-6-2014).
3. Subs. by the West Bengal Legislative Council (Abolition) Act, 1969 (20 of 1969), s. 4 for "Uttar Pradesh and West Bengal" (w.e.f. 1-8-1969).
4. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 9, for art. 170 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

¹[*Explanation.*—In this clause, the expression “population” means the population as ascertained at the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published:

Provided that the reference in this *Explanation* to the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published shall, until the relevant figures for the first census taken after the year ²[2026] have been published, be construed as a reference to the ³[2001] census.]

(3) Upon the completion of each census, the total number of seats in the Legislative Assembly of each State and the division of each State into territorial constituencies shall be readjusted by such authority and in such manner as Parliament may by law determine:

Provided that such readjustment shall not affect representation in the Legislative Assembly until the dissolution of the then existing Assembly:

⁴[Provided further that such readjustment shall take effect from such date as the President may, by order, specify and until such readjustment takes effect, any election to the Legislative Assembly may be held on the basis of the territorial constituencies existing before such readjustment:

Provided also that until the relevant figures for the first census taken after the year ²[2026] have been published, it shall not be necessary to ⁵[readjust—

- (i) the total number of seats in the Legislative Assembly of each State as readjusted on the basis of the 1971 census; and
 - (ii) the division of such State into territorial constituencies as may be readjusted on the basis of the ³[2001] census,
- under this clause.]

-
- 1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 29, for the *Explanation* (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 - 2. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-fourth Amendment) Act, 2001, s. 5, for "2000" (w.e.f. 21-2-2002).
 - 3. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-seventh Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 4, for "1991" (w.e.f. 22-6-2003). The figures "1991" were substituted for the original figures "1971" by the Constitution (Eighty-fourth Amendment) Act, 2001, s. 5 (w.e.f. 21-2-2002).
 - 4. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 29 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 - 5. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-fourth Amendment) Act, 2001, s. 5, for certain words (w.e.f. 21-2-2002).

171. Composition of the Legislative Councils.—(1) The total number of members in the Legislative Council of a State having such a Council shall not exceed ¹[one-third] of the total number of members in the Legislative Assembly of that State:

Provided that the total number of members in the Legislative Council of a State shall in no case be less than forty.

(2) Until Parliament by law otherwise provides, the composition of the Legislative Council of a State shall be as provided in clause (3).

(3) Of the total number of members of the Legislative Council of a State—

(a) as nearly as may be, one-third shall be elected by electorates consisting of members of municipalities, district boards and such other local authorities in the State as Parliament may by law specify;

(b) as nearly as may be, one-twelfth shall be elected by electorates consisting of persons residing in the State who have been for at least three years graduates of any university in the territory of India or have been for at least three years in possession of qualifications prescribed by or under any law made by Parliament as equivalent to that of a graduate of any such university;

(c) as nearly as may be, one-twelfth shall be elected by electorates consisting of persons who have been for at least three years engaged in teaching in such educational institutions within the State, not lower in standard than that of a secondary school, as may be prescribed by or under any law made by Parliament;

(d) as nearly as may be, one-third shall be elected by the members of the Legislative Assembly of the State from amongst persons who are not members of the Assembly;

(e) the remainder shall be nominated by the Governor in accordance with the provisions of clause (5).

(4) The members to be elected under sub-clauses (a), (b) and (c) of clause (3) shall be chosen in such territorial constituencies as may be prescribed

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 10, for "one-fourth" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part VI.—The States)

by or under any law made by Parliament, and the elections under the said sub-clauses and under sub-clause (*d*) of the said clause shall be held in accordance with the system of proportional representation by means of the single transferable vote.

(5) The members to be nominated by the Governor under sub-clause (*e*) of clause (3) shall consist of persons having special knowledge or practical experience in respect of such matters as the following, namely:—

Literature, science, art, co-operative movement and social service.

172. Duration of State Legislatures.—(1) Every Legislative Assembly of every State, unless sooner dissolved, shall continue for¹[five years] from the date appointed for its first meeting and no longer and the expiration of the said period of¹[five years] shall operate as a dissolution of the Assembly:

Provided that the said period may, while a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation, be extended by Parliament by law for a period not exceeding one year at a time and not extending in any case beyond a period of six months after the Proclamation has ceased to operate.

(2) The Legislative Council of a State shall not be subject to dissolution, but as nearly as possible one-third of the members thereof shall retire as soon as may be on the expiration of every second year in accordance with the provisions made in that behalf by Parliament by law.

173. Qualification for membership of the State Legislature.—A person shall not be qualified to be chosen to fill a seat in the Legislature of a State unless he—

²[*(a)* is a citizen of India, and makes and subscribes before some person authorised in that behalf by the Election Commission an oath or affirmation according to the form set out for the purpose in the Third Schedule;]

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 30, for "five years" (w.e.f. 3-1-1977) and further subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 24, for "six years" (w.e.f. 6-9-1979).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Sixteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 4, for cl. (*a*) (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

(b) is, in the case of a seat in the Legislative Assembly, not less than twenty-five years of age and, in the case of a seat in the Legislative Council, not less than thirty years of age; and

(c) possesses such other qualifications as may be prescribed in that behalf by or under any law made by Parliament.

¹[174. Sessions of the State Legislature, prorogation and dissolution.]—(1) The Governor shall from time to time summon the House or each House of the Legislature of the State to meet at such time and place as he thinks fit, but six months shall not intervene between its last sitting in one session and the date appointed for its first sitting in the next session.

(2) The Governor may from time to time—

- (a) prorogue the House or either House;
- (b) dissolve the Legislative Assembly.]

175. Right of Governor to address and send messages to the House or Houses.—(1) The Governor may address the Legislative Assembly or, in the case of a State having a Legislative Council, either House of the Legislature of the State, or both Houses assembled together, and may for that purpose require the attendance of members.

(2) The Governor may send messages to the House or Houses of the Legislature of the State, whether with respect to a Bill then pending in the Legislature or otherwise, and a House to which any message is so sent shall with all convenient despatch consider any matter required by the message to be taken into consideration.

176. Special address by the Governor.—(1) At the commencement of ²[the first session after each general election to the Legislative Assembly and at the commencement of the first session of each year], the Governor shall address the Legislative Assembly or, in the case of a State having a Legislative Council, both Houses assembled together and inform the Legislature of the causes of its summons.

(2) Provision shall be made by the rules regulating the procedure of the House or either House for the allotment of time for discussion of the matters referred to in such address ^{3***}.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 8, for art.174 (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).

2. Subs. by s. 9, *ibid.*, for "every session" (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).

3. The words "and for the precedence of such discussion over other business of the House" omitted by s. 9, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).

177. Rights of Ministers and Advocate-General as respects the Houses.—Every Minister and the Advocate-General for a State shall have the right to speak in, and otherwise to take part in the proceedings of, the Legislative Assembly of the State or, in the case of a State having a Legislative Council, both Houses, and to speak in, and otherwise to take part in the proceedings of, any committee of the Legislature of which he may be named a member, but shall not, by virtue of this article, be entitled to vote.

Officers of the State Legislature

178. The Speaker and Deputy Speaker of the Legislative Assembly.—Every Legislative Assembly of a State shall, as soon as may be, choose two members of the Assembly to be respectively Speaker and Deputy Speaker thereof and, so often as the office of Speaker or Deputy Speaker becomes vacant, the Assembly shall choose another member to be Speaker or Deputy Speaker, as the case may be.

179. Vacation and resignation of, and removal from, the offices of Speaker and Deputy Speaker.—A member holding office as Speaker or Deputy Speaker of an Assembly—

(a) shall vacate his office if he ceases to be a member of the Assembly;

(b) may at any time by writing under his hand addressed, if such member is the Speaker, to the Deputy Speaker, and if such member is the Deputy Speaker, to the Speaker, resign his office; and

(c) may be removed from his office by a resolution of the Assembly passed by a majority of all the then members of the Assembly:

Provided that no resolution for the purpose of clause (c) shall be moved unless at least fourteen days' notice has been given of the intention to move the resolution:

Provided further that, whenever the Assembly is dissolved, the Speaker shall not vacate his office until immediately before the first meeting of the Assembly after the dissolution.

180. Power of the Deputy Speaker or other person to perform the duties of the office of, or to act as, Speaker.—(1) While the office of Speaker is vacant, the duties of the office shall be performed by the Deputy Speaker or, if the office of Deputy Speaker is also vacant, by such member of the Assembly as the Governor may appoint for the purpose.

(2) During the absence of the Speaker from any sitting of the Assembly the Deputy Speaker or, if he is also absent, such person as may be determined by the rules of procedure of the Assembly, or, if no such person is present, such other person as may be determined by the Assembly, shall act as Speaker.

181. The Speaker or the Deputy Speaker not to preside while a resolution for his removal from office is under consideration.—(1) At any sitting of the Legislative Assembly, while any resolution for the removal of the Speaker from his office is under consideration, the Speaker, or while any resolution for the removal of the Deputy Speaker from his office is under consideration, the Deputy Speaker, shall not, though he is present, preside, and the provisions of clause (2) of article 180 shall apply in relation to every such sitting as they apply in relation to a sitting from which the Speaker or, as the case may be, the Deputy Speaker, is absent.

(2) The Speaker shall have the right to speak in, and otherwise to take part in the proceedings of, the Legislative Assembly while any resolution for his removal from office is under consideration in the Assembly and shall, notwithstanding anything in article 189, be entitled to vote only in the first instance on such resolution or on any other matter during such proceedings but not in the case of an equality of votes.

182. The Chairman and Deputy Chairman of the Legislative Council.—The Legislative Council of every State having such Council shall, as soon as may be, choose two members of the Council to be respectively Chairman and Deputy Chairman thereof and, so often as the office of Chairman or Deputy Chairman becomes vacant, the Council shall choose another member to be Chairman or Deputy Chairman, as the case may be.

183. Vacation and resignation of, and removal from, the offices of Chairman and Deputy Chairman.—A member holding office as Chairman or Deputy Chairman of a Legislative Council—

- (a) shall vacate his office if he ceases to be a member of the Council;
- (b) may at any time by writing under his hand addressed, if such member is the Chairman, to the Deputy Chairman, and if such member is the Deputy Chairman, to the Chairman, resign his office; and
- (c) may be removed from his office by a resolution of the Council passed by a majority of all the then members of the Council:

Provided that no resolution for the purpose of clause (c) shall be moved unless at least fourteen days' notice has been given of the intention to move the resolution.

184. Power of the Deputy Chairman or other person to perform the duties of the office of, or to act as, Chairman.—(1) While the office of Chairman is vacant, the duties of the office shall be performed by the Deputy Chairman or, if the office of Deputy Chairman is also vacant, by such member of the Council as the Governor may appoint for the purpose.

(2) During the absence of the Chairman from any sitting of the Council the Deputy Chairman or, if he is also absent, such person as may be determined by the rules of procedure of the Council, or, if no such person is present, such other person as may be determined by the Council, shall act as Chairman.

185. The Chairman or the Deputy Chairman not to preside while a resolution for his removal from office is under consideration.—(1) At any sitting of the Legislative Council, while any resolution for the removal of the Chairman from his office is under consideration, the Chairman, or while any resolution for the removal of the Deputy Chairman from his office is under consideration, the Deputy Chairman, shall not, though he is present, preside, and the provisions of clause (2) of article 184 shall apply in relation to every such sitting as they apply in relation to a sitting from which the Chairman or, as the case may be, the Deputy Chairman is absent.

(2) The Chairman shall have the right to speak in, and otherwise to take part in the proceedings of, the Legislative Council while any resolution for his removal from office is under consideration in the Council and shall, notwithstanding anything in article 189, be entitled to vote only in the first instance on such resolution or on any other matter during such proceedings but not in the case of an equality of votes.

186. Salaries and allowances of the Speaker and Deputy Speaker and the Chairman and Deputy Chairman.—There shall be paid to the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the Legislative Assembly, and to the Chairman and the Deputy Chairman of the Legislative Council, such salaries and allowances as may be respectively fixed by the Legislature of the State by law and, until provision in that behalf is so made, such salaries and allowances as are specified in the Second Schedule.

187. Secretariat of State Legislature.—(1) The House or each House of the Legislature of a State shall have a separate secretarial staff:

Provided that nothing in this clause shall, in the case of the Legislature of a State having a Legislative Council, be construed as preventing the creation of posts common to both Houses of such Legislature.

(2) The Legislature of a State may by law regulate the recruitment, and the conditions of service of persons appointed, to the secretarial staff of the House or Houses of the Legislature of the State.

(3) Until provision is made by the Legislature of the State under clause (2), the Governor may, after consultation with the Speaker of the Legislative Assembly or the Chairman of the Legislative Council, as the case may be, make rules regulating the recruitment, and the conditions of service of persons appointed, to the secretarial staff of the Assembly or the Council, and any rules so made shall have effect subject to the provisions of any law made under the said clause.

Conduct of Business

188. Oath or affirmation by members.—Every member of the Legislative Assembly or the Legislative Council of a State shall, before taking his seat, make and subscribe before the Governor, or some person appointed in that behalf by him, an oath or affirmation according to the form set out for the purpose in the Third Schedule.

189. Voting in Houses, power of Houses to act notwithstanding vacancies and quorum.—(1) Save as otherwise provided in this Constitution, all questions at any sitting of a House of the Legislature of a State shall be determined by a majority of votes of the members present and voting, other than the Speaker or Chairman, or person acting as such.

The Speaker or Chairman, or person acting as such, shall not vote in the first instance, but shall have and exercise a casting vote in the case of an equality of votes.

(2) A House of the Legislature of a State shall have power to act notwithstanding any vacancy in the membership thereof, and any proceedings in the Legislature of a State shall be valid notwithstanding that it is discovered subsequently that some person who was not entitled so to do sat or voted or otherwise took part in the proceedings.

¹[(3) Until the Legislature of the State by law otherwise provides, the quorum to constitute a meeting of a House of the Legislature of a State shall be ten members or one-tenth of the total number of members of the House, whichever is greater.

(4) If at any time during a meeting of the Legislative Assembly or the Legislative Council of a State there is no quorum, it shall be the duty of the Speaker or Chairman, or person acting as such, either to adjourn the House or to suspend the meeting until there is a quorum.]

1. Omitted by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 31 (date not notified). This amendment was omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 45 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

Disqualifications of Members

190. Vacation of seats.—(1) No person shall be a member of both Houses of the Legislature of a State and provision shall be made by the Legislature of the State by law for the vacation by a person who is chosen a member of both Houses of his seat in one house or the other.

(2) No person shall be a member of the Legislatures of two or more States specified in the First Schedule and if a person is chosen a member of the Legislatures of two or more such States, then, at the expiration of such period as may be specified in rules¹ made by the President, that person's seat in the Legislatures of all such States shall become vacant, unless he has previously resigned his seat in the Legislatures of all but one of the States.

(3) If a member of a House of the Legislature of a State—

(a) becomes subject to any of the disqualifications mentioned in²[clause (1) or clause (2) of article 191]; or

³[(b) resigns his seat by writing under his hand addressed to the speaker or the Chairman, as the case may be, and his resignation is accepted by the Speaker or the Chairman, as the case may be,]

his seat shall thereupon become vacant:

⁴[Provided that in the case of any resignation referred to in sub-clause (b), if from information received or otherwise and after making such inquiry as he thinks fit, the Speaker or the Chairman, as the case may be, is satisfied that such resignation is not voluntary or genuine, he shall not accept such resignation.]

(4) If for a period of sixty days a member of a House of the Legislature of a State is without permission of the House absent from all meetings thereof, the House may declare his seat vacant:

Provided that in computing the said period of sixty days no account shall be taken of any period during which the House is prorogued or is adjourned for more than four consecutive days.

1. See the Prohibition of Simultaneous Membership Rules, 1950 published by the Ministry of Law Notification number F. 46/50-C, dated the 26th January, 1950, Gazette of India, Extraordinary, p. 678.

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifty-second Amendment) Act, 1985, s. 4, for "clause (1) of article 191" (w.e.f. 1-3-1985).

3 Subs. by the Constitution (Thirty-third Amendment) Act, 1974, s. 3 (w.e.f. 19-5-1974).

4. Ins. by s. 3, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 19-5-1974).

191. Disqualifications for membership.—(1) A person shall be disqualified for being chosen as, and for being, a member of the Legislative Assembly or Legislative Council of a State—

¹[(a) if he holds any office of profit under the Government of India or the Government of any State specified in the First Schedule, other than an office declared by the Legislature of the State by law not to disqualify its holder;]

(b) if he is of unsound mind and stands so declared by a competent court;

(c) if he is an undischarged insolvent;

(d) if he is not a citizen of India, or has voluntarily acquired the citizenship of a foreign State, or is under any acknowledgment of allegiance or adherence to a foreign State;

(e) if he is so disqualified by or under any law made by Parliament.

²[Explanation.—For the purposes of this clause], a person shall not be deemed to hold an office of profit under the Government of India or the Government of any State specified in the First Schedule by reason only that he is a Minister either for the Union or for such State.

³[(2) A person shall be disqualified for being a member of the Legislative Assembly or Legislative Council of a State if he is so disqualified under the Tenth Schedule.]

⁴[**192. Decision on questions as to disqualifications of members.**—(1) If any question arises as to whether a member of a House of the Legislature of a State has become subject to any of the disqualifications mentioned in clause (1) of article 191, the question shall be referred for the decision of the Governor and his decision shall be final.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 32 to read as "(a) if he holds any such office of profit under the Government of India or the Government of any State specified in the First Schedule as is declared by Parliament by law to disqualify its holder" (date not notified). This amendment was omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 45 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
2. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifty-second Amendment) Act, 1985, s. 5, for "(2) For the purposes of this article" (w.e.f. 1-3-1985).
3. Ins. by s. 5, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-3-1985).
4. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 33, for art. 192 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977) and further subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 25, for art. 192 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

(2) Before giving any decision on any such question, the Governor shall obtain the opinion of the Election Commission and shall act according to such opinion.]

193. Penalty for sitting and voting before making oath or affirmation under article 188 or when not qualified or when disqualified.—If a person sits or votes as a member of the Legislative Assembly or the Legislative Council of a State before he has complied with the requirements of article 188, or when he knows that he is not qualified or that he is disqualified for membership thereof, or that he is prohibited from so doing by the provisions of any law made by Parliament or the Legislature of the State, he shall be liable in respect of each day on which he so sits or votes to a penalty of five hundred rupees to be recovered as a debt due to the State.

*Powers, Privileges and Immunities of State Legislatures
and their Members*

194. Powers, privileges, etc., of the Houses of Legislatures and of the members and committees thereof.—(1) Subject to the provisions of this Constitution and to the rules and standing orders regulating the procedure of the Legislature, there shall be freedom of speech in the Legislature of every State.

(2) No member of the Legislature of a State shall be liable to any proceedings in any court in respect of anything said or any vote given by him in the Legislature or any committee thereof, and no person shall be so liable in respect of the publication by or under the authority of a House of such a Legislature of any report, paper, votes or proceedings.

¹[(3) In other respects, the powers, privileges and immunities of a House of the Legislature of a State, and of the members and the committees of a House of such Legislature, shall be such as may from time to time be defined

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 34 to read as follows :

"(3) In other respects, the powers, privileges and immunities of a House of the Legislature of a State, and of the members and the committees of a House of such Legislature, shall be those of that House, and of its members and Committees, at the commencement of section 34 of the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, and as may be evolved by such House of the House of the People, and of its members and committees where such House is the Legislative Assembly and in accordance with those of the Council of States, and of its members and committees where such House is the Legislative Council." (date not notified). This amendment was omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 45 (w.e.f. 19-6-1979)."

by the Legislature by law, and, until so defined,¹ [shall be those of that House and of its members and committees immediately before the coming into force of section 26 of the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978].

(4) The provisions of clauses (1), (2) and (3) shall apply in relation to persons who by virtue of this Constitution have the right to speak in, and otherwise to take part in the proceedings of, a House of the Legislature of a State or any committee thereof as they apply in relation to members of that Legislature.

195. Salaries and allowances of members.—Members of the Legislative Assembly and the Legislative Council of a State shall be entitled to receive such salaries and allowances as may from time to time be determined, by the Legislature of the State by law and, until provision in that respect is so made, salaries and allowances at such rates and upon such conditions as were immediately before the commencement of this Constitution applicable in the case of members of the Legislative Assembly of the corresponding Province.

Legislative Procedure

196. Provisions as to introduction and passing of Bills.—(1) Subject to the provisions of articles 198 and 207 with respect to Money Bills and other financial Bills, a Bill may originate in either House of the Legislature of a State which has a Legislative Council.

(2) Subject to the provisions of articles 197 and 198, a Bill shall not be deemed to have been passed by the Houses of the Legislature of a State having a Legislative Council unless it has been agreed to by both Houses, either without amendment or with such amendments only as are agreed to by both Houses.

(3) A Bill pending in the Legislature of a State shall not lapse by reason of the prorogation of the House or Houses thereof.

(4) A Bill pending in the Legislative Council of a State which has not been passed by the Legislative Assembly shall not lapse on a dissolution of the Assembly.

(5) A Bill which is pending in the Legislative Assembly of a State, or which having been passed by the Legislative Assembly is pending in the Legislative Council, shall lapse on a dissolution of the Assembly.

197. Restriction on powers of Legislative Council as to Bills other than Money Bills.—(1) If after a Bill has been passed by the Legislative Assembly of a State having a Legislative Council and transmitted to the Legislative Council—

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 26, for certain words (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part VI.—The States)

(a) the Bill is rejected by the Council; or

(b) more than three months elapse from the date on which the Bill is laid before the Council without the Bill being passed by it; or

(c) the Bill is passed by the Council with amendments to which the Legislative Assembly does not agree;

the Legislative Assembly may, subject to the rules regulating its procedure, pass the Bill again in the same or in any subsequent session with or without such amendments, if any, as have been made, suggested or agreed to by the Legislative Council and then transmit the Bill as so passed to the Legislative Council.

(2) If after a Bill has been so passed for the second time by the Legislative Assembly and transmitted to the Legislative Council—

(a) the Bill is rejected by the Council; or

(b) more than one month elapses from the date on which the Bill is laid before the Council without the Bill being passed by it; or

(c) the Bill is passed by the Council with amendments to which the Legislative Assembly does not agree;

the Bill shall be deemed to have been passed by the Houses of the Legislature of the State in the form in which it was passed by the Legislative Assembly for the second time with such amendments, if any, as have been made or suggested by the Legislative Council and agreed to by the Legislative Assembly.

(3) Nothing in this article shall apply to a Money Bill.

198. Special procedure in respect of Money Bills.—(1) A Money Bill shall not be introduced in a Legislative Council.

(2) After a Money Bill has been passed by the Legislative Assembly of a State having a Legislative Council, it shall be transmitted to the Legislative Council for its recommendations, and the Legislative Council shall within a period of fourteen days from the date of its receipt of the Bill return the Bill to the Legislative Assembly with its recommendations, and the Legislative Assembly may thereupon either accept or reject all or any of the recommendations of the Legislative Council.

(3) If the Legislative Assembly accepts any of the recommendations of the Legislative Council, the Money Bill shall be deemed to have been passed by both Houses with the amendments recommended by the Legislative Council and accepted by the Legislative Assembly.

(4) If the Legislative Assembly does not accept any of the

recommendations of the Legislative Council, the Money Bill shall be deemed to have been passed by both Houses in the form in which it was passed by the Legislative Assembly without any of the amendments recommended by the Legislative Council.

(5) If a Money Bill passed by the Legislative Assembly and transmitted to the Legislative Council for its recommendations is not returned to the Legislative Assembly within the said period of fourteen days, it shall be deemed to have been passed by both Houses at the expiration of the said period in the form in which it was passed by the Legislative Assembly.

199. Definition of “Money Bills”.—(1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a Bill shall be deemed to be a Money Bill if it contains only provisions dealing with all or any of the following matters, namely:—

(a) the imposition, abolition, remission, alteration or regulation of any tax;

(b) the regulation of the borrowing of money or the giving of any guarantee by the State, or the amendment of the law with respect to any financial obligations undertaken or to be undertaken by the State;

(c) the custody of the Consolidated Fund or the Contingency Fund of the State, the payment of moneys into or the withdrawal of moneys from any such Fund;

(d) the appropriation of moneys out of the Consolidated Fund of the State;

(e) the declaring of any expenditure to be expenditure charged on the Consolidated Fund of the State, or the increasing of the amount of any such expenditure;

(f) the receipt of money on account of the Consolidated Fund of the State or the public account of the State or the custody or issue of such money; or

(g) any matter incidental to any of the matters specified in sub-clauses (a) to (f).

(2) A Bill shall not be deemed to be a Money Bill by reason only that it provides for the imposition of fines or other pecuniary penalties, or for the demand or payment of fees for licences or fees for services rendered, or by reason that it provides for the imposition, abolition, remission, alteration or regulation of any tax by any local authority or body for local purposes.

(3) If any question arises whether a Bill introduced in the Legislature of

a State which has a Legislative Council is a Money Bill or not, the decision of the Speaker of the Legislative Assembly of such State thereon shall be final.

(4) There shall be endorsed on every Money Bill when it is transmitted to the Legislative Council under article 198, and when it is presented to the Governor for assent under article 200, the certificate of the Speaker of the Legislative Assembly signed by him that it is a Money Bill.

200. Assent to Bills.—When a Bill has been passed by the Legislative Assembly of a State or, in the case of a State having a Legislative Council, has been passed by both Houses of the Legislature of the State, it shall be presented to the Governor and the Governor shall declare either that he assents to the Bill or that he withholds assent therefrom or that he reserves the Bill for the consideration of the President:

Provided that the Governor may, as soon as possible after the presentation to him of the Bill for assent, return the Bill if it is not a Money Bill together with a message requesting that the House or Houses will reconsider the Bill or any specified provisions thereof and, in particular, will consider the desirability of introducing any such amendments as he may recommend in his message and, when a Bill is so returned, the House or Houses shall reconsider the Bill accordingly, and if the Bill is passed again by the House or Houses with or without amendment and presented to the Governor for assent, the Governor shall not withhold assent therefrom:

Provided further that the Governor shall not assent to, but shall reserve for the consideration of the President, any Bill which in the opinion of the Governor would, if it became law, so derogate from the powers of the High Court as to endanger the position which that Court is by this Constitution designed to fill.

201. Bills reserved for consideration.—When a Bill is reserved by a Governor for the consideration of the President, the President shall declare either that he assents to the Bill or that he withholds assent therefrom:

Provided that, where the Bill is not a Money Bill, the President may direct the Governor to return the Bill to the House or, as the case may be, the Houses of the Legislature of the State together with such a message as is mentioned in the first proviso to article 200 and, when a Bill is so returned, the House or Houses shall reconsider it accordingly within a period of six months from the date of receipt of such message and, if it is again passed by the House

or Houses with or without amendment, it shall be presented again to the President for his consideration.

Procedure in Financial Matters

202. Annual financial statement.—(1) The Governor shall in respect of every financial year cause to be laid before the House or Houses of the Legislature of the State a statement of the estimated receipts and expenditure of the State for that year, in this Part referred to as the “annual financial statement”.

(2) The estimates of expenditure embodied in the annual financial statement shall show separately—

(a) the sums required to meet expenditure described by this Constitution as expenditure charged upon the Consolidated Fund of the State; and

(b) the sums required to meet other expenditure proposed to be made from the Consolidated Fund of the State,

and shall distinguish expenditure on revenue account from other expenditure.

(3) The following expenditure shall be expenditure charged on the Consolidated Fund of each State—

(a) the emoluments and allowances of the Governor and other expenditure relating to his office;

(b) the salaries and allowances of the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the Legislative Assembly and, in the case of a State having a Legislative Council, also of the Chairman and the Deputy Chairman of the Legislative Council;

(c) debt charges for which the State is liable including interest, sinking fund charges and redemption charges, and other expenditure relating to the raising of loans and the service and redemption of debt;

(d) expenditure in respect of the salaries and allowances of Judges of any High Court;

(e) any sums required to satisfy any judgment, decree or award of any court or arbitral tribunal;

(f) any other expenditure declared by this Constitution, or by the Legislature of the State by law, to be so charged.

203. Procedure in Legislature with respect to estimates.—(1) So much of the estimates as relates to expenditure charged upon the Consolidated Fund of a State shall not be submitted to the vote of the Legislative Assembly,

but nothing in this clause shall be construed as preventing the discussion in the Legislature of any of those estimates.

(2) So much of the said estimates as relates to other expenditure shall be submitted in the form of demands for grants to the Legislative Assembly, and the Legislative Assembly shall have power to assent, or to refuse to assent, to any demand, or to assent to any demand subject to a reduction of the amount specified therein.

(3) No demand for a grant shall be made except on the recommendation of the Governor.

204. Appropriation Bills.—(1) As soon as may be after the grants under article 203 have been made by the Assembly, there shall be introduced a Bill to provide for the appropriation out of the Consolidated Fund of the State of all moneys required to meet—

(a) the grants so made by the Assembly; and

(b) the expenditure charged on the Consolidated Fund of the State but not exceeding in any case the amount shown in the statement previously laid before the House or Houses.

(2) No amendment shall be proposed to any such Bill in the House or either House of the Legislature of the State which will have the effect of varying the amount or altering the destination of any grant so made or of varying the amount of any expenditure charged on the Consolidated Fund of the State, and the decision of the person presiding as to whether an amendment is inadmissible under this clause shall be final.

(3) Subject to the provisions of articles 205 and 206, no money shall be withdrawn from the Consolidated Fund of the State except under appropriation made by law passed in accordance with the provisions of this article.

205. Supplementary, additional or excess grants.—(1) The Governor shall—

(a) if the amount authorised by any law made in accordance with the provisions of article 204 to be expended for a particular service for the current financial year is found to be insufficient for the purposes of that year or when a need has arisen during the current financial year for supplementary or additional expenditure upon some new service not contemplated in the annual financial statement for that year; or

(b) if any money has been spent on any service during a financial year in excess of the amount granted for that service and for that year, cause to be laid before the House or the Houses of the Legislature of the State another statement showing the estimated amount of that expenditure or cause to be presented to the Legislative Assembly of the State a demand for such excess, as the case may be.

(2) The provisions of articles 202, 203 and 204 shall have effect in relation to any such statement and expenditure or demand and also to any law to be made authorising the appropriation of moneys out of the Consolidated Fund of the State to meet such expenditure or the grant in respect of such demand as they have effect in relation to the annual financial statement and the expenditure mentioned therein or to a demand for a grant and the law to be made for the authorisation of appropriation of moneys out of the Consolidated Fund of the State to meet such expenditure or grant.

206. Votes on account, votes of credit and exceptional grants.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in the foregoing provisions of this Chapter, the Legislative Assembly of a State shall have power—

(a) to make any grant in advance in respect of the estimated expenditure for a part of any financial year pending the completion of the procedure prescribed in article 203 for the voting of such grant and the passing of the law in accordance with the provisions of article 204 in relation to that expenditure;

(b) to make a grant for meeting an unexpected demand upon the resources of the State when on account of the magnitude or the indefinite character of the service the demand cannot be stated with the details ordinarily given in an annual financial statement;

(c) to make an exceptional grant which forms no part of the current service of any financial year,

and the Legislature of the State shall have power to authorise by law the withdrawal of moneys from the Consolidated Fund of the State for the purposes for which the said grants are made.

(2) The provisions of articles 203 and 204 shall have effect in relation to the making of any grant under clause (1) and to any law to be made under that clause as they have effect in relation to the making of a grant with regard to any expenditure mentioned in the annual financial statement and the law to be made

for the authorisation of appropriation of moneys out of the Consolidated Fund of the State to meet such expenditure.

207. Special provisions as to financial Bills.—(1) A Bill or amendment making provision for any of the matters specified in sub-clauses (a) to (f) of clause (1) of article 199 shall not be introduced or moved except on the recommendation of the Governor, and a Bill making such provision shall not be introduced in a Legislative Council:

Provided that no recommendation shall be required under this clause for the moving of an amendment making provision for the reduction or abolition of any tax.

(2) A Bill or amendment shall not be deemed to make provision for any of the matters aforesaid by reason only that it provides for the imposition of fines or other pecuniary penalties, or for the demand or payment of fees for licences or fees for services rendered, or by reason that it provides for the imposition, abolition, remission, alteration or regulation of any tax by any local authority or body for local purposes.

(3) A Bill which, if enacted and brought into operation, would involve expenditure from the Consolidated Fund of a State shall not be passed by a House of the Legislature of the State unless the Governor has recommended to that House the consideration of the Bill.

Procedure Generally

208. Rules of procedure.—(1) A House of the Legislature of a State may make rules for regulating, subject to the provisions of this Constitution, its procedure* and the conduct of its business.

(2) Until rules are made under clause (1), the rules of procedure and standing orders in force immediately before the commencement of this Constitution with respect to the Legislature for the corresponding Province shall have effect in relation to the Legislature of the State subject to such modifications and adaptations as may be made therein by the Speaker of the Legislative Assembly, or the Chairman of the Legislative Council, as the case may be.

(3) In a State having a Legislative Council the Governor, after consultation with the Speaker of the Legislative Assembly and the Chairman of

* The brackets and words "(including the quorum to constitute a meeting of the House)" ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 35 (date not notified). This amendment was omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 45 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

the Legislative Council, may make rules as to the procedure with respect to communications between the two Houses.

209. Regulation by law of procedure in the Legislature of the State in relation to financial business.—The Legislature of a State may, for the purpose of the timely completion of financial business, regulate by law the procedure of, and the conduct of business in, the House or Houses of the Legislature of the State in relation to any financial matter or to any Bill for the appropriation of moneys out of the Consolidated Fund of the State, and, if and so far as any provision of any law so made is inconsistent with any rule made by the House or either House of the Legislature of the State under clause (1) of article 208 or with any rule or standing order having effect in relation to the Legislature of the State under clause (2) of that article, such provision shall prevail.

210. Language to be used in the Legislature.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in Part XVII, but subject to the provisions of article 348, business in the Legislature of a State shall be transacted in the official language or languages of the State or in Hindi or in English:

Provided that the Speaker of the Legislative Assembly or Chairman of the Legislative Council, or person acting as such, as the case may be, may permit any member who cannot adequately express himself in any of the languages aforesaid to address the House in his mother-tongue.

(2) Unless the Legislature of the State by law otherwise provides, this article shall, after the expiration of a period of fifteen years from the commencement of this Constitution, have effect as if the words "or in English" were omitted therefrom:

¹[Provided that in relation to the ²[Legislatures of the States of Himachal Pradesh, Manipur, Meghalaya and Tripura] this clause shall have effect as if for the words "fifteen years" occurring therein, the words "twenty-five years" were substituted:]

³[Provided further that in relation to the ⁴[Legislatures of the States of ⁵[Arunachal Pradesh, Goa and Mizoram]], this clause shall have effect as if for

-
1. Ins. by the State of Himachal Pradesh Act, 1970 (53 of 1970), s. 46 (w.e.f. 25-1-1971).
 2. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971) s. 71, for "Legislature of the State of Himachal Pradesh" (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
 3. Ins. by the State of Mizoram Act, 1986 (34 of 1986), s. 39 (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
 4. Subs. by the State of Arunachal Pradesh Act, 1986 (69 of 1986), s. 42, for "Legislature of the State of Mizoram" (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
 5. Subs. by the Goa, Daman and Diu Reorganisation Act, 1987 (18 of 1987), s. 63, for "Arunachal Pradesh and Mizoram" (w.e.f. 30-5-1987).

the words "fifteen years" occurring therein, the words "forty years" were substituted.]

211. Restriction on discussion in the Legislature.—No discussion shall take place in the Legislature of a State with respect to the conduct of any Judge of the Supreme Court or of a High Court in the discharge of his duties.

212. Courts not to inquire into proceedings of the Legislature.—(1) The validity of any proceedings in the Legislature of a State shall not be called in question on the ground of any alleged irregularity of procedure.

(2) No officer or member of the Legislature of a State in whom powers are vested by or under this Constitution for regulating procedure or the conduct of business, or for maintaining order, in the Legislature shall be subject to the jurisdiction of any court in respect of the exercise by him of those powers.

CHAPTER IV.—LEGISLATIVE POWER OF THE GOVERNOR

213. Power of Governor to promulgate Ordinances during recess of Legislature.—(1) If at any time, except when the Legislative Assembly of a State is in session, or where there is a Legislative Council in a State, except when both Houses of the Legislature are in session, the Governor is satisfied that circumstances exist which render it necessary for him to take immediate action, he may promulgate such Ordinances as the circumstances appear to him to require:

Provided that the Governor shall not, without instructions from the President, promulgate any such Ordinance if—

(a) a Bill containing the same provisions would under this Constitution have required the previous sanction of the President for the introduction thereof into the Legislature; or

(b) he would have deemed it necessary to reserve a Bill containing the same provisions for the consideration of the President; or

(c) an Act of the Legislature of the State containing the same provisions would under this Constitution have been invalid unless, having been reserved for the consideration of the President, it had received the assent of the President.

(2) An Ordinance promulgated under this article shall have the same force and effect as an Act of the Legislature of the State assented to by the Governor, but every such Ordinance—

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part VI.—The States)

(a) shall be laid before the Legislative Assembly of the State, or where there is a Legislative Council in the State, before both the Houses, and shall cease to operate at the expiration of six weeks from the reassembly of the Legislature, or if before the expiration of that period a resolution disapproving it is passed by the Legislative Assembly and agreed to by the Legislative Council, if any, upon the passing of the resolution or, as the case may be, on the resolution being agreed to by the Council; and

(b) may be withdrawn at any time by the Governor.

Explanation.—Where the Houses of the Legislature of a State having a Legislative Council are summoned to reassemble on different dates, the period of six weeks shall be reckoned from the later of those dates for the purposes of this clause.

(3) If and so far as an Ordinance under this article makes any provision which would not be valid if enacted in an Act of the Legislature of the State assented to by the Governor, it shall be void:

Provided that, for the purposes of the provisions of this Constitution relating to the effect of an Act of the Legislature of a State which is repugnant to an Act of Parliament or an existing law with respect to a matter enumerated in the Concurrent List, an Ordinance promulgated under this article in pursuance of instructions from the President shall be deemed to be an Act of the Legislature of the State which has been reserved for the consideration of the President and assented to by him.

¹(4)*

*

*

*

1. Cl. (4) was ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 3 (with retrospective effect) and omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 27 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part VI.—The States)

CHAPTER V.—THE HIGH COURTS IN THE STATES

214. High Courts for States.—^{1***} There shall be a High Court for each State.

² (2)*	*	*	*
² (3)*	*	*	*

215. High Courts to be courts of record.—Every High Court shall be a court of record and shall have all the powers of such a court including the power to punish for contempt of itself.

216. Constitution of High Courts.—Every High Court shall consist of a Chief Justice and such other Judges as the President may from time to time deem it necessary to appoint.

³ *	⁴ *	⁵ *	⁶ *
----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------

217. Appointment and conditions of the office of a Judge of a High Court.—(1) Every Judge of a High Court shall be appointed by the President by warrant under his hand and seal ⁴[on the recommendation of the National Judicial Appointments Commission referred to in article 124A], and the Governor of the State, and, in the case of appointment of a Judge other than the Chief Justice, the Chief Justice of the High Court, ⁵[shall hold office, in the case of an additional or acting Judge, as provided in article 224, and in any other case, until he attains the age of ⁶[sixty-two years:]]

Provided that—

- (a) a Judge may, by writing under his hand addressed to the President, resign his office;
- (b) a Judge may be removed from his office by the President in the

-
- 1. The bracket and figure "(1)" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 - 2. Cls. (2) and (3) omitted by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 - 3. Proviso omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 11 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 - 4. Subs. by the Constitution (Ninety-ninth Amendment) Act, 2014, s. 6, for "after consultation with the Chief Justice of India, the Governor of the State, and, in the case of appointment of a Judge other than the Chief Justice, the Chief Justice of the High Court" (w.e.f. 13-4-2015). This amendment has been struck down by the Supreme Court in the case of Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association and Another Vs. Union of India in its judgment dated 16-10-2015, AIR 2016 SC 117.
 - 5. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 12, for "shall hold office until he attains the age of sixty years" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 - 6. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 4(a), for "sixty years" (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

(Part VI.—The States)

manner provided in clause (4) of article 124 for the removal of a Judge of the Supreme Court;

(c) the office of a Judge shall be vacated by his being appointed by the President to be a Judge of the Supreme Court or by his being transferred by the President to any other High Court within the territory of India.

(2) A person shall not be qualified for appointment as a Judge of a High Court unless he is a citizen of India and—

(a) has for at least ten years held a judicial office in the territory of India; or

(b) has for at least ten years been an advocate of a High Court^{1***} or of two or more such Courts in succession.^{2***}

^{2(c)*} * * * *

Explanation.—For the purposes of this clause—

³[(a) in computing the period during which a person has held judicial office in the territory of India, there shall be included any period, after he has held any judicial office, during which the person has been an advocate of a High Court or has held the office of a member of a tribunal or any post, under the Union or a State, requiring special knowledge of law;]

⁴[(aa) in computing the period during which a person has been an advocate of a High Court, there shall be included any period during which the person⁵[has held judicial office or the office of a member of a tribunal or any post, under the Union or a State, requiring special knowledge of law] after he became an advocate;

(b) in computing the period during which a person has held judicial office in the territory of India or been an advocate of a High Court, there shall be included any period before the commencement of this

-
1. The words "in any State specified in the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 2. The word "or" and sub-clause (c) were ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 36 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977) and omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 28 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 28 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 4. Cl. (a) re-lettered as cl. (aa) by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 28 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 5. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 36, for "has held judicial office" (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

Constitution during which he has held judicial office in any area which was comprised before the fifteenth day of August, 1947, within India as defined by the Government of India Act, 1935, or has been an advocate of any High Court in any such area, as the case may be.

¹[(3) If any question arises as to the age of a Judge of a High Court, the question shall be decided by the President after consultation with the Chief Justice of India and the decision of the President shall be final.]

218. Application of certain provisions relating to Supreme Court to High Courts.—The provisions of clauses (4) and (5) of article 124 shall apply in relation to a High Court as they apply in relation to the Supreme Court with the substitution of references to the High Court for references to the Supreme Court.

219. Oath or affirmation by Judges of High Courts.—Every person appointed to be a Judge of a High Court ^{2***} shall, before he enters upon his office, make and subscribe before the Governor of the State, or some person appointed in that behalf by him, an oath or affirmation according to the form set out for the purpose in the Third Schedule.

³**[220. Restriction on practice after being a permanent Judge.]**—No person who, after the commencement of this Constitution, has held office as a permanent Judge of a High Court shall plead or act in any court or before any authority in India except the Supreme Court and the other High Courts.

Explanation.—In this article, the expression “High Court” does not include a High Court for a State specified in Part B of the First Schedule as it existed before the commencement⁴ of the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956.]

221. Salaries, etc., of Judges.—⁵[(1) There shall be paid to the Judges of each High Court such salaries as may be determined by Parliament by law

-
1. Ins. by the Constitution (Fifteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 4(b), (with retrospective effect).
 2. The words "in a State" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 3. Subs. by s. 13, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 4. 1st November, 1956.
 5. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1986, s. 3, for clause (1) (w.e.f. 1-4-1986).

and, until provision in that behalf is so made, such salaries as are specified in the Second Schedule.]

(2) Every Judge shall be entitled to such allowances and to such rights in respect of leave of absence and pension as may from time to time be determined by or under law made by Parliament and, until so determined, to such allowances and rights as are specified in the Second Schedule:

Provided that neither the allowances of a Judge nor his rights in respect to leave of absence or pension shall be varied to his disadvantage after his appointment.

222. Transfer of a Judge from one High Court to another.—(1) The President may, ¹[on the recommendation of the National Judicial Appointments Commission referred to in article 124A], transfer a Judge from one High Court to any other High Court ^{2***}.

³[(2) When a Judge has been or is so transferred, he shall, during the period he serves, after the commencement of the Constitution (Fifteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, as a Judge of the other High Court, be entitled to receive in addition to his salary such compensatory allowance as may be determined by Parliament by law and, until so determined, such compensatory allowance as the President may by order fix.]

223. Appointment of acting Chief Justice.—When the office of Chief Justice of a High Court is vacant or when any such Chief Justice is, by reason of absence or otherwise, unable to perform the duties of his office, the duties of the office shall be performed by such one of the other Judges of the Court as the President may appoint for the purpose.

4[224. Appointment of additional and acting Judges.]—(1) If by reason of any temporary increase in the business of a High Court or by reason

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Ninety-ninth Amendment) Act, 2014, s. 7, for "after consultation with the Chief Justice of India" (w.e.f. 13-4-2015). This amendment has been struck down by the Supreme Court in the case of *Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association and Another Vs. Union of India* in its judgment dated 16-10-2015, AIR 2016 SC 117.

2. The words "within the territory of India" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 14 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (Fifteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 5 (w.e.f. 5-10-1963). Original cl. (2) was omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 14 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

4. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 15 for art. 224 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

of arrears of work therein, it appears to the President that the number of the Judges of that Court should be for the time being increased, ¹[the President may, in consultation with the National Judicial Appointments Commission, appoint] duly qualified persons to be additional Judges of the Court for such period not exceeding two years as he may specify.

(2) When any Judge of a High Court other than the Chief Justice is by reason of absence or for any other reason unable to perform the duties of his office or is appointed to act temporarily as Chief Justice, ¹[the President may, in consultation with the National Judicial Appointments Commission, appoint] a duly qualified person to act as a Judge of that Court until the permanent Judge has resumed his duties.

(3) No person appointed as an additional or acting Judge of a High Court shall hold office after attaining the age of ²[sixty-two years].]

³**[224A. Appointment of retired Judges at sittings of High Courts.]** Notwithstanding anything in this Chapter, ⁴[the National Judicial Appointments Commission on a reference made to it by the Chief Justice of a High Court for any State, may with the previous consent of the President], request any person who has held the office of a Judge of that Court or of any other High Court to sit and act as a Judge of the High Court for that State, and every such person so requested shall, while so sitting and acting, be entitled to such allowances as the President may by order determine and have all the jurisdiction, powers and privileges of, but shall not otherwise be deemed to be, a Judge of that High Court:

Provided that nothing in this article shall be deemed to require any such person as aforesaid to sit and act as a Judge of that High Court unless he consents so to do.]

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Ninety-ninth Amendment) Act, 2014, s. 8, for "the President may appoint" (w.e.f. 13-4-2015). This amendment has been struck down, by the Supreme Court in the case of *Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association and Another Vs. Union of India* in its judgment, dated 16-10-2015, AIR 2016 SC 117.

2 Subs. by the Constitution (Fifteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 6, for "sixty years" (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

3. Ins. by s. 7, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

4. Subs. by the Constitution (Ninety-ninth Amendment) Act, 2014, s. 9, for "the Chief Justice of a High Court for any State may at any time, with the previous consent of the President" (w.e.f. 13-4-2015). This amendment has been struck down by the Supreme Court in the case of *Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association and Another Vs. Union of India* in its judgment dated 16-10-2015, AIR 2016 SC 117.

225. Jurisdiction of existing High Courts.—Subject to the provisions of this Constitution and to the provisions of any law of the appropriate Legislature made by virtue of powers conferred on that Legislature by this Constitution, the jurisdiction of, and the law administered in, any existing High Court, and the respective powers of the Judges thereof in relation to the administration of justice in the Court, including any power to make rules of Court and to regulate the sittings of the Court and of members thereof sitting alone or in Division Courts, shall be the same as immediately before the commencement of this Constitution:

¹[Provided that any restriction to which the exercise of original jurisdiction by any of the High Courts with respect to any matter concerning the revenue or concerning any act ordered or done in the collection thereof was subject immediately before the commencement of this Constitution shall no longer apply to the exercise of such jurisdiction.]

²[**226. Power of High Courts to issue certain writs.**—(1) Notwithstanding anything in article 32 ^{3***}, every High Court shall have power, throughout the territories in relation to which it exercises jurisdiction, to issue to any person or authority, including in appropriate cases, any Government, within those territories directions, orders or writs, including ⁴[writs in the nature of *habeas corpus*, *mandamus*, prohibition, *quo warranto* and *certiorari*, or any of them, for the enforcement of any of the rights conferred by Part III and for any other purpose.]

(2) The power conferred by clause (1) to issue directions, orders or writs to any Government, authority or person may also be exercised by any High Court exercising jurisdiction in relation to the territories within which the cause of action, wholly or in part, arises for the exercise of such power,

-
1. Omitted by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 37 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977) and subsequently ins. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 29 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 2. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 38 for art. 226 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977).
 3. The words, figures and letters "but subject to the provisions of article 131A and article 226A" omitted by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 7 (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).
 4. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 30, for the portion beginning with "writs in the nature of *habeas corpus*, *mandamus*, *prohibition*, *quo warranto* and *certiorari*, or any of them" and ending with "such illegality has resulted in substantial failure of justice." (w.e.f. 1-8-1979).

notwithstanding that the seat of such Government or authority or the residence of such person is not within those territories.

¹[(3) Where any party against whom an interim order, whether by way of injunction or stay or in any other manner, is made on, or in any proceedings relating to, a petition under clause (1), without—

(a) furnishing to such party copies of such petition and all documents in support of the plea for such interim order; and

(b) giving such party an opportunity of being heard,

makes an application to the High Court for the vacation of such order and furnishes a copy of such application to the party in whose favour such order has been made or the counsel of such party, the High Court shall dispose of the application within a period of two weeks from the date on which it is received or from the date on which the copy of such application is so furnished, whichever is later, or where the High Court is closed on the last day of that period, before the expiry of the next day afterwards on which the High Court is open; and if the application is not so disposed of, the interim order shall, on the expiry of that period, or, as the case may be, the expiry of the said next day, stand vacated.]

²[(4) The power conferred on a High Court by this article shall not be in derogation of the power conferred on the Supreme Court by clause (2) of article 32.]

³[**226A. Constitutional validity of Central laws not to be considered in proceedings under article 226.**]—Omitted by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 8 (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).

227. Power of superintendence over all courts by the High Court.—⁴[(1) Every High Court shall have superintendence over all courts and tribunals throughout the territories in relation to which it exercises jurisdiction.]

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s.30, for cl. (3), (4), (5) and (6) (w.e.f. 1-8-1979).
 2. Cl. (7) renumbered as cl. (4) by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 30 (w.e.f. 1-8-1979).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 39 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977).
 4. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 40, for cl. (1) (w.e.f. 1-2-1977) and further subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 31, for cl. (1) (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

(2) Without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing provision, the High Court may—

(a) call for returns from such courts;

(b) make and issue general rules and prescribe forms for regulating the practice and proceedings of such courts; and

(c) prescribe forms in which books, entries and accounts shall be kept by the officers of any such courts.

(3) The High Court may also settle tables of fees to be allowed to the sheriff and all clerks and officers of such courts and to attorneys, advocates and pleaders practising therein:

Provided that any rules made, forms prescribed or tables settled under clause (2) or clause (3) shall not be inconsistent with the provision of any law for the time being in force, and shall require the previous approval of the Governor.

(4) Nothing in this article shall be deemed to confer on a High Court powers of superintendence over any court or tribunal constituted by or under any law relating to the Armed Forces.

¹(5)* * *

228. Transfer of certain cases to High Court.—If the High Court is satisfied that a case pending in a court subordinate to it involves a substantial question of law as to the interpretation of this Constitution the determination of which is necessary for the disposal of the case,²[it shall withdraw the case and ^{3***} may—]

(a) either dispose of the case itself, or

(b) determine the said question of law and return the case to the court from which the case has been so withdrawn together with a copy of its judgment on such question, and the said court shall on receipt thereof proceed to dispose of the case in conformity with such judgment.

1. Cl. (5) was ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 40 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977) and omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 31 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 41, for "it shall withdraw the case and may—" (w.e.f. 1-2-1977).

3. The words, figures and letter, "subject to the provisions of article 131A," omitted by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 9 (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).

¹[228A. *Special provisions as to disposal of questions relating to constitutional validity of State laws.*]—Omitted by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 10 (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).

229. Officers and servants and the expenses of High Courts.—(1) Appointments of officers and servants of a High Court shall be made by the Chief Justice of the Court or such other Judge or officer of the Court as he may direct:

Provided that the Governor of the State ^{2***} may by rule require that in such cases as may be specified in the rule no person not already attached to the Court shall be appointed to any office connected with the Court save after consultation with the State Public Service Commission.

(2) Subject to the provisions of any law made by the Legislature of the State, the conditions of service of officers and servants of a High Court shall be such as may be prescribed by rules made by the Chief Justice of the Court or by some other Judge or officer of the Court authorised by the Chief Justice to make rules for the purpose:

Provided that the rules made under this clause shall, so far as they relate to salaries, allowances, leave or pensions, require the approval of the Governor of the State ^{2***}.

(3) The administrative expenses of a High Court, including all salaries, allowances and pensions payable to or in respect of the officers and servants of the Court, shall be charged upon the Consolidated Fund of the State, and any fees or other moneys taken by the Court shall form part of that Fund.

³[230. Extension of jurisdiction of High Courts to Union territories.]—(1) Parliament may by law extend the jurisdiction of a High Court to, or exclude the jurisdiction of a High Court from, any Union territory.

(2) Where the High Court of a State exercises jurisdiction in relation to a Union territory,—

(a) nothing in this Constitution shall be construed as empowering the Legislature of the State to increase, restrict or abolish that jurisdiction; and

(b) the reference in article 227 to the Governor shall, in relation to

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 42 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977).

2. The words "in which the High Court has its principal seat" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. Subs. by s. 16, *ibid.*, for arts. 230, 231 and 232 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part VI.—The States)

any rules, forms or tables for subordinate courts in that territory, be construed as a reference to the President.

231. Establishment of a common High Court for two or more States.—(1) Notwithstanding anything contained in the preceding provisions of this Chapter, Parliament may by law establish a common High Court for two or more States or for two or more States and a Union territory.

(2) In relation to any such High Court,—

^{1(a)*} * * *

(b) the reference in article 227 to the Governor shall, in relation to any rules, forms or tables for subordinate courts, be construed as a reference to the Governor of the State in which the subordinate courts are situate; and

(c) the references in articles 219 and 229 to the State shall be construed as a reference to the State in which the High Court has its principal seat:

Provided that if such principal seat is in a Union territory, the references in articles 219 and 229 to the Governor, Public Service Commission, Legislature and Consolidated Fund of the State shall be construed respectively as references to the President, Union Public Service Commission, Parliament and Consolidated Fund of India.]

[**232. Interpretation.**—Articles 230, 231 and 232 subs. by articles 230 and 231 by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 16 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956)].

CHAPTER VI.—SUBORDINATE COURTS

233. Appointment of district judges.—(1) Appointments of persons to

1. Sub-clause (a) was omitted by the Constitution (Ninety-ninth Amendment) Act, 2014, s. 10 (w.e.f. 13-4-2015). This amendment has been struck down by the Supreme Court *vide its order the 16-10-2015 in the Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association and Another Vs. Union of India reported AIR 2016 SC 117*. Before amendment, sub-clause (a) was as under:—

"(a) the reference in article 217 to the Governor of the State shall be construed as reference to the Governors of all the States in relation to which the High Court exercises jurisdiction".

be, and the posting and promotion of, district judges in any State shall be made by the Governor of the State in consultation with the High Court exercising jurisdiction in relation to such State.

(2) A person not already in the service of the Union or of the State shall only be eligible to be appointed a district judge if he has been for not less than seven years an advocate or a pleader and is recommended by the High Court for appointment.

¹[233A. Validation of appointments of, and judgments, etc., delivered by, certain district judges.]—Notwithstanding any judgment, decree or order of any court,—

(a) (i) no appointment of any person already in the judicial service of a State or of any person who has been for not less than seven years an advocate or a pleader, to be a district judge in that State, and

(ii) no posting, promotion or transfer of any such person as a district judge, made at any time before the commencement of the Constitution (Twentieth Amendment) Act, 1966, otherwise than in accordance with the provisions of article 233 or article 235 shall be deemed to be illegal or void or ever to have become illegal or void by reason only of the fact that such appointment, posting, promotion or transfer was not made in accordance with the said provisions;

(b) no jurisdiction exercised, no judgment, decree, sentence or order passed or made, and no other act or proceeding done or taken, before the commencement of the Constitution (Twentieth Amendment) Act, 1966 by, or before, any person appointed, posted, promoted or transferred as a district judge in any State otherwise than in accordance with the provisions of article 233 or article 235 shall be deemed to be illegal or invalid or ever to have become illegal or invalid by reason only of the fact that such appointment, posting, promotion or transfer was not made in accordance with the said provisions.]

234. Recruitment of persons other than district judges to the judicial service.—Appointments of persons other than district judges to the judicial service of a State shall be made by the Governor of the State in accordance with rules made by him in that behalf after consultation with the State Public Service Commission and with the High Court exercising jurisdiction in relation to such State.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Twentieth Amendment) Act, 1966, s. 2 (w.e.f. 22-12-1966).

235. Control over subordinate courts.—The control over district courts and courts subordinate thereto including the posting and promotion of, and the grant of leave to, persons belonging to the judicial service of a State and holding any post inferior to the post of district judge shall be vested in the High Court, but nothing in this article shall be construed as taking away from any such person any right of appeal which he may have under the law regulating the conditions of his service or as authorising the High Court to deal with him otherwise than in accordance with the conditions of his service prescribed under such law.

236. Interpretation.—In this Chapter—

(a) the expression “district judge” includes judge of a city civil court, additional district judge, joint district judge, assistant district judge, chief judge of a small cause court, chief presidency magistrate, additional chief presidency magistrate, sessions judge, additional sessions judge and assistant sessions Judge;

(b) the expression “judicial service” means a service consisting exclusively of persons intended to fill the post of district judge and other civil judicial posts inferior to the post of district judge.

237. Application of the provisions of this Chapter to certain class or classes of magistrates.—The Governor may by public notification direct that the foregoing provisions of this Chapter and any rules made thereunder shall with effect from such date as may be fixed by him in that behalf apply in relation to any class or classes of magistrates in the State as they apply in relation to persons appointed to the judicial service of the State subject to such exceptions and modifications as may be specified in the notification.

***PART VII**

[*The States in Part B of the First Schedule*].

* Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956)

PART VIII

¹[THE UNION TERRITORIES]

²[**239. Administration of Union territories.**—(1) Save as otherwise provided by Parliament by law, every Union territory shall be administered by the President acting, to such extent as he thinks fit, through an administrator to be appointed by him with such designation as he may specify.

(2) Notwithstanding anything contained in Part VI, the President may appoint the Governor of a State as the administrator of an adjoining Union territory, and where a Governor is so appointed, he shall exercise his functions as such administrator independently of his Council of Ministers.]

^{3*}[**239A. Creation of local Legislatures or Council of Ministers or both for certain Union territories.**—(1) Parliament may by law create ⁴[for the Union territory of ⁵[Puducherry]]—

(a) a body, whether elected or partly nominated and partly elected, to function as a Legislature for the Union territory, or

(b) a Council of Ministers,

or both with such constitution, powers and functions, in each case, as may be specified in the law.

(2) Any such law as is referred to in clause (1) shall not be deemed to be an amendment of this Constitution for the purposes of article 368 notwithstanding that it contains any provision which amends or has the effect of amending this Constitution.]

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 17, for the heading "THE STATES IN PART C OF THE FIRST SCHEDULE" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. Subs. by s. 17, *ibid.*, for art. 239 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (Fourteenth Amendment) Act, 1962, s. 4 (w.e.f. 28-12-1962).

4. Subs. by the Goa, Daman and Diu Reorganisation Act, 1987 (18 of 1987) s. 63, for "for any of the Union territories of Goa, Daman and Diu and Pondicherry" (w.e.f. 30-5-1987).

5. Subs. by the Pondicherry (Alteration of Name) Act, 2006 (44 of 2006), s. 4, for "Pondicherry" (w.e.f. 1-10-2006).

* Article 239A has been made applicable to Union Territory of Jammu and Kashmir by the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019 (34 of 2019) S.13 (w.e.f. 31-10-2019).

¹[239AA. **Special provisions with respect to Delhi.**—(1) As from the date of commencement of the Constitution (Sixty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1991, the Union territory of Delhi shall be called the National Capital Territory of Delhi (hereafter in this Part referred to as the National Capital Territory) and the administrator thereof appointed under article 239 shall be designated as the Lieutenant Governor.

(2)(a) There shall be a Legislative Assembly for the National Capital Territory and the seats in such Assembly shall be filled by members chosen by direct election from territorial constituencies in the National Capital Territory.

(b) The total number of seats in the Legislative Assembly, the number of seats reserved for Scheduled Castes, the division of the National Capital Territory into territorial constituencies (including the basis for such division) and all other matters relating to the functioning of the Legislative Assembly shall be regulated by law made by Parliament.

²[(ba) Seats shall be reserved for women in the Legislative Assembly of the National Capital Territory of Delhi.

(bb) As nearly as may be, one-third of the seats reserved for the Scheduled Castes in the Legislative Assembly of the National Capital Territory of Delhi shall be reserved for women.

(bc) As nearly as may be, one-third of the total number of seats to be filled by direct election in the Legislative Assembly of the National Capital Territory of Delhi (including the numbers of seats reserved for women belonging to the Scheduled Castes) shall be reserved for women in such manner as Parliament may by law determine.]

(c) The provisions of articles 324 to 327 and 329 shall apply in relation to the National Capital Territory, the Legislative Assembly of the National Capital Territory and the members thereof as they apply, in relation to a State, the Legislative Assembly of a State and the members thereof respectively; and any reference in articles 326 and 329 to “appropriate Legislature” shall be deemed to be a reference to Parliament.

1. Arts 239AA and 239 AB ins. by the Constitution (Sixty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1991, s. 2 (w.e.f. 1-2-1992).

2. ins. by the Constitution (One-hundred and Sixth Amendment) Act, 2023, s. 2 (date yet to be notified).

(3) (a) Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, the Legislative Assembly shall have power to make laws for the whole or any part of the National Capital Territory with respect to any of the matters enumerated in the State List or in the Concurrent List in so far as any such matter is applicable to Union territories except matters with respect to Entries 1, 2 and 18 of the State List and Entries 64, 65 and 66 of that List in so far as they relate to the said Entries 1, 2 and 18.

(b) Nothing in sub-clause (a) shall derogate from the powers of Parliament under this Constitution to make laws with respect to any matter for a Union territory or any part thereof.

(c) If any provision of a law made by the Legislative Assembly with respect to any matter is repugnant to any provision of a law made by Parliament with respect to that matter, whether passed before or after the law made by the Legislative Assembly, or of an earlier law, other than a law made by the Legislative Assembly, then, in either case, the law made by Parliament, or, as the case may be, such earlier law, shall prevail and the law made by the Legislative Assembly shall, to the extent of the repugnancy, be void:

Provided that if any such law made by the Legislative Assembly has been reserved for the consideration of the President and has received his assent, such law shall prevail in the National Capital Territory:

Provided further that nothing in this sub-clause shall prevent Parliament from enacting at any time any law with respect to the same matter including a law adding to, amending, varying or repealing the law so made by the Legislative Assembly.

(4) There shall be a Council of Ministers consisting of not more than ten percent. of the total number of members in the Legislative Assembly, with the Chief Minister at the head to aid and advise the Lieutenant Governor in the exercise of his functions in relation to matters with respect to which the Legislative Assembly has power to make laws, except in so far as he is, by or under any law, required to act in his discretion:

Provided that in the case of difference of opinion between the Lieutenant Governor and his Ministers on any matter, the Lieutenant Governor shall refer it to the President for decision and act according to the decision given thereon by the President and pending such decision it shall be competent for the Lieutenant Governor in any case where the matter, in his opinion, is so urgent that it is necessary for him to take immediate action, to take such action or to give such direction in the matter as he deems necessary.

(5) The Chief Minister shall be appointed by the President and other Ministers shall be appointed by the President on the advice of the Chief Minister and the Ministers shall hold office during the pleasure of the President.

(6) The Council of Ministers shall be collectively responsible to the Legislative Assembly.

¹[(7) (a)] Parliament may, by law, make provisions for giving effect to, or supplementing the provisions contained in the foregoing clauses and for all matters incidental or consequential thereto.

²[(b)] Any such law as is referred to in sub-clause (a) shall not be deemed to be an amendment of this Constitution for the purposes of article 368 notwithstanding that it contains any provision which amends or has the effect of amending, this Constitution.]

(8) The provisions of article 239B shall, so far as may be, apply in relation to the National Capital Territory, the Lieutenant Governor and the Legislative Assembly, as they apply in relation to the Union territory of ³[Puducherry], the administrator and its Legislature, respectively; and any reference in that article to "clause (1) of article 239A" shall be deemed to be a reference to this article or article 239AB, as the case may be.

239AB. Provision in case of failure of constitutional machinery.—If the President, on receipt of a report from the Lieutenant Governor or otherwise, is satisfied—

(a) that a situation has arisen in which the administration of the National Capital Territory cannot be carried on in accordance with the provisions of article 239AA or of any law made in pursuance of that article; or

(b) that for the proper administration of the National Capital Territory it is necessary or expedient so to do,
the President may by order suspend the operation of any provision of article 239AA or of all or any of the provisions of any law made in pursuance of that

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventieth Amendment) Act, 1992, s. 3, for "(7)" (w.e.f. 21-12-1991).

2. Ins. by s. 3, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 21-12-1991).

3. Subs. by the Pondicherry (Alteration of Name) Act, 2006 (44 of 2006), s. 4, for "Pondicherry" (w.e.f. 1-10-2006).

article for such period and subject to such conditions as may be specified in such law and make such incidental and consequential provisions as may appear to him to be necessary or expedient for administering the National Capital Territory in accordance with the provisions of article 239 and article 239AA.]

¹[**239B. Power of administrator to promulgate Ordinances during recess of Legislature.**—(1) If at any time, except when the Legislature of²[the Union territory of³[Puducherry]] is in session, the administrator thereof is satisfied that circumstances exist which render it necessary for him to take immediate action, he may promulgate such Ordinances as the circumstances appear to him to require:

Provided that no such Ordinance shall be promulgated by the administrator except after obtaining instructions from the President in that behalf:

Provided further that whenever the said Legislature is dissolved, or its functioning remains suspended on account of any action taken under any such law as is referred to in clause (1) of article 239A, the administrator shall not promulgate any Ordinance during the period of such dissolution or suspension.

(2) An Ordinance promulgated under this article in pursuance of instructions from the President shall be deemed to be an Act of the Legislature of the Union territory which has been duly enacted after complying with the provisions in that behalf contained in any such law as is referred to in clause (1) of article 239A, but every such Ordinance—

(a) shall be laid before the Legislature of the Union territory and shall cease to operate at the expiration of six weeks from the reassembly of the Legislature or if, before the expiration of that period, a resolution disapproving it is passed by the Legislature, upon the passing of the resolution; and

(b) may be withdrawn at any time by the administrator after obtaining instructions from the President in that behalf.

(3) If and so far as an Ordinance under this article makes any provision which would not be valid if enacted in an Act of the Legislature of the Union

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-seventh Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 3 (w.e.f. 30-12-1971).

2. Subs. by the Goa, Daman and Diu Reorganisation Act, 1987 (18 of 1987) s. 63, for "a Union territory referred to in clause (1) article 239A" (w.e.f. 30-5-1987).

3. Subs. by the Pondicherry (Alteration of Name) Act, 2006 (44 of 2006), s. 4, for "Pondicherry" (w.e.f. 1-10-2006).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part VIII.—The Union Territories)

territory made after complying with the provisions in that behalf contained in any such law as is referred to in clause (1) of article 239A, it shall be void.]

¹(4)* * * *

²[**240. Power of President to make regulations for certain Union territories.**—(1) The President may make regulations for the peace, progress and good government of the Union territory of—

(a) the Andaman and Nicobar Islands;

³[(b) Lakshadweep;]

⁴[(c) Dadra and Nagar Haveli and Daman and Diu;]

⁵[(d) ****;]

⁶[(e) ⁷[Puducherry];]

⁸(f) * * *

⁹(g) * * *

¹⁰[Provided that when any body is created under article 239A to function as a Legislature for the Union territory of ⁷[Puducherry], the President shall not make any regulation for the peace, progress and good government of that Union territory with effect from the date appointed for the first meeting of the Legislature:]

1. Clause (4) ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 4 (with retrospective effect). This amendment was omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 32 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
2. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 17, for art. 240 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
3. Subs. by the Laccadive, Minicoy and Amindivi Islands (Alteration of Name) Act, 1973 (34 of 1973), s. 4, for entry (b) (w.e.f. 1-11-1973).
4. Subs. by the Dadra and Nagar Haveli and Daman and Diu (Merger of Union territories) Act, 2019 (44 of 2019) s. 4(i) (w.e.f. 26-1-2020) for entry (c) which was ins. by the Constitution (Tenth Amendment) Act, 1961, s.3 (w.e.f. 11-8-1961).
5. Omitted by the Dadra and Nagar Haveli and Daman and Diu (Merger of Union territories) Act, 2019 (44 of 2019) s. 4(ii) (w.e.f. 26-1-2020).
6. Ins. by the Constitution (Fourteenth Amendment) Act, 1962, s. 5 (w.e.f. 16-8-1962).
7. Subs. by the Pondicherry (Alteration of Name) Act, 2006 (44 of 2006), s. 4 for "Pondicherry" (w.e.f. 1-10-2006).
8. The entry (f) relating to Mizoram omitted by the State of Mizoram Act, 1986 (34 of 1986), s. 39 (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
9. The entry (g) relating to Arunachal Pradesh omitted by the State of Arunachal Pradesh Act, 1986 (69 of 1986), s. 42 (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
10. Ins. by the Constitution (Fourteenth Amendment) Act, 1962, s. 5 (w.e.f. 28-12-1962).

¹[Provided further that whenever the body functioning as a Legislature for the Union territory of²[Puducherry] is dissolved, or the functioning of that body as such Legislature remains suspended on account of any action taken under any such law as is referred to in clause (1) of article 239A, the President may, during the period of such dissolution or suspension, make regulations for the peace, progress and good government of that Union territory.]

(2) Any regulation so made may repeal or amend any Act made by Parliament or³[any other law], which is for the time being applicable to the Union territory and, when promulgated by the President, shall have the same force and effect as an Act of Parliament which applies to that territory.]

241. High Courts for Union territories.—(1) Parliament may by law constitute a High Court for a⁴[Union territory] or declare any court in any⁵[such territory] to be a High Court for all or any of the purposes of this Constitution.

(2) The provisions of Chapter V of Part VI shall apply in relation to every High Court referred to in clause (1) as they apply in relation to a High Court referred to in article 214 subject to such modifications or exceptions as Parliament may by law provide.

⁶[(3) Subject to the provisions of this Constitution and to the provisions of any law of the appropriate Legislature made by virtue of powers conferred on that Legislature by or under this Constitution, every High Court exercising jurisdiction immediately before the commencement of the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, in relation to any Union territory shall continue to exercise such jurisdiction in relation to that territory after such commencement.

(4) Nothing in this article derogates from the power of Parliament to extend or exclude the jurisdiction of a High Court for a State to, or from, any Union territory or part thereof.]

242. [Coorg].—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch.(w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

-
1. Ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-seventh Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 4 (w.e.f. 15-2-1972).
 2. Subs. by the Pondicherry (Alteration of Name) Act, 2006 (44 of 2006), s. 4, for "Pondicherry" (w.e.f. 1-10-2006).
 3. Subs. by the Constitution (Twenty-seventh Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 4, for "any existing law" (w.e.f. 15-2-1972).
 4. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch., for "State specified in Part C of the First Schedule" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 5. Subs. by s. 29. and Sch., *ibid.*, for "such State" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 6. Subs. by s. 29, and Sch., *ibid.*, for cls. (3) and (4) (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

¹[PART IX

THE PANCHAYATS

243. Definitions.—In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires,—

(a) “district” means a district in a State;

(b) “Gram Sabha” means a body consisting of persons registered in the electoral rolls relating to a village comprised within the area of Panchayat at the village level;

(c) “intermediate level” means a level between the village and district levels specified by the Governor of a State by public notification to be the intermediate level for the purposes of this Part;

(d) “Panchayat” means an institution (by whatever name called) of self-government constituted under article 243B, for the rural areas;

(e) “Panchayat area” means the territorial area of a Panchayat;

(f) “Population” means the population as ascertained at the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published;

(g) “village” means a village specified by the Governor by public notification to be a village for the purposes of this Part and includes a group of villages so specified.

243A. Gram Sabha.—A Gram Sabha may exercise such powers and perform such functions at the village level as the Legislature of a State may, by law, provide.

243B. Constitution of Panchayats.—(1) There shall be constituted in every State, Panchayats at the village, intermediate and district levels in accordance with the provisions of this Part.

(2) Notwithstanding anything in clause (1), Panchayats at the intermediate level may not be constituted in a State having a population not exceeding twenty lakhs.

243C. Composition of Panchayats.—(1) Subject to the provisions of this Part, the Legislature of a State may, by law, make provisions with respect to the composition of Panchayats:

1. Original Part IX relating to "The territories in Part D of the First Schedule and other territories not specified in that Schedule" was omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956) and subsequently ins. by the Constitution (Seventy-third Amendment) Act, 1992, s. 2 (w.e.f. 24-4-1993).

(Part IX.—The Panchayats)

Provided that the ratio between the population of the territorial area of a Panchayat at any level and the number of seats in such Panchayat to be filled by election shall, so far as practicable, be the same throughout the State.

(2) All the seats in a Panchayat shall be filled by persons chosen by direct election from territorial constituencies in the Panchayat area and, for this purpose, each Panchayat area shall be divided into territorial constituencies in such manner that the ratio between the population of each constituency and the number of seats allotted to it shall, so far as practicable, be the same throughout the Panchayat area.

(3) The Legislature of a State may, by law, provide for the representation—

(a) of the Chairpersons of the Panchayats at the village level, in the Panchayats at the intermediate level or, in the case of a State not having Panchayats at the intermediate level, in the Panchayats at the district level;

(b) of the Chairpersons of the Panchayats at the intermediate level, in the Panchayats at the district level;

(c) of the members of the House of the People and the members of the Legislative Assembly of the State representing constituencies which comprise wholly or partly a Panchayat area at a level other than the village level, in such Panchayat;

(d) of the members of the Council of States and the members of the Legislative Council of the State, where they are registered as electors within—

(i) a Panchayat area at the intermediate level, in Panchayat at the intermediate level;

(ii) a Panchayat area at the district level, in Panchayat at the district level.

(4) The Chairperson of a Panchayat and other members of a Panchayat whether or not chosen by direct election from territorial constituencies in the Panchayat area shall have the right to vote in the meetings of the Panchayats.

(5) The Chairperson of—

(a) a Panchayat at the village level shall be elected in such manner as the Legislature of a State may, by law, provide; and

(b) a Panchayat at the intermediate level or district level shall be elected by, and from amongst, the elected members thereof.

243D. Reservation of seats.—(1) Seats shall be reserved for—

- (a) the Scheduled Castes; and
- (b) the Scheduled Tribes,

in every Panchayat and the number of seats so reserved shall bear, as nearly as may be, the same proportion to the total number of seats to be filled by direct election in that Panchayat as the population of the Scheduled Castes in that Panchayat area or of the Scheduled Tribes in that Panchayat area bears to the total population of that area and such seats may be allotted by rotation to different constituencies in a Panchayat.

(2) Not less than one-third of the total number of seats reserved under clause (1) shall be reserved for women belonging to the Scheduled Castes or, as the case may be, the Scheduled Tribes.

(3) Not less than one-third (including the number of seats reserved for women belonging to the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes) of the total number of seats to be filled by direct election in every Panchayat shall be reserved for women and such seats may be allotted by rotation to different constituencies in a Panchayat.

(4) The offices of the Chairpersons in the Panchayats at the village or any other level shall be reserved for the Scheduled Castes, the Scheduled Tribes and women in such manner as the Legislature of a State may, by law, provide:

Provided that the number of offices of Chairpersons reserved for the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes in the Panchayats at each level in any State shall bear, as nearly as may be, the same proportion to the total number of such offices in the Panchayats at each level as the population of the Scheduled Castes in the State or of the Scheduled Tribes in the State bears to the total population of the State:

Provided further that not less than one-third of the total number of offices of Chairpersons in the Panchayats at each level shall be reserved for women:

Provided also that the number of offices reserved under this clause shall be allotted by rotation to different Panchayats at each level.

(5) The reservation of seats under clauses (1) and (2) and the reservation of offices of Chairpersons (other than the reservation for women) under clause (4) shall cease to have effect on the expiration of the period specified in article 334.

(6) Nothing in this Part shall prevent the Legislature of a State from making any provision for reservation of seats in any Panchayat or offices of Chairpersons in the Panchayats at any level in favour of backward class of citizens.

243E. Duration of Panchayats, etc.—(1) Every Panchayat, unless sooner dissolved under any law for the time being in force, shall continue for five years from the date appointed for its first meeting and no longer.

(2) No amendment of any law for the time being in force shall have the effect of causing dissolution of a Panchayat at any level, which is functioning immediately before such amendment, till the expiration of its duration specified in clause (1).

(3) An election to constitute a Panchayat shall be completed—

(a) before the expiry of its duration specified in clause (1);

(b) before the expiration of a period of six months from the date of its dissolution:

Provided that where the remainder of the period for which the dissolved Panchayat would have continued is less than six months, it shall not be necessary to hold any election under this clause for constituting the Panchayat for such period.

(4) A Panchayat constituted upon the dissolution of a Panchayat before the expiration of its duration shall continue only for the remainder of the period for which the dissolved Panchayat would have continued under clause (1) had it not been so dissolved.

243F. Disqualifications for membership.—(1) A person shall be disqualified for being chosen as, and for being, a member of a Panchayat—

(a) if he is so disqualified by or under any law for the time being in force for the purposes of elections to the Legislature of the State concerned:

Provided that no person shall be disqualified on the ground that he is less than twenty-five years of age, if he has attained the age of twenty-one years;

(b) if he is so disqualified by or under any law made by the Legislature of the State.

(2) If any question arises as to whether a member of a Panchayat has become subject to any of the disqualifications mentioned in clause (1), the question shall be referred for the decision of such authority and in such manner as the Legislature of a State may, by law, provide.

243G. Powers, authority and responsibilities of Panchayats.—

Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, the Legislature of a State may, by law, endow the Panchayats with such powers and authority as may be necessary to enable them to function as institutions of self-government and such law may contain provisions for the devolution of powers and responsibilities upon Panchayats at the appropriate level, subject to such conditions as may be specified therein, with respect to—

- (a) the preparation of plans for economic development and social justice;
- (b) the implementation of schemes for economic development and social justice as may be entrusted to them including those in relation to the matters listed in the Eleventh Schedule.

243H. Powers to impose taxes by, and Funds of, the Panchayats.—

The Legislature of a State may, by law,—

- (a) authorise a Panchayat to levy, collect and appropriate such taxes, duties, tolls and fees in accordance with such procedure and subject to such limits;
- (b) assign to a Panchayat such taxes, duties, tolls and fees levied and collected by the State Government for such purposes and subject to such conditions and limits;
- (c) provide for making such grants-in-aid to the Panchayats from the Consolidated Fund of the State; and
- (d) provide for constitution of such Funds for crediting all moneys received, respectively, by or on behalf of the Panchayats and also for the withdrawal of such moneys therefrom,

as may be specified in the law.

243I. Constitution of Finance Commission to review financial position.—(1) The Governor of a State shall, as soon as may be within one year from the commencement of the Constitution (Seventy-third Amendment) Act, 1992, and thereafter at the expiration of every fifth year, constitute a Finance Commission to review the financial position of the Panchayats and to make recommendations to the Governor as to—

- (a) the principles which should govern—
 - (i) the distribution between the State and the Panchayats of the net proceeds of the taxes, duties, tolls and fees leviable by the State, which may be divided between them under this Part and the allocation between the Panchayats at all levels of their respective shares of such proceeds;

(Part IX.—The Panchayats)

(ii) the determination of the taxes, duties, tolls and fees which may be assigned to, or appropriated by, the Panchayats;

(iii) the grants-in-aid to the Panchayats from the Consolidated Fund of the State;

(b) the measures needed to improve the financial position of the Panchayats;

(c) any other matter referred to the Finance Commission by the Governor in the interests of sound finance of the Panchayats.

(2) The Legislature of a State may, by law, provide for the composition of the Commission, the qualifications which shall be requisite for appointment as members thereof and the manner in which they shall be selected.

(3) The Commission shall determine their procedure and shall have such powers in the performance of their functions as the Legislature of the State may, by law, confer on them.

(4) The Governor shall cause every recommendation made by the Commission under this article together with an explanatory memorandum as to the action taken thereon to be laid before the Legislature of the State.

243J. Audit of accounts of Panchayats.—The Legislature of a State may, by law, make provisions with respect to the maintenance of accounts by the Panchayats and the auditing of such accounts.

243K. Elections to the Panchayats.—(1) The superintendence, direction and control of the preparation of electoral rolls for, and the conduct of, all elections to the Panchayats shall be vested in a State Election Commission consisting of a State Election Commissioner to be appointed by the Governor.

(2) Subject to the provisions of any law made by the Legislature of a State, the conditions of service and tenure of office of the State Election Commissioner shall be such as the Governor may by rule determine:

Provided that the State Election Commissioner shall not be removed from his office except in like manner and on the like grounds as a Judge of a High Court and the conditions of service of the State Election Commissioner shall not be varied to his disadvantage after his appointment.

(3) The Governor of a State shall, when so requested by the State Election Commission, make available to the State Election Commission such staff as may be necessary for the discharge of the functions conferred on the State Election Commission by clause (1).

(4) Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, the Legislature of a State may, by law, make provision with respect to all matters relating to, or in connection with, elections to the Panchayats.

243L. Application to Union territories.—The provisions of this Part shall apply to the Union territories and shall, in their application to a Union territory, have effect as if the references to the Governor of a State were references to the Administrator of the Union territory appointed under article 239 and references to the Legislature or the legislative Assembly of a State were references, in relation to a Union territory having a Legislative Assembly, to that Legislative Assembly:

Provided that the President may, by public notification, direct that the provisions of this Part shall apply to any Union territory or part thereof subject to such exceptions and modifications as he may specify in the notification.

243M. Part not to apply to certain areas.—(1) Nothing in this Part shall apply to the Scheduled Areas referred to in clause (1), and the tribal areas referred to in clause (2), of article 244.

(2) Nothing in this Part shall apply to—

(a) the States of Nagaland, Meghalaya and Mizoram;

(b) the hill areas in the State of Manipur for which District Councils exist under any law for the time being in force.

(3) Nothing in this Part—

(a) relating to Panchayats at the district level shall apply to the hill areas of the District of Darjeeling in the State of West Bengal for which Darjeeling Gorkha Hill Council exists under any law for the time being in force;

(b) shall be construed to affect the functions and powers of the Darjeeling Gorkha Hill Council constituted under such law.

(Part IX.—The Panchayats)

¹[(3A) Nothing in article 243D, relating to reservation of seats for the Scheduled Castes, shall apply to the State of Arunachal Pradesh.]

(4) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

(a) the Legislature of a State referred to in sub-clause (a) of clause (2) may, by law, extend this Part to that State, except the areas, if any, referred to in clause (1), if the Legislative Assembly of that State passes a resolution to that effect by a majority of the total membership of that House and by a majority of not less than two-thirds of the members of that House present and voting;

(b) Parliament may, by law, extend the provisions of this Part to the Scheduled Areas and the tribal areas referred to in clause (1) subject to such exceptions and modifications as may be specified in such law, and no such law shall be deemed to be an amendment of this Constitution for the purposes of article 368.

243N. Continuance of existing laws and Panchayats.—Notwithstanding anything in this Part, any provision of any law relating to Panchayats in force in a State immediately before the commencement of the Constitution (Seventy-third Amendment) Act, 1992, which is inconsistent with the provisions of this Part, shall continue to be in force until amended or repealed by a competent Legislature or other competent authority or until the expiration of one year from such commencement, whichever is earlier:

Provided that all the Panchayats existing immediately before such commencement shall continue till the expiration of their duration, unless sooner dissolved by a resolution passed to that effect by the Legislative Assembly of that State or, in the case of a State having a Legislative Council, by each House of the Legislature of that State.

243O. Bar to interference by courts in electoral matters.—Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

(a) the validity of any law relating to the delimitation of constituencies or the allotment of seats to such constituencies, made or purporting to be made under article 243K, shall not be called in question in any court;

(b) no election to any Panchayat shall be called in question except by an election petition presented to such authority and in such manner as is provided for by or under any law made by the Legislature of a State.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Eighty-third Amendment) Act, 2000, s. 2 (w.e.f. 8-9-2000).

**¹[PART IXA
THE MUNICIPALITIES**

243P. Definitions.—In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires,—

(a) “Committee” means a Committee constituted under article 243S;

(b) “district” means a district in a State;

(c) “Metropolitan area” means an area having a population of ten lakhs or more, comprised in one or more districts and consisting of two or more Municipalities or Panchayats or other contiguous areas, specified by the Governor by public notification to be a Metropolitan area for the purposes of this Part;

(d) “Municipal area” means the territorial area of a Municipality as is notified by the Governor;

(e) “Municipality” means an institution of self-government constituted under article 243Q;

(f) “Panchayat” means a Panchayat constituted under article 243B;

(g) “population” means the population as ascertained at the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published.

243Q. Constitution of Municipalities.—(1) There shall be constituted in every State,—

(a) a Nagar Panchayat (by whatever name called) for a transitional area, that is to say, an area in transition from a rural area to an urban area;

(b) a Municipal Council for a smaller urban area; and

(c) a Municipal Corporation for a larger urban area,

in accordance with the provisions of this Part:

1. Part IXA ins. by the Constitution (Seventy-fourth Amendment) Act, 1992, s. 2
(w.e.f. 1-6-1993).

Provided that a Municipality under this clause may not be constituted in such urban area or part thereof as the Governor may, having regard to the size of the area and the municipal services being provided or proposed to be provided by an industrial establishment in that area and such other factors as he may deem fit, by public notification, specify to be an industrial township.

(2) In this article, “a transitional area”, “a smaller urban area” or “a larger urban area” means such area as the Governor may, having regard to the population of the area, the density of the population therein, the revenue generated for local administration, the percentage of employment in non-agricultural activities, the economic importance or such other factors as he may deem fit, specify by public notification for the purposes of this Part.

243R. Composition of Municipalities.—(1) Save as provided in clause (2), all the seats in a Municipality shall be filled by persons chosen by direct election from the territorial constituencies in the Municipal area and for this purpose each Municipal area shall be divided into territorial constituencies to be known as wards.

(2) The Legislature of a State may, by law, provide—

(a) for the representation in a Municipality of—

(i) persons having special knowledge or experience in Municipal administration;

(ii) the members of the House of the People and the members of the Legislative Assembly of the State representing constituencies which comprise wholly or partly the Municipal area;

(iii) the members of the Council of States and the members of the Legislative Council of the State registered as electors within the Municipal area;

(iv) the Chairpersons of the Committees constituted under clause (5) of article 243S:

Provided that the persons referred to in paragraph (i) shall not have the right to vote in the meetings of the Municipality;

(b) the manner of election of the Chairperson of a Municipality.

243S. Constitution and composition of Wards Committees, etc.—(1)

There shall be constituted Wards Committees, consisting of one or more wards, within the territorial area of a Municipality having a population of three lakhs or more.

(2) The Legislature of a State may, by law, make provision with respect to—

(a) the composition and the territorial area of a Wards Committee;

(b) the manner in which the seats in a Wards Committee shall be filled.

(3) A member of a Municipality representing a ward within the territorial area of the Wards Committee shall be a member of that Committee.

(4) Where a Wards Committee consists of—

(a) one ward, the member representing that ward in the Municipality; or

(b) two or more wards, one of the members representing such wards in the Municipality elected by the members of the Wards Committee,

shall be the Chairperson of that Committee.

(5) Nothing in this article shall be deemed to prevent the Legislature of a State from making any provision for the constitution of Committees in addition to the Wards Committees.

243T. Reservation of seats.—(1) Seats shall be reserved for the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes in every Municipality and the number of seats so reserved shall bear, as nearly as may be, the same proportion to the total number of seats to be filled by direct election in that Municipality as the population of the Scheduled Castes in the Municipal area or of the Scheduled Tribes in the Municipal area bears to the total population of that area and such seats may be allotted by rotation to different constituencies in a Municipality.

(2) Not less than one-third of the total number of seats reserved under clause (1) shall be reserved for women belonging to the Scheduled Castes or, as the case may be, the Scheduled Tribes.

(3) Not less than one-third (including the number of seats reserved for women belonging to the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes) of the total number of seats to be filled by direct election in every Municipality shall be reserved for women and such seats may be allotted by rotation to different constituencies in a Municipality.

(4) The offices of Chairpersons in the Municipalities shall be reserved for the Scheduled Castes, the Scheduled Tribes and women in such manner as the Legislature of a State may, by law, provide.

(5) The reservation of seats under clauses (1) and (2) and the reservation of offices of Chairpersons (other than the reservation for women) under clause (4) shall cease to have effect on the expiration of the period specified in article 334.

(6) Nothing in this Part shall prevent the Legislature of a State from making any provision for reservation of seats in any Municipality or offices of Chairpersons in the Municipalities in favour of backward class of citizens.

243U. Duration of Municipalities, etc.—(1) Every Municipality, unless sooner dissolved under any law for the time being in force, shall continue for five years from the date appointed for its first meeting and no longer:

Provided that a Municipality shall be given a reasonable opportunity of being heard before its dissolution.

(2) No amendment of any law for the time being in force shall have the effect of causing dissolution of a Municipality at any level, which is functioning immediately before such amendment, till the expiration of its duration specified in clause (1).

(3) An election to constitute a Municipality shall be completed,—

(a) before the expiry of its duration specified in clause (1);

(b) before the expiration of a period of six months from the date of its dissolution:

Provided that where the remainder of the period for which the dissolved Municipality would have continued is less than six months, it shall not be necessary to hold any election under this clause for constituting the Municipality for such period.

(4) A Municipality constituted upon the dissolution of a Municipality before the expiration of its duration shall continue only for the remainder of the period for which the dissolved Municipality would have continued under clause (1) had it not been so dissolved.

243V. Disqualifications for membership.—(1) A person shall be disqualified for being chosen as, and for being, a member of a Municipality—

(a) if he is so disqualified by or under any law for the time being in force for the purposes of elections to the Legislature of the State concerned:

Provided that no person shall be disqualified on the ground that he is less than twenty-five years of age, if he has attained the age of twenty-one years;

(b) if he is so disqualified by or under any law made by the Legislature of the State.

(2) If any question arises as to whether a member of a Municipality has become subject to any of the disqualifications mentioned in clause (1), the question shall be referred for the decision of such authority and in such manner as the Legislature of a State may, by law, provide.

243W. Powers, authority and responsibilities of Municipalities, etc.—Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, the Legislature of a State may, by law, endow—

(a) the Municipalities with such powers and authority as may be necessary to enable them to function as institutions of self-government and such law may contain provisions for the devolution of powers and responsibilities upon Municipalities, subject to such conditions as may be specified therein, with respect to—

(i) the preparation of plans for economic development and social justice;

(ii) the performance of functions and the implementation of schemes as may be entrusted to them including those in relation to the matters listed in the Twelfth Schedule;

(b) the Committees with such powers and authority as may be necessary to enable them to carry out the responsibilities conferred upon them including those in relation to the matters listed in the Twelfth Schedule.

243X. Power to impose taxes by, and Funds of, the Municipalities.—The Legislature of a State may, by law,—

(a) authorise a Municipality to levy, collect and appropriate such taxes, duties, tolls and fees in accordance with such procedure and subject to such limits;

(Part IXA.—The Municipalities)

(b) assign to a Municipality such taxes, duties, tolls and fees levied and collected by the State Government for such purposes and subject to such conditions and limits;

(c) provide for making such grants-in-aid to the Municipalities from the Consolidated Fund of the State; and

(d) provide for constitution of such Funds for crediting all moneys received, respectively, by or on behalf of the Municipalities and also for the withdrawal of such moneys therefrom,

as may be specified in the law.

243Y. Finance Commission.—(1) The Finance Commission constituted under article 243I shall also review the financial position of the Municipalities and make recommendations to the Governor as to—

(a) the principles which should govern—

(i) the distribution between the State and the Municipalities of the net proceeds of the taxes, duties, tolls and fees leviable by the State, which may be divided between them under this Part and the allocation between the Municipalities at all levels of their respective shares of such proceeds;

(ii) the determination of the taxes, duties, tolls and fees which may be assigned to, or appropriated by, the Municipalities;

(iii) the grants-in-aid to the Municipalities from the Consolidated Fund of the State;

(b) the measures needed to improve the financial position of the Municipalities;

(c) any other matter referred to the Finance Commission by the Governor in the interests of sound finance of the Municipalities.

(2) The Governor shall cause every recommendation made by the Commission under this article together with an explanatory memorandum as to the action taken thereon to be laid before the Legislature of the State.

243Z. Audit of accounts of Municipalities.—The Legislature of a State may, by law, make provisions with respect to the maintenance of accounts by the Municipalities and the auditing of such accounts.

243ZA. Elections to the Municipalities.—(1) The superintendence, direction and control of the preparation of electoral rolls for, and the conduct of, all elections to the Municipalities shall be vested in the State Election Commission referred to in article 243K.

(2) Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, the Legislature of a State may, by law, make provision with respect to all matters relating to, or in connection with, elections to the Municipalities.

243ZB. Application to Union territories.—The provisions of this Part shall apply to the Union territories and shall, in their application to a Union territory, have effect as if the references to the Governor of a State were references to the Administrator of the Union territory appointed under article 239 and references to the Legislature or the Legislative Assembly of a State were references in relation to a Union territory having a Legislative Assembly, to that Legislative Assembly:

Provided that the President may, by public notification, direct that the provisions of this Part shall apply to any Union territory or part thereof subject to such exceptions and modifications as he may specify in the notification.

243ZC. Part not to apply to certain areas.—(1) Nothing in this Part shall apply to the Scheduled Areas referred to in clause (1), and the tribal areas referred to in clause (2) of article 244.

(2) Nothing in this Part shall be construed to affect the functions and powers of the Darjeeling Gorkha Hill Council constituted under any law for the time being in force for the hill areas of the district of Darjeeling in the State of West Bengal.

(3) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, Parliament may, by law, extend the provisions of this Part to the Scheduled Areas and the tribal areas referred to in clause (1) subject to such exceptions and modifications as may be specified in such law, and no such law shall be deemed to be an amendment of this Constitution for the purposes of article 368.

243ZD. Committee for district planning.—(1) There shall be constituted in every State at the district level a District Planning Committee to consolidate the plans prepared by the Panchayats and the Municipalities in the district and to prepare a draft development plan for the district as a whole.

(2) The Legislature of a State may, by law, make provision with respect to—

(a) the composition of the District Planning Committees;

(b) the manner in which the seats in such Committees shall be filled:

Provided that not less than four-fifths of the total number of members of such Committee shall be elected by, and from amongst, the elected members of the Panchayat at the district level and of the Municipalities in the district in proportion to the ratio between the population of the rural areas and of the urban areas in the district;

(c) the functions relating to district planning which may be assigned to such Committees;

(d) the manner in which the Chairpersons of such Committees shall be chosen.

(3) Every District Planning Committee shall, in preparing the draft development plan,—

(a) have regard to—

(i) matters of common interest between the Panchayats and the Municipalities including spatial planning, sharing of water and other physical and natural resources, the integrated development of infrastructure and environmental conservation;

(ii) the extent and type of available resources whether financial or otherwise;

(b) consult such institutions and organisations as the Governor may, by order, specify.

(4) The Chairperson of every District Planning Committee shall forward the development plan, as recommended by such Committee, to the Government of the State.

243ZE. Committee for Metropolitan planning.—(1) There shall be constituted in every Metropolitan area a Metropolitan Planning Committee to prepare a draft development plan for the Metropolitan area as a whole.

(2) The Legislature of a State may, by law, make provision with respect to—

(a) the composition of the Metropolitan Planning Committees;

(b) the manner in which the seats in such Committees shall be filled:

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part IXA.—The Municipalities)

Provided that not less than two-thirds of the members of such Committee shall be elected by, and from amongst, the elected members of the Municipalities and Chairpersons of the Panchayats in the Metropolitan area in proportion to the ratio between the population of the Municipalities and of the Panchayats in that area;

(c) the representation in such Committees of the Government of India and the Government of the State and of such organisations and institutions as may be deemed necessary for carrying out the functions assigned to such Committees;

(d) the functions relating to planning and coordination for the Metropolitan area which may be assigned to such Committees;

(e) the manner in which the Chairpersons of such Committees shall be chosen.

(3) Every Metropolitan Planning Committee shall, in preparing the draft development plan,—

(a) have regard to—

(i) the plans prepared by the Municipalities and the Panchayats in the Metropolitan area;

(ii) matters of common interest between the Municipalities and the Panchayats, including coordinated spatial planning of the area, sharing of water and other physical and natural resources, the integrated development of infrastructure and environmental conservation;

(iii) the overall objectives and priorities set by the Government of India and the Government of the State;

(iv) the extent and nature of investments likely to be made in the Metropolitan area by agencies of the Government of India and of the Government of the State and other available resources whether financial or otherwise;

(b) consult such institutions and organisations as the Governor may, by order, specify.

(4) The Chairperson of every Metropolitan Planning Committee shall forward the development plan, as recommended by such Committee, to the Government of the State.

243ZF. Continuance of existing laws and Municipalities.—Notwithstanding anything in this Part, any provision of any law relating to Municipalities in force in a State immediately before the commencement of the Constitution (Seventy-fourth Amendment) Act, 1992, which is inconsistent with the provisions of this Part, shall continue to be in force until amended or repealed by a competent Legislature or other competent authority or until the expiration of one year from such commencement, whichever is earlier:

Provided that all the Municipalities existing immediately before such commencement shall continue till the expiration of their duration, unless sooner dissolved by a resolution passed to that effect by the Legislative Assembly of that State or, in the case of a State having a Legislative Council, by each House of the Legislature of that State.

243ZG. Bar to interference by courts in electoral matters.—Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

(a) the validity of any law relating to the delimitation of constituencies or the allotment of seats to such constituencies, made or purporting to be made under article 243ZA shall not be called in question in any court;

(b) no election to any Municipality shall be called in question except by an election petition presented to such authority and in such manner as is provided for by or under any law made by the Legislature of a State.]

¹[PART IXB

THE CO-OPERATIVE SOCIETIES

243ZH. Definitions.—In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires,—

(a) “authorised person” means a person referred to as such in article 243ZQ;

(b) “board” means the board of directors or the governing body of a co-operative society, by whatever name called, to which the direction and control of the management of the affairs of a society is entrusted to;

(c) “co-operative society” means a society registered or deemed to be registered under any law relating to co-operative societies for the time being in force in any State;

(d) “multi-State co-operative society” means a society with objects not confined to one State and registered or deemed to be registered under any law for the time being in force relating to such co-operatives;

(e) “Office bearer” means a President, Vice-President, Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson, Secretary or Treasurer, of a co-operative society and includes any other person to be elected by the board of any co-operative society;

(f) “Registrar” means the Central Registrar appointed by the Central Government in relation to the multi-State co-operative societies and the Registrar for co-operative societies appointed by the State Government under the law made by the Legislature of a State in relation to co-operative societies;

(g) “State Act” means any law made by the Legislature of a State;

(h) “State level co-operative society” means a co-operative society having its area of operation extending to the whole of a State and defined as such in any law made by the Legislature of a State.

243ZI. Incorporation of co-operative societies.—Subject to the provisions of this Part, the Legislature of a State may, by law, make provisions with respect to the incorporation, regulation and winding up of co-operative societies based on the principles of voluntary formation, democratic member-control, member-economic participation and autonomous functioning.

1. Part IXB ins. by the Constitution (Ninety-seventh Amendment) Act, 2011, s. 4
(w.e.f. 15-2-2012).

243ZJ. Number and term of members of board and its office bearers.—(1) The board shall consist of such number of directors as may be provided by the Legislature of a State, by law:

Provided that the maximum number of directors of a co-operative society shall not exceed twenty-one:

Provided further that the Legislature of a State shall, by law, provide for the reservation of one seat for the Scheduled Castes or the Scheduled Tribes and two seats for women on board of every co-operative society consisting of individuals as members and having members from such class of category of persons.

(2) The term of office of elected members of the board and its office bearers shall be five years from the date of election and the term of office bearers shall be conterminous with the term of the board:

Provided that the board may fill a casual vacancy on the board by nomination out of the same class of members in respect of which the casual vacancy has arisen, if the term of office of the board is less than half of its original term.

(3) The Legislature of a State shall, by law, make provisions for co-option of persons to be members of the board having experience in the field of banking, management, finance or specialisation in any other field relating to the objects and activities undertaken by the co-operative society, as members of the board of such society:

Provided that the number of such co-opted members shall not exceed two in addition to twenty-one directors specified in the first proviso to clause (1):

Provided further that such co-opted members shall not have the right to vote in any election of the co-operative society in their capacity as such member or to be eligible to be elected as office bearers of the board:

Provided also that the functional directors of a co-operative society shall also be the members of the board and such members shall be excluded for the purpose of counting the total number of directors specified in the first proviso to clause (1).

243ZK. Election of members of board.—(1) Notwithstanding anything contained in any law made by the Legislature of a State, the election of a board shall be conducted before the expiry of the term of the board so as to ensure that the newly elected members of the board assume office immediately on the expiry of the office of members of the outgoing board.

(2) The superintendence, direction and control of the preparation of electoral rolls for, and the conduct of, all elections to a co-operative society shall vest in such an authority or body, as may be provided by the Legislature of a State, by law:

Provided that the Legislature of a State may, by law, provide for the procedure and guidelines for the conduct of such elections.

243ZL. Supersession and suspension of board and interim management.—(1) Notwithstanding anything contained in any law for the time being in force, no board shall be superseded or kept under suspension for a period exceeding six months:

Provided that the board may be superseded or kept under suspension in a case—

- (i) of its persistent default; or
- (ii) of negligence in the performance of its duties; or
- (iii) the board has committed any act prejudicial to the interests of the co-operative society or its members; or
- (iv) there is stalemate in the constitution or functions of the board; or
- (v) the authority or body as provided by the Legislature of a State, by law, under clause (2) of article 243ZK, has failed to conduct elections in accordance with the provisions of the State Act:

Provided further that the board of any such co-operative society shall not be superseded or kept under suspension where there is no Government shareholding or loan or financial assistance or any guarantee by the Government:

Provided also that in case of a co-operative society carrying on the business of banking, the provisions of the Banking Regulation Act, 1949 (10 of 1949) shall also apply:

(Part IXB.—Co-operative Societies)

Provided also that in case of a co-operative society, other than a multi-State co-operative society, carrying on the business of banking, the provisions of this clause shall have the effect as if for the words "six months", the words "one year" had been substituted.

(2) In case of supersession of a board, the administrator appointed to manage the affairs of such co-operative society shall arrange for conduct of elections within the period specified in clause (1) and handover the management to the elected board.

(3) The Legislature of a State may, by law, make provisions for the conditions of service of the administrator.

243ZM. Audit of accounts of co-operative societies.—(1) The Legislature of a State may, by law, make provisions with respect to the maintenance of accounts by the co-operative societies and the auditing of such accounts at least once in each financial year.

(2) The Legislature of a State shall, by law, lay down the minimum qualifications and experience of auditors and auditing firms that shall be eligible for auditing accounts of the co-operative societies.

(3) Every co-operative society shall cause to be audited by an auditor or auditing firms referred to in clause (2) appointed by the general body of the co-operative society:

Provided that such auditors or auditing firms shall be appointed from a panel approved by a State Government or an authority authorised by the State Government in this behalf.

(4) The accounts of every co-operative society shall be audited within six months of the close of the financial year to which such accounts relate.

(5) The audit report of the accounts of an apex co-operative society, as may be defined by the State Act, shall be laid before the State Legislature in the manner, as may be provided by the State Legislature, by law.

243ZN. Convening of general body meetings.—The Legislature of a State may, by law, make provisions that the annual general body meeting of every co-operative society shall be convened within a period of six months of close of the financial year to transact the business as may be provided in such law.

243ZO. Right of a member to get information.—(1) The Legislature of a State may, by law, provide for access to every member of a co-operative society to the books, information and accounts of the co-operative society kept in regular transaction of its business with such member.

(2) The Legislature of a State may, by law, make provisions to ensure the participation of members in the management of the co-operative society providing minimum requirement of attending meetings by the members and utilising the minimum level of services as may be provided in such law.

(3) The Legislature of a State may, by law, provide for co-operative education and training for its members.

243ZP. Returns.—Every co-operative society shall file returns, within six months of the close of every financial year, to the authority designated by the State Government including the following matters, namely:—

- (a) annual report of its activities;
- (b) its audited statement of accounts;
- (c) plan for surplus disposal as approved by the general body of the co-operative society;
- (d) list of amendments to the bye-laws of the co-operative society, if any;
- (e) declaration regarding date of holding of its general body meeting and conduct of elections when due; and
- (f) any other information required by the Registrar in pursuance of any of the provisions of the State Act.

243ZQ. Offences and penalties.—(1) The Legislature of a State may, by law, make provisions for the offences relating to the co-operative societies and penalties for such offences.

(2) A law made by the Legislature of a State under clause (1) shall include the commission of the following act or omission as offences, namely:—

- (a) a co-operative society or an officer or member thereof wilfully makes a false return or furnishes false information, or any person wilfully not furnishes any information required from him by a person authorised in this behalf under the provisions of the State Act;

(Part IXB.—Co-operative Societies)

(b) any person wilfully or without any reasonable excuse disobeys any summons, requisition or lawful written order issued under the provisions of the State Act;

(c) any employer who, without sufficient cause, fails to pay to a co-operative society amount deducted by him from its employee within a period of fourteen days from the date on which such deduction is made;

(d) any officer or custodian who wilfully fails to handover custody of books, accounts, documents, records, cash, security and other property belonging to a co-operative society of which he is an officer or custodian, to an authorised person; and

(e) whoever, before, during or after the election of members of the board or office bearers, adopts any corrupt practice.

243ZR. Application to multi-State co-operative societies.—The provisions of this Part shall apply to the multi-State co-operative societies subject to the modification that any reference to “Legislature of a State”, “State Act” or “State Government” shall be construed as a reference to “Parliament”, “Central Act” or “the Central Government” respectively.

243ZS. Application to Union territories.—The provisions of this Part shall apply to the Union territories and shall, in their application to a Union territory, having no Legislative Assembly as if the references to the Legislature of a State were a reference to the administrator thereof appointed under article 239 and, in relation to a Union territory having a Legislative Assembly, to that Legislative Assembly:

Provided that the President may, by notification in the Official Gazette, direct that the provisions of this Part shall not apply to any Union territory or part thereof as he may specify in the notification.

243ZT. Continuance of existing laws.— Notwithstanding anything in this Part, any provision of any law relating to co-operative societies in force in a State immediately before the commencement of the Constitution (Ninety-seventh Amendment) Act, 2011, which is inconsistent with the provisions of this Part, shall continue to be in force until amended or repealed by a competent Legislature or other competent authority or until the expiration of one year from such commencement, whichever is less.]

PART X

THE SCHEDULED AND TRIBAL AREAS

244. Administration of Scheduled Areas and Tribal Areas.—(1) The provisions of the Fifth Schedule shall apply to the administration and control of the Scheduled Areas and Scheduled Tribes in any State ^{1***} other than ²[the States of Assam, ³[, ⁴[Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram]]].

(2) The provisions of the Sixth Schedule shall apply to the administration of the tribal areas in ²[the States of Assam, ³[, ⁵[Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram]]].

⁶[244A. Formation of an autonomous State comprising certain tribal areas in Assam and creation of local Legislature or Council of Ministers or both therefor.]—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, Parliament may, by law, form within the State of Assam an autonomous State comprising (whether wholly or in part) all or any of the tribal areas specified in ⁷[Part I] of the table appended to paragraph 20 of the Sixth Schedule and create therefor—

(a) a body, whether elected or partly nominated and partly elected, to function as a Legislature for the autonomous State, or

(b) a Council of Ministers,

or both with such constitution, powers and functions, in each case, as may be specified in the law.

(2) Any such law as is referred to in clause (1) may, in particular,—

1. The words and letters "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
2. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71, for "the State of Assam" (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
3. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 2, for "and Meghalaya" (w.e.f. 1-4-1985).
4. Subs. by the State of Mizoram Act, 1986 (34 of 1986), s. 39, for "Meghalaya and Tripura" (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
5. Subs. by s. 39, *ibid.*, for "Meghalaya and Tripura and the Union territory of Mizoram". (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
6. Ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-second Amendment) Act, 1969, s. 2 (w.e.f. 25-9-1969).
7. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71, for "Part A" (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part X.—The Scheduled and Tribal Areas)

(a) specify the matters enumerated in the State List or the Concurrent List with respect to which the Legislature of the autonomous State shall have power to make laws for the whole or any part thereof, whether to the exclusion of the Legislature of the State of Assam or otherwise;

(b) define the matters with respect to which the executive power of the autonomous State shall extend;

(c) provide that any tax levied by the State of Assam shall be assigned to the autonomous State in so far as the proceeds thereof are attributable to the autonomous State;

(d) provide that any reference to a State in any article of this Constitution shall be construed as including a reference to the autonomous State; and

(e) make such supplemental, incidental and consequential provisions as may be deemed necessary.

(3) An amendment of any such law as aforesaid in so far as such amendment relates to any of the matters specified in sub-clause (a) or sub-clause (b) of clause (2) shall have no effect unless the amendment is passed in each House of Parliament by not less than two-thirds of the members present and voting.

(4) Any such law as is referred to in this article shall not be deemed to be an amendment of this Constitution for the purposes of article 368 notwithstanding that it contains any provision which amends or has the effect of amending this Constitution.]

PART XI
RELATIONS BETWEEN THE UNION AND THE STATES
CHAPTER I.—LEGISLATIVE RELATIONS

Distribution of Legislative Powers

245. Extent of laws made by Parliament and by the Legislatures of States.—(1) Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, Parliament may make laws for the whole or any part of the territory of India, and the Legislature of a State may make laws for the whole or any part of the State.

(2) No law made by Parliament shall be deemed to be invalid on the ground that it would have extra-territorial operation.

246. Subject-matter of laws made by Parliament and by the Legislatures of States.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in clauses (2) and (3), Parliament has exclusive power to make laws with respect to any of the matters enumerated in List I in the Seventh Schedule (in this Constitution referred to as the “Union List”).

(2) Notwithstanding anything in clause (3), Parliament, and, subject to clause (1), the Legislature of any State ^{1***} also, have power to make laws with respect to any of the matters enumerated in List III in the Seventh Schedule (in this Constitution referred to as the “Concurrent List”).

(3) Subject to clauses (1) and (2), the Legislature of any State ^{1***} has exclusive power to make laws for such State or any part thereof with respect to any of the matters enumerated in List II in the Seventh Schedule (in this Constitution referred to as the “State List”).

(4) Parliament has power to make laws with respect to any matter for any part of the territory of India not included ²[in a State] notwithstanding that such matter is a matter enumerated in the State List.

³[246A. Special provision with respect to goods and services tax.]—(1) Notwithstanding anything contained in articles 246 and 254, Parliament, and, subject to clause (2), the Legislature of every State, have power to make laws with respect to goods and services tax imposed by the Union or by such State.

-
1. The words and letters "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 2. Subs. by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.*, for "in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 2 (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

(Part XI.—Relations between the Union and the States)

(2) Parliament has exclusive power to make laws with respect to goods and services tax where the supply of goods, or of services, or both takes place in the course of inter-State trade or commerce.

Explanation.—The provisions of this article, shall, in respect of goods and services tax referred to in clause (5) of article 279A, take effect from the date recommended by the Goods and Services Tax Council.]

247. Power of Parliament to provide for the establishment of certain additional courts.—Notwithstanding anything in this Chapter, Parliament may by law provide for the establishment of any additional courts for the better administration of laws made by Parliament or of any existing laws with respect to a matter enumerated in the Union List.

248. Residuary powers of legislation.—(1) ¹[Subject to article 246A, Parliament] has exclusive power to make any law with respect to any matter not enumerated in the Concurrent List or State List.

(2) Such power shall include the power of making any law imposing a tax not mentioned in either of those Lists.

249. Power of Parliament to legislate with respect to a matter in the State List in the national interest.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in the foregoing provisions of this Chapter, if the Council of States has declared by resolution supported by not less than two-thirds of the members present and voting that it is necessary or expedient in the national interest that Parliament should make laws with respect to ²[goods and services tax provided under article 246A or] any matter enumerated in the State List specified in the resolution, it shall be lawful for Parliament to make laws for the whole or any part of the territory of India with respect to that matter while the resolution remains in force.

(2) A resolution passed under clause (1) shall remain in force for such period not exceeding one year as may be specified therein:

Provided that, if and so often as a resolution approving the continuance in force of any such resolution is passed in the manner provided in clause (1), such resolution shall continue in force for a further period of one year from the date on which under this clause it would otherwise have ceased to be in force.

(3) A law made by Parliament which Parliament would not but for the passing of a resolution under clause (1) have been competent to make shall, to the extent of the incompetency, cease to have effect on the expiration of a period of six months after the resolution has ceased to be in force, except as respects things done or omitted to be done before the expiration of the said period.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 3, for "Parliament" (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

2. Ins. by s. 4, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

(Part XI.—Relations between the Union and the States)

250. Power of Parliament to legislate with respect to any matter in the State List if a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Chapter, Parliament shall, while a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation, have power to make laws for the whole or any part of the territory of India with respect to ¹[goods and services tax provided under article 246A or] any of the matters enumerated in the State List.

(2) A law made by Parliament which Parliament would not but for the issue of a Proclamation of Emergency have been competent to make shall, to the extent of the incompetency, cease to have effect on the expiration of a period of six months after the Proclamation has ceased to operate, except as respects things done or omitted to be done before the expiration of the said period.

251. Inconsistency between laws made by Parliament under articles 249 and 250 and laws made by the Legislatures of States.—Nothing in articles 249 and 250 shall restrict the power of the Legislature of a State to make any law which under this Constitution it has power to make, but if any provision of a law made by the Legislature of a State is repugnant to any provision of a law made by Parliament which Parliament has under either of the said articles power to make, the law made by Parliament, whether passed before or after the law made by the Legislature of the State, shall prevail, and the law made by the Legislature of the State shall to the extent of the repugnancy, but so long only as the law made by Parliament continues to have effect, be inoperative.

252. Power of Parliament to legislate for two or more States by consent and adoption of such legislation by any other State.—(1) If it appears to the Legislatures of two or more States to be desirable that any of the matters with respect to which Parliament has no power to make laws for the States except as provided in articles 249 and 250 should be regulated in such States by Parliament by law, and if resolutions to that effect are passed by all the Houses of the Legislatures of those States, it shall be lawful for Parliament to pass an act for regulating that matter accordingly, and any Act so passed shall apply to such States and to any other State by which it is adopted afterwards by resolution passed in that behalf by the House or, where there are two Houses, by each of the Houses of the Legislature of that State.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 5 (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

(Part XI.—Relations between the Union and the States)

(2) Any Act so passed by Parliament may be amended or repealed by an Act of Parliament passed or adopted in like manner but shall not, as respects any State to which it applies, be amended or repealed by an Act of the Legislature of that State.

253. Legislation for giving effect to international agreements.—Notwithstanding anything in the foregoing provisions of this Chapter, Parliament has power to make any law for the whole or any part of the territory of India for implementing any treaty, agreement or convention with any other country or countries or any decision made at any international conference, association or other body.

254. Inconsistency between laws made by Parliament and laws made by the Legislatures of States.—(1) If any provision of a law made by the Legislature of a State is repugnant to any provision of a law made by Parliament which Parliament is competent to enact, or to any provision of an existing law with respect to one of the matters enumerated in the Concurrent List, then, subject to the provisions of clause (2), the law made by Parliament, whether passed before or after the law made by the Legislature of such State, or, as the case may be, the existing law, shall prevail and the law made by the Legislature of the State shall, to the extent of the repugnancy, be void.

(2) Where a law made by the Legislature of a State ^{1***} with respect to one of the matters enumerated in the Concurrent List contains any provision repugnant to the provisions of an earlier law made by Parliament or an existing law with respect to that matter, then, the law so made by the Legislature of such State shall, if it has been reserved for the consideration of the President and has received his assent, prevail in that State:

Provided that nothing in this clause shall prevent Parliament from enacting at any time any law with respect to the same matter including a law adding to, amending, varying or repealing the law so made by the Legislature of the State.

255. Requirements as to recommendations and previous sanctions to be regarded as matters of procedure only.—No Act of Parliament or of the Legislature of a State ^{1***}, and no provision in any such Act, shall be invalid by reason only that some recommendation or previous sanction required by this Constitution was not given, if assent to that Act was given—

1. The words and letters "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XI.—Relations between the Union and the States)

- (a) where the recommendation required was that of the Governor, either by the Governor or by the President;
- (b) where the recommendation required was that of the Rajpramukh, either by the Rajpramukh or by the President;
- (c) where the recommendation or previous sanction required was that of the President, by the President.

CHAPTER II.—ADMINISTRATIVE RELATIONS

General

256. Obligation of States and the Union.—The executive power of every State shall be so exercised as to ensure compliance with the laws made by Parliament and any existing laws which apply in that State, and the executive power of the Union shall extend to the giving of such directions to a State as may appear to the Government of India to be necessary for that purpose:

257. Control of the Union over States in certain cases.—(1) The executive power of every State shall be so exercised as not to impede or prejudice the exercise of the executive power of the Union, and the executive power of the Union shall extend to the giving of such directions to a State as may appear to the Government of India to be necessary for that purpose.

(2) The executive power of the Union shall also extend to the giving of directions to a State as to the construction and maintenance of means of communication declared in the direction to be of national or military importance:

Provided that nothing in this clause shall be taken as restricting the power of Parliament to declare highways or waterways to be national highways or national waterways or the power of the Union with respect to the highways or waterways so declared or the power of the Union to construct and maintain means of communication as part of its functions with respect to naval, military and air force works.

(3) The executive power of the Union shall also extend to the giving of directions to a State as to the measures to be taken for the protection of the railways within the State.

(4) Where in carrying out any direction given to a State under clause (2) as to the construction or maintenance of any means of communication or under clause (3) as to the measures to be taken for the protection of any railway, costs have been incurred in excess of those which would have been incurred in the discharge of the normal duties of the State if such direction had not been given, there shall be paid by the Government of India to the State such sum as may be agreed, or, in default of agreement, as may be determined by an arbitrator appointed by the Chief Justice of India, in respect of the extra costs so incurred by the State.

(Part XI.—Relations between the Union and the States)

¹[**257A.** *[Assistance to States by deployment of armed forces or other forces of the Union.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 33 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).]*

258. Power of the Union to confer powers, etc., on States in certain cases.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, the President may, with the consent of the Government of a State, entrust either conditionally or unconditionally to that Government or to its officers functions in relation to any matter to which the executive power of the Union extends.

(2) A law made by Parliament which applies in any State may, notwithstanding that it relates to a matter with respect to which the Legislature of the State has no power to make laws, confer powers and impose duties, or authorise the conferring of powers and the imposition of duties, upon the State or officers and authorities thereof.

(3) Where by virtue of this article powers and duties have been conferred or imposed upon a State or officers or authorities thereof, there shall be paid by the Government of India to the State such sum as may be agreed, or, in default of agreement, as may be determined by an arbitrator appointed by the Chief Justice of India, in respect of any extra costs of administration incurred by the State in connection with the exercise of those powers and duties.

²[**258A. Power of the States to entrust functions to the Union.**—Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, the Governor of a State may, with the consent of the Government of India, entrust either conditionally or unconditionally to that Government or to its officers functions in relation to any matter to which the executive power of the State extends.]

[259. Armed Forces in States in Part B of the First Schedule.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

260. Jurisdiction of the Union in relation to territories outside India.—The Government of India may by agreement with the Government of any territory not being part of the territory of India undertake any executive, legislative or judicial functions vested in the Government of such territory, but every such agreement shall be subject to, and governed by, any law relating to the exercise of foreign jurisdiction for the time being in force.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 43 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

2. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 18 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part XI.—Relations between the Union and the States)

261. Public acts, records and judicial proceedings.—(1) Full faith and credit shall be given throughout the territory of India to public acts, records and judicial proceedings of the Union and of every State.

(2) The manner in which and the conditions under which the acts, records and proceedings referred to in clause (1) shall be proved and the effect thereof determined shall be as provided by law made by Parliament.

(3) Final judgments or orders delivered or passed by civil courts in any part of the territory of India shall be capable of execution anywhere within that territory according to law.

Disputes relating to Waters

262. Adjudication of disputes relating to waters of inter-State rivers or river valleys.—(1) Parliament may by law provide for the adjudication of any dispute or complaint with respect to the use, distribution or control of the waters of, or in, any inter-State river or river valley.

(2) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, Parliament may by law provide that neither the Supreme Court nor any other court shall exercise jurisdiction in respect of any such dispute or complaint as is referred to in clause (1).

Co-ordination between States

263. Provisions with respect to an inter-State Council.—If at any time it appears to the President that the public interests would be served by the establishment of a Council charged with the duty of—

(a) inquiring into and advising upon disputes which may have arisen between States;

(b) investigating and discussing subjects in which some or all of the States, or the Union and one or more of the States, have a common interest; or

(c) making recommendations upon any such subject and, in particular, recommendations for the better co-ordination of policy and action with respect to that subject,

it shall be lawful for the President by order to establish such a Council, and to define the nature of the duties to be performed by it and its organisation and procedure.

PART XII
FINANCE, PROPERTY, CONTRACTS AND SUITS
CHAPTER I.—FINANCE

General

¹[**264. Interpretation.**—In this Part, “Finance Commission” means a Finance Commission constituted under article 280.]

265. Taxes not to be imposed save by authority of law.—No tax shall be levied or collected except by authority of law.

266. Consolidated Funds and public accounts of India and of the States.—(1) Subject to the provisions of article 267 and to the provisions of this Chapter with respect to the assignment of the whole or part of the net proceeds of certain taxes and duties to States, all revenues received by the Government of India, all loans raised by that Government by the issue of treasury bills, loans or ways and means advances and all moneys received by that Government in repayment of loans shall form one consolidated fund to be entitled “the Consolidated Fund of India”, and all revenues received by the Government of a State, all loans raised by that Government by the issue of treasury bills, loans or ways and means advances and all moneys received by that Government in repayment of loans shall form one consolidated fund to be entitled “the Consolidated Fund of the State”.

(2) All other public moneys received by or on behalf of the Government of India or the Government of a State shall be credited to the public account of India or the public account of the State, as the case may be.

(3) No moneys out of the Consolidated Fund of India or the Consolidated Fund of a State shall be appropriated except in accordance with law and for the purposes and in the manner provided in this Constitution.

267. Contingency Fund.—(1) Parliament may by law establish a Contingency Fund in the nature of an imprest to be entitled “the Contingency Fund of India” into which shall be paid from time to time such sums as may be determined by such law, and the said Fund shall be placed at the disposal of the President to enable advances to be made by him out of such Fund for the purposes of meeting unforeseen expenditure pending authorisation of such expenditure by Parliament by law under article 115 or article 116.

1 Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch., for art. 264 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(2) The Legislature of a State may by law establish a Contingency Fund in the nature of an imprest to be entitled "the Contingency Fund of the State" into which shall be paid from time to time such sums as may be determined by such law, and the said Fund shall be placed at the disposal of the Governor^{1***} of the State to enable advances to be made by him out of such Fund for the purposes of meeting unforeseen expenditure pending authorisation of such expenditure by the Legislature of the State by law under article 205 or article 206.

Distribution of Revenues between the Union and the States

268. Duties levied by the Union but collected and appropriated by the States.—(1) Such stamp duties^{2***} as are mentioned in the Union List shall be levied by the Government of India but shall be collected—

- (a) in the case where such duties are leviable within any³[Union territory], by the Government of India, and
- (b) in other cases, by the States within which such duties are respectively leviable.

(2) The proceeds in any financial year of any such duty leviable within any State shall not form part of the Consolidated Fund of India, but shall be assigned to that State.

⁴268A. [Service tax levied by Union and collected and appropriated by the Union and the States.]—Omitted by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 7 (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

-
- 1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 - 2. The words "and such duties of excise on medicinal and toilet preparations" omitted by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 6, (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).
 - 3. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch., for "State Specified in Part C of the First Schedule" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 - 4. Ins. by the Constitution (Eighty-eighth Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2 (date not notified).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

269. Taxes levied and collected by the Union but assigned to the States.—¹[(1) Taxes on the sale or purchase of goods and taxes on the consignment of goods ²[except as provided in article 269A] shall be levied and collected by the Government of India but shall be assigned and shall be deemed to have been assigned to the States on or after the 1st day of April, 1996 in the manner provided in clause (2).

Explanation.—For the purposes of this clause,—

(a) the expression "taxes on the sale or purchase of goods" shall mean taxes on sale or purchase of goods other than newspapers, where such sale or purchase takes place in the course of inter-State trade or commerce;

(b) the expression "taxes on the consignment of goods" shall mean taxes on the consignment of goods (whether the consignment is to the person making it or to any other person), where such consignment takes place in the course of inter-State trade or commerce.

(2) The net proceeds in any financial year of any such tax, except in so far as those proceeds represent proceeds attributable to Union territories, shall not form part of the Consolidated Fund of India, but shall be assigned to the States within which that tax is leviable in that year, and shall be distributed among those States in accordance with such principles of distribution as may be formulated by Parliament by law.]

³[(3) Parliament may by law formulate principles for determining when a ⁴[sale or purchase of, or consignment of goods] takes place in the course of inter-State trade or commerce.]

⁵[269A. Levy and collection of goods and services tax in course of inter-State trade or commerce.]—(1) Goods and services tax on supplies in the course of inter-State trade or commerce shall be levied and collected by the Government of India and such tax shall be apportioned between the Union and the States in the manner as may be provided by Parliament by law on the recommendations of the Goods and Services Tax Council.

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Eightieth Amendment) Act, 2000. s. 2, for cl. (1) and (2) (w.e.f. 9-6-2000).
 2. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016 s. 8, (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Sixth Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 3 (w.e.f. 11-9-1956).
 4. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1982. s. 2, for "sale or purchase of goods" (w.e.f. 2-2-1983).
 5. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 9 (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

Explanation.—For the purposes of this clause, supply of goods, or of services, or both in the course of import into the territory of India shall be deemed to be supply of goods, or of services, or both in the course of inter-State trade or commerce.

(2) The amount apportioned to a State under clause (1) shall not form part of the Consolidated Fund of India.

(3) Where an amount collected as tax levied under clause (1) has been used for payment of the tax levied by a State under article 246A, such amount shall not form part of the Consolidated Fund of India.

(4) Where an amount collected as tax levied by a State under article 246A has been used for payment of the tax levied under clause (1), such amount shall not form part of the Consolidated Fund of the State.

(5) Parliament may, by law, formulate the principles for determining the place of supply, and when a supply of goods, or of services, or both takes place in the course of inter-State trade or commerce.]

¹[270. Taxes levied and distributed between the Union and the States.]—(1) All taxes and duties referred to in the Union List, except the duties and taxes referred to in ²[articles 268, 269 and 269A], respectively, surcharge on taxes and duties referred to in article 271 and any cess levied for specific purposes under any law made by Parliament shall be levied and collected by the Government of India and shall be distributed between the Union and the States in the manner provided in clause (2).

³[(1A) The tax collected by the Union under clause (1) of article 246A shall also be distributed between the Union and the States in the manner provided in clause (2).]

(1B) The tax levied and collected by the Union under clause (2) of article 246A and article 269A, which has been used for payment of the tax levied by the Union under clause (1) of article 246A, and the amount apportioned to the Union under clause (1) of article 269A, shall also be distributed between the Union and the States in the manner provided in clause (2).]

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Eightieth Amendment) Act, 2000, s. 3, for art. 270 (w.e.f. 1-4-1996).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-eighth Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 3, for “articles 268 and 269” (not enforced) and further subs. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 10, for “arts. 268, 268A and 269” (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

3. Ins. by s. 10, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

(2) Such percentage, as may be prescribed, of the net proceeds of any such tax or duty in any financial year shall not form part of the Consolidated Fund of India, but shall be assigned to the States within which that tax or duty is leviable in that year, and shall be distributed among those States in such manner and from such time as may be prescribed in the manner provided in clause (3).

(3) In this article, "prescribed" means,—

(i) until a Finance Commission has been constituted, prescribed by the President by order, and

(ii) after a Finance Commission has been constituted, prescribed by the President by order after considering the recommendations of the Finance Commission.]

271. Surcharge on certain duties and taxes for purposes of the Union.—Notwithstanding anything in articles 269 and 270, Parliament may at any time increase any of the duties or taxes referred to in those articles¹ [except the goods and services tax under article 246A,] by a surcharge for purposes of the Union and the whole proceeds of any such surcharge shall form part of the Consolidated Fund of India.

[**272. Taxes which are levied and collected by the Union and may be distributed between the Union and the States.**]—Omitted by the Constitution (Eightieth Amendment) Act, 2000, s. 4. (w.e.f. 9-6-2000).

273. Grants in lieu of export duty on jute and jute products.—(1) There shall be charged on the Consolidated Fund of India in each year as grants-in-aid of the revenues of the States of Assam, Bihar,² [Odisha] and West Bengal, in lieu of assignment of any share of the net proceeds in each year of export duty on jute and jute products to those States, such sums as may be prescribed.

(2) The sums so prescribed shall continue to be charged on the Consolidated Fund of India so long as any export duty on jute or jute products continues to be levied by the Government of India or until the expiration of ten years from the commencement of this Constitution whichever is earlier.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 11 (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

2. Subs. by the Orissa (Alteration of Name) Act, 2011 (15 of 2011), s. 5, for "Orissa" (w.e.f. 1-11-2011).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

(3) In this article, the expression “prescribed” has the same meaning as in article 270.

274. Prior recommendation of President required to Bills affecting taxation in which States are interested.—(1) No Bill or amendment which imposes or varies any tax or duty in which States are interested, or which varies the meaning of the expression “agricultural income” as defined for the purposes of the enactments relating to Indian income-tax, or which affects the principles on which under any of the foregoing provisions of this Chapter moneys are or may be distributable to States, or which imposes any such surcharge for the purposes of the Union as is mentioned in the foregoing provisions of this Chapter, shall be introduced or moved in either House of Parliament except on the recommendation of the President.

(2) In this article, the expression “tax or duty in which States are interested” means—

(a) a tax or duty the whole or part of the net proceeds whereof are assigned to any State; or

(b) a tax or duty by reference to the net proceeds whereof sums are for the time being payable out of the Consolidated Fund of India to any State.

275. Grants from the Union to certain States.—(1) Such sums as Parliament may by law provide shall be charged on the Consolidated Fund of India in each year as grants-in-aid of the revenues of such States as Parliament may determine to be in need of assistance, and different sums may be fixed for different States:

Provided that there shall be paid out of the Consolidated Fund of India as grants-in-aid of the revenues of a State such capital and recurring sums as may be necessary to enable that State to meet the costs of such schemes of development as may be undertaken by the State with the approval of the Government of India for the purpose of promoting the welfare of the Scheduled Tribes in that State or raising the level of administration of the Scheduled Areas therein to that of the administration of the rest of the areas of that State:

Provided further that there shall be paid out of the Consolidated Fund of India as grants-in-aid of the revenues of the State of Assam sums, capital and recurring, equivalent to—

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

(a) the average excess of expenditure over the revenues during the two years immediately preceding the commencement of this Constitution in respect of the administration of the tribal areas specified in ¹[Part I] of the table appended to paragraph 20 of the Sixth Schedule; and

(b) the costs of such schemes of development as may be undertaken by that State with the approval of the Government of India for the purpose of raising the level of administration of the said areas to that of the administration of the rest of the areas of that State.

²[(1A) On and from the formation of the autonomous State under article 244A,—

(i) any sums payable under clause (a) of the second proviso to clause (1) shall, if the autonomous State comprises all the tribal areas referred to therein, be paid to the autonomous State, and, if the autonomous State comprises only some of those tribal areas, be apportioned between the State of Assam and the autonomous State as the President may, by order, specify;

(ii) there shall be paid out of the Consolidated Fund of India as grants-in-aid of the revenues of the autonomous State sums, capital and recurring, equivalent to the costs of such schemes of development as may be undertaken by the autonomous State with the approval of the Government of India for the purpose of raising the level of administration of that State to that of the administration of the rest of the State of Assam.]

(2) Until provision is made by Parliament under clause (1), the powers conferred on Parliament under that clause shall be exercisable by the President by order and any order made by the President under this clause shall have effect subject to any provision so made by Parliament:

Provided that after a Finance Commission has been constituted no order shall be made under this clause by the President except after considering the recommendations of the Finance Commission.

276. Taxes on professions, trades, callings and employments.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in article 246, no law of the Legislature of a State relating to taxes for the benefit of the State or of a municipality, district board, local board or other local authority therein in respect of professions, trades, callings or employments shall be invalid on the ground that it relates to a tax on income.

1. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971) s. 71, for "Part A" (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

2. Ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-second Amendment) Act, 1969, s. 3 (w.e.f. 25-9-1969).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

(2) The total amount payable in respect of any one person to the State or to any one municipality, district board, local board or other local authority in the State by way of taxes on professions, trades, callings and employments shall not exceed¹ [two thousand and five hundred rupees] per annum.

2* * * *

(3) The power of the Legislature of a State to make laws as aforesaid with respect to taxes on professions, trades, callings and employments shall not be construed as limiting in any way the power of Parliament to make laws with respect to taxes on income accruing from or arising out of professions, trades, callings and employments.

277. Savings.—Any taxes, duties, cesses or fees which, immediately before the commencement of this Constitution, were being lawfully levied by the Government of any State or by any municipality or other local authority or body for the purposes of the State, municipality, district or other local area may, notwithstanding that those taxes, duties, cesses or fees are mentioned in the Union List, continue to be levied and to be applied to the same purposes until provision to the contrary is made by Parliament by law.

278. [Agreement with States in Part B of the First Schedule with regard to certain financial matters].—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch.(w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

279. Calculation of “net proceeds”, etc.—(1) In the foregoing provisions of this Chapter, “net proceeds” means in relation to any tax or duty the proceeds thereof reduced by the cost of collection, and for the purposes of those provisions the net proceeds of any tax or duty, or of any part of any tax or duty, in or attributable to any area shall be ascertained and certified by the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India, whose certificate shall be final.

(2) Subject as aforesaid, and to any other express provision of this Chapter, a law made by Parliament or an order of the President may, in any case where under this Part the proceeds of any duty or tax are, or may be, assigned to any State, provide for the manner in which the proceeds are to be calculated, for the time from or at which and the manner in which any payments are to be made, for the making of adjustments between one financial year and another, and for any other incidental or ancillary matters.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Sixtieth Amendment) Act, 1988, s. 2, for "two hundred and fifty rupees" (w.e.f. 20-12-1988).

2. Proviso omitted by s.2, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 20-12-1988).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

¹[**279A. Goods and Services Tax Council.**—(1) The President shall, within sixty days from the date of commencement of the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, by order, constitute a Council to be called the Goods and Services Tax Council.

(2) The Goods and Services Tax Council shall consist of the following members, namely:—

(a) the Union Finance Minister — Chairperson;

(b) the Union Minister of State in charge of Revenue or Finance — Member;

(c) the Minister in charge of Finance or Taxation or any other Minister nominated by each State Government — Members.

(3) The Members of the Goods and Services Tax Council referred to in sub-clause (c) of clause (2) shall, as soon as may be, choose one amongst themselves to be the Vice-Chairperson of the Council for such period as they may decide.

(4) The Goods and Services Tax Council shall make recommendations to the Union and the States on—

(a) the taxes, cesses and surcharges levied by the Union, the States and the local bodies which may be subsumed in the goods and services tax;

(b) the goods and services that may be subjected to, or exempted from, the goods and services tax;

(c) model Goods and Services Tax Laws, principles of levy, apportionment of Goods and Services Tax levied on supplies in the course of inter-State trade or commerce under article 269A and the principles that govern the place of supply;

(d) the threshold limit of turnover below which goods and services may be exempted from goods and services tax;

(e) the rates including floor rates with bands of goods and services tax;

(f) any special rate or rates for a specified period, to raise additional resources during any natural calamity or disaster;

1. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 12 (w.e.f. 12-9-2016).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

(g) special provision with respect to the States of Arunachal Pradesh, Assam, Jammu and Kashmir, Manipur, Meghalaya, Mizoram, Nagaland, Sikkim, Tripura, Himachal Pradesh and Uttarakhand; and

(h) any other matter relating to the goods and services tax, as the Council may decide.

(5) The Goods and Services Tax Council shall recommend the date on which the goods and services tax be levied on petroleum crude, high speed diesel, motor spirit (commonly known as petrol), natural gas and aviation turbine fuel.

(6) While discharging the functions conferred by this article, the Goods and Services Tax Council shall be guided by the need for a harmonised structure of goods and services tax and for the development of a harmonised national market for goods and services.

(7) One-half of the total number of Members of the Goods and Services Tax Council shall constitute the quorum at its meetings.

(8) The Goods and Services Tax Council shall determine the procedure in the performance of its functions.

(9) Every decision of the Goods and Services Tax Council shall be taken at a meeting, by a majority of not less than three-fourths of the weighted votes of the members present and voting, in accordance with the following principles, namely:—

(a) the vote of the Central Government shall have a weightage of one-third of the total votes cast; and

(b) the votes of all the State Governments taken together shall have a weightage of two-thirds of the total votes cast, in that meeting.

(10) No act or proceedings of the Goods and Services Tax Council shall be invalid merely by reason of—

(a) any vacancy in, or any defect in, the constitution of the Council; or

(b) any defect in the appointment of a person as a Member of the Council; or

(c) any procedural irregularity of the Council not affecting the merits of the case.

(11) The Goods and Services Tax Council shall establish a mechanism to adjudicate any dispute—

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

(a) between the Government of India and one or more States; or

(b) between the Government of India and any State or States on one side and one or more other States on the other side; or

(c) between two or more States,

arising out of the recommendations of the Council or implementation thereof.]

280. Finance Commission.—(1) The President shall, within two years from the commencement of this Constitution and thereafter at the expiration of every fifth year or at such earlier time as the President considers necessary, by order constitute a Finance Commission which shall consist of a Chairman and four other members to be appointed by the President.

(2) Parliament may by law determine the qualifications which shall be requisite for appointment as members of the Commission and the manner in which they shall be selected.

(3) It shall be the duty of the Commission to make recommendations to the President as to—

(a) the distribution between the Union and the States of the net proceeds of taxes which are to be, or may be, divided between them under this Chapter and the allocation between the States of the respective shares of such proceeds;

(b) the principles which should govern the grants-in-aid of the revenues of the States out of the Consolidated Fund of India;

¹[(bb) the measures needed to augment the Consolidated Fund of a State to supplement the resources of the Panchayats in the State on the basis of the recommendations made by the Finance Commission of the State;]

²[(c) the measures needed to augment the Consolidated Fund of a State to supplement the resources of the Municipalities in the State on the basis of the recommendations made by the Finance Commission of the State;]

³[(d)] any other matter referred to the Commission by the President in the interests of sound finance.

(4) The Commission shall determine their procedure and shall have such powers in the performance of their functions as Parliament may by law confer on them.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventy-third Amendment) Act, 1992, s. 3 (w.e.f. 24-4-1993).

2. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventy-fourth Amendment) Act, 1992, s. 3 (w.e.f. 1-6-1993).

3. Sub-clause (c) re-lettered as sub-clause (d) by s. 3, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-6-1993).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

281. Recommendations of the Finance Commission.—The President shall cause every recommendation made by the Finance Commission under the provisions of this Constitution together with an explanatory memorandum as to the action taken thereon to be laid before each House of Parliament.

Miscellaneous Financial Provisions

282. Expenditure defrayable by the Union or a State out of its revenues.—The Union or a State may make any grants for any public purpose, notwithstanding that the purpose is not one with respect to which Parliament or the Legislature of the State, as the case may be, may make laws.

283. Custody, etc., of Consolidated Funds, Contingency Funds and moneys credited to the public accounts.—(1) The custody of the Consolidated Fund of India and the Contingency Fund of India, the payment of moneys into such Funds, the withdrawal of moneys therefrom, the custody of public moneys other than those credited to such Funds received by or on behalf of the Government of India, their payment into the public account of India and the withdrawal of moneys from such account and all other matters connected with or ancillary to matters aforesaid shall be regulated by law made by Parliament, and, until provision in that behalf is so made, shall be regulated by rules made by the President.

(2) The custody of the Consolidated Fund of a State and the Contingency Fund of a State, the payment of moneys into such Funds, the withdrawal of moneys therefrom, the custody of public moneys other than those credited to such Funds received by or on behalf of the Government of the State, their payment into the public account of the State and the withdrawal of moneys from such account and all other matters connected with or ancillary to matters aforesaid shall be regulated by law made by the Legislature of the State, and, until provision in that behalf is so made, shall be regulated by rules made by the Governor^{1***} of the State.

284. Custody of suitors' deposits and other moneys received by public servants and courts.—All moneys received by or deposited with—

(a) any officer employed in connection with the affairs of the Union or of a State in his capacity as such, other than revenues or public moneys raised or received by the Government of India or the Government of the State, as the case may be; or

(b) any court within the territory of India to the credit of any cause, matter, account or persons,

1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

shall be paid into the public account of India or the public account of State, as the case may be.

285. Exemption of property of the Union from State taxation.—(1) The property of the Union shall, save in so far as Parliament may by law otherwise provide, be exempt from all taxes imposed by a State or by any authority within a State.

(2) Nothing in clause (1) shall, until Parliament by law otherwise provides, prevent any authority within a State from levying any tax on any property of the Union to which such property was immediately before the commencement of this Constitution liable or treated as liable, so long as that tax continues to be levied in that State.

286. Restrictions as to imposition of tax on the sale or purchase of goods.—(1) No law of a State shall impose, or authorise the imposition of, a tax on ¹[the supply of goods or of services or both, where such supply takes place]—

(a) outside the State; or

(b) in the course of the import of the ²[goods or services or both] into, or export of the ²[goods or services or both] out of, the territory of India.

³[* * * *]

⁴[(2) Parliament may by law formulate principles for determining when a ⁵[supply of goods or of services or both] in any of the ways mentioned in clause (1).]

⁶[(3) * * * *]

287. Exemption from taxes on electricity.—Save in so far as Parliament may by law otherwise provide, no law of a State shall impose, or authorise the imposition of, a tax on the consumption or sale of electricity

1. Subs. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 13, (i)(A) for "the sale or purchase of goods where such sale or purchase takes place" (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

2. Subs. by s. 13 (i)(B), *ibid.*, for "goods" (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

3. *Explanation* to cl. (1) omitted by the Constitution (Sixth Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 4 (w.e.f. 11-9-1956).

4. Subs. by s.4, *ibid.*, for cls. (2) and (3) (w.e.f. 11-9-1956).

5. Subs. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 13(ii), for "sale or purchase of goods takes place" (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

6. Cl. (3) omitted by s. 13 (iii), *ibid.* (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

(whether produced by a Government or other persons) which is—

(a) consumed by the Government of India, or sold to the Government of India for consumption by that Government; or

(b) consumed in the construction, maintenance or operation of any railway by the Government of India or a railway company operating that railway, or sold to that Government or any such railway company for consumption in the construction, maintenance or operation of any railway,

and any such law imposing, or authorising the imposition of, a tax on the sale of electricity shall secure that the price of electricity sold to the Government of India for consumption by that Government, or to any such railway company as aforesaid for consumption in the construction, maintenance or operation of any railway, shall be less by the amount of the tax than the price charged to other consumers of a substantial quantity of electricity.

288. Exemption from taxation by States in respect of water or electricity in certain cases.—(1) Save so far as the President may by order otherwise provide, no law of a State in force immediately before the commencement of this Constitution shall impose, or authorise the imposition of, a tax in respect of any water or electricity stored, generated, consumed, distributed or sold by any authority established by any existing law or any law made by Parliament for regulating or developing any inter-State river or river-valley.

Explanation.—The expression “law of a State in force” in this clause shall include a law of a State passed or made before the commencement of this Constitution and not previously repealed, notwithstanding that it or parts of it may not be then in operation either at all or in particular areas.

(2) The Legislature of a State may by law impose, or authorise the imposition of, any such tax as is mentioned in clause (1), but no such law shall have any effect unless it has, after having been reserved for the consideration of the President, received his assent; and if any such law provides for the fixation of the rates and other incidents of such tax by means of rules or orders to be made under the law by any authority, the law shall provide for the previous consent of the President being obtained to the making of any such rule or order.

289. Exemption of property and income of a State from Union taxation.—(1) The property and income of a State shall be exempt from Union taxation.

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

(2) Nothing in clause (1) shall prevent the Union from imposing, or authorising the imposition of, any tax to such extent, if any, as Parliament may by law provide in respect of a trade or business of any kind carried on by, or on behalf of, the Government of a State, or any operations connected therewith, or any property used or occupied for the purposes of such trade or business, or any income accruing or arising in connection therewith.

(3) Nothing in clause (2) shall apply to any trade or business, or to any class of trade or business, which Parliament may by law declare to be incidental to the ordinary functions of Government.

290. Adjustment in respect of certain expenses and pensions.—Where under the provisions of this Constitution the expenses of any court or Commission, or the pension payable to or in respect of a person who has served before the commencement of this Constitution under the Crown in India or after such commencement in connection with the affairs of the Union or of a State, are charged on the Consolidated Fund of India or the Consolidated Fund of a State, then, if—

(a) in the case of a charge on the Consolidated Fund of India, the court or Commission serves any of the separate needs of a State, or the person has served wholly or in part in connection with the affairs of a State; or

(b) in the case of a charge on the Consolidated Fund of a State, the court or Commission serves any of the separate needs of the Union or another State, or the person has served wholly or in part in connection with the affairs of the Union or another State,

there shall be charged on and paid out of the Consolidated Fund of the State or, as the case may be, the Consolidated Fund of India or the Consolidated Fund of the other State, such contribution in respect of the expenses or pension as may be agreed, or as may in default of agreement be determined by an arbitrator to be appointed by the Chief Justice of India.

[290A. Annual payment to certain Devaswom Funds.]—A sum of forty-six lakhs and fifty thousand rupees shall be charged on, and paid out of, the Consolidated Fund of the State of Kerala every year to the Travancore Devaswom Fund; and a sum of thirteen lakhs and fifty thousand rupees shall be charged on, and paid out of, the Consolidated Fund of the State of ²[Tamil Nadu] every year to the Devaswom Fund established in that State for the maintenance of Hindu temples and shrines in the territories transferred to that State on the 1st day of November, 1956, from the State of Travancore-Cochin.]

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 19 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. Subs. by the Madras State (Alteration of Name) Act, 1968 (53 of 1968), s. 4, for "Madras" (w.e.f. 14-1-1969).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

291. [Privy purse sums of Rulers].—Omitted by the Constitution (Twenty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 2 (w.e.f. 28-12-1971).

CHAPTER II.—BORROWING

292. Borrowing by the Government of India.—The executive power of the Union extends to borrowing upon the security of the Consolidated Fund of India within such limits, if any, as may from time to time be fixed by Parliament by law and to the giving of guarantees within such limits, if any, as may be so fixed.

293. Borrowing by States.—(1) Subject to the provisions of this article, the executive power of a State extends to borrowing within the territory of India upon the security of the Consolidated Fund of the State within such limits, if any, as may from time to time be fixed by the Legislature of such State by law and to the giving of guarantees within such limits, if any, as may be so fixed.

(2) The Government of India may, subject to such conditions as may be laid down by or under any law made by Parliament, make loans to any State or, so long as any limits fixed under article 292 are not exceeded, give guarantees in respect of loans raised by any State, and any sums required for the purpose of making such loans shall be charged on the Consolidated Fund of India.

(3) A State may not without the consent of the Government of India raise any loan if there is still outstanding any part of a loan which has been made to the State by the Government of India or by its predecessor Government, or in respect of which a guarantee has been given by the Government of India or by its predecessor Government.

(4) A consent under clause (3) may be granted subject to such conditions, if any, as the Government of India may think fit to impose.

CHAPTER III.—PROPERTY, CONTRACTS, RIGHTS, LIABILITIES,

OBLIGATIONS AND SUITS

294. Succession to property, assets, rights, liabilities and obligations in certain cases.—As from the commencement of this Constitution—

(a) all property and assets which immediately before such commencement were vested in His Majesty for the purposes of the Government of the Dominion of India and all property and assets which immediately before such commencement were vested in His Majesty for the purposes of the Government of each Governor's Province shall vest respectively in the Union and the corresponding State; and

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

(b) all rights, liabilities and obligations of the Government of the Dominion of India and of the Government of each Governor's Province, whether arising out of any contract or otherwise, shall be the rights, liabilities and obligations respectively of the Government of India and the Government of each corresponding State,

subject to any adjustment made or to be made by reason of the creation before the commencement of this Constitution of the Dominion of Pakistan or of the Provinces of West Bengal, East Bengal, West Punjab and East Punjab.

295. Succession to property, assets, rights, liabilities and obligations in other cases.—(1) As from the commencement of this Constitution—

(a) all property and assets which immediately before such commencement were vested in any Indian State corresponding to a State specified in Part B of the First Schedule shall vest in the Union, if the purposes for which such property and assets were held immediately before such commencement will thereafter be purposes of the Union relating to any of the matters enumerated in the Union List, and

(b) all rights, liabilities and obligations of the Government of any Indian State corresponding to a State specified in Part B of the First Schedule, whether arising out of any contract or otherwise, shall be the rights, liabilities and obligations of the Government of India, if the purposes for which such rights were acquired or liabilities or obligations were incurred before such commencement will thereafter be purposes of the Government of India relating to any of the matters enumerated in the Union List,

subject to any agreement entered into in that behalf by the Government of India with the Government of that State.

(2) Subject as aforesaid, the Government of each State specified in Part B of the First Schedule shall, as from the commencement of this Constitution, be the successor of the Government of the corresponding Indian State as regards all property and assets and all rights, liabilities and obligations, whether arising out of any contract or otherwise, other than those referred to in clause (1).

296. Property accruing by escheat or lapse or as *bona vacantia*.—

Subject as hereinafter provided, any property in the territory of India which, if this Constitution had not come into operation, would have accrued to His Majesty or, as the case may be, to the Ruler of an Indian State by escheat or lapse, or as *bona vacantia* for want of a rightful owner, shall, if it is property situate in a State, vest in such State, and shall, in any other case, vest in the Union:

Provided that any property which at the date when it would have so accrued to His Majesty or to the Ruler of an Indian State was in the possession or under the control of the Government of India or the Government of a State shall, according as the purposes for which it was then used or held were purposes of the Union or of a State, vest in the Union or in that State.

Explanation.—In this article, the expressions “Ruler” and “Indian State” have the same meanings as in article 363.

¹[297. Things of value within territorial waters or continental shelf and resources of the exclusive economic zone to vest in the Union.]—(1) All lands, minerals and other things of value underlying the ocean within the territorial waters, or the continental shelf, or the exclusive economic zone, of India shall vest in the Union and be held for the purposes of the Union.

(2) All other resources of the exclusive economic zone of India shall also vest in the Union and be held for the purposes of the Union.

(3) The limits of the territorial waters, the continental shelf, the exclusive economic zone, and other maritime zones, of India shall be such as may be specified, from time to time, by or under any law made by Parliament.]

²[298. Power to carry on trade, etc.]—The executive power of the Union and of each State shall extend to the carrying on of any trade or business and to the acquisition, holding and disposal of property and the making of contracts for any purpose:

Provided that—

(a) the said executive power of the Union shall, in so far as such trade or business or such purpose is not one with respect to which Parliament may make laws, be subject in each State to legislation by the State; and

(b) the said executive power of each State shall, in so far as such trade or business or such purpose is not one with respect to which the State Legislature may make laws, be subject to legislation by Parliament.]

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Fortieth Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 2 (w.e.f. 27-5-1976).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 20 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part XII.—Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits)

299. Contracts.—(1) All contracts made in the exercise of the executive power of the Union or of a State shall be expressed to be made by the President, or by the Governor^{1***} of the State, as the case may be, and all such contracts and all assurances of property made in the exercise of that power shall be executed on behalf of the President or the Governor^{1***} by such persons and in such manner as he may direct or authorise.

(2) Neither the President nor the Governor^{2***} shall be personally liable in respect of any contract or assurance made or executed for the purposes of this Constitution, or for the purposes of any enactment relating to the Government of India heretofore in force, nor shall any person making or executing any such contract or assurance on behalf of any of them be personally liable in respect thereof.

300. Suits and proceedings.—(1) The Government of India may sue or be sued by the name of the Union of India and the Government of a State may sue or be sued by the name of the State and may, subject to any provisions which may be made by Act of Parliament or of the Legislature of such State enacted by virtue of powers conferred by this Constitution, sue or be sued in relation to their respective affairs in the like cases as the Dominion of India and the corresponding Provinces or the corresponding Indian States might have sued or been sued if this Constitution had not been enacted.

(2) If at the commencement of this Constitution—

(a) any legal proceedings are pending to which the Dominion of India is a party, the Union of India shall be deemed to be substituted for the Dominion in those proceedings; and

(b) any legal proceedings are pending to which a Province or an Indian State is a party, the corresponding State shall be deemed to be substituted for the Province or the Indian State in those proceedings.

³[CHAPTER IV.—RIGHT TO PROPERTY

300A. Persons not to be deprived of property save by authority of law.— No person shall be deprived of his property save by authority of law.]

1. The words "or the Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. The words "nor the Rajpramukh" omitted by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 34 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

PART XIII

TRADE, COMMERCE AND INTERCOURSE WITHIN THE TERRITORY OF INDIA

301. Freedom of trade, commerce and intercourse.—Subject to the other provisions of this Part, trade, commerce and intercourse throughout the territory of India shall be free.

302. Power of Parliament to impose restrictions on trade, commerce and intercourse.—Parliament may by law impose such restrictions on the freedom of trade, commerce or intercourse between one State and another or within any part of the territory of India as may be required in the public interest.

303. Restrictions on the legislative powers of the Union and of the States with regard to trade and commerce.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in article 302, neither Parliament nor the Legislature of a State shall have power to make any law giving, or authorising the giving of, any preference to one State over another, or making, or authorising the making of, any discrimination between one State and another, by virtue of any entry relating to trade and commerce in any of the Lists in the Seventh Schedule.

(2) Nothing in clause (1) shall prevent Parliament from making any law giving, or authorising the giving of, any preference or making, or authorising the making of, any discrimination if it is declared by such law that it is necessary to do so for the purpose of dealing with a situation arising from scarcity of goods in any part of the territory of India.

304. Restrictions on trade, commerce and intercourse among States.—Notwithstanding anything in article 301 or article 303, the Legislature of a State may by law—

(a) impose on goods imported from other States¹ [or the Union territories] any tax to which similar goods manufactured or produced in that State are subject, so, however, as not to discriminate between goods so imported and goods so manufactured or produced; and

(b) impose such reasonable restrictions on the freedom of trade, commerce or intercourse with or within that State as may be required in the public interest:

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part XIII.—Trade, Commerce and Intercourse within the Territory of India)

Provided that no Bill or amendment for the purposes of clause (b) shall be introduced or moved in the Legislature of a State without the previous sanction of the President.

[305. Saving of existing laws and laws providing for State monopolies.]—Nothing in articles 301 and 303 shall affect the provisions of any existing law except in so far as the President may by order otherwise direct; and nothing in article 301 shall affect the operation of any law made before the commencement of the Constitution (Fourth Amendment) Act, 1955, in so far as it relates to, or prevent Parliament or the Legislature of a State from making any law relating to, any such matter as is referred to in sub-clause (ii) of clause (6) of article 19.]

306. [Power of certain States in Part B of the First Schedule to impose restrictions on trade and commerce.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch.(w.e.f. 1-11-1956)

307. Appointment of authority for carrying out the purposes of articles 301 to 304.]—Parliament may by law appoint such authority as it considers appropriate for carrying out the purposes of articles 301, 302, 303 and 304, and confer on the authority so appointed such powers and such duties as it thinks necessary.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Fourth Amendment) Act, 1955, s. 4, for art. 305 (w.e.f. 27-4-1955).

PART XIV

SERVICES UNDER THE UNION AND THE STATES

CHAPTER I.— SERVICES

308. Interpretation.—In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires, the expression “State”¹[does not include the State of Jammu and Kashmir].

309. Recruitment and conditions of service of persons serving the Union or a State.—Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, Acts of the appropriate Legislature may regulate the recruitment, and conditions of service of persons appointed, to public services and posts in connection with the affairs of the Union or of any State:

Provided that it shall be competent for the President or such person as he may direct in the case of services and posts in connection with the affairs of the Union, and for the Governor^{2***} of a State or such person as he may direct in the case of services and posts in connection with the affairs of the State, to make rules regulating the recruitment, and the conditions of service of persons appointed, to such services and posts until provision in that behalf is made by or under an Act of the appropriate Legislature under this article, and any rules so made shall have effect subject to the provisions of any such Act.

310. Tenure of office of persons serving the Union or a State.—(1) Except as expressly provided by this Constitution, every person who is a member of a defence service or of a civil service of the Union or of an all-India service or holds any post connected with defence or any civil post under the Union holds office during the pleasure of the President, and every person who is a member of a civil service of a State or holds any civil post under a State holds office during the pleasure of the Governor^{3***} of the State.

(2) Notwithstanding that a person holding a civil post under the Union or a State holds office during the pleasure of the President or, as the case may be, of the Governor^{2***} of the State, any contract under which a person, not being a member of a defence service or of an all-India service or of a civil service of the Union or a State, is appointed under this Constitution to hold such a post may, if the President or the Governor^{2***}, as the case may be, deems it

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch., for "means a State specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 2. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by s.29 and Sch., *ibid* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 3. The words "or, as the case may be, the Rajpramukh" omitted by s.29 and Sch., *ibid*. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part XIV.—Services under the Union and the States)

necessary in order to secure the services of a person having special qualifications, provide for the payment to him of compensation, if before the expiration of an agreed period that post is abolished or he is, for reasons not connected with any misconduct on his part, required to vacate that post.

311. Dismissal, removal or reduction in rank of persons employed in civil capacities under the Union or a State.—(1) No person who is a member of a civil service of the Union or an all-India service or a civil service of a State or holds a civil post under the Union or a State shall be dismissed or removed by an authority subordinate to that by which he was appointed.

¹[(2) No such person as aforesaid shall be dismissed or removed or reduced in rank except after an inquiry in which he has been informed of the charges against him and given a reasonable opportunity of being heard in respect of those charges ^{2***}:

³[Provided that where it is proposed after such inquiry, to impose upon him any such penalty, such penalty may be imposed on the basis of the evidence adduced during such inquiry and it shall not be necessary to give such person any opportunity of making representation on the penalty proposed:

Provided further that this clause shall not apply—]

(a) where a person is dismissed or removed or reduced in rank on the ground of conduct which has led to his conviction on a criminal charge; or

(b) where the authority empowered to dismiss or remove a person or to reduce him in rank is satisfied that for some reason, to be recorded by that authority in writing, it is not reasonably practicable to hold such inquiry; or

(c) where the President or the Governor, as the case may be, is satisfied that in the interest of the security of the State it is not expedient to hold such inquiry.

(3) If, in respect of any such person as aforesaid, a question arises whether it is reasonably practicable to hold such inquiry as is referred to in clause (2), the decision thereon of the authority empowered to dismiss or remove such person or to reduce him in rank shall be final.]

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 10, for cl. (2) and (3) (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

2. Certain words omitted by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 44 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

3. Subs. by s. 44, *ibid.*, for certain words (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

(Part XIV.—Services under the Union and the States)

312. All-India services.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in ¹[Chapter VI of Part VI or Part XI], if the Council of States has declared by resolution supported by not less than two-thirds of the members present and voting that it is necessary or expedient in the national interest so to do, Parliament may by law provide for the creation of one or more all India services ²[(including an all-India judicial service)] common to the Union and the States, and, subject to the other provisions of this Chapter, regulate the recruitment, and the conditions of service of persons appointed, to any such service.

(2) The services known at the commencement of this Constitution as the Indian Administrative Service and the Indian Police Service shall be deemed to be services created by Parliament under this article.

²[(3) The all-India judicial service referred to in clause (1) shall not include any post inferior to that of a district judge as defined in article 236.]

(4) The law providing for the creation of the all-India judicial service aforesaid may contain such provisions for the amendment of Chapter VI of Part VI as may be necessary for giving effect to the provisions of that law and no such law shall be deemed to be an amendment of this Constitution for the purposes of article 368.]

³[312A. Power of Parliament to vary or revoke conditions of service of officers of certain services.]—(1) Parliament may by law—

(a) vary or revoke, whether prospectively or retrospectively, the conditions of services as respects remuneration, leave and pension and the rights as respects disciplinary matters of persons who, having been appointed by the Secretary of State or Secretary of State in Council to a civil service of the Crown in India before the commencement of this Constitution, continue on and after the commencement of the Constitution (Twenty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1972, to serve under the Government of India or of a State in any service or post;

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 45, for "Part XI" (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

2. Ins. by s. 45, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1972, s. 2 (w.e.f. 29-8-1972).

(Part XIV.—Services under the Union and the States)

(b) vary or revoke, whether prospectively or retrospectively, the conditions of service as respects pension of persons who, having been appointed by the Secretary of State or Secretary of State in Council to a civil service of the Crown in India before the commencement of this Constitution, retired or otherwise ceased to be in service at any time before the commencement of the Constitution (Twenty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1972:

Provided that in the case of any such person who is holding or has held the office of the Chief Justice or other Judge of the Supreme Court or a High Court, the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India, the Chairman or other member of the Union or a State Public Service Commission or the Chief Election Commissioner, nothing in sub-clause (a) or sub-clause (b) shall be construed as empowering Parliament to vary or revoke, after his appointment to such post, the conditions of his service to his disadvantage except in so far as such conditions of service are applicable to him by reason of his being a person appointed by the Secretary of State or Secretary of State in Council to a civil service of the Crown in India.

(2) Except to the extent provided for by Parliament by law under this article, nothing in this article shall affect the power of any Legislature or other authority under any other provision of this Constitution to regulate the conditions of service of persons referred to in clause (1).

(3) Neither the Supreme Court nor any other court shall have jurisdiction in—

(a) any dispute arising out of any provision of, or any endorsement on, any covenant, agreement or other similar instrument which was entered into or executed by any person referred to in clause (1), or arising out of any letter issued to such person, in relation to his appointment to any civil service of the Crown in India or his continuance in service under the Government of the Dominion of India or a Province thereof;

(b) any dispute in respect of any right, liability or obligation under article 314 as originally enacted.

(4) The provisions of this article shall have effect notwithstanding anything in article 314 as originally enacted or in any other provision of this Constitution.]

(Part XIV.—Services under the Union and the States)

313. Transitional provisions.—Until other provision is made in this behalf under this Constitution, all the laws in force immediately before the commencement of this Constitution and applicable to any public service or any post which continues to exist after the commencement of this Constitution, as an all-India service or as service or post under the Union or a State shall continue in force so far as consistent with the provisions of this Constitution.

314. [Provision for protection of existing officers of certain services].—Omitted by the Constitution (Twenty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1972, s. 3 (w.e.f. 29-8-1972).

CHAPTER II.—PUBLIC SERVICE COMMISSIONS

315. Public Service Commissions for the Union and for the States.—

(1) Subject to the provisions of this article, there shall be a Public Service Commission for the Union and a Public Service Commission for each State.

(2) Two or more States may agree that there shall be one Public Service Commission for that group of States, and if a resolution to that effect is passed by the House or, where there are two Houses, by each House of the Legislature of each of those States, Parliament may by law provide for the appointment of a Joint State Public Service Commission (referred to in this Chapter as Joint Commission) to serve the needs of those States.

(3) Any such law as aforesaid may contain such incidental and consequential provisions as may be necessary or desirable for giving effect to the purposes of the law.

(4) The Public Service Commission for the Union, if requested so to do by the Governor^{1***} of a State, may, with the approval of the President, agree to serve all or any of the needs of the State.

(5) References in this Constitution to the Union Public Service Commission or a State Public Service Commission shall, unless the context otherwise requires, be construed as references to the Commission serving the needs of the Union or, as the case may be, the State as respects the particular matter in question.

316. Appointment and term of office of members.—(1) The Chairman and other members of a Public Service Commission shall be appointed, in the case of the Union Commission or a Joint Commission, by the President, and in the case of a State Commission, by the Governor of the State:

1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part XIV.—Services under the Union and the States)

Provided that as nearly as may be one-half of the members of every Public Service Commission shall be persons who at the dates of their respective appointments have held office for at least ten years either under the Government of India or under the Government of a State, and in computing the said period of ten years any period before the commencement of this Constitution during which a person has held office under the Crown in India or under the Government of an Indian State shall be included.

¹[(1A) If the office of the Chairman of the Commission becomes vacant or if any such Chairman is by reason of absence or for any other reason unable to perform the duties of his office, those duties shall, until some person appointed under clause (1) to the vacant office has entered on the duties thereof or, as the case may be, until the Chairman has resumed his duties, be performed by such one of the other members of the Commission as the President, in the case of the Union Commission or a Joint Commission, and the Governor of the State in the case of a State Commission, may appoint for the purpose.]

(2) A member of a Public Service Commission shall hold office for a term of six years from the date on which he enters upon his office or until he attains, in the case of the Union Commission, the age of sixty-five years, and in the case of a State Commission or a Joint Commission, the age of ²[sixty-two years], whichever is earlier:

Provided that—

(a) a member of a Public Service Commission may, by writing under his hand addressed, in the case of the Union Commission or a Joint Commission, to the President, and in the case of a State Commission, to the Governor ^{3****} of the State, resign his office;

(b) a member of a Public Service Commission may be removed from his office in the manner provided in clause (1) or clause (3) of article 317.

(3) A person who holds office as a member of a Public Service Commission shall, on the expiration of his term of office, be ineligible for re-appointment to that office.

-
1. Ins. by the Constitution (Fifteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 11 (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).
 2. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-first Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 2, for "sixty years" (w.e.f. 7-9-1976).
 3. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part XIV.—Services under the Union and the States)

317. Removal and suspension of a member of a Public Service Commission.—(1) Subject to the provisions of clause (3), the Chairman or any other member of a Public Service Commission shall only be removed from his office by order of the President on the ground of misbehaviour after the Supreme Court, on reference being made to it by the President, has, on inquiry held in accordance with the procedure prescribed in that behalf under article 145, reported that the Chairman or such other member, as the case may be, ought on any such ground to be removed.

(2) The President, in the case of the Union Commission or a Joint Commission, and the Governor ^{1***} in the case of a State Commission, may suspend from office the Chairman or any other member of the Commission in respect of whom a reference has been made to the Supreme Court under clause (1) until the President has passed orders on receipt of the report of the Supreme Court on such reference.

(3) Notwithstanding anything in clause (1), the President may by order remove from office the Chairman or any other member of a Public Service Commission if the Chairman or such other member, as the case may be,—

(a) is adjudged an insolvent; or

(b) engages during his term of office in any paid employment outside the duties of his office; or

(c) is, in the opinion of the President, unfit to continue in office by reason of infirmity of mind or body.

(4) If the Chairman or any other member of a Public Service Commission is or becomes in any way concerned or interested in any contract or agreement made by or on behalf of the Government of India or the Government of a State or participates in any way in the profit thereof or in any benefit or emolument arising therefrom otherwise than as a member and in common with the other members of an incorporated company, he shall, for the purposes of clause (1), be deemed to be guilty of misbehaviour.

318. Power to make regulations as to conditions of service of members and staff of the Commission.—In the case of the Union Commission or a Joint Commission, the President and, in the case of a State Commission, the Governor ^{1***} of the State may by regulations—

1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part XIV.—Services under the Union and the States)

(a) determine the number of members of the Commission and their conditions of service; and

(b) make provision with respect to the number of members of the staff of the Commission and their conditions of service:

Provided that the conditions of service of a member of a Public Service Commission shall not be varied to his disadvantage after his appointment.

319. Prohibition as to the holding of offices by members of Commission on ceasing to be such members.—On ceasing to hold office—

(a) the Chairman of the Union Public Service Commission shall be ineligible for further employment either under the Government of India or under the Government of a State;

(b) the Chairman of a State Public Service Commission shall be eligible for appointment as the Chairman or any other member of the Union Public Service Commission or as the Chairman of any other State Public Service Commission, but not for any other employment either under the Government of India or under the Government of a State;

(c) a member other than the Chairman of the Union Public Service Commission shall be eligible for appointment as the Chairman of the Union Public Service Commission or as the Chairman of a State Public Service Commission, but not for any other employment either under the Government of India or under the Government of a State;

(d) a member other than the Chairman of a State Public Service Commission shall be eligible for appointment as the Chairman or any other member of the Union Public Service Commission or as the Chairman of that or any other State Public Service Commission, but not for any other employment either under the Government of India or under the Government of a State.

320. Functions of Public Service Commissions.—(1) It shall be the duty of the Union and the State Public Service Commissions to conduct examinations for appointments to the services of the Union and the services of the State respectively.

(2) It shall also be the duty of the Union Public Service Commission, if requested by any two or more States so to do, to assist those States in framing and operating schemes of joint recruitment for any services for which candidates possessing special qualifications are required.

(3) The Union Public Service Commission or the State Public Service Commission, as the case may be, shall be consulted—

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XIV.—Services under the Union and the States)

(a) on all matters relating to methods of recruitment to civil services and for civil posts;

(b) on the principles to be followed in making appointments to civil services and posts and in making promotions and transfers from one service to another and on the suitability of candidates for such appointments, promotions or transfers;

(c) on all disciplinary matters affecting a person serving under the Government of India or the Government of a State in a civil capacity, including memorials or petitions relating to such matters;

(d) on any claim by or in respect of a person who is serving or has served under the Government of India or the Government of a State or under the Crown in India or under the Government of an Indian State, in a civil capacity, that any costs incurred by him in defending legal proceedings instituted against him in respect of acts done or purporting to be done in the execution of his duty should be paid out of the Consolidated Fund of India, or, as the case may be, out of the Consolidated Fund of the State;

(e) on any claim for the award of a pension in respect of injuries sustained by a person while serving under the Government of India or the Government of a State or under the Crown in India or under the Government of an Indian State, in a civil capacity, and any question as to the amount of any such award,

and it shall be the duty of a Public Service Commission to advise on any matter so referred to them and on any other matter which the President, or, as the case may be, the Governor^{1***} of the State, may refer to them:

Provided that the President as respects the all-India services and also as respects other services and posts in connection with the affairs of the Union, and the Governor^{2***}, as respects other services and posts in connection with the affairs of a State, may make regulations specifying the matters in which either generally, or in any particular class of case or in any particular circumstances, it shall not be necessary for a Public Service Commission to be consulted.

(4) Nothing in clause (3) shall require a Public Service Commission to be consulted as respects the manner in which any provision referred to in clause (4) of article 16 may be made or as respects the manner in which effect may be given to the provisions of article 335.

1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. The words "or Rajpramukh, as the case may be" omitted by s. 29 and Sch. *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part XIV.—Services under the Union and the States)

(5) All regulations made under the proviso to clause (3) by the President or the Governor ^{1***} of a State shall be laid for not less than fourteen days before each House of Parliament or the House or each House of the Legislature of the State, as the case may be, as soon as possible after they are made, and shall be subject to such modifications, whether by way of repeal or amendment, as both Houses of Parliament or the House or both Houses of the Legislature of the State may make during the session in which they are so laid.

321. Power to extend functions of Public Service Commissions.—An Act made by Parliament or, as the case may be, the Legislature of a State may provide for the exercise of additional functions by the Union Public Service Commission or the State Public Service Commission as respects the services of the Union or the State and also as respects the services of any local authority or other body corporate constituted by law or of any public institution.

322. Expenses of Public Service Commissions.—The expenses of the Union or a State Public Service Commission, including any salaries, allowances and pensions payable to or in respect of the members or staff of the Commission, shall be charged on the Consolidated Fund of India or, as the case may be, the Consolidated Fund of the State.

323. Reports of Public Service Commissions.—(1) It shall be the duty of the Union Commission to present annually to the President a report as to the work done by the Commission and on receipt of such report the President shall cause a copy thereof together with a memorandum explaining, as respects the cases, if any, where the advice of the Commission was not accepted, the reasons for such non-acceptance to be laid before each House of Parliament.

(2) It shall be the duty of a State Commission to present annually to the Governor ^{1***} of the State a report as to the work done by the Commission, and it shall be the duty of a Joint Commission to present annually to the Governor ^{1***} of each of the States the needs of which are served by the Joint Commission a report as to the work done by the Commission in relation to that State, and in either case the Governor ^{2***}, shall, on receipt of such report, cause a copy thereof together with a memorandum explaining, as respects the cases, if any, where the advice of the Commission was not accepted, the reasons for such non-acceptance to be laid before the Legislature of the State.

1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. The words "or Rajpramukh, as the case may be" omitted by s. 29 and Sch. *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

¹[PART XIVA
TRIBUNALS

323A. Administrative tribunals.—(1) Parliament may, by law, provide for the adjudication or trial by administrative tribunals of disputes and complaints with respect to recruitment and conditions of service of persons appointed to public services and posts in connection with the affairs of the Union or of any State or of any local or other authority within the territory of India or under the control of the Government of India or of any corporation owned or controlled by the Government.

(2) A law made under clause (1) may—

(a) provide for the establishment of an administrative tribunal for the Union and a separate administrative tribunal for each State or for two or more States;

(b) specify the jurisdiction, powers (including the power to punish for contempt) and authority which may be exercised by each of the said tribunals;

(c) provide for the procedure (including provisions as to limitation and rules of evidence) to be followed by the said tribunals;

(d) exclude the jurisdiction of all courts, except the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court under article 136, with respect to the disputes or complaints referred to in clause (1);

(e) provide for the transfer to each such administrative tribunal of any cases pending before any court or other authority immediately before the establishment of such tribunal as would have been within the jurisdiction of such tribunal if the causes of action on which such suits or proceedings are based had arisen after such establishment;

(f) repeal or amend any order made by the President under clause (3) of article 371D;

(g) contain such supplemental, incidental and consequential provisions (including provisions as to fees) as Parliament may deem necessary for the effective functioning of, and for the speedy disposal of cases by, and the enforcement of the orders of, such tribunals.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 46 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

(3) The provisions of this article shall have effect notwithstanding anything in any other provision of this Constitution or in any other law for the time being in force.

323B. Tribunals for other matters.—(1) The appropriate Legislature may, by law, provide for the adjudication or trial by tribunals of any disputes, complaints, or offences with respect to all or any of the matters specified in clause (2) with respect to which such Legislature has power to make laws.

(2) The matters referred to in clause (1) are the following, namely:—

(a) levy, assessment, collection and enforcement of any tax;

(b) foreign exchange, import and export across customs frontiers;

(c) industrial and labour disputes;

(d) land reforms by way of acquisition by the State of any estate as defined in article 31A or of any rights therein or the extinguishment or modification of any such rights or by way of ceiling on agricultural land or in any other way;

(e) ceiling on urban property;

(f) elections to either House of Parliament or the House or either House of the Legislature of a State, but excluding the matters referred to in article 329 and article 329A;

(g) production, procurement, supply and distribution of food-stuffs (including edible oilseeds and oils) and such other goods as the President may, by public notification, declare to be essential goods for the purpose of this article and control of prices of such goods;

¹[(h) rent, its regulation and control and tenancy issues including the right, title and interest of landlords and tenants;]

²[(i)] offences against laws with respect to any of the matters specified in sub-clauses (a) to ³[(h)] and fees in respect of any of those matters;

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventy-fifth Amendment) Act, 1993, s. 2 (w.e.f. 15-5-1994).

2. Sub-clause (h) re-lettered as sub-clause (i) by s. 2, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 15-5-1994).

3. Subs. by s. 2, *ibid.*, for the brackets and letter "(g)" (w.e.f. 15-5-1994).

¹[(j)] any matter incidental to any of the matters specified in sub-clauses (a) to ²[(i)].

(3) A law made under clause (1) may—

(a) provide for the establishment of a hierarchy of tribunals;

(b) specify the jurisdiction, powers (including the power to punish for contempt) and authority which may be exercised by each of the said tribunals;

(c) provide for the procedure (including provisions as to limitation and rules of evidence) to be followed by the said tribunals;

(d) exclude the jurisdiction of all courts, except the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court under article 136, with respect to all or any of the matters falling within the jurisdiction of the said tribunals;

(e) provide for the transfer to each such tribunal of any cases pending before any court or any other authority immediately before the establishment of such tribunal as would have been within the jurisdiction of such tribunal if the causes of action on which such suits or proceedings are based had arisen after such establishment;

(f) contain such supplemental, incidental and consequential provisions (including provisions as to fees) as the appropriate Legislature may deem necessary for the effective functioning of, and for the speedy disposal of cases by, and the enforcement of the orders of, such tribunals.

(4) The provisions of this article shall have effect notwithstanding anything in any other provision of this Constitution or in any other law for the time being in force.

Explanation.—In this article, “appropriate Legislature”, in relation to any matter, means Parliament or, as the case may be, a State Legislature competent to make laws with respect to such matter in accordance with the provisions of Part XI.]

1. Sub-clause (i) re-lettered as sub-clause (j) by the Constitution (Seventy-fifth Amendment) Act, 1993, s. 2 (w.e.f. 15-5-1994).

2. Subs. by s. 2, *ibid.*, for “(h)” (w.e.f. 15-5-1994).

PART XV

ELECTIONS

324. Superintendence, direction and control of elections to be vested in an Election Commission.—(1) The superintendence, direction and control of the preparation of the electoral rolls for, and the conduct of, all elections to Parliament and to the Legislature of every State and of elections to the offices of President and Vice-President held under this Constitution ^{1***} shall be vested in a Commission (referred to in this Constitution as the Election Commission).

(2) The Election Commission shall consist of the Chief Election Commissioner and such number of other Election Commissioners, if any, as the President may from time to time fix and the appointment of the Chief Election Commissioner and other Election Commissioners shall, subject to the provisions of any law made in that behalf by Parliament, be made by the President.

(3) When any other Election Commissioner is so appointed the Chief Election Commissioner shall act as the Chairman of the Election Commission.

(4) Before each general election to the House of the People and to the Legislative Assembly of each State, and before the first general election and thereafter before each biennial election to the Legislative Council of each State having such Council, the President may also appoint after consultation with the Election Commission such Regional Commissioners as he may consider necessary to assist the Election Commission in the performance of the functions conferred on the Commission by clause (1).

(5) Subject to the provisions of any law made by Parliament, the conditions of service and tenure of office of the Election Commissioners and the Regional Commissioners shall be such as the President may by rule determine:

Provided that the Chief Election Commissioner shall not be removed from his office except in like manner and on the like grounds as a Judge of the Supreme Court and the conditions of service of the Chief Election Commissioner shall not be varied to his disadvantage after his appointment:

1. The words "including the appointment of election tribunals for the decision of doubts and disputes arising out of or in connection with elections to Parliament and to the Legislatures of States" omitted by the Constitution (Nineteenth Amendment) Act, 1966, s. 2 (w.e.f. 11-12-1966).

Provided further that any other Election Commissioner or a Regional Commissioner shall not be removed from office except on the recommendation of the Chief Election Commissioner.

(6) The President, or the Governor ^{1***} of a State, shall, when so requested by the Election Commission, make available to the Election Commission or to a Regional Commissioner such staff as may be necessary for the discharge of the functions conferred on the Election Commission by clause (1).

325. No person to be ineligible for inclusion in, or to claim to be included in a special, electoral roll on grounds of religion, race, caste or sex.—There shall be one general electoral roll for every territorial constituency for election to either House of Parliament or to the House or either House of the Legislature of a State and no person shall be ineligible for inclusion in any such roll or claim to be included in any special electoral roll for any such constituency on grounds only of religion, race, caste, sex or any of them.

326. Elections to the House of the People and to the Legislative Assemblies of States to be on the basis of adult suffrage.—The elections to the House of the People and to the Legislative Assembly of every State shall be on the basis of adult suffrage; that is to say, every person who is a citizen of India and who is not less than ²[eighteen years] of age on such date as may be fixed in that behalf by or under any law made by the appropriate Legislature and is not otherwise disqualified under this Constitution or any law made by the appropriate Legislature on the ground of non-residence, unsoundness of mind, crime or corrupt or illegal practice, shall be entitled to be registered as a voter at any such election.

327. Power of Parliament to make provision with respect to elections to Legislatures.—Subject to the provisions of this Constitution, Parliament may from time to time by law make provision with respect to all matters relating to, or in connection with, elections to either House of Parliament or to the House or either House of the Legislature of a State including the preparation of electoral rolls, the delimitation of constituencies and all other matters necessary for securing the due constitution of such House or Houses.

1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Sixty-first Amendment) Act, 1988, s. 2, for "twenty-one years" (w.e.f. 28-3-1989).

328. Power of Legislature of a State to make provision with respect to elections to such Legislature.—Subject to the provisions of this Constitution and in so far as provision in that behalf is not made by Parliament, the Legislature of a State may from time to time by law make provision with respect to all matters relating to, or in connection with, the elections to the House or either House of the Legislature of the State including the preparation of electoral rolls and all other matters necessary for securing the due constitution of such House or Houses.

329. Bar to interference by courts in electoral matters.—
¹[Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution ^{2***}]—

(a) the validity of any law relating to the delimitation of constituencies or the allotment of seats to such constituencies, made or purporting to be made under article 327 or article 328, shall not be called in question in any court;

(b) no election to either House of Parliament or to the House or either House of the Legislature of a State shall be called in question except by an election petition presented to such authority and in such manner as may be provided for by or under any law made by the appropriate Legislature.

³329A. [Special provision as to elections to Parliament in the case of Prime Minister and Speaker.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 36 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Thirty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 3, for certain words (w.e.f. 10-8-1975).
 2. The words, figures and letter "but subject to the provisions of article 329A" omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 35 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 4 (w.e.f. 10-8-1975).

PART XVI

SPECIAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO CERTAIN CLASSES

330. Reservation of seats for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes in the House of the People.—(1) Seats shall be reserved in the House of the People for—

(a) the Scheduled Castes;

¹[(b) the Scheduled Tribes except the Scheduled Tribes in the autonomous districts of Assam; and]

(c) the Scheduled Tribes in the autonomous districts of Assam.

(2) The number of seats reserved in any State ²[or Union territory] for the Scheduled Castes or the Scheduled Tribes under clause (1) shall bear, as nearly as may be, the same proportion to the total number of seats allotted to that State ²[or Union territory] in the House of the People as the population of the Scheduled Castes in the State ²[or Union territory] or of the Scheduled Tribes in the State ²[or Union territory] or part of the State ²[or Union territory], as the case may be, in respect of which seats are so reserved, bears to the total population of the State ²[or Union territory].

³[(3) Notwithstanding anything contained in clause (2), the number of seats reserved in the House of the People for the Scheduled Tribes in the autonomous districts of Assam shall bear to the total number of seats allotted to that State a proportion not less than the population of the Scheduled Tribes in the said autonomous districts bears to the total population of the State.]

⁴[*Explanation*.—In this article and in article 332, the expression “population” means the population as ascertained at the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published:

Provided that the reference in this *Explanation* to the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published shall, until the relevant figures for the first census taken after the year ⁵[2026] have been published, be construed as a reference to the ⁶[2001] census.]

1. Subs. By the Constitution (Fifty-first Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 2, for sub-clause (b) (w.e.f. 16-6-1986).

2. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-first Amendment) Act, 1973, s. 3 (w.e.f. 17-10-1973).

4. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 47 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

5. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-fourth Amendment) Act, 2001, s. 6, for “2000” (w.e.f. 21-2-2002).

6. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-seventh Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 5, for “1991” (w.e.f. 22-6-2003).

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

¹[330A. Reservation of seats for women in the House of the People.-

- (1) Seats shall be reserved for women in the House of the People.
- (2) As nearly as may be, one-third of the total number of seats reserved under clause (2) of article 330 shall be reserved for women belonging to the Scheduled Castes or the Scheduled Tribes.
- (3) As nearly as may be, one-third (including the number of seats reserved for women belonging to the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes) of the total number of seats to be filled by direct election to the House of the People shall be reserved for women.]

331. Representation of the Anglo-Indian Community in the House of the People.—Notwithstanding anything in article 81, the President may, if he is of opinion that the Anglo-Indian community is not adequately represented in the House of the People, nominate not more than two members of that community to the House of the People.

332. Reservation of seats for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes in the Legislative Assemblies of the States.—(1) Seats shall be reserved for the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes,²[except the Scheduled Tribes in the autonomous districts of Assam], in the Legislative Assembly of every State^{3***}.

(2) Seats shall be reserved also for the autonomous districts in the Legislative Assembly of the State of Assam.

(3) The number of seats reserved for the Scheduled Castes or the Scheduled Tribes in the Legislative Assembly of any State under clause (1) shall bear, as nearly as may be, the same proportion to the total number of seats in the Assembly as the population of the Scheduled Castes in the State or of the Scheduled Tribes in the State or part of the State, as the case may be, in respect of which seats are so reserved, bears to the total population of the State.

⁴[(3A) Notwithstanding anything contained in clause (3), until the taking effect, under article 170, of the re-adjustment, on the basis of the first census after the year⁵[2026], of the number of seats in the Legislative Assemblies of the States of Arunachal Pradesh, Meghalaya, Mizoram and Nagaland, the seats which shall be reserved for the Scheduled Tribes in the Legislative Assembly of any such State shall be,—

-
- 1. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Sixth Amendment) Act, 2023, s.3 (date yet to be notified).
 - 2. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifty-first Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 3, for certain words (w.e.f. 16-6-1986).
 - 3. The words and letters "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 - 4. Ins. by the Constitution (Fifty-seventh Amendment) Act, 1987, s. 2 (w.e.f. 21-9-1987).
 - 5. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-fourth Amendment) Act, 2001, s. 7, for "2000" (w.e.f. 21-2-2002).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

(a) if all the seats in the Legislative Assembly of such State in existence on the date of coming into force of the Constitution (Fifty-seventh Amendment) Act, 1987 (hereafter in this clause referred to as the existing Assembly) are held by members of the Scheduled Tribes, all the seats except one;

(b) in any other case, such number of seats as bears to the total number of seats, a proportion not less than the number (as on the said date) of members belonging to the Scheduled Tribes in the existing Assembly bears to the total number of seats in the existing Assembly.]

¹[(3B) Notwithstanding anything contained in clause (3), until the re-adjustment, under article 170, takes effect on the basis of the first census after the year ²[2026], of the number of seats in the Legislative Assembly of the State of Tripura, the seats which shall be reserved for the Scheduled Tribes in the Legislative Assembly shall be, such number of seats as bears to the total number of seats, a proportion not less than the number, as on the date of coming into force of the Constitution (Seventy-second Amendment) Act, 1992, of members belonging to the Scheduled Tribes in the Legislative Assembly in existence on the said date bears to the total number of seats in that Assembly.]

(4) The number of seats reserved for an autonomous district in the Legislative Assembly of the State of Assam shall bear to the total number of seats in that Assembly a proportion not less than the population of the district bears to the total population of the State.

(5) The constituencies for the seats reserved for any autonomous district of Assam shall not comprise any area outside that district ^{3***}.

(6) No person who is not a member of a Scheduled Tribe of any autonomous district of the State of Assam shall be eligible for election to the Legislative Assembly of the State from any constituency of that district ^{3***}:

⁴[Provided that for elections to the Legislative Assembly of the State of

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventy-second Amendment) Act, 1992, s. 2 (w.e.f. 5-12-1992).
2. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-fourth Amendment) Act, 2001, s. 7, for "2000" (w.e.f. 21-2-2002).
3. Certain words omitted by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71 (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
4. Ins. by the Constitution (Ninetieth Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2 (w.e.f. 28-9-2003).

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

Assam, the representation of the Scheduled Tribes and non-Scheduled Tribes in the constituencies included in the Bodoland Territorial Areas District, so notified, and existing prior to the constitution of Bodoland Territorial Areas District, shall be maintained.]

¹[**332A. Reservation of seats for women in the Legislative Assemblies of the States.**]—(1) Seats shall be reserved for women in the Legislative Assembly of every State.

(2) As nearly as may be, one-third of the total number of seats reserved under clause (3) of article 332 shall be reserved for women belonging to the Scheduled Castes or the Scheduled Tribes.

(3) As nearly as may be, one-third (including the number of seats reserved for women belonging to the Scheduled Castes and the Sceduled Tribes) of the total number of seats to be filled by direct election in the Legislative Assembly of every State shall be reserved for women.]

333. Representation of the Anglo-Indian community in the Legislative Assemblies of the States.—Notwithstanding anything in article 170, the Governor ^{2***} of a State may, if he is of opinion that the Anglo-Indian community needs representation in the Legislative Assembly of the State and is not adequately represented therein, ³[nominate one member of that community to the Assembly].

334. ⁴[Reservation of seats and special representation to cease after certain period].—Notwithstanding anything in the foregoing provisions of this Part, the provisions of this Constitution relating to—

(a) the reservation of seats for the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes in the House of the People and in the Legislative Assemblies of the States; and

(b) the representation of the Anglo-Indian community in the House of the People and in the Legislative Assemblies of the States by nomination,

-
1. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Sixth Amendment) Act, 2023, s.4 (date yet to be notified).
 2. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 3. Subs. by the Constitution (Twenty-third Amendment) Act, 1969, s. 4, for "nominate such number of members of the community to the Assembly as he considers appropriate" (w.e.f. 23-1-1970).
 4. Subs. by the Constitution (One hundred and fourth Amendment) Act, 2019, s. 2, for marginal heading (w.e.f. 25-1-2020).

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

shall cease to have effect on the expiration of a period of ¹[eighty years in respect of clause (a) and seventy years in respect of clause (b)] from the commencement of this Constitution:

Provided that nothing in this article shall affect any representation in the House of the People or in the Legislative Assembly of a State until the dissolution of the then existing House or Assembly, as the case may be.

²334A. Reservation of seats for women take effect. — (1) Notwithstanding anything in the foregoing provision of this Part or Part VIII, the provisions of the Constitution relating to the reservation of seats for women in the House of the People, the Legislative Assembly of a State and the Legislative Assembly of the National Capital Territory of Delhi shall come into effect after an exercise of delimitation is undertaken for this purpose after the relevant figures for the first census taken after commencement of the Constitution (One Hundred and Sixth Amendment) Act, 2023 have been published and shall cease to have effect on the expiration of a period of fifteen years from such commencement.

(2) Subject to the provisions of articles 239AA, 330A and 332A, seats reserved for women in the House of the People, the Legislative Assembly of a State and the Legislative Assembly of the National Capital Territory of Delhi shall continue till such date as the Parliament may by law determine.

(3) Rotation of seats reserved for women in the House of the People, the Legislative Assembly of a State and the Legislative Assembly of the National Capital Territory of Delhi shall take effect after each subsequent exercise of delimitation as the Parliament may by law determine.

(4) Nothing in this article shall affect any representation in the House of the People, the Legislative Assembly of a State or the Legislative Assembly of the National Capital Territory of Delhi until the dissolution of the then existing House of the People, Legislative Assembly of a State or the Legislative Assembly of the National Capital Territory of Delhi.]

335. Claims of Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes to services and posts. — The claims of the members of the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes shall be taken into consideration, consistently with the maintenance of efficiency of administration, in the making of appointments to services and posts in connection with the affairs of the Union or of a State:

1. Subs. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Fourth Amendment) Act, 2019, s. 2, for “seventy years” (w.e.f. 25-1-2020). The words “seventy years” subs. for “sixty years” by the Constitution (Ninety-fifth Amendment) Act, 2009, s.2 (w.e.f. 25-1-2010). The words “sixty years” subs. for “fifty years” by the Constitution (Seventy-ninth Amendment) Act, 1999, s. 2 (w.e.f. 25-1-2000). The words “fifty years” subs. for “forty years” by the Constitution (Sixty-second Amendment) Act, 1989, s. 2 (w.e.f. 20-12-1989). The words “forty years” subs. for “thirty years” by the Constitution (Forty-fifth Amendment) Act, 1980, s. 2 (w.e.f. 25-1-1980).
2. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Sixth Amendment) Act, 2023, s.5 (date yet to be notified).

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

¹[Provided that nothing in this article shall prevent in making of any provision in favour of the members of the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes for relaxation in qualifying marks in any examination or lowering the standards of evaluation, for reservation in matters or promotion to any class or classes of services or posts in connection with the affairs of the Union or of a State.]

336. Special provision for Anglo-Indian community in certain services.—(1) During the first two years after the commencement of this Constitution, appointments of members of the Anglo-Indian community to posts in the railway, customs, postal and telegraph services of the Union shall be made on the same basis as immediately before the fifteenth day of August, 1947.

During every succeeding period of two years, the number of posts reserved for the members of the said community in the said services shall, as nearly as possible, be less by ten per cent. than the numbers so reserved during the immediately preceding period of two years:

Provided that at the end of ten years from the commencement of this Constitution all such reservations shall cease.

(2) Nothing in clause (1) shall bar the appointment of members of the Anglo-Indian community to posts other than, or in addition to, those reserved for the community under that clause if such members are found qualified for appointment on merit as compared with the members of other communities.

337. Special provision with respect to educational grants for the benefit of Anglo-Indian community.—During the first three financial years after the commencement of this Constitution, the same grants, if any, shall be made by the Union and by each State ^{2***} for the benefit of the Anglo-Indian community in respect of education as were made in the financial year ending on the thirty-first day of March, 1948.

During every succeeding period of three years the grants may be less by ten per cent. than those for the immediately preceding period of three years:

Provided that at the end of ten years from the commencement of this Constitution such grants, to the extent to which they are a special concession to the Anglo-Indian community, shall cease:

Provided further that no educational institution shall be entitled to receive any grant under this article unless at least forty per cent. of the annual admissions therein are made available to members of communities other than the Anglo-Indian community.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Eighty-second Amendment) Act, 2000, s. 2 (w.e.f. 8-9-2000).

2. The words and letters "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

338. ¹[**National Commission for Scheduled Castes**.—²[³[(1) There shall be a Commission for the Scheduled Castes to be known as the National Commission for the Scheduled Castes.

(2) Subject to the provisions of any law made in this behalf by Parliament, the Commission shall consist of a Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and three other Members and the conditions of service and tenure of office of the Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and other Members so appointed shall be such as the President may by rule determine.]

(3) The Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and other Members of the Commission shall be appointed by the President by warrant under his hand and seal.

(4) The Commission shall have the power to regulate its own procedure.

(5) It shall be the duty of the Commission—

(a) to investigate and monitor all matters relating to the safeguards provided for the Scheduled Castes ^{4***} under this Constitution or under any other law for the time being in force or under any order of the Government and to evaluate the working of such safeguards;

(b) to inquire into specific complaints with respect to the deprivation of rights and safeguards of the Scheduled Castes ^{4***};

(c) to participate and advise on the planning process of socio-economic development of the Scheduled Castes ^{1***} and to evaluate the progress of their development under the Union and any State;

(d) to present to the President, annually and at such other times as the Commission may deem fit, reports upon the working of those safeguards;

(e) to make in such reports recommendations as to the measures that should be taken by the Union or any State for the effective implementation of

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-ninth Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2, for the marginal heading (w.e.f. 19-2-2004).
2. Subs. by the Constitution (Sixty-fifth Amendment) Act, 1990, s. 2, for cl. (1) and (2) (w.e.f. 12-3-1992).
3. Subs. by the Constitution (Eighty-ninth Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2, for cl. (1) and (2) (w.e.f. 19-2-2004).
4. The words "and Scheduled Tribes" omitted by the Constitution (Eighty-ninth Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2 (w.e.f. 19-2-2004).

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

those safeguards and other measures for the protection, welfare and socio-economic development of the Scheduled Castes ^{1***}, and

(f) to discharge such other functions in relation to the protection, welfare and development and advancement of the Scheduled Castes ^{1***} as the President may, subject to the provisions of any law made by Parliament, by rule specify.

(6) The President shall cause all such reports to be laid before each House of Parliament along with a memorandum explaining the action taken or proposed to be taken on the recommendations relating to the Union and the reasons for the non-acceptance, if any, of any of such recommendations.

(7) Where any such report, or any part thereof, relates to any matter with which any State Government is concerned, a copy of such report shall be forwarded to the Governor of the State who shall cause it to be laid before the Legislature of the State along with a memorandum explaining the action taken or proposed to be taken on the recommendations relating to the State and the reasons for the non-acceptance, if any, of any of such recommendations.

(8) The Commission shall, while investigating any matter referred to in sub-clause (a) or inquiring into any complaint referred to in sub-clause (b) of clause (5), have all the powers of a civil court trying a suit and in particular in respect of the following matters, namely:—

- (a) summoning and enforcing the attendance of any person from any part of India and examining him on oath;
- (b) requiring the discovery and production of any document;
- (c) receiving evidence on affidavits;
- (d) requisitioning any public record or copy thereof from any court or office;
- (e) issuing commissions for the examination of witnesses and documents;
- (f) any other matter which the President may, by rule, determine.

(9) The Union and every State Government shall consult the Commission on all major policy matters affecting Scheduled Castes ^{1***}.

²[(10)] In this article, references to the Scheduled Castes ^{1***} shall be construed as including references ^{3***} to the Anglo-Indian community.

⁴[338A. **National Commission for Scheduled Tribes.**—(1) There shall be a Commission for the Scheduled Tribes to be known as the National Commission for the Scheduled Tribes.

1. The words "and Scheduled Tribes" omitted by the Constitution (Eighty-ninth Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2 (w.e.f. 19-2-2004).
2. Cl. (3) renumbered as cl. (10) by the Constitution (Sixty-fifth Amendment) Act, 1990, s. 2 (w.e.f. 12-3-1992).
3. The words, brackets and figures "to such other backward classes as the President may, on receipt of the report of a Commission appointed under cl. (1) of article 340, by order specify and also" omitted by the Constitution (One Hundred and Second Amendment) Act, 2018, s. 2 (w.e.f. 15-8-2018).
4. Art 338A ins. by the Constitution (Eighty-ninth Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 3 (w.e.f. 19-2-2004).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

(2) Subject to the provisions of any law made in this behalf by Parliament, the Commission shall consist of a Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and three other Members and the conditions of service and tenure of office of the Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and other Members so appointed shall be such as the President may by rule determine.

(3) The Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and other Members of the Commission shall be appointed by the President by warrant under his hand and seal.

(4) The Commission shall have the power to regulate its own procedure.

(5) It shall be the duty of the Commission—

(a) to investigate and monitor all matters relating to the safeguards provided for the Scheduled Tribes under this Constitution or under any other law for the time being in force or under any order of the Government and to evaluate the working of such safeguards;

(b) to inquire into specific complaints with respect to the deprivation of rights and safeguards of the Scheduled Tribes;

(c) to participate and advise on the planning process of socio-economic development of the Scheduled Tribes and to evaluate the progress of their development under the Union and any State;

(d) to present to the President, annually and at such other times as the Commission may deem fit, reports upon the working of those safeguards;

(e) to make in such reports recommendations as to the measures that should be taken by the Union or any State for the effective implementation of those safeguards and other measures for the protection, welfare and socio-economic development of the Scheduled Tribes; and

(f) to discharge such other functions in relation to the protection, welfare and development and advancement of the Scheduled Tribes as the President may, subject to the provisions of any law made by Parliament, by rule specify.

(6) The President shall cause all such reports to be laid before each House of Parliament along with a memorandum explaining the action taken or proposed to be taken on the recommendations relating to the Union and the reasons for the non-acceptance, if any, of any such recommendations.

(7) Where any such report, or any part thereof, relates to any matter with which any State Government is concerned, a copy of such report shall be forwarded to the Governor of the State who shall cause it to be laid before the Legislature of the State along with a memorandum explaining the action taken or proposed to be taken on the recommendations relating to the State and the reasons for the non-acceptance, if any, of any of such recommendations.

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

(8) The Commission shall, while investigating any matter referred to in sub-clause (a) or inquiring into any complaint referred to in sub-clause (b) of clause (5), have all the powers of a civil court trying a suit and in particular in respect of the following matters, namely:—

- (a) summoning and enforcing the attendance of any person from any part of India and examining him on oath;
- (b) requiring the discovery and production of any document;
- (c) receiving evidence on affidavits;
- (d) requisitioning any public record or copy thereof from any court or office;
- (e) issuing commissions for the examination of witnesses and documents;
- (f) any other matter which the President may, by rule, determine.

(9) The Union and every State Government shall consult the Commission on all major policy matters affecting Scheduled Tribes.]

¹[338B. **National Commission for Backward Classes.**—(1) There shall be a Commission for the socially and educationally backward classes to be known as the National Commission for Backward Classes.

(2) Subject to the provisions of any law made in this behalf by Parliament, the Commission shall consist of a Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and three other Members and the conditions of service and tenure of office of the Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and other Members so appointed shall be such as the President may by rule determine.

(3) The Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and other Members of the Commission shall be appointed by the President by warrant under his hand and seal.

- (4) The Commission shall have the power to regulate its own procedure.
- (5) It shall be the duty of the Commission—

(a) to investigate and monitor all matters relating to the safeguards provided for the socially and educationally backward classes under this Constitution or under any other law for the time being in force or under any order of the Government and to evaluate the working of such safeguards;

(b) to inquire into specific complaints with respect to the deprivation of rights and safeguards of the socially and educationally backward classes;

(c) to participate and advise on the socio-economic development of the socially and educationally backward classes and to evaluate the progress of their development under the Union and any State;

1.Art 338B ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Second Amendment) Act, 2018, s. 3 (w.e.f. 15-8-2018).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

(d) to present to the President, annually and at such other times as the Commission may deem fit, reports upon the working of those safeguards;

(e) to make in such reports the recommendations as to the measures that should be taken by the Union or any State for the effective implementation of those safeguards and other measures for the protection, welfare and socio-economic development of the socially and educationally backward classes; and

(f) to discharge such other functions in relation to the protection, welfare and development and advancement of the socially and educationally backward classes as the President may, subject to the provisions of any law made by Parliament, by rule specify.

(6) The President shall cause all such reports to be laid before each House of Parliament along with a memorandum explaining the action taken or proposed to be taken on the recommendations relating to the Union and the reasons for the non-acceptance, if any, of any such recommendations.

(7) Where any such report, or any part thereof, relates to any matter with which any State Government is concerned, a copy of such report shall be forwarded to the State Government which shall cause it to be laid before the Legislature of the State along with a memorandum explaining the action taken or proposed to be taken on the recommendations relating to the State and the reasons for the non-acceptance, if any, of any of such recommendations.

(8) The Commission shall, while investigating any matter referred to in sub-clause (a) or inquiring into any complaint referred to in sub-clause (b) of clause (5), have all the powers of a civil court trying a suit and in particular in respect of the following matters, namely :—

(a) summoning and enforcing the attendance of any person from any part of India and examining him on oath;

(b) requiring the discovery and production of any document;

(c) receiving evidence on affidavits;

(d) requisitioning any public record or copy thereof from any court or office;

(e) issuing commissions for the examination of witnesses and documents;

(f) any other matter which the President may by rule, determine.

(9) The Union and every State Government shall consult the Commission on all major policy matters affecting the socially and educationally backward classes:]

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

¹[Provided that nothing in this clause shall apply for the purposes of clause (3) of article 342A.]

339. Control of the Union over the administration of Scheduled Areas and the welfare of Scheduled Tribes.—(1) The President may at any time and shall, at the expiration of ten years from the commencement of this Constitution by order appoint a Commission to report on the administration of the Scheduled Areas and the welfare of the Scheduled Tribes in the States ^{2***}.

The order may define the composition, powers and procedure of the Commission and may contain such incidental or ancillary provisions as the President may consider necessary or desirable.

(2) The executive power of the Union shall extend to the giving of directions to ³[a State] as to the drawing up and execution of schemes specified in the direction to be essential for the welfare of the Scheduled Tribes in the State.

340. Appointment of a Commission to investigate the conditions of backward classes.—(1) The President may by order appoint a Commission consisting of such persons as he thinks fit to investigate the conditions of socially and educationally backward classes within the territory of India and the difficulties under which they labour and to make recommendations as to the steps that should be taken by the Union or any State to remove such difficulties and to improve their condition and as to the grants that should be made for the purpose by the Union or any State and the conditions subject to which such grants should be made, and the order appointing such Commission shall define the procedure to be followed by the Commission.

(2) A Commission so appointed shall investigate the matters referred to them and present to the President a report setting out the facts as found by them and making such recommendations as they think proper.

(3) The President shall cause a copy of the report so presented together with a memorandum explaining the action taken thereon to be laid before each House of Parliament.

341. Scheduled Castes.—(1) The President ⁴[may with respect to any State ⁵[or Union territory], and where it is a State ^{2***}, after consultation with

1. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Fifth Amendment) Act, 2021, s. 2 (w.e.f. 15-9-2021).
2. The words and letters for "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
3. Subs. by s. 29 and Sch. *ibid.* for "any such State" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
4. Subs. by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 10, for "may, after consultation with the Governor or Rajpramukh of a State" (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).
5. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

the Governor^{1****} thereof], by public notification², specify the castes, races or tribes or parts of or groups within castes, races or tribes which shall for the purposes of this Constitution be deemed to be Scheduled Castes in relation to that State³[or Union territory, as the case may be.]

(2) Parliament may by law include in or exclude from the list of Scheduled Castes specified in a notification issued under clause (1) any caste, race or tribe or part of or group within any caste, race or tribe, but save as aforesaid a notification issued under the said clause shall not be varied by any subsequent notification.

342. Scheduled Tribes.—(1) The President⁴[may with respect to any State³[or Union territory], and where it is a State^{5****}, after consultation with the Governor^{1****} thereof], by public notification⁶, specify the tribes or tribal communities or parts of or groups within tribes or tribal communities which shall for the purposes of this Constitution be deemed to be Scheduled Tribes in relation to that State³[or Union territory, as the case may be.]

(2) Parliament may by law include in or exclude from the list of Scheduled Tribes specified in a notification issued under clause (1) any tribe or tribal community or part of or group within any tribe or tribal community, but save as aforesaid a notification issued under the said clause shall not be varied by any subsequent notification.

-
1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 2. See the Constitution (Scheduled Castes) Order, 1950 (C.O. 19), the Constitution (Scheduled Castes) (Union Territories) Order, 1951 (C.O. 32), the Constitution (Jammu and Kashmir) Scheduled Castes Order, 1956 (C.O. 52), the Constitution (Dadra and Nagar Haveli) (Scheduled Castes) Order, 1962 (C.O. 64), the Constitution (Pondicherry) Scheduled Castes Order, 1964 (C.O. 68), the Constitution (Goa, Daman and Diu) Scheduled Castes Order, 1968 (C.O. 81) and the Constitution (Sikkim) Scheduled Castes Order, 1978 (C.O. 110).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 4. Subs. by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 11, for "may, after consultation with the Governor or Rajpramukh of State" (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).
 5. Certain words Omitted by the constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 6. See the Constitution (Scheduled Tribes) Order, 1950 (C.O. 22), the Constitution (Scheduled Tribes) (Union Territories) Order, 1951 (C.O. 33), the Constitution (Andaman and Nicobar Islands) (Scheduled Tribes) Order, 1959 (C.O. 58), the Constitution (Dadra and Nagar Haveli) (Scheduled Tribes) Order, 1962 (C.O. 65), the Constitution (Scheduled Tribes) (Uttar Pradesh) Order, 1967 (C.O. 78), the Constitution (Goa, Daman and Diu) Scheduled Tribes Order, 1968 (C.O. 82), the Constitution (Nagaland) Scheduled Tribes Order, 1970 (C.O. 88) the Constitution (Sikkim) Scheduled Tribes Order, 1978 (C.O. 111).

(Part XVI.—Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes)

¹[**342A. Socially and educationally backward classes.**—(1) The President may with respect to any State or Union territory, and where it is a State, after consultation with the Governor thereof, by public notification, specify ²[the socially and educationally backward classes in the Central List which shall for the purposes of the Central Government] be deemed to be socially and educationally backward classes in relation to that State or Union territory, as the case may be.

(2) Parliament may by law include in or exclude from the Central List of socially and educationally backward classes specified in a notification issued under clause (1) any socially and educationally backward class, but save as aforesaid a notification issued under the said clause shall not be varied by any subsequent notification.]

³[*Explanation.*—For the purposes of clauses (1) and (2), the expression “Central List” means the list of socially and educationally backward classes prepared and maintained by and for the Central Government.

(3) Notwithstanding any contained in clauses (1) and (2), every State or Union territory may, by law, prepare and maintain, for its own purposes, a list of socially and educationally backward classes, entries in which may be different from the Central List.]

-
1. Art 342 A ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Second Amendment) Act, 2018, s. 4 (w.e.f. 15-8-2018).
 2. Subs. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Fifth Amendment) Act, 2021, s. 3 for socially and educationally backward classes which shall for the purposes of the Constitution (w.e.f. 15-9-2021).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Fifth Amendment) Act, 2021, s. 3 (w.e.f. 15-9-2021).

PART XVII

OFFICIAL LANGUAGE

CHAPTER I.—LANGUAGE OF THE UNION

343. Official language of the Union.—(1) The official language of the Union shall be Hindi in Devanagari script.

The form of numerals to be used for the official purposes of the Union shall be the international form of Indian numerals.

(2) Notwithstanding anything in clause (1), for a period of fifteen years from the commencement of this Constitution, the English language shall continue to be used for all the official purposes of the Union for which it was being used immediately before such commencement:

Provided that the President may, during the said period, by order¹ authorise the use of the Hindi language in addition to the English language and of the Devanagari form of numerals in addition to the international form of Indian numerals for any of the official purposes of the Union.

(3) Notwithstanding anything in this article, Parliament may by law provide for the use, after the said period of fifteen years, of—

(a) the English language; or

(b) the Devanagari form of numerals,

for such purposes as may be specified in the law.

344. Commission and Committee of Parliament on official language.—(1) The President shall, at the expiration of five years from the commencement of this Constitution and thereafter at the expiration of ten years from such commencement, by order constitute a Commission which shall consist of a Chairman and such other members representing the different languages specified in the Eighth Schedule as the President may appoint, and the order shall define the procedure to be followed by the Commission.

(2) It shall be the duty of the Commission to make recommendations to the President as to—

(a) the progressive use of the Hindi language for the official purposes of the Union;

(b) restrictions on the use of the English language for all or any of the official purposes of the Union;

(c) the language to be used for all or any of the purposes mentioned in article 348;

1. See C.O. 41.

(d) the form of numerals to be used for any one or more specified purposes of the Union;

(e) any other matter referred to the Commission by the President as regards the official language of the Union and the language for communication between the Union and a State or between one State and another and their use.

(3) In making their recommendations under clause (2), the Commission shall have due regard to the industrial, cultural and scientific advancement of India, and the just claims and the interests of persons belonging to the non-Hindi speaking areas in regard to the public services.

(4) There shall be constituted a Committee consisting of thirty members, of whom twenty shall be members of the House of the People and ten shall be members of the Council of States to be elected respectively by the members of the House of the People and the members of the Council of States in accordance with the system of proportional representation by means of the single transferable vote.

(5) It shall be the duty of the Committee to examine the recommendations of the Commission constituted under clause (1) and to report to the President their opinion thereon.

(6) Notwithstanding anything in article 343, the President may, after consideration of the report referred to in clause (5), issue directions in accordance with the whole or any part of that report.

CHAPTER II.—REGIONAL LANGUAGES

345. Official language or languages of a State.—Subject to the provisions of articles 346 and 347, the Legislature of a State may by law adopt any one or more of the languages in use in the State or Hindi as the language or languages to be used for all or any of the official purposes of that State:

Provided that, until the Legislature of the State otherwise provides by law, the English language shall continue to be used for those official purposes within the State for which it was being used immediately before the commencement of this Constitution.

346. Official language for communication between one State and another or between a State and the Union.—The language for the time being authorised for use in the Union for official purposes shall be the official language for communication between one State and another State and between a State and the Union:

Provided that if two or more States agree that the Hindi language should be the official language for communication between such States, that language may be used for such communication.

347. Special provision relating to language spoken by a section of the population of a State.—On a demand being made in that behalf the President may, if he is satisfied that a substantial proportion of the population of a State desire the use of any language spoken by them to be recognised by that State, direct that such language shall also be officially recognised throughout that State or any part thereof for such purpose as he may specify.

CHAPTER III.—LANGUAGE OF THE SUPREME COURT,
HIGH COURTS, ETC.

348. Language to be used in the Supreme Court and in the High Courts and for Acts, Bills, etc.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in the foregoing provisions of this Part, until Parliament by law otherwise provides—

- (a) all proceedings in the Supreme Court and in every High Court;
- (b) the authoritative texts—

(i) of all Bills to be introduced or amendments thereto to be moved in either House of Parliament or in the House or either House of the Legislature of a State;

(ii) of all Acts passed by Parliament or the Legislature of a State and of all Ordinances promulgated by the President or the Governor^{1***} of a State; and

(iii) of all orders, rules, regulations and bye-laws issued under this Constitution or under any law made by Parliament or the Legislature of a State,

shall be in the English language.

(2) Notwithstanding anything in sub-clause (a) of clause (1), the Governor^{1***} of a State may, with the previous consent of the President, authorise the use of the Hindi language, or any other language used for any official purposes of the State, in proceedings in the High Court having its principal seat in that State:

1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

Provided that nothing in this clause shall apply to any judgment, decree or order passed or made by such High Court.

(3) Notwithstanding anything in sub-clause (b) of clause (1), where the Legislature of a State has prescribed any language other than the English language for use in Bills introduced in, or Acts passed by, the Legislature of the State or in Ordinances promulgated by the Governor ^{1***} of the State or in any order, rule, regulation or bye-law referred to in paragraph (iii) of that sub-clause, a translation of the same in the English language published under the authority of the Governor ^{1***} of the State in the Official Gazette of that State shall be deemed to be the authoritative text thereof in the English language under this article.

349. Special procedure for enactment of certain laws relating to language.—During the period of fifteen years from the commencement of this Constitution, no Bill or amendment making provision for the language to be used for any of the purposes mentioned in clause (1) of article 348 shall be introduced or moved in either House of Parliament without the previous sanction of the President, and the President shall not give his sanction to the introduction of any such Bill or the moving of any such amendment except after he has taken into consideration the recommendations of the Commission constituted under clause (1) of article 344 and the report of the Committee constituted under clause (4) of that article.

CHAPTER IV.—SPECIAL DIRECTIVES

350. Language to be used in representations for redress of grievances.—Every person shall be entitled to submit a representation for the redress of any grievance to any officer or authority of the Union or a State in any of the languages used in the Union or in the State, as the case may be.

²[350A. Facilities for instruction in mother-tongue at primary stage.]—It shall be the endeavour of every State and of every local authority within the State to provide adequate facilities for instruction in the mother-tongue at the primary stage of education to children belonging to linguistic minority groups; and the President may issue such directions to any State as he considers necessary or proper for securing the provision of such facilities.

1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. Arts. 350A and 350B ins. by s.21., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

350B. Special Officer for linguistic minorities.—(1) There shall be a Special Officer for linguistic minorities to be appointed by the President.

(2) It shall be the duty of the Special Officer to investigate all matters relating to the safeguards provided for linguistic minorities under this Constitution and report to the President upon those matters at such intervals as the President may direct, and the President shall cause all such reports to be laid before each House of Parliament, and sent to the Governments of the States concerned.]

351. Directive for development of the Hindi language.—It shall be the duty of the Union to promote the spread of the Hindi language, to develop it so that it may serve as a medium of expression for all the elements of the composite culture of India and to secure its enrichment by assimilating without interfering with its genius, the forms, style and expressions used in Hindustani and in the other languages of India specified in the Eighth Schedule, and by drawing, wherever necessary or desirable, for its vocabulary, primarily on Sanskrit and secondarily on other languages.

PART XVIII

EMERGENCY PROVISIONS

352. Proclamation of Emergency.—(1) If the President is satisfied that a grave emergency exists whereby the security of India or of any part of the territory thereof is threatened, whether by war or external aggression or ¹[armed rebellion], he may, by Proclamation, make a declaration to that effect ²[in respect of the whole of India or of such part of the territory thereof as may be specified in the Proclamation.]

³[*Explanation.*—A Proclamation of Emergency declaring that the security of India or any part of the territory thereof is threatened by war or by external aggression or by armed rebellion may be made before the actual occurrence of war or of any such aggression or rebellion, if the President is satisfied that there is imminent danger thereof.]

⁴[(2) A Proclamation issued under clause (1) may be varied or revoked by a subsequent Proclamation.

(3) The President shall not issue a Proclamation under clause (1) or a Proclamation varying such Proclamation unless the decision of the Union Cabinet (that is to say, the Council consisting of the Prime Minister and other Ministers of Cabinet rank appointed under article 75) that such a Proclamation may be issued has been communicated to him in writing.

(4) Every Proclamation issued under this article shall be laid before each House of Parliament and shall, except where it is a Proclamation revoking a previous Proclamation, cease to operate at the expiration of one month unless before the expiration of that period it has been approved by resolutions of both Houses of Parliament:

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 37, for "internal disturbance" (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 2. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 48 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 37 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 4. Subs. by s. 37, *ibid.*, for cl. (2), (2A) and (3) (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XVIII.—EMERGENCY PROVISIONS)

Provided that if any such Proclamation (not being a Proclamation revoking a previous Proclamation) is issued at a time when the House of the People has been dissolved, or the dissolution of the House of the People takes place during the period of one month referred to in this clause, and if a resolution approving the Proclamation has been passed by the Council of States, but no resolution with respect to such Proclamation has been passed by the House of the People before the expiration of that period, the Proclamation shall cease to operate at the expiration of thirty days from the date on which the House of the People first sits after its reconstitution, unless before the expiration of the said period of thirty days a resolution approving the Proclamation has been also passed by the House of the People.

(5) A Proclamation so approved shall, unless revoked, cease to operate on the expiration of a period of six months from the date of the passing of the second of the resolutions approving the Proclamation under clause (4):

Provided that if and so often as a resolution approving the continuance in force of such a Proclamation is passed by both Houses of Parliament the Proclamation shall, unless revoked, continue in force for a further period of six months from the date on which it would otherwise have ceased to operate under this clause:

Provided further that if the dissolution of the House of the People takes place during any such period of six months and a resolution approving the continuance in force of such Proclamation has been passed by the Council of States but no resolution with respect to the continuance in force of such Proclamation has been passed by the House of the People during the said period, the Proclamation shall cease to operate at the expiration of thirty days from the date on which the House of the People first sits after its reconstitution unless before the expiration of the said period of thirty days, a resolution approving the continuance in force of the Proclamation has been also passed by the House of the People.

(6) For the purposes of clauses (4) and (5), a resolution may be passed by either House of Parliament only by a majority of the total membership of that House and by a majority of not less than two-thirds of the Members of that House present and voting.

(7) Notwithstanding anything contained in the foregoing clauses, the President shall revoke a Proclamation issued under clause (1) or a Proclamation varying such Proclamation if the House of the People passes a resolution disapproving, or, as the case may be, disapproving the continuance in force of, such Proclamation.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XVIII.—EMERGENCY PROVISIONS)

(8) Where a notice in writing signed by not less than one-tenth of the total number of members of the House of the People has been given, of their intention to move a resolution for disapproving, or, as the case may be, for disapproving the continuance in force of, a Proclamation issued under clause (1) or a Proclamation varying such Proclamation,—

- (a) to the Speaker, if the House is in session; or
- (b) to the President, if the House is not in session,

a special sitting of the House shall be held within fourteen days from the date on which such notice is received by the Speaker, or, as the case may be, by the President, for the purpose of considering such resolution.]

¹[(9) The power conferred on the President by this article shall include the power to issue different Proclamations on different grounds, being war or external aggression or ²[armed rebellion] or imminent danger of war or external aggression or ²[armed rebellion], whether or not there is a Proclamation already issued by the President under clause (1) and such Proclamation is in operation.

* * * * *

353. Effect of Proclamation of Emergency.—While a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation, then—

(a) notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, the executive power of the Union shall extend to the giving of directions to any State as to the manner in which the executive power thereof is to be exercised;

(b) the power of Parliament to make laws with respect to any matter shall include power to make laws conferring powers and imposing duties, or authorising the conferring of powers and the imposition of duties, upon the Union or officers and authorities of the Union as respects that matter, notwithstanding that it is one which is not enumerated in the Union List:

1. Cls. (4) and (5) ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 5 (with retrospective effect) and subsequently cl. (4) renumbered as cl. (9) and cl. (5) omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 37 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

2. Subs. by s. 37, *ibid.* for "internal disturbance" (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

¹[Provided that where a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation only in any part of the territory of India,—

(i) the executive power of the Union to give directions under clause (a), and

(ii) the power of Parliament to make laws under clause (b),

shall also extend to any State other than a State in which or in any part of which the Proclamation of Emergency is in operation if and in so far as the security of India or any part of the territory thereof is threatened by activities in or in relation to the part of the territory of India in which the Proclamation of Emergency is in operation.]

354. Application of provisions relating to distribution of revenues while a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation.—(1) The President may, while a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation, by order direct that all or any of the provisions of articles 268 to 279 shall for such period, not extending in any case beyond the expiration of the financial year in which such Proclamation ceases to operate, as may be specified in the order, have effect subject to such exceptions or modifications as he thinks fit.

(2) Every order made under clause (1) shall, as soon as may be after it is made, be laid before each House of Parliament.

355. Duty of the Union to protect States against external aggression and internal disturbance.—It shall be the duty of the Union to protect every State against external aggression and internal disturbance and to ensure that the Government of every State is carried on in accordance with the provisions of this Constitution.

356. Provisions in case of failure of constitutional machinery in States.—(1) If the President, on receipt of a report from the Governor^{2***} of a State or otherwise, is satisfied that a situation has arisen in which the Government of the State cannot be carried on in accordance with the provisions of this Constitution, the President may by Proclamation—

1. Added by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 49 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

2. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XVIII.—EMERGENCY PROVISIONS)

(a) assume to himself all or any of the functions of the Government of the State and all or any of the powers vested in or exercisable by the Governor^{1***} or any body or authority in the State other than the Legislature of the State;

(b) declare that the powers of the Legislature of the State shall be exercisable by or under the authority of Parliament;

(c) make such incidental and consequential provisions as appear to the President to be necessary or desirable for giving effect to the objects of the Proclamation, including provisions for suspending in whole or in part the operation of any provisions of this Constitution relating to any body or authority in the State:

Provided that nothing in this clause shall authorise the President to assume to himself any of the powers vested in or exercisable by a High Court, or to suspend in whole or in part the operation of any provision of this Constitution relating to High Courts.

(2) Any such Proclamation may be revoked or varied by a subsequent Proclamation.

(3) Every Proclamation under this article shall be laid before each House of Parliament and shall, except where it is a Proclamation revoking a previous Proclamation, cease to operate at the expiration of two months unless before the expiration of that period it has been approved by resolutions of both Houses of Parliament:

Provided that if any such Proclamation (not being a Proclamation revoking a previous Proclamation) is issued at a time when the House of the People is dissolved or the dissolution of the House of the People takes place during the period of two months referred to in this clause, and if a resolution approving the Proclamation has been passed by the Council of States, but no resolution with respect to such Proclamation has been passed by the House of the People before the expiration of that period, the Proclamation shall cease to operate at the expiration of thirty days from the date on which the House of the People first sits after its reconstitution unless before the expiration of the said period of thirty days a resolution approving the Proclamation has been also passed by the House of the People.

1. The words "or Rajpramukh, as the case may be" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(4) A Proclamation so approved shall, unless revoked, cease to operate on the expiration of a period of ¹[six months from the date of issue of the Proclamation]:

Provided that if and so often as a resolution approving the continuance in force of such a Proclamation is passed by both Houses of Parliament, the Proclamation shall, unless revoked, continue in force for a further period of ²[six months] from the date on which under this clause it would otherwise have ceased to operate, but no such Proclamation shall in any case remain in force for more than three years:

Provided further that if the dissolution of the House of the People takes place during any such period of ²[six months] and a resolution approving the continuance in force of such Proclamation has been passed by the Council of States, but no resolution with respect to the continuance in force of such Proclamation has been passed by the House of the People during the said period, the Proclamation shall cease to operate at the expiration of thirty days from the date on which the House of the People first sits after its reconstitution unless before the expiration of the said period of thirty days a resolution approving the continuance in force of the Proclamation has been also passed by the House of the People:

³[Provided also that in the case of the Proclamation issued under clause (1) on the 11th day of May, 1987 with respect to the State of Punjab, the reference in the first proviso to this clause to "three years" shall be construed as a reference to ⁴[five years].]

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 50, for "six months" (w.e.f. 3-1-1977) and further subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 38, for "one year from the date of the passing of the second of the resolutions approving the Proclamation under clause (3)" (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 2. Subs. by s. 50, *ibid.*, for "six months" (w.e.f. 3-1-1977) and further subs. by s. 38, *ibid.*, for "one year", respectively (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Sixty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1990, s. 2 (w.e.f. 16-4-1990).
 4. Subs. by the Constitution (Sixty-seventh Amendment) Act, 1990, s. 2 (w.e.f. 4-10-1990) and further subs. by the Constitution (Sixty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1991, s. 2 (w.e.f. 12-3-1991).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XVIII.—EMERGENCY PROVISIONS)

¹[(5) Notwithstanding anything contained in clause (4), a resolution with respect to the continuance in force of a Proclamation approved under clause (3) for any period beyond the expiration of one year from the date of issue of such Proclamation shall not be passed by either House of Parliament unless—

(a) a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation, in the whole of India or, as the case may be, in the whole or any part of the State, at the time of the passing of such resolution, and

(b) the Election Commission certifies that the continuance in force of the Proclamation approved under clause (3) during the period specified in such resolution is necessary on account of difficulties in holding general elections to the Legislative Assembly of the State concerned:]

²[Provided that nothing in this clause shall apply to the Proclamation issued under clause (1) on the 11th day of May, 1987 with respect to the State of Punjab.]

357. Exercise of legislative powers under Proclamation issued under article 356.—(1) Where by a Proclamation issued under clause (1) of article 356, it has been declared that the powers of the Legislature of the State shall be exercisable by or under the authority of Parliament, it shall be competent—

(a) for Parliament to confer on the President the power of the Legislature of the State to make laws, and to authorise the President to delegate, subject to such conditions as he may think fit to impose, the power so conferred to any other authority to be specified by him in that behalf;

(b) for Parliament, or for the President or other authority in whom such power to make laws is vested under sub-clause (a), to make laws conferring powers and imposing duties, or authorising the conferring of powers and the imposition of duties, upon the Union or officers and authorities thereof;

(c) for the President to authorise when the House of the People is not in session expenditure from the Consolidated Fund of the State pending the sanction of such expenditure by Parliament.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 6 (with retrospective effect) and subsequently subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 38, for cl. (5) (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

2. Proviso omitted by the Constitution (Sixty-third Amendment) Act, 1989, s. 2 (w.e.f. 6-1-1990) and subsequently ins. by the Constitution (Sixty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1990, s. 2 (w.e.f. 16-4-1990).

¹[(2) Any law made in exercise of the power of the Legislature of the State by Parliament or the President or other authority referred to in sub-clause (a) of clause (1) which Parliament or the President or such other authority would not, but for the issue of a Proclamation under article 356, have been competent to make shall, after the Proclamation has ceased to operate, continue in force until altered or repealed or amended by a competent Legislature or other authority.]

358. Suspension of provisions of article 19 during emergencies.—²[(1)] ³[While a Proclamation of Emergency declaring that the security of India or any part of the territory thereof is threatened by war or by external aggression is in operation], nothing in article 19 shall restrict the power of the State as defined in Part III to make any law or to take any executive action which the State would but for the provisions contained in that Part be competent to make or to take, but any law so made shall, to the extent of the incompetency, cease to have effect as soon as the Proclamation ceases to operate, except as respects things done or omitted to be done before the law so ceases to have effect:

⁴[Provided that ⁵[where such Proclamation of Emergency] is in operation only in any part of the territory of India, any such law may be made, or any such executive action may be taken, under this article in relation to or in any State or Union territory in which or in any part of which the Proclamation of Emergency is not in operation, if and in so far as the security of India or any part of the territory thereof is threatened by activities in or in relation to the part of the territory of India in which the Proclamation of Emergency is in operation.]

⁶[(2) Nothing in clause (1) shall apply—

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 51 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 2. Art. 358 re-numbered as cl. (1) by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 39 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 3. Subs. by s. 39, *ibid*, for "While a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation" (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 4. Added by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 52 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 5. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 39, for "where a Proclamation of Emergency" (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 6. Ins. by s. 39, *ibid*. (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

(a) to any law which does not contain a recital to the effect that such law is in relation to the Proclamation of Emergency in operation when it is made; or

(b) to any executive action taken otherwise than under a law containing such a recital.]

359. Suspension of the enforcement of the rights conferred by Part III during emergencies.—(1) Where a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation, the President may by order declare that the right to move any court for the enforcement of such of¹[the rights conferred by Part III (except articles 20 and 21)] as may be mentioned in the order and all proceedings pending in any court for the enforcement of the rights so mentioned shall remain suspended for the period during which the Proclamation is in force or for such shorter period as may be specified in the order.

²[(1A) While an order made under clause (1) mentioning any of¹[the rights conferred by Part III (except articles 20 and 21)] is in operation, nothing in that Part conferring those rights shall restrict the power of the State as defined in the said Part to make any law or to take any executive action which the State would but for the provisions contained in that Part be competent to make or to take, but any law so made shall, to the extent of the incompetency, cease to have effect as soon as the order aforesaid ceases to operate, except as respects things done or omitted to be done before the law so ceases to have effect:]

³[Provided that where a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation only in any part of the territory of India, any such law may be made, or any such executive action may be taken, under this article in relation to or in any State or Union territory in which or in any part of which the Proclamation of Emergency is not in operation, if and in so far as the security of India or any part of the territory thereof is threatened by activities in or in relation to the part of the territory of India in which the Proclamation of Emergency is in operation.]

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 40, for "the rights conferred by Part III" (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 2. Ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 7 (with retrospective effect).
 3. Added by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 53 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XVIII.—EMERGENCY PROVISIONS)

¹[(1B) Nothing in clause (1A) shall apply—

(a) to any law which does not contain a recital to the effect that such law is in relation to the Proclamation of Emergency in operation when it is made; or

(b) to any executive action taken otherwise than under a law containing such a recital.]

(2) An order made as aforesaid may extend to the whole or any part of the territory of India:

²[Provided that where a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation only in a part of the territory of India, any such order shall not extend to any other part of the territory of India unless the President, being satisfied that the security of India or any part of the territory thereof is threatened by activities in or in relation to the part of the territory of India in which the Proclamation of Emergency is in operation, considers such extension to be necessary.]

(3) Every order made under clause (1) shall, as soon as may be after it is made, be laid before each House of Parliament.

³**359A.** [*Application of this Part to the State of Punjab.*]—Omitted by the Constitution (Sixty-third Amendment) Act, 1989, s. 3 (w.e.f. 6-1-1990).

360. Provisions as to financial emergency.—(1) If the President is satisfied that a situation has arisen whereby the financial stability or credit of India or of any part of the territory thereof is threatened, he may by a Proclamation make a declaration to that effect.

⁴[(2) A Proclamation issued under clause (1)—

(a) may be revoked or varied by a subsequent Proclamation;

(b) shall be laid before each House of Parliament;

-
1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 40 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).
 2. Added by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 53 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Fifty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1988, s. 3 (w.e.f. 30-3-1988) and ceased to operate on the expiry of a period of two years from the commencement of that Act, i.e. 30th day of March, 1988.
 4. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 41, for cl. (2) (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XVIII.—EMERGENCY PROVISIONS)

(c) shall cease to operate at the expiration of two months, unless before the expiration of that period it has been approved by resolutions of both Houses of Parliament:

Provided that if any such Proclamation is issued at a time when the House of the People has been dissolved or the dissolution of the House of the People takes place during the period of two months referred to in sub-clause (c), and if a resolution approving the Proclamation has been passed by the Council of States, but no resolution with respect to such Proclamation has been passed by the House of the People before the expiration of that period, the Proclamation shall cease to operate at the expiration of thirty days from the date on which the House of the People first sits after its reconstitution unless before the expiration of the said period of thirty days a resolution approving the Proclamation has been also passed by the House of the People.]

(3) During the period any such Proclamation as is mentioned in clause (1) is in operation, the executive authority of the Union shall extend to the giving of directions to any State to observe such canons of financial propriety as may be specified in the directions, and to the giving of such other directions as the President may deem necessary and adequate for the purpose.

(4) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution—

(a) any such direction may include—

(i) a provision requiring the reduction of salaries and allowances of all or any class of persons serving in connection with the affairs of a State;

(ii) a provision requiring all Money Bills or other Bills to which the provisions of article 207 apply to be reserved for the consideration of the President after they are passed by the Legislature of the State;

(b) it shall be competent for the President during the period any Proclamation issued under this article is in operation to issue directions for the reduction of salaries and allowances of all or any class of persons serving in connection with the affairs of the Union including the Judges of the Supreme Court and the High Courts.

¹[(5) * * * * *]

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 8 (with retrospective effect) and omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 41 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

PART XIX

MISCELLANEOUS

361. Protection of President and Governors and Rajpramukhs.—(1)

The President, or the Governor or Rajpramukh of a State, shall not be answerable to any court for the exercise and performance of the powers and duties of his office or for any act done or purporting to be done by him in the exercise and performance of those powers and duties:

Provided that the conduct of the President may be brought under review by any court, tribunal or body appointed or designated by either House of Parliament for the investigation of a charge under article 61:

Provided further that nothing in this clause shall be construed as restricting the right of any person to bring appropriate proceedings against the Government of India or the Government of a State.

(2) No criminal proceedings whatsoever shall be instituted or continued against the President, or the Governor ^{1***} of a State, in any court during his term of office.

(3) No process for the arrest or imprisonment of the President, or the Governor ^{1***} of a State, shall issue from any court during his term of office.

(4) No civil proceedings in which relief is claimed against the President, or the Governor ^{1***} of a State, shall be instituted during his term of office in any court in respect of any act done or purporting to be done by him in his personal capacity, whether before or after he entered upon his office as President, or as Governor ^{1***} of such State, until the expiration of two months next after notice in writing has been delivered to the President or the Governor ^{1***}, as the case may be, or left at his office stating the nature of the proceedings, the cause of action therefor, the name, description and place of residence of the party by whom such proceedings are to be instituted and the relief which he claims.

1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

¹[**361A. Protection of publication of proceedings of Parliament and State Legislatures.**—(1) No person shall be liable to any proceedings, civil or criminal, in any court in respect of the publication in a newspaper of a substantially true report of any proceedings of either House of Parliament or the Legislative Assembly, or, as the case may be, either House of the Legislature, of a State, unless the publication is proved to have been made with malice:

Provided that nothing in this clause shall apply to the publication of any report of the proceedings of a secret sitting of either House of Parliament or the Legislative Assembly, or, as the case may be, either House of the Legislature, of a State.

(2) Clause (1) shall apply in relation to reports or matters broadcast by means of wireless telegraphy as part of any programme or service provided by means of a broadcasting station as it applies in relation to reports or matters published in a newspaper.

Explanation.—In this article, “newspaper” includes a news agency report containing material for publication in a newspaper.]

²[**361B. Disqualification for appointment on remunerative political post.**—A member of a House belonging to any political party who is disqualified for being a member of the House under paragraph 2 of the Tenth Schedule shall also be disqualified to hold any remunerative political post for duration of the period commencing from the date of his disqualification till the date on which the term of his office as such member would expire or till the date on which he contests an election to a House and is declared elected, whichever is earlier.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this article,—

- (a) the expression “House” has the meaning assigned to it in clause (a) of paragraph 1 of the Tenth Schedule;
- (b) the expression “remunerative political post” means any office—
 - (i) under the Government of India or the Government of a State where the salary or remuneration for such office is paid out of the public revenue of the Government of India or the Government of the State, as the case may be; or

1. Art. 361A ins. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 42

(w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

2. Art. 361B ins. by the Constitution (Ninety-first Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 4

(w.e.f. 1-1-2004).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XIX.—MISCELLANEOUS)

(ii) under a body, whether incorporated or not, which is wholly or partially owned by the Government of India or the Government of State, and the salary or remuneration for such office is paid by such body,

except where such salary or remuneration paid is compensatory in nature.]

362. [Rights and privileges of Rulers of Indian States].—*Omitted by the Constitution (Twenty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 2 (w.e.f. 28-12-1971).*

363. Bar to interference by courts in disputes arising out of certain treaties, agreements, etc.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution but subject to the provisions of article 143, neither the Supreme Court nor any other court shall have jurisdiction in any dispute arising out of any provision of a treaty, agreement, covenant, engagement, *sanad* or other similar instrument which was entered into or executed before the commencement of this Constitution by any Ruler of an Indian State and to which the Government of the Dominion of India or any of its predecessor Governments was a party and which has or has been continued in operation after such commencement, or in any dispute in respect of any right accruing under or any liability or obligation arising out of any of the provisions of this Constitution relating to any such treaty, agreement, covenant, engagement, *sanad* or other similar instrument.

(2) In this article—

(a) “Indian State” means any territory recognised before the commencement of this Constitution by His Majesty or the Government of the Dominion of India as being such a State; and

(b) “Ruler” includes the Prince, Chief or other person recognised before such commencement by His Majesty or the Government of the Dominion of India as the Ruler of any Indian State.

¹[363A. Recognition granted to Rulers of Indian States to cease and privy purses to be abolished.]—Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution or in any law for the time being in force—

(a) the Prince, Chief or other person who, at any time before the commencement of the Constitution (Twenty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1971, was recognised by the President as the Ruler of an Indian State or any person who, at any time before such commencement, was recognised by the President as the successor of such ruler shall, on and from such commencement, cease to be recognised as such Ruler or the successor of such Ruler;

1. Art. 363A ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 3 (w.e.f. 28-12-1971).

(b) on and from the commencement of the Constitution (Twenty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1971, privy purse is abolished and all rights, liabilities and obligations in respect of *privy purse* are extinguished and accordingly the Ruler or, as the case may be, the successor of such Ruler, referred to in clause (a) or any other person shall not be paid any sum as *privy purse*.]

364. Special provisions as to major ports and aerodromes.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, the President may by public notification direct that as from such date as may be specified in the notification—

(a) any law made by Parliament or by the Legislature of a State shall not apply to any major port or aerodrome or shall apply thereto subject to such exceptions or modifications as may be specified in the notification; or

(b) any existing law shall cease to have effect in any major port or aerodrome except as respects things done or omitted to be done before the said date, or shall in its application to such port or aerodrome have effect subject to such exceptions or modifications as may be specified in the notification.

(2) In this article—

(a) “major port” means a port declared to be a major port by or under any law made by Parliament or any existing law and includes all areas for the time being included within the limits of such port;

(b) “aerodrome” means aerodrome as defined for the purposes of the enactments relating to airways, aircraft and air navigation.

365. Effect of failure to comply with, or to give effect to, directions given by the Union.—Where any State has failed to comply with, or to give effect to, any directions given in the exercise of the executive power of the Union under any of the provisions of this Constitution, it shall be lawful for the President to hold that a situation has arisen in which the Government of the State cannot be carried on in accordance with the provisions of this Constitution.

366. Definitions.—In this Constitution, unless the context otherwise requires, the following expressions have the meanings hereby respectively assigned to them, that is to say—

(1) “agricultural income” means agricultural income as defined for the purposes of the enactments relating to Indian income-tax;

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XIX.—MISCELLANEOUS)

(2) “an Anglo-Indian” means a person whose father or any of whose other male progenitors in the male line is or was of European descent but who is domiciled within the territory of India and is or was born within such territory of parents habitually resident therein and not established there for temporary purposes only;

(3) “article” means an article of this Constitution;

(4) “borrow” includes the raising of money by the grant of annuities, and “loan” shall be construed accordingly;

¹[(4A)* * * *]

(5) “clause” means a clause of the article in which the expression occurs;

(6) “corporation tax” means any tax on income, so far as that tax is payable by companies and is a tax in the case of which the following conditions are fulfilled:—

(a) that it is not chargeable in respect of agricultural income;

(b) that no deduction in respect of the tax paid by companies is, by any enactments which may apply to the tax, authorised to be made from dividends payable by the companies to individuals;

(c) that no provision exists for taking the tax so paid into account in computing for the purposes of Indian income-tax the total income of individuals receiving such dividends, or in computing the Indian income-tax payable by, or refundable to, such individuals;

(7) “corresponding Province”, “corresponding Indian State” or “corresponding State” means in cases of doubt such Province, Indian State or State as may be determined by the President to be the corresponding Province, the corresponding Indian State or the corresponding State, as the case may be, for the particular purpose in question;

1. Cl. (4A) was ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 54 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977) and subsequently omitted by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 11 (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XIX.—MISCELLANEOUS)

(8) “debt” includes any liability in respect of any obligation to repay capital sums by way of annuities and any liability under any guarantee, and “debt charges” shall be construed accordingly;

(9) “estate duty” means a duty to be assessed on or by reference to the principal value, ascertained in accordance with such rules as may be prescribed by or under laws made by Parliament or the Legislature of a State relating to the duty, of all property passing upon death or deemed, under the provisions of the said laws, so to pass;

(10) “existing law” means any law, Ordinance, order, bye-law, rule or regulation passed or made before the commencement of this Constitution by any Legislature, authority or person having power to make such a law, Ordinance, order, bye-law, rule or regulation;

(11) “Federal Court” means the Federal Court constituted under the Government of India Act, 1935;

(12) “goods” includes all materials, commodities, and articles;

¹[(12A) “goods and services tax” means any tax on supply of goods, or services or both except taxes on the supply of the alcoholic liquor for human consumption];

(13) “guarantee” includes any obligation undertaken before the commencement of this Constitution to make payments in the event of the profits of an undertaking falling short of a specified amount;

(14) “High Court” means any Court which is deemed for the purposes of this Constitution to be a High Court for any State and includes—

(a) any Court in the territory of India constituted or reconstituted under this Constitution as a High Court; and

(b) any other Court in the territory of India which may be declared by Parliament by law to be a High Court for all or any of the purposes of this Constitution;

(15) “Indian State” means any territory which the Government of the Dominion of India recognised as such a State;

1. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 14(i) (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XIX.—MISCELLANEOUS)

(16) "Part" means a Part of this Constitution;

(17) "pension" means a pension, whether contributory or not, of any kind whatsoever payable to or in respect of any person, and includes retired pay so payable; a gratuity so payable and any sum or sums so payable by way of the return, with or without interest thereon or any other addition thereto, of subscriptions to a provident fund;

(18) "Proclamation of Emergency" means a Proclamation issued under clause (1) of article 352;

(19) "public notification" means a notification in the Gazette of India, or, as the case may be, the Official Gazette of a State;

(20) "railway" does not include—

(a) a tramway wholly within a municipal area; or

(b) any other line of communication wholly situate in one State and declared by Parliament by law not to be a railway;

¹[(21)* * * *]

²[(22) "Ruler" means the Prince, Chief or other person who, at any time before the commencement of the Constitution (Twenty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1971, was recognised by the President as the Ruler of an Indian State or any person who, at any time before such commencement, was recognised by the President as the successor of such Ruler;]

(23) "Schedule" means a Schedule to this Constitution;

(24) "Scheduled Castes" means such castes, races or tribes or parts of or groups within such castes, races or tribes as are deemed under article 341 to be Scheduled Castes for the purposes of this Constitution;

(25) "Scheduled Tribes" means such tribes or tribal communities or parts of or groups within such tribes or tribal communities as are deemed under article 342 to be Scheduled Tribes for the purposes of this Constitution;

1. Cl. (21) omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Twenty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 4 (w.e.f. 28-12-1971).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XIX.—MISCELLANEOUS)

(26) "securities" includes stock;

* * *

²[(26A) "Services" means anything other than goods;

(26B) "State" with reference to articles 246A, 268, 269, 269A and article 279A includes a Union territory with Legislature];

³[(26C) "socially and educationally backward classes" means such backward classes as are so deemed under article 342A for the purposes of the Central Government or the State or Union territory, as the case may be];

(27) "sub-clause" means a sub-clause of the clause in which the expression occurs;

(28) "taxation" includes the imposition of any tax or impost, whether general or local or special, and "tax" shall be construed accordingly;

(29) "tax on income" includes a tax in the nature of an excess profits tax;

⁴[(29A) "tax on the sale or purchase of goods" includes—

(a) a tax on the transfer, otherwise than in pursuance of a contract, of property in any goods for cash, deferred payment or other valuable consideration;

(b) a tax on the transfer of property in goods (whether as goods or in some other form) involved in the execution of a works contract;

(c) a tax on the delivery of goods on hire-purchase or any system of payment by instalments;

(d) a tax on the transfer of the right to use any goods for any purpose (whether or not for a specified period) for cash, deferred payment or other valuable consideration;

1. Cl. (26A) was ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 54 (w.e.f. 1-2-1977), and subsequently omitted by the Constitution (Forty-third Amendment) Act, 1977, s. 11 (w.e.f. 13-4-1978).
2. Ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 14(ii) (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).
3. Cl. (26C) was ins. by the Constitution (One Hundred and second Amendment) Act, 2018, s. 5 (w.e.f. 14-8-2018), and subsequently subs. by the Constitution (One Hundred and Fifth Amendment) Act, 2021, s. 4 (w.e.f. 15-9-2021).
4. Cl. (29A) ins. by the Constitution (Forty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1982, s. 4 (w.e.f. 2-2-1983).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XIX.—MISCELLANEOUS)

(e) a tax on the supply of goods by any unincorporated association or body of persons to a member thereof for cash, deferred payment or other valuable consideration;

(f) a tax on the supply, by way of or as part of any service or in any other manner whatsoever, of goods, being food or any other article for human consumption or any drink (whether or not intoxicating), where such supply or service, is for cash, deferred payment or other valuable consideration,

and such transfer, delivery or supply of any goods shall be deemed to be a sale of those goods by the person making the transfer, delivery or supply and a purchase of those goods by the person to whom such transfer, delivery or supply is made;]

[(30) "Union territory" means any Union territory specified in the First Schedule and includes any other territory comprised within the territory of India but not specified in that Schedule.]

367. Interpretation.—(1) Unless the context otherwise requires, the General Clauses Act, 1897, shall, subject to any adaptations and modifications that may be made therein under article 372, apply for the interpretation of this Constitution as it applies for the interpretation of an Act of the Legislature of the Dominion of India.

(2) Any reference in this Constitution to Acts or laws of, or made by, Parliament, or to Acts or laws of, or made by, the Legislature of a State^{2***}, shall be construed as including a reference to an Ordinance made by the President or, to an Ordinance made by a Governor^{3***}, as the case may be.

(3) For the purposes of this Constitution "foreign State" means any State other than India:

Provided that, subject to the provisions of any law made by Parliament, the President may by order⁴ declare any State not to be a foreign State for such purposes as may be specified in the order.

⁵[(4) * * * *]

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. for cl. (30) (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. The words and letters "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

4. See the Constitution (Declaration as to Foreign States) Order, 1950 (C.O. 2).

5. Added by the Constitution (Application to Jammu and Kashmir) Order, 2019 (C.O. 272) (w.e.f. 5-8-2019), for the text of this C.O., see Appendix II.

PART XX

AMENDMENT OF THE CONSTITUTION

368. ¹[Power of Parliament to amend the Constitution and procedure therefor].—²[(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, Parliament may in exercise of its constituent power amend by way of addition, variation or repeal any provision of this Constitution in accordance with the procedure laid down in this article.]

³[(2)] An amendment of this Constitution may be initiated only by the introduction of a Bill for the purpose in either House of Parliament, and when the Bill is passed in each House by a majority of the total membership of that House and by a majority of not less than two-thirds of the members of that House present and voting, ⁴[it shall be presented to the President who shall give his assent to the Bill and thereupon] the Constitution shall stand amended in accordance with the terms of the Bill:

Provided that if such amendment seeks to make any change in—

- (a) article 54, article 55, article 73, ⁵[article 162, article 241 or article 279A]; or
- (b) Chapter IV of Part V, Chapter V of Part VI, or Chapter I of Part XI; or
- (c) any of the Lists in the Seventh Schedule; or
- (d) the representation of States in Parliament; or
- (e) the provisions of this article,

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Twenty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 3, for "Procedure for amendment of the Constitution" (w.e.f. 5-11-1971).
2. Ins. by s. 3, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 5-11-1971).
3. Art. 368 re-numbered as cl. (2) thereof by s. 3, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 5-11-1971).
4. Subs. by s. 3, *ibid.*, (w.e.f. 5-11-1971).
5. Subs. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 15, for the words and figures "article 162 or article 241" (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

the amendment shall also require to be ratified by the Legislatures of not less than one-half of the States ^{1***} by resolutions to that effect passed by those Legislatures before the Bill making provision for such amendment is presented to the President for assent.

²[(3) Nothing in article 13 shall apply to any amendment made under this article.]

³[(4) No amendment of this Constitution (including the provisions of Part III) made or purporting to have been made under this article [whether before or after the commencement of section 55 of the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976] shall be called in question in any court on any ground.

(5) For the removal of doubts, it is hereby declared that there shall be no limitation whatever on the constituent power of Parliament to amend by way of addition, variation or repeal the provisions of this Constitution under this article.]

-
1. The words and letters "specified in Part A and Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 2. Ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 3 (w.e.f. 5-11-1971).
 3. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 55 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977). This section has been declared invalid by the Supreme Court in *Minerva Mills Ltd. and Others Vs. Union of India and Others* AIR 1980 SC 1789.

PART XXI

¹[TEMPORARY, TRANSITIONAL AND SPECIAL PROVISIONS]

369. Temporary power to Parliament to make laws with respect to certain matters in the State List as if they were matters in the Concurrent List.—Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, Parliament shall, during a period of five years from the commencement of this Constitution, have power to make laws with respect to the following matters as if they were enumerated in the Concurrent List, namely:—

(a) trade and commerce within a State in, and the production, supply and distribution of, cotton and woollen textiles, raw cotton (including ginned cotton and unginned cotton or *kapas*), cotton seed, paper (including newsprint), food-stuffs (including edible oilseeds and oil), cattle fodder (including oil-cakes and other concentrates), coal (including coke and derivatives of coal), iron, steel and mica;

(b) offences against laws with respect to any of the matters mentioned in clause (a), jurisdiction and powers of all courts except the Supreme Court with respect to any of those matters, and fees in respect of any of those matters but not including fees taken in any court,

but any law made by Parliament, which Parliament would not but for the provisions of this article have been competent to make, shall, to the extent of the incompetency, cease to have effect on the expiration of the said period, except as respects things done or omitted to be done before the expiration thereof.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Thirteenth Amendment) Act, 1962, s. 2, for "TEMPORARY AND TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS" (w.e.f. 1-12-1963).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

****¹[370. Temporary provisions with respect to the State of Jammu and Kashmir.]**—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

(a) the provisions of article 238 shall not apply in relation to the State of Jammu and Kashmir;

(b) the power of Parliament to make laws for the said State shall be limited to—

(i) those matters in the Union List and the Concurrent List which, in consultation with the Government of the State, are declared by the President to correspond to matters specified in the Instrument of Accession governing the accession of the State to the Dominion of India as the matters with respect to which the Dominion Legislature may make laws for that State; and

** In exercise of the powers conferred by clause (3) of article 370 read with clause (1) of article 370 of the Constitution of India, the President, on the recommendation of Parliament, is pleased to declare that, as from the 6th August, 2019 all clauses of said article 370 shall cease to be operative except the following which shall read as under, namely:—

“370. All provisions of this Constitution, as amended from time to time, without any modifications or exceptions, shall apply to the State of Jammu and Kashmir notwithstanding anything contrary contained in article 152 or article 308 or any other article of this Constitution or any other provision of the Constitution of Jammu and Kashmir or any law, document, judgment, ordinance, order, by-law, rule, regulation, notification, custom or usage having the force of law in the territory of India, or any other instrument, treaty or agreement as envisaged under article 363 or otherwise.”.

(See Appendix III (C.O. 273).

1. In exercise of the powers conferred by clause (3) of the Constitution of India, the President, on the recommendation of the Constituent Assembly of the State of Jammu and Kashmir, declared that, as from the 17th day of November, 1952, the said art. 370 shall be operative with the modification that for the *Explanation* in cl. (1) thereof, the following *Explanation* is substituted, namely:—

“Explanation.—For the purposes of this article, the Government of the State means the person for the time being recognised by the President on the recommendation of the Legislative Assembly of the State as the *Sadar-I-Riyasat of Jammu and Kashmir, acting on the advice of the Council of Ministers of the State for the time being in office.”.

(C.O. 44, dated the 15th November, 1952).

*Now “Governor”.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

(ii) such other matters in the said Lists as, with the concurrence of the Government of the State, the President may by order specify.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this article, the Government of the State means the person for the time being recognised by the President as the Maharaja of Jammu and Kashmir acting on the advice of the Council of Ministers for the time being in office under the Maharaja's Proclamation dated the fifth day of March, 1948;

(c) the provisions of article 1 and of this article shall apply in relation to that State;

(d) such of the other provisions of this Constitution shall apply in relation to that State subject to such exceptions and modifications as the President may by order* specify:

Provided that no such order which relates to the matters specified in the Instrument of Accession of the State referred to in paragraph (i) of sub-clause (b) shall be issued except in consultation with the Government of the State:

Provided further that no such order which relates to matters other than those referred to in the last preceding proviso shall be issued except with the concurrence of that Government.

(2) If the concurrence of the Government of the State referred to in paragraph (ii) of sub-clause (b) of clause (1) or in the second proviso to sub-clause (d) of that clause be given before the Constituent Assembly for the purpose of framing the Constitution of the State is convened, it shall be placed before such Assembly for such decision as it may take thereon.

(3) Notwithstanding anything in the foregoing provisions of this article, the President may, by public notification, declare that this article shall cease to be operative or shall be operative only with such exceptions and modifications and from such date as he may specify:

Provided that the recommendation of the [clause (2) of Legislative Assembly of the State] shall be necessary before the President issues such a notification.

* See Appendix II.

1. Subs. by C.O. 272, dated the 5-8-2019, s.2. for "Constituent Assembly of the State referred to in clause (2)" (w.e.f. 5-8-2019).

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

¹[371. Special provision with respect to the States of Maharashtra and Gujarat.—³[(1)* * * * *] ^{2***}]

(2) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, the President may by order made with respect to ⁴[the State of Maharashtra or Gujarat], provide for any special responsibility of the Governor for—

(a) the establishment of separate development boards for Vidarbha, Marathwada, ⁵[and the rest of Maharashtra or, as the case may be], Saurashtra, Kutch and the rest of Gujarat with the provision that a report on the working of each of these boards will be placed each year before the State Legislative Assembly;

(b) the equitable allocation of funds for developmental expenditure over the said areas, subject to the requirements of the State as a whole; and

(c) an equitable arrangement providing adequate facilities for technical education and vocational training, and adequate opportunities for employment in services under the control of the State Government, in respect of all the said areas, subject to the requirements of the State as a whole.]

⁶[371A. Special provision with respect to the State of Nagaland.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

(a) no Act of Parliament in respect of—

(i) religious or social practices of the Nagas;

(ii) Naga customary law and procedure;

(iii) administration of civil and criminal justice involving decisions according to Naga customary law;

(iv) ownership and transfer of land and its resources,

shall apply to the State of Nagaland unless the Legislative Assembly of Nagaland by a resolution so decides;

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 22, for art. 371 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. The words "Andhra Pradesh", omitted by the Constitution (Thirty-second Amendment) Act, 1973, s. 2 (w.e.f. 1-7-1974).

3. Cl. (1) omitted by s. 2, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-7-1974).

4. Subs. by the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960 (11 of 1960), s. 85, for "the State of Bombay" (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).

5. Subs. by s. 85, *ibid.*, for "the rest of Maharashtra" (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).

6. Art. 371A ins. by the Constitution (Thirteenth Amendment) Act, 1962, s. 2 (w.e.f. 1-12-1963).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

(b) the Governor of Nagaland shall have special responsibility with respect to law and order in the State of Nagaland for so long as in his opinion internal disturbances occurring in the Naga Hills-Tuensang Area immediately before the formation of that State continue therein or in any part thereof and in the discharge of his functions in relation thereto the Governor shall, after consulting the Council of Ministers, exercise his individual judgment as to the action to be taken:

Provided that if any question arises whether any matter is or is not a matter as respects which the Governor is under this sub-clause required to act in the exercise of his individual judgment, the decision of the Governor in his discretion shall be final, and the validity of anything done by the Governor shall not be called in question on the ground that he ought or ought not to have acted in the exercise of his individual judgment:

Provided further that if the President on receipt of a report from the Governor or otherwise is satisfied that it is no longer necessary for the Governor to have special responsibility with respect to law and order in the State of Nagaland, he may by order direct that the Governor shall cease to have such responsibility with effect from such date as may be specified in the order;

(c) in making his recommendation with respect to any demand for a grant, the Governor of Nagaland shall ensure that any money provided by the Government of India out of the Consolidated Fund of India for any specific service or purpose is included in the demand for a grant relating to that service or purpose and not in any other demand;

(d) as from such date as the Governor of Nagaland may by public notification in this behalf specify, there shall be established a regional council for the Tuensang district consisting of thirty-five members and the Governor shall in his discretion make rules providing for—

(i) the composition of the regional council and the manner in which the members of the regional council shall be chosen:

Provided that the Deputy Commissioner of the Tuensang district shall be the Chairman *ex officio* of the regional council and the Vice-Chairman of the regional council shall be elected by the members thereof from amongst themselves;

(ii) the qualifications for being chosen as, and for being, members of the regional council;

(iii) the term of office of, and the salaries and allowances, if any, to be paid to members of, the regional council;

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

(iv) the procedure and conduct of business of the regional council;
 (v) the appointment of officers and staff of the regional council and their conditions of services; and

(vi) any other matter in respect of which it is necessary to make rules for the constitution and proper functioning of the regional council.

(2) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, for a period of ten years from the date of the formation of the State of Nagaland or for such further period as the Governor may, on the recommendation of the regional council, by public notification specify in this behalf,—

(a) the administration of the Tuensang district shall be carried on by the Governor;

(b) where any money is provided by the Government of India to the Government of Nagaland to meet the requirements of the State of Nagaland as a whole, the Governor shall in his discretion arrange for an equitable allocation of that money between the Tuensang district and the rest of the State;

(c) no Act of the Legislature of Nagaland shall apply to Tuensang district unless the Governor, on the recommendation of the regional council, by public notification so directs and the Governor in giving such direction with respect to any such Act may direct that the Act shall in its application to the Tuensang district or any part thereof have effect subject to such exceptions or modifications as the Governor may specify on the recommendation of the regional council:

Provided that any direction given under this sub-clause may be given so as to have retrospective effect;

(d) the Governor may make regulations for the peace, progress and good government of the Tuensang district and any regulations so made may repeal or amend with retrospective effect, if necessary, any Act of Parliament or any other law which is for the time being applicable to that district;

(e) (i) one of the members representing the Tuensang district in the Legislative Assembly of Nagaland shall be appointed Minister for Tuensang affairs by the Governor on the advice of the Chief Minister and the Chief Minister in tendering his advice shall act on the recommendation of the majority of the members as aforesaid¹;

1. Paragraph 2 of the Constitution (Removal of Difficulties) Order No. X provides (w.e.f. 1-12-1963) that article 371A of the Constitution of India shall have effect as if the following proviso were added to paragraph (i) of sub-clause (e) of clause (2) thereof, namely:—

"Provided that the Governor may, on the advice of the Chief Minister, appoint any person as Minister for Tuensang affairs to act as such until such time as persons are chosen in accordance with law to fill the seats allocated to the Tuensang district, in the Legislative Assembly of Nagaland.".

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

(ii) the Minister for Tuensang affairs shall deal with, and have direct access to the Governor on, all matters relating to the Tuensang district but he shall keep the Chief Minister informed about the same;

(f) notwithstanding anything in the foregoing provisions of this clause, the final decision on all matters relating to the Tuensang district shall be made by the Governor in his discretion;

(g) in articles 54 and 55 and clause (4) of article 80, references to the elected members of the Legislative Assembly of a State or to each such member shall include references to the members or member of the Legislative Assembly of Nagaland elected by the regional council established under this article;

(h) in article 170—

(i) clause (1) shall, in relation to the Legislative Assembly of Nagaland, have effect as if for the word “sixty”, the word “forty-six” had been substituted;

(ii) in the said clause, the reference to direct election from territorial constituencies in the State shall include election by the members of the regional council established under this article;

(iii) in clauses (2) and (3), references to territorial constituencies shall mean references to territorial constituencies in the Kohima and Mokokchung districts.

(3) If any difficulty arises in giving effect to any of the foregoing provisions of this article, the President may by order do anything (including any adaptation or modification of any other article) which appears to him to be necessary for the purpose of removing that difficulty:

Provided that no such order shall be made after the expiration of three years from the date of the formation of the State of Nagaland.

Explanation.—In this article, the Kohima, Mokokchung and Tuensang districts shall have the same meanings as in the State of Nagaland Act, 1962.]

[371B. Special provision with respect to the State of Assam.]
Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, the President may, by order made with respect to the State of Assam, provide for the constitution and functions of a committee of the Legislative Assembly of the State consisting of

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-second Amendment) Act, 1969, s. 4 (w.e.f. 25-9-1969).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

members of that Assembly elected from the tribal areas specified in ¹[Part I] of the table appended to paragraph 20 of the Sixth Schedule and such number of other members of that Assembly as may be specified in the order and for the modifications to be made in the rules of procedure of that Assembly for the constitution and proper functioning of such committee.]

²[**371C. Special provision with respect to the State of Manipur.**—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, the President may, by order made with respect to the State of Manipur, provide for the constitution and functions of a committee of the Legislative Assembly of the State consisting of members of that Assembly elected from the Hill Areas of that State, for the modifications to be made in the rules of business of the Government and in the rules of procedure of the Legislative Assembly of the State and for any special responsibility of the Governor in order to secure the proper functioning of such committee.

(2) The Governor shall annually, or whenever so required by the President, make a report to the President regarding the administration of the Hill Areas in the State of Manipur and the executive power of the Union shall extend to the giving of directions to the State as to the administration of the said areas.

Explanation.—In this article, the expression “Hill Areas” means such areas as the President may, by order, declare to be Hill areas.]

³[**371D. Special provisions with respect to ⁴[the State of Andhra Pradesh or the State of Telangana].**—⁵[(1) The President may by order made with respect to the State of Andhra Pradesh or the State of Telangana, provide, having regard to the requirement of each State, for equitable opportunities and facilities for the people belonging to different parts of such State, in the matter of public employment and in the matter of education, and different provisions may be made for various parts of the States.]

-
1. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71, for "Part A" (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
 2. Art 371C ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-seventh Amendment) Act, 1971, s. 5 (w.e.f. 15-2-1972).
 3. Art 371D and Art 371E ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-second Amendment) Act, 1973, s. 3 (w.e.f. 1-7-1974).
 4. Subs. by the Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2014, (6 of 2014), s. 97, for “the State of Andhra Pradesh” (w.e.f. 2-6-2014).
 5. Subs. by s. 97, *ibid*, for cl. (1) (w.e.f. 2-6-2014).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

(2) An order made under clause (1) may, in particular,—

(a) require the State Government to organise any class or classes of posts in a civil service of, or any class or classes of civil posts under, the State into different local cadres for different parts of the State and allot in accordance with such principles and procedure as may be specified in the order the persons holding such posts to the local cadres so organised;

(b) specify any part or parts of the State which shall be regarded as the local area—

(i) for direct recruitment to posts in any local cadre (whether organised in pursuance of an order under this article or constituted otherwise) under the State Government;

(ii) for direct recruitment to posts in any cadre under any local authority within the State; and

(iii) for the purposes of admission to any University within the State or to any other educational institution which is subject to the control of the State Government;

(c) specify the extent to which, the manner in which and the conditions subject to which, preference or reservation shall be given or made—

(i) in the matter of direct recruitment to posts in any such cadre referred to in sub-clause (b) as may be specified in this behalf in the order;

(ii) in the matter of admission to any such University or other educational institution referred to in sub-clause (b) as may be specified in this behalf in the order,

to or in favour of candidates who have resided or studied for any period specified in the order in the local area in respect of such cadre, University or other educational institution, as the case may be.

(3) The President may, by order, provide for the constitution of an Administrative Tribunal for¹[the State of Andhra Pradesh and for the State of Telangana] to exercise such jurisdiction, powers and authority [including any jurisdiction, power and authority which immediately before the commencement of the Constitution (Thirty-second Amendment) Act, 1973, was exercisable by any court (other than the Supreme Court) or by any tribunal or other authority] as may be specified in the order with respect to the following matters, namely:—

1. Subs. by the Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2014, (6 of 2014), s. 97, for “the State of Andhra Pradesh” (w.e.f. 2-6-2014).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

(a) appointment, allotment or promotion to such class or classes of posts in any civil service of the State, or to such class or classes of civil posts under the State, or to such class or classes of posts under the control of any local authority within the State, as may be specified in the order;

(b) seniority of persons appointed, allotted or promoted to such class or classes of posts in any civil service of the State, or to such class or classes of civil posts under the State, or to such class or classes of posts under the control of any local authority within the State, as may be specified in the order;

(c) such other conditions of service of persons appointed, allotted or promoted to such class or classes of posts in any civil service of the State or to such class or classes of civil posts under the State or to such class or classes of posts under the control of any local authority within the State, as may be specified in the order.

(4) An order made under clause (3) may—

(a) authorise the Administrative Tribunal to receive representations for the redress of grievances relating to any matter within its jurisdiction as the President may specify in the order and to make such orders thereon as the Administrative Tribunal deems fit;

(b) contain such provisions with respect to the powers and authorities and procedure of the Administrative Tribunal (including provisions with respect to the powers of the Administrative Tribunal to punish for contempt of itself) as the President may deem necessary;

(c) provide for the transfer to the Administrative Tribunal of such classes of proceedings, being proceedings relating to matters within its jurisdiction and pending before any court (other than the Supreme Court) or tribunal or other authority immediately before the commencement of such order, as may be specified in the order;

(d) contain such supplemental, incidental and consequential provisions (including provisions as to fees and as to limitation, evidence or for the application of any law for the time being in force subject to any exceptions or modifications) as the President may deem necessary.

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

***(5)** The Order of the Administrative Tribunal finally disposing of any case shall become effective upon its confirmation by the State Government or on the expiry of three months from the date on which the order is made, whichever is earlier:

Provided that the State Government may, by special order made in writing and for reasons to be specified therein, modify or annul any order of the Administrative Tribunal before it becomes effective and in such a case, the order of the Administrative Tribunal shall have effect only in such modified form or be of no effect, as the case may be.

(6) Every special order made by the State Government under the proviso to clause (5) shall be laid, as soon as may be after it is made, before both Houses of the State Legislature.

(7) The High Court for the State shall not have any powers of superintendence over the Administrative Tribunal and no court (other than the Supreme Court) or tribunal shall exercise any jurisdiction, power or authority in respect of any matter subject to the jurisdiction, power or authority of, or in relation to, the Administrative Tribunal.

(8) If the President is satisfied that the continued existence of the Administrative Tribunal is not necessary, the President may by order abolish the Administrative Tribunal and make such provisions in such order as he may deem fit for the transfer and disposal of cases pending before the Tribunal immediately before such abolition.

(9) Notwithstanding any judgment, decree or order of any court, tribunal or other authority,—

(a) no appointment, posting, promotion or transfer of any person—

(i) made before the 1st day of November, 1956, to any post under the Government of, or any local authority within, the State of Hyderabad as it existed before that date; or

(ii) made before the commencement of the Constitution (Thirty-second Amendment) Act, 1973, to any post under the Government of, or any local or other authority within, the State of Andhra Pradesh; and

(b) no action taken or thing done by or before any person referred to in sub-clause (a),

* In *P. Sambamurthy and Others Vs. State of Andhra Pradesh and Others* (1987) 1 S.C.C. 362, the Supreme Court declared cl. (5) of art. 371D along with the proviso to be unconstitutional and void.

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

shall be deemed to be illegal or void or ever to have become illegal or void merely on the ground that the appointment, posting, promotion or transfer of such person was not made in accordance with any law, then in force, providing for any requirement as to residence within the State of Hyderabad or, as the case may be, within any part of the State of Andhra Pradesh, in respect of such appointment, posting, promotion or transfer.

(10) The provisions of this article and of any order made by the President thereunder shall have effect notwithstanding anything in any other provision of this Constitution or in any other law for the time being in force.

371E. Establishment of Central University in Andhra Pradesh.—
Parliament may by law provide for the establishment of a University in the State of Andhra Pradesh.]

¹[371F. Special provisions with respect to the State of Sikkim.—
Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

(a) the Legislative Assembly of the State of Sikkim shall consist of not less than thirty members;

(b) as from the date of commencement of the Constitution (Thirty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1975 (hereafter in this article referred to as the appointed day)—

(i) the Assembly for Sikkim formed as a result of the elections held in Sikkim in April, 1974 with thirty-two members elected in the said elections (hereinafter referred to as the sitting members) shall be deemed to be the Legislative Assembly of the State of Sikkim duly constituted under this Constitution;

(ii) the sitting members shall be deemed to be the members of the Legislative Assembly of the State of Sikkim duly elected under this Constitution; and

(iii) the said Legislative Assembly of the State of Sikkim shall exercise the powers and perform the functions of the Legislative Assembly of a State under this Constitution;

1. Art 371F ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 3
(w.e.f. 26-4-1975).

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

(c) in the case of the Assembly deemed to be the Legislative Assembly of the State of Sikkim under clause (b), the references to the period of ¹[five years], in clause (1) of article 172 shall be construed as references to a period of ²[four years] and the said period of ²[four years] shall be deemed to commence from the appointed day;

(d) until other provisions are made by Parliament by law, there shall be allotted to the State of Sikkim one seat in the House of the People and the State of Sikkim shall form one parliamentary constituency to be called the parliamentary constituency for Sikkim;

(e) the representative of the State of Sikkim in the House of the People in existence on the appointed day shall be elected by the members of the Legislative Assembly of the State of Sikkim;

(f) Parliament may, for the purpose of protecting the rights and interests of the different sections of the population of Sikkim make provision for the number of seats in the Legislative Assembly of the State of Sikkim which may be filled by candidates belonging to such sections and for the delimitation of the assembly constituencies from which candidates belonging to such sections alone may stand for election to the Legislative Assembly of the State of Sikkim;

(g) the Governor of Sikkim shall have special responsibility for peace and for an equitable arrangement for ensuring the social and economic advancement of different sections of the population of Sikkim and in the discharge of his special responsibility under this clause, the Governor of Sikkim shall, subject to such directions as the President may, from time to time, deem fit to issue, act in his discretion;

(h) all property and assets (whether within or outside the territories comprised in the State of Sikkim) which immediately before the appointed day were vested in the Government of Sikkim or in any other authority or in any person for the purposes of the Government of Sikkim shall, as from the appointed day, vest in the Government of the State of Sikkim;

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 56, for "five years" (w.e.f. 3-1-1977) and further subs. by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 43, for "six years" (w.e.f. 6-9-1979).

2. Subs. by s. 56, *ibid.*, for "four years" (w.e.f. 3-1-1977) and further subs. by s. 43, *ibid.*, for "five years", respectively (w.e.f. 6-9-1979).

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

(i) the High Court functioning as such immediately before the appointed day in the territories comprised in the State of Sikkim shall, on and from the appointed day, be deemed to be the High Court for the State of Sikkim;

(j) all courts of civil, criminal and revenue jurisdiction, all authorities and all officers, judicial, executive and ministerial, throughout the territory of the State of Sikkim shall continue on and from the appointed day to exercise their respective functions subject to the provisions of this Constitution;

(k) all laws in force immediately before the appointed day in the territories comprised in the State of Sikkim or any part thereof shall continue to be in force therein until amended or repealed by a competent Legislature or other competent authority;

(l) for the purpose of facilitating the application of any such law as is referred to in clause (k) in relation to the administration of the State of Sikkim and for the purpose of bringing the provisions of any such law into accord with the provisions of this Constitution, the President may, within two years from the appointed day, by order, make such adaptations and modifications of the law, whether by way of repeal or amendment, as may be necessary or expedient, and thereupon, every such law shall have effect subject to the adaptations and modifications so made, and any such adaptation or modification shall not be questioned in any court of law;

(m) neither the Supreme Court nor any other court shall have jurisdiction in respect of any dispute or other matter arising out of any treaty, agreement, engagement or other similar instrument relating to Sikkim which was entered into or executed before the appointed day and to which the Government of India or any of its predecessor Governments was a party, but nothing in this clause shall be construed to derogate from the provisions of article 143;

(n) the President may, by public notification, extend with such restrictions or modifications as he thinks fit to the State of Sikkim any enactment which is in force in a State in India at the date of the notification;

(o) if any difficulty arises in giving effect to any of the foregoing provisions of this article, the President may, by order*, do anything (including any adaptation or modification of any other article) which appears to him to be necessary for the purpose of removing that difficulty:

* See the Constitution (Removal of Difficulties) Order No. XI (C.O. 99).

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

Provided that no such order shall be made after the expiry of two years from the appointed day;

(p) all things done and all actions taken in or in relation to the State of Sikkim or the territories comprised therein during the period commencing on the appointed day and ending immediately before the date on which the Constitution (Thirty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1975, receives the assent of the President shall, in so far as they are in conformity with the provisions of this Constitution as amended by the Constitution (Thirty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1975, be deemed for all purposes to have been validly done or taken under this Constitution as so amended.]

¹[371G. Special provision with respect to the State of Mizoram.—

Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

(a) no Act of Parliament in respect of—

- (i) religious or social practices of the Mizos;
- (ii) Mizo customary law and procedure;
- (iii) administration of civil and criminal justice involving decisions according to Mizo customary law;
- (iv) ownership and transfer of land;

shall apply to the State of Mizoram unless the Legislative Assembly of the State of Mizoram by a resolution so decides:

Provided that nothing in this clause shall apply to any Central Act in force in the Union territory of Mizoram immediately before the commencement of the Constitution (Fifty-third Amendment) Act, 1986;

(b) the Legislative Assembly of the State of Mizoram shall consist of not less than forty members.]

²[371H. Special provision with respect to the State of Arunachal Pradesh.—

Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

(a) the Governor of Arunachal Pradesh shall have special responsibility with respect to law and order in the State of Arunachal Pradesh and in the discharge of his functions in relation thereto, the Governor shall, after consulting the Council of Ministers, exercise his individual judgment as to the action to be taken:

1. Art. 371G ins. by the Constitution (Fifty-third Amendment) Act, 1986.s. 2 (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).

2. Art. 371H ins. by the Constitution (Fifty-fifth Amendment) Act, 1986, s. 2 (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

Provided that if any question arises whether any matter is or is not a matter as respects which the Governor is under this clause required to act in the exercise of his individual judgment, the decision of the Governor in his discretion shall be final, and the validity of anything done by the Governor shall not be called in question on the ground that he ought or ought not to have acted in the exercise of his individual judgment:

Provided further that if the President on receipt of a report from the Governor or otherwise is satisfied that it is no longer necessary for the Governor to have special responsibility with respect to law and order in the State of Arunachal Pradesh, he may by order direct that the Governor shall cease to have such responsibility with effect from such date as may be specified in the order;

(b) the Legislative Assembly of the State of Arunachal Pradesh shall consist of not less than thirty members.]

¹[371-I. Special provision with respect to the State of Goa.]—Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, the Legislative Assembly of the State of Goa shall consist of not less than thirty members.]

²[371J. Special provisions with respect to State of Karnataka.]—(1) The President may, by order made with respect to the State of Karnataka, provide for any special responsibility of the Governor for—

(a) establishment of a separate development board for Hyderabad-Karnataka region with the provision that a report on the working of the board will be placed each year before the State Legislative Assembly;

(b) equitable allocation of funds for developmental expenditure over the said region, subject to the requirements of the State as a whole; and

(c) equitable opportunities and facilities for the people belonging to the said region, in matters of public employment, education and vocational training, subject to the requirements of the State as a whole.

(2) An order made under sub-clause (c) of clause (1) may provide for—

(a) reservation of a proportion of seats in educational and vocational training institutions in the Hyderabad-Karnataka region for students who belong to that region by birth or by domicile; and

-
1. Art. 371-I ins. by the Constitution (Fifty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1987, s. 2 (w.e.f. 30-5-1987).
 2. Art. 371J ins. by the Constitution (Ninety-eighth Amendment) Act, 2012, s. 2 (w.e.f. 1-10-2013).

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

(b) identification of posts or classes of posts under the State Government and in any body or organisation under the control of the State Government in the Hyderabad-Karnataka region and reservation of a proportion of such posts for persons who belong to that region by birth or by domicile and for appointment thereto by direct recruitment or by promotion or in any other manner as may be specified in the order.]

372. Continuance in force of existing laws and their adaptation.—(1) Notwithstanding the repeal by this Constitution of the enactments referred to in article 395 but subject to the other provisions of this Constitution, all the law in force in the territory of India immediately before the commencement of this Constitution shall continue in force therein until altered or repealed or amended by a competent Legislature or other competent authority.

(2) For the purpose of bringing the provisions of any law in force in the territory of India into accord with the provisions of this Constitution, the President may by order* make such adaptations and modifications of such law, whether by way of repeal or amendment, as may be necessary or expedient, and provide that the law shall, as from such date as may be specified in the order, have effect subject to the adaptations and modifications so made, and any such adaptation or modification shall not be questioned in any court of law.

(3) Nothing in clause (2) shall be deemed—

(a) to empower the President to make any adaptation or modification of any law after the expiration of ¹[three years] from the commencement of this Constitution; or

(b) to prevent any competent Legislature or other competent authority from repealing or amending any law adapted or modified by the President under the said clause.

* See the Adaptation of Laws Order, 1950, dated the 26th January, 1950, Gazette of India, Extraordinary, p. 449, as amended by notification No. S.R.O. 115, dated the 5th June, 1950, Gazette of India, Extraordinary, Part II, Section 3, p. 51, notification No. S.R.O. 870, dated the 4th November, 1950, Gazette of India, Extraordinary, Part II, Section 3, p. 903, notification No. S.R.O. 508, dated the 4th April, 1951, Gazette of India, Extraordinary, Part II, Section 3, p. 287, notification No. S.R.O. 1140B, dated the 2nd July, 1952, Gazette of India, Extraordinary, Part II, Section 3, p. 616/1, and the Adaptation of the Travancore-Cochin Land Acquisition Laws Order, 1952, dated the 20th November, 1952, Gazette of India, Extraordinary, Part II, Section 3, p. 923.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s.12 for "two years" (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).

Explanation I.—The expression “law in force” in this article shall include a law passed or made by a Legislature or other competent authority in the territory of India before the commencement of this Constitution and not previously repealed, notwithstanding that it or parts of it may not be then in operation either at all or in particular areas.

Explanation II.—Any law passed or made by a Legislature or other competent authority in the territory of India which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution had extra-territorial effect as well as effect in the territory of India shall, subject to any such adaptations and modifications as aforesaid, continue to have such extra-territorial effect.

Explanation III.—Nothing in this article shall be construed as continuing any temporary law in force beyond the date fixed for its expiration or the date on which it would have expired if this Constitution had not come into force.

Explanation IV.—An Ordinance promulgated by the Governor of a Province under section 88 of the Government of India Act, 1935, and in force immediately before the commencement of this Constitution shall, unless withdrawn by the Governor of the corresponding State earlier, cease to operate at the expiration of six weeks from the first meeting after such commencement of the Legislative Assembly of that State functioning under clause (1) of article 382, and nothing in this article shall be construed as continuing any such Ordinance in force beyond the said period.

[372A. Power of the President to adapt laws.]—(1) For the purposes of bringing the provisions of any law in force in India or in any part thereof, immediately before the commencement of the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, into accord with the provisions of this Constitution as amended by that Act, the President may by order* made before the first day of November, 1957, make such adaptations and modifications of the law, whether by way of repeal or amendment, as may be necessary or expedient, and provide that the law shall, as from such date as may be specified in the order, have effect subject to the adaptations and modifications so made, and any such adaptation or modification shall not be questioned in any court of law.

(2) Nothing in clause (1) shall be deemed to prevent a competent Legislature or other competent authority from repealing or amending any law adapted or modified by the President under the said clause.]

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 23 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

* See the Adaptation of Laws Order of 1956 and 1957.

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

373. Power of President to make order in respect of persons under preventive detention in certain cases.—Until provision is made by Parliament under clause (7) of article 22, or until the expiration of one year from the commencement of this Constitution, whichever is earlier, the said article shall have effect as if for any reference to Parliament in clauses (4) and (7) thereof there were substituted a reference to the President and for any reference to any law made by Parliament in those clauses there were substituted a reference to an order made by the President.

374. Provisions as to Judges of the Federal Court and proceedings pending in the Federal Court or before His Majesty in Council.—(1) The Judges of the Federal Court holding office immediately before the commencement of this Constitution shall, unless they have elected otherwise, become on such commencement the Judges of the Supreme Court and shall thereupon be entitled to such salaries and allowances and to such rights in respect of leave of absence and pension as are provided for under article 125 in respect of the Judges of the Supreme Court.

(2) All suits, appeals and proceedings, civil or criminal, pending in the Federal Court at the commencement of this Constitution shall stand removed to the Supreme Court, and the Supreme Court shall have jurisdiction to hear and determine the same, and the judgments and orders of the Federal Court delivered or made before the commencement of this Constitution shall have the same force and effect as if they had been delivered or made by the Supreme Court.

(3) Nothing in this Constitution shall operate to invalidate the exercise of jurisdiction by His Majesty in Council to dispose of appeals and petitions from, or in respect of, any judgment, decree or order of any court within the territory of India in so far as the exercise of such jurisdiction is authorised by law, and any order of His Majesty in Council made on any such appeal or petition after the commencement of this Constitution shall for all purposes have effect as if it were an order or decree made by the Supreme Court in the exercise of the jurisdiction conferred on such Court by this Constitution.

(4) On and from the commencement of this Constitution the jurisdiction of the authority functioning as the Privy Council in a State specified in Part B of the First Schedule to entertain and dispose of appeals and petitions from or in respect of any judgment, decree or order of any court within that State shall cease, and all appeals and other proceedings pending before the said authority at such commencement shall be transferred to, and disposed of by, the Supreme Court.

(5) Further provision may be made by Parliament by law to give effect to the provisions of this article.

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

375. Courts, authorities and officers to continue to function subject to the provisions of the Constitution.—All courts of civil, criminal and revenue jurisdiction, all authorities and all officers, judicial, executive and ministerial, throughout the territory of India, shall continue to exercise their respective functions subject to the provisions of this Constitution.

376. Provisions as to Judges of High Courts.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in clause (2) of article 217, the Judges of a High Court in any Province holding office immediately before the commencement of this Constitution shall, unless they have elected otherwise, become on such commencement the Judges of the High Court in the corresponding State, and shall thereupon be entitled to such salaries and allowances and to such rights in respect of leave of absence and pension as are provided for under article 221 in respect of the Judges of such High Court. ¹[Any such Judge shall, notwithstanding that he is not a citizen of India, be eligible for appointment as Chief Justice of such High Court, or as Chief Justice or other Judge of any other High Court.]

(2) The Judges of a High Court in any Indian State corresponding to any State specified in Part B of the First Schedule holding office immediately before the commencement of this Constitution shall, unless they have elected otherwise, become on such commencement the Judges of the High Court in the State so specified and shall, notwithstanding anything in clauses (1) and (2) of article 217 but subject to the proviso to clause (1) of that article, continue to hold office until the expiration of such period as the President may by order determine.

(3) In this article, the expression “Judge” does not include an acting Judge or an additional Judge.

377. Provisions as to Comptroller and Auditor-General of India.—The Auditor-General of India holding office immediately before the commencement of this Constitution shall, unless he has elected otherwise, become on such commencement the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India and shall thereupon be entitled to such salaries and to such rights in respect of leave of absence and pension as are provided for under clause (3) of article 148 in respect of the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India and be entitled to continue to hold office until the expiration of his term of office as determined under the provisions which were applicable to him immediately before such commencement.

1. Added by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 13 (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

378. Provisions as to Public Service Commissions.—(1) The members of the Public Service Commission for the Dominion of India holding office immediately before the commencement of this Constitution shall, unless they have elected otherwise, become on such commencement the members of the Public Service Commission for the Union and shall, notwithstanding anything in clauses (1) and (2) of article 316 but subject to the proviso to clause (2) of that article, continue to hold office until the expiration of their term of office as determined under the rules which were applicable immediately before such commencement to such members.

(2) The Members of a Public Service Commission of a Province or of a Public Service Commission serving the needs of a group of Provinces holding office immediately before the commencement of this Constitution shall, unless they have elected otherwise, become on such commencement the members of the Public Service Commission for the corresponding State or the members of the Joint State Public Service Commission serving the needs of the corresponding States, as the case may be, and shall, notwithstanding anything in clauses (1) and (2) of article 316 but subject to the proviso to clause (2) of that article, continue to hold office until the expiration of their term of office as determined under the rules which were applicable immediately before such commencement to such members.

¹[**378A. Special provision as to duration of Andhra Pradesh Legislative Assembly.**—Notwithstanding anything contained in article 172, the Legislative Assembly of the State of Andhra Pradesh as constituted under the provisions of sections 28 and 29 of the States Reorganisation Act, 1956, shall, unless sooner dissolved, continue for a period of five years from the date referred to in the said section 29 and no longer and the expiration of the said period shall operate as a dissolution of that Legislative Assembly.]

379. [Provisions as to provisional Parliament and the Speaker and Deputy Speaker thereof.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

380. [Provision as to President.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

381. [Council of Ministers of the President.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

382. [Provisions as to provisional Legislatures for States in Part A of the First Schedule.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

383. [Provision as to Governors of Provinces.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

1. Art 378A ins. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 24 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Part XXI.—Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions)

384. [*Council of Ministers of the Governors*.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

385. [*Provision as to provisional Legislatures in States in Part B of the First Schedule*.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

386. [*Council of Ministers for States in Part B of the First Schedule*.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

387. [*Special provision as to determination of population for the purposes of certain elections*.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

388. [*Provisions as to the filling of casual vacancies in the provisional Parliament and provisional Legislatures of the States*.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

389. [*Provision as to Bills pending in the Dominion Legislatures and in the Legislatures of Provinces and Indian States*.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

390. [*Money received or raised or expenditure incurred between the commencement of the Constitution and the 31st day of March, 1950*.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

391. [*Power of the President to amend the First and Fourth Schedules in certain contingencies*.]—Omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

392. Power of the President to remove difficulties.—(1) The President may, for the purpose of removing any difficulties, particularly in relation to the transition from the provisions of the Government of India Act, 1935, to the provisions of this Constitution, by order direct that this Constitution shall, during such period as may be specified in the order, have effect subject to such adaptations, whether by way of modification, addition or omission, as he may deem to be necessary or expedient:

Provided that no such order shall be made after the first meeting of Parliament duly constituted under Chapter II of Part V.

(2) Every order made under clause (1) shall be laid before Parliament.

(3) The powers conferred on the President by this article, by article 324, by clause (3) of article 367 and by article 391 shall, before the commencement of this Constitution, be exercisable by the Governor-General of the Dominion of India.

PART XXII

SHORT TITLE, COMMENCEMENT,¹[AUTHORITATIVE TEXT IN HINDI] AND REPEALS

393. Short title.—This Constitution may be called the Constitution of India.

394. Commencement.—This article and articles 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 60, 324, 366, 367, 379, 380, 388, 391, 392 and 393 shall come into force at once, and the remaining provisions of this Constitution shall come into force on the twenty-sixth day of January, 1950, which day is referred to in this Constitution as the commencement of this Constitution.

²[394A. Authoritative text in the Hindi language.]—(1) The President shall cause to be published under his authority,—

(a) the translation of this Constitution in the Hindi language, signed by the members of the Constituent Assembly, with such modifications as may be necessary to bring it in conformity with the language, style and terminology adopted in the authoritative texts of Central Acts in the Hindi language, and incorporating therein all the amendments of this Constitution made before such publication; and

(b) the translation in the Hindi language of every amendment of this Constitution made in the English language.

(2) The translation of this Constitution and of every amendment thereof published under clause (1) shall be construed to have the same meaning as the original thereof and if any difficulty arises in so construing any part of such translation, the President shall cause the same to be revised suitably.

(3) The translation of this Constitution and of every amendment thereof published under this article shall be deemed to be, for all purposes, the authoritative text thereof in the Hindi language.]

395. Repeals.— The Indian Independence Act, 1947, and the Government of India Act, 1935, together with all enactments amending or supplementing the latter Act, but not including the Abolition of Privy Council Jurisdiction Act, 1949, are hereby repealed.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Fifty-eighth Amendment) Act, 1987, s. 2 (w.e.f. 9-12-1987).

2. Art 394A, Ins. by s. 3, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 9-12-1987).

¹[FIRST SCHEDULE

[Articles 1 and 4]

I. THE STATES

<i>Name</i>	<i>Territories</i>
1. Andhra Pradesh	² [The territories specified in sub-section (<i>I</i>) of section 3 of the Andhra State Act, 1953, sub-section (<i>I</i>) of section 3 of the States Reorganisation Act, 1956, the First Schedule to the Andhra Pradesh and Madras (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1959, and the Schedule to the Andhra Pradesh and Mysore (Transfer of Territory) Act, 1968, but excluding the territories specified in the Second Schedule to the Andhra Pradesh and Madras (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1959] ³ [and the territories specified in section 3 of the Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2014].
2. Assam	The territories which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution were comprised in the Province of Assam, the Khasi States and the Assam Tribal Areas, but excluding the territories specified in the Schedule to the Assam (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1951 ⁴ [and the territories specified in sub-section (<i>I</i>) of section 3 of the State of Nagaland Act, 1962] ⁵ [and the territories specified in sections 5, 6 and 7 of the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971] ⁶ [and the territories referred to in Part I of the Second Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015, notwithstanding anything contained in clause (a) of section 3 of the Constitution (Ninth Amendment) Act, 1960, so far as it relates to the territories referred to in Part I of the Second Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015.]

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 2, for the First Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 2. Subs. by the Andhra Pradesh and Mysore (Transfer of Territory) Act, 1968 (36 of 1968), s. 4, for the former entry (w.e.f. 1-10-1968).
 3. Ins. by the Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2014 (6 of 2014), s. 10 (w.e.f. 2-6-2014).
 4. Added by the State of Nagaland Act, 1962 (27 of 1962), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-12-1963).
 5. Added by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 9 (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
 6. Added by the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015, s. 3 (w.e.f. 31-7-2015). For the text of the Act, see Appendix I.

<i>Name</i>	<i>Territories</i>
3. Bihar	¹ [The territories which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution were either comprised in the Province of Bihar or were being administered as if they formed part of that Province and the territories specified in clause (a) of sub-section (1) of section 3 of the Bihar and Uttar Pradesh (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1968, but excluding the territories specified in sub-section (1) of section 3 of the Bihar and West Bengal (Transfer of Territories) Act, 1956, and the territories specified in clause (b) of sub-section (1) of section 3 of the first mentioned Act ² [and the territories specified in section 3 of the Bihar Reorganisation Act, 2000].]
³ [4. Gujarat	The territories referred to in sub-section (1) of section 3 of the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960.]
5. Kerala	The territories specified in sub-section (1) of section 5 of the States Reorganisation Act, 1956.
6. Madhya Pradesh	The territories specified in sub-section (1) of section 9 of the States Reorganisation Act, 1956 ⁴ [and the First Schedule to the Rajasthan and Madhya Pradesh (Transfer of Territories) Act, 1959], ⁵ [but excluding the territories specified in section 3 of the Madhya Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2000].

1. Subs. by the Bihar and Uttar Pradesh (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1968 (24 of 1968), s. 4, for the former entry (w.e.f. 10-6-1970).
2. Added by the Bihar Reorganisation Act, 2000 (30 of 2000), s. 5 (w.e.f. 15-11- 2000).
3. Subs. by the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960 (11 of 1960), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).
4. Ins. by the Rajasthan and Madhya Pradesh (Transfer of Territories) Act, 1959 (47 of 1959), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-10-1959).
5. Added by the Madhya Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2000 (28 of 2000), s. 5 (w.e.f. 1-11-2000).

Name	Territories
¹ [7. Tamil Nadu]	The territories which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution were either comprised in the Province of Madras or were being administered as if they formed part of that Province and the territories specified in section 4 of the States Reorganisation Act, 1956, ² [and the Second Schedule to the Andhra Pradesh and Madras (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1959], but excluding the territories specified in sub-section (1) of section 3 and sub-section (1) of section 4 of the Andhra State Act, 1953 and ³ [the territories specified in clause (b) of sub-section (1) of section 5, section 6 and clause (d) of sub-section (1) of section 7 of the States Reorganisation Act, 1956 and the territories specified in the First Schedule to the Andhra Pradesh and Madras (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1959.]
⁴ [8. Maharashtra]	The territories specified in sub-section (1) of section 8 of the States Reorganisation Act, 1956, but excluding the territories referred to in sub-section (1) of section 3 of the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960.]
⁵ [⁶ [9.] Karnataka]	The territories specified in sub-section (1) of section 7 of the States Reorganisation Act, 1956 ⁷ [but excluding the territory specified in the Schedule to the Andhra Pradesh and Mysore (Transfer of Territory) Act, 1968.]

1. Subs. by the Madras State (Alteration of Name) Act, 1968 (53 of 1968), s. 5, for "7. Madras" (w.e.f. 14-1-1969).
2. Ins. by the Andhra Pradesh and Madras (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1959 (56 of 1959), s. 6 (w.e.f. 1-4-1960).
3. Subs. by s. 6, *ibid.*, for certain words (w.e.f. 1-4-1960).
4. Ins. by the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960 (11 of 1960), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).
5. Subs. by the Mysore State (Alteration of Name) Act, 1973 (31 of 1973), s. 5, for "9. Mysore" (w.e.f. 1-11-1973).
6. Entries 8 to 14 renumbered as entries 9 to 15 by the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960 (11 of 1960), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).
7. Ins. by the Andhra Pradesh and Mysore (Transfer of Territory) Act, 1968 (36 of 1968), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-10-1968).

<i>Name</i>	<i>Territories</i>
¹ [10.] ² [Odisha]	The territories which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution were either comprised in the Province of Orissa or were being administered as if they formed part of that Province.
¹ [11.] Punjab	The territories specified in section 11 of the States Reorganisation Act, 1956 ³ [and the territories referred to in Part II of the First Schedule to the Acquired Territories (Merger) Act, 1960] ⁴ [but excluding the territories referred to in Part II of the First Schedule to the Constitution (Ninth Amendment) Act, 1960] ⁵ [and the territories specified in sub-section (1) of section 3, section 4 and sub-section (1) of section 5 of the Punjab Reorganisation Act, 1966.]
¹ [12.] Rajasthan	The territories specified in section 10 of the States Reorganisation Act, 1956 ⁶ [but excluding the territories specified in the First Schedule to the Rajasthan and Madhya Pradesh (Transfer of Territories) Act, 1959].

1. Entries 8 to 14 renumbered as entries 9 to 15 by the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960 (11 of 1960), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).
2. Subs. by the Orissa (Alteration of Name) Act, 2011 (15 of 2011), s. 6, for "Orissa" (w.e.f. 1-11-2011).
3. Ins. by the Acquired Territories (Merger) Act, 1960 (64 of 1960), s. 4 (w.e.f. 17-1-1961).
4. Added by the Constitution (Ninth Amendment) Act, 1960, s. 3 (w.e.f. 17-1-1961).
5. Added by the Punjab Reorganisation Act, 1966 (31 of 1966), s. 7 (w.e.f. 1-11-1966).
6. Ins. by the Rajasthan and Madhya Pradesh (Transfer of Territories) Act, 1959 (47 of 1959), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-10-1959).

<i>Name</i>	<i>Territories</i>
¹ [13.] Uttar Pradesh	² [The territories which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution were either comprised in the Province known as the United Provinces or were being administered as if they formed part of that Province, the territories specified in clause (b) of sub-section (1) of section 3 of the Bihar and Uttar Pradesh (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1968, and the territories specified in clause (b) of sub-section (1) of section 4 of the Haryana and Uttar Pradesh (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1979, but excluding the territories specified in clause (a) of sub-section (1) of section 3 of the Bihar and Uttar Pradesh (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1968, ³ [and the territories specified in section 3 of the Uttar Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2000] and the territories specified in clause (a) of sub-section (1) of section 4 of the Haryana and Uttar Pradesh (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1979.]]
¹ [14.] West Bengal	The territories which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution were either comprised in the Province of West Bengal or were being administered as if they formed part of that Province and the territory of Chandernagore as defined in clause (c) of section 2 of the Chandernagore (Merger) Act, 1954 and also the territories specified in sub-section (1) of section 3 of the Bihar and West Bengal (Transfer of Territories) Act, 1956 ⁴ [and also the territories referred to in Part III of the First Schedule but excluding the territories referred to in Part III of the Second Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015, notwithstanding anything contained in clause (c) of section 3 of the Constitution (Ninth Amendment) Act, 1960, so far as it relates to the territories referred to in Part III of the First Schedule and the territories referred to in Part III of the Second Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015.]

1. Entries 8 to 14 renumbered as entries 9 to 15 by the the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960 (11 of 1960), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).
2. Subs. by the Haryana and Uttar Pradesh (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1979 (31 of 1979), s. 5, for the entry against "13. Uttar Pradesh" (w.e.f. 15-9-1983).
3. Ins. by the Uttar Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2000 (29 of 2000), s. 5 (w.e.f. 9-11-2000).
4. Added by the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015, s. 3 (w.e.f. 31-7-2015). For the text of the Act, see Appendix I.

<i>Name</i>	<i>Territories</i>		
¹ [² [**]	*	*	*]]
³ [⁴ [15.] Nagaland	The territories specified in sub-section (1) of section 3 of the State of Nagaland Act, 1962.]		
³ [⁵ [16.] Haryana	⁶ [The territories specified in sub-section (1) of section 3 of the Punjab Reorganisation Act, 1966 and the territories specified in clause (a) of sub-section (1) of section 4 of the Haryana and Uttar Pradesh (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1979, but excluding the territories specified in clause (v) of sub-section (1) of section 4 of that Act.]]		
³ [⁷ [17.] Himachal Pradesh	The territories which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution were being administered as if they were Chief Commissioners' Provinces under the names of Himachal Pradesh and Bilaspur and the territories specified in sub-section (1) of section 5 of the Punjab Reorganisation Act, 1966.]		
³ [⁸ [18.] Manipur	The territory which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution was being administered as if it were a Chief Commissioner's Province under the name of Manipur.]		

-
1. **Entry 15 relating to Jammu and Kashmir deleted by the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019 (34 of 2019), s. 6 (w.e.f. 31-10-2019).
 2. Entries 8 to 14 renumbered as 9 to 15 by the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960 (11 of 1960), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).
 3. Entries 16 to 29 renumbered as entries 15 to 28 by the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019 (34 of 2019), s. 6 (w.e.f. 31-10-2019).
 4. Ins. by the State of Nagaland Act, 1962 (27 of 1962), s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-12-1963).
 5. Ins. by the Punjab Reorganisation Act, 1966 (31 of 1966), s. 7 (w.e.f. 1-11-1966) and the entry therein subsequently amended by the Haryana and Uttar Pradesh (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1979 (31 of 1979), s. 5 (w.e.f. 15-9-1983).
 6. Subs. by the Haryana and Uttar Pradesh (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1979 (31 of 1979), s. 5, for the entry against "17. Haryana" (w.e.f. 15-9-1983).
 7. Ins. by the State of Himachal Pradesh Act, 1970 (53 of 1970), s. 4 (w.e.f. 25-1-1971).
 8. Ins. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 9 (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

<i>Name</i>	<i>Territories</i>
¹ [19.] Tripura	The territory which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution was being administered as if it were a Chief Commissioner's Province under the name of Tripura ² [and the territories referred to in Part II of the First Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015, notwithstanding anything contained in clause (d) of section 3 of the Constitution (Ninth Amendment) Act, 1960, so far as it relates to the territories referred to in Part II of the First Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015.]
¹ [20.] Meghalaya	The territories specified in section 5 of the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971] ² [and the territories referred to in Part I of the First Schedule but excluding the territories referred to in Part II of the Second Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015.]
¹ [³ [21.] Sikkim	The territories which immediately before the commencement of the Constitution (Thirty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1975, were comprised in Sikkim.]
¹ [⁴ [22.] Mizoram	The territories specified in section 6 of the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971.]
¹ [⁵ [23.] Arunachal Pradesh	The territories specified in section 7 of the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971.]
¹ [⁶ [24.] Goa	The territories specified in section 3 of the Goa, Daman and Diu Reorganisation Act, 1987.]

1. Entries 16 to 29 renumbered as entries 15 to 28 by the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019 (34 of 2019), s. 6 (w.e.f. 31-10-2019).
2. Added by the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015, s. 3 (w.e.f. 31-7-2015). For the text of the Act, see Appendix I.
3. Ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 2 (w.e.f. 26-4-1975).
4. Ins. by the State of Mizoram Act, 1986 (34 of 1986), s. 4 (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
5. Ins. by the State of Arunachal Pradesh Act, 1986 (69 of 1986), s. 4 (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
6. Ins. by the Goa, Daman and Diu Reorganisation Act, 1987 (18 of 1987), s. 5 (w.e.f. 30-5-1987).

<i>Name</i>	<i>Territories</i>
¹ [² [25.] Chhattisgarh	The territories specified in section 3 of the Madhya Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2000.]
¹ [³ [26.] ⁴ [Uttarakhand]	The territories specified in section 3 of the Uttar Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2000.]
¹ [⁵ [27.] Jharkhand	The territories specified in section 3 of the Bihar Reorganisation Act, 2000.]
¹ [⁶ [28.] Telangana	The territories specified in section 3 of the Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2014.]
II. THE UNION TERRITORIES	
<i>Name</i>	<i>Extent</i>
1. Delhi	The territory which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution was comprised in the Chief Commissioner's Province of Delhi.
⁷ [*]	* * * *
⁸ [2.] The Andaman and Nicobar Islands	The territory which immediately before the commencement of this Constitution was comprised in the Chief Commissioner's Province of the Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

1. Entries 16 to 29 renumbered as entries 15 to 28 by the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019 (34 of 2019), s. 6 (w.e.f. 31-10-2019).
2. Added by the Madhya Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2000 (28 of 2000), s. 5 (w.e.f. 1-11-2000).
3. Ins. by the Uttar Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2000 (29 of 2000), s. 5 (w.e.f. 9-11-2000).
4. Subs. by the Uttarakhand (Alteration of Name) Act, 2006 (52 of 2006), s. 4, for the word "Uttaranchal" (w.e.f. 1-1-2007).
5. Added by the Bihar Reorganisation Act, 2000 (30 of 2000), s. 5 (w.e.f. 15-11-2000).
6. Ins. by the Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2014, s. 10 (w.e.f. 2-6-2014).
7. Entry 2 relating to "Himachal Pradesh" omitted and entries 3 to 10 renumbered as entries 2 to 9 respectively by the State of Himachal Pradesh Act, 1970 (53 of 1970), s. 4 (w.e.f. 25-1-1971) and subsequently entries relating to Manipur and Tripura (i.e. entries 2 and 3) omitted by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971) s. 9 (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
8. Entries 4 to 9 renumbered as entries 2 to 7 by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 9 (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

<i>Name</i>	<i>Territories</i>
¹ [3.] ² [Lakshadweep]	The territory specified in section 6 of the States Reorganisation Act, 1956.
³ [¹ [4.] Dadra and Nagar Haveli and Daman and Diu	The territory which immediately before the eleventh day of August, 1961 was comprised in Free Dadra and Nagar Haveli and the territories specified in section 4 of the Goa, Daman and Diu Reorganisation Act, 1987.]
⁴ [¹ [*] ³ [* * * *
⁵ [¹ [6.] ⁶ [Puducherry]	The territories which immediately before the sixteenth day of August, 1962, were comprised in the French Establishments in India known as Pondicherry, Karikal, Mahe and Yanam.]
⁷ [¹ [7.] Chandigarh	The territories specified in section 4 of the Punjab Reorganisation Act, 1966.]

1. Entries 4 to 9 renumbered as entries 2 to 7 (respectively) by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 9 (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
2. Subs. by the Laccadive, Minicoy and Amindivi Islands (Alteration of Name) Act, 1973 (34 of 1973), s. 5, for "The Laccadive, Minicoy and Amindivi Islands" (w.e.f. 1-11-1973).
3. Entry 4 relating to Dadra and Nagar Haveli was ins. by the Constitution (Tenth Amendment) Act, 1961, s.2 (w.e.f. 11-8-1961). And subsequently subs. by the Dadra and Nagar Haveli Daman and Diu (Merger of Union territories) Act, 2019 (44 of 2019), s. 5 for entries 4 and 5 (w.e.f. 19-12-2019).
4. Subs. by the Goa, Daman and Diu (Reorganisation) Act, 1987 (18 of 1987), s. 5, for entry 5 (w.e.f. 30-5-1987).
5. Ins. by the Constitution (Fourteenth Amendment) Act, 1962, s. 3 (with retrospective effect).
6. Subs. by the Pondicherry (Alteration of Name) Act, 2006 (44 of 2006), s. 5 for "Pondicherry" (w.e.f. 1-10-2006).
7. Ins. by the Punjab Reorganisation Act, 1966 (31 of 1966), s. 7 (w.e.f. 1-11-1966).

<i>Name</i>	<i>Territories</i>			
¹ [*	*	*	*	*]
¹ [*	*	*	*	*]
² [8. Jammu and Kashmir	The territories specified in section 4 of the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019.			
9. Ladakh	The territories specified in section 3 of the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019.]			

1. Entry 8 relating to Mizoram omitted and entry 9 relating to Arunachal Pradesh renumbered as entry 8 by the State of Mizoram Act, 1986 (34 of 1986), s. 4 (w.e.f. 20-2-1987) and entry 8 relating to Arunachal Pradesh omitted by the State of Arunachal Pradesh Act, 1986 (69 of 1986) s. 4 (w.e.f. 15-4-1987).
2. Ins. by the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019 (34 of 2019) s. 6 (w.e.f. 31-10-2019).

SECOND SCHEDULE

[Articles 59(3), 65(3), 75(6), 97, 125, 148(3), 158(3), 164 (5), 186 and 221]

PART A

PROVISIONS AS TO THE PRESIDENT AND THE GOVERNORS OF STATES ^{1*}**

1. There shall be paid to the President and to the Governors of the States ^{1***} the following emoluments per mensem, that is to say:—

The President	10,000 rupees*.
The Governor of a State	5,500 rupees**.

2. There shall also be paid to the President and to the Governors of the States ^{2***} such allowances as were payable respectively to the Governor-General of the Dominion of India and to the Governors of the corresponding Provinces immediately before the commencement of this Constitution.

3. The President and the Governors of ³[the States] throughout their respective terms of office shall be entitled to the same privileges to which the Governor-General and the Governors of the corresponding Provinces were respectively entitled immediately before the commencement of this Constitution.

4. While the Vice-President or any other person is discharging the functions of, or is acting as, President, or any person is discharging the functions of the Governor, he shall be entitled to the same emoluments, allowances and privileges as the President or the Governor whose functions he discharges or for whom he acts, as the case may be.

4* * * *

1. The words and letter "specified in Part A of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

* Now five lakh rupees, *vide* the Finance Act, 2018 (13 of 2018), s. 137. (w.e.f. 1-1-2016).

** Now three lakh fifty thousand rupees, by s. 161, *ibid.*, (w.e.f. 1-1-2016).

2. The words "so specified" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. Subs. by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.*, for "such states" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

4. Part B omitted by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

PART C

PROVISIONS AS TO THE SPEAKER AND THE DEPUTY SPEAKER OF THE HOUSE
 OF THE PEOPLE AND THE CHAIRMAN AND THE DEPUTY CHAIRMAN
 OF THE COUNCIL OF STATES AND THE SPEAKER AND THE
 DEPUTY SPEAKER OF THE LEGISLATIVE ASSEMBLY ^{1***}
 AND THE CHAIRMAN AND THE DEPUTY CHAIRMAN
 OF THE LEGISLATIVE COUNCIL OF ²[A STATE]

7. There shall be paid to the Speaker of the House of the People and the Chairman of the Council of States such salaries and allowances as were payable to the Speaker of the Constituent Assembly of the Dominion of India immediately before the commencement of this Constitution, and there shall be paid to the Deputy Speaker of the House of the People and to the Deputy Chairman of the Council of States such salaries and allowances as were payable to the Deputy Speaker of the Constituent Assembly of the Dominion of India immediately before such commencement.

8. There shall be paid to the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the Legislative Assembly ^{3***} and to the Chairman and the Deputy Chairman of the Legislative Council of ⁴[a State] such salaries and allowances as were payable respectively to the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the Legislative Assembly and the President and the Deputy President of the Legislative Council of the corresponding Province immediately before the commencement of this Constitution and, where the corresponding Province had no Legislative Council immediately before such commencement, there shall be paid to the Chairman and the Deputy Chairman of the Legislative Council of the State such salaries and allowances as the Governor of the State may determine.

-
1. The words and letter "OF A STATE IN PART A OF THE FIRST SCHEDULE" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 2. Subs. by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.*, for "ANY SUCH STATE." (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 3. The words and letter "of a State specified in Part A of the First Schedule" omitted by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 4. Subs. by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.*, for "such State" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Second Schedule)

PART D**PROVISIONS AS TO THE JUDGES OF THE SUPREME COURT AND OF THE HIGH COURTS^{1***}**

9. [(1) There shall be paid to the Judges of the Supreme Court, in respect of time spent on actual service, salary at the following rates per mensem, that is to say:—

The Chief Justice ..	² [10,000 rupees.]*
Any other Judge ..	³ [9,000 rupees.]**

Provided that if a Judge of the Supreme Court at the time of his appointment is in receipt of a pension (other than a disability or wound pension) in respect of any previous service under the Government of India or any of its predecessor Governments or under the Government of a State or any of its predecessor Governments, his salary in respect of service in the Supreme Court⁴ [shall be reduced—

(a) by the amount of that pension; and

(b) if he has, before such appointment, received in lieu of a portion of the pension due to him in respect of such previous service the commuted value thereof, by the amount of that portion of the pension; and

(c) if he has, before such appointment, received a retirement gratuity in respect of such previous service, by the pension equivalent of that gratuity.]

(2) Every Judge of the Supreme Court shall be entitled without payment of rent to the use of an official residence.

(3) Nothing in sub-paragraph (2) of this paragraph shall apply to a Judge who, immediately before the commencement of this Constitution,—

-
1. The words and letter "IN STATES IN PART A OF THE FIRST SCHEDULE" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 25(a) (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
 2. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1986, s. 4, for "5,000 rupees to 10,000 rupees" (w.e.f. 1-4-1986).

* Now two lakh eighty thousand rupees, *vide* the High Court and Supreme Court Judges (Salaries and Conditions of Service) Amendment Act, 2018 (10 of 2018), s. 6 (w.e.f. 1-1-2016).

3. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1986, s. 4, for "4,000 rupees" (w.e.f. 1-4-1986).

** Now two lakh fifty thousand rupees, *vide* the High Court and Supreme Court Judges (Salaries and Conditions of Service) Amendment Act, 2018 (10 of 2018), s. 6 (w.e.f. 1-1-2016).

4. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 25(b), for " shall be reduced by the amount of that pension" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(Second Schedule)

(a) was holding office as the Chief Justice of the Federal Court and has become on such commencement the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court under clause (1) of article 374; or

(b) was holding office as any other Judge of the Federal Court and has on such commencement become a Judge (other than the Chief Justice) of the Supreme Court under the said clause,

during the period he holds office as such Chief Justice or other Judge, and every Judge who so becomes the Chief Justice or other Judge of the Supreme Court shall, in respect of time spent on actual service as such Chief Justice or other Judge, as the case may be, be entitled to receive in addition to the salary specified in sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph as special pay an amount equivalent to the difference between the salary so specified and the salary which he was drawing immediately before such commencement.

(4) Every Judge of the Supreme Court shall receive such reasonable allowances to reimburse him for expenses incurred in travelling on duty within the territory of India and shall be afforded such reasonable facilities in connection with travelling as the President may from time to time prescribe.

(5) The rights in respect of leave of absence (including leave allowances) and pension of the Judges of the Supreme Court shall be governed by the provisions which, immediately before the commencement of this Constitution, were applicable to the Judges of the Federal Court.

10. (1) ¹[There shall be paid to the Judges of High Courts, in respect of time spent on actual service, salary at the following rates per mensem, that is to say,—

The Chief Justice ..	² [9,000 rupees]*
Any other Judge ..	³ [8,000 rupees]:**

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 25(c), (i), for sub-paragraph (1) (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1986, s. 4, for "4,000 rupees" (w.e.f. 1-4-1986).

* Now two lakh fifty thousand rupees, *vide* the High Court and Supreme Court Judges (Salaries and Conditions of Service) Amendment Act, 2018 (10 of 2018), s. 2 (w.e.f. 1-1-2016).

3. Subs. by the Constitution (Fifty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1986, s. 4, for "3,500 rupees" (w.e.f. 1-4-1986).

** Now two lakh twenty-five thousand rupees, *vide* the High Court and Supreme Court Judges (Salaries and Conditions of Service) Amendment Act, 2018 (10 of 2018), s. 2 (w.e.f. 1-1-2016).

Provided that if a Judge of a High Court at the time of his appointment is in receipt of a pension (other than a disability or wound pension) in respect of any previous service under the Government of India or any of its predecessor Governments or under the Government of a State or any of its predecessor Governments, his salary in respect of service in the High Court shall be reduced—

(a) by the amount of that pension; and

(b) if he has, before such appointment, received in lieu of a portion of the pension due to him in respect of such previous service the commuted value thereof, by the amount of that portion of the pension; and

(c) if he has, before such appointment, received a retirement gratuity in respect of such previous service, by the pension equivalent of that gratuity.]

(2) Every person who immediately before the commencement of this Constitution—

(a) was holding office as the Chief Justice of a High Court in any Province and has on such commencement become the Chief Justice of the High Court in the corresponding State under clause (1) of article 376; or

(b) was holding office as any other Judge of a High Court in any Province and has on such commencement become a Judge (other than the Chief Justice) of the High Court in the corresponding State under the said clause,

shall, if he was immediately before such commencement drawing a salary at a rate higher than that specified in sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph, be entitled to receive in respect of time spent on actual service as such Chief Justice or other Judge, as the case may be, in addition to the salary specified in the said sub-paragraph as special pay an amount equivalent to the difference between the salary so specified and the salary which he was drawing immediately before such commencement.

¹[(3) Any person who, immediately before the commencement of the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, was holding office as the Chief Justice of the High Court of a State specified in Part B of the First Schedule and has on such commencement become the Chief Justice of the High Court of a State specified in the said Schedule as amended by the said Act, shall, if he was immediately before such commencement drawing any amount as allowance in addition to his salary, be entitled to receive in respect of time spent on actual service as such Chief Justice, the same amount as allowance in addition to the salary specified in sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph.].

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 25(c), (ii), for sub-paragraphs (3) and (4) (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

11. In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires,—

(a) the expression “Chief Justice” includes an acting Chief Justice, and a “Judge” includes an *ad hoc* Judge;

(b) “actual service” includes—

(i) time spent by a Judge on duty as a Judge or in the performance of such other functions as he may at the request of the President undertake to discharge;

(ii) vacations, excluding any time during which the Judge is absent on leave; and

(iii) joining time on transfer from a High Court to the Supreme Court or from one High Court to another.

PART E

PROVISIONS AS TO THE COMPTROLLER AND AUDITOR-GENERAL OF INDIA

12. (1) There shall be paid to the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India a salary at the rate of *four thousand rupees per mensem.

(2) The person who was holding office immediately before the commencement of this Constitution as Auditor-General of India and has become on such commencement the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India under article 377 shall in addition to the salary specified in sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph be entitled to receive as special pay an amount equivalent to the difference between the salary so specified and the salary which he was drawing as Auditor-General of India immediately before such commencement.

(3) The rights in respect of leave of absence and pension and the other conditions of service of the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India shall be governed or shall continue to be governed, as the case may be, by the provisions which were applicable to the Auditor-General of India immediately before the commencement of this Constitution and all references in those provisions to the Governor-General shall be construed as references to the President.

* The Comptroller and Auditor-General of India shall be paid a salary equal to the salary of the Judges of the Supreme Court *vide* s. 3 of the Comptroller and Auditor-General (Duties, Powers and Conditions of Service) Act, 1971 (56 of 1971). The salary of Judges of the Supreme Court has been raised to two lakh fifty thousand rupees per mensem by the High Court and Supreme Court Judges (Salaries and Conditions of Service) Amendment Act, 2018 (10 of 2018), s. 6 (w.e.f. 1-1-2016).

THIRD SCHEDULE

[Articles 75(4), 99, 124(6), 148(2), 164(3), 188 and 219]*

Forms of Oaths or Affirmations

I

Form of oath of office for a Minister for the Union:—

“I, A. B., do swear in the name of God that I will bear true faith solemnly affirm

and allegiance to the Constitution of India as by law established,¹ [that I will uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India,] that I will faithfully and conscientiously discharge my duties as a Minister for the Union and that I will do right to all manner of people in accordance with the Constitution and the law, without fear or favour, affection or ill-will.”

II

Form of oath of secrecy for a Minister for the Union:—

“I, A.B., do swear in the name of God that I will not directly or solemnly affirm

indirectly communicate or reveal to any person or persons any matter which shall be brought under my consideration or shall become known to me as a Minister for the Union except as may be required for the due discharge of my duties as such Minister.”

²[III]

A

Form of oath or affirmation to be made by a candidate for election to Parliament:—

* See also arts. 84 (a) and 173 (a).

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Sixteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 5 (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

2. Subs. by s. 5, *ibid.*, for Form III. (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

"I, A.B., having been nominated as a candidate to fill a seat in the Council of States (or the House of the People) do swear in the name of God solemnly affirm

that I will bear true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India as by law established and that I will uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India."

B

Form of oath or affirmation to be made by a member of Parliament:—

"I, A.B., having been elected (or nominated) a member of the Council of States (or the House of the People) do swear in the name of God solemnly affirm

that I will bear true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India as by law established, that I will uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India and that I will faithfully discharge the duty upon which I am about to enter."]

IV

Form of oath or affirmation to be made by the Judges of the Supreme Court and the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India:—

"I, A.B., having been appointed Chief Justice (or a Judge) of the Supreme Court of India (or Comptroller and Auditor-General of India) do swear in the name of God that I will bear true faith and solemnly affirm

faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India as by law established, [that I will uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India,] that I will duly and faithfully and to the best of my ability, knowledge and judgment perform the duties of my office without fear or favour, affection or ill-will and that I will uphold the Constitution and the laws."

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Sixteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 5 (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

V

Form of oath of office for a Minister for a State:—

“I, A.B., do swear in the name of God that I will bear true faith solemnly affirm

and allegiance to the Constitution of India as by law established,¹ [that I will uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India,] that I will faithfully and conscientiously discharge my duties as a Minister for the State ofand that I will do right to all manner of people in accordance with the Constitution and the law without fear or favour, affection or ill-will.”

VI

Form of oath of secrecy for a Minister for a State:—

“I, A.B., do swear in the name of God that I will not directly or solemnly affirm

indirectly communicate or reveal to any person or persons any matter which shall be brought under my consideration or shall become known to me as a Minister for the State ofexcept as may be required for the due discharge of my duties as such Minister.”

²[VII

A

Form of oath or affirmation to be made by a candidate for election to the Legislature of a State:—

“I, A.B., having been nominated as a candidate to fill a seat in the Legislative Assembly (or Legislative Council), do swear in the name of God that I will bear true faith and solemnly affirm

allegiance to the Constitution of India as by law established and that I will uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India.”

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Sixteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 5 (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

2. Subs. by s. 5, *ibid.*, for Form VII (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

B

Form of oath or affirmation to be made by a member of the Legislature of a State:—

“I, A.B., having been elected (or nominated) a member of the Legislative Assembly (or Legislative Council), do swear in the name of God that solemnly affirm

I will bear true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India as by law established, that I will uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India and that I will faithfully discharge the duty upon which I am about to enter.”]

VIII

Form of oath or affirmation to be made by the Judges of a High Court:—

“I, A.B., having been appointed Chief Justice (or a Judge) of the High Court at (or of) do swear in the name of God that I will bear solemnly affirm

true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India as by law established, ¹[that I will uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India,] that I will duly and faithfully and to the best of my ability, knowledge and judgment perform the duties of my office without fear or favour, affection or ill-will and that I will uphold the Constitution and the laws.”

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Sixteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 5 (w.e.f. 5-10-1963).

¹[FOURTH SCHEDULE

[Articles 4(1) and 80(2)]

Allocation of seats in the Council of States

To each State or Union territory specified in the first column of the following table, there shall be allotted the number of seats specified in the second column thereof opposite to that State or that Union territory, as the case may be:

TABLE

1.	Andhra Pradesh	² [11]
³ [2.]	Telangana	7]
⁴ [3.]	Assam	7
⁴ [4.]	Bihar	⁵ [16]
⁶ [⁴ [5.]	Jharkhand	6]
⁷ [⁸ [⁴ [6.]	Goa	1]]
⁹ [⁸ [⁴ [7.]	Gujarat	11]]
¹⁰ [⁸ [⁴ [8.]	Haryana	5]]
⁸ [⁴ [9.]	Kerala	9

1. Fourth Schedule Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 3(2), for 'Fourth Schedule' (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
2. Subs. by the Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2014, s. 12, for "18" (w.e.f. 2-6-2014).
3. Ins. by s. 12, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 2-6-2014).
4. Entries 2 to 30 renumbered as entries 3 to 31 respectively by s. 12, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 2-6-2014).
5. Subs. by the Bihar Reorganisation Act, 2000 (30 of 2000), s. 7, for "22" (w.e.f. 15-11-2000).
6. Ins. by s. 7, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 15-11-2000).
7. Entries 4 to 26 renumbered as entries 5 to 27 respectively and entry "4 Goa...1" ins. by the Goa, Daman and Diu Reorganisation Act, 1987 (18 of 1987), s. 6(a) and (b) (w.e.f. 30-5-1987).
8. Entries 4 to 29 renumbered as entries 5 to 30 by the Bihar Reorganisation Act, 2000 (30 of 2000), s. 7 (w.e.f. 15-11-2000).
9. Subs. by the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960 (11 of 1960), s. 6, for entry "4" (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).
10. Ins. by the Punjab Reorganisation Act, 1966 (31 of 1966), s. 9 (w.e.f. 1-11-1966).

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Fourth Schedule)

¹ [² [10.]	Madhya Pradesh	³ [11]
⁴ [¹ [² [11.]	Chhattisgarh	⁵]]
⁵ [¹ [² [12.]	Tamil Nadu	⁶ [18]]
⁷ [¹ [² [13.]	Maharashtra	¹⁹]]
⁸ [¹ [² [14.]	Karnataka	¹²]]
¹ [² [15.]	⁹ [Odisha]	¹⁰]
¹ [² [16.]	Punjab	¹⁰ [7]
¹ [² [17.]	Rajasthan	¹⁰]
¹ [² [18.]	Uttar Pradesh	¹¹ [31]
¹ [² [19.]	¹³ [Uttarakhand]	³]]
¹ [² [20.]	West Bengal	¹⁶]
¹⁴ [¹ [² [**	* * *	*]
¹⁵ [¹ [² [21.]	Nagaland	¹]]

1. Entries 4 to 29 renumbered as entries 5 to 30 by the Bihar Reorganisation Act, 2000 (30 of 2000), s. 7 (w.e.f. 15-11-2000).
2. Entries 2 to 30 renumbered as entries 3 to 31 respectively by the Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2014, s. 12 (w.e.f. 2-6-2014).
3. Subs. by the Madhya Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2000 (28 of 2000), s. 7, for "16" (w.e.f. 1-11-2000).
4. Ins. by s. 7, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-2000).
5. Subs. by the Madras State (Alteration of Name) Act, 1968 (53 of 1968), s. 5, for "8. Madras" (renumbered as "11") (w.e.f. 14-1-1969).
6. Subs. by the Andhra Pradesh and Madras (Alteration of Boundaries) Act, 1959 (56 of 1959), s. 8, for "17" (w.e.f. 1-4-1960).
7. Ins. by the Bombay Reorganisation Act, 1960 (11 of 1960), s. 6 (w.e.f. 1-5-1960).
8. Subs. by the Mysore State (Alteration of Name) Act, 1973 (31 of 1973), s. 5, for "10. Mysore" (w.e.f. 1-11-1973).
9. Subs. by the Orissa (Alteration of Name) Act, 2011 (15 of 2011), s. 7 for "Orissa" (w.e.f. 1-11-2011).
10. Subs. by the Punjab Reorganisation Act, 1966 (31 of 1966), s. 9 for "11" (w.e.f. 1-11-1966).
11. Subs. by the Uttar Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2000 (29 of 2000), s. 7 for "34" (w.e.f. 9-11-2000).
12. Ins. by s. 7, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 9-11-2000).
13. Subs. by the Uttarakhand (Alteration of Name) Act, 2006 (52 of 2006), s. 5 for "Uttarakhand" (w.e.f. 1-1-2007).
14. ** Entry 21 relating to Jammu and Kashmir deleted by the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019 (34 of 2019), s. 8 (w.e.f. 31-10-2019).
15. Entries 22 to 31 re-numbered as entries 21 to 30, respectively by the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019 (34 of 2019), s. 8 (w.e.f. 31-10-2019).
16. Ins. by the State of Nagaland Act, 1962 (27 of 1962), s. 6 (w.e.f. 1-12-1963).

(Fourth Schedule)

¹ [² [³ [⁴ [22.]	Himachal Pradesh	3]]]
³ [² [⁴ [23.]	Manipur	1]
³ [² [⁴ [24.]	Tripura	1]]
³ [² [⁴ [25.]	Meghalaya	1]]
⁵ [³ [² [⁴ [26.]	Sikkim	1]]
⁶ [³ [² [⁴ [27.]	Mizoram	1]]
⁷ [³ [² [⁴ [28.]	Arunachal Pradesh	1]]
³ [² [⁴ [29.]	Delhi	3]
³ [² [⁴ [30.]	⁸ [Puducherry]	1]]
⁹ [³ [² [⁴ [31.	Jammu and Kashmir.....	4]
Total		¹⁰ [233]

1. Ins. by the State of Himachal Pradesh Act, 1970 (53 of 1970), s. 5 (w.e.f. 25-1-1971).
2. Entries 4 to 29 renumbered as entries 5 to 30 by the Bihar Reorganisation Act, 2000 (30 of 2000), s. 7 (w.e.f. 15-11-2000).
3. Entries 2 to 30 renumbered as entries 3 to 31 respectively by the Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act, 2014 (6 of 2014), s. 12 (w.e.f. 2-6-2014).
4. Entries 22 to 31 renumbered as entries 21 to 30 respectively by the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019 (34 of 2019), s. 8 (w.e.f. 31-10-2019).
5. Ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 4 (w.e.f. 26-4-1975).
6. Ins. by the State of Mizoram Act, 1986 (34 of 1986), s. 5 (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
7. Ins. by the State of Arunachal Pradesh Act, 1986 (69 of 1986), s. 5 (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
8. Subs. by the Pondicherry (Alteration of Name) Act, 2006 (44 of 2006) s. 4, for "Pondicherry" (w.e.f. 1-10-2006).
9. Ins. by the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019 (34 of 2019), s. 8 (w.e.f. 31-10-2019).
10. Subs. by the Goa, Daman and Diu Reorganisation Act, 1987 (18 of 1987), s. 6, for "232" (w.e.f. 30-5-1987).

FIFTH SCHEDULE

[Article 244(1)]

Provisions as to the Administration and Control of Scheduled Areas and Scheduled Tribes

PART A

GENERAL

1. **Interpretation.**—In this Schedule, unless the context otherwise requires, the expression "State" ^{1***} does not include the ²[States of Assam ³[, ⁴[Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram.]]]

2. **Executive power of a State in Scheduled Areas.**—Subject to the provisions of this Schedule, the executive power of a State extends to the Scheduled Areas therein.

3. **Report by the Governor ^{5***} to the President regarding the administration of Scheduled Areas.**—The Governor ^{5***} of each State having Scheduled Areas therein shall annually, or whenever so required by the President, make a report to the President regarding the administration of the Scheduled Areas in that State and the executive power of the Union shall extend to the giving of directions to the State as to the administration of the said areas.

PART B

ADMINISTRATION AND CONTROL OF SCHEDULED AREAS AND SCHEDULED TRIBES

4. **Tribes Advisory Council.**—(1) There shall be established in each State having Scheduled Areas therein and, if the President so directs, also in any State having Scheduled Tribes but not Scheduled Areas therein, a Tribes Advisory Council consisting of not more than twenty members of whom, as nearly as may be, three-fourths shall be the representatives of the Scheduled Tribes in the Legislative Assembly of the State:

1. The words and letters "means a State specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule but" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).
2. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71, for "State of Assam" (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
3. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 3, for "and Meghalaya" (w.e.f. 1-4-1985).
4. Subs. by the State of Mizoram Act, 1986 (34 of 1986), s. 39, for "Meghalaya and Tripura" (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
5. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

Provided that if the number of representatives of the Scheduled Tribes in the Legislative Assembly of the State is less than the number of seats in the Tribes Advisory Council to be filled by such representatives, the remaining seats shall be filled by other members of those tribes.

(2) It shall be the duty of the Tribes Advisory Council to advise on such matters pertaining to the welfare and advancement of the Scheduled Tribes in the State as may be referred to them by the Governor ^{1***}.

(3) The Governor ^{2***} may make rules prescribing or regulating, as the case may be,—

(a) the number of members of the Council, the mode of their appointment and the appointment of the Chairman of the Council and of the officers and servants thereof;

(b) the conduct of its meetings and its procedure in general; and

(c) all other incidental matters.

5. Law applicable to Scheduled Areas.—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, the Governor ^{1***} may by public notification direct that any particular Act of Parliament or of the Legislature of the State shall not apply to a Scheduled Area or any part thereof in the State or shall apply to a Scheduled Area or any part thereof in the State subject to such exceptions and modifications as he may specify in the notification and any direction given under this sub-paragraph may be given so as to have retrospective effect.

(2) The Governor may make regulations for the peace and good government of any area in a State which is for the time being a Scheduled Area.

In particular and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing power, such regulations may—

(a) prohibit or restrict the transfer of land by or among members of the Scheduled Tribes in such area;

(b) regulate the allotment of land to members of the Scheduled Tribes in such area;

1. The words "or Rajpramukh, as the case may be" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by s. 29 and Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

(c) regulate the carrying on of business as money-lender by persons who lend money to members of the Scheduled Tribes in such area.

(3) In making any such regulation as is referred to in sub-paragraph (2) of this paragraph, the Governor ^{1***} may repeal or amend any Act of Parliament or of the Legislature of the State or any existing law which is for the time being applicable to the area in question.

(4) All regulations made under this paragraph shall be submitted forthwith to the President and, until assented to by him, shall have no effect.

(5) No regulation shall be made under this paragraph unless the Governor ^{1***} making the regulation has, in the case where there is a Tribes Advisory Council for the State, consulted such Council.

PART C

SCHEDULED AREAS

6. Scheduled Areas.—(1) In this Constitution, the expression "Scheduled Areas" means such areas as the President may by order ^{*} declare to be Scheduled Areas.

(2) The President may at any time by order**—

(a) direct that the whole or any specified part of a Scheduled Area shall cease to be a Scheduled Area or a part of such an area;

²[(aa) increase the area of any Scheduled Area in a State after consultation with the Governor of that State;]

(b) alter, but only by way of rectification of boundaries, any Scheduled Area;

1. The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

The words "or Rajpramukh" omitted by s. 29 and sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

* See the Scheduled Areas (Part A States) Order, 1950 (C.O. 9), the Scheduled Areas (Part B States) Order, 1950 (C.O.26), the Scheduled Areas (Himachal Pradesh) Order, 1975 (C.O. 102) and the Scheduled Areas (States of Bihar, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh and Orissa) Order, 1977 (C.O. 109).

** See the Madras Scheduled Areas (Cessor) Order, 1950 (C.O. 30) and the Andhra Scheduled Areas (Cessor) Order, 1955 (C.O. 50).

2. Ins. by the Fifth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1976 (101 of 1976), s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-9-1976).

(c) on any alteration of the boundaries of a State or on the admission into the Union or the establishment of a new State, declare any territory not previously included in any State to be, or to form part of, a Scheduled Area;

¹[(d) rescind, in relation to any State or States, any order or orders made under this paragraph, and in consultation with the Governor of the State concerned, make fresh orders redefining the areas which are to be Scheduled Areas;]

and any such order may contain such incidental and consequential provisions as appear to the President to be necessary and proper, but save as aforesaid, the order made under sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph shall not be varied by any subsequent order.

PART D

AMENDMENT OF THE SCHEDULE

7. Amendment of the Schedule.—(1) Parliament may from time to time by law amend by way of addition, variation or repeal any of the provisions of this Schedule and, when the Schedule is so amended, any reference to this Schedule in this Constitution shall be construed as a reference to such Schedule as so amended.

(2) No such law as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph shall be deemed to be an amendment of this Constitution for the purposes of article 368.

1. Ins. by the Fifth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1976 (101 of 1976), s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-9-1976).

SIXTH SCHEDULE

[Articles 244(2) and 275(1)]

Provisions as to the Administration of Tribal Areas in ¹[the States of Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram]

²1. **Autonomous districts and autonomous regions.**—(1) Subject to the provisions of this paragraph, the tribal areas in each item of ³[⁴[Parts I, II and IIA] and in Part III] of the table appended to paragraph 20 of this Schedule shall be an autonomous district.

(2) If there are different Scheduled Tribes in an autonomous district, the Governor may, by public notification, divide the area or areas inhabited by them into autonomous regions.

(3) The Governor may, by public notification,—

- (a) include any area in ³[any of the Parts] of the said table;
 - (b) exclude any area from ³[any of the Parts] of the said table;
 - (c) create a new autonomous district;
 - (d) increase the area of any autonomous district;
 - (e) diminish the area of any autonomous district;
 - (f) unite two or more autonomous districts or parts thereof so as to form one autonomous district;
- ⁵[(f) alter the name of any autonomous district];
- (g) define the boundaries of any autonomous district:

-
1. Subs. by the State of Mizoram Act, 1986 (34 of 1986), s. 39, for certain words (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
 2. Paragraph 1 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 2003 (44 of 2003), s. 2, so as to insert the following proviso after sub-paragraph (2), namely :—

"Provided that nothing in this sub-paragraph shall apply to the Bodoland Territorial Areas District" (w.e.f. 7-9-2003).
 3. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., for "Part A" (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
 4. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 4, for "Part I and II" (w.e.f. 1-4-1985).
 5. Ins. by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch. (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).

Provided that no order shall be made by the Governor under clauses (c), (d), (e) and (f) of this sub-paragraph except after consideration of the report of a Commission appointed under sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 14 of this Schedule:

¹[Provided further that any order made by the Governor under this sub-paragraph may contain such incidental and consequential provisions (including any amendment of paragraph 20 and of any item in any of the Parts of the said Table) as appear to the Governor to be necessary for giving effect to the provisions of the order.]

²2. Constitution of District Councils and Regional Councils.—

³[(1) There shall be a District Council for each autonomous district consisting of not more than thirty members, of whom not more than four persons shall be nominated by the Governor and the rest shall be elected on the basis of adult suffrage.]

1. Ins. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch. (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
2. Paragraph 2 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 2003(44 of 2003), s. 2, so as to insert the following proviso after sub-paragraph (1), namely:—

“Provided that the Bodoland Territorial Council shall consist of not more than forty-six members of whom forty shall be elected on the basis of adult suffrage, of whom thirty shall be reserved for the Scheduled Tribes, five for non-tribal communities, five open for all communities and the remaining six shall be nominated by the Governor having same rights and privileges as other members, including voting rights, from amongst the un-represented communities of the Bodoland Territorial Areas District, of which at least two shall be women.”

Paragraph 2 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1995(42 of 1995), s.2, so as to insert the following proviso after sub-paragraph (3), namely :—

“Provided that the District Council constituted for the North Cachar Hills District shall be called as the North Cachar Hills Autonomous Council and the District Council constituted for the Karbi Anglong District shall be called as the Karbi Anglong Autonomous Council.”

Paragraph 2 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 2003(44 of 2003), s. 2, so as to insert the following proviso after sub-paragraph (3), namely:—

“Provided further that the District Council constituted for the Bodoland Territorial Areas District shall be called the Bodoland Territorial Council.”

3. Subs. by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch., for sub-paraghaph (1) (w.c.f. 2-4-1970).

(2) There shall be a separate Regional Council for each area constituted an autonomous region under sub-paragraph (2) of paragraph 1 of this Schedule.

(3) Each District Council and each Regional Council shall be a body corporate by the name respectively of "the District Council of (*name of district*)" and "the Regional Council of (*name of region*)", shall have perpetual succession and a common seal and shall by the said name sue and be sued.

(4) Subject to the provisions of this Schedule, the administration of an autonomous district shall, in so far as it is not vested under this Schedule in any Regional Council within such district, be vested in the District Council for such district and the administration of an autonomous region shall be vested in the Regional Council for such region.

(5) In an autonomous district with Regional Councils, the District Council shall have only such powers with respect to the areas under the authority of the Regional Council as may be delegated to it by the Regional Council in addition to the powers conferred on it by this Schedule with respect to such areas.

(6) The Governor shall make rules for the first constitution of District Councils and Regional Councils in consultation with the existing tribal Councils or other representative tribal organisations within the autonomous districts or regions concerned, and such rules shall provide for—

- (a) the composition of the District Councils and Regional Councils and the allocation of seats therein;
- (b) the delimitation of territorial constituencies for the purpose of elections to those Councils;
- (c) the qualifications for voting at such elections and the preparation of electoral rolls therefor;
- (d) the qualifications for being elected at such elections as members of such Councils;
- (e) the term of office of members of ¹[Regional Councils];

1. Subs. by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch., for "such Councils" (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).

(f) any other matter relating to or connected with elections or nominations to such Councils;

(g) the procedure and the conduct of business ¹[(including the power to act notwithstanding any vacancy)] in the District and Regional Councils;

(h) the appointment of officers and staff of the District and Regional Councils.

¹[(6A) The elected members of the District Council shall hold office for a term of five years from the date appointed for the first meeting of the Council after the general elections to the Council, unless the District Council is sooner dissolved under paragraph 16 and a nominated member shall hold office at the pleasure of the Governor:

Provided that the said period of five years may, while a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation or if circumstances exist which, in the opinion of the Governor, render the holding of elections impracticable, be extended by the Governor for a period not exceeding one year at a time and in any case where a Proclamation of Emergency is in operation not extending beyond a period of six months after the Proclamation has ceased to operate:

Provided further that a member elected to fill a casual vacancy shall hold office only for the remainder of the term of office of the member whom he replaces.]

(7) The District or the Regional Council may after its first constitution make rules ¹[with the approval of the Governor] with regard to the matters specified in sub-paragraph (6) of this paragraph and may also make rules ¹[with like approval] regulating—

(a) the formation of subordinate local Councils or Boards and their procedure and the conduct of their business; and

(b) generally all matters relating to the transaction of business pertaining to the administration of the district or region, as the case may be:

1. Ins. by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch. (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).

Provided that until rules are made by the District or the Regional Council under this sub-paragraph the rules made by the Governor under sub-paragraph (6) of this paragraph shall have effect in respect of elections to, the officers and staff of, and the procedure and the conduct of business in, each such Council.

* * * *

23. Powers of the District Councils and Regional Councils to make laws.—(1) The Regional Council for an autonomous region in

1. Second proviso omitted by s. 74 and Fourth Sch. of the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969) (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).
2. Paragraph 3 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 2003 (44 of 2003), s. 2, so as to substitute sub-paragraph (3) as under (w.e.f. 7-9-2003).—

“(3) Save as otherwise provided in sub-paragraph (2) of paragraph 3A or sub-paragraph (2) of paragraph 3B, all laws made under this paragraph or sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 3A or sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 3B shall be submitted forthwith to the Governor and, until assented to by him, shall have no effect.”.

After paragraph 3, the following paragraph has been inserted in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1995 (42 of 1995), s. 2, (w.e.f. 12-9-1995), namely:—

“3A. Additional powers of the North Cachar Hills Autonomous Council and the Karbi Anglong Autonomous Council to make laws.—(1) Without prejudice to the provisions of paragraph 3, the North Cachar Hills Autonomous Council and the Karbi Anglong Autonomous Council within their respective districts, shall have power to make laws with respect to—

- (a) industries, subject to the provisions of entries 7 and 52 of List I of the Seventh Schedule;
- (b) communications, that is to say, roads, bridges, ferries and other means of communication not specified in List I of the Seventh Schedule; municipal tramways, ropeways, inland waterways and traffic thereon subject to the provisions of List I and List III of the Seventh Schedule with regard to such waterways; vehicles other than mechanically propelled vehicles;
- (c) preservation, protection and improvement of stock and prevention of animal diseases; veterinary training and practice; cattle pounds;
- (d) primary and secondary education;
- (e) agriculture, including agricultural education and research, protection against pests and prevention of plant diseases;
- (f) fisheries;

(Foot-note Continue),—

- (g) water, that is to say, water supplies, irrigation and canals, drainage and embankments, water storage and water power subject to the provisions of entry 56 of List I of the Seventh Schedule;
 - (h) social security and social insurance; employment and unemployment;
 - (i) flood control schemes for protection of villages, paddy fields, markets, towns, etc. (not of technical nature);
 - (j) theatre and dramatic performances, cinemas subject to the provisions of entry 60 of List I of the Seventh Schedule; sports, entertainments and amusements;
 - (k) public health and sanitation, hospitals and dispensaries;
 - (l) minor irrigation;
 - (m) trade and commerce in, and the production supply and distribution of, food stuffs, cattle fodder, raw cotton and raw jute;
 - (n) libraries, museums and other similar institutions controlled or financed by the State; ancient and historical monuments and records other than those declared by or under any law made by Parliament to be of national importance; and
 - (o) alienation of land.
- (2) All laws made by the North Cachar Hills Autonomous Council and the Karbi Anglong Autonomous Council under paragraph 3 or under this paragraph shall, in so far as they relate to matters specified in List III of the Seventh Schedule, be submitted forthwith to the Governor who shall reserve the same for the consideration of the President.
- (3) When a law is reserved for the consideration of the President, the President shall declare either that he assents to the said law or that he withholds assent therefrom:

Provided that the President may direct the Governor to return the law to the North Cachar Hills Autonomous Council or the Karbi Anglong Autonomous Council, as the case may be, together with a message requesting that the said Council will reconsider the law or any specified provisions thereof and, in particular, will, consider the desirability of introducing any such amendments as he may recommend in his message and, when the law is so returned, the said Council shall consider the law accordingly within a period of six months from the date of receipt of such message and, if the law is again passed by the said Council with or without amendment it shall be presented again to the President for his consideration.".

After paragraph 3A, the following paragraph has been inserted in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 2003 (44 of 2003), s. 2, (w.e.f. 7-9-2003), namely:—

3B. Additional powers of the Bodoland Territorial Council to make laws.—(1) Without prejudice to the provisions of paragraph 3, the Bodoland Territorial Council within its areas shall have power to make laws with respect to :—

- (i) agriculture, including agricultural education and research, protection against pests and prevention of plant diseases; (ii) animal husbandry and veterinary, that is to say, preservation, protection and improvement of stock and prevention of animal diseases, veterinary training and practice, cattle pounds; (iii) co-operation; (iv) cultural affairs; (v) education, that is to say, primary education, higher secondary including vocational training, adult education, college education (general); (vi) fisheries; (vii) flood control for protection of village, paddy fields, markets and towns (not of technical nature); (viii) Food and civil

supply; (ix) forests (other than reserved forests); (x) handloom and textile; (xi) health and family welfare, (xii) intoxicating liquors, opium and derivatives, subject to the provisions of entry 84 of List I of the Seventh Schedule; (xiii) irrigation; (xiv) labour and employment; (xv) land and revenue; (xvi) library services (financed and controlled by the State Government); (xvii) lotteries (subject to the provisions of entry 40 of List I of the Seventh Schedule), theatres, dramatic performances and cinemas (subject to the provisions of entry 60 of List I of the Seventh Schedule); (xviii) markets and fairs; (xix) municipal corporation, improvement trust, district boards and other local authorities; (xx) museum and archaeology institutions controlled or financed by the State, ancient and historical monuments and records other than those declared by or under any law made by Parliament to be of national importance; (xxi) panchayat and rural development; (xxii) planning and development; (xxiii) printing and stationery; (xxiv) public health engineering; (xxv) public works department; (xxvi) publicity and public relations; (xxvii) registration of births and deaths; (xxviii) relief and rehabilitation; (xxix) sericulture; (xxx) small, cottage and rural industry subject to the provisions of entries 7 and 52 of List I of the Seventh Schedule; (xxx) social Welfare; (xxxii) soil conservation; (xxxiii) sports and youth welfare; (xxxiv) statistics; (xxxv) tourism; (xxxvi) transport (roads, bridges, ferries and other means of communications not specified in List I of the Seventh Schedule, municipal tramways, ropeways, inland waterways and traffic thereon subject to the provision of List I and List III of the Seventh Schedule with regard to such waterways, vehicles other than mechanically propelled vehicles); (xxxvii) tribal research institute controlled and financed by the State Government; (xxxviii) urban development—town and country planning; (xxxix) weights and measures subject to the provisions of entry 50 of List I of the Seventh Schedule; and (xl) Welfare of plain tribes and backward classes:

Provided that nothing in such laws shall—

(a) extinguish or modify the existing rights and privileges of any citizen in respect of his land at the date of commencement of this Act; and

(b) disallow any citizen from acquiring land either by way of inheritance, allotment, settlement or by any other way of transfer if such citizen is otherwise eligible for such acquisition of land within the Bodoland Territorial Areas District.

(2) All laws made under paragraph 3 or under this paragraph shall in so far as they relate to matters specified in List III of the Seventh Schedule, be submitted forthwith to the Governor who shall reserve the same for the consideration of the President.

(3) When a law is reserved for the consideration of the President, the President shall declare either that he assents to the said law or that he withholds assent therefrom:

Provided that the President may direct the Governor to return the law to the Bodoland Territorial Council, together with the message requesting that the said Council will reconsider the law or any specified provisions thereof and, in particular, will consider the desirability of introducing any such amendments as he may recommend in his message and, when the law is so returned, the said Council shall consider the law accordingly within a period of six months from the date of receipt of such message and, if the law is again passed by the said Council with or without amendments it shall be presented again to the President for his consideration.”.

respect of all areas within such region and the District Council for an autonomous district in respect of all areas within the district except those which are under the authority of Regional Councils, if any, within the district shall have power to make laws with respect to—

(a) the allotment, occupation or use, or the setting apart, of land, other than any land which is a reserved forest for the purposes of agriculture or grazing or for residential or other non-agricultural purposes or for any other purpose likely to promote the interests of the inhabitants of any village or town:

Provided that nothing in such laws shall prevent the compulsory acquisition of any land, whether occupied or unoccupied, for public purposes ¹[by the Government of the State concerned] in accordance with the law for the time being in force authorising such acquisition;

(b) the management of any forest not being a reserved forest;

(c) the use of any canal or water-course for the purpose of agriculture;

(d) the regulation of the practice of *jhum* or other forms of shifting cultivation;

(e) the establishment of village or town committees or councils and their powers;

(f) any other matter relating to village or town administration, including village or town police and public health and sanitation;

(g) the appointment or succession of Chiefs or Headmen;

(h) the inheritance of property;

²[(i) marriage and divorce;]

(j) social customs.

(2) In this paragraph, a “reserved forest” means any area which is a reserved forest under the Assam Forest Regulation, 1891, or under any other law for the time being in force in the area in question.

1. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., for certain words (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

2. Subs. by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch., for cl. (i) (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).

(3) All laws made under this paragraph shall be submitted forthwith to the Governor and, until assented to by him, shall have no effect.

14. Administration of justice in autonomous districts and autonomous regions.—(1) The Regional Council for an autonomous region in respect of areas within such region and the District Council for an autonomous district in respect of areas within the district other than those which are under the authority of the Regional Councils, if any, within the district may constitute village councils or courts for the trial of suits and cases between the parties all of whom belong to Scheduled Tribes within such areas, other than suits and cases to which the provisions of sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 5 of this Schedule apply, to the exclusion of any court in the State, and may appoint suitable persons to be members of such village councils or presiding officers of such courts, and may also appoint such officers as may be necessary for the administration of the laws made under paragraph 3 of this Schedule.

(2) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, the Regional Council for an autonomous region or any court constituted in that behalf by the Regional Council or, if in respect of any area within an autonomous district there is no Regional Council, the District Council for such district, or any court constituted in that behalf by the District Council, shall exercise the powers of a court of appeal in respect of all suits and cases triable by a village council or court constituted under sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph within such region or area, as the case may be, other than those to which the provisions of sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 5 of this Schedule apply, and no other court except the High Court and the Supreme Court shall have jurisdiction over such suits or cases.

(3) The High Court ^{2***} shall have and exercise such jurisdiction over the suits and cases to which the provisions of sub-paragraph (2) of this paragraph apply as the Governor may from time to time by order specify.

1. Paragraph 4 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 2003 (44 of 2003), s. 2, (w.e.f. 7-9-2003) so as to insert the following sub-paragraph after sub-paragraph (5), namely:—

“(6) Nothing in this paragraph shall apply to the Bodoland Territorial Council constituted under the proviso to sub-paragraph (3) of paragraph 2 of this Schedule.”.

2. The words "of Assam" omitted by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch. (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

(4) A Regional Council or District Council, as the case may be, may with the previous approval of the Governor make rules regulating—

- (a) the constitution of village councils and courts and the powers to be exercised by them under this paragraph;
- (b) the procedure to be followed by village councils or courts in the trial of suits and cases under sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph;
- (c) the procedure to be followed by the Regional or District Council or any court constituted by such Council in appeals and other proceedings under sub-paragraph (2) of this paragraph;
- (d) the enforcement of decisions and orders of such councils and courts;
- (e) all other ancillary matters for the carrying out of the provisions of sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) of this paragraph.

¹[(5) On and from such date as the President may,² [after consulting the Government of the State concerned], by notification appoint in this behalf, this paragraph shall have effect in relation to such autonomous district or region as may be specified in the notification, as if—

- (i) in sub-paragraph (1), for the words “between the parties all of whom belong to Scheduled Tribes within such areas, other than suits and cases to which the provisions of sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 5 of this Schedule apply,”, the words “not being suits and cases of the nature referred to in sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph (5) of this Schedule, which the Governor may specify in this behalf,” had been substituted;
- (ii) sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) had been omitted;
- (iii) in sub-paragraph (4)—
 - (a) for the words “A Regional Council or District Council, as the case may be, may with the previous approval of the Governor make rules regulating”, the words “the Governor may make rules regulating” had been substituted; and
 - (b) for clause (a), the following clause had been substituted, namely:—

1. Ins. by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch. (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).

2. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., for certain words (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

“(a) the constitution of village councils and courts, the powers to be exercised by them under this paragraph and the courts to which appeals from the decisions of village councils and courts shall lie;”;

(c) for clause (c), the following clause had been substituted, namely:—

“(c) the transfer of appeals and other proceedings pending before the Regional or District Council or any court constituted by such Council immediately before the date appointed by the President under sub-paragraph (5);”;

(d) in clause (e), for the words, brackets and figures “sub-paragraphs (1) and (2)”, the word, brackets and figure “sub-paragraph (1)” had been substituted.]

5. Conferment of powers under the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908, and the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1898¹, on the Regional and District Councils and on certain courts and officers for the trial of certain suits, cases and offences.—(1) The Governor may, for the trial of suits or cases arising out of any law in force in any autonomous district or region being a law specified in that behalf by the Governor, or for the trial of offences punishable with death, transportation for life, or imprisonment for a term of not less than five years under the Indian Penal Code or under any other law for the time being applicable to such district or region, confer on the District Council or the Regional Council having authority over such district or region or on courts constituted by such District Council or on any officer appointed in that behalf by the Governor, such powers under the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908, or, as the case may be, the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1898¹, as he deems appropriate, and thereupon the said Council, court or officer shall try the suits, cases or offences in exercise of the powers so conferred.

(2) The Governor may withdraw or modify any of the powers conferred on a District Council, Regional Council, court or officer under sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph.

(3) Save as expressly provided in this paragraph, the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908, and the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1898¹, shall not apply to the trial of any suits, cases or offences in an autonomous district or in any autonomous region to which the provisions of this paragraph apply.

1. See the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (2 of 1974).

¹[(4) On and from the date appointed by the President under sub-paragraph (5) of paragraph 4 in relation to any autonomous district or autonomous region, nothing contained in this paragraph shall, in its application to that district or region, be deemed to authorise the Governor to confer on the District Council or Regional Council or on courts constituted by the District Council any of the powers referred to in sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph.]

²[6. **Powers of the District Council to establish primary schools, etc.**—(1) The District Council for an autonomous district may establish, construct, or manage primary schools, dispensaries, markets, ³[cattle pounds], ferries, fisheries, roads, road transport and waterways in the district and may, with the previous approval of the Governor, make regulations for the regulation and control thereof and, in particular, may prescribe the language and the manner in which primary education shall be imparted in the primary schools in the district.

(2) The Governor may, with the consent of any District Council, entrust either conditionally or unconditionally to that Council or to its officers functions in relation to agriculture, animal husbandry, community projects, co-operative societies, social welfare, village planning or any other matter to which the executive power of the State ^{4***} extends.

7. **District and Regional Funds.**—(1) There shall be constituted for each autonomous district, a District Fund and for each autonomous region, a Regional Fund to which shall be credited all moneys received respectively by the District Council for that district and the Regional Council for that region in the course of the administration of such district or region, as the case may be, in accordance with the provisions of this Constitution.

-
1. Ins. by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch. (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).
 2. Subs. by s. 74 and Fourth Sch., *ibid.* for "paragraph 6" (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).
 3. Subs. by the Repealing and Amending Act, 1974 (56 of 1974), s. 4, for "cattle ponds" (w.e.f. 20-12-1974).
 4. The words "of Assam or Meghalaya, as the case may be," omitted by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch. (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

¹[(2) The Governor may make rules for the management of the District Fund, or, as the case may be, the Regional Fund and for the procedure to be followed in respect of payment of money into the said Fund, the withdrawal of moneys therefrom, the custody of moneys therein and any other matter connected with or ancillary to the matters aforesaid.

(3) The accounts of the District Council or, as the case may be, the Regional Council shall be kept in such form as the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India may, with the approval of the President, prescribe.

(4) The Comptroller and Auditor-General shall cause the accounts of the District and Regional Councils to be audited in such manner as he may think fit, and the reports of the Comptroller and Auditor-General relating to such accounts shall be submitted to the Governor who shall cause them to be laid before the Council.]

8. Powers to assess and collect land revenue and to impose taxes.—(1) The Regional Council for an autonomous region in respect of all lands within such region and the District Council for an autonomous district in respect of all lands within the district except those which are in the areas under the authority of Regional Councils, if any, within the district, shall have the power to assess and collect revenue in respect of such lands in accordance with the principles for the time being followed ²[by the Government of the State in assessing lands for the purpose of land revenue in the State generally.]

(2) The Regional Council for an autonomous region in respect of areas within such region and the District Council for an autonomous district in respect of all areas in the district except those which are under the authority of Regional Councils, if any, within the district, shall have power to levy and collect taxes on lands and buildings, and tolls on persons resident within such areas.

(3) The District Council for an autonomous district shall have the power to levy and collect all or any of the following taxes within such district, that is to say—

- (a) taxes on professions, trades, callings and employments;
- (b) taxes on animals, vehicles and boats;

1. Subs. by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch., for sub-paragraph (2) (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).

2. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., for certain words (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

(c) taxes on the entry of goods into a market for sale therein, and tolls on passengers and goods carried in ferries;^{1***}

(d) taxes for the maintenance of schools, dispensaries or roads;
^{2[and]}

^{3[(e)]} taxes on entertainment and amusements.]

(4) A Regional Council or District Council, as the case may be, may make regulations to provide for the levy and collection of any of the taxes specified in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) of this paragraph^{4[and every such regulation shall be submitted forthwith to the Governor and, until assented to by him, shall have no effect].}

59. Licences or leases for the purpose of prospecting for, or extraction of, minerals.—(1) Such share of the royalties accruing each year from licences or leases for the purpose of prospecting for, or the extraction of, minerals granted by^{6[the Government of the State]} in respect of any area within an autonomous district as may be agreed upon between^{6[the Government of the State]} and the District Council of such district shall be made over to that District Council.

(2) If any dispute arises as to the share of such royalties to be made over to a District Council, it shall be referred to the Governor for determination and the amount determined by the Governor in his discretion shall be deemed to be the amount payable under sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph to the District Council and the decision of the Governor shall be final.

1. The word "and" omitted by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 16(i) (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

2. Ins. by s. 16(ii), *ibid.* (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

3. Ins. by s. 16(iii), *ibid.* (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

4. Ins. by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch. (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).

5. Paragraph 9 has been amended in its application to the States of Tripura and Mizoram by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1988 (67 of 1988), s. 2 (w.e.f. 16-12-1988), so as to insert the following sub-paragraph after sub-paragraph (2), namely:—

"(3) The Governor may, by order, direct that the share of royalties to be made over to a District Council under this paragraph shall be made over to that Council within a period of one year from the date of any agreement under sub-paragraph (1) or, as the case may be, of any determination under sub-paragraph (2)."

6. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., for "the Government of Assam" (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

¹10. Power of District Council to make regulations for the control of money-lending and trading by non-tribals.—(1) The District Council of an autonomous district may make regulations for the regulation and control of money-lending or trading within the district by persons other than Scheduled Tribes resident in the district.

(2) In particular and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing power, such regulations may—

(a) prescribe that no one except the holder of a licence issued in that behalf shall carry on the business of money-lending;

(b) prescribe the maximum rate of interest which may be charged or be recovered by a money-lender;

(c) provide for the maintenance of accounts by money-lenders and for the inspection of such accounts by officers appointed in that behalf by the District Council;

(d) prescribe that no person who is not a member of the Scheduled Tribes resident in the district shall carry on wholesale or retail business in any commodity except under a licence issued in that behalf by the District Council:

1. Paragraph 10 has been amended in its application to the States of Tripura and Mizoram by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1988 (67 of 1988) (w.e.f. 16-12-1988) s.2, as under—

(a) in the heading, the words “by non-tribals” shall be omitted;

(b) in sub-paragraph (1), the words “other than Scheduled Tribes” shall be omitted;

(c) in sub-paragraph (2), for clause (d), the following clause shall be substituted, namely:—

“(d) prescribe that no person resident in the district shall carry on any trade, whether wholesale or retail, except under a licence issued in that behalf by the District Council.”

Provided that no regulations may be made under this paragraph unless they are passed by a majority of not less than three-fourths of the total membership of the District Council:

Provided further that it shall not be competent under any such regulations to refuse the grant of a licence to a money-lender or a trader who has been carrying on business within the district since before the time of the making of such regulations.

(3) All regulations made under this paragraph shall be submitted forthwith to the Governor and, until assented to by him, shall have no effect.

* * * *

11. Publication of laws, rules and regulations made under the Schedule.—All laws, rules and regulations made under this Schedule by a District Council or a Regional Council shall be published forthwith in the Official Gazette of the State and shall on such publication have the force of law.

12. ¹[Application of Acts of Parliament and of the Legislature of the State of Assam to autonomous districts and autonomous regions in the State of Assam].—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

* Paragraph 10 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 2003 (44 of 2003), s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-9-2003), so as to insert the following sub-paragraph after sub-paragraph (3), namely:—

"(4) Nothing in this paragraph shall apply to the Bodoland Territorial Council constituted under the proviso to sub-paragraph (3) of paragraph 2 of this Schedule.".

** Paragraph 12 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1995 (42 of 1995), s. 2 (w.e.f. 12-9-1995) as under,—

'in paragraph 12, in sub-paragraph (1), for the words and figure "matters specified in paragraph 3 of this Schedule", the words, figures and letter "matters specified in paragraph 3 or paragraph 3A of this Schedule" shall be substituted.'

*** Paragraph 12 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 2003 (44 of 2003), s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-9-2003), as under,—

'in paragraph 12, in sub-paragraph (1), in clause (a), for the words, figures and letter "matters specified in paragraph 3 or paragraph 3A of this Schedule", the words, figures and letters "matters specified in paragraph 3 or paragraph 3A or paragraph 3B of this Schedule" shall be substituted.'

1. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., for the heading (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

(a) no Act of the ¹[Legislature of the State of Assam] in respect of any of the matters specified in paragraph 3 of this Schedule as matters with respect to which a District Council or a Regional Council may make laws, and no Act of the Legislature of the State of Assam prohibiting or restricting the consumption of any non-distilled alcoholic liquor shall apply to any autonomous district or autonomous region ²[in that State] unless in either case the District Council for such district or having jurisdiction over such region by public notification so directs, and the District Council in giving such direction with respect to any Act may direct that the Act shall in its application to such district or region or any part thereof have effect subject to such exceptions or modifications as it thinks fit;

(b) the Governor may, by public notification, direct that any Act of Parliament or of the ¹[Legislature of the State of Assam] to which the provisions of clause (a) of this sub-paragraph do not apply shall not apply to an autonomous district or an autonomous region ²[in that State], or shall apply to such district or region or any part thereof subject to such exceptions or modifications as he may specify in the notification.

(2) Any direction given under sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph may be given so as to have retrospective effect.

³[12A. Application of Acts of Parliament and of the Legislature of the State of Meghalaya to autonomous districts and autonomous regions in the State of Meghalaya.]—Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

1. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., for "Legislature of the State" (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

2. Ins. by s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

3. Subs. by s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., *ibid.*, for paragraph 12A (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

(a) if any provision of a law made by a District or Regional Council in the State of Meghalaya with respect to any matter specified in sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 3 of this Schedule or if any provision of any regulation made by a District Council or a Regional Council in that State under paragraph 8 or paragraph 10 of this Schedule, is repugnant to any provision of a law made by the Legislature of the State of Meghalaya with respect to that matter, then, the law or regulation made by the District Council or, as the case may be, the Regional Council whether made before or after the law made by the Legislature of the State of Meghalaya, shall, to the extent of repugnancy, be void and the law made by the Legislature of the State of Meghalaya shall prevail;

(b) the President may, with respect to any Act of Parliament, by notification, direct that it shall not apply to an autonomous district or an autonomous region in the State of Meghalaya, or shall apply to such district or region or any part thereof subject to such exceptions or modifications as he may specify in the notification and any such direction may be given so as to have retrospective effect.]

¹[12AA. Application of Acts of Parliament and of the Legislature of the State of Tripura to the autonomous districts and autonomous regions in the State of Tripura.—Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

(a) no Act of the Legislature of the State of Tripura in respect of any of the matters specified in paragraph 3 of this Schedule as matters with respect to which a District Council or a Regional Council may make laws, and no Act of the Legislature of the State of Tripura prohibiting or restricting the consumption of any non-distilled alcoholic liquor shall apply to the autonomous district or an autonomous region in that State unless, in either case, the District Council for that district or having jurisdiction over such region by public notification so directs, and the District Council in giving such direction with respect to any Act may direct that the Act shall, in its application to that district or such region or any part thereof have effect subject to such exceptions or modifications as it thinks fit;

1. Paragraph 12AA ins. by the Constitution (Forty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-4-1985) and subsequently subs. by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1988 (67 of 1988), s. 2 (w.e.f. 16-12-1988).

(b) the Governor may, by public notification, direct that any Act of the Legislature of the State of Tripura to which the provisions of clause (a) of this sub-paragraph do not apply, shall not apply to the autonomous district or an autonomous region in that State, or shall apply to that district or such region, or any part thereof, subject to such exceptions or modifications, as he may specify in the notification;

(c) the President may, with respect to any Act of Parliament, by notification, direct that it shall not apply to the autonomous district or an autonomous region in the State of Tripura, or shall apply to such district or region or any part thereof, subject to such exceptions or modifications as he may specify in the notification and any such direction may be given so as to have retrospective effect.

12B. Application of Acts of Parliament and of the Legislature of the State of Mizoram to autonomous districts and autonomous regions in the State of Mizoram.—Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution,—

(a) no Act of the Legislature of the State of Mizoram in respect of any of the matters specified in paragraph 3 of this Schedule as matters with respect to which a District Council or a Regional Council may make laws, and no Act of the Legislature of the State of Mizoram prohibiting or restricting the consumption of any non-distilled alcoholic liquor shall apply to any autonomous district or autonomous region in that State unless, in either case, the District Council for such district or having jurisdiction over such region, by public notification, so directs, and the District Council, in giving such direction with respect to any Act, may direct that the Act shall, in its application to such district or region or any part thereof, have effect subject to such exceptions or modifications as it thinks fit;

(b) the Governor may, by public notification, direct that any Act of the Legislature of the State of Mizoram to which the provisions of clause (a) of this sub-paragraph do not apply, shall not apply to an autonomous district or an autonomous region in that State, or shall apply to such district or region, or any part thereof, subject to such exceptions or modifications, as he may specify in the notification;

(c) the President may, with respect to any Act of Parliament, by notification, direct that it shall not apply to an autonomous district or an autonomous region in the State of Mizoram, or shall apply to such district or region or any part thereof, subject to such exceptions or modifications as he may specify in the notification and any such direction may be given so as to have retrospective effect.]]

13. Estimated receipts and expenditure pertaining to autonomous districts to be shown separately in the annual financial statement.—The estimated receipts and expenditure pertaining to an autonomous district which are to be credited to, or is to be made from, the Consolidated Fund of the State^{1***} shall be first placed before the District Council for discussion and then after such discussion be shown separately in the annual financial statement of the State to be laid before the Legislature of the State under article 202.

²14. Appointment of Commission to inquire into and report on the administration of autonomous districts and autonomous regions.—(1) The Governor may at any time appoint a Commission to examine and report on any matter specified by him relating to the administration of the autonomous districts and autonomous regions in the State, including matters specified in clauses (c), (d), (e) and (f) of sub-paragraph (3) of paragraph 1 of this Schedule, or may appoint a Commission to inquire into and report from time to time on the administration of autonomous districts and autonomous regions in the State generally and in particular on—

- (a) the provision of educational and medical facilities and communications in such districts and regions;
 - (b) the need for any new or special legislation in respect of such districts and regions; and
 - (c) the administration of the laws, rules and regulations made by the District and Regional Councils;
- and define the procedure to be followed by such Commission.

-
1. The words "of Assam" omitted by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch. (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
 2. Paragraph 14 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1995 (42 of 1995), s. 2 (w.e.f. 12-9-1995) as under:—

‘in paragraph 14, in sub-paragraph (2), the words “with the recommendations of the Governor with respect thereto” shall be omitted.’

(2) The report of every such Commission with the recommendations of the Governor with respect thereto shall be laid before the Legislature of the State by the Minister concerned together with an explanatory memorandum regarding the action proposed to be taken thereon by ¹[the Government of the State.]

(3) In allocating the business of the Government of the State among his Ministers the Governor may place one of his Ministers specially in charge of the welfare of the autonomous districts and autonomous regions in the State.

²15. Annulment or suspension of acts and resolutions of District and Regional Councils.—(1) If at any time the Governor is satisfied that an act or resolution of a District or a Regional Council is likely to endanger the safety of India ³[or is likely to be prejudicial to public order], he may annul or suspend such act or resolution and take such steps as he may consider necessary (including the suspension of the Council and the assumption to himself of all or any of the powers vested in or exercisable by the Council) to prevent the commission or continuance of such act, or the giving of effect to such resolution.

(2) Any order made by the Governor under sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph together with the reasons therefor shall be laid before the Legislature of the State as soon as possible and the order shall, unless revoked by the Legislature of the State, continue in force for a period of twelve months from the date on which it was so made:

Provided that if and so often as a resolution approving the continuance in force of such order is passed by the Legislature of the State, the order shall unless cancelled by the Governor continue in force for a further period of twelve months from the date on which under this paragraph it would otherwise have ceased to operate.

1. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., for "the Government of Assam" (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

2. Paragraph 15 has been amended in its application to the States of Tripura and Mizoram by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1988 (67 of 1988), s. 2 (w.e.f. 16-12-1988), as under,—

In Paragraph 15, in sub-paragraph (2), —

(a) in the opening paragraph, for the words "by the Legislature of the State", the words "by him" shall be substituted;

(b) the proviso shall be omitted.'

3. Ins. by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch. (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).

¹16. **Dissolution of a District or a Regional Council.**—²[(1)] The Governor may on the recommendation of a Commission appointed under paragraph 14 of this Schedule by public notification order the dissolution of a District or a Regional Council, and—

(a) direct that a fresh general election shall be held immediately for the reconstitution of the Council; or

(b) subject to the previous approval of the Legislature of the State assume the administration of the area under the authority of such Council himself or place the administration of such area under the Commission appointed under the said paragraph or any other body considered suitable by him for a period not exceeding twelve months:

Provided that when an order under clause (a) of this paragraph has been made, the Governor may take the action referred to in clause (b) of this paragraph with regard to the administration of the area in question pending the reconstitution of the Council on fresh general election:

Provided further that no action shall be taken under clause (b) of this paragraph without giving the District or the Regional Council, as the case may be, an opportunity of placing its views before the Legislature of the State.

1. Paragraph 16 has been amended in its application to the States of Tripura and Mizoram by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1988 (67 of 1988) s. 2 (w.e.f. 16-12-1988), as under,—

‘(a) in sub-paragraph (1), the words “subject to the previous approval of the Legislature of the State” occurring in clause (b), and the second proviso shall be omitted;

(b) for sub-paragraph (3), the following sub-paragraph shall be substituted, namely:—

“(3) Every order made under sub-paragraph (1) or sub-paragraph (2) of this paragraph, along with the reasons therefor shall be laid before the Legislature of the State.”.’

2. Paragraph 16 renumbered as sub-paragraph (1) thereof by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch. (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).

¹[(2) If at any time the Governor is satisfied that a situation has arisen in which the administration of an autonomous district or region cannot be carried on in accordance with the provisions of this Schedule, he may, by public notification, assume to himself all or any of the functions or powers vested in or exercisable by the District Council or, as the case may be, the Regional Council and declare that such functions or powers shall be exercisable by such person or authority as he may specify in this behalf, for a period not exceeding six months:

Provided that the Governor may by a further order or orders extend the operation of the initial order by a period not exceeding six months on each occasion.

(3) Every order made under sub-paragraph (2) of this paragraph with the reasons therefor shall be laid before the Legislature of the State and shall cease to operate at the expiration of thirty days from the date on which the State Legislature first sits after the issue of the order, unless, before the expiry of that period it has been approved by that State Legislature.]

217. Exclusion of areas from autonomous districts in forming constituencies in such districts.—For the purposes of elections to ³[the Legislative Assembly of Assam or Meghalaya] ⁴[or Tripura] ⁵[or Mizoram], the Governor may by order declare that any area within an autonomous district ⁶[in the State of Assam or Meghalaya ⁴[or Tripura] ⁵[or Mizoram], as the case may be,] shall not form part of any constituency to fill a seat or seats in the Assembly reserved for any such district but shall form part of a constituency to fill a seat or seats in the Assembly not so reserved to be specified in the order.

⁷[18.* * * * *]

1. Added by the Assam Reorganisation (Meghalaya) Act, 1969 (55 of 1969), s. 74 and Fourth Sch. (w.e.f. 2-4-1970).
2. Paragraph 17 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 2003 (44 of 2003), s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-9-2003) so as to insert the following proviso, namely:—
“Provided that nothing in this paragraph shall apply to the Bodoland Territorial Areas District.”.
3. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., for “the Legislative Assembly of Assam” (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
4. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-4-1985).
5. Ins. by the State of Mizoram Act, 1986 (34 of 1986), s. 39 (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
6. Ins. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., for “the Legislative Assembly of Assam” (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).
7. Paragraph 18 omitted by s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 21-1-1972).

¹19. **Transitional provisions.**—(1) As soon as possible after the commencement of this Constitution the Governor shall take steps for the constitution of a District Council for each autonomous district in the State under this Schedule and, until a District Council is so constituted for an autonomous district, the administration of such district shall be vested in the Governor and the following provisions shall apply to the administration of the areas within such district instead of the foregoing provisions of this Schedule, namely:—

(a) no Act of Parliament or of the Legislature of the State shall apply to any such area unless the Governor by public notification so directs; and the Governor in giving such a direction with respect to any Act may direct that the Act shall, in its application to the area or to any specified part thereof, have effect subject to such exceptions or modifications as he thinks fit;

(b) the Governor may make regulations for the peace and good government of any such area and any regulations so made may repeal or amend any Act of Parliament or of the Legislature of the State or any existing law which is for the time being applicable to such area.

(2) Any direction given by the Governor under clause (a) of sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph may be given so as to have retrospective effect.

1. Paragraph 19 has been amended in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Sch. to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 2003 (44 of 2003), s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-9-2003), so as to insert the following sub-paragraph after sub-paragraph (3), namely :—

‘(4) As soon as possible after the commencement of this Act and Interim Executive Council for Bodoland Territorial Areas District in Assam shall be formed by the Governor from amongst leaders of the Bodo movement, including the signatories to the Memorandum of Settlement, and shall provide adequate representation to the non-tribal communities in that area:

Provided that Interim Council shall be for a period of six months during which endeavour to hold the election to the Council shall be made.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this sub-paragraph, the expression “Memorandum of Settlement” means the Memorandum signed on the 10th day of February, 2003 between Government of India, Government of Assam and Bodo Liberation Tigers.’.

(3) All regulations made under clause (b) of sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph shall be submitted forthwith to the President and, until assented to by him, shall have no effect.

¹[20. **Tribal areas.**—(1) The areas specified in Parts I, II ²[, IIA] and III of the table below shall respectively be the tribal areas within the State of Assam, the State of Meghalaya ²[, the State of Tripura] and the ³[State] of Mizoram.

(2) ⁴[Any reference in Part I, Part II or Part III of the table below] to any district shall be construed as a reference to the territories comprised within the autonomous district of that name existing immediately before the day appointed under clause (b) of section 2 of the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971:

Provided that for the purposes of clauses (e) and (f) of sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 3, paragraph 4, paragraph 5, paragraph 6, sub-paragraph (2), clauses (a), (b) and (d) of sub-paragraph (3) and sub-paragraph (4) of paragraph 8 and clause (d) of sub-paragraph (2) of paragraph 10 of this Schedule, no part of the area comprised within the municipality of Shillong shall be deemed to be within the ⁵[Khasi Hills District].

²[(3) The reference in Part IIA in the table below to the "Tripura Tribal Areas District" shall be construed as a reference to the territory comprising the tribal areas specified in the First Schedule to the Tripura Tribal Areas Autonomous District Council Act, 1979.]

1. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eighth Sch., for paragraphs 20 and 20A (w.e.f. 21-1-1972) and paragraph 20A further substituted by the Government of Union Territory (Amendment) Act, 1971 (83 of 1971) s. 13 (w.e.f. 29-4-1972).
2. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-4-1985).
3. Subs. by the State of Mizoram Act, 1986 (34 of 1986), s. 39, for "Union territory" (w.e.f. 20-2-1987).
4. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 4, for "any reference in the table below" (w.e.f. 1-4-1985).
5. Subs. by the Government of Meghalaya Notification No. DCA 31/72/11, dated the 14th June, 1973, Gazette of Meghalaya, Pt. VA, dated 23-6-1973, p. 200.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Sixth Schedule)

**TABLE
PART I**

1. The North Cachar Hills District.
2. ¹[The Karbi Anglong District.]
- ²[3. The Bodoland Territorial Areas District.]

PART II

- ³[1. Khasi Hills District.]
2. Jaintia Hills District.]
3. The Garo Hills District.

**⁴[PART II A]
Tripura Tribal Areas District]****Part III**

- ^{5*} * *
- ⁶[1. The Chakma District.]
 - ⁷[2. The Mara District.]
 3. The Lai District.]

⁸[20A. **Dissolution of the Mizo District Council.**—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Schedule, the District Council of the Mizo District existing immediately before the prescribed date (hereinafter referred to as the Mizo District Council) shall stand dissolved and cease to exist.

-
1. Subs. by the Government of Assam Notification No. TAD/R/115/74/47, dated 14-10-1976 for "The Mikir Hills District".
 2. Ins. by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 2003 (44 of 2003), s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-9-2003).
 3. Subs. by the Government of Meghalaya Notification No. DCA 31/72/11, dated the 14th June, 1973, Gazette of Meghalaya, Pt. VA, dated 23-6-1973, p. 200.
 4. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-4-1985).
 5. The words "The Mizo District." omitted by the Government of Union Territories (Amendment) Act, 1971 (83 of 1971), s. 13 (w.e.f. 16-2-1972).
 6. Ins. by the Mizoram District Councils (Miscellaneous Provisions) Order, 1972, published in the Mizoram Gazette, 1972, dated the 5th May, 1972, Vol. I, Pt. II, p.17 (w.e.f. 29-4-1972).
 7. Subs. by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1988 (67 of 1988), s. 2, for serial numbers 2 and 3 and the entries relating thereto (w.e.f. 16-12-1988).
 8. Subs. by the North-Eastern Areas (Recognition) Act, 1971 (81 of 1971), s. 71(i) and Eight Sch. for paragraph 20 (w.e.f. 21-1-1972) and further subs. by the Government of Union Territory (Amendment) Act, 1971 (83 of 1971), s. 13 for paragraph 20A (w.e.f. 16-2-1972).

- (2) The Administrator of the Union territory of Mizoram may, by one or more orders, provide for all or any of the following matters, namely:—
- (a) the transfer, in whole or in part, of the assets, rights and liabilities of the Mizo District Council (including the rights and liabilities under any contract made by it) to the Union or to any other authority;
 - (b) the substitution of the Union or any other authority for the Mizo District Council, or the addition of the Union or any other authority, as a party to any legal proceedings to which the Mizo District Council is a party;
 - (c) the transfer or re-employment of any employees of the Mizo District Council to or by the Union or any other authority, the terms and conditions of service applicable to such employees after such transfer or re-employment;
 - (d) the continuance of any laws, made by the Mizo District Council and in force immediately before its dissolution, subject to such adaptations and modifications, whether by way of repeal or amendment, as the Administrator may make in this behalf, until such laws are altered, repealed or amended by a competent Legislature or other competent authority;
 - (e) such incidental, consequential and supplementary matters as the Administrator considers necessary.

Explanation.—In this paragraph and in paragraph 20B of this Schedule, the expression "prescribed date" means the date on which the Legislative Assembly of the Union territory of Mizoram is duly constituted under and in accordance with the provisions of the Government of Union Territories Act, 1963. (20 of 1963)]

¹[20B. **Autonomous regions in the Union territory of Mizoram to be autonomous districts and transitory provisions consequent thereto.**—(1) Notwithstanding anything in this Schedule,—

- (a) every autonomous region existing immediately before the prescribed date in the Union territory of Mizoram shall, on and from that date, be an autonomous district in that Union territory (hereafter referred to as the corresponding new district) and the Administrator thereof may, by one or more orders, direct that such consequential amendments as are necessary to give effect to the provisions of this clause shall be made in paragraph 20 of this Schedule (including Part III of the table appended to that paragraph) and thereupon the said paragraph and the said Part III shall be deemed to have been amended accordingly;

1. Sub. by the Government of Union Territory (Amendment) Act, 1971 (83 of 1971), s. 13 for paragraph 20A (w.e.f. 16-2-1972).

(b) every Regional Council of an autonomous region in the Union territory of Mizoram existing immediately before the prescribed date (hereafter referred to as the existing Regional Council) shall, on and from that date and until a District Council is duly constituted for the corresponding new district, be deemed to be the District Council of that district (hereafter referred to as the corresponding new District Council).

(2) Every member whether elected or nominated of an existing Regional Council shall be deemed to have been elected or, as the case may be, nominated to the corresponding new District Council and shall hold office until a District Council is duly constituted for the corresponding new district under this Schedule.

(3) Until rules are made under sub-paragraph (7) of paragraph 2 and sub-paragraph (4) of paragraph 4 of this Schedule by the corresponding new District Council, the rules made under the said provisions by the existing Regional Council and in force immediately before the prescribed date shall have effect in relation to the corresponding new District Council subject to such adaptations and modifications as may be made therein by the Administrator of the Union territory of Mizoram.

(4) The Administrator of the Union territory of Mizoram may, by one or more orders, provide for all or any of the following matters, namely:—

(a) the transfer in whole or in part of the assets, rights and liabilities of the existing Regional Council (including the rights and liabilities under any contract made by it) to the corresponding new District Council;

(b) the substitution of the corresponding new District Council for the existing Regional Council as a party to the legal proceedings to which the existing Regional Council is a party;

(c) the transfer or re-employment of any employees of the existing Regional Council to or by the corresponding new District Council, the terms and conditions of service applicable to such employees after such transfer or re-employment;

(d) the continuance of any laws made by the existing Regional Council and in force immediately before the prescribed date, subject to such adaptations and modifications, whether by way of repeal or amendment, as the Administrator may make in this behalf until such laws are altered, repealed or amended by a competent Legislature or other competent authority;

(e) such incidental, consequential and supplementary matters as the Administrator considers necessary.]

¹[20BA. **Exercise of discretionary powers by the Governor in the discharge of his functions.**—The Governor in the discharge of his functions under sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) of paragraph 1, sub-paragraphs (1), (6), sub-paragraph (6A) excluding the first proviso and sub-paragraph (7) of paragraph 2, sub-paragraph (3) of paragraph 3, sub-paragraph (4) of paragraph 4, paragraph 5, sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 6, sub-paragraph (2) of paragraph 7, sub-paragraph (4) of paragraph 8, sub-paragraph (3) of paragraph 9, sub-paragraph (3) of paragraph 10, sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 14, sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 15 and sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) of paragraph 16 of this Schedule, shall, after consulting the Council of Ministers and the North Cachar Hills Autonomous Council or the Karbi Anglong Autonomous Council, as the case may be, take such action as he considers necessary in his discretion.]

²[20BB. **Exercise of discretionary powers by the Governor in the discharge of his functions.**—The Governor, in the discharge of his functions under sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) of paragraph 1, sub-paragraphs (1) and (7) of paragraph 2, sub-paragraph (3) of paragraph 3, sub-paragraph (4) of paragraph 4, paragraph 5, sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 6, sub-paragraph (2) of paragraph 7, sub-paragraph (3) of paragraph 9, sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 14, sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 15 and sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) of paragraph 16 of this Schedule, shall, after consulting the Council of Ministers, and if he thinks it necessary, the District Council or the Regional Council concerned, take such action as he considers necessary in his discretion.]

-
1. Paragraph 20BA has been inserted in its application to the State of Assam by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1995 (42 of 1995), s. 2 (w.e.f. 12-9-1995).
 2. Paragraph 20BB has been inserted in its application to the States of Tripura and Mizoram, by the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution (Amendment) Act, 1988 (67 of 1988), s. 2 (w.e.f. 16-12-1988).

¹[20C. **Interpretation.**—Subject to any provision made in this behalf, the provisions of this Schedule shall, in their application to the Union territory of Mizoram, have effect—

(1) as if references to the Governor and Government of the State were references to the Administrator of the Union territory appointed under article 239, references to State (except in the expression "Government of the State") were references to the Union territory of Mizoram and references to the State Legislature were references to the Legislative Assembly of the Union territory of Mizoram;

(2) as if—

(a) in sub-paragraph (5) of paragraph 4, the provision for consultation with the Government of the State concerned had been omitted;

(b) in sub-paragraph (2) of paragraph 6, for the words "to which the executive power of the State extends", the words "with respect to which the Legislative Assembly of the Union territory of Mizoram has power to make laws" had been substituted;

(c) in paragraph 13, the words and figures "under article 202" had been omitted.]

21. **Amendment of the Schedule.**—(1) Parliament may from time to time by law amend by way of addition, variation or repeal any of the provisions of this Schedule and, when the Schedule is so amended, any reference to this Schedule in this Constitution shall be construed as a reference to such Schedule as so amended.

(2) No such law as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph shall be deemed to be an amendment of this Constitution for the purposes of article 368.

1. Sub. by the Government of Union Territories (Amendment) Act, 1971 (83 of 1971), s. 13 for paragraph 20A (w.e.f. 16-2-1972).

SEVENTH SCHEDULE

(Article 246)

List I—Union List

1. Defence of India and every part thereof including preparation for defence and all such acts as may be conducive in times of war to its prosecution and after its termination to effective demobilisation.
2. Naval, military and air forces; any other armed forces of the Union.
- ¹[2A. Deployment of any armed force of the Union or any other force subject to the control of the Union or any contingent or unit thereof in any State in aid of the civil power; powers, jurisdiction, privileges and liabilities of the members of such forces while on such deployment.]
3. Delimitation of cantonment areas, local self-government in such areas, the constitution and powers within such areas of cantonment authorities and the regulation of house accommodation (including the control of rents) in such areas.
4. Naval, military and air force works.
5. Arms, firearms, ammunition and explosives.
6. Atomic energy and mineral resources necessary for its production.
7. Industries declared by Parliament by law to be necessary for the purpose of defence or for the prosecution of war.
8. Central Bureau of Intelligence and Investigation.
9. Preventive detention for reasons connected with Defence, Foreign Affairs, or the security of India; persons subjected to such detention.
10. Foreign affairs; all matters which bring the Union into relation with any foreign country.
11. Diplomatic, consular and trade representation.
12. United Nations Organisation.
13. Participation in international conferences, associations and other bodies and implementing of decisions made thereat.
14. Entering into treaties and agreements with foreign countries and implementing of treaties, agreements and conventions with foreign countries.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 57 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

15. War and peace.
16. Foreign jurisdiction.
17. Citizenship, naturalisation and aliens.
18. Extradition.
19. Admission into, and emigration and expulsion from, India; passports and visas.
20. Pilgrimages to places outside India.
21. Piracies and crimes committed on the high seas or in the air; offences against the law of nations committed on land or the high seas or in the air.
22. Railways.
23. Highways declared by or under law made by Parliament to be national highways.
24. Shipping and navigation on inland waterways, declared by Parliament by law to be national waterways, as regards mechanically propelled vessels; the rule of the road on such waterways.
25. Maritime shipping and navigation, including shipping and navigation on tidal waters; provision of education and training for the mercantile marine and regulation of such education and training provided by States and other agencies.
26. Lighthouses, including lightships, beacons and other provision for the safety of shipping and aircraft.
27. Ports declared by or under law made by Parliament or existing law to be major ports, including their delimitation, and the constitution and powers of port authorities therein.
28. Port quarantine, including hospitals connected therewith; seamen's and marine hospitals.
29. Airways; aircraft and air navigation; provision of aerodromes; regulation and organisation of air traffic and of aerodromes; provision for aeronautical education and training and regulation of such education and training provided by States and other agencies.
30. Carriage of passengers and goods by railway, sea or air, or by national waterways in mechanically propelled vessels.

31. Posts and telegraphs; telephones, wireless, broadcasting and other like forms of communication.

32. Property of the Union and the revenue therefrom, but as regards property situated in a State^{1***} subject to legislation by the State, save in so far as Parliament by law otherwise provides.

²[33* * * * *]

34. Courts of wards for the estates of Rulers of Indian States.

35. Public debt of the Union.

36. Currency, coinage and legal tender; foreign exchange.

37. Foreign loans.

38. Reserve Bank of India.

39. Post Office Savings Bank.

40. Lotteries organised by the Government of India or the Government of a State.

41. Trade and commerce with foreign countries; import and export across customs frontiers; definition of customs frontiers.

42. Inter-State trade and commerce.

43. Incorporation, regulation and winding up of trading corporations, including banking, insurance and financial corporations, but not including co-operative societies.

44. Incorporation, regulation and winding up of corporations, whether trading or not, with objects not confined to one State, but not including universities.

45. Banking.

46. Bills of exchange, cheques, promissory notes and other like instruments.

47. Insurance.

48. Stock exchanges and futures markets.

49. Patents, inventions and designs; copyright; trade-marks and merchandise marks.

1. The words and letters "specified in Part A or Part B of the First Schedule" omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

2. Entry 33 omitted by s. 26, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

50. Establishment of standards of weight and measure.
51. Establishment of standards of quality for goods to be exported out of India or transported from one State to another.
52. Industries, the control of which by the Union is declared by Parliament by law to be expedient in the public interest.
53. Regulation and development of oilfields and mineral oil resources; petroleum and petroleum products; other liquids and substances declared by Parliament by law to be dangerously inflammable.
54. Regulation of mines and mineral development to the extent to which such regulation and development under the control of the Union is declared by Parliament by law to be expedient in the public interest.
55. Regulation of labour and safety in mines and oilfields.
56. Regulation and development of inter-State rivers and river valleys to the extent to which such regulation and development under the control of the Union is declared by Parliament by law to be expedient in the public interest.
57. Fishing and fisheries beyond territorial waters.
58. Manufacture, supply and distribution of salt by Union agencies; regulation and control of manufacture, supply and distribution of salt by other agencies.
59. Cultivation, manufacture, and sale for export, of opium.
60. Sanctioning of cinematograph films for exhibition.
61. Industrial disputes concerning Union employees.
62. The institutions known at the commencement of this Constitution as the National Library, the Indian Museum, the Imperial War Museum, the Victoria Memorial and the Indian War Memorial, and any other like institution financed by the Government of India wholly or in part and declared by Parliament by law to be an institution of national importance.
63. The institutions known at the commencement of this Constitution as the Benares Hindu University, the Aligarh Muslim University and the ¹[Delhi University; the University established in pursuance of article 371E;] any other institution declared by Parliament by law to be an institution of national importance.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Thirty-second Amendment) Act, 1973, s. 4, for "Delhi University and" (w.e.f. 1-7-1974).

64. Institutions for scientific or technical education financed by the Government of India wholly or in part and declared by Parliament by law to be institutions of national importance.
65. Union agencies and institutions for—
 - (a) professional, vocational or technical training, including the training of police officers; or
 - (b) the promotion of special studies or research; or
 - (c) scientific or technical assistance in the investigation or detection of crime.
66. Co-ordination and determination of standards in institutions for higher education or research and scientific and technical institutions.
67. Ancient and historical monuments and records, and archaeological sites and remains, ¹[declared by or under law made by Parliament] to be of national importance.
68. The Survey of India, the Geological, Botanical, Zoological and Anthropological Surveys of India; Meteorological organisations.
69. Census.
70. Union Public Service; All-India Services; Union Public Service Commission.
71. Union pensions, that is to say, pensions payable by the Government of India or out of the Consolidated Fund of India.
72. Elections to Parliament, to the Legislatures of States and to the offices of President and Vice-President; the Election Commission.
73. Salaries and allowances of members of Parliament, the Chairman and Deputy Chairman of the Council of States and the Speaker and Deputy Speaker of the House of the People.
74. Powers, privileges and immunities of each House of Parliament and of the members and the Committees of each House; enforcement of attendance of persons for giving evidence or producing documents before committees of Parliament or commissions appointed by Parliament.
75. Emoluments, allowances, privileges, and rights in respect of leave of absence, of the President and Governors; salaries and allowances of the Ministers for the Union; the salaries, allowances, and rights in respect of leave of absence and other conditions of service of the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 27, for "declared by Parliament by law" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

76. Audit of the accounts of the Union and of the States.

77. Constitution, organisation, jurisdiction and powers of the Supreme Court (including contempt of such Court), and the fees taken therein; persons entitled to practise before the Supreme Court.

78. Constitution and organisation ¹[(including vacations)] of the High Courts except provisions as to officers and servants of High Courts; persons entitled to practise before the High Courts.

²[79. Extension of the jurisdiction of a High Court to, and exclusion of the jurisdiction of a High Court from, any Union territory.]

80. Extension of the powers and jurisdiction of members of a police force belonging to any State to any area outside that State, but not so as to enable the police of one State to exercise powers and jurisdiction in any area outside that State without the consent of the Government of the State in which such area is situated; extension of the powers and jurisdiction of members of a police force belonging to any State to railway areas outside that State.

81. Inter-State migration; inter-State quarantine.

82. Taxes on income other than agricultural income.

83. Duties of customs including export duties.

³[84. Duties of excise on the following goods manufactured or produced in India, namely:—

(a) petroleum crude;

(b) high speed diesel;

(c) motor spirit (commonly known as petrol);

(d) natural gas;

(e) aviation turbine fuel; and

(f) tobacco and tobacco products.]

85. Corporation tax.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Fifteenth Amendment) Act, 1963, s. 12 (with retrospective effect).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 29 and Sch. for entry 79 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. Subs. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 17(a)(i) for entry 84 (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

86. Taxes on the capital value of the assets, exclusive of agricultural land, of individuals and companies; taxes on the capital of companies.

87. Estate duty in respect of property other than agricultural land.

88. Duties in respect of succession to property other than agricultural land.

89. Terminal taxes on goods or passengers, carried by railway, sea or air; taxes on railway fares and freights.

90. Taxes other than stamp duties on transactions in stock exchanges and futures markets.

91. Rates of stamp duty in respect of bills of exchange, cheques, promissory notes, bills of lading, letters of credit, policies of insurance, transfer of shares, debentures, proxies and receipts.

¹[92. * * * * *]

²[92A. Taxes on the sale or purchase of goods other than newspapers, where such sale or purchase takes place in the course of inter-State trade or commerce.]

³[92B. Taxes on the consignments of goods (whether the consignment is to the person making it or to any other person), where such consignment takes place in the course of inter-State trade or commerce.]

⁴[92C. * * * * *]

93. Offences against laws with respect to any of the matters in this List.

94. Inquires, surveys and statistics for the purpose of any of the matters in this List.

95. Jurisdiction and powers of all courts, except the Supreme Court, with respect to any of the matters in this List; admiralty jurisdiction.

96. Fees in respect of any of the matters in this List, but not including fees taken in any court.

97. Any other matter not enumerated in List II or List III including any tax not mentioned in either of those Lists.

1. Entry 92 omitted by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 17(a)(ii) (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

2. Ins. by the Constitution (Sixth Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 2 (w.e.f. 11-9-1956).

3. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1982, s. 5 (w.e.f. 2-2-1983).

4. Entry 92C was ins. by the Constitution (Eighty-eighth Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 4 (which was not enforced) and omitted by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 17(a)(ii) (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

List II—State List

1. Public order (but not including ¹[the use of any naval, military or air force or any other armed force of the Union or of any other force subject to the control of the Union or of any contingent or unit thereof] in aid of the civil power).
 - ²[2. Police (including railway and village police) subject to the provisions of entry 2A of List I.]
 3. ^{3***} Officers and servants of the High Court; procedure in rent and revenue courts; fees taken in all courts except the Supreme Court.
 4. Prisons, reformatories, Borstal institutions and other institutions of a like nature, and persons detained therein; arrangements with other States for the use of prisons and other institutions.
 5. Local government, that is to say, the constitution and powers of municipal corporations, improvement trusts, districts boards, mining settlement authorities and other local authorities for the purpose of local self-government or village administration.
 6. Public health and sanitation; hospitals and dispensaries.
 7. Pilgrimages, other than pilgrimages to places outside India.
 8. Intoxicating liquors, that is to say, the production, manufacture, possession, transport, purchase and sale of intoxicating liquors.
 9. Relief of the disabled and unemployable.
 10. Burials and burial grounds; cremations and cremation grounds.
- ⁴[11* * * * *]
12. Libraries, museums and other similar institutions controlled or financed by the State; ancient and historical monuments and records other than those ⁵[declared by or under law made by Parliament] to be of national importance.

-
1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 57, for certain words (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 2. Subs. by s. 57, for entry 2, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 3. Certain words omitted by s. 57, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 4. Entry 11 omitted by s. 57, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 5. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 27, for "declared by Parliament by law" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

13. Communications, that is to say, roads, bridges, ferries, and other means of communication not specified in List I; municipal tramways; ropeways; inland waterways and traffic thereon subject to the provisions of List I and List III with regard to such waterways; vehicles other than mechanically propelled vehicles.

14. Agriculture, including agricultural education and research, protection against pests and prevention of plant diseases.

15. Preservation, protection and improvement of stock and prevention of animal diseases; veterinary training and practice.

16. Pounds and the prevention of cattle trespass.

17. Water, that is to say, water supplies, irrigation and canals, drainage and embankments, water storage and water power subject to the provisions of entry 56 of List I.

18. Land, that is to say, rights in or over land, land tenures including the relation of landlord and tenant, and the collection of rents; transfer and alienation of agricultural land; land improvement and agricultural loans; colonization.

¹[19* * * *]

20* * * * *

21. Fisheries.

22. Courts of wards subject to the provisions of entry 34 of List I; encumbered and attached estates.

23. Regulation of mines and mineral development subject to the provisions of List I with respect to regulation and development under the control of the Union.

24. Industries subject to the provisions of²[entries 7 and 52] of List I.

25. Gas and gas-works.

26. Trade and commerce within the State subject to the provisions of entry 33 of List III.

1. Entries 19 and 20 omitted by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 57 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 28 for entry 52 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

27. Production, supply and distribution of goods subject to the provisions of entry 33 of List III.

28. Markets and fairs.

¹[29* * * * *]

30. Money-lending and money-lenders; relief of agricultural indebtedness.

31. Inns and inn-keepers.

32. Incorporation, regulation and winding up of corporations, other than those specified in List I, and universities; unincorporated trading, literary, scientific, religious and other societies and associations; co-operative societies.

33. Theatres and dramatic performances; cinemas subject to the provisions of entry 60 of List I; sports, entertainments and amusements.

34. Betting and gambling.

35. Works, lands and buildings vested in or in the possession of the State.

²[36* * * * *]

37. Elections to the Legislature of the State subject to the provisions of any law made by Parliament.

38. Salaries and allowances of members of the Legislature of the State, of the Speaker and Deputy Speaker of the Legislative Assembly and, if there is a Legislative Council, of the Chairman and Deputy Chairman thereof.

39. Powers, privileges and immunities of the Legislative Assembly and of the members and the committees thereof, and, if there is a Legislative Council, of that Council and of the members and the committees thereof; enforcement of attendance of persons for giving evidence or producing documents before committees of the Legislature of the State.

40. Salaries and allowances of Ministers for the State.

41. State public services; State Public Service Commission.

42. State pensions, that is to say, pensions payable by the State or out of the Consolidated Fund of the State.

43. Public debt of the State.

44. Treasure trove.

1. Entry 29 omitted by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 57 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

2. Entry 36 omitted by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 26 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

45. Land revenue, including the assessment and collection of revenue, the maintenance of land records, survey for revenue purposes and records of rights, and alienation of revenues.

46. Taxes on agricultural income.

47. Duties in respect of succession to agricultural land.

48. Estate duty in respect of agricultural land.

49. Taxes on lands and buildings.

50. Taxes on mineral rights subject to any limitations imposed by Parliament by law relating to mineral development.

51. Duties of excise on the following goods manufactured or produced in the State and countervailing duties at the same or lower rates on similar goods manufactured or produced elsewhere in India:—

(a) alcoholic liquors for human consumption;

(b) opium, Indian hemp and other narcotic drugs and narcotics,

but not including medicinal and toilet preparations containing alcohol or any substance included in sub-paragraph (b) of this entry.

¹[52. * * * * *]

53. Taxes on the consumption or sale of electricity.

²[54. Taxes on the sale of petroleum crude, high speed diesel, motor spirit (commonly known as petrol), natural gas, aviation turbine fuel and alcoholic liquor for human consumption, but not including sale in the course of inter-State trade or commerce or sale in the course of international trade or commerce of such goods.]

³[55. * * * * *]

56. Taxes on goods and passengers carried by road or on inland waterways.

1. Entry 52 omitted by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 17(b)(i) (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Sixth Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 2 (w.e.f. 11-9-1956) and further subs. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 17(b)(ii) (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

3. Entry 55 omitted by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 17(b)(iii) (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

57. Taxes on vehicles, whether mechanically propelled or not, suitable for use on roads, including tramcars subject to the provisions of entry 35 of List III.
58. Taxes on animals and boats.
59. Tolls.
60. Taxes on professions, trades, callings and employments.
61. Capitation taxes.
- ¹[62. Taxes on entertainments and amusements to the extent levied and collected by a Panchayat or a Municipality or a Regional Council or a District Council.]
63. Rates of stamp duty in respect of documents other than those specified in the provisions of List I with regard to rates of stamp duty.
64. Offences against laws with respect to any of the matters in this List.
65. Jurisdiction and powers of all courts, except the Supreme Court, with respect to any of the matters in this List.
66. Fees in respect of any of the matters in this List, but not including fees taken in any court.

List III—Concurrent List

1. Criminal law, including all matters included in the Indian Penal Code at the commencement of this Constitution but excluding offences against laws with respect to any of the matters specified in List I or List II and excluding the use of naval, military or air forces or any other armed forces of the Union in aid of the civil power.
2. Criminal procedure, including all matters included in the Code of Criminal Procedure at the commencement of this Constitution.
3. Preventive detention for reasons connected with the security of a State, the maintenance of public order, or the maintenance of supplies and services essential to the community; persons subjected to such detention.
4. Removal from one State to another State of prisoners, accused persons and persons subjected to preventive detention for reasons specified in entry 3 of this List.

1. Subs. by the Constitution (One Hundred and First Amendment) Act, 2016, s. 17(b)(iv), for entry 62 (w.e.f. 16-9-2016).

5. Marriage and divorce; infants and minors; adoption; wills, intestacy and succession; joint family and partition; all matters in respect of which parties in judicial proceedings were immediately before the commencement of this Constitution subject to their personal law.
6. Transfer of property other than agricultural land; registration of deeds and documents.
7. Contracts, including partnership, agency, contracts of carriage, and other special forms of contracts, but not including contracts relating to agricultural land.
8. Actionable wrongs.
9. Bankruptcy and insolvency.
10. Trust and Trustees.
11. Administrators-general and official trustees.
- ¹[11A. Administration of Justice; constitution and organisation of all courts, except the Supreme Court and the High Courts.]
12. Evidence and oaths; recognition of laws, public acts and records, and judicial proceedings.
13. Civil procedure, including all matters included in the Code of Civil Procedure at the commencement of this Constitution, limitation and arbitration.
14. Contempt of court, but not including contempt of the Supreme Court.
15. Vagrancy; nomadic and migratory tribes.
16. Lunacy and mental deficiency, including places for the reception or treatment of lunatics and mental deficient.
17. Prevention of cruelty to animals.
- ¹[17A. Forests.
- 17B. Protection of wild animals and birds.]
18. Adulteration of foodstuffs and other goods.
19. Drugs and poisons, subject to the provisions of entry 59 of List I with respect to opium.
20. Economic and social planning.
- ¹[20A. Population control and family planning.]

1. Entries 11A, 17A, 17B and 20A ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 57 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

- 21. Commercial and industrial monopolies, combines and trusts.
- 22. Trade unions; industrial and labour disputes.
- 23. Social security and social insurance; employment and unemployment.
- 24. Welfare of labour including conditions of work, provident funds, employers' liability, workmen's compensation, invalidity and old age pensions and maternity benefits.
- ¹[25. Education, including technical education, medical education and universities, subject to the provisions of entries 63, 64, 65 and 66 of List I; vocational and technical training of labour.]
- 26. Legal, medical and other professions.
- 27. Relief and rehabilitation of persons displaced from their original place of residence by reason of the setting up of the Dominions of India and Pakistan.
- 28. Charities and charitable institutions, charitable and religious endowments and religious institutions.
- 29. Prevention of the extension from one State to another of infectious or contagious diseases or pests affecting men, animals or plants.
- 30. Vital statistics including registration of births and deaths.
- 31. Ports other than those declared by or under law made by Parliament or existing law to be major ports.
- 32. Shipping and navigation on inland waterways as regards mechanically propelled vessels, and the rule of the road on such waterways, and the carriage of passengers and goods on inland waterways subject to the provisions of List I with respect to national waterways.
- ²[33. Trade and commerce in, and the production, supply and distribution of,—
 - (a) the products of any industry where the control of such industry by the Union is declared by Parliament by law to be expedient in the public interest, and imported goods of the same kind as such products;
 - (b) foodstuffs, including edible oilseeds and oils;
 - (c) cattle fodder, including oilcakes and other concentrates;
 - (d) raw cotton, whether ginned or unginned, and cotton seed; and
 - (e) raw jute.]

1. Subs. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 57 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).
 2. Subs. by the Constitution (Third Amendment) Act, 1954, s. 2 for entry 33 (w.e.f. 22-2-1955).

¹[33A. Weights and measures except establishment of standards.]

34. Price control.
35. Mechanically propelled vehicles including the principles on which taxes on such vehicles are to be levied.
36. Factories
37. Boilers.
38. Electricity.
39. Newspapers, books and printing presses.
40. Archaeological sites and remains other than those ²[declared by or under law made by Parliament] to be of national importance.
41. Custody, management and disposal of property (including agricultural land) declared by law to be evacuee property.
³[42. Acquisition and requisitioning of property.]
43. Recovery in a State of claims in respect of taxes and other public demands, including arrears of land-revenue and sums recoverable as such arrears, arising outside that State.
44. Stamp duties other than duties or fees collected by means of judicial stamps, but not including rates of stamp duty.
45. Inquiries and statistics for the purposes of any of the matters specified in List II or List III.
46. Jurisdiction and powers of all courts, except the Supreme Court, with respect to any of the matters in this List.
47. Fees in respect of any of the matters in this List, but not including fees taken in any court.

1. Ins. by the Constitution (Forty-second Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 57 (w.e.f. 3-1-1977).

2. Subs. by the Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act, 1956, s. 27, for "declared by Parliament by law" (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

3. Subs. by s. 26, *ibid.* for entry 42 (w.e.f. 1-11-1956).

EIGHTH SCHEDULE
[Articles 344(1) and 351]
Languages

1. Assamese.
2. Bengali.
- ¹[3. Bodo.
4. Dogri.]
- ²[5.] Gujarati.
- ³[6.] Hindi.
- ³[7.] Kannada.
- ³[8.] Kashmiri.
- ⁴[³[9.] Konkani.]
- ¹[10. Maithili.]
- ⁵[11.] Malayalam.
- ⁴[⁶[12.] Manipuri.]
- ⁶[13.] Marathi.
- ⁴[⁶[14.] Nepali.]
- ⁶[15.] ⁷[Odia].
- ⁶[16.] Punjabi.
- ⁶[17.] Sanskrit.

-
1. Ins. by the Constitution (Ninety-second Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-1-2004).
 2. Entry 3 renumbered as entry 5 by s. 2, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 7-1-2004).
 3. Entries 4 to 7 renumbered as entries 6 to 9 by s. 2, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 7-1-2004).
 4. Ins. by the Constitution (Seventy-first Amendment) Act, 1992, s. 2 (w.e.f. 31-8-1992).
 5. Entry 8 renumbered as entry 11 by the Constitution (Ninety-second Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-1-2004).
 6. Entries 9 to 14 renumbered as entries 12 to 17 by s. 2, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 7-1-2004).
 7. Subs. by the Constitution (Ninety-sixth Amendment) Act, 2011, s. 2, for "Oriya" (w.e.f. 23-9-2011).

¹[18. Santhali.]

²[³[19.] Sindhi.]

⁴[20.] Tamil.

⁴[21.] Telugu.

⁴[22.] Urdu.

-
1. Ins. by the Constitution (Ninety-second Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-1-2004).
 2. Added by the Constitution (Twenty-first Amendment) Act, 1967, s. 2 (w.e.f. 10-4-1967).
 3. Entry 15 renumbered as entry 19 by the Constitution (Ninety-second Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-1-2004).
 4. Entries 16 to 18 renumbered as entries 20 to 22 by s. 2, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 7-1-2004).

¹[NINTH SCHEDULE

(Article 31B)

1. The Bihar Land Reforms Act, 1950 (Bihar Act XXX of 1950).
2. The Bombay Tenancy and Agricultural Lands Act, 1948. (Bombay Act LXVII of 1948).
3. The Bombay Maleki Tenure Abolition Act, 1949 (Bombay Act LXI of 1949).
4. The Bombay Taluqdari Tenure Abolition Act, 1949. (Bombay Act LXII of 1949).
5. The Panch Mahals Mehwassi Tenure Abolition Act, 1949. (Bombay Act LXIII of 1949).
6. The Bombay Khoti Abolition Act, 1950 (Bombay Act VI of 1950).
7. The Bombay Paragana and Kulkarni Watan Abolition Act, 1950. (Bombay Act LX of 1950).
8. The Madhya Pradesh Abolition of Proprietary Rights (Estates, Mahals, Alienated Lands) Act, 1950 (Madhya Pradesh Act I of 1951).
9. The Madras Estates (Abolition and Conversion into Ryotwari) Act, 1948 (Madras Act XXVI of 1948).
10. The Madras Estates (Abolition and Conversion into Ryotwari) Amendment Act, 1950 (Madras Act I of 1950).
11. The Uttar Pradesh Zamindari Abolition and Land Reforms Act, 1950 (Uttar Pradesh Act I of 1951).
12. The Hyderabad (Abolition of Jagirs) Regulation, 1358F (No. LXIX of 1358, Fasli).
13. The Hyderabad Jagirs (Commutation) Regulation, 1359F (No. XXV of 1359, Fasli).]- ²[14. The Bihar Displaced Persons Rehabilitation (Acquisition of Land) Act, 1950 (Bihar Act XXXVIII of 1950).
- 15. The United Provinces Land Acquisition (Rehabilitation of Refugees) Act, 1948 (U.P. Act XXVI of 1948).
- 16. The Resettlement of Displaced Persons (Land Acquisition) Act, 1948 (Act LX of 1948).
- 17. Sections 52A to 52G of the Insurance Act, 1938 (Act IV of 1938), as inserted by section 42 of the Insurance (Amendment) Act, 1950 (Act XLVII of 1950).
- 18. The Railway Companies (Emergency Provisions) Act, 1951 (Act LI of 1951).

1. Ninth Schedule (entries 1 to 13) added by the Constitution (First Amendment) Act, 1951, s. 14 (w.e.f. 18-6-1951).

2. Ninth Schedule (entries 14 to 20) added by the Constitution (Fourth Amendment) Act, 1955, s. 5 (w.e.f. 27-4-1955).

19. Chapter III-A of the Industries (Development and Regulation) Act, 1951 (Act LXV of 1951), as inserted by section 13 of the Industries (Development and Regulation) Amendment Act, 1953 (Act XXVI of 1953).

20. The West Bengal Land Development and Planning Act, 1948 (West Bengal Act XXI of 1948), as amended by West Bengal Act XXIX of 1951.]

¹[21. The Andhra Pradesh Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings Act, 1961 (Andhra Pradesh Act X of 1961).

22. The Andhra Pradesh (Telangana Area) Tenancy and Agricultural Lands (Validation) Act, 1961 (Andhra Pradesh Act XXI of 1961).

23. The Andhra Pradesh (Telangana Area) Ijara and Kowli Land Cancellation of Irregular Pattas and Abolition of Concessional Assessment Act, 1961 (Andhra Pradesh Act XXXVI of 1961).

24. The Assam State Acquisition of Lands belonging to Religious or Charitable Institution of Public Nature Act, 1959 (Assam Act IX of 1961).

25. The Bihar Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1953 (Bihar Act XX of 1954).

26. The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) Act, 1961 (Bihar Act XII of 1962), except section 28 of this Act.

27. The Bombay Taluqdari Tenure Abolition (Amendment) Act, 1954 (Bombay Act I of 1955).

28. The Bombay Taluqdari Tenure Abolition (Amendment) Act, 1957 (Bombay Act XVIII of 1958).

29. The Bombay Inams (Kutch Area) Abolition Act, 1958 (Bombay Act XC VIII of 1958).

30. The Bombay Tenancy and Agricultural Lands (Gujarat Amendment) Act, 1960 (Gujarat Act XVI of 1960).

31. The Gujarat Agricultural Lands Ceiling Act, 1960 (Gujarat Act XXVI of 1961).

32. The Sagbara and Mehwassi Estates (Proprietary Rights Abolition, etc.) Regulation, 1962 (Gujarat Regulation I of 1962).

1. Entries 21 to 64 and *Explanation* added by the Constitution (Seventeenth Amendment) Act, 1964, s. 3 (w.e.f. 20-6-1964).

33. The Gujarat Surviving Alienations Abolition Act, 1963 (Gujarat Act XXXIII of 1963), except in so far as this Act relates to an alienation referred to in sub-clause (d) of clause (3) of section 2 thereof.
34. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Ceiling on Holdings) Act, 1961 (Maharashtra Act XXVII of 1961).
35. The Hyderabad Tenancy and Agricultural Lands (Re-enactment, Validation and Further Amendment) Act, 1961 (Maharashtra Act XLV of 1961).
36. The Hyderabad Tenancy and Agricultural Lands Act, 1950 (Hyderabad Act XXI of 1950).
37. The Jenmikaram Payment (Abolition) Act, 1960 (Kerala Act III of 1961).
38. The Kerala Land Tax Act, 1961 (Kerala Act XIII of 1961).
39. The Kerala Land Reforms Act, 1963 (Kerala Act I of 1964).
40. The Madhya Pradesh Land Revenue Code, 1959 (Madhya Pradesh Act XX of 1959).
41. The Madhya Pradesh Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings Act, 1960 (Madhya Pradesh Act XX of 1960).
42. The Madras Cultivating Tenants Protection Act, 1955 (Madras Act XXV of 1955).
43. The Madras Cultivating Tenants (Payment of Fair Rent) Act, 1956 (Madras Act XXIV of 1956).
44. The Madras Occupants of Kudiyiruppu (Protection from Eviction) Act, 1961 (Madras Act XXXVIII of 1961).
45. The Madras Public Trusts (Regulation of Administration of Agricultural Lands) Act, 1961 (Madras Act LVII of 1961).
46. The Madras Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Act, 1961 (Madras Act LVIII of 1961).
47. The Mysore Tenancy Act, 1952 (Mysore Act XIII of 1952).
48. The Coorg Tenants Act, 1957 (Mysore Act XIV of 1957).
49. The Mysore Village Offices Abolition Act, 1961 (Mysore Act XIV of 1961).
50. The Hyderabad Tenancy and Agricultural Lands (Validation) Act, 1961 (Mysore Act XXXVI of 1961).
51. The Mysore Land Reforms Act, 1961 (Mysore Act X of 1962).

- 52. The Orissa Land Reforms Act, 1960 (Orissa Act XVI of 1960).
- 53. The Orissa Merged Territories (Village Offices Abolition) Act, 1963 (Orissa Act X of 1963).
- 54. The Punjab Security of Land Tenures Act, 1953 (Punjab Act X of 1953).
- 55. The Rajasthan Tenancy Act, 1955 (Rajasthan Act III of 1955).
- 56. The Rajasthan Zamindari and Biswedari Abolition Act, 1959 (Rajasthan Act VIII of 1959).
- 57. The Kumaun and Uttarakhand Zamindari Abolition and Land Reforms Act, 1960 (Uttar Pradesh Act XVII of 1960).
- 58. The Uttar Pradesh Imposition of Ceiling on Land Holdings Act, 1960 (Uttar Pradesh Act I of 1961).
- 59. The West Bengal Estates Acquisition Act, 1953 (West Bengal Act I of 1954).
- 60. The West Bengal Land Reforms Act, 1955 (West Bengal Act X of 1956).
- 61. The Delhi Land Reforms Act, 1954 (Delhi Act VIII of 1954).
- 62. The Delhi Land Holdings (Ceiling) Act, 1960 (Central Act 24 of 1960).
- 63. The Manipur Land Revenue and Land Reforms Act, 1960 (Central Act 33 of 1960).
- 64. The Tripura Land Revenue and Land Reforms Act, 1960 (Central Act 43 of 1960).
- ¹[65. The Kerala Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1969 (Kerala Act 35 of 1969).]
- 66. The Kerala Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1971 (Kerala Act 25 of 1971).]
- ²[67. The Andhra Pradesh Land Reforms (Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings) Act, 1973 (Andhra Pradesh Act 1 of 1973).]
- 68. The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) (Amendment) Act, 1972 (Bihar Act I of 1973).

1. Entries 65 and 66 ins. by the Constitution (Twenty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1972, s. 2 (w.e.f. 9-6-1972).

2. Entries 67 and 86 ins.. by the Constitution (Thirty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1974, s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-9-1974).

69. The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) (Amendment) Act, 1973 (Bihar Act IX of 1973).
70. The Bihar Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1972 (Bihar Act V of 1972).
71. The Gujarat Agricultural Lands Ceiling (Amendment) Act, 1972 (Gujarat Act 2 of 1974).
72. The Haryana Ceiling on Land Holdings Act, 1972 (Haryana Act 26 of 1972).
73. The Himachal Pradesh Ceiling on Land Holdings Act, 1972 (Himachal Pradesh Act 19 of 1973).
74. The Kerala Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1972 (Kerala Act 17 of 1972).
75. The Madhya Pradesh Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings (Amendment) Act, 1972 (Madhya Pradesh Act 12 of 1974).
76. The Madhya Pradesh Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings (Second Amendment) Act, 1972 (Madhya Pradesh Act 13 of 1974).
77. The Mysore Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1973 (Karnataka Act 1 of 1974).
78. The Punjab Land Reforms Act, 1972 (Punjab Act 10 of 1973).
79. The Rajasthan Imposition of Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings Act, 1973 (Rajasthan Act 11 of 1973).
80. The Gudalur Janmam Estates (Abolition and Conversion into Ryotwari) Act, 1969 (Tamil Nadu Act 24 of 1969).
81. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1972 (West Bengal Act XII of 1972).
82. The West Bengal Estates Acquisition (Amendment) Act, 1964 (West Bengal Act XXII of 1964).
83. The West Bengal Estates Acquisition (Second Amendment) Act, 1973 (West Bengal Act XXXIII of 1973).
84. The Bombay Tenancy and Agricultural Lands (Gujarat Amendment) Act, 1972 (Gujarat Act 5 of 1973).
85. The Orissa Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1974 (Orissa Act 9 of 1974).
86. The Tripura Land Revenue and Land Reforms (Second Amendment) Act, 1974 (Tripura Act 7 of 1974).]

¹[287* * * *]

88. The Industries (Development and Regulation) Act, 1951 (Central Act 65 of 1951).

89. The Requisitioning and Acquisition of Immovable Property Act, 1952 (Central Act 30 of 1952).

90. The Mines and Minerals (Regulation and Development) Act, 1957 (Central Act 67 of 1957).

*91. The Monopolies and Restrictive Trade Practices Act, 1969 (Central Act 54 of 1969).

²[92* * * *]

93. The Coking Coal Mines (Emergency Provisions) Act, 1971 (Central Act 64 of 1971).

94. The Coking Coal Mines (Nationalisation) Act, 1972 (Central Act 36 of 1972).

95. The General Insurance Business (Nationalisation) Act, 1972 (Central Act 57 of 1972).

96. The Indian Copper Corporation (Acquisition of Undertaking) Act, 1972 (Central Act 58 of 1972).

97. The Sick Textile Undertakings (Taking Over of Management) Act, 1972 (Central Act 72 of 1972).

98. The Coal Mines (Taking Over of Management) Act, 1973 (Central Act 15 of 1973).

99. The Coal Mines (Nationalisation) Act, 1973 (Central Act 26 of 1973).

**100. The Foreign Exchange Regulation Act, 1973 (Central Act 46 of 1973).

101. The Alcock Ashdown Company Limited (Acquisition of Undertakings) Act, 1973 (Central Act 56 of 1973).

1. Entries 87 to 124 ins. by the Constitution (Thirty-ninth Amendment) Act, 1975, s. 5 (w.e.f. 10-8-1975).

2. Entries 87 and 92 omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 44 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

* Rep. by the Competition Act, 2002 (12 of 2003) s. 66 (w.e.f. 1-9-2009).

** Rep. by the Foreign Exchange Management Act, 1999 (42 of 1999), s. 49 (w.e.f. 1-6-2000).

102. The Coal Mines (Conservation and Development) Act, 1974 (Central Act 28 of 1974).
103. The Additional Emoluments (Compulsory Deposit) Act, 1974 (Central Act 37 of 1974).
104. The Conservation of Foreign Exchange and Prevention of Smuggling Activities Act, 1974 (Central Act 52 of 1974).
105. The Sick Textile Undertakings (Nationalisation) Act, 1974 (Central Act 57 of 1974).
106. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Ceiling on Holdings) (Amendment) Act, 1964 (Maharashtra Act XVI of 1965).
107. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Ceiling on Holdings) (Amendment) Act, 1965 (Maharashtra Act XXXII of 1965).
108. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Ceiling on Holdings) (Amendment) Act, 1968 (Maharashtra Act XVI of 1968).
109. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Ceiling on Holdings) (Second Amendment) Act, 1968 (Maharashtra Act XXXIII of 1968).
110. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Ceiling on Holdings) (Amendment) Act, 1969 (Maharashtra Act XXXVII of 1969).
111. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Ceiling on Holdings) (Second Amendment) Act, 1969 (Maharashtra Act XXXVIII of 1969).
112. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Ceiling on Holdings) (Amendment) Act, 1970 (Maharashtra Act XXVII of 1970).
113. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Ceiling on Holdings) (Amendment) Act, 1972 (Maharashtra Act XIII of 1972).
114. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Ceiling on Holdings) (Amendment) Act, 1973 (Maharashtra Act L of 1973).
115. The Orissa Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1965 (Orissa Act 13 of 1965).
116. The Orissa Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1966 (Orissa Act 8 of 1967).
117. The Orissa Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1967 (Orissa Act 13 of 1967).

118. The Orissa Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1969 (Orissa Act 13 of 1969).

119. The Orissa Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1970 (Orissa Act 18 of 1970).

120. The Uttar Pradesh Imposition of Ceiling on Land Holdings (Amendment) Act, 1972 (Uttar Pradesh Act 18 of 1973).

121. The Uttar Pradesh Imposition of Ceiling on Land Holdings (Amendment) Act, 1974 (Uttar Pradesh Act 2 of 1975).

122. The Tripura Land Revenue and Land Reforms (Third Amendment) Act, 1975 (Tripura Act 3 of 1975).

123. The Dadra and Nagar Haveli Land Reforms Regulation, 1971 (3 of 1971).

124. The Dadra and Nagar Haveli Land Reforms (Amendment) Regulation, 1973 (5 of 1973).]

¹[125. Section 66A and Chapter IVA of the Motor Vehicles Act, 1939* (Central Act 4 of 1939).

126. The Essential Commodities Act, 1955 (Central Act 10 of 1955).

127. The Smugglers and Foreign Exchange Manipulators (Forfeiture of Property) Act, 1976 (Central Act 13 of 1976).

128. The Bonded Labour System (Abolition) Act, 1976 (Central Act 19 of 1976).

129. The Conservation of Foreign Exchange and Prevention of Smuggling Activities (Amendment) Act, 1976 (Central Act 20 of 1976).

²130* * * *

131. The Levy Sugar Price Equalisation Fund Act, 1976 (Central Act 31 of 1976).

132. The Urban Land (Ceiling and Regulation) Act, 1976 (Central Act 33 of 1976).

1. Entries 125 to 188 ins. by the Constitution (Fortieth Amendment) Act, 1976, s. 3 (w.e.f. 27-5-1976).

* See now the relevant provisions of the Motor Vehicles Act, 1988 (59 of 1988).

2. Entry 130 omitted by the Constitution (Forty-fourth Amendment) Act, 1978, s. 44 (w.e.f. 20-6-1979).

133. The Departmentalisation of Union Accounts (Transfer of Personnel) Act, 1976 (Central Act 59 of 1976).
134. The Assam Fixation of Ceiling on Land Holdings Act, 1956 (Assam Act I of 1957).
135. The Bombay Tenancy and Agricultural Lands (Vidarbha Region) Act, 1958 (Bombay Act XCIX of 1958).
136. The Gujarat Private Forests (Acquisition) Act, 1972 (Gujarat Act 14 of 1973).
137. The Haryana Ceiling on Land Holdings (Amendment) Act, 1976 (Haryana Act 17 of 1976).
138. The Himachal Pradesh Tenancy and Land Reforms Act, 1972 (Himachal Pradesh Act 8 of 1974).
139. The Himachal Pradesh Village Common Lands Vesting and Utilisation Act, 1974 (Himachal Pradesh Act 18 of 1974).
140. The Karnataka Land Reforms (Second Amendment and Miscellaneous Provisions) Act, 1974 (Karnataka Act 31 of 1974).
141. The Karnataka Land Reforms (Second Amendment) Act, 1976 (Karnataka Act 27 of 1976).
142. The Kerala Prevention of Eviction Act, 1966 (Kerala Act 12 of 1966).
143. The Thiruppuvaram Payment (Abolition) Act, 1969 (Kerala Act 19 of 1969).
144. The Sreepadam Lands Enfranchisement Act, 1969 (Kerala Act 20 of 1969).
145. The Sree Pandaravaka Lands (Vesting and Enfranchisement) Act, 1971 (Kerala Act 20 of 1971).
146. The Kerala Private Forests (Vesting and Assignment) Act, 1971 (Kerala Act 26 of 1971).
147. The Kerala Agricultural Workers Act, 1974 (Kerala Act 18 of 1974).
148. The Kerala Cashew Factories (Acquisition) Act, 1974 (Kerala Act 29 of 1974).
149. The Kerala Chitties Act, 1975 (Kerala Act 23 of 1975).
150. The Kerala Scheduled Tribes (Restriction on Transfer of Lands and Restoration of Alienated Lands) Act, 1975 (Kerala Act 31 of 1975).

151. The Kerala Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1976 (Kerala Act 15 of 1976).
152. The Kanam Tenancy Abolition Act, 1976 (Kerala Act 16 of 1976).
153. The Madhya Pradesh Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings (Amendment) Act, 1974 (Madhya Pradesh Act 20 of 1974).
154. The Madhya Pradesh Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings (Amendment) Act, 1975 (Madhya Pradesh Act 2 of 1976).
155. The West Khandesh Mehwassi Estates (Proprietary Rights Abolition, etc.) Regulation, 1961 (Maharashtra Regulation 1 of 1962).
156. The Maharashtra Restoration of Lands to Scheduled Tribes Act, 1974 (Maharashtra Act XIV of 1975).
157. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Lowering of Ceiling on Holdings) and (Amendment) Act, 1972 (Maharashtra Act XXI of 1975).
158. The Maharashtra Private Forest (Acquisition) Act, 1975 (Maharashtra Act XXIX of 1975).
159. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Lowering of Ceiling on Holdings) and (Amendment) Amendment Act, 1975 (Maharashtra Act XLVII of 1975).
160. The Maharashtra Agricultural Lands (Ceiling on Holdings) (Amendment) Act, 1975 (Maharashtra Act II of 1976).
161. The Orissa Estates Abolition Act, 1951 (Orissa Act I of 1952).
162. The Rajasthan Colonisation Act, 1954 (Rajasthan Act XXVII of 1954).
163. The Rajasthan Land Reforms and Acquisition of Landowners' Estates Act, 1963 (Rajasthan Act 11 of 1964).
164. The Rajasthan Imposition of Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings (Amendment) Act, 1976 (Rajasthan Act 8 of 1976).
165. The Rajasthan Tenancy (Amendment) Act, 1976 (Rajasthan Act 12 of 1976).
166. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Reduction of Ceiling on Land) Act, 1970 (Tamil Nadu Act 17 of 1970).
167. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Amendment Act, 1971 (Tamil Nadu Act 41 of 1971).

168. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Amendment Act, 1972 (Tamil Nadu Act 10 of 1972).

169. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Second Amendment Act, 1972 (Tamil Nadu Act 20 of 1972).

170. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Third Amendment Act, 1972 (Tamil Nadu Act 37 of 1972).

171. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Fourth Amendment Act, 1972 (Tamil Nadu Act 39 of 1972).

172. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Sixth Amendment Act, 1972 (Tamil Nadu Act 7 of 1974).

173. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Fifth Amendment Act, 1972 (Tamil Nadu Act 10 of 1974).

174. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Amendment Act, 1974 (Tamil Nadu Act 15 of 1974).

175. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Third Amendment Act, 1974 (Tamil Nadu Act 30 of 1974).

176. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Second Amendment Act, 1974 (Tamil Nadu Act 32 of 1974).

177. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Amendment Act, 1975 (Tamil Nadu Act 11 of 1975).

178. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Second Amendment Act, 1975 (Tamil Nadu Act 21 of 1975).

179. Amendments made to the Uttar Pradesh Zamindari Abolition and Land Reforms Act, 1950 (Uttar Pradesh Act I of 1951) by the Uttar Pradesh Land Laws (Amendment) Act, 1971 (Uttar Pradesh Act 21 of 1971) and the Uttar Pradesh Land Laws (Amendment) Act, 1974 (Uttar Pradesh Act 34 of 1974).

180. The Uttar Pradesh Imposition of Ceiling on Land Holdings (Amendment) Act, 1976 (Uttar Pradesh Act 20 of 1976).

181. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Second Amendment) Act, 1972 (West Bengal Act XXVIII of 1972).

182. The West Bengal Restoration of Alienated Land Act, 1973 (West Bengal Act XXIII of 1973).

183. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1974 (West Bengal Act XXXIII of 1974).

184. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1975 (West Bengal Act XXIII of 1975).

185. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1976 (West Bengal Act XII of 1976).

186. The Delhi Land Holdings (Ceiling) Amendment Act, 1976 (Central Act 15 of 1976).

187. The Goa, Daman and Diu Mundkars (Protection from Eviction) Act, 1975 (Goa, Daman and Diu Act 1 of 1976).

188. The Pondicherry Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Act, 1973 (Pondicherry Act 9 of 1974).]

¹[189. The Assam (Temporarily Settled Areas) Tenancy Act, 1971 (Assam Act XXIII of 1971).

190. The Assam (Temporarily Settled Areas) Tenancy (Amendment) Act, 1974 (Assam Act XVIII of 1974).

191. The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) (Amendment) Amending Act, 1974 (Bihar Act 13 of 1975).

192. The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) (Amendment) Act, 1976 (Bihar Act 22 of 1976).

193. The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) (Amendment) Act, 1978 (Bihar Act VII of 1978).

194. The Land Acquisition (Bihar Amendment) Act, 1979 (Bihar Act 2 of 1980).

195. The Haryana Ceiling on Land Holdings (Amendment) Act, 1977 (Haryana Act 14 of 1977).

196. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Amendment Act, 1978 (Tamil Nadu Act 25 of 1978).

197. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Amendment Act, 1979 (Tamil Nadu Act 11 of 1979).

1. Entries 189 to 202 were ins. by the Constitution (Forty-seventh Amendment) Act, 1984, s. 2 (w.e.f. 26-8-1984).

198. The Uttar Pradesh Zamindari Abolition Laws (Amendment) Act, 1978 (Uttar Pradesh Act 15 of 1978).

199. The West Bengal Restoration of Alienated Land (Amendment) Act, 1978 (West Bengal Act XXIV of 1978).

200. The West Bengal Restoration of Alienated Land (Amendment) Act, 1980 (West Bengal Act LVI of 1980).

201. The Goa, Daman and Diu Agricultural Tenancy Act, 1964 (Goa, Daman and Diu Act 7 of 1964).

202. The Goa, Daman and Diu Agricultural Tenancy (Fifth Amendment) Act, 1976 (Goa, Daman and Diu Act 17 of 1976).]

¹[203. The Andhra Pradesh Scheduled Areas Land Transfer Regulation, 1959 (Andhra Pradesh Regulation 1 of 1959).

204. The Andhra Pradesh Scheduled Areas Laws (Extension and Amendment) Regulation, 1963 (Andhra Pradesh Regulation 2 of 1963).

205. The Andhra Pradesh Scheduled Areas Land Transfer (Amendment) Regulation, 1970 (Andhra Pradesh Regulation 1 of 1970).

206. The Andhra Pradesh Scheduled Areas Land Transfer (Amendment) Regulation, 1971 (Andhra Pradesh Regulation 1 of 1971).

207. The Andhra Pradesh Scheduled Areas Land Transfer (Amendment) Regulation, 1978 (Andhra Pradesh Regulation 1 of 1978).

208. The Bihar Tenancy Act, 1885 (Bihar Act 8 of 1885).

209. The Chota Nagpur Tenancy Act, 1908 (Bengal Act 6 of 1908) (Chapter VIII—sections 46, 47, 48, 48A and 49; Chapter X—sections 71, 71A and 71B; and Chapter XVIII—sections 240, 241 and 242).

210. The Santhal Parganas Tenancy (Supplementary Provisions) Act, 1949 (Bihar Act 14 of 1949) except section 53.

211. The Bihar Scheduled Areas Regulation, 1969 (Bihar Regulation 1 of 1969).

212. The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) (Amendment) Act, 1982 (Bihar Act 55 of 1982).

1. Entries 203 to 257 were ins. by the Constitution (Sixty-sixth Amendment) Act, 1990, s. 2 (w.e.f. 7-6-1990).

213. The Gujarat Devasthan Inams Abolition Act, 1969 (Gujarat Act 16 of 1969).
214. The Gujarat Tenancy Laws (Amendment) Act, 1976 (Gujarat Act 37 of 1976).
215. The Gujarat Agricultural Lands Ceiling (Amendment) Act, 1976 (President's Act 43 of 1976).
216. The Gujarat Devasthan Inams Abolition (Amendment) Act, 1977 (Gujarat Act 27 of 1977).
217. The Gujarat Tenancy Laws (Amendment) Act, 1977 (Gujarat Act 30 of 1977).
218. The Bombay Land Revenue (Gujarat Second Amendment) Act, 1980 (Gujarat Act 37 of 1980).
219. The Bombay Land Revenue Code and Land Tenure Abolition Laws (Gujarat Amendment) Act, 1982 (Gujarat Act 8 of 1982).
220. The Himachal Pradesh Transfer of Land (Regulation) Act, 1968 (Himachal Pradesh Act 15 of 1969).
221. The Himachal Pradesh Transfer of Land (Regulation) (Amendment) Act, 1986 (Himachal Pradesh Act 16 of 1986).
222. The Karnataka Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes (Prohibition of Transfer of Certain Lands) Act, 1978 (Karnataka Act 2 of 1979).
223. The Kerala Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1978 (Kerala Act 13 of 1978).
224. The Kerala Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1981 (Kerala Act 19 of 1981).
225. The Madhya Pradesh Land Revenue Code (Third Amendment) Act, 1976 (Madhya Pradesh Act 61 of 1976).
226. The Madhya Pradesh Land Revenue Code (Amendment) Act, 1980 (Madhya Pradesh Act 15 of 1980).
227. The Madhya Pradesh Akrishik Jot Uchchatam Seema Adhiniyam, 1981 (Madhya Pradesh Act 11 of 1981).
228. The Madhya Pradesh Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings (Second Amendment) Act, 1976 (Madhya Pradesh Act 1 of 1984).
229. The Madhya Pradesh Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings (Amendment) Act, 1984 (Madhya Pradesh Act 14 of 1984).

230. The Madhya Pradesh Ceiling on Agricultural Holdings (Amendment) Act, 1989 (Madhya Pradesh Act 8 of 1989).
231. The Maharashtra Land Revenue Code, 1966 (Maharashtra Act 41 of 1966), sections 36, 36A and 36B.
232. The Maharashtra Land Revenue Code and the Maharashtra Restoration of Lands to Scheduled Tribes (Second Amendment) Act, 1976 (Maharashtra Act 30 of 1977).
233. The Maharashtra Abolition of Subsisting Proprietary Rights to Mines and Minerals in certain Lands Act, 1985 (Maharashtra Act 16 of 1985).
234. The Orissa Scheduled Areas Transfer of Immovable Property (by Scheduled Tribes) Regulation, 1956 (Orissa Regulation 2 of 1956).
235. The Orissa Land Reforms (Second Amendment) Act, 1975 (Orissa Act 29 of 1976).
236. The Orissa Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1976 (Orissa Act 30 of 1976).
237. The Orissa Land Reforms (Second Amendment) Act, 1976 (Orissa Act 44 of 1976).
238. The Rajasthan Colonisation (Amendment) Act, 1984 (Rajasthan Act 12 of 1984).
239. The Rajasthan Tenancy (Amendment) Act, 1984 (Rajasthan Act 13 of 1984).
240. The Rajasthan Tenancy (Amendment) Act, 1987 (Rajasthan Act 21 of 1987).
241. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Second Amendment Act, 1979 (Tamil Nadu Act 8 of 1980).
242. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Amendment Act, 1980 (Tamil Nadu Act 21 of 1980).
243. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Amendment Act, 1981 (Tamil Nadu Act 59 of 1981).
244. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Second Amendment Act, 1983 (Tamil Nadu Act 2 of 1984).
245. The Uttar Pradesh Land Laws (Amendment) Act, 1982 (Uttar Pradesh Act 20 of 1982).

246. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1965 (West Bengal Act 18 of 1965).

247. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1966 (West Bengal Act 11 of 1966).

248. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Second Amendment) Act, 1969 (West Bengal Act 23 of 1969).

249. The West Bengal Estate Acquisition (Amendment) Act, 1977 (West Bengal Act 36 of 1977).

250. The West Bengal Land Holding Revenue Act, 1979 (West Bengal Act 44 of 1979).

251. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1980 (West Bengal Act 41 of 1980).

252. The West Bengal Land Holding Revenue (Amendment) Act, 1981 (West Bengal Act 33 of 1981).

253. The Calcutta Thikka Tenancy (Acquisition and Regulation) Act, 1981 (West Bengal Act 37 of 1981).

254. The West Bengal Land Holding Revenue (Amendment) Act, 1982 (West Bengal Act 23 of 1982).

255. The Calcutta Thikka Tenancy (Acquisition and Regulation) (Amendment) Act, 1984 (West Bengal Act 41 of 1984).

256. The Mahe Land Reforms Act, 1968 (Pondicherry Act 1 of 1968).

257. The Mahe Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1980 (Pondicherry Act 1 of 1981).]

¹[257A. The Tamil Nadu Backward Classes, Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes (Reservation of Seats in Educational Institutions and of appointments or posts in the Services under the State) Act, 1993 (Tamil Nadu Act 45 of 1994).]

1. Entry 257A ins. by the Constitution (Seventy-sixth Amendment) Act, 1994, s. 2 (w.e.f. 31-8-1994).

¹[258. The Bihar Privileged Persons Homestead Tenancy Act, 1947 (Bihar Act 4 of 1948).

259. The Bihar Consolidation of Holdings and Prevention of Fragmentation Act, 1956 (Bihar Act 22 of 1956).

260. The Bihar Consolidation of Holdings and Prevention of Fragmentation (Amendment) Act, 1970 (Bihar Act 7 of 1970).

261. The Bihar Privileged Persons Homestead Tenancy (Amendment) Act, 1970 (Bihar Act 9 of 1970).

262. The Bihar Consolidation of Holdings and Prevention of Fragmentation (Amendment) Act, 1973 (Bihar Act 27 of 1975).

263. The Bihar Consolidation of Holdings and Prevention of Fragmentation (Amendment) Act, 1981 (Bihar Act 35 of 1982).

264. The Bihar Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling Area and Acquisition of Surplus Land) (Amendment) Act, 1987 (Bihar Act 21 of 1987).

265. The Bihar Privileged Persons Homestead Tenancy (Amendment) Act, 1989 (Bihar Act 11 of 1989).

266. The Bihar Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1989 (Bihar Act 11 of 1990).

267. The Karnataka Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes (Prohibition of Transfer of Certain Lands) (Amendment) Act, 1984 (Karnataka Act 3 of 1984).

268. The Kerala Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1989 (Kerala Act 16 of 1989).

269. The Kerala Land Reforms (Second Amendment) Act, 1989 (Kerala Act 2 of 1990).

270. The Orissa Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1989 (Orissa Act 9 of 1990).

271. The Rajasthan Tenancy (Amendment) Act, 1979 (Rajasthan Act 16 of 1979).

272. The Rajasthan Colonisation (Amendment) Act, 1987 (Rajasthan Act 2 of 1987).

273. The Rajasthan Colonisation (Amendment) Act, 1989 (Rajasthan Act 12 of 1989).

1. Entries 258 to 284 ins. by the Constitution (Seventy-eighth Amendment) Act, 1995, s. 2 (w.e.f. 30-8-1995).

274. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Amendment Act, 1983 (Tamil Nadu Act 3 of 1984).

275. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Amendment Act, 1986 (Tamil Nadu Act 57 of 1986).

276. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) Second Amendment Act, 1987 (Tamil Nadu Act 4 of 1988).

277. The Tamil Nadu Land Reforms (Fixation of Ceiling on Land) (Amendment) Act, 1989 (Tamil Nadu Act 30 of 1989).

278. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1981 (West Bengal Act 50 of 1981).

279. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1986 (West Bengal Act 5 of 1986).

280. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Second Amendment) Act, 1986 (West Bengal Act 19 of 1986).

281. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Third Amendment) Act, 1986 (West Bengal Act 35 of 1986).

282. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1989 (West Bengal Act 23 of 1989).

283. The West Bengal Land Reforms (Amendment) Act, 1990 (West Bengal Act 24 of 1990).

284. The West Bengal Land Reforms Tribunal Act, 1991 (West Bengal Act 12 of 1991).]

Explanation:—Any acquisition made under the Rajasthan Tenancy Act, 1955 (Rajasthan Act 3 of 1955), in contravention of the second proviso to clause(1) of article 31A shall, to the extent of the contravention, be void.]

¹[TENTH SCHEDULE
[Articles 102(2) and 191(2)]

Provisions as to disqualification on ground of defection

1. Interpretation.—In this Schedule, unless the context otherwise requires,—

(a) "House" means either House of Parliament or the Legislative Assembly or, as the case may be, either House of the Legislature of a State;

(b) "legislature party", in relation to a member of a House belonging to any political party in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 2 or ^{2***} paragraph 4, means the group consisting of all the members of that House for the time being belonging to that political party in accordance with the said provisions;

(c) "original political party", in relation to a member of a House, means the political party to which he belongs for the purposes of subparagraph (1) of paragraph 2;

(d) "paragraph" means a paragraph of this Schedule.

2. Disqualification on ground of defection.—(1) Subject to the provisions of ³[paragraphs 4 and 5], a member of a House belonging to any political party shall be disqualified for being a member of the House—

(a) if he has voluntarily given up his membership of such political party; or

(b) if he votes or abstains from voting in such House contrary to any direction issued by the political party to which he belongs or by any person or authority authorised by it in this behalf, without obtaining, in either case, the prior permission of such political party, person or authority and such voting or abstention has not been condoned by such political party, person or authority within fifteen days from the date of such voting or abstention.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this sub-paragraph,—

(a) an elected member of a House shall be deemed to belong to the political party, if any, by which he was set up as a candidate for election as such member;

(b) a nominated member of a House shall,—

1. Tenth Schedule added by the Constitution (Fifty-second Amendment) Act, 1985, s. 6 (w.e.f. 1-3-1985).

2. Certain words omitted by the Constitution (Ninety-first Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 5 (w.e.f. 1-1-2004).

3. Subs. by s. 5, *ibid.*, for "paragraphs 3, 4 and 5" (w.e.f. 1-1-2004).

(i) where he is a member of any political party on the date of his nomination as such member, be deemed to belong to such political party;

(ii) in any other case, be deemed to belong to the political party of which he becomes, or, as the case may be, first becomes, a member before the expiry of six months from the date on which he takes his seat after complying with the requirements of article 99 or, as the case may be, article 188.

(2) An elected member of a House who has been elected as such otherwise than as a candidate set up by any political party shall be disqualified for being a member of the House if he joins any political party after such election.

(3) A nominated member of a House shall be disqualified for being a member of the House if he joins any political party after the expiry of six months from the date on which he takes his seat after complying with the requirements of article 99 or, as the case may be, article 188.

(4) Notwithstanding anything contained in the foregoing provisions of this paragraph, a person who, on the commencement of the Constitution (Fifty-second Amendment) Act, 1985, is a member of a House (whether elected or nominated as such) shall,—

(i) where he was a member of political party immediately before such commencement, be deemed, for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph, to have been elected as a member of such House as a candidate set up by such political party;

(ii) in any other case, be deemed to be an elected member of the House who has been elected as such otherwise than as a candidate set up by any political party for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) of this paragraph or, as the case may be, be deemed to be a nominated member of the House for the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) of this paragraph.

^{1*} * * * *

4. Disqualification on ground of defection not to apply in case of merger.— (1) A member of a House shall not be disqualified under sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 2 where his original political party merges with another political party and he claims that he and any other members of his original political party—

(a) have become members of such other political party or, as the case may be, of a new political party formed by such merger; or

(b) have not accepted the merger and opted to function as a separate group,

1. Paragraph 3 omitted by the Constitution (Ninety-first Amendment) Act, 2003, s. 5 (w.e.f. 1-1-2004).

and from the time of such merger, such other political party or new political party or group, as the case may be, shall be deemed to be the political party to which he belongs for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 2 and to be his original political party for the purposes of this sub-paragraph.

(2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph, the merger of the original political party of a member of a House shall be deemed to have taken place if, and only if, not less than two-thirds of the members of the legislature party concerned have agreed to such merger.

5. Exemption.—Notwithstanding anything contained in this Schedule, a person who has been elected to the office of the Speaker or the Deputy Speaker of the House of the People or the Deputy Chairman of the Council of States or the Chairman or the Deputy Chairman of the Legislative Council of a State or the Speaker or the Deputy Speaker of the Legislative Assembly of a State, shall not be disqualified under this Schedule,—

(a) if he, by reason of his election to such office, voluntarily gives up the membership of the political party to which he belonged immediately before such election and does not, so long as he continues to hold such office thereafter, rejoin that political party or become a member of another political party; or

(b) if he, having given up by reason of his election to such office his membership of the political party to which he belonged immediately before such election, rejoins such political party after he ceases to hold such office.

6. Decision on questions as to disqualification on ground of defection.—(1) If any question arises as to whether a member of a House has become subject to disqualification under this Schedule, the question shall be referred for the decision of the Chairman or, as the case may be, the Speaker of such House and his decision shall be final:

Provided that where the question which has arisen is as to whether the Chairman or the Speaker of a House has become subject to such disqualification, the question shall be referred for the decision of such member of the House as the House may elect in this behalf and his decision shall be final.

(2) All proceedings under sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph in relation to any question as to disqualification of a member of a House under this Schedule shall be deemed to be proceedings in Parliament within the meaning of article 122 or, as the case may be, proceedings in the Legislature of a State within the meaning of article 212.

***7. Bar of jurisdiction of courts.**—Notwithstanding anything in this Constitution, no court shall have any jurisdiction in respect of any matter connected with the disqualification of a member of a House under this Schedule.

8. Rules.—(1) Subject to the provisions of sub-paragraph (2) of this paragraph, the Chairman or the Speaker of a House may make rules for giving effect to the provisions of this Schedule, and in particular, and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, such rules may provide for—

(a) the maintenance of registers or other records as to the political parties, if any, to which different members of the House belong;

(b) the report which the leader of a legislature party in relation to a member of a House shall furnish with regard to any condonation of the nature referred to in clause (b) of sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 2 in respect of such member, the time within which and the authority to whom such report shall be furnished;

(c) the reports which a political party shall furnish with regard to admission to such political party of any members of the House and the officer of the House to whom such reports shall be furnished; and

(d) the procedure for deciding any question referred to in sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 6 including the procedure for any inquiry which may be made for the purpose of deciding such question.

(2) The rules made by the Chairman or the Speaker of a House under sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph shall be laid as soon as may be after they are made before the House for a total period of thirty days which may be comprised in one session or in two or more successive sessions and shall take effect upon the expiry of the said period of thirty days unless they are sooner approved with or without modifications or disapproved by the House and where they are so approved, they shall take effect on such approval in the form in which they were laid or in such modified form, as the case may be, and where they are so disapproved, they shall be of no effect.

(3) The Chairman or the Speaker of a House may, without prejudice to the provisions of article 105 or, as the case may be, article 194, and to any other power which he may have under this Constitution direct that any wilful contravention by any person of the rules made under this paragraph may be dealt with in the same manner as a breach of privilege of the House.]

* Paragraph 7 declared invalid for want of ratification in accordance with the proviso to clause (2) of article 368 as per majority opinion in *Kihoto Hollohon Vs. Zachilhu and Others* A.I.R. 1993 SC 412.

¹[ELEVENTH SCHEDULE

(Article 243G)

1. Agriculture, including agricultural extension.
2. Land improvement, implementation of land reforms, land consolidation and soil conservation.
3. Minor irrigation, water management and watershed development.
4. Animal husbandry, dairying and poultry.
5. Fisheries.
6. Social forestry and farm forestry.
7. Minor forest produce.
8. Small scale industries, including food processing industries.
9. Khadi, village and cottage industries.
10. Rural housing.
11. Drinking water.
12. Fuel and fodder.
13. Roads, culverts, bridges, ferries, waterways and other means of communication.
14. Rural electrification, including distribution of electricity.
15. Non-conventional energy sources.
16. Poverty alleviation programme.
17. Education, including primary and secondary schools.
18. Technical training and vocational education.
19. Adult and non-formal education.
20. Libraries.
21. Cultural activities.
22. Markets and fairs.
23. Health and sanitation, including hospitals, primary health centres and dispensaries.
24. Family welfare.
25. Women and child development.
26. Social welfare, including welfare of the handicapped and mentally retarded.
27. Welfare of the weaker sections, and in particular, of the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes.
28. Public distribution system.
29. Maintenance of community assets.]

1. Eleventh Schedule added by the Constitution (Seventy-third Amendment) Act, 1992, s. 4 (w.e.f. 24-4-1993).

¹[TWELFTH SCHEDULE

(Article 243W)

1. Urban planning including town planning.
2. Regulation of land-use and construction of buildings.
3. Planning for economic and social development.
4. Roads and bridges.
5. Water supply for domestic, industrial and commercial purposes.
6. Public health, sanitation conservancy and solid waste management.
7. Fire services.
8. Urban forestry, protection of the environment and promotion of ecological aspects.
9. Safeguarding the interests of weaker sections of society, including the handicapped and mentally retarded.
10. Slum improvement and upgradation.
11. Urban poverty alleviation.
12. Provision of urban amenities and facilities such as parks, gardens, playgrounds.
13. Promotion of cultural, educational and aesthetic aspects.
14. Burials and burial grounds; cremations, cremation grounds; and electric crematoriums.
15. Cattle pounds; prevention of cruelty to animals.
16. Vital statistics including registration of births and deaths.
17. Public amenities including street lighting, parking lots, bus stops and public conveniences.
18. Regulation of slaughter houses and tanneries.]

1. Twelfth Schedule added by the Constitution (Seventy-fourth Amendment) Act, 1992, s. 4 (w.e.f. 1-6-1993).

APPENDIX I
THE CONSTITUTION (ONE HUNDREDTH AMENDMENT)
ACT, 2015

[28th May, 2015.]

An Act further to amend the Constitution of India to give effect to the acquiring of territories by India and transfer of certain territories to Bangladesh in pursuance of the agreement and its protocol entered into between the Governments of India and Bangladesh.

BE it enacted by Parliament in the Sixty-sixth Year of the Republic of India as follows:—

1. Short title.—This Act may be called the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015.

2. Definitions.—In this Act,—

(a) “acquired territory” means so much of the territories comprised in the India-Bangladesh agreement and its protocol and referred to in the First Schedule as are demarcated for the purpose of being acquired by India from Bangladesh in pursuance of the agreement and its protocol referred to in clause (c);

(b) “appointed day” means such date as the Central Government may, by notification in the Official Gazette, appoint as the date for acquisition of territories from Bangladesh and transfer of the territories to Bangladesh in pursuance of the India-Bangladesh agreement and its protocol, after causing the territories to be so acquired and transferred as referred to in the First Schedule and Second Schedule and demarcated for the purpose;

(c) “India-Bangladesh agreement” means the agreement between the Government of the Republic of India and the Government of the People’s Republic of Bangladesh concerning the Demarcation of the Land Boundary between India and Bangladesh and Related Matters dated the 16th day of May, 1974, Exchange of Letters dated the 26th day of December, 1974, the 30th day of December, 1974, the 7th day of October, 1982, the 26th day of March, 1992 and protocol to the said agreement dated the 6th day of September, 2011, entered into between the Governments of India and Bangladesh, the relevant extracts of which are set out in the Third Schedule;

* 31st day of July, 2015, *vide* notification No. S.O. 2094(E), dated 31st July, 2015.

(d) “transferred territory”, means so much of the territories comprised in the India-Bangladesh agreement and its protocol and referred to in the Second Schedule as are demarcated for the purpose of being transferred by India to Bangladesh in pursuance of the agreements and its protocol referred to in clause (c).

3. Amendment of First Schedule to Constitution.— As from the appointed day, in the First Schedule to the Constitution,—

(a) in the paragraph relating to the territories of the State of Assam, the words, brackets and figures “and the territories referred to in Part I of the Second Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015, notwithstanding anything contained in clause (a) of section 3 of the Constitution (Ninth Amendment) Act, 1960, so far as it relates to the territories referred to in Part I of the Second Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015”, shall be added at the end;

(b) in the paragraph relating to the territories of the State of West Bengal, the words, brackets and figures “and also the territories referred to in Part III of the First Schedule but excluding the territories referred to in Part III of the Second Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015, notwithstanding anything contained in clause (c) of section 3 of the Constitution (Ninth Amendment) Act, 1960, so far as it relates to the territories referred to in Part III of the First Schedule and the territories referred to in Part III of the Second Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015”, shall be added at the end;

(c) in the paragraph relating to the territories of the State of Meghalaya, the words, brackets and figures “and the territories referred to in Part I of the First Schedule but excluding the territories referred to in Part II of the Second Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015”, shall be added at the end;

(d) in the paragraph relating to the territories of the State of Tripura, the words, brackets and figures “and the territories referred to in Part II of the First Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015, notwithstanding anything contained in clause (d) of section 3 of the Constitution (Ninth Amendment) Act, 1960, so far as it relates to the territories referred to in Part II of the First Schedule to the Constitution (One Hundredth Amendment) Act, 2015”, shall be added at the end.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

THE FIRST SCHEDULE*[See sections 2(a), 2(b) and 3]***PART I**

The acquired territory in relation to Article 2 of the agreement dated the 16th day of May, 1974 and Article 3 (I) (b) (ii) (iii) (iv) (v) of the protocol dated the 6th day of September, 2011.

PART II

The acquired territory in relation to Article 2 of the agreement dated the 16th day of May, 1974 and Article 3 (I) (c) (i) of the protocol dated the 6th day of September, 2011.

PART III

The acquired territory in relation to Articles 1(12) and 2 of the agreement dated the 16th day of May, 1974 and Articles 2 (II), 3 (I) (a) (iii) (iv) (v) (vi) of the protocol dated the 6th day of September, 2011.

THE SECOND SCHEDULE*[See sections 2(b), 2(d) and 3]***PART I**

The transferred territory in relation to Article 2 of the agreement dated 16th day of May, 1974 and Article 3 (I) (d) (i) (ii) of the protocol dated 6th day of September, 2011.

PART II

The transferred territory in relation to Article 2 of the agreement dated the 16th day of May, 1974 and Article 3 (I) (b) (i) of the protocol dated 6th day of September, 2011.

PART III

The transferred territory in relation to Articles 1(12) and 2 of the agreement dated the 16th day of May, 1974 and Articles 2 (II), 3 (I) (a) (i) (ii) (vi) of the protocol dated the 6th day of September, 2011.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

THE THIRD SCHEDULE

[See section 2(c)]

I. EXTRACTS FROM THE AGREEMENT BETWEEN GOVERNMENT OF THE REPUBLIC OF INDIA AND THE GOVERNMENT OF THE PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF BANGLADESH CONCERNING THE DEMARCATON OF THE LAND BOUNDARY BETWEEN INDIA AND BANGLADESH AND RELATED MATTERS DATED THE 16TH DAY OF MAY, 1974

Article 1 (12): ENCLAVES

The Indian enclaves in Bangladesh and the Bangladesh enclaves in India should be exchanged expeditiously, excepting the enclaves mentioned in paragraph 14 without claim to compensation for the additional area going to Bangladesh.

Article 2:

The Governments of India and Bangladesh agree that territories in adverse possession in areas already demarcated in respect of which boundary strip maps are already prepared, shall be exchanged within six months of the signing of the boundary strip maps by the plenipotentiaries. They may sign the relevant maps as early as possible as and in any case not later than the 31st December, 1974. Early measures may be taken to print maps in respect of other areas where demarcation has already taken place. These should be printed by the 31st May, 1975 and signed by the plenipotentiaries thereafter in order that the exchange of adversely held possessions in these areas may take place by the 31st December, 1975. In sectors still to be demarcated, transfer of territorial jurisdiction may take place within six months of the signature by plenipotentiaries on the concerned boundary strip maps.

II. EXTRACTS FROM THE PROTOCOL TO THE AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENT OF THE REPUBLIC OF INDIA AND THE GOVERNMENT OF THE PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF BANGLADESH CONCERNING THE DEMARCATON OF THE LAND BOUNDARY BETWEEN INDIA AND BANGLADESH AND RELATED MATTERS, DATED THE 6TH DAY OF SEPTEMBER, 2011

Article 2:

(II) Article 1 Clause 12 of the 1974 Agreement shall be implemented as follows:—

Enclaves

111 Indian Enclaves in Bangladesh and 51 Bangladesh Enclaves in India as per the jointly verified cadastral enclave maps and signed at the level of DGLR&S, Bangladesh and DLR&S, West Bengal (India) in April, 1997, shall be exchanged without claim to compensation for the additional areas going to Bangladesh.

Article 3:

(I) Article 2 of the 1974 Agreement shall be implemented as follows:—

The Government of India and the Government of Bangladesh agree that the boundary shall be drawn as a fixed boundary for territories held in Adverse Possession as determined through joint survey and fully depicted in the respective adversely possessed land area Index Map (APL map) finalised by the Land Records and Survey Departments of both the countries between December, 2010 and August, 2011, which are fully described in clause (a) to (d) below.

The relevant strip maps shall be printed and signed by the Plenipotentiaries and transfer of territorial jurisdiction shall be completed simultaneously with the exchange of enclaves. The demarcation of the boundary, as depicted in the above-mentioned Index Maps, shall be as under:—

(a) West Bengal Sector*(i) Bousmari – Madhugari (Kushtia-Nadia) area*

The boundary shall be drawn from the existing Boundary Pillar Nos. 154/5-S to 157/1-S to follow the centre of old course of river Mathabanga, as depicted in consolidation map of 1962, as surveyed jointly and agreed in June, 2011.

(ii) Andharkota (Kushtia-Nadia) area

The boundary shall be drawn from existing Boundary Pillar No. 152/5-S to Boundary Pillar No. 153/1-S to follow the edge of existing River Mathabanga as jointly surveyed and agreed in June, 2011.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

(iii) Pakuria (Kushtia-Nadia) area

The boundary shall be drawn from existing Boundary Pillar No. 151/1-S to Boundary Pillar No. 152/2-S to follow the edge of River Mathabanga as jointly surveyed and agreed in June, 2011.

(iv) Char Mahishkundi (Kushtia-Nadia) area

The boundary shall be drawn from existing Boundary Pillar No. 153/1-S to Boundary Pillar No. 153/9-S to follow the edge of River Mathabanga as jointly surveyed and agreed in June, 2011.

*(v) Haripal/Khutadah/Battoli/Sapameri/LNpur (Patari)
(Naogaon-Malda) area*

The boundary shall be drawn as line joining from existing Boundary Pillar No. 242/S/13, to Boundary Pillar No. 243/7-S/5 and as jointly surveyed and agreed in June, 2011.

(vi) Berubari (Panchagarh-Jalpaiguri area)

The boundary in the area Berubari (Panchagarh-Jalpaiguri) adversely held by Bangladesh, and Berubari and Singhapara-Khudipara (Panchagarh-Jalpaiguri), adversely held by India shall be drawn as jointly demarcated during 1996-1998.

(b) Meghalaya Sector

(i) Lobachera-Nuncherra

The boundary from existing Boundary Pillar No. 1315/4-S to Boundary Pillar No. 1315/15-S in Lailong - Balichera, Boundary Pillar No. 1316/1-S to Boundary Pillar No. 1316/11-S in Lailong- Nooncherra, Boundary Pillar No. 1317 to Boundary Pillar No. 1317/13-S in Lailong- Lahiling and Boundary Pillar No. 1318/1-S to Boundary Pillar No. 1318/2-S in Lailong- Lobhachera shall be drawn to follow the edge of tea gardens as jointly surveyed and agreed in December, 2010.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

(ii) Pyrdiwah/ Padua Area

The boundary shall be drawn from existing Boundary Pillar No. 1270/1-S as per jointly surveyed and mutually agreed line till Boundary Pillar No. 1271/1-T. The Parties agree that the Indian Nationals from Pyrdiwah village shall be allowed to draw water from Piyang River near point No. 6 of the agreed Map.

(iii) Lyngkhat Area

(aa) Lyngkhat-I/Kulumcherra and Lyngkhat-II/Kulumcherra

The boundary shall be drawn from existing Boundary Pillar No. 1264/4-S to Boundary Pillar No. 1265 and BP No. 1265/6-S to 1265/9-S as per jointly surveyed and mutually agreed line.

(ab) Lyngkhat-III/Sonarhat

The boundary shall be drawn from existing Boundary Pillar No. 1266/13-S along the nallah southwards till it meets another nallah in the east-west direction, thereafter it shall run along the northern edge of the nallah in east till it meets the existing International Boundary north of Reference Pillar Nos. 1267/4-R-B and 1267/3-R-I.

(iv) Dawki/Tamabil area

The boundary shall be drawn by a straight line joining existing Boundary Pillar Nos. 1275/1-S to Boundary Pillar Nos. 1275/7-S. The Parties agree to fencing on ‘zero line’ in this area.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

*(v) Naljuri/Sreepur Area**(aa) Naljuri I*

The boundary shall be a line from the existing Boundary Pillar No. 1277/2-S in southern direction up to three plots as depicted in the strip Map No. 166 till it meets the nallah flowing from Boundary Pillar No. 1277/5-T, thereafter it will run along the western edge of the nallah in the southern direction up to 2 plots on the Bangladesh side, thereafter it shall run eastwards till it meets a line drawn in southern direction from Boundary Pillar No. 1277/4-S.

(ab) Naljuri III

The boundary shall be drawn by a straight line from existing Boundary Pillar No. 1278/2-S to Boundary Pillar No. 1279/ 3-S.

(vi) Muktapur/ Dibir Hawor Area

The Parties agree that the Indian Nationals shall be allowed to visit Kali Mandir and shall also be allowed to draw water and exercise fishing rights in the water body in the Muktapur / Dibir Hawor area from the bank of Muktapur side.

(c) Tripura Sector

Chandannagar-Champarai Tea Garden area in Tripura/Moulvi Bazar sector

The boundary shall be drawn along Sonaraichhera river from existing Boundary Pillar No. 1904 to Boundary Pillar No. 1905 as surveyed jointly and agreed in July, 2011.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

(d) Assam Sector*(i) Kalabari (Boroibari) area in Assam sector*

The boundary shall be drawn from existing Boundary Pillar No. 1066/24-T to Boundary Pillar No. 1067/16-T as surveyed jointly and agreed in August, 2011.

(ii) Pallathal area in Assam sector

The boundary shall be drawn from existing Boundary Pillar No. 1370/3-S to 1371/ 6-S to follow the outer edge of the tea garden and from Boundary Pillar No. 1372 to 1373/2-S along outer edge of the pan plantation.

III. LIST OF EXCHANGE OF ENCLAVES BETWEEN INDIA AND BANGLADESH IN PURSUANT TO ARTICLE 1 (12) OF THE AGREEMENT DATED 16TH MAY, 1974 AND THE PROTOCOL TO THE AGREEMENT DATED 6TH SEPTEMBER, 2011

A. EXCHANGEABLE INDIAN ENCLAVES IN BANGLADESH WITH AREA

Sl.	Name of Chhits No.	Chhit No.	Lying within Police station Bangladesh	Lying within Police station in W. Bengal	Area acres
1	2	3	4	5	6

A. Enclaves with independent chhits

1.	Garati	75	Pochagar	Haldibari	58.23
2.	Garati	76	Pochagar	Haldibari	0.79
3.	Garati	77	Pochagar	Haldibari	18
4.	Garati	78	Pochagar	Haldibari	958.66
5.	Garati	79	Pochagar	Haldibari	1.74
6.	Garati	80	Pochagar	Haldibari	73.75
7.	Bingimari Part-I	73	Pochagar	Haldibari	6.07

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

1	2	3	4	5	6
8.	Nazirganja	41	Boda	Haldibari	58.32
9.	Nazirganja	42	Boda	Haldibari	434.29
10.	Nazirganja	44	Boda	Haldibari	53.47
11.	Nazirganja	45	Boda	Haldibari	1.07
12.	Nazirganja	46	Boda	Haldibari	17.95
13.	Nazirganja	47	Boda	Haldibari	3.89
14.	Nazirganja	48	Boda	Haldibari	73.27
15.	Nazirganja	49	Boda	Haldibari	49.05
16.	Nazirganja	50	Boda	Haldibari	5.05
17.	Nazirganja	51	Boda	Haldibari	0.77
18.	Nazirganja	52	Boda	Haldibari	1.04
19.	Nazirganja	53	Boda	Haldibari	1.02
20.	Nazirganja	54	Boda	Haldibari	3.87
21.	Nazirganja	55	Boda	Haldibari	12.18
22.	Nazirganja	56	Boda	Haldibari	54.04
23.	Nazirganja	57	Boda	Haldibari	8.27
24.	Nazirganja	58	Boda	Haldibari	14.22
25.	Nazirganja	60	Boda	Haldibari	0.52
26.	Putimari	59	Boda	Haldibari	122.8
27.	Daikhata Chhat	38	Boda	Haldibari	499.21
28.	Salbari	37	Boda	Haldibari	1188.93
29.	Kajal Dighi	36	Boda	Haldibari	771.44
30.	Nataktoke	32	Boda	Haldibari	162.26
31.	Nataktoke	33	Boda	Haldibari	0.26
32.	Beuladanga Chhat	35	Boda	Haldibari	0.83
33.	Balapara Iagrabar	3	Debiganj	Haldibari	1752.44
34.	Bara Khankikharia Citaldaha	30	Dimla	Haldibari	7.71

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

1	2	3	4	5	6
35.	Bara Khankikharia Citaldaha	29	Dimla	Haldibari	36.83
36.	Barakhangir	28	Dimla	Haldibari	30.53
37.	Nagarjikobari	31	Dimla	Haldibari	33.41
38.	Kuchlibari	26	Patgram	Mekliganj	5.78
39.	Kuchlibari	27	Patgram	Mekliganj	2.04
40.	Bara Kuchlibari	Fragment of J.L. 107 of P.S Mekliganj	Patgram	Mekliganj	4.35
41.	Jamaldaha- Balapukhari	6	Patgram	Mekliganj	5.24
42.	Uponchowki kuchlibari	115/2	Patgram	Mekliganj	0.32
43.	Uponchowki kuchlibari	7	Patgram	Mekliganj	44.04
44.	Bhothnri	11	Patgram	Mekliganj	36.83
45.	Balapukhari	5	Patgram	Mekliganj	55.91
46.	Bara Khangir	4	Patgram	Mekliganj	50.51
47.	Bara Khangir	9	Patgram	Mekliganj	87.42
48.	Chhat Bogdokra	10	Patgram	Mekliganj	41.7
49.	Ratanpur	11	Patgram	Mekliganj	58.91
50.	Bogdokra	12	Patgram	Mekliganj	25.49
51.	Fulker Dabri	Fragment of J.L. 107 of P.S Mekliganj	Patgram	Mekliganj	0.88

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

1	2	3	4	5	6
52.	Kharkharia	15	Patgram	Mekliganj	60.74
53.	Kharkharia	13	Patgram	Mekliganj	51.62
54.	Lotamari	14	Patgram	Mekliganj	110.92
55.	Bhotbari	16	Patgram	Mekliganj	205.46
56.	Komat Changrabandha	16A	Patgram	Mekliganj	42.8
57.	Komat Changrabandha	17A	Patgram	Mekliganj	16.01
58.	Panisala	17	Patgram	Mekliganj	137.66
59.	Dwarikamari Khasbash	18	Patgram	Mekliganj	36.5
60.	Panisala	153/P	Patgram	Mekliganj	0.27
61.	Panisala	153/O	Patgram	Mekliganj	18.01
62.	Panisala	19	Patgram	Mekliganj	64.63
63.	Panisala	21	Patgram	Mekliganj	51.4
64.	Lotamari	20	Patgram	Mekliganj	283.53
65.	Lotamari	22	Patgram	Mekliganj	98.85
66.	Dwarikamari	23	Patgram	Mekliganj	39.52
67.	Dwarikamari	25	Patgram	Mekliganj	45.73
68.	Chhat Bhothat	24	Patgram	Mekliganj	56.11
69.	Baakata	131	Patgram	Hathabhanga	22.35
70.	Baakata	132	Patgram	Hathabhanga	11.96
71.	Baakata	130	Patgram	Hathibhanga	20.48
72.	Bhogramguri	133	Patgram	Hathibhanga	1.44
73.	Chenakata	134	Patgram	Mekliganj	7.81
74.	Banskata	119	Patgram	Mathabanga	413.81
75.	Banskata	120	Patgram	Mathabanga	30.75
76.	Banskata	121	Patgram	Mathabanga	12.15
77.	Banskata	113	Patgram	Mathabanga	57.86
78.	Banskata	112	Patgram	Mathabanga	315.04
79.	Banskata	114	Patgram	Mathabanga	0.77

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

1	2	3	4	5	6
80.	Banskata	115	Patgram	Mathabanga	29.2
81.	Banskata	122	Patgram	Mathabanga	33.22
82.	Banskata	127	Patgram	Mathabanga	12.72
83.	Banskata	128	Patgram	Mathabanga	2.33
84.	Banskata	117	Patgram	Mathabanga	2.55
85.	Banskata	118	Patgram	Mathabanga	30.98
86.	Banskata	125	Patgram	Mathabanga	0.64
87.	Banskata	126	Patgram	Mathabanga	1.39
88.	Banskata	129	Patgram	Mathabanga	1.37
89.	Banskata	116	Patgram	Mathabanga	16.96
90.	Banskata	123	Patgram	Mathabanga	24.37
91.	Banskata	124	Patgram	Mathabanga	0.28
92.	Gotamari Chhit	135	Hatibandha	Sitalkuchi	126.59
93.	Gotamari Chhit	136	Hatibandha	Sitalkuchi	20.02
94.	Banapachai	151	Lalmonirhat	Dinhata	217.29
95.	Banapachai Bhitarkuthi	152	Lalmonirhat	Dinhata	81.71
96.	Dasiar Chhara	150	Fulbari	Dinhata	1643.44
97.	Dakurhat- Dakinirkuthi	156	Kurigram	Dinhata	14.27
98.	Kalamati	141	Bhurungamari	Dinhata	21.21
99.	Bhahobganj	153	Bhurungamari	Dinhata	31.58
100.	Baotikursa	142	Bhurungamari	Dinhata	45.63
101.	Bara Coachulka	143	Bhurungamari	Dinhata	39.99
102.	Gaochulka II	147	Bhurungamari	Dinhata	0.9
103.	Gaochulka I	146	Bhurungamari	Dinhata	8.92
104.	Dighaltari II	145	Bhurungamari	Dinhata	8.81
105.	Dighaltari I	144	Bhurungamari	Dinhata	12.31
106.	Chhoto Garajjhora II	149	Bhurungamari	Dinhata	17.85

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

1	2	3	4	5	6
107.	Chhoto Garajjhora I	148	Bhurungamari	Dinhata	35.74
108.	1 chhit* without name & JL No. at the southern and of JL No. 38 & southern and of JL No. 39 (locally known as Ashokabari**)		Patgram	Mathabhanga	3.5

Enclaves with Fragmented Chhits

109.	(i) Bewladanga	34	Haldibari	Boda	862.46
	(ii) Bewladanga	Fragment	Haldibari	Debiganj	
110.	(i) Kotbhajni	2	Haldibari	Debiganj	2012.27
	(ii) Kotbhajni	Fragment	Haldibari	Debiganj	
	(iii) Kotbhajni	Fragment	Haldibari	Debiganj	
	(iv) Kotbhajni	Fragment	Haldibari	Debiganj	
111.	(i) Dahala	Khagrabri	Haldibari	Debiganj	2650.35
	(ii) Dahala	Fragment	Haldibari	Debiganj	
	(iii) Dahala	Fragment	Haldibari	Debiganj	
	(iv) Dahala	Fragment	Haldibari	Debiganj	

* Corrected *vide* 150th (54th) India-Bangladesh Boundary Conference held at Kolkata from 29th September to 2nd October, 2002.

** Corrected *vide* 152nd (56th) India-Bangladesh Boundary Conference held at Kochbihar, India from 18th—20th September, 2003.

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

1	2	3	4	5	6
	(v) Dahala	Fragment	Haldibari	Debiganj	
	(vi) Dahala	Fragment	Haldibari	Debiganj	
17160.63					

The above given details of enclaves have been jointly compared and reconciled with records held by India and Bangladesh during the Indo-Bangladesh Conference held at Calcutta during 9th—12th October, 1996 as well as during joint field inspection at Jalpaiguri (West Bengal) Panchagarh (Bangladesh) sector during 21—24 November, 1996.

Note: Name of enclave in Sl. No. 108 above has been identified as Ashokabari by joint ground verification during field season 1996-97.

Brig. J.R. Peter
Director Land Records & Survey
(*Ex-Officio*) West Bengal, India &
Director, Eastern Circle Survey of
India, Calcutta.

Md. Shafi Uddin
Director-General, Land Records
and Surveys, Bangladesh.

B. EXCHANGEABLE BANGLADESH ENCLAVES IN INDIA WITH AREA

Sl. No.	Name of Chhits	Lying within Police station W. Bengal	Lying within Police station Bangladesh	J.L. No.	Area in acres
1	2	3	4	5	6

A. Enclaves with independent chhits

1.	Chhit Kuchlibari	Mekliganj	Patgram	22	370.64
2.	Chhit Land of Kuchlibari	Mekliganj	Patgram	24	1.83
3.	Balapukhari	Mekliganj	Patgram	21	331.64
4.	Chhit Land of Panbari No. 2	Mekliganj	Patgram	20	1.13

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

1	2	3	4	5	6
5.	Chhit Panbari	Mekliganj	Patgram	18	108.59
6.	Dhabalsati Mirgipur	Mekliganj	Patgram	15	173.88
7.	Bamandal	Mekliganj	Patgram	11	2.24
8.	Chhit Dhabalsati	Mekliganj	Patgram	14	66.58
9.	Dhabalsati	Mekliganj	Patgram	13	60.45
10.	Srirampur	Mekliganj	Patgram	8	1.05
11.	Jote Nijjama	Mekliganj	Patgram	3	87.54
12.	Chhit Land of Jagatber No. 3	Mathabhanga	Patgram	37	69.84
13.	Chhit Land of Jagatber No.1	Mathabhanga	Patgram	35	30.66
14.	Chhit Land of Jagatber No. 2	Mathabhanga	Patgram	36	27.09
15.	Chhit Kokoabari	Mathabhanga	Patgram	47	29.49
16.	Chhit Bhandardaha	Mathabhanga	Patgram	67	39.96
17.	Dhabalguri	Mathabhanga	Patgram	52	12.5
18.	Chhit Dhabalguri	Mathabhanga	Patgram	53	22.31
19.	Chhit Land of Dhabalguri No. 3	Mathabhanga	Patgram	70	1.33
20.	Chhit Land of Dhabalguri No. 4	Mathabhanga	Patgram	71	4.55
21.	Chhit Land of Dhabalguri No. 5	Mathabhanga	Patgram	72	4.12
22.	Chhit Land of Dhabalguri No. 1	Mathabhanga	Patgram	68	26.83
23.	Chhit Land of Dhabalguri No. 2	Mathabhanga	Patgram	69	13.95
24.	Mahishmari	Sitalkuchi	Patgram	54	122.77
25.	Bura Saradubi	Sitalkuchi	Hatibandha	13	34.96

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

1	2	3	4	5	6
26.	Falnapur	Sitalkuchi	Patgram	64	505.56
27.	Amjhol	Sitalkuchi	Hatibandha	57	1.25
28.	Kismat Batrigachh	Dinhata	Kaliganj	82	209.95
29.	Durgapur	Dinhata	Kaliganj	83	20.96
30.	Bansua Khamar Gitaldaha	Dinhata	Lalmonirhat	1	24.54
31.	Poaturkuthi	Dinhata	Lalmonirhat	37	589.94
32.	Paschim Bakalir Chhara	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	38	151.98
33.	Madhya Bakalir Chhara	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	39	32.72
34.	Purba Bakalir Chhara	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	40	12.23
35.	Madhya Masaldanga	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	3	136.66
36.	Madhya Chhit Masaldanga	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	8	11.87
37.	Paschim Chhit Masaldanga	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	7	7.6
38.	Uttar Masaldanga	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	2	27.29
39.	Kachua	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	5	119.74
40.	Uttar Bansjani	Tufanganj	Bhurungamari	1	47.17
41.	Chhat Tilai	Tufanganj	Bhurungamari	17	81.56
<i>B. Enclaves with Fragmented Chhits</i>					
42.	(i) Nalgram	Sitalkuchi	Patgarm	65	1397.34
	(ii) Nalgram (Fragment)	Sitalkuchi	Patgarm	65	
	(iii) Nalgram (Fragment)	Sitalkuchi	Patgarm	65	

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

1	2	3	4	5	6
43.	(i) Chhit Nalgram (ii) Chhit Nalgram (Fragment)	Sitalkuchi Sitalkuchi	Patgarm Patgarm	66 66	49.5
44.	(i) Batrigachh (ii) Batrigachh (Fragment) (iii) Batrigachh (Fragment)	Dinhata Dinhata Dinhata	Kaliganj Kaliganj Phulbari	81 81 9	577.37
45.	(i) Karala (ii) Karala (fragment) (iii) Karala (fragment)	Dinhata Dinhata Dinhata	Phulbari Phulbari Phulbari	9 9 8	269.91
46.	(i) Sipprasad Mustati (ii) Sipprasad Mustati (Fragment)	Dinhata Dinhata	Phulbari Phulbari	8 6	373.2
47.	(i) Dakshin Masaldanga (ii) Dakshin Masaldanga (Fragment) (iii) Dakshin Masaldanga (Fragment) (iv) Dakshin Masaldanga (Fragment) (v) Dakshin Masaldanga (Fragment) (vi) Dakshin Masaldanga (Fragment)	Dinhata Dinhata Dinhata Dinhata Dinhata Dinhata	Bhurungamari Bhurungamari Bhurungamari Bhurungamari Bhurungamari Bhurungamari	6 6 6 6 6 6	571.38

THE CONSTITUTION OF INDIA

(Appendix I)

1	2	3	4	5	6
48.	(i) Paschim Masaldanga	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	4	29.49
	(ii) Paschim Masaldanga (Fragment)	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	4	
49.	(i) Purba Chhit Masaldanga	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	10	35.01
	(ii) Purba Chhit Masaldanga (Fragment)	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	10	
50.	(i) Purba Masaldanga	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	11	153.89
	(ii) Purba Masaldanga (Fragment)	Dinhata	Bhurungamari	11	
51.	(i) Uttar Dhaldanga	Tufanganj	Bhurungamari	14	24.98
	(ii) Uttar Dhaldanga (Fragment)	Tufanganj	Bhurungamari	14	
	(iii) Uttar Dhaldanga (Fragment)	Tufanganj	Bhurungamari	14	
Total Area				7,110.02	

The above given details of enclaves have been jointly compared and reconciled with records held by India and Bangladesh during the Indo-Bangladesh Conference held at Calcutta during 9th—12th October, 1996 as well as during joint field inspection at Jalpaiguri (West Bengal) – Panchagarh (Bangladesh) sector during 21—24 November, 1996.

Brig. J.R. Peter
Director Land Records & Survey
(*Ex officio*) West Bengal, India &
Director, Eastern Circle Survey of
India, Calcutta.

Md. Shafi Uddin
Director General, Land Records
and Surveys, Bangladesh.

APPENDIX II

¹THE CONSTITUTION (APPLICATION TO JAMMU AND KASHMIR) ORDER, 2019

C.O. 272

In exercise of the powers conferred by clause (1) of article 370 of the Constitution, the President, with the concurrence of the Government of State of Jammu and Kashmir, is pleased to make the following Order:—

1. (1) This Order may be called the Constitution (Application to Jammu and Kashmir) Order, 2019.

(2) It shall come into force at once, and shall thereupon supersede the Constitution (Application to Jammu and Kashmir) Order, 1954 as amended from time to time.

2. All the provisions of the Constitution, as amended from time to time, shall apply in relation to the State of Jammu and Kashmir and the exceptions and modifications subject to which they shall so apply shall be as follows:—

To article 367, there shall be added the following clause, namely:—

“(4) For the purposes of this Constitution as it applies in relation to the State of Jammu and Kashmir—

(a) references to this Constitution or to the provisions thereof shall be construed as references to the Constitution or the provisions thereof as applied in relation to the said State;

(b) references to the person for the time being recognized by the President on the recommendation of the Legislative Assembly of the State as the Sadar-i-Riyasat of Jammu and Kashmir, acting on the advice of the Council of Ministers of the State for the time being in office, shall be construed as references to the Governor of Jammu and Kashmir;

(c) references to the Government of the said State shall be construed as including references to the Governor of Jammu and Kashmir acting on the advice of his Council of Ministers; and

(d) in proviso to clause (3) of article 370 of this Constitution, the expression “Constituent Assembly of the State referred to in clause (2)” shall read “Legislative Assembly of the State”.”

1.Published with the Ministry of Law and Justice, (Legislative Department) notification No. G.S.R. 551 (E), dated the 5th August, 2019, Gazette of India, Extraordinary, Part II, Section 3, Sub-section (i).

APPENDIX III

¹DECLARATION UNDER ARTICLE 370(3) OF THE CONSTITUTION

C.O. 273

In exercise of the powers conferred by clause (3) of article 370 read with clause (1) of article 370 of the Constitution of India, the President, on the recommendation of Parliament, is pleased to declare that, as from the 6th August, 2019, all clauses of the said article 370 shall cease to be operative except the following which shall read as under, namely:—

“370. All provisions of this Constitution, as amended from time to time, without any modifications or exceptions, shall apply to the State of Jammu and Kashmir notwithstanding anything contrary contained in article 152 or article 308 or any other article of this Constitution or any other provision of the Constitution of Jammu and Kashmir or any law, document, judgement, ordinance, order, by-law, rule, regulation, notification, custom or usage having the force of law in the territory of India, or any other instrument, treaty or agreement as envisaged under article 363 or otherwise.”.

1.Published with the Ministry of Law and Justice, (Legislative Department) notification No. G.S.R. 562(E), dated the 6th August, 2019, Gazette of India, Extraordinary, Part II, Section 3, Sub-section (i).

THE INDIAN PENAL CODE

ARRANGEMENT OF SECTIONS

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

PREAMBLE

SECTIONS

1. Title and extent of operation of the Code.
2. Punishment of offences committed within India.
3. Punishment of offences committed beyond, but which by law may be tried within, India.
4. Extension of Code to extra-territorial offences.
5. Certain laws not to be affected by this Act.

CHAPTER II

GENERAL EXPLANATIONS

6. Definitions in the Code to be understood subject to exceptions.
7. Sense of expression once explained.
8. Gender.
9. Number.
10. “Man”. “Woman”.
11. “Person”.
12. “Public”.
13. [Omitted.].
14. “Servant of Government”.
15. [Repealed.].
16. [Repealed.].
17. “Government”.
18. “India”.
19. “Judge”.
20. “Court of Justice”.
21. “Public servant”.
22. “Moveable property”.
23. “Wrongful gain”.
“Wrongful loss”.
Gaining wrongfully/ Losing wrongfully.
24. “Dishonestly”.
25. “Fraudulently”.
26. “Reason to believe”.
27. Property in possession of wife, clerk or servant.
28. “Counterfeit”.
29. “Document”.
- 29A. “Electronic record”.
30. “Valuable security”.
31. “A will”.
32. Words referring to acts include illegal omissions.
33. “Act”.
“Omission”.
34. Acts done by several persons in furtherance of common intention.
35. When such an act is criminal by reason of its being done with a criminal knowledge or intention.
36. Effect caused partly by act and partly by omission.
37. Co-operation by doing one of several acts constituting an offence.

SECTIONS

38. Persons concerned in criminal act may be guilty of different offences.
39. "Voluntarily".
40. "Offence".
41. "Special law".
42. "Local law".
43. "Illegal".
 "Legally bound to do".
44. "Injury".
45. "Life".
46. "Death".
47. "Animal".
48. "Vessel".
49. "Year".
 "Month".
50. "Section".
51. "Oath".
52. "Good faith".
- 52A. "Harbour".

CHAPTER III OF PUNISHMENTS

53. Punishments.
- 53A. Construction of reference to transportation.
54. Commutation of sentence of death.
55. Commutation of sentence of imprisonment for life.
- 55A. Definition of "appropriate Government".
56. [Repealed].
57. Fractions of terms of punishment.
58. [Repealed].
59. [Repealed].
60. Sentence may be (in certain cases of imprisonment) wholly or partly rigorous or simple.
61. [Repealed].
62. [Repealed].
63. Amount of fine.
64. Sentence of imprisonment for non-payment of fine.
65. Limit to imprisonment for non-payment of fine, when imprisonment and fine awardable.
66. Description of imprisonment for non-payment of fine.
67. Imprisonment for non-payment of fine, when offence punishable with fine only.
68. Imprisonment to terminate on payment of fine.
69. Termination of imprisonment on payment of proportional part of fine.
70. Fine leviable within six years, or during imprisonment. Death not to discharge property from liability.
71. Limit of punishment of offence made up of several offences.
72. Punishment of person guilty of one of several offences, the judgment stating that it is doubtful of which.
73. Solitary confinement.
74. Limit of solitary confinement.
75. Enhanced punishment for certain offences under Chapter XII or Chapter XVII after previous conviction.

CHAPTER IV GENERAL EXCEPTIONS

76. Act done by a person bound, or by mistake of fact believing himself bound, by law.
77. Act of Judge when acting judicially.
78. Act done pursuant to the judgment or order of Court.
79. Act done by a person justified, or by mistake of fact believing himself justified, by law.
80. Accident in doing a lawful act.
81. Act likely to cause harm, but done without criminal intent, and to prevent other harm.

SECTIONS

82. Act of a child under seven years of age.
83. Act of a child above seven and under twelve of immature understanding.
84. Act of a person of unsound mind.
85. Act of a person incapable of judgment by reason of intoxication caused against his will.
86. Offence requiring a particular intent or knowledge committed by one who is intoxicated.
87. Act not intended and not known to be likely to cause death or grievous hurt, done by consent.
88. Act not intended to cause death, done by consent in good faith for person's benefit.
89. Act done in good faith for benefit of child or insane person, by or by consent of guardian.
 Provisos.
 90. Consent known to be given under fear or misconception.
 Consent of insane person.
 Consent of child.
 91. Exclusion of acts which are offences independently of harm caused.
 92. Act done in good faith for benefit of a person without consent.
 Provisos.
 93. Communication made in good faith.
 94. Act to which a person is compelled by threats.
 95. Act causing slight harm.

Of the Right of Private Defence

96. Things done in private defence.
97. Right of private defence of the body and of property.
98. Right of private defence against the act of a person of unsound mind, etc.
99. Acts against which there is no right of private defence.
 Extent to which the right may be exercised.
 100. When the right of private defence of the body extends to causing death.
 101. When such right extends to causing any harm other than death.
 102. Commencement and continuance of the right of private defence of the body.
 103. When the right of private defence of property extends to causing death.
 104. When such right extends to causing any harm other than death.
 105. Commencement and continuance of the right of private defence of property.
 106. Right of private defence against deadly assault when there is risk of harm to innocent person.

CHAPTER V OF ABETMENT

107. Abetment of a thing.
108. Abettor.
- 108A. Abetment in Indian of offences outside India.
109. Punishment of a abetment if the act abetted is committed in consequence and where no express provision is made for its punishment.
110. Punishment of abetment if person abetted does act with different intention from that of abettor.
111. Liability of abettor when one act abetted and different act done.
112. Abettor when liable to cumulative punishment for act abetted and for act done.
113. Liability of abettor for an effect caused by the act abetted different from that intended by the abettor.
114. Abettor present when offence is committed.
115. Abetment of offence punishable with death or imprisonment for life.—if offence not committed.
 if act causing harm be done in consequence.
116. Abetment of offence punishable with imprisonment.—if offence be not committed.
 if abettor or person abetted be a public servant whose duty it is to prevent offence.
117. Abetting commission of offence by the public or by more than ten persons.
118. Concealing design to commit offence punishable with death or imprisonment for life.
 If offence be committed;
 if offence be not committed.
119. Public servant concealing design to commit offence which it is his duty to prevent.
 if offence be committed;
 if offence be punishable with death, etc.
 if offence be not committed.
120. Concealing design to commit offence punishable with imprisonment.
 if offence be committed;
 if offence be not committed.

CHAPTER VA CRIMINAL CONSPIRACY

SECTIONS

- 120A. Definition of criminal conspiracy.
- 120B. Punishment of criminal conspiracy.

CHAPTER VI OF OFFENCES AGAINST THE STATE

- 121. Waging or attempting to wage war or abetting waging of war against the Government of India.
- 121A. Conspiracy to commit offences punishable by section 121.
- 122. Collecting arms, etc., with intention of waging war against the Government of India.
- 123. Concealing with intent to facilitate design to wage war.
- 124. Assaulting President, Governor, etc., with intent to compel or restrain the exercise of any lawful power.
- 124A. Sedition.
- 125. Waging war against any Asiatic power in alliance with the Government of India.
- 126. Committing depredation on territories of power at peace with the Government of India.
- 127. Receiving property taken by war or depredation mentioned in sections 125 and 126.
- 128. Public servant voluntarily allowing prisoner of State or war to escape.
- 129. Public servant negligently suffering such prisoner to escape.
- 130. Aiding escape of, rescuing or harbouring such prisoner.

CHAPTER VII OF OFFENCES RELATING TO THE ARMY, NAVY AND AIR FORCE

- 131. Abetting mutiny, or attempting to seduce a soldier, sailor or airman from his duty.
- 132. Abetment of mutiny, if mutiny is committed in consequence thereof.
- 133. Abetment of assault by soldier, sailor or airman on his superior officer, when in execution of his office.
- 134. Abetment of such assault, if the assault is committed.
- 135. Abetment of desertion of soldier, sailor or airman.
- 136. Harbouuring deserter.
- 137. Deserter concealed on board merchant vessel through negligence of master.
- 138. Abetment of act of insubordination by soldier, sailor or airman.
- 138A. [Repealed].
- 139. Persons subject to certain Acts.
- 140. Wearing garb or carrying token used by soldier, sailor or airman.

CHAPTER VIII OF OFFENCES AGAINST THE PUBLIC TRANQUILLITY

- 141. Unlawful assembly.
- 142. Being member of unlawful assembly.
- 143. Punishment.
- 144. Joining unlawful assembly armed with deadly weapon.
- 145. Joining or continuing in unlawful assembly, knowing it has been commanded to disperse.
- 146. Rioting.
- 147. Punishment for rioting.
- 148. Rioting, armed with deadly weapon.
- 149. Every member of unlawful assembly guilty of offence committed in prosecution of common object.
- 150. Hiring, or conniving at hiring, of persons to join unlawful assembly.
- 151. Knowingly joining or continuing in assembly of five or more persons after it has been commanded to disperse.
- 152. Assaulting or obstructing public servant when suppressing riot, etc.
- 153. Want only giving provocation, with intent to cause riot—
if rioting be committed—if not committed.
- 153A. Promoting enmity between different groups on grounds of religion, race, place of birth, residence.
language, etc., and doing acts prejudicial to maintenance of harmony.
Offence committed in place of worship, etc.
- 153AA. Punishment for knowingly carrying arms in any procession or organizing, or holding or taking part in
any mass drill or mass training with arms.
- 153B. Imputation assertions prejudicial to national
integration.
- 154. Owner or occupier of land on which an unlawful assembly is held.
- 155. Liability of person for whose benefit riot is committed.
- 156. Liability of agent of owner or occupier for whose benefit riot is committed.
- 157. Harbouuring persons hired for an unlawful assembly.

SECTIONS

158. Being hired to take part in an unlawful assembly or riot.
or to go armed.

159. Affray.

160. Punishment for committing affray.

CHAPTER IX OF OFFENCES BY OR RELATING TO PUBLIC SERVANTS

161. [Repealed].

162. [Repealed].

163. [Repealed].

164. [Repealed].

165. [Repealed].

165A. [Repealed].

166. Public servant disobeying law, with intent to cause injury to any person.

166A. Public servant disobeying direction under law.

166B. Punishment for non-treatment of victim.

167. Public servant framing an incorrect document with intent to cause injury.

168. Public servant unlawfully engaging in trade.

169. Public servant unlawfully buying or bidding for property.

170. Personating a public servant.

171. Wearing garb or carrying token used by public servant with fraudulent intent.

CHAPTER IXA OF OFFENCES RELATING TO ELECTIONS

171A. "Candidate", "Electoral right" defined.

171B. Bribery.

171C. Undue influence at elections.

171D. Personation at elections.

171E. Punishment for bribery.

171F. Punishment for undue influence or personation at an election.

171G. False statement in connection with an election.

171H. Illegal payments in connection with an election.

171-I. Failure to keep election accounts.

CHAPTER X OF CONTEMPTS OF THE LAWFUL AUTHORITY OF PUBLIC SERVANTS

172. Absconding to avoid service or summons of other proceeding.

173. Preventing service of summons or other proceeding, or preventing publication thereof.

174. Non-attendance in obedience to an order from public servant.

174A. Non-appearance in response to a proclamation under section 82 of Act 2 of 1974.

175. Omission to produce document to public servant by person legally bound to produce it.

176. Omission to give notice or information to public servant by person legally bound to give it.

177. Furnishing false information.

178. Refusing oath or affirmation when duly required by public servant to make it.

179. Refusing to answer public servant authorised to question.

180. Refusing to sign statement.

181. False statement on oath or affirmation to public servant or person authorised to administer an oath or affirmation.

182. False information, with intent to cause public servant to use his lawful power to the injury of another person.

183. Resistance to the taking of property by the lawful authority of a public servant.

184. Obstructing sale of property offered for sale by authority of public servant.

185. Illegal purchase or bid for property offered for sale by authority of public servant.

186. Obstructing public servant in discharge of public functions.

187. Omission to assist public servant when bound by law to give assistance.

188. Disobedience to order duly promulgated by public servant.

189. Threat of injury to public servant.

190. Threat of injury to induce person to refrain from applying for protection to public servant.

CHAPTER XI OF FALSE EVIDENCE AND OFFENCES AGAINST PUBLIC JUSTICE

191. Giving false evidence.

SECTIONS

- 192. Fabricating false evidence.
- 193. Punishment for false evidence.
- 194. Giving or fabricating false evidence with intent to procure conviction of capital offence.
 - if innocent person be thereby convicted and executed.
- 195. Giving or fabricating false evidence with intent to procure conviction of offence punishable with imprisonment for life or imprisonment.
- 195A. Threatening any person to give false evidence.
- 196. Using evidence known to be false.
- 197. Issuing or signing false certificate.
- 198. Using as true a certificate known to be false.
- 199. False statement made in declaration which is by law receivable as evidence.
- 200. Using as true such declaration knowing it to be false.
- 201. Causing disappearance of evidence of offence, or giving false information, to screen offender—
 - if a capital offence;
 - if punishable with imprisonment for life;
 - if punishable with less than ten years' imprisonment.
- 202. Intentional omission to give information of offence by person bound to inform.
- 203. Giving false information respecting an offence committed.
- 204. Destruction of document to prevent its production as evidence.
- 205. False personation for purpose of act or proceeding in suit or prosecution.
- 206. Fraudulent removal or concealment of property to prevent its seizure as forfeited or in execution.
- 207. Fraudulent claim to property to prevent its seizure as forfeited or in execution.
- 208. Fraudulently suffering decree for sum not due.
- 209. Dishonestly making false claim in Court.
- 210. Fraudulently obtaining decree for sum not due.
- 211. False charge of offence made with intent to injure.
- 212. Harbouuring offender.—
 - if a capital offence;
 - if punishable with imprisonment for life, or with imprisonment.
- 213. Taking gift, etc., to screen an offender from punishment.—
 - if a capital offence;
 - if punishable with imprisonment for life, or with imprisonment.
- 214. Offering gift or restoration of property in consideration of screening offender—
 - if a capital offence;
 - if punishable with imprisonment for life, or with imprisonment.
- 215. Taking gift to help to recover stolen property, etc.
- 216. Harbouuring offender who has escaped from custody or whose apprehension has been ordered—
 - if a capital offence;
 - if punishable with imprisonment for life, or with imprisonment.
- 216A. Penalty for harbouring robbers or dacoits.
- 216B. [Repealed.]
- 217. Public servant disobeying direction of law with intent to save person from punishment or property from forfeiture.
- 218. Public servant framing incorrect record or writing with intent to save person from punishment or property from forfeiture.
- 219. Public servant in judicial proceeding corruptly making report, etc., contrary to law.
- 220. Commitment for trial or confinement by person having authority who knows that he is acting contrary to law.
- 221. Intentional omission to apprehend on the part of public servant bound to apprehend.
- 222. Intentional omission to apprehend on the part of public servant bound to apprehend person under sentence or lawfully committed.
- 223. Escape from confinement or custody negligently suffered by public servant.
- 224. Resistance or obstruction by a person to his lawful apprehension.
- 225. Resistance or obstruction to lawful apprehension of another person.
- 225A. Omission to apprehend, or sufferance of escape, on part of public servant, in cases not otherwise, provided for.
- 225B. Resistance or obstruction to lawful apprehension, or escape or rescue in cases not otherwise provided for.
- 226. [Repealed.]
- 227. Violation of condition of remission of punishment.
- 228. Intentional insult or interruption to public servant sitting in judicial proceeding.
- 228A. Disclosure of identity of the victim of certain offences, etc.
- 229. Personation of a juror or assessor.
- 229A. Failure by person released on bail or bond to appear in Court.

CHAPTER XII OF OFFENCES RELATING TO COIN AND GOVERNMENT STAMPS

SECTIONS

- 230. "Coin" defined.
 - Indian coin.
- 231. Counterfeiting coin.
- 232. Counterfeiting Indian coin.
- 233. Making or selling instrument for counterfeiting coin.
- 234. Making or selling instrument for counterfeiting Indian coin.
- 235. Possession of instrument or material for the purpose of using the same for counterfeiting coin:
 - if Indian coin.
- 236. Abetting in India the counterfeiting out of India of coin.
- 237. Import or export of counterfeit coin.
- 238. Import or export of counterfeits of the Indian coin.
- 239. Delivery of coin, possessed with knowledge that it is counterfeit.
- 240. Delivery of Indian coin, possessed with knowledge that it is counterfeit.
- 241. Delivery of coin as genuine, which, when first possessed, the deliverer did not know to be counterfeit.
- 242. Possession of counterfeit coin by person who knew it to be counterfeit when he became possessed thereof.
- 243. Possession of Indian coin by person who knew it to be counterfeit when he became possessed thereof.
- 244. Person employed in mint causing coin to be of different weight or composition from that fixed by law.
- 245. Unlawfully taking coining instrument from mint.
- 246. Fraudulently or dishonestly diminishing weight or altering composition of coin.
- 247. Fraudulently or dishonestly diminishing weight or altering composition of Indian coin.
- 248. Altering appearance of coin with intent that it shall pass as coin of different description.
- 249. Altering appearance of Indian coin with intent that it shall pass as coin of different description.
- 250. Delivery of coin, possessed with knowledge that it is altered.
- 251. Delivery of Indian coin, possessed with knowledge that it is altered.
- 252. Possession of coin by person who knew it to be altered when he became possessed thereof.
- 253. Possession of Indian coin by person who knew it to be altered when he became possessed thereof.
- 254. Delivery of coin as genuine, which, when first possessed, the deliverer did not know to be altered.
- 255. Counterfeiting Government stamp.
- 256. Having possession of instrument or material for counterfeiting Government stamp.
- 257. Making or selling instrument for counterfeiting Government stamp.
- 258. Sale of counterfeit Government stamp.
- 259. Having possession of counterfeit Government stamp.
- 260. Using as genuine a Government stamp known to be counterfeit.
- 261. Effacing writing from substance bearing Government stamp, or removing from document a stamp used for it, with intent to cause loss to Government.
- 262. Using Government stamp known to have been before used.
- 263. Erasure of mark denoting that stamp has been used.
- 263A. Prohibition of fictitious stamps.

CHAPTER XIII OF OFFENCES RELATING TO WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

- 264. Fraudulent use of false instrument for weighing.
- 265. Fraudulent use of false weight or measure.
- 266. Being in possession of false weight or measure.
- 267. Making or selling false weight or measure.

CHAPTER XIV OF OFFENCES AFFECTING THE PUBLIC HEALTH, SAFETY, CONVENIENCE, DECENCY AND MORALS

- 268. Public nuisance.
- 269. Negligent act likely to spread infection of disease dangerous to life.
- 270. Malignant act likely to spread infection of disease dangerous to life.
- 271. Disobedience to quarantine rule.
- 272. Adulteration of food or drink intended for sale.
- 273. Sale of noxious food or drink.
- 274. Adulteration of drugs.

SECTIONS

- 275. Sale of adulterated drugs.
- 276. Sale of drug as a different drug or preparation.
- 277. Fouling water of public spring or reservoir.
- 278. Making atmosphere noxious to health.
- 279. Rash driving or riding on a public way.
- 280. Rash navigation of vessel.
- 281. Exhibition of false light, mark or buoy.
- 282. Conveying person by water for hire in unsafe or overloaded vessel.
- 283. Danger or obstruction in public way or line of navigation.
- 284. Negligent conduct with respect to poisonous substance.
- 285. Negligent conduct with respect to fire or combustible matter.
- 286. Negligent conduct with respect to explosive substance.
- 287. Negligent conduct with respect to machinery.
- 288. Negligent conduct with respect to pulling down or repairing buildings.
- 289. Negligent conduct with respect to animal.
- 290. Punishment for public nuisance in cases not otherwise provided for.
- 291. Continuance of nuisance after injunction to discontinue.
- 292. Sale, etc., of obscene books, etc.
- 293. Sale, etc., of obscene objects to young person.
- 294. Obscene acts and songs.
- 294A. Keeping lottery office.

CHAPTER XV OF OFFENCES RELATING TO RELIGION

- 295. Injuring or defiling place of worship, with intent to insult the religion of any class.
- 295A. Deliberate and malicious acts, intended to outrage religious feelings of any class by insulting its religion or religious beliefs.
- 296. Disturbing religious assembly.
- 297. Trespassing on burial places, etc.
- 298. Uttering words, etc., with deliberate intent to wound the religious feelings.

CHAPTER XVI OF OFFENCES AFFECTING THE HUMAN BODY

Of offences affecting life

- 299. Culpable homicide.
- 300. Murder.
 - When culpable homicide is not murder.
- 301. Culpable homicide by causing death of person other than person whose death was intended.
- 302. Punishment for murder.
- 303. Punishment for murder by life-convict.
- 304. Punishment for culpable homicide not amounting to murder.
- 304A. Causing death by negligence.
- 304B. Dowry death.
- 305. Abetment of suicide of child or insane person.
- 306. Abetment of suicide.
- 307. Attempt to murder.
 - Attempts by life-convicts.
- 308. Attempt to commit culpable homicide.
- 309. Attempt to commit suicide.
- 310. Thug.
- 311. Punishment.

Of the causing of Miscarriage, of Injuries to unborn Children, of the Exposure of Infants, and of the concealment of Births

- 312. Causing miscarriage.
- 313. Causing miscarriage without woman's consent.
- 314. Death caused by act done with intent to cause miscarriage.
 - if act done without woman's consent.
- 315. Act done with intent to prevent child being born alive or to cause it to die after birth.
- 316. Causing death of quick unborn child by act amounting to culpable homicide.

SECTIONS

- 317. Exposure and abandonment of child under twelve years, by parent or person having care of it.
- 318. Concealment of birth by secret disposal of dead body.

Of Hurt

- 319. Hurt.
- 320. Grievous hurt.
- 321. Voluntarily causing hurt.
- 322. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt.
- 323. Punishment for voluntarily causing hurt.
- 324. Voluntarily causing hurt by dangerous weapons or means.
- 325. Punishment for voluntarily causing grievous hurt.
- 326. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt by dangerous weapons or means.
- 326A. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt by use of acid, etc.
- 326B. Voluntarily throwing or attempting to throw acid.
- 327. Voluntarily causing hurt to extort property, or to constrain to an illegal to an act.
- 328. Causing hurt by means of poison, etc., with intent to commit an offence.
- 329. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt to extort property, or to constrain to an illegal act.
- 330. Voluntarily causing hurt to extort confession, or to compel restoration of property.
- 331. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt to extort confession, or to compel restoration of property.
- 332. Voluntarily causing hurt to deter public servant from his duty.
- 333. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt to deter public servant from his duty.
- 334. Voluntarily causing hurt on provocation.
- 335. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt on provocation.
- 336. Act endangering life or personal safety of others.
- 337. Causing hurt by act endangering life or personal safety of others.
- 338. Causing grievous hurt by act endangering life or personal safety of others.

Of wrongful restraint and wrongful confinement

- 339. Wrongful restraint.
- 340. Wrongful confinement.
- 341. Punishment for wrongful restraint.
- 342. Punishment for wrongful confinement.
- 343. Wrongful confinement for three or more days.
- 344. Wrongful confinement for ten or more days.
- 345. Wrongful confinement of person for whose liberation writ has been issued.
- 346. Wrongful confinement in secret.
- 347. Wrongful confinement to extort property, or constrain to illegal act.
- 348. Wrongful confinement to extort confession, or compel restoration of property.

Of Criminal Force and Assault

- 349. Force.
- 350. Criminal force.
- 351. Assault.
- 352. Punishment for assault or criminal force otherwise than on grave provocation.
- 353. Assault or criminal force to deter public servant from discharge of his duty.
- 354. Assault of criminal force to woman with intent to outrage her modesty.
- 354A. Sexual harassment and punishment for sexual harassment.
- 354B. Assault or use of criminal force to woman with intent to disrobe.
- 354C. Voyeurism.
- 354D. Stalking.
- 355. Assault or criminal force with intent to dishonour person, otherwise than on grave provocation.
- 356. Assault or criminal force in attempt to commit theft of property carried by a person.
- 357. Assault or criminal force in attempt wrongfully to confine a person.
- 358. Assault or criminal force on grave provocation.

Of Kidnapping, abduction, slavery and forced labour

- 359. Kidnapping.
- 360. Kidnapping from India.
- 361. Kidnapping from lawful guardianship.
- 362. Abduction.
- 363. Punishment for kidnapping.
- 363A. Kidnapping or maiming a minor for purposes of begging.
- 364. Kidnapping or abducting in order to murder.

SECTIONS

- 364A. Kidnapping for ransom, etc.
- 365. Kidnapping or abducting with intent secretly and wrongfully to confine person.
- 366. Kidnapping, abducting or inducing woman to compel her marriage, etc.
- 366A. Procurement of minor girl.
- 366B. Importation of girl from foreign country.
- 367. Kidnapping or abducting in order to subject person to grievous hurt, slavery, etc.
- 368. Wrongfully concealing or keeping in confinement, kidnapped or abducted person.
- 369. Kidnapping or abducting child under ten years with intent to steal from its person.
- 370. Trafficking of person.
- 370A. Exploitation of a trafficked person.
- 371. Habitual dealing in slaves.
- 372. Selling minor for purposes of prostitution, etc.
- 373. Buying minor for purposes of prostitution, etc.
- 374. Unlawful compulsory labour.

Sexual offences

- 375. Rape.
- 376. Punishment for rape.
- 376A. Punishment for causing death or resulting in persistent vegetative state of victim.
- 376AB. Punishment for rape on woman under twelve years of age.
- 376B. Sexual intercourse by husband upon his wife during separation.
- 376C. Sexual intercourse by a person in authority.
- 376D. Gang rape.
- 376DA. Punishment for gang rape on woman under sixteen years of age.
- 376DB. Punishment for gang rape on woman under twelve years of age.
- 376E. Punishment for repeat offenders.

Of Unnatural offences

- 377. Unnatural offences.

CHAPTER XVII OF OFFENCES AGAINST PROPERTY *Of theft*

- 378. Theft.
- 379. Punishment for theft.
- 380. Theft in dwelling house, etc.
- 381. Theft by clerk or servant of property in possession of master.
- 382. Theft after preparation made for causing death, hurt or restraint in order to the committing of the theft.

Of extortion

- 383. Extortion.
- 384. Punishment for extortion.
- 385. Putting person in fear of injury in order to commit extortion.
- 386. Extortion by putting a person in fear of death on grievous hurt.
- 387. Putting person in fear of death or of grievous hurt, in order to commit extortion.
- 388. Extortion by threat of accusation of an offence punishable with death or imprisonment for life, etc.
- 389. Putting person in fear of accusation of offence, in order to commit extortion.

Of robbery and dacoity

- 390. Robbery.
 - When theft is robbery.
 - When extortion is robbery.
- 391. Dacoity.
- 392. Punishment for robbery.
- 393. Attempt to commit robbery.
- 394. Voluntarily causing hurt in committing robbery.
- 395. Punishment for dacoity.
- 396. Dacoity with murder.
- 397. Robbery, or dacoity, with attempt to cause death or grievous hurt.
- 398. Attempt to commit robbery or dacoity when armed with deadly weapon.
- 399. Making preparation to commit dacoity.
- 400. Punishment for belonging to gang of dacoits.
- 401. Punishment for belonging to gang of thieves.
- 402. Assembling for purpose of committing dacoity.

Of criminal misappropriation of property

SECTIONS

- 403. Dishonest misappropriation of property.
- 404. Dishonest misappropriation of property possessed by deceased person at the time of his death.

Of criminal breach of trust

- 405. Criminal breach of trust.
- 406. Punishment for criminal breach of trust.
- 407. Criminal breach of trust by carrier, etc.
- 408. Criminal breach of trust by clerk or servant.
- 409. Criminal breach of trust by public, servant. or by banker, merchant or agent.

Of the receiving of stolen property

- 410. Stolen property.
- 411. Dishonestly receiving stolen property.
- 412. Dishonestly receiving property stolen in the commission of a dacoity.
- 413. Habitually dealing in stolen property.
- 414. Assisting in concealment of stolen property.

Of Cheating

- 415. Cheating.
- 416. Cheating by personation.
- 417. Punishment for cheating.
- 418. Cheating with knowledge that wrongful loss may ensue to person whose interest offender is bound to protect.
- 419. Punishment for cheating by personation.
- 420. Cheating and dishonestly inducing delivery of property.

Of Fraudulent Deeds and Dispositions of Property

- 421. Dishonest or fraudulent removal or concealment of property to prevent distribution among creditor.
- 422. Dishonestly or fraudulently preventing debt being available for creditors.
- 423. Dishonest or fraudulent execution of deed of transfer containing false statement of consideration.
- 424. Dishonest or fraudulent removal or concealment of property.

Of mischief

- 425. Mischief.
- 426. Punishment for mischief.
- 427. Mischief causing damage to the amount of fifty rupees.
- 428. Mischief by killing or maiming animal of the value of ten rupees.
- 429. Mischief by killing or maiming cattle, etc., of any value or any animal of the value of fifty rupees.
- 430. Mischief by injury to works of irrigation or by wrongfully diverting water.
- 431. Mischief by injury to public road, bridge, river or channel.
- 432. Mischief by causing inundation or obstruction to public drainage attended with damage.
- 433. Mischief by destroying, moving or rendering less useful a light-house or sea-mark.
- 434. Mischief by destroying or moving, etc., a land-mark fixed by public authority.
- 435. Mischief by fire or explosive substance with intent to cause damage to amount of one hundred or (in case of agricultural produce) ten rupees.
- 436. Mischief by fire or explosive substance with intent to destroy house, etc.
- 437. Mischief with intent to destroy or make unsafe a decked vessel or one of twenty tons burden.
- 438. Punishment for the mischief described in section 437 committed by fire or explosive substance.
- 439. Punishment for intentionally running vessel aground, or ashore with intent to commit theft, etc.
- 440. Mischief committed after preparation made for causing death or hurt.

Of criminal trespass

- 441. Criminal trespass.
- 442. House-trespass.
- 443. Lurking house-trespass.
- 444. Lurking house-trespass by night.
- 445. House-breaking.
- 446. House-breaking by night.
- 447. Punishment for criminal trespass.
- 448. Punishment for house-trespass.
- 449. House-trespass in order to commit offence punishable with death.
- 450. House-trespass in order to commit offence punishable with imprisonment for life.
- 451. House-trespass in order to commit offence punishable with imprisonment.

SECTIONS

- 452. House-trespass after preparation for hurt, assault or wrongful restraint.
- 453. Punishment for lurking house-trespass or house-breaking.
- 454. Lurking house-trespass or house-breaking in order to commit offence punishable with imprisonment.
- 455. Lurking house-trespass or house-breaking after preparation for hurt, assault or wrongful restraint.
- 456. Punishment for lurking house-trespass or house-breaking by night.
- 457. Lurking house-trespass or house-breaking by night in order to commit offence punishable with imprisonment.
- 458. Lurking house-trespass or house-breaking by night after preparation for hurt, assault, or wrongful restraint.
- 459. Grievous hurt caused whilst committing lurking house-trespass or house-breaking.
- 460. All persons jointly concerned in lurking house-trespass or house-breaking by night punishable where death or grievous hurt caused by one of them.
- 461. Dishonestly breaking open receptacle containing property.
- 462. Punishment for same offence when committed by person entrusted with custody.

CHAPTER XVIII

OF OFFENCES RELATING TO DOCUMENTS AND TO PROPERTY MARKS

- 463. Forgery.
- 464. Making a false document.
- 465. Punishment for forgery.
- 466. Forgery of record of Court or of public register, etc.
- 467. Forgery of valuable security, will, etc.
- 468. Forgery for purpose of cheating.
- 469. Forgery for purpose of harming reputation.
- 470. Forged document.
- 471. Using as genuine a forged document or electronic record.
- 472. Making or possessing counterfeit seal, etc., with intent to commit forgery punishable under section 467.
- 473. Making or possessing counterfeit seal, etc., with intent to commit forgery punishable otherwise.
- 474. Having possession of document described in sections 466 or 467, knowing it to be forged and intending to use it genuine.
- 475. Counterfeiting device or mark used for authenticating documents described in section 467, or possessing counterfeit marked material.
- 476. Counterfeiting device or mark used for authenticating documents other than those described in section 467, or possessing counterfeit marked material.
- 477. Fraudulent cancellation, destruction, etc., of will, authority to adopt, or valuable security.
- 477A. Falsification of accounts.

Of property and other marks

- 478. [Repealed].
- 479. Property mark.
- 480. [Repealed].
- 481. Using a false property mark.
- 482. Punishment for using a false property mark.
- 483. Counterfeiting a property mark used by another.
- 484. Counterfeiting a mark used by a public servant.
- 485. Making or possession of any instrument for counterfeiting a property mark.
- 486. Selling goods marked with a counterfeit property mark.
- 487. Making a false mark upon any receptacle containing goods.
- 488. Punishment for making use of any such false mark.
- 489. Tampering with property mark with intent to cause injury.

Of currency-notes and bank-notes

- 489A. Counterfeiting currency-notes or bank-notes.
- 489B. Using as genuine, forged or counterfeit currency-notes or bank-notes.
- 489C. Possession of forged or counterfeit currency notes or bank-notes.
- 489D. Making or possessing instruments or materials for forging or counterfeiting currency-notes or bank-notes.
- 489E. Making or using documents resembling currency-notes or bank-notes.

CHAPTER XIX

OF THE CRIMINAL BREACH OF CONTRACTS OF SERVICE

- 490. [Repealed].
- 491. Breach of contract to attend on and supply wants of helpless person.
- 492. [Repealed].

CHAPTER XX OF OFFENCES RELATING TO MARRIAGE

SECTIONS

- 493. Cohabitation caused by a man deceitfully inducing a belief of lawful marriage.
- 494. Marrying again during life-time of husband or wife.
- 495. Same offence with concealment of former marriage from person with whom subsequent marriage is contracted.
- 496. Marriage ceremony fraudulently gone through without lawful marriage.
- 497. Adultery.
- 498. Enticing or taking away or detaining with criminal intent a married woman.

CHAPTER XXA OF CRUELTY BY HUSBAND OR RELATIVES OF HUSBAND

- 498A. Husband or relative of husband of a woman subjecting her to cruelty.

CHAPTER XXI OF DEFAMATION

- 499. Defamation.
 - Imputation of truth which public good requires to be made or published.
 - Public conduct of public servants.
 - Conduct of any person touching any public question.
 - Publication of reports of proceedings of Courts.
 - Merits of case decided in Court or conduct of witnesses and others concerned.
 - Merits of public performance.
 - Censure passed in good faith by person having lawful authority over another.
 - Accusation preferred in good faith to authorised person.
 - Imputation made in good faith by person for protection of his or other's interests.
 - Caution intended for good of person to whom conveyed or for public good.
- 500. Punishment for defamation.
- 501. Printing or engraving matter known to be defamatory.
- 502. Sale of printed or engraved substance containing defamatory matter.

CHAPTER XXII OR CRIMINAL INTIMIDATION, INSULT AND ANNOYANCE

- 503. Criminal intimidation.
- 504. Intentional insult with intent to provoke breach of the peace.
- 505. Statements conduced to public mischief.
 - Statements creating or promoting enmity, hatred or ill-will between classes.
 - Offence under sub-section (2) committed in place of worship, etc.
- 506. Punishment for criminal intimidation.
 - If threat be to cause death or grievous hurt, etc.
- 507. Criminal intimidation by an anonymous communication.
- 508. Act caused by inducing person to believe that he will be rendered an object of the Divine displeasure.
- 509. Word, gesture or act intended to insult the modesty of a woman.
- 510. Misconduct in public by a drunken person.

CHAPTER XXIII OF ATTEMPTS TO COMMIT OFFENCES

- 511. Punishment for attempting to commit offences punishable with imprisonment for life or other imprisonment.

THE INDIAN PENAL CODE

ACT NO. 45 OF 1860¹

[6th October, 1860.]

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

Preamble.—WHEREAS it is expedient to provide a general Penal Code for ²[India]; It is enacted as follows:—

1. Title and extent of operation of the Code.—This Act shall be called the Indian Penal Code, and shall ³[extend to the whole of India ^{4***}].

2. Punishment of offences committed within India.—Every person shall be liable to punishment under this Code and not otherwise for every act or omission contrary to the provisions thereof, of which he shall be guilty within ⁵[India] ^{6***}.

3. Punishment of offences committed beyond, but which by law may be tried within, India.—Any person liable, by any ⁷[Indian law], to be tried for an offence committed beyond ⁸[India] shall be dealt with according to the provisions of this Code for any act committed beyond ⁸[India] in the same manner as if such act had been committed within ⁵[India].

⁹[4. Extension of Code to extra-territorial offences.]—The provisions of this Code apply also to any offence committed by—

¹⁰[(1) any citizen of India in any place without and beyond India;

(2) any person on any ship or aircraft registered in India wherever it may be.]

¹¹[(3) any person in any place without and beyond India committing offence targeting a computer resource located in India.]

¹²[Explanation.—In this section—

(a) the word “offence” includes every act committed outside India which, if committed in India, would be punishable under this Code;

1. The Indian Penal Code has been extended to Berar by the Berar Laws Act, 1941 (4 of 1941) and has been declared in force in—

Sonthal Parganas, by the Sonthal Parganas Settlement Regulation 1872 (3 of 1872) s. 2;

Panth Piploda, by the Panth Piploda Laws Regulation, 1929 (1 of 1929), s. 2 and the Sch.;

Khondmals District, by the Khondmals Laws Regulation, 1936 (4 of 1936), s. 3 and the Sch; and

Angul District, by the Angul Laws Regulation, 1936 (5 of 1936), s. 3 and the Sch.

It has been declared under s. 3 (a) of the Scheduled Districts Act, 1874 (14 of 1874), to be in force in the following Scheduled Districts, namely: the United Provinces Tarai Districts, *see Gazette of India*, 1876, Pt. I, p. 505; the Districts of Hazaribagh, Lohardaga [now called the Ranchi District, *see Calcutta Gazette*, 1899, Pt. I, p. 44] and Manbhumi and Pargana Dhalibhum and the Kolhan in the District of Singhbhum—*see Gazette of India*, 1881, Pt. I, p. 504.

It has been extended under s. 5 of the same Act to the Lushai Hills—*see Gazette of India*, 1898, Pt. II, p. 345.

The Act has been extended to Goa, Daman and Diu by Reg. 12 of 1962, s. 3 and Sch; to Dadra and Nagar Haveli by Reg. 6 of 1963, s. 2 and Sch. I.; to Pondicherry by Reg. 7 of 1963, s. 3 and Sch. I and to Laccadive, Minicoy and Amindivi Islands by Reg. 8 of 1965, s. 3 and Sch.

It has been extended to the State of Sikkim w.e.f. 13-9-1994 *vide* Notification No. S.O. 516(E), dated 9th July, 1994.

2. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A.O. 1948, the A.O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., (w.e.f. 1-4-1951) to read as above.

3. The Original words have successively been amended by Act 12 of 1891, s. 2 and Sch. I, the A.O. 1937, the A.O. 1948 and the A.O. 1950 to read as above.

4. The words “except the State of Jammu and Kashmir” omitted by Act 34 of 2019, s. 95 and the Fifth Schedule (w.e.f. 31-10- 2019).

5. The original words “the said territories” have successively been amended by the A.O. 1937, the A.O. 1948, the A.O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., (w.e.f. 3-4-1951) to read as above.

6. The words and figures “on or after the said first day of May, 1861” rep. by Act 12 of 1891, s. 2 and the First Sch. (w.e.f. 21-3-1891).

7. Subs. by the A.O. 1937 for “law passed by the Governor General of India in Council”.

8. The Original words “the limits of the said territories” have successively been amended by the A.O. 1937, the A.O. 1948, the A.O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

9. Subs. by Act 4 of 1898, s. 2, for section 4 (w.e.f. 18-2-1898).

10. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for cl. (1) to (4).

11. Ins. by Act 10 of 2009, s. 51 (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

12. Subs. by s. 51, *ibid.*, for the *Explanation* (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

(b) the expression “computer resource” shall have the meaning assigned to it in clause (k) of sub-section (1) of section 2 of the Information Technology Act, 2000 (21 of 2000).]

¹[Illustration]

²***A, ³[who is ⁴[a citizen of India]], commits a murder in Uganda. He can be tried and convicted of murder in any place in ⁵[India] in which he may be found.

6*

*

*

*

*

⁷[**5. Certain laws not to be affected by this Act.**—Nothing in this Act shall affect the provisions of any Act for punishing mutiny and desertion of officers, soldiers, sailors or airmen in the service of the Government of India or the provisions of any special or local law.]

CHAPTER II

GENERAL EXPLANATIONS

6. Definitions in the Code to be understood subject to exceptions.—Throughout this Code every definition of an offence, every penal provision, and every *illustration* of every such definition or penal provision, shall be understood subject to the exceptions contained in the Chapter entitled “General Exceptions”, though those exceptions are not repeated in such definition, penal provision, or *illustration*.

Illustrations

(a) The sections, in this Code, which contain definitions of offences, do not express that a child under seven years of age cannot commit such offences; but the definitions are to be understood subject to the general exception which provides that nothing shall be an offence which is done by a child under seven years of age.

(b) A, a police-officer, without warrant, apprehends Z, who has committed murder. Here A is not guilty of the offence of wrongful confinement; for he was bound by law to apprehend Z, and therefore the case falls within the general exception which provides that “nothing is an offence which is done by a person who is bound by law to do it”.

7. Sense of expression once explained.—Every expression which is explained in any part of this Code, is used in every part of this Code in conformity with the explanation.

8. Gender.—The pronoun “he” and its derivatives are used of any person, whether male or female.

9. Number.—Unless the contrary appears from the context, words importing the singular number include the plural number, and words importing the plural number include the singular number.

10. “Man”.“Woman”.—The word “man” denotes a male human being of any age; the word “woman” denotes a female human being of any age.

11. “Person”.—The word “person” includes any Company or Association or body of persons, whether incorporated or not.

12. “Public”.—The word “public” includes any class of the public or any community.

13. [Definition of “Queen”.] Omitted by the A. O. 1950.

⁸[**14. “Servant of Government”.**—The words “servant of Government” denote any officer or servant continued, appointed or employed in India by or under the authority of Government.]

15. [Definition of “British India”.] Rep. by the A. O. 1937.

16. [Definition of “Government of India”.] Rep., ibid.

1. Subs. by Act 36 of 1957, s. 3 and Schedule II, for “Illustrations” (w.e.f. 17-9-1957).

2. The brackets and letter “(a)” omitted by s. 3 and the Second Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 17-9-1951).

3. Subs. by the A.O. 1948, for “a coolie, who is a Native Indian subject”.

4. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “a British subject of Indian domicile”.

5. The words “British India” have been successively amended by the A.O. 1948, the A.O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., (w.e.f. 1-4-1951) to read as above.

6. *Illustrations* (b), (c) and (d) omitted by the A.O. 1950.

7. Subs., *ibid.*, for section 5.

8. Subs., *ibid.*, for section 14.

¹[**17 “Government”**.—The word “Government” denotes the Central Government or the Government of a ²***State.]

³[**18. “India”**.—“India” means the territory of India excluding the State of Jammu and Kashmir.]

19. “Judge”.—The word “Judge” denotes not only every person who is officially designated as a Judge, but also every person.

who is empowered by law to give, in any legal proceeding, civil or criminal, a definitive judgment, or a judgment which, if not appealed against, would be definitive, or a judgment which, if confirmed by some other authority, would be definitive, or

who is one of a body or persons, which body of persons is empowered by law to give such a judgment.

Illustrations

(a) A Collector exercising jurisdiction in a suit under Act 10 of 1859 is a Judge.

(b) A Magistrate exercising jurisdiction in respect of a charge on which he has power to sentence to fine or imprisonment, with or without appear, is a Judge.

(c) A member of a panchayat which has power, under ⁴Regulation VII, 1816, of the Madras Code, to try and determine suits, is a Judge.

(d) A Magistrate exercising jurisdiction in respect of a charge on which he has power only to commit for trial to another Court, is not a Judge.

20. “Court of Justice”.—The words “Court of Justice” denote a Judge who is empowered by law to act judicially alone, or a body of Judges which is empowered by law to act judicially as a body, when such Judge or body of Judges is acting judicially.

Illustration

A Panchayat acting under ⁴Regulation VII, 1816, of the Madras Code, having power to try and determine suits, is a Court of Justice.

21. “Public servant”.—The words “public servant” denote a person falling under any of the descriptions hereinafter following, namely:—

5*

*

*

*

*

Second.—Every Commissioned Officer in the Military, ⁶[Naval or Air] Forces ⁷[⁸*** of India];

⁹[*Third*.—Every Judge including any person empowered by law to discharge, whether by himself or as a member of any body of persons, any adjudicatory functions;]

Fourth.—Every officer of a Court of Justice ¹⁰[(including a liquidator, receiver or commissioner)] whose duty it is, as such officer, to investigate or report on any matter of law or fact, or to make, authenticate, or keep any document, or to take charge or dispose of any property, or to execute any judicial process, or to administer any oath, or to interpret, or to preserve order in the Court, and every person specially authorised by a Court of Justice to perform any of such duties;

Fifth.—Every juryman, assessor, or member of a panchayat assisting a Court of Justice or public servant;

Sixth.—Every arbitrator or other person to whom any cause or matter has been referred for decision or report by any Court of Justice, or by any other competent public authority;

1. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for section 17.

2. The word and letter “Part A” omitted by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch. (w.e.f. 1-4-1951).

3. Subs. by s. 3 and the Sch., *ibid.*, for s. 18 which was ins. by the A.O. 1950. The Original s. 18 was rep. by the A.O. 1937.

4. Rep. by the Madras Civil Courts Act, 1873 (3 of 1873).

5. Cl. *First* omitted by the A.O. 1950.

6. Subs. by Act 10 of 1927, s. 2 and the First Sch., for “or Naval”.

7. The original words “of the Queen while serving under the Government of India, or any Government” have successively been amended by the A.O. 1937, the A.O. 1948 and the A.O. 1950 to read as above.

8. The words “of the Dominion” omitted by the A.O. 1950.

9. Subs. by Act 40 of 1964, s. 2, for cl. *Third* (w.e.f. 18-12-1964).

10. Ins. by s. 2, *ibid.*

Seventh.—Every person who holds any office by virtue of which he is empowered to place or keep any person in confinement;

Eighth.—Every officer of ¹[the Government] whose duty it is, as such officer, to prevent offences, to give information of offences, to bring offenders to justice, or to protect the public health, safety or convenience;

Ninth.—Every officer whose duty it is as such officer, to take, receive, keep or expend any property on behalf of ¹[the Government], or to make any survey, assessment or contract on behalf of ¹[the Government], or to execute any revenue-process, or to investigate, or to report, on any matter affecting the pecuniary interests of ¹[the Government], or to make, authenticate or keep any document relating to the pecuniary interests of ¹[the Government], or to prevent the infraction of any law for the protection of the pecuniary interests of ¹[the Government] ^{2***;}

Tenth.—Every officer whose duty it is, as such officer, to take, receive, keep or expend any property, to make any survey or assessment or to levy any rate or tax for any secular common purpose of any village, town or district, or to make, authenticate or keep any document for the ascertaining of the rights of the people of any village, town or district;

³[Eleventh.—Every person who holds any office in virtue of which he is empowered to prepare, publish, maintain or revise an electoral roll or to conduct an election or part of an election;]

⁴[Twelfth.—Every person—

(a) in the service or pay of the Government or remunerated by fees or commission for the performance of any public duty by the Government;

(b) in the service or pay of a local authority, a corporation established by or under a Central, Provincial or State Act or a Government company as defined in section 617 of the Companies Act, 1956 (1 of 1956).]

Illustration

A Municipal Commissioner is a public servant.

Explanation 1.—Persons falling under any of the above descriptions are public servants, whether appointed by the Government or not.

Explanation 2.—Wherever the words “public servant” occur, they shall be understood of every person who is in actual possession of the situation of a public servant, whatever legal defect there may be in his right to hold that situation.

³[Explanation 3.—The word “election” denotes an election for the purpose of selecting members of any legislative, municipal or other public authority, of whatever character, the method of selection to which is by, or under, any law prescribed as by election.]

5*

*

*

*

*

STATE AMENDMENT

Rajasthan

Amendment of Section 21, Central Act 45 of 1860.—In section 21 of the Indian Penal Code, 1860 (Central Act 45 of 1860), in its application to the State of Rajasthan, after clause *Twelfth*, the following new clause shall be added, namely:-

"Thirteenth.—Every person employed or engaged by any public body in the conduct and supervision of any examination recognised or approved under any law.

Explanation.—The expression "Public Body" includes.—

1. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for "the Crown" which had been subs. by the A.O. 1937, for "Government".
 2. Certain words omitted by Act 40 of 1964, s. 2 (w.e.f. 18-12-1964).
 3. Ins. by Act 39 of 1920, s. 2.
 4. Subs. by Act 40 of 1964, s. 2, for Cl. *Twelfth* (w.e.f. 18-12-1964).
 5. *Explanation 4* omitted by Act 39 of 1920, s. 2 Earlier *Explanation Four* was ins. By Act 2 of 1958, s. 2 (w.e.f. 12-2-1958).

(a) a University, Board of Education or other body, either established by or under a Central or State Act or under the provisions of the Constitution of India or constituted by the Government: and

(b) a local authority.".

[*Vide* Rajasthan Act 4 of 1993, s. 2 (w.e.f. 11-2-1993)]

22. "Movable property".—The words “movable property” are intended to include corporeal property of every description, except land and things attached to the earth or permanently fastened to anything which is attached to the earth.

23. "Wrongful gain".—“Wrongful gain” is gain by unlawful means of property to which the person gaining is not legally entitled.

“Wrongful loss”.—“Wrongful loss” is the loss by unlawful means of property to which the person losing it is legally entitled.

Gaining wrongfully/Losing wrongfully.—A person is said to gain wrongfully when such person retains wrongfully, as well as when such person acquires wrongfully. A person is said to lose wrongfully when such person is wrongfully kept out of any property, as well as when such person is wrongfully deprived of property.

24. "Dishonestly".—Whoever does anything with the intention of causing wrongful gain to one person or wrongful loss to another person, is said to do that thing “dishonestly”.

25. "Fraudulently".—A person is said to do a thing fraudulently if he does that thing with intent to defraud but not otherwise.

26. "Reason to believe".—A person is said to have “reason to believe” a thing if he has sufficient cause to believe that thing but not otherwise.

27. "Property in possession of wife, clerk or servant".—When property is in the possession of a person's wife, clerk or servant, on account of that person, it is in that person's possession within the meaning of this Code.

Explanation.—A person employed temporarily or on a particular occasion in the capacity of a clerk, or servant, is a clerk or servant within the meaning of this section.

28. "Counterfeit".—A person is said to “counterfeit” who causes one thing to resemble another thing, intending by means of that resemblance to practise deception, or knowing it to be likely that deception will thereby be practised.

¹[*Explanation 1.*—It is not essential to counterfeiting that the imitation should be exact.

Explanation 2.—When a person causes one thing to resemble another thing, and the resemblance is such that a person might be deceived thereby, it shall be presumed, until the contrary is proved, that the person so causing the one thing to resemble the other thing intended by means of that resemblance to practise deception or knew it to be likely that deception would thereby be practised.]

29. "Document".—The word “document” denotes any matter expressed or described upon any substance by means of letters, figures or marks, or by more than one of those means, intended to be used, or which may be used, as evidence of that matter.

Explanation 1.—It is immaterial by what means or upon what substance the letters, figures or marks are formed, or whether the evidence is intended for, or may be used in, a Court of Justice, or not.

Illustrations

A writing expressing the terms of a contract, which may be used as evidence of the contract, is a document.

A cheque upon a banker is a document.

A power-of-attorney is a document.

A map or plan which is intended to be used or which may be used as evidence, is a document.

A writing containing directions or instructions is a document.

Explanation 2.—Whatever is expressed by means of letters, figures or marks as explained by mercantile or other usage, shall be deemed to be expressed by such letters, figures or marks within the meaning of this section, although the same may not be actually expressed.

Illustration

A writes his name on the back of a bill of exchange payable to his order. The meaning of the endorsement, as explained by mercantile usage, is that the bill is to be paid to the holder. The endorsement is a document, and must be construed in the same manner as if the words “pay to the holder” or words to that effect had been written over the signature.

²[**29A. "Electronic record".**—The words “electronic record” shall have the meaning assigned to them in clause (t) of sub-section (1) of section 2 of the Information Technology Act, 2000 (21 of 2000).]

1. Subs. by Act 1 of 1889, s. 9, for the *Explanation*.

2. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch. (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

30. "Valuable security".—The words "valuable security" denote a document which is, or purports to be, a document whereby any legal right is created, extended, transferred, restricted, extinguished or released, or whereby any person acknowledges that he lies under legal liability, or has not a certain legal right.

Illustration

A writes his name on the back of a bill of exchange. As the effect of this endorsement is to transfer the right to the bill to any person who may become the unlawful holder of it, the endorsement is a "valuable security".

31. "A will".—The words "a will" denote any testamentary document.

32. Words referring to acts include illegal omissions.—In every part of this Code, except where a contrary intention appears from the context, words which refer to acts done extend also to illegal omissions.

33. "Act". "Omission".—The word "act" denotes as well as series of acts as a single act: the word "omission" denotes as well a series of omissions as a single omission.

¹[**34. Acts done by several persons in furtherance of common intention.**—When a criminal act is done by several persons in furtherance of the common intention of all, each of such persons is liable for that act in the same manner as if it were done by him alone.]

35. When such an act is criminal by reason of its being done with a criminal knowledge or intention.—Whenever an act, which is criminal only by reason of its being done with a criminal knowledge or intention, is done by several persons, each of such persons who joins in the act with such knowledge or intention is liable for the act in the same manner as if the act were done by him alone with that knowledge or intention.

36. Effect caused partly by act and partly by omission.—Wherever the causing of a certain effect, or an attempt to cause that effect, by an act or by an omission, is an offence, it is to be understood that the causing of that effect partly by an act and partly by an omission is the same offence.

Illustration

A intentionally causes Z's death, partly by illegally omitting to give Z food, and partly by beating Z. A has committed murder.

37. Co-operation by doing one of several acts constituting an offence.—When an offence is committed by means of several acts, whoever intentionally co-operates in the commission of that offence by doing any one of those acts, either singly or jointly with any other person, commits that offence.

Illustrations

(a) A and B agree to murder Z by severally and at different times giving him small doses of poison. A and B administer the poison according to the agreement with intent to murder Z. Z dies from the effects of the several doses of poison so administered to him. Here A and B intentionally co-operate in the commission of murder and as each of them does an act by which the death is caused, they are both guilty of the offence though their acts are separate.

(b) A and B are joint jailors, and as such have the charge of Z, a prisoner, alternatively for six hours at a time. A and B, intending to cause Z's death, knowingly co-operate in causing that effect by illegally omitting, each during the time of his attendance, to furnish Z with food supplied to them for that purpose. Z dies of hunger. Both A and B, are guilty of the murder of Z.

(c) A, a jailor, has the charge of Z, a prisoner. A, intending to cause Z's death, illegally omits to supply Z with food; in consequence of which Z is much reduced in strength, but the starvation is not sufficient to cause his death. A is dismissed from his office, and B succeeds him. B, without collusion or co-operation with A, illegally omits to supply Z with food, knowing that he is likely thereby to cause Z's death. Z dies of hunger. B is guilty of murder, but, as A did not co-operate with B. A is guilty only of an attempt to commit murder.

38. Persons concerned in criminal act may be guilty of different offences.—Where several persons are engaged or concerned in the commission of a criminal act, they may be guilty of different offences by means of that act.

Illustration

A attacks Z under such circumstances of grave provocation that his killing of Z would be only culpable homicide not amounting to murder. B, having ill-will towards Z and intending to kill him, and not having been subject to the provocation, assists A in killing Z. Here, though A and B are both engaged in causing Z's death, B is guilty of murder, and A is guilty only of culpable homicide.

1. Subs. by Act 27 of 1870, s. 1, for section 34.

39. “Voluntarily”.—A person is said to cause an effect “voluntarily” when he causes it by means whereby he intended to cause it, or by means which, at the time of employing those means, he knew or had reason to believe to be likely to cause it.

Illustration

A sets fire, by night, to an inhabited house in a large town, for the purpose of facilitating a robbery and thus causes the death of a person. Here, A may not have intended to cause death, and may even be sorry that death has been caused by his act; yet, if he knew that he was likely to cause death, he has caused death voluntarily.

1[40. “Offence”].—Except in the ²[Chapters] and sections mentioned in clauses 2 and 3 of this section, the word “offence” denotes a thing made punishable by this Code.

In Chapter IV, ³[Chapter VA] and in the following sections, namely, sections ⁴[64, 65, 66, ⁵[67], 71], 109, 110, 112, 114, 115, 116, 117,⁶[118, 119 and 120] 187, 194, 195, 203, 211, 213, 214, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 347, 348, 388, 389 and 445, the word “offence” denotes a thing punishable under this Code, or under any special or local law as hereinafter defined.

And in sections 141, 176, 177, 201, 202, 212, 216 and 441, the word “offence” has the same meaning when the thing punishable under the special or local law is punishable under such law with imprisonment for a term of six months or upwards, whether with or without fine.]

41. “Special law”.—A “special law” is a law applicable to a particular subject.

42. “Local law”.—A “local law” is a law applicable only to a particular part of ⁷[^{8***}⁹[India]].

43. “Illegal”. “Legally bound to do”.—The word “illegal” is applicable to everything which is an offence or which is prohibited by law, or which furnishes ground for a civil action; and a person is said to be “legally bound to do” whatever it is illegal in him to omit.

44. “Injury”.—The word “injury” denotes any harm whatever illegally caused to any person, in body, mind, reputation or property.

45. “Life”.—The word “life” denotes the life of a human being, unless the contrary appears from the context.

46. “Death”.—The word “death” denotes the death of a human being unless the contrary appears from the context.

47. “Animal”.—The word “animal” denotes any living creature, other than a human being.

48. “Vessel”.—The word “vessel” denotes anything made for the conveyance by water of human beings or of property.

49. “Year”. “Month”.—Wherever the word “year” or the word “month” is used, it is to be understood that the year or the month is to be reckoned according to the British calendar.

50. “Section”.—The word “section” denotes one of those portions of a Chapter of this Code which are distinguished by prefixed numeral figures.

51. “Oath”.—The word “oath” includes a solemn affirmation substituted by law for an oath, and any declaration required or authorised by law to be made before a public servant or to be used for the purpose of proof, whether in a Court of Justice or not.

52. “Good faith”.—Nothing is said to be done or believed in “good faith” which is done or believed without due care and attention.

1. Subs. by Act 27 of 1870, s. 2, for section 40.

2. Subs. by Act 8 of 1930, s. 2 and the First Sch., for “Chapter”.

3. Ins. by Act 8 of 1913, s. 2.

4. Ins. by Act 8 of 1882, s. 1.

5. Ins. by Act 10 of 1886, s. 21 (*I*).

6. Ins. by Act 10 of 2009, s. 51 (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

7. Subs. by the A.O. 1948, for “British India”.

8. The words “the territories comprised in” omitted by Act 48 of 1952, s. 3 and the Second Sch.

9. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., for “the States” which had been subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “the Provinces”.

¹[52A. “**Harbour**”.—Except in section 157, and in section 130 in the case in which the harbour is given by the wife or husband of the person harboured, the word “harbour” includes the supplying a person with shelter, food, drink, money, clothes, arms, ammunition or means of conveyance, or the assisting a person by any means, whether of the same kind as those enumerated in this section or not, to evade apprehension.]

CHAPTER III OF PUNISHMENTS

53. Punishments.—The punishments to which offenders are liable under the provisions of this Code are—

First,—Death;

²[*Secondly*.—Imprisonment for life;]

³* * * * *

Fourthly.—Imprisonment, which is of two descriptions, namely:—

(1) Rigorous, that is, with hard labour;

(2) Simple;

Fifthly.—Forfeiture of property;

Sixthly.—Fine.

⁴[53A. **Construction of reference to transportation.**—(1) Subject to the provisions of sub-section (2) and sub-section (3), any reference to “transportation for life” in any other law for the time being in force or in any instrument or order having effect by virtue of any such law or of any enactment repealed shall be construed as a reference to “imprisonment for life”.

(2) In every case in which a sentence of transportation for a term has been passed before the commencement of the Code of Criminal Procedure (Amendment) Act, ⁵[1955] (26 of 1955), the offender shall be dealt with in the same manner as if sentenced to rigorous imprisonment for the same term.

(3) Any reference to transportation for a term or to transportation for any shorter term (by whatever name called) in any other law for the time being in force shall be deemed to have been omitted.

(4) Any reference to “transportation” in any other law for the time being in force shall,—

(a) if the expression means transportation for life, be construed as a reference to imprisonment for life;

(b) if the expression means transportation for any shorter term, be deemed to have been omitted.]

54. Commutation of sentence of death.—In every case in which sentence of death shall have been passed, ⁶[the appropriate Government] may, without the consent of the offender, commute the punishment for any other punishment provided by this Code.

55. Commutation of sentence of imprisonment for life.—In every case in which sentence of ⁷[imprisonment] for life shall have been passed, ⁸[the appropriate Government] may, without the consent

1. Ins. by Act 8 of 1942, s. 2 (w.e.f. 14-2-1942).

2. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “*Secondly*.—Transportation” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

3. The words “*Thirdly*,--Penal servitude;” omitted by Act 17 of 1949, s. 2 (w.e.f. 6-4-1949).

4. Ins. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch. (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

5. Subs. by Act 36 of 1957, s. 3 and the Second Sch., for “1954” (w.e.f. 17-9-1957).

6. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “the *Central Government or the Provincial Government of the Province* within which the offender shall have been sentenced”. The words in italics were subs. by the A.O. 1937, for “the Government of India or the Government of the place”.

7. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

8. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “*the Provincial Government of the Province* within which the offender shall have been sentenced”. The words in italics were subs. by the A.O. 1937, for “the Government of India or the Government of the place”.

of the offender, commute the punishment for imprisonment of either description for a term not exceeding fourteen years.

¹[55A. Definition of “appropriate Government”].—In sections fifty-four and fifty-five the expression “appropriate Government” means,—

(a) in cases where the sentence is a sentence of death or is for an offence against any law relating to a matter to which the executive power of the Union extends, the Central Government; and

(b) in cases where the sentence (whether of death or not) is for an offence against any law relating to a matter to which the executive power of the State extends, the Government of the State within which the offender is sentenced.]

56. [*Sentence of Europeans and Americans to penal servitude. Proviso as to sentence for term exceeding ten years but not for life.*] Rep. by the Criminal Law (Removal of Racial Discriminations) Act, 1949 (17 of 1949) (w. e. f. 6-4-1949).

57. Fractions of terms of punishment.—In calculating fractions of terms of punishment, ²[imprisonment] for life shall be reckoned as equivalent to ²[imprisonment] for twenty years.

58. [*Offenders sentenced to transportation how dealt with until transported.*] Rep. by the Code of Criminal Procedure (Amendment) Act, 1955 (26 of 1955), s. 117 and the Sch. (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

59. [*Transportation instead of imprisonment.*] Rep. by s.117 and the Sch., ibid. (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

60. Sentence may be (in certain cases of imprisonment) wholly or partly rigorous or simple.—In every case in which an offender is punishable with imprisonment which may be of either description, it shall be competent to the Court which sentences such offender to direct in the sentence that such imprisonment shall be wholly rigorous, or that such imprisonment shall be wholly simple, or that any part of such imprisonment shall be rigorous and the rest simple.

61. [*Sentence of forfeiture of property.*] Rep. by the Indian Penal Code (Amendment) Act, 1921 (16 of 1921), s. 4.

62. [*Forfeiture of property, in respect of offenders punishable with death, transportation or imprisonment.*] Rep. by s. 4, ibid.

63. Amount of fine.—Where no sum is expressed to which a fine may extend, the amount of fine to which the offender is liable is unlimited, but shall not be excessive.

64. Sentence of imprisonment for non-payment of fine.—³[In every case of an offence punishable with imprisonment as well as fine, in which the offender is sentenced to a fine, whether with or without imprisonment,

and in every case of an offence punishable ⁴[with imprisonment or fine, or] with fine only, in which the offender is sentenced to a fine.]

it shall be competent to the Court which sentences such offender to direct by the sentence that, in default of payment of the fine, the offender shall suffer imprisonment for a certain term, which imprisonment shall be in excess of any other imprisonment to which he may have been sentenced or to which he may be liable under a commutation of a sentence.

65. Limit to imprisonment for non-payment of fine, when imprisonment and fine awardable.—The term for which the Court directs the offender to be imprisoned in default of payment of a fine shall not exceed one-fourth of the term of imprisonment which is the maximum fixed for the offence, if the offence be punishable with imprisonment as well as fine.

66. Description of imprisonment for non-payment of fine.—The imprisonment which the Court imposes in default of payment of a fine may be of any description to which the offender might have been sentenced for the offence.

1. Subs. by the A. O 1950. Earlier ins. by the A. O. 1937.

2. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

3. Subs. by Act 8 of 1882, s. 2, for “in every case in which an offender is sentenced to a fine”.

4. Ins. by Act 10 of 1886, s. 21 (2).

67. Imprisonment for non-payment of fine, when offence punishable with fine only.—If the offence be punishable with fine only,¹ [the imprisonment which the Court imposes in default of payment of the fine shall be simple, and] the term for which the Court directs the offender to be imprisoned, in default of payment of fine, shall not exceed the following scale, that is to say, for any term not exceeding two months when the amount of the fine shall not exceed fifty rupees, and for any term not exceeding four months when the amount shall not exceed one hundred rupees, and for any term not exceeding six months in any other case.

68. Imprisonment to terminate on payment of fine.—The imprisonment which is imposed in default of payment of a fine shall terminate whenever that fine is either paid or levied by process of law.

69. Termination of imprisonment on payment of proportional part of fine.—If, before the expiration of the term of imprisonment fixed in default of payment, such a proportion of the fine be paid or levied that the term of imprisonment suffered in default of payment is not less than proportional to the part of the fine still unpaid, the imprisonment shall terminate.

Illustration

A is sentenced to a fine of one hundred rupees and to four months' imprisonment in default of payment. Here, if seventy-five rupees of the fine be paid or levied before the expiration of one month of the imprisonment, A will be discharged as soon as the first month has expired. If seventy-five rupees be paid or levied at the time of the expiration of the first month, or at any later time while A continues in imprisonment, A will be immediately discharged. If fifty rupees of the fine be paid or levied before the expiration of two months of the imprisonment. A will be discharged as soon as the two months are completed. If fifty rupees be paid or levied at the time of the expiration of those two months, or at any later time while A continues in imprisonment, A will be immediately discharged.

70. Fine leivable within six years, or during imprisonment. Death not to discharge property from liability.—The fine, or any part thereof which remains unpaid, may be levied at any time within six years after the passing of the sentence, and if, under the sentence, the offender be liable to imprisonment for a longer period than six years, then at any time previous to the expiration of that period; and the death of the offender does not discharge from the liability any property which would, after his death, be legally liable for his debts.

71. Limit of punishment of offence made up of several offences.—Where anything which is an offence is made up of parts, any of which parts is itself an offence, the offender shall not be punished with the punishment of more than one of such his offences, unless it be so expressly provided.

²[Where anything is an offence falling within two or more separate definitions of any law in force for the time being by which offences are defined or punished, or

where several acts, of which one or more than one would by itself or themselves constitute an offence, constitute, when combined, a different offence,

the offender shall not be punished with a more severe punishment than the Court which tries him could award for any one of such offences].

Illustrations

(a) A gives Z fifty strokes with a stick. Here A may have committed the offence of voluntarily causing hurt to Z by the whole beating, and also by each of the blows which make up the whole beating. If A were liable to punishment for every blow, he might be imprisoned for fifty years, one for each blow. But he is liable only to one punishment for the whole beating.

(b) But, if, while A is beating Z, Y interferes, and A intentionally strikes Y, here, as the blow given to Y is no part of the act whereby A voluntarily causes hurt to Z, A is liable to one punishment for voluntarily causing hurt to Z, and to another for the blow given to Y.

72. Punishment of person guilty of one of several offences, the judgment stating that it is doubtful of which.—In all cases in which judgment is given that a person is guilty of one of several offences specified in the judgment, but that it is doubtful of which of these offences he is guilty, the offender shall be punished for the offence for which the lowest punishment is provided if the same punishment is not provided for all.

1. Ins. by Act 8 of 1882, s. 3.

2. Added by s. 4, *ibid.*

73. Solitary confinement.—Whenever any person is convicted of an offence for which under this Code the Court has power to sentence him to rigorous imprisonment, the Court may, by its sentence, order that the offender shall be kept in solitary confinement for any portion or portions of the imprisonment to which he is sentenced, not exceeding three months in the whole, according to the following scale, that is to say—

a time not exceeding one month if the term of imprisonment shall not exceed six months;

a time not exceeding two months if the term of imprisonment shall exceed six months and ¹[shall not exceed one] year;

a time not exceeding three months if the term of imprisonment shall exceed one year.

74. Limit of solitary confinement.—In executing a sentence of solitary confinement, such confinement shall in no case exceed fourteen days at a time, with intervals between the periods of solitary confinement of not less duration than such periods, and when the imprisonment awarded shall exceed three months, the solitary confinement shall not exceed seven days in any one month of the whole imprisonment awarded, with intervals between the periods of solitary confinement of not less duration than such periods.

²[75. Enhanced punishment for certain offences under Chapter XII or Chapter XVII after previous conviction.]—Whoever, having been convicted,—

(a) by a Court in ³[India], of an offence punishable under Chapter XII or Chapter XVII of this Code with imprisonment of either description for a term of three years or upwards,^{4***}

^{5*}

*

*

*

*

shall be guilty of any offence punishable under either of those Chapters with like imprisonment for the like term, shall be subject for every such subsequent offence to ⁶[imprisonment for life], or to imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years.]

CHAPTER IV

GENERAL EXCEPTIONS

76. Act done by a person bound, or by mistake of fact believing himself bound, by law.—Nothing is an offence which is done by a person who is, or who by reason of a mistake of fact and not by reason of a mistake of law in good faith believes himself to be, bound by law to do it.

Illustrations

(a) A, a soldier, fires on a mob by the order of his superior officer, in conformity with the commands of the law. A has committed no offence.

(b) A, an officer of a Court of Justice, being ordered by that Court to arrest Y and, after due enquiry, believing Z to be Y, arrests Z. A has committed no offence.

77. Act of Judge when acting judicially.—Nothing is an offence which is done by a Judge when acting judicially in the exercise of any power which is, or which in good faith he believes to be, given to him by law.

78. Act done pursuant to the judgment or order of Court.—Nothing which is done in pursuance of, or which is warranted by the judgment or order of, a Court of Justice, if done whilst such judgment or order remains in force, is an offence, notwithstanding the Court may have had no jurisdiction to pass such judgment or order, provided the person doing the act in good faith believes that the Court had such jurisdiction.

79. Act done by a person justified, or by mistake of fact believing himself justified, by law.—Nothing is an offence which is done by any person who is justified by law, or who by reason of a mistake

1. Subs. by Act 8 of 1862, s. 5, for “be less than a”.

2. Subs. by Act 3 of 1910, s. 2, for section 75.

3. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., (w.e.f. 1-4-1951) to read as above.

4. The word “or” omitted by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch. (w.e.f. 1-4-1951).

5. Cl. (b) omitted by s. 3 and the Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 1-4-1951).

6. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

of fact and not by reason of a mistake of law in good faith, believes himself to be justified by law, in doing it.

Illustration

A sees Z commit what appears to A to be a murder. A, in the exercise, to the best of his judgment exerted in good faith, of the power which the law gives to all persons of apprehending murderers in the fact, seizes Z, in order to bring Z before the proper authorities. A has committed no offence, though it may turn out that Z was acting in self-defence.

80. Accident in doing a lawful act.—Nothing is an offence which is done by accident or misfortune, and without any criminal intention or knowledge in the doing of a lawful act in a lawful manner by lawful means and with proper care and caution.

Illustration

A is at work with a hatchet; the head flies off and kills a man who is standing by. Here, if there was no want of proper caution on the part of A, his act is excusable and not an offence.

81. Act likely to cause harm, but done without criminal intent, and to prevent other harm.—Nothing is an offence merely by reason of its being done with the knowledge that it is likely to cause harm, if it be done without any criminal intention to cause harm, and in good faith for the purpose of preventing or avoiding other harm to person or property.

Explanation.—It is a question of fact in such a case whether the harm to be prevented or avoided was of such a nature and so imminent as to justify or excuse the risk of doing the act with the knowledge that it was likely to cause harm.

Illustrations

(a) A, the captain of a steam vessel, suddenly and without any fault or negligence on his part, finds himself in such a position that, before he can stop his vessel, he must inevitably run down a boat B, with twenty or thirty passengers on board, unless he changes the course of his vessel, and that, by changing his course, he must incur risk of running down a boat C with only two passengers on board, which he may possibly clear. Here, if A alters his course without any intention to run down the boat C and in good faith for the purpose of avoiding the danger to the passengers in the boat B, he is not guilty of an offence, though he may run down the boat C by doing an act which he knew was likely to cause that effect, if it be found as a matter of fact that the danger which he intended to avoid was such as to excuse him in incurring the risk of running down C.

(b) A, in a great fire, pulls down houses in order to prevent the conflagration from spreading. He does this with the intention in good faith of saving human life or property. Here, if it be found that the harm to be prevented was of such a nature and so imminent as to excuse A's act, A is not guilty of the offence.

82. Act of a child under seven years of age.—Nothing is an offence which is done by a child under seven years of age.

83. Act of a child above seven and under twelve of immature understanding.—Nothing is an offence which is done by a child above seven years of age and under twelve, who has not attained sufficient maturity of understanding to judge of the nature and consequences of his conduct on that occasion.

84. Act of a person of unsound mind.—Nothing is an offence which is done by a person who, at the time of doing it, by reason of unsoundness of mind, is incapable of knowing the nature of the act, or that he is doing what is either wrong or contrary to law.

85. Act of a person incapable of judgment by reason of intoxication caused against his will.—Nothing is an offence which is done by a person who, at the time of doing it, is, by reason of intoxication, incapable of knowing the nature of the act, or that he is doing what is either wrong, or contrary to law; provided that the thing which intoxicated him was administered to him without his knowledge or against his will.

86. Offence requiring a particular intent or knowledge committed by one who is intoxicated.—In cases where an act done is not an offence unless done with a particular knowledge or intent, a person who does the act in a state of intoxication shall be liable to be dealt with as if he had the same knowledge as he would have had if he had not been intoxicated, unless the thing which intoxicated him was administered to him without his knowledge or against his will.

87. Act not intended and not known to be likely to cause death or grievous hurt, done by consent.—Nothing which is not intended to cause death, or grievous hurt, and which is not known by the doer to be likely to cause death or grievous hurt, is an offence by reason of any harm which it may cause,

or be intended by the doer to cause, to any person, above eighteen years of age, who has given consent, whether express or implied, to suffer that harm; or by reason of any harm which it may be known by the doer to be likely to cause to any such person who has consented to take the risk of that harm.

Illustration

A and Z agree to fence with each other for amusement. This agreement implies the consent of each to suffer any harm which in the course of such fencing, may be caused without foul play; and if A, while playing fairly, hurts Z, A commits no offence.

88. Act not intended to cause death, done by consent in good faith for person's benefit.—Nothing, which is not intended to cause death, is an offence by reason of any harm which it may cause, or be intended by the doer to cause, or be known by the doer to be likely to cause, to any person for whose benefit it is done in good faith, and who has given a consent, whether express or implied, to suffer that harm, or to take the risk of that harm.

Illustration

A, a surgeon, knowing that a particular operation is likely to cause the death of Z, who suffers under the painful complaint, but not intending to cause Z's death, and intending, in good faith, Z's benefit, performs that operation on Z, with Z's consent. A has committed no offence.

89. Act done in good faith for benefit of child or insane person, by or by consent of guardian.—Nothing which is done in good faith for the benefit of a person under twelve years of age, or of unsound mind, by or by consent, either express or implied, of the guardian or other person having lawful charge of that person, is an offence by reason of any harm which it may cause, or be intended by the doer to cause or be known by the doer to be likely to cause to that person: Provided—

Provisos. *First.*—That this exception shall not extend to the intentional causing of death, or to the attempting to cause death;

Secondly.—That this exception shall not extend to the doing of anything which the person doing it knows to be likely to cause death, for any purpose other than the preventing of death or grievous hurt, or the curing of any grievous disease or infirmity;

Thirdly.—That this exception shall not extend to the voluntary causing of grievous hurt, or to the attempting to cause grievous hurt, unless it be for the purpose of preventing death or grievous hurt; or the curing of any grievous disease or infirmity;

Fourthly.—That this exception shall not extend to the abetment of any offence, to the committing of which offence it would not extend.

Illustration

A, in good faith, for his child's benefit without his child's consent, has his child cut for the stone by a surgeon knowing it to be likely that the operation will cause the child's death, but not intending to cause the child's death. A is within the exception, inasmuch as his object was the cure of the child.

90. Consent known to be given under fear or misconception.—A consent is not such a consent as is intended by any section of this Code, if the consent is given by a person under fear of injury, or under a misconception of fact, and if the person doing the act knows, or has reason to believe, that the consent was given in consequence of such fear or misconception; or

Consent of insane person.—if the consent is given by a person who, from unsoundness of mind, or intoxication, is unable to understand the nature and consequence of that to which he gives his consent; or

Consent of child.—unless the contrary appears from the context, if the consent is given by a person who is under twelve years of age.

91. Exclusion of acts which are offences independently of harm cause.—The exceptions in sections 87, 88 and 89 do not extend to acts which are offences independently of any harm which they may cause, or be intended to cause, or be known to be likely to cause, to the person giving the consent, or on whose behalf the consent is given.

Illustration

Causing miscarriage (unless caused in good faith for the purpose of saving the life of the woman) is an offence independently of any harm which it may cause or be intended to cause to the woman. Therefore, it is not an offence "by reason of such harm"; and the consent of the woman or of her guardian to the causing of such miscarriage does not justify the act.

92. Act done in good faith for benefit of a person without consent.—Nothing is an offence by reason of any harm which it may cause to a person for whose benefit it is done in good faith, even without that person's consent, if the circumstances are such that it is impossible for that person to signify consent, or if that person is incapable of giving consent, and has no guardian or other person in lawful charge of him from whom it is possible to obtain consent in time for the thing to be done with benefit: Provided—

Provisos. *First.*—That this exception shall not extend to the intentional causing of death, or the attempting to cause death;

Secondly.—That this exception shall not extend to the doing of anything which the person doing it knows to be likely to cause death, for any purpose other than the preventing of death or grievous hurt, or the curing of any grievous disease or infirmity;

Thirdly.—That this exception shall not extend to the voluntary causing of hurt, or to the attempting to cause hurt, for any purpose other than the preventing of death or hurt;

Fourthly.—That this exception shall not extend to the abetment of any offence, to the committing of which offence it would not extend.

Illustrations

(a) Z is thrown from his horse, and is insensible. A, a surgeon, finds that Z requires to be trepanned. A, not intending Z's death, but in good faith, for Z's benefit, performs the trepan before Z recovers his power of judging for himself. A has committed no offence.

(b) Z is carried off by a tiger. A fires at the tiger knowing it to be likely that the shot may kill Z, but not intending to kill Z, and in good faith intending Z's benefit. A's ball gives Z a mortal wound. A has committed no offence.

(c) A, a surgeon, sees a child suffer an accident which is likely to prove fatal unless an operation be immediately performed. There is no time to apply to the child's guardian. A performs the operation in spite of the entreaties of the child, intending, in good faith, the child's benefit. A has committed no offence.

(d) A is in a house which is on fire, with Z, a child. People below hold out a blanket. A drops the child from the house stop, knowing it to be likely that the fall may kill the child, but not intending to kill the child, and intending, in good faith, the child's benefit. Here, even if the child is killed by the fall, A has committed no offence.

Explanation.—Mere pecuniary benefit is not benefit within the meaning of sections 88, 89 and 92.

93. Communication made in good faith.—No communication made in good faith is an offence by reason of any harm to the person to whom it is made, if it is made for the benefit of that person.

Illustration

A, a surgeon, in good faith, communicates to a patient his opinion that he cannot live. The patient dies in consequence of the shock. A has committed no offence, though he knew it to be likely that the communication might cause the patient's death.

94. Act to which a person is compelled by threats.—Except murder, and offences against the State punishable with death, nothing is an offence which is done by a person who is compelled to do it by threats, which, at the time of doing it, reasonably cause the apprehension that instant death to that person will otherwise be the consequence: Provided the person doing the act did not of his own accord, or from a reasonable apprehension of harm to himself short of instant death, place himself in the situation by which he became subject to such constraint.

Explanation 1.—A person who, of his own accord, or by reason of a threat of being beaten, joins a gang of dacoits, knowing their character, is not entitled to the benefit of this exception, on the ground of his having been compelled by his associates to do anything that is an offence by law.

Explanation 2.—A person seized by a gang of dacoits, and forced, by threat of instant death, to do a thing which is an offence by law; for example, a smith compelled to take his tools and to force the door of a house for the dacoits to enter and plunder it, is entitled to the benefit of this exception.

95. Act causing slight harm.—Nothing is an offence by reason that it causes, or that it is intended to cause, or that it is known to be likely to cause, any harm, if that harm is so slight that no person of ordinary sense and temper would complain of such harm.

Of the Right of Private Defence

96. Things done in private defence.—Nothing is an offence which is done in the exercise of the right of private defence.

97. Right of private defence of the body and of property.—Every person has a right, subject to the restrictions contained in section 99, to defend—

First.—His own body, and the body of any other person, against any offence affecting the human body;

Secondly.—The property, whether movable or immovable, of himself or of any other person, against any act which is an offence falling under the definition of theft, robbery, mischief or criminal trespass, or which is an attempt to commit theft, robbery, mischief or criminal trespass.

98. Right of private defence against the act of a person of unsound mind, etc.—When an act, which would otherwise be a certain offence, is not that offence, by reason of the youth, the want of maturity of understanding, the unsoundness of mind or the intoxication of the person doing that act, or by reason of any misconception on the part of that person, every person has the same right of private defence against that act which he would have if the act were that offence.

Illustrations

(a) Z, under the influence of madness, attempts to kill A; Z is guilty of no offence. But A has the same right of private defence which he would have if Z were sane.

(b) A enters by night a house which he is legally entitled to enter. Z, in good faith, taking A for a house-breaker, attacks A. Here Z, by attacking A under this misconception, commits no offence. But A has the same right of private defence against Z, which he would have if Z were not acting under that misconception.

99. Acts against which there is no right of private defence.—There is no right of private defence against an act which does not reasonably cause the apprehension of death or of grievous hurt, if done, or attempted to be done by a public servant acting in good faith under colour of his office, though that act may not be strictly justifiable by law.

There is no right of private defence against an act which does not reasonably cause the apprehension of death or of grievous hurt, if done, or attempted to be done, by the direction of a public servant acting in good faith under colour of his office though that direction may not be strictly justifiable by law.

There is no right of private defence in cases in which there is time to have recourse to protection of the public authorities.

Extent to which the right may be exercised.—The right of private defence in no case extends to the inflicting of more harm than it is necessary to inflict for the purpose of defence.

Explanation 1.—A person is not deprived of the right of private defence against an act done, or attempted to be done, by a public servant, as such, unless he knows or has reason to believe, that the person doing the act is such public servant.

Explanation 2.—A person is not deprived of the right of private defence against an act done, or attempted to be done, by the direction of a public servant, unless he knows, or has reason to believe, that the person doing the act is acting by such direction, or unless such person states the authority under which he acts, or if he has authority in writing, unless he produces such authority, if demanded.

100. When the right of private defence of the body extends to causing death.—The right of private defence of the body extends, under the restrictions mentioned in the last preceding section, to the voluntary causing of death or of any other harm to the assailant, if the offence which occasions the exercise of the right be of any of the descriptions hereinafter enumerated, namely:—

First.—Such an assault as may reasonably cause the apprehension that death will otherwise be the consequence of such assault;

Secondly.—Such an assault as may reasonably cause the apprehension that grievous hurt will otherwise be the consequence of such assault;

Thirdly.—An assault with the intention of committing rape;

Fourthly.—An assault with the intention of gratifying unnatural lust;

Fifthly.—An assault with the intention of kidnapping or abducting;

Sixthly.—An assault with the intention of wrongfully confining a person, under circumstances which may reasonably cause him to apprehend that he will be unable to have recourse to the public authorities for his release.

¹[*Seventhly.*—An act of throwing or administering acid or an attempt to throw or administer acid which may reasonably cause the apprehension that grievous hurt will otherwise be the consequence of such act.]

101. When such right extends to causing any harm other than death.—If the offence be not of any of the descriptions enumerated in the last preceding section, the right of private defence of the body does not extend to the voluntary causing of death to the assailant, but does extend, under the restrictions mentioned in section 99 to the voluntary causing to the assailant of any harm other than death.

102. Commencement and continuance of the right of private defence of the body.—The right of private defence of the body commences as soon as a reasonable apprehension of danger to the body arises from an attempt or threat to commit the offence though the offence may not have been committed; and it continues as long as such apprehension of danger to the body continues.

103. When the right of private defence of property extends to causing death.—The right of private defence of property extends, under the restrictions mentioned in section 99, to the voluntary causing of death or of any other harm to the wrong-doer, if the offence, the committing of which, or the attempting to commit which, occasions the exercise of the right, be an offence of any of the descriptions hereinafter enumerated, namely:—

First.—Robbery;

Secondly.—House-breaking by night;

Thirdly.—Mischief by fire committed on any building, tent or vessel, which building, tent or vessel is used as a human dwelling or as a place for the custody of property;

Fourthly.—Theft, mischief or house-trespass, under such circumstances as may reasonably cause apprehension that death or grievous hurt will be the consequence, if such right of private defence is not exercised.

STATE AMENDMENTS

Karnataka

(1) In section 103, in clause *Thirdly*, —

(i) after the words “mischief by fire”, the words “or any explosive substance” Shall be inserted;

(ii) after the words “as a human dwelling, or” the words “as a place of worship, or” shall be inserted.

(2) After clause *Fourthly*, the following clause shall be inserted namely:—

“Fifthly.— Mischief by fire or any explosive substance committed on any property used or intended to be used for the purpose of Government or any local authority, statutory body or company owned or controlled by Government or railway or any vehicle used or adapted to be used for the carriage of passengers for hire or reward”.

[*Vide* Karnataka Act 8 of 1972, sec. 2, (w.e.f. 7-10-1972)].

104. When such right extends to causing any harm other than death.—If the offence, the committing of which, or the attempting to commit which occasions the exercise of the right of private defence, be theft, mischief, or criminal trespass, not of any of the descriptions enumerated in the last preceding section, that right does not extend to the voluntary causing of death, but does extend, subject to the restrictions mentioned in section 99, to the voluntary causing to the wrong-doer of any harm other than death.

105. Commencement and continuance of the right of private defence of property.—The right of private defence of property commences when a reasonable apprehension of danger to the property commences.

The right of private defence of property against theft continues till the offender has effected his retreat with the property or either the assistance of the public authorities is obtained, or the property has been recovered.

The right of private defence of property against robbery continues as long as the offender causes or attempts to cause to any person death or hurt or wrongful restraint or as long as the fear of instant death or of instant hurt or of instant personal restraint continues.

1. Ins. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 2 (w.e.f. 3-2-2013).

The right of private defence of property against criminal trespass or mischief continues as long as the offender continues in the commission of criminal trespass or mischief.

The right of private defence of property against house-breaking by night continues as long as the house-trespass which has been begun by such house-breaking continues.

106. Right of private defence against deadly assault when there is risk of harm to innocent person.—If in the exercise of the right of private defence against an assault which reasonably causes the apprehension of death, the defender be so situated that he cannot effectually exercise that right without risk of harm to an innocent person, his right of private defence extends to the running of that risk.

Illustration

A is attacked by a mob who attempt to murder him. He cannot effectually exercise his right of private defence without firing on the mob, and he cannot fire without risk of harming young children who are mingled with the mob. A commits no offence if by so firing he harms any of the children.

CHAPTER V

OF ABETMENT

107. Abetment of a thing.—A person abets the doing of a thing, who—

First.—Instigates any person to do that thing; or

Secondly.—Engages with one or more other person or persons in any conspiracy for the doing of that thing, if an act or illegal omission takes place in pursuance of that conspiracy, and in order to the doing of that thing; or

Thirdly.—Intentionally aids, by any act or illegal omission, the doing of that thing.

Explanation 1.—A person who, by wilful misrepresentation, or by wilful concealment of a material fact which he is bound to disclose, voluntarily causes or procures, or attempts to cause or procure, a thing to be done, is said to instigate the doing of that thing.

Illustration

A, a public officer, is authorised by a warrant from a Court of Justice to apprehend Z. B, knowing that fact and also that C is not Z, wilfully represents to A that C is Z, and thereby intentionally causes A to apprehend C. Here B abets by instigation the apprehension of C.

Explanation 2.—Whoever, either prior to or at the time of the commission of an act, does anything in order to facilitate the commission of that act, and thereby facilitates the commission thereof, is said to aid the doing of that act.

108. Abettor.—A person abets an offence, who abets either the commission of an offence, or the commission of an act which would be an offence, if committed by a person capable by law of committing an offence with the same intention or knowledge as that of the abettor.

Explanation 1.—The abetment of the illegal omission of an act may amount to an offence although the abettor may not himself be bound to do that act.

Explanation 2.—To constitute the offence of abetment it is not necessary that the act abetted should be committed, or that the effect requisite to constitute the offence should be caused.

Illustrations

(a) A instigates B to murder C. B refuses to do so. A is guilty of abetting B to commit murder.

(b) A instigates B to murder D. B in pursuance of the instigation stabs D. D recovers from the wound. A is guilty of instigating B to commit murder.

Explanation 3.—It is not necessary that the person abetted should be capable by law of committing an offence, or that he should have the same guilty intention or knowledge as that of the abettor or any guilty intention or knowledge.

Illustrations

(a) A, with a guilty intention, abets a child or a lunatic to commit an act which would be an offence, if committed by a person capable by law of committing an offence, and having the same intention as A. Here A, whether the act be committed or not, is guilty of abetting an offence.

(b) A, with the intention of murdering Z, instigates B, a child under seven years of age, to do an act which causes Z's death. B, in consequence of the abetment, does the act in the absence of A and thereby causes Z's death. Here, though B was not capable by law of committing an offence, A is liable to be punished in the same manner as if B had been capable by law of committing an offence, and had committed murder, and he is therefore subject to the punishment of death.

(c) A instigates B to set fire to a dwelling-house. B, in consequence of the unsoundness of his mind, being incapable of knowing the nature of the act, or that he is doing what is wrong or contrary to law, sets fire to the house in consequence of A's instigation. B has committed no offence, but A is guilty of abetting the offence of setting fire to a dwelling-house, and is liable to the punishment provided for that offence.

(d) A, intending to cause a theft to be committed, instigates B to take property belonging to Z out of Z's possession. A induces B to believe that the property belongs to A. B takes the property out of Z's possession, in good faith, believing it to be A's property. B, acting under this misconception, does not take dishonestly, and therefore does not commit theft. But A is guilty of abetting theft, and is liable to the same punishment as if B had committed theft.

Explanation 4.—The abetment of an offence being an offence, the abetment of such an abetment is also an offence.

Illustration

A instigates B to instigate C to murder Z. B accordingly instigates C to murder Z, and C commits that offence in consequence of B's instigation. B is liable to be punished for his offence with the punishment for murder; and, as A instigated B to commit the offence, A is also liable to the same punishment.

Explanation 5.—It is not necessary to the commission of the offence of abetment by conspiracy that the abettor should concert the offence with the person who commits it. It is sufficient if he engages in the conspiracy in pursuance of which the offence is committed.

Illustration

A concert with B a plan for poisoning Z. It is agreed that A shall administer the poison. B then explains the plan to C mentioning that a third person is to administer the poison, but without mentioning A's name. C agrees to procure the poison, and procures and delivers it to B for the purpose of its being used in the manner explained. A administers the poison; Z dies in consequence. Here, though A and C have not conspired together, yet C has been engaged in the conspiracy in pursuance of which Z has been murdered. C has therefore committed the offence defined in this section and is liable to the punishment for murder.

¹[**108A. Abetment in India of offences outside India.**]—A person abets an offence within the meaning of this Code who, in ²[India], abets the commission of any act without and beyond ²[India] which would constitute an offence if committed in ²[India].

Illustration

A, in ²[India], instigates B, a foreigner in Goa, to commit a murder in Goa, A is guilty of abetting murder.]

109. Punishment of abetment if the act abetted is committed in consequence and where no express provision is made for its punishment.—Whoever abets any offence shall, if the act abetted is committed in consequence of the abetment, and no express provision is made by this Code for the punishment of such abetment, be punished with the punishment provided for the offence.

Explanation.—An act or offence is said to be committed in consequence of abetment, when it is committed in consequence of the instigation, or in pursuance of the conspiracy, or with the aid which constitutes the abetment.

Illustrations

(a) A offers a bribe to B, a public servant, as a reward for showing A some favour in the exercise of B's official functions. B accepts the bribe. A has abetted the offence defined in section 161.

1. Added by Act 4 of 1898, s. 3.

2. The words "British India" have successively been subs. by the A.O. 1948, the A.O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

(b) A instigates B to give false evidence. B, in consequence of the instigation, commits that offence. A is guilty of abetting that offence, and is liable to the same punishment as B.

(c) A and B conspire to poison Z. A, in pursuance of the conspiracy, procures the poison and delivers it to B in order that he may administer it to Z. B, in pursuance of the conspiracy, administers the poison to Z in A's absence and thereby causes Z's death. Here B is guilty of murder. A is guilty of abetting that offence by conspiracy, and is liable to the punishment for murder.

110. Punishment of abettor if person abetted does act with different intention from that of abettor.—Whoever abets the commission of an offence shall, if the person abetted does the act with a different intention or knowledge from that of the abettor, be punished with the punishment provided for the offence which would have been committed if the act had been done with the intention or knowledge of the abettor and with no other.

111. Liability of abettor when one act abetted and different act done.—When an act is abetted and a different act is done, the abettor is liable for the act done, in the same manner and to the same extent as if he had directly abetted it:

Provided the act done was a probable consequence of the abettment, and was committed under the influence of the instigation, or with the aid or in pursuance of the conspiracy which constituted the abettment.

Illustrations

(a) A instigates a child to put poison into the food of Z, and gives him poison for that purpose. The child, in consequence of the instigation, by mistake puts the poison into the food of Y, which is by the side of that of Z. Here if the child was acting under the influence of A's instigation, and the act done was under the circumstances a probable consequence of the abettment, A is liable in the same manner and to the same extent as if he had instigated the child to put the poison into the food of Y.

(b) A instigates B to burn Z's house B sets fire to the house and at the same time commits theft of property there. A, though guilty of abetting the burning of the house, is not guilty of abetting the theft; for the theft was a distinct act, and not a probable consequence of the burning.

(c) A instigates B and C to break into an inhabited house at midnight for the purpose of robbery, and provides them with arms for that purpose. B and C break into the house, and being resisted by Z, one of the inmates, murder Z. Here, if that murder was the probable consequence of the abettment, A is liable to the punishment provided for murder.

112. Abettor when liable to cumulative punishment for act abetted and for act done.—If the act for which the abettor is liable under the last preceding section is committed in addition to the act abetted, and constitute a distinct offence, the abettor is liable to punishment for each of the offences.

Illustration

A instigates B to resist by force a distress made by a public servant. B, in consequence resists that distress. In offering the resistance, B voluntarily causes grievous hurt to the officer executing the distress. As B has committed both the offence of resisting the distress, and the offence of voluntarily causing grievous hurt, B is liable to punishment for both these offences; and, if A knew that B was likely voluntarily to cause grievous hurt in resisting the distress A will also be liable to punishment for each of the offences.

113. Liability of abettor for an effect caused by the act abetted different from that intended by the abettor.—When an act is abetted with the intention on the part of the abettor of causing a particular effect, and an act for which the abettor is liable in consequence of the abettment, causes a different effect from that intended by the abettor, the abettor is liable for the effect caused, in the same manner and to the same extent as if he had abetted the act with the intention of causing that effect, provided he knew that the act abetted was likely to cause that effect.

Illustration

A instigates B to cause grievous hurt to Z. B, in consequence of the instigation, causes grievous hurt to Z. Z dies in consequence. Here, if A knew that the grievous hurt abetted was likely to cause death, A is liable to be punished with the punishment provided for murder.

114. Abettor present when offence is committed.—Whenever any person who is absent would be liable to be punished as an abettor, is present when the act or offence for which he would be punishable in consequence of the abettment is committed, he shall be deemed to have committed such act or offence.

115. Abetment of offence punishable with death or imprisonment for life—if offence not committed.—Whoever abets the commission of an offence punishable with death or ¹[imprisonment for life], shall, if that offence be not committed in consequence of the abetment, and no express provision is made by this Code for the punishment of such abetment, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine;

if act causing harm be done in consequence.—and if any act for which the abettor is liable in consequence of the abetment, and which causes hurt to any person, is done, the abettor shall be liable to imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to fourteen years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Illustration

A instigates B to murder Z. The offence is not committed. If B had murdered Z, he would have been subject to the punishment of death or ¹[imprisonment for life]. Therefore A is liable to imprisonment for a term which may extend to seven years and also to a fine, and if any hurt be done to Z in consequence of the abetment, he will be liable to imprisonment for a term which may extend to fourteen years, and to fine.

116. Abetment of offence punishable with imprisonment—if offence be not committed.—Whoever abets an offence punishable with imprisonment shall, if that offence be not committed in consequence of the abetment, and no express provision is made by this Code for the punishment of such abetment, be punished with imprisonment of any description provided for that offence for a term which may extend to one-fourth part of the longest term provided for that offence; or with such fine as is provided for that offence, or with both;

if abettor or person abetted be a public servant whose duty it is to prevent offence.—and if the abettor or the person abetted is a public servant, whose duty it is to prevent the commission of such offence, the abettor shall be punished with imprisonment of any description provided for that offence, for a term which may extend to one-half of the longest term provided for that offence, or with such fine as is provided for the offence, or with both.

Illustrations

(a) A offers a bribe to B, a public servant, as a reward for showing A some favour in the exercise of B's official functions. B refuses to accept the bribe. A is punishable under this section.

(b) A instigates B to give false evidence. Here, if B does not give false evidence, A has nevertheless committed the offence defined in this section, and is punishable accordingly.

(c) A, a police-officer, whose duty it is to prevent robbery, abets the commission of robbery. Here, though the robbery be not committed, A is liable to one-half of the longest term of imprisonment provided for that offence, and also to fine.

(d) B abets the commission of a robbery by A, a police-officer, whose duty it is to prevent that offence. Here, though the robbery be not committed, B is liable to one-half of the longest term of imprisonment provided for the offence of robbery, and also to fine.

117. Abetting commission of offence by the public or by more than ten persons.—Whoever abets the commission of an offence by the public generally or by any number or class of persons exceeding ten, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

Illustration

A affixes in a public place a placard instigating a sect consisting of more than ten members to meet at a certain time and place, for the purpose of attacking the members of an adverse sect, while engaged in a procession. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

118. Concealing design to commit offence punishable with death or imprisonment for life.—Whoever intending to facilitate or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby facilitate the commission of an offence punishable with death or ¹[imprisonment for life],

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for "transportation for life" (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

¹[voluntarily conceals by any act or omission or by the use of encryption or any other information hiding tool, the existence of a design] to commit such offence or makes any representation which he knows to be false respecting such design;

if offence be committed; if offence be not committed.—shall, if that offence be committed, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or, if the offence be not committed, with imprisonment of either description, for a term which may extend to three years; and in either case shall also be liable to fine.

Illustration

A, knowing that dacoity is about to be committed at B, falsely informs the Magistrate that a dacoity is about to be committed at C, a place in an opposite direction, and thereby misleads the Magistrate with intent to facilitate the commission of the offence. The dacoity is committed at B in pursuance of the design. A is punishable under this section.

119. Public servant concealing design to commit offence which it is his duty to prevent.—Whoever, being a public servant intending to facilitate or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby facilitate the commission of an offence which it is his duty as such public servant to prevent,

¹[voluntarily conceals, by any act or illegal omission or by the use of encryption or any other information hiding tool, the existence of a design] to commit such offence or makes any representation which he knows to be false respecting such design,

if offence be committed.—shall, if the offence be committed, be punished with imprisonment of any description provided for the offence, for a term which may extend to one-half of the longest term of such imprisonment, or with such fine as is provided for that offence, or with both;

if offence be punishable with death, etc.—or, if the offence be punishable with death or ²[imprisonment for life], with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years;

if offence be not committed.—or, if the offence be not committed, shall be punished with imprisonment of any description provided for the offence for a term which may extend to one-fourth part of the longest term of such imprisonment or with such fine as is provided for the offence, or with both.

Illustration

A, an officer of police, being legally bound to give information of all designs to commit robbery which may come to his knowledge, and knowing that B designs to commit robbery, omits to give such information, with intent to facilitate the commission of that offence. Here A has by an illegal omission concealed the existence of B's design, and is liable to punishment according to the provision of this section.

120. Concealing design to commit offence punishable with imprisonment.—Whoever, intending to facilitate or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby facilitate the commission of an offence punishable with imprisonment,

voluntarily conceals, by any act or illegal omission, the existence of a design to commit such offence, or makes any representation which he knows to be false respecting such design,

if offence be committed; if offence be not committed.—shall, if the offence be committed, be punished with imprisonment of the description provided for the offence, for a term which may extend to one-fourth, and, if the offence be not committed, to one-eighth of the longest term of such imprisonment, or with such fine as is provided for the offence, or with both.

³[CHAPTER VA

CRIMINAL CONSPIRACY

120A. Definition of criminal conspiracy.—When two or more persons agree to do, or cause to be done,—

(1) an illegal act, or

(2) an act which is not illegal by illegal means, such an agreement is designated a criminal conspiracy:

1. Subs. by Act 10 of 2009, s. 51, for “voluntarily conceals, by any act or illegal omission, the existence of a design” (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

2. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

3. Ins. by Act 8 of 1913, s. 3.

Provided that no agreement except an agreement to commit an offence shall amount to a criminal conspiracy unless some act besides the agreement is done by one or more parties to such agreement in pursuance thereof.

Explanation.—It is immaterial whether the illegal act is the ultimate object of such agreement, or is merely incidental to that object.

120B. Punishment of criminal conspiracy.—(1) Whoever is a party to a criminal conspiracy to commit an offence punishable with death,¹ [imprisonment for life] or rigorous imprisonment for a term of two years or upwards, shall, where no express provision is made in this Code for the punishment of such a conspiracy, be punished in the same manner as if he had abetted such offence.

(2) Whoever is a party to a criminal conspiracy other than a criminal conspiracy to commit an offence punishable as aforesaid shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term not exceeding six months, or with fine or with both.]

CHAPTER VI

OF OFFENCES AGAINST THE STATE

121. Waging or attempting to wage war or abetting waging of war against the Government of India.—Whoever wages war against the² [Government of India], or attempts to wage such war, or abets the waging of such war, shall be punished with death, or¹ [imprisonment for life]³ [and shall also be liable to fine].

⁴[Illustration]

^{5***}A joins an insurrection against the² [Government of India]. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

6*

*

*

*

*

⁷[**121A. Conspiracy to commit offences punishable by section 121.**]—Whoever within or without⁸ [India] conspires to commit any of the offences punishable by section 121,^{9***} or conspires to overawe, by means of criminal force or the show of criminal force,¹⁰ [the Central Government or any¹¹ [State] Government^{12***}], shall be punished with¹³ [imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description which may extend to ten years,¹⁴ [and shall also be liable to fine].

Explanation.—To constitute a conspiracy under this section, it is not necessary that any act or illegal omission shall take place in pursuance thereof.]

122. Collecting arms, etc., with intention of waging war against the Government of India.—Whoever collects men, arms or ammunition or otherwise prepares to wage war with the intention of either waging or being prepared to wage war against the² [Government of India], shall be punished with¹ [imprisonment for life] or imprisonment of either description for a term not exceeding ten years,¹⁵ [and shall also be liable to fine].

-
1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).
 2. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for “Queen”.
 3. Subs. by Act 16 of 1921, s. 2, for “and shall forfeit all his property”.
 4. Subs. by Act 36 of 1957, s. 3 and the Second Sch., for “Illustrations”
 5. The brackets and letter “(a)” omitted by s. 3 and the Second Sch., *ibid*.
 6. Illustration (b) omitted, by the A. O. 1950.
 7. Ins. by Act 27 of 1870, s. 4.
 8. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.
 9. The words “or to deprive the Queen of the sovereignty of the Provinces or of any part thereof” omitted by the A. O. 1950.
 10. Subs. by the A. O. 1937, for “the G. of I, or any L. G.”.
 11. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for “Provincial”.
 12. The words “or the Government of Burma” omitted by the A. O. 1948.
 13. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life or any shorter term” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).
 14. Ins. by Act 16 of 1921, s. 3.
 15. Subs. by Act 16 of 1921, s. 2, for “and shall forfeit all his property”.

123. Concealing with intent to facilitate design to wage war.—Whoever, by any act, or by any illegal omission, conceals the existence of a design to wage war against the ¹[Government of India], intending by such concealment to facilitate, or knowing it to be likely that such concealment will facilitate, the waging of such war, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

124. Assailing President, Governor, etc., with intent to compel or restrain the exercise of any lawful power.—Whoever, with the intention of inducing or compelling the ²[President] of India, or ³[Governor ⁴****] of any ⁵[State], ⁶*** ⁷*** ⁸*** to exercise or refrain from exercising in any manner any of the lawful powers of such ⁹[President or ³[Governor ⁶***]],

assaults or wrongfully restrains, or attempts wrongfully to restrain, or overawes, by means of criminal force or the show of criminal force, or attempts so to overawe, such ¹¹[President or ³[Governor ⁶***]],

shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

¹⁰[**124A. Sedition.**—Whoever by words, either spoken or written, or by signs, or by visible representation, or otherwise, brings or attempts to bring into hatred or contempt, or excites or attempts to excite disaffection towards, ¹¹***the Government established by law in ¹²[India], ¹³***shall be punished with ¹⁴[imprisonment for life], to which fine may be added, or with imprisonment which may extend to three years, to which fine may be added, or with fine.

Explanation 1.—The expression “disaffection” includes disloyalty and all feelings of enmity.

Explanation 2.—Comments expressing disapprobation of the measures of the Government with a view to obtain their alteration by lawful means, without exciting or attempting to excite hatred, contempt or disaffection, do not constitute an offence under this section.

Explanation 3.—Comments expressing disapprobation of the administrative or other action of the Government without exciting or attempting to excite hatred, contempt or disaffection, do not constitute an offence under this section.]

125. Waging war against any Asiatic Power in alliance with the Government of India.—Whoever wages war against the Government of any Asiatic Power in alliance or at peace with the ¹[Government of India] or attempts to wage such war, or abets the waging of such war, shall be punished with ¹⁴[imprisonment for life], to which fine may be added, or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, to which fine may be added, or with fine.

-
1. Subs. by the A. O 1950, for “Queen”.
 2. Subs. by the *ibid.*, for “Governor General”.
 3. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., for “Governor”.
 4. The words “or Rajpramukh” omitted by the A. O. 1956.
 5. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for “Province” which had been subs. by the A. O. 1937, for “Presidency”.
 6. The words “or a Lieutenant-Governor” omitted by the A. O. 1937.
 7. The words “or a Member of the Council of the Governor General of India” omitted by the A.O. 1948.
 8. The words “or of the Council of any Presidency” omitted by the A. O. 1937.
 9. The words “Governor General, Governor, Lieutenant-Governor or Member of Council” have successively been amended by the A.O. 1937, the A. O. 1948 and the A. O. 1950 to read as above.
 10. Ins. by Act 27 of 1870, s. 5 and subs. by Act 4 of 1898, s. 4, for s. 124A.
 11. The words “Her Majesty or” omitted by the A.O. 1950. The words “or the Crown Representative” ins. after the word “Majesty” by the A. O. 1937 were omitted by the A. O. 1948.
 12. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.
 13. The words “or British Burma” ins. by the A. O. 1937 and omitted by the A. O 1948.
 14. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life or any shorter term” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

126. Committing depredation on territories of Power at peace with the Government of India.—

Whoever commits depredation, or makes preparations to commit depredation, on the territories of any Power in alliance or at peace with the ¹[Government of India], shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine and to forfeiture of any property used or intended to be used in committing such depredation, or acquired by such depredation.

127. Receiving property taken by war or depredation mentioned in sections 125 and 126.—

Whoever receives any property knowing the same to have been taken in the commission of any of the offences mentioned in sections 125 and 126, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine and to forfeiture of the property so received.

128. Public servant voluntarily allowing prisoner of State or war to escape.—Whoever, being a public servant and having the custody of any State prisoner or prisoner of war, voluntarily allows such prisoner to escape from any place in which such prisoner is confined, shall be punished with ²[imprisonment for life], or imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

129. Public servant negligently suffering such prisoner to escape.—Whoever, being a public servant and having the custody of any State prisoner or prisoner of war, negligently suffers such prisoner to escape from any place of confinement in which such prisoner is confined, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

130. Aiding escape of, rescuing or harbouring such prisoner.—Whoever knowingly aids or assists any State prisoner or prisoner of war in escaping from lawful custody, or rescues or attempts to rescue any such prisoner, or harbours or conceals any such prisoner who has escaped from lawful custody, or offers or attempts to offer any resistance to the recapture of such prisoner shall be punished with ²[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation.—A State prisoner or prisoner of war, who is permitted to be at large on his parole within certain limits in ³[India], is said to escape from lawful custody if he goes beyond the limits within which he is allowed to be at large.

CHAPTER VII

OF OFFENCES RELATING TO THE ARMY, ⁴[NAVY AND AIR FORCE]

131. Abetting mutiny, or attempting to seduce a soldier, sailor or airman from his duty.—

Whoever abets the committing of mutiny by an officer, soldier, ⁵[sailor or airman], in the Army, ⁶[Navy or Air Force] of the ¹[Government of India] or attempts to seduce any such officer, soldier, ⁵[sailor or airman] from his allegiance or his duty, shall be punished with ²[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

⁷[*Explanation.*—In this section the words “officer”, ⁸[“soldier”, ⁹[“sailor”] and “airman”] include any

1. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for “Queen”.

2. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

3. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

4. Subs. by Act 10 of 1927, s. 2 and the First Sch., for “and Navy”.

5. Subs. by s. 2 and the First Sch., *ibid.*, for “or sailor”.

6. Subs. by s. 2 and the First Sch., *ibid.*, for “or Navy”.

7. Ins. by Act 27 of 1870, s. 6.

8. Subs. by Act 10 of 1927, s. 2 and the First Sch., for “and soldier”

9. Ins. by Act 35 of 1934, s. 2 and Sch.

person subject to the ¹[Army Act, ²[the Army Act, 1950 (46 of 1950)], ³[the Naval Discipline Act, ⁴***the Indian Navy (Discipline) Act, 1934 (34 of 1934)] ⁶[the Air Force Act or ⁷[the Air Force Act, 1950 (45 of 1950)]], as the case may be].]

132. Abetment of mutiny, if mutiny is committed in consequence thereof.—Whoever abets the committing of mutiny by an officer, soldier, ⁸[sailor or airman], in the Army, ⁹[Navy or Air Force] of the ¹⁰[Government of India], shall, if mutiny be committed in consequence of that abetment, be punished with death or with ¹¹[imprisonment for life], or imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

133. Abetment of assault by soldier, sailor or airman on his superior officer, when in execution of his office.—Whoever abets an assault by an officer, soldier, ⁸[sailor or airman], in the Army, ⁹[Navy or Air Force] of the ¹⁰[Government of India], on any superior officer being in the execution of his office, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

134. Abetment of such assault, if the assault is committed.—Whoever abets an assault by an officer, soldier, ⁸[sailor or airman], in the Army, ⁹[Navy or Air Force] of the ¹⁰[Government of India], on any superior officer being in the execution of his office, shall, if such assault be committed in consequence of that abetment be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

135. Abetment of desertion of soldier, sailor or airman.—Whoever abets the desertion of any officer, soldier, ⁸[sailor or airman], in the Army, ⁹[Navy or Air Force] of the ¹⁰[Government of India], shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

136. Harbouuring deserter.—Whoever, except as hereinafter excepted, knowing or having reason to believe that an officer, soldier, ⁸[sailor or airman], in the Army, ⁹[Navy or Air Force] of the ¹⁰[Government of India], has deserted, harbours such officer, soldier, ⁸[sailor or airman], shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine or with both.

Exception.—This provision does not extend to the case in which the harbour is given by a wife to her husband.

137. Deserter concealed on board merchant vessel through negligence of master.—The master or person in charge of a merchant vessel, on board of which any deserter from the Army, ⁹[Navy or Air Force] of the ¹⁰[Government of India] is concealed, shall, though ignorant of such concealment, be liable to a penalty not exceeding five hundred rupees, if he might have known of such concealment but for some neglect of his duty as such master or person in charge, or but for some want of discipline on board of the vessel.

138. Abetment of act of insubordination by soldier, sailor or airman.—Whoever abets what he knows to be an act of insubordination by an officer, soldier, ⁸[sailor or airman], in the Army, ⁹[Navy or Air Force], of the ¹⁰[Government of India], shall, if such act of insubordination be committed in consequence of that abetment, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both.

-
1. Subs. by Act 10 of 1927, s. 2 and the First Sch., for “Articles of War for the better government of Her Majesty’s Army, or to the Articles of War contained in Act No. 5 of 1869”.
 2. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., for “the Indian Army Act, 1911”.
 3. Ins. by Act 35 of 1934, s. 2 and the Sch.
 4. The words “or that Act as modified by” omitted by the A. O. 1950.
 5. Now *see* the Navy Act, 1957 (62 of 1957).
 6. Subs. by Act 14 of 1932, s. 130 and the Sch., for “or the Air Force Act”.
 7. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., for “the Indian Air Force Act, 1932”.
 8. Subs. by Act 10 of 1927, s. 2 and the First Sch., for “or sailor”.
 9. Subs. by s. 2 and the First Sch., *ibid.*, for “or Navy”.
 10. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for “Queen”.
 11. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

138A. [Application of foregoing sections to the Indian Marine Service.] Rep. by the Amending Act, 1934 (35 of 1934), s. 2 and Sch.

139. Persons subject to certain Acts.—No person subject to ¹[the Army Act, ²[the Army Act, 1950 (46 of 1950)], the Naval Discipline Act, ³[⁴*** ⁵[the Indian Navy (Discipline) Act, 1934 (34 of 1934)], ⁶[the Air Force Act or ⁷[the Air Force Act, 1950 (45 of 1950)]]], is subject to punishment under this Code for any of the offences defined in this Chapter.

140. Wearing garb or carrying token used by soldier, sailor or airman.—Whoever, not being a soldier, ⁸[sailor or airman] in the Military, ⁹[Naval or Air] service of the ¹⁰[Government of India], wears any garb or carries any token resembling any garb or token used by such a soldier, ⁸[sailor or airman] with the intention that it may be believed that he is such a soldier, ⁸[sailor or airman], shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three months, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both.

CHAPTER VIII

OF OFFENCES AGAINST THE PUBLIC TRANQUILLITY

141. Unlawful assembly.—An assembly of five or more persons is designated an “unlawful assembly”, if the common object of the persons composing that assembly is—

First.—To overawe by criminal force, or show of criminal force, ¹¹[the Central or any State Government or Parliament or the Legislature of any State], or any public servant in the exercise of the lawful power of such public servant; or

Second.—To resist the execution of any law, or of any legal process; or

Third.—To commit any mischief or criminal trespass, or other offence; or

Fourth.—By means of criminal force, or show of criminal force, to any person, to take or obtain possession of any property, or to deprive any person of the enjoyment of a right of way, or of the use of water or other incorporeal right of which he is in possession or enjoyment, or to enforce any right or supposed right; or

Fifth.—By means of criminal force, or show of criminal force, to compel any person to do what he is not legally bound to do, or to omit to do what he is legally entitled to do.

Explanation.—An assembly which was not unlawful when it assembled, may subsequently become an unlawful assembly.

142. Being member of unlawful assembly.—Whoever, being aware of facts which render any assembly an unlawful assembly, intentionally joins that assembly, or continues in it, is said to be a member of an unlawful assembly.

143. Punishment.—Whoever is a member of an unlawful assembly, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both.

144. Joining unlawful assembly armed with deadly weapon.—Whoever, being armed with any deadly weapon, or with anything which, used as a weapon of offence, is likely to cause death, is a member of an unlawful assembly, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

1. Subs. by Act 10 of 1927, s. 2 and the First Sch., for “any Articles of War for the Army or Navy of the Queen, or for any part of such Army or Navy”.

2. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., for “the Indian Army Act, 1911”.

3. Ins. by Act 35 of 1934, s. 2 and the Sch.

4. The words “or that Act as modified by” omitted by the A. O. 1950.

5. Now see the Navy Act, 1957 (62 of 1957).

6. Subs. by Act 14 of 1932, s. 130 and Sch., for “or the Air Force Act”.

7. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., for “the Indian Air Force Act, 1932”.

8. Subs. by Act 10 of 1927, s. 2 and the First Sch., for “or sailor”.

9. Subs. by s. 2 and the First Sch., *ibid.*, for “or Naval”.

10. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for “Queen”.

11. Subs., *ibid.*, for “the Central or any Provincial Government or Legislature”.

145. Joining or continuing in unlawful assembly, knowing it has been commanded to disperse.—Whoever joins or continues in an unlawful assembly, knowing that such unlawful assembly has been commanded in the manner prescribed by law to disperse, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extent to two years, or with fine, or with both.

146. Rioting.—Whenever force or violence is used by an unlawful assembly, or by any member thereof, in prosecution of the common object of such assembly, every member of such assembly is guilty of the offence of rioting.

147. Punishment for rioting.—Whoever is guilty of rioting, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

148. Rioting, armed with deadly weapon.—Whoever is guilty of rioting, being armed with a deadly weapon or with anything which, used as a weapon of offence, is likely to cause death, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

149. Every member of unlawful assembly guilty of offence committed in prosecution of common object.—If an offence is committed by any member of an unlawful assembly in prosecution of the common object of that assembly, or such as the members of that assembly knew to be likely to be committed in prosecution of that object, every person who, at the time of the committing of that offence, is a member of the same assembly, is guilty of that offence.

150. Hiring, or conniving at hiring, of persons to join unlawful assembly.—Whoever hires or engages, or employs, or promotes, or connives at the hiring, engagement or employment of any person to join or become a member of any unlawful assembly, shall be punishable as a member of such unlawful assembly, and for any offence which may be committed by any such person as a member of such unlawful assembly in pursuance of such hiring, engagement or employment, in the same manner as if he had been a member of such unlawful assembly, or himself had committed such offence.

151. Knowingly joining or continuing in assembly of five or more persons after it has been commanded to disperse.—Whoever knowingly joins or continues in any assembly of five or more persons likely to cause a disturbance of the public peace, after such assembly has been lawfully commanded to disperse, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both.

Explanation.—If the assembly is an unlawful assembly within the meaning of section 141, the offender will be punishable under section 145.

152. Assaulting or obstructing public servant when suppressing riot, etc.—Whoever assaults or threatens to assault, or obstructs or attempts to obstruct, any public servant in the discharge of his duty as such public servant, in endeavouring to disperse an unlawful assembly, or to suppress a riot or affray, or uses, or threatens, or attempts to use criminal force to such public servant, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

153. Wantonly giving provocation with intent to cause riot—if rioting be committed—if not committed.—Whoever malignantly, or wantonly, by doing anything which is illegal, gives provocation to any person intending or knowing it to be likely that such provocation will cause the offence of rioting to be committed, shall, if the offence of rioting be committed in consequence of such provocation, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both; and if the offence of rioting be not committed, with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both.

¹[**153A. Promoting enmity between different groups on grounds of religion, race, place of birth, residence, language, etc., and doing acts prejudicial to maintenance of harmony.**—(1) Whoever—

(a) by words, either spoken or written, or by signs or by visible representations or otherwise, promotes or attempts to promote, on grounds of religion, race, place of birth, residence, language, caste or community or any other ground whatsoever, disharmony or feelings of enmity, hatred or ill-will between different religious, racial, language or regional groups or castes or communities, or

1. Subs. by Act 35 of 1969, s. 2, for section 153A (w.e.f. 4-9-1969).

(b) commits any act which is prejudicial to the maintenance of harmony between different religious, racial, language or regional groups or castes or communities, and which disturbs or is likely to disturb the public tranquillity, ¹[or]

¹[(c) organizes any exercise, movement, drill or other similar activity intending that the participants in such activity shall use or be trained to use criminal force or violence or knowing it to be likely that the participants in such activity will use or be trained to use criminal force or violence, or participates in such activity intending to use or be trained to use criminal force or violence or knowing it to be likely that the participants in such activity will use or be trained to use criminal force or violence, against any religious, racial, language or regional group or caste or community and such activity for any reason whatsoever causes or is likely to cause fear or alarm or a feeling of insecurity amongst members of such religious, racial, language or regional group or caste or community,]

shall be punished with imprisonment which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

(2) **Offence committed in place of worship, etc.**—Whoever commits an offence specified in sub-section (1) in any place of worship or in any assembly engaged in the performance of religious worship or religious ceremonies, shall be punished with imprisonment which may extend to five years and shall also be liable to fine.]

²[**153AA. Punishment for knowingly carrying arms in any procession or organising, or holding or taking part in any mass drill or mass training with arms.**—Whoever knowingly carries arms in any procession or organizes or holds or takes part in any mass drill or mass training with arms in any public place in contravention of any public notice or order issued or made under section 144A of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (2 of 1974) shall be punished with imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months and with fine which may extend to two thousand rupees.

Explanation.—“Arms” means articles of any description designed or adapted as weapons for offence or defence and includes firearms, sharp edged weapons, lathis, *dandas* and sticks.]

¹[**153B. Imputations, assertions prejudicial to national integration.**—(1) Whoever, by words either spoken or written or by signs or by visible representations or otherwise,—

(a) makes or publishes any imputation that any class of persons cannot, by reason of their being members of any religious, racial, language or regional group or caste or community, bear true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India as by law established or uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India, or

(b) asserts, counsels, advises, propagates or publishes that any class of persons shall, by reason of their being members of any religious, racial, language or regional group or caste or community, be denied, or deprived of their rights as citizens of India, or

(c) makes or publishes any assertion, counsel, plea or appeal concerning the obligation of any class of persons, by reason of their being members of any religious, racial, language or regional group or caste or community, and such assertion, counsel, plea or appeal causes or is likely to cause disharmony or feelings of enmity or hatred or ill-will between such members and other persons,

shall be punished with imprisonment which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

(2) Whoever commits an offence specified in sub-section (1), in any place of worship or in any assembly engaged in the performance of religious worship or religious ceremonies, shall be punished with imprisonment which may extend to five years and shall also be liable to fine.]

154. Owner or occupier of land on which an unlawful assembly is held.—Whenever any unlawful assembly or riot takes place, the owner or occupier of the land upon which such unlawful assembly is held, or such riot is committed, and any person having or claiming an interest in such land, shall be punishable with fine not exceeding one thousand rupees, if he or his agent or manager, knowing that such offence is being or has been committed, or having reason to believe it is likely to be committed, do not give the earliest notice thereof in his or their power to the principal officer at the nearest police-station,

1. Ins. by Act 31 of 1972, s. 2 (w.e.f. 14-6-1972).

2. Ins. by Act 25 of 2005, s. 44 (w.e.f. 23-6-2005).

and do not, in the case of his or their having reason to believe that it was about to be committed, use all lawful means in his or their power to prevent it and, in the event of its taking place, do not use all lawful means in his or their power to disperse or suppress the riot or unlawful assembly.

155. Liability of person for whose benefit riot is committed.—Whenever a riot is committed for the benefit or on behalf of any person who is the owner or occupier of any land respecting which such riot takes place or who claims any interest in such land, or in the subject of any dispute which gave rise to the riot, or who has accepted or derived any benefit therefrom, such person shall be punishable with fine, if he or his agent or manager, having reason to believe that such riot was likely to be committed or that the unlawful assembly by which such riot was committed was likely to be held, shall not respectively use all lawful means in his or their power to prevent such assembly or riot from taking place, and for suppressing and dispersing the same.

156. Liability of agent or occupier for whose benefit riot is committed.—Whenever a riot is committed for the benefit or on behalf of any person who is the owner or occupier of any land respecting which such riot takes place, or who claims any interest in such land, or in the subject of any dispute which gave rise to the riot, or who has accepted or derived any benefit therefrom,

the agent or manager of such person shall be punishable with fine, if such agent or manager, having reason to believe that such riot was likely to be committed, or that the unlawful assembly by which such riot was committed was likely to be held, shall not use all lawful means in his power to prevent such riot or assembly from taking place and for suppressing and dispersing the same.

157. Harboiring persons hired for an unlawful assembly.—Whoever harbours, receives or assembles, in any house or premises in his occupation or charge, or under his control any persons knowing that such persons have been hired, engaged or employed, or are about to be hired, engaged or employed, to join or become members of an unlawful assembly, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both.

158. Being hired to take part in an unlawful assembly or riot.—Whoever is engaged, or hired, or offers or attempts to be hired or engaged, to do or assist in doing any of the acts specified in section 141, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both,

or to go armed.—and whoever, being so engaged or hired as aforesaid, goes armed, or engages or offers to go armed, with any deadly weapon or with anything which used as a weapon of offence is likely to cause death, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

159. Affray.—When two or more persons, by fighting in a public place, disturb the public peace, they are said to “commit an affray”.

160. Punishment for committing affray.—Whoever commits an affray, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to one hundred rupees, or with both.

STATE AMENDMENT

Uttar Pradesh

Abatement of certain trials.— Notwithstanding anything contained in any other law for the time being in force,—

(1) the trial of an accused for —

(a) an offence punishable under —

“(i) the Motor Vehicles Act, 1988; or ”

(ii) the Public Gambling Act, 1867, not being an offence punishable under section 3 of that Act or an offence in respect of wagering punishable under section 13 of that Act; or

(iii) section 34 of the Police Act, 1861; or

(iv) section 160 of the Indian Penal Code, 1860; or

(b) any other offence punishable with fine only, or

(2) a procedure, under section 107 or section 109 of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973, pending before a Magistrate on the date of commencement of this Act from before “December 31, 2015” shall abate.

[*Vide* the Uttar Pradesh Act 35 of 1979, s. 9, and amended by Uttar Pradesh Act 29 of 2016 and 9 of 2018].

CHAPTER IX

OF OFFENCES BY OR RELATING TO PUBLIC SERVANTS

161. [*Public servant taking gratification other than legal remuneration in respect of an official act.*] *Rep. by the Prevention of Corruption Act, 1988 (49 of 1988), s. 31.*

STATE AMENDMENT

Kerala.—

Amendment of section 161, Central Act 45 of 1860.—In section 161 of the Indian Penal Code (Central Act 45 of 1860), after the explanation relating to “A motive or reward for doing”, the following explanation shall be inserted, namely:—

“‘Public Servant’.— For purposes of this section and sections 162, 163, 164, 165 and 165A, the words ‘public servant’ shall denote, besides those who are public servants under section 21 or who are deemed to be ‘public servants’ within the meaning of that section under any law for the time being in force, persons falling under any of the descriptions hereinafter following, namely:—

(i) Every officer in the service or pay of the Travancore Devaswom Board or the Cochin Devaswom Board or the Cochin Devaswom Board;

(ii) Every officer in the service or pay and every member of the Wakfs Board constituted under the Wakfs Act, 1954 (Central Act 29 of 1954);

(iii) The President and every member of a Village Court or Village Panchayat Court;

(iv) Every member of the Board of Directors or of the executive or managing committee and every officer or servant of a co-operative society registered or deemed to be registered under the law relating to co-operative societies for the time being in force.

(v) Every member of the governing body and every officer or servant in the service or pay of a society registered under the Travancore-Cochin Literary, Scientific and Charitable Societies Registration Act, 1955 or the Societies Registration Act, 1860, and receiving aid or grant from the Government;

(vi) Every teacher or other officer or servant of the University of Kerala;

(vii) Every examiner of a University Examination or a Government Examination;

(viii) Every Manager, or teacher or servant of an educational institution which receives or has received aid or grant from the Government or the University of Kerala.”.

[*Vide* Kerala Act 27 of 1962, sec. 2].

162. [Taking gratification, in order, by corrupt or illegal means, to influence public servant.] Rep. by the Prevention of Corruption Act, 1988 (49 of 1988), s. 31.

163. [Taking gratification, for the exercise personal influence with public servant.] Rep. by s. 31, ibid.

164. [Punishment for abetment by public servant of offences defined in sections 162 or 163.] Rep. by s. 31, ibid.

165. [Public servant obtaining valuable thing, without consideration, from person concerned in proceeding or business transacted by such public servant.] Rep. by s. 31, ibid.

165A. [Punishment for abetment of offences defined in section 161 or section 165.] Rep. by s. 31, ibid.

166. Public servant disobeying law, with intent to cause injury to any person.—Whoever, being a public servant, knowingly disobeys any direction of the law as to the way in which he is to conduct himself as such public servant, intending to cause, or knowing it to be likely that he will, by such disobedience, cause injury to any person, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

Illustration

A, being an officer directed by law to take property in execution, in order to satisfy a decree pronounced in Z's favour by a Court of Justice, knowingly disobeys that direction of law, with the knowledge that he is likely thereby to cause injury to Z. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

¹[166A. Public servant disobeying direction under law.]—Whoever, being a public servant,—

(a) knowingly disobeys any direction of the law which prohibits him from requiring the attendance at any place of any person for the purpose of investigation into an offence or any other matter, or

(b) knowingly disobeys, to the prejudice of any person, any other direction of the law regulating the manner in which he shall conduct such investigation, or

(c) fails to record any information given to him under sub-section (1) of section 154 of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (2 of 1974), in relation to cognizable offence punishable under section 326A, section 326B, section 354, section 354B, section 370, section 370A, section 376, section 376A, ²[section 376AB, section 376B, section 376C, section 376D, section 376DA, section 376DB], section 376E or section 509,

shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than six months but which may extend to two years, and shall also be liable to fine.

STATE AMENDMENT

Arunachal Pradesh

Amendment of section 166A.—In section 166A of the principal Act, in clause (c), for the words, figures and letters “section 326A, section 326B, section 354, section 354A, section 370, section 370A, section 376, section 376A, section 376B, section 376C, section 376D, section 376E or section 509” the words, figures and letters “section 326A, section 326B, section 354, sub-sections (2) and (3) of section 354A, section 354B, section 354C, sub-sections (2) of section 354D, section 370, section 370A, section 376, section 376A, section 376AA, section 376B, section 376C, section 376D, section 376DA, section 376E or section 509” shall be substituted.

[Vide Arunachal Pradesh Act 3 of 2019, s. 3]

166B. Punishment for non-treatment of victim.—Whoever, being in charge of a hospital, public or private, whether run by the Central Government, the State Government, local bodies or any other person, contravenes the provisions of section 357C of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (2 of 1974), shall be punished with imprisonment for a term which may extend to one year or with fine or with both.]

167. Public servant framing an incorrect document with intent to cause injury.—Whoever, being a public servant, and being, as ³[such public servant, charged with the preparation or translation of any document or electronic record, frames, prepares or translates that document or electronic record] in a manner which he knows or believes to be incorrect, intending thereby to cause or knowing it to be likely

1. Ins. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 3 (w.e.f. 03-02-2013).

2. Subs. by Act 22 of 2018, s. 2, for “section 376B, section 376C, section 376D” (w.e.f. 21-4-2018).

3. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for certain words (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

that he may thereby cause injury to any person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

168. Public servant unlawfully engaging in trade.—Whoever, being a public servant, and being legally bound as such public servant not to engage in trade, engages in trade, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

169. Public servant unlawfully buying or bidding for property.—Whoever, being a public servant, and being legally bound as such public servant, not to purchase or bid for certain property, purchases or bids for that property, either in his own name or in the name of another, or jointly, or in shares with others, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both; and the property, if purchased, shall be confiscated.

170. Personating a public servant.—Whoever pretends to hold any particular office as a public servant, knowing that he does not hold such office or falsely personates any other person holding such office, and in such assumed character does or attempts to do any act under colour of such office, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

171. Wearing garb or carrying token used by public servant with fraudulent intent.—Whoever, not belonging to a certain class of public servants, wears any garb or carries any token resembling any garb or token used by that class of public servants, with the intention that it may be believed, or with the knowledge that it is likely to be believed, that he belongs to that class of public servants, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three months, or with fine which may extend to two hundred rupees, or with both.

¹[CHAPTER IXA

OF OFFENCES RELATING TO ELECTIONS

171A. “Candidate”, “Electoral right” defined.—For the purposes of this Chapter—

²[(a) “candidate” means a person who has been nominated as a candidate at any election;]

(b) “electoral right” means the right of a person to stand, or not to stand as, or to withdraw from being, a candidate or to vote or refrain from voting at an election.

171B. Bribery.—(1) Whoever—

(i) gives a gratification to any person with the object of inducing him or any other person to exercise any electoral right or of rewarding any person for having exercised any such right; or

(ii) accepts either for himself or for any other person any gratification as a reward for exercising any such right or for inducing or attempting to induce any other person to exercise any such right,

commits the offence of bribery:

Provided that a declaration of public policy or a promise of public action shall not be an offence under this section.

(2) A person who offers, or agrees to give, or offers or attempts to procure, a gratification shall be deemed to give a gratification.

(3) A person who obtains or agrees to accept or attempts to obtain a gratification shall be deemed to accept a gratification, and a person who accepts a gratification as a motive for doing what he does not intend to do, or as a reward for doing what he has not done, shall be deemed to have accepted the gratification as a reward.

171C. Undue influence at elections.—(1) Whoever voluntarily interferes or attempts to interfere with the free exercise of any electoral right commits the offence of undue influence at an election.

(2) Without prejudice to the generality of the provisions of sub-section (1), whoever—

1. Ins. by Act 39 of 1920, s. 2 (w.e.f. 14-9-1920).

2. Subs. by Act 40 of 1975, s. 9, for cl. (a) (w.e.f. 6-8-1975).

(a) threatens any candidate or voter, or any person in whom a candidate or voter is interested, with injury of any kind, or

(b) induces or attempts to induce a candidate or voter to believe that he or any person in whom he is interested will become or will be rendered an object of Divine displeasure or of spiritual censure, shall be deemed to interfere with the free exercise of the electoral right of such candidate or voter, within the meaning of sub-section (1).

(3) A declaration of public policy or a promise of public action, or the mere exercise or a legal right without intent to interfere with an electoral right, shall not be deemed to be interference within the meaning of this section.

171D. Personation at elections.—Whoever at an election applies for a voting paper on votes in the name of any other person, whether living or dead, or in a fictitious name, or who having voted once at such election applies at the same election for a voting paper in his own name, and whoever abets, procures or attempts to procure the voting by any person in any such way, commits the offence of personation at an election:

¹[Provided that nothing in this section shall apply to a person who has been authorised to vote as proxy for an elector under any law for the time being in force in so far as he votes as a proxy for such elector.]

171E. Punishment for bribery.—Whoever commits the offence of bribery shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both:

Provided that bribery by treating shall be punished with fine only.

Explanation.—“Treating” means that form of bribery where the gratification consists in food, drink, entertainment, or provision.

171F. Punishment for undue influence or personation at an election.—Whoever commits the offence of undue influence or personation at an election shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year or with fine, or with both.

171G. False statement in connection with an election.—Whoever with intent to affect the result of an election makes or publishes any statement purporting to be a statement of fact which is false and which he either knows or believes to be false or does not believe to be true, in relation to the personal character or conduct of any candidate shall be punished with fine.

171H. Illegal payments in connection with an election.—Whoever without the general or special authority in writing of a candidate incurs or authorises expenses on account of the holding of any public meeting, or upon any advertisement, circular or publication, or in any other way whatsoever for the purpose of promoting or procuring the election of such candidate, shall be punished with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees:

Provided that if any person having incurred any such expenses not exceeding the amount of ten rupees without authority obtains within ten days from the date on which such expenses were incurred the approval in writing of the candidate, he shall be deemed to have incurred such expenses with the authority of the candidate.

171-I. Failure to keep election accounts.—Whoever being required by any law for the time being in force or any rule having the force of law to keep accounts of expenses incurred at or in connection with an election fails to keep such accounts shall be punished with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees.]

CHAPTER X

OF CONTEMPTS OF THE LAWFUL AUTHORITY OF PUBLIC SERVANTS

172. Absconding to avoid service of summons or other proceeding.—Whoever absconds in order to avoid being served with a summons, notice or order proceeding from any public servant legally competent, as such public servant, to issue such summons, notice or order, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both;

or, if the summons or notice or order is to attend in person or by agent, or to ²[produce a document or an electronic record in a Court of Justice], with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

1. The proviso ins. by Act 24 of 2003, s. 5 (w.e.f. 22-9-2003).

2. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for “produce a document in a Court of Justice” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

173. Preventing service of summons or other proceeding, or preventing publication thereof.— Whoever in any manner intentionally prevents the serving on himself, or on any other person, of any summons, notice or order proceeding from any public servant legally competent, as such public servant, to issue such summons, notice or order,

or intentionally prevents the lawful affixing to any place of any such summons, notice or order,

or intentionally removes any such summons, notice or order from any place to which it is lawfully affixed,

or intentionally prevents the lawful making of any proclamation, under the authority of any public servant legally competent, as such public servant, to direct such proclamation to be made,

shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both;

or, if the summons, notice, order or proclamation is to attend in person or by agent, or ¹[to produce a document or electronic record in a Court of Justice] with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

174. Non-attendance in obedience to an order from public servant.— Whoever, being legally bound to attend in person or by an agent at a certain place and time in obedience to a summons, notice, order or proclamation proceeding from any public servant legally competent, as such public servant, to issue the same,

intentionally omits to attend at that place or time, or departs from the place where he is bound to attend before the time at which it is lawful for him to depart,

shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both;

or, if the summons, notice, order or proclamation is to attend in person or by agent in a Court of Justice, with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

Illustrations

(a) A, being legally bound to appear before the ²[High Court] at Calcutta, in obedience to a subpoena issuing from that Court, intentionally omits to appear. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

(b) A, being legally bound to appear before a ³[District Judge], as a witness, in obedience to a summons issued by that ³[District Judge] intentionally omits to appear. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

⁴[174A.]Non-appearance in response to a proclamation under section 82 of Act 2 of 1974.—

Whoever fails to appear at the specified place and the specified time as required by a proclamation published under sub-section (1) of section 82 of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 shall be punished with imprisonment for a term which may extend to three years or with fine or with both, and where a declaration has been made under sub-section (4) of that section pronouncing him as a proclaimed offender, he shall be punished with imprisonment for a term which may extend to seven years and shall also be liable to fine.]

175. Omission to produce document to public servant by person legally bound to produce it.— Whoever, being legally bound to produce or deliver up any ⁵[document or electronic record] to any public servant, as such, intentionally omits so to produce or deliver up the same, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both;

or, if the ⁵[document or electronic record] is to be produced or delivered up to a Court of Justice, with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

Illustration

A, being legally bound to produce a document before a ⁶[District Court], intentionally omits to produce the same. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

1. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for “to produce a document in a Court of Justice” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

2. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for “Supreme Court”.

3. Subs. *ibid.*, for “Zila Judge”.

4. Ins. by Act 25 of 2005, s. 44 (w.e.f. 23-6-2006).

5. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for “document” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

6. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “Zila Court”.

176. Omission to give notice or information to public servant by person legally bound to give it.—Whoever, being legally bound to give any notice or to furnish information on any subject to any public servant, as such, intentionally omits to give such notice or to furnish such information in the manner and at the time required by law, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both;

or, if the notice or information required to be given respects the commission of an offence, or is required for the purpose of preventing the commission of an offence, or in order to the apprehension of an offender, with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both;

¹[or, if the notice or information required to be given is required by an order passed under sub-section (1) of section 565 of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1898 (5 of 1898), with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.]

177. Furnishing false information.—Whoever, being legally bound to furnish information on any subject to any public servant, as such, furnishes, as true, information on the subject which he knows or has reason to believe to be false shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both;

or, if the information which he is legally bound to give respects the commission of an offence, or is required for the purpose of preventing the commission of an offence, or in order to the apprehension of an offender, with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

Illustrations

(a) A, a landholder, knowing of the commission of a murder within the limits of his estate, wilfully misinforms the Magistrate of the district that the death has occurred by accident in consequence of the bite of a snake. A is guilty of the offence defined in this section.

(b) A, a village watchman, knowing that a considerable body of strangers has passed through his village in order to commit a dacoity in the house of Z, a wealthy merchant residing in a neighbouring place, and being bound under clause 5, section VII, ²Regulation III, 1821, of the Bengal Code, to give early and punctual information of the above fact to the officer of the nearest police-station, wilfully misinforms the police officer that a body of suspicious characters passed through the village with a view to commit dacoity in a certain distant place in a different direction. Here A is guilty of the offence defined in the latter part of this section.

³[*Explanation.*—In section 176 and in this section the word “offence” includes any act committed at any place out of ⁴[India], which, if committed in ⁴[India], would be punishable under any of the following sections, namely, 302, 304, 382, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 402, 435, 436, 449, 450, 457, 458, 459 and 460; and the word “offender” includes any person who is alleged to have been guilty of any such act.]

178. Refusing oath or affirmation when duly required by public servant to make it.—Whoever refuses to bind himself by an oath ⁵[or affirmation] to state the truth, when required so to bind himself by a public servant legally competent to require that he shall so bind himself, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

179. Refusing to answer public servant authorised to question.—Whoever, being legally bound to state the truth on any subject to any public servant, refuses to answer any question demanded of him touching that subject by such public servant in the exercise of the legal powers of such public servant,

1. Added by Act 22 of 1939, s. 2.

2. Rep. by Act 17 of 1862, s. VII and Sch.

3. Added by Act 3 of 1894, s. 5.

4. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

5. Ins. by Act 10 of 1873, s. 15.

shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

180. Refusing to sign statement.—Whoever refuses to sign any statement made by him, when required to sign that statement by a public servant legally competent to require that he shall sign that statement, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to three months, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both.

181. False statement on oath or affirmation to public servant or person authorised to administer an oath or affirmation.—Whoever, being legally bound by an oath¹[or affirmation] to state the truth on any subject to any public servant or other person authorized by law to administer such oath¹[or affirmation], makes, to such public servant or other person as aforesaid, touching that subject, any statement which is false, and which he either knows or believes to be false or does not believe to be true, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

2[182. False information, with intent to cause public servant to use his lawful power to the injury of another person.]—Whoever gives to any public servant any information which he knows or believes to be false, intending thereby to cause, or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby cause, such public servant—

(a) to do or omit anything which such public servant ought not to do or omit if the true state of facts respecting which such information is given were known by him, or

(b) to use the lawful power of such public servant to the injury or annoyance of any person,

shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

Illustrations

(a) A informs a Magistrate that Z, a police-officer, subordinate to such Magistrate, has been guilty of neglect of duty or misconduct, knowing such information to be false, and knowing it to be likely that the information will cause the Magistrate to dismiss Z. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

(b) A falsely informs a public servant that Z has contraband salt in a secret place, knowing such information to be false, and knowing that it is likely that the consequence of the information will be a search of Z's premises, attended with annoyance to Z. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

(c) A falsely informs a policeman that he has been assaulted and robbed in the neighbourhood of a particular village. He does not mention the name of any person as one of his assailants, but knows it to be likely that in consequence of this information the police will make enquiries and institute searches in the village to the annoyance of the villages or some of them. A has committed an offence under this section.]

183. Resistance to the taking of property by the lawful authority of a public servant.—Whoever offers any resistance to the taking of any property by the lawful authority of any public servant, knowing or having reason to believe that he is such public servant, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

184. Obstructing sale of property offered for sale by authority of public servant.—Whoever intentionally obstructs any sale of property offered for sale by the lawful authority of any public servant, as such, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both.

185. Illegal purchase or bid for property offered for sale by authority of public servant.—Whoever, at any sale of property held by the lawful authority of a public servant, as such, purchases or bids for any property on account of any person, whether himself or any other, whom he knows to be under a legal incapacity to purchase that property at that sale, or bids for such property not intending to perform the obligations under which he lays himself by such bidding, shall be punished with

1. Ins. by Act 10 of 1873, s. 15.

2. Subs. by Act 3 of 1895, s. 1, for section 182.

imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to two hundred rupees, or with both.

186. Obstructing public servant in discharge of public functions.—Whoever voluntarily obstructs any public servant in the discharge of his public functions, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three months, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both.

187. Omission to assist public servant when bound by law to give assistance.—Whoever, being bound by law to render or furnish assistance to any public servant in the execution of his public duty, intentionally omits to give such assistance, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to two hundred rupees, or with both;

and if such assistance be demanded of him by a public servant legally competent to make such demand for the purposes of executing any process lawfully issued by a Court of Justice, or of preventing the commission of an offence, or suppressing a riot, or affray, or of apprehending a person charged with or guilty of an offence, or of having escaped from lawful custody, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both.

188. Disobedience to order duly promulgated by public servant.—Whoever, knowing that, by an order promulgated by a public servant lawfully empowered to promulgate such order, he is directed to abstain from a certain act, or to take certain order with certain property in his possession or under his management, disobeys such direction,

shall, if such disobedience causes or tends to cause obstruction, annoyance or injury, or risk of obstruction, annoyance or injury, to any person lawfully employed, be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one month or with fine which may extend to two hundred rupees, or with both;

and if such disobedience causes or tends to cause danger to human life, health or safety, or causes or tends to cause a riot or affray, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

Explanation.—It is not necessary that the offender should intend to produce harm, or contemplate his disobedience as likely to produce harm. It is sufficient that he knows of the order which he disobeys, and that his disobedience produces, or is likely to produce, harm.

Illustration

An order is promulgated by a public servant lawfully empowered to promulgate such order, directing that a religious procession shall not pass down a certain street. A knowingly disobeys the order, and thereby causes danger of riot. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

189. Threat of injury to public servant.—Whoever holds out any threat of injury to any public servant, or to any person in whom he believes that public servant to be interested, for the purpose of inducing that public servant to do any act, or to forbear or delay to do any act, connected with the exercise of the public functions of such public servant, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

190. Threat of injury to induce person to refrain from applying for protection to public servant.—Whoever holds out any threat of injury to any person for the purpose of inducing that person to refrain or desist from making a legal application for protection against any injury to any public servant legally empowered as such to give such protection, or to cause such protection to be given, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

CHAPTER XI

OF FALSE EVIDENCE AND OFFENCES AGAINST PUBLIC JUSTICE

191. Giving false evidence.—Whoever, being legally bound by an oath or by an express provision of law to state the truth, or being bound by law to make a declaration upon any subject, makes any statement which is false, and which he either knows or believes to be false or does not believe to be true, is said to give false evidence.

Explanation 1.—A statement is within the meaning of this section, whether it is made verbally or otherwise.

Explanation 2.—A false statement as to the belief of the person attesting is within the meaning of this section, and a person may be guilty of giving false evidence by stating that he believes a thing which he does not believe, as well as by stating that he knows a thing which he does not know.

Illustrations

(a) A, in support of a just claim which B has against Z for one thousand rupees, falsely swears on a trial that he heard Z admit the justice of B's claim. A has given false evidence.

(b) A, being bound by an oath to state the truth, states that he believes a certain signature to be the handwriting of Z, when he does not believe it to be the handwriting of Z. Here A states that which he knows to be false, and therefore gives false evidence.

(c) A, knowing the general character of Z's handwriting, states that he believes a certain signature to be the handwriting of Z; A in good faith believing it to be so. Here A's statement is merely as to his belief, and is true as to his belief, and therefore, although the signature may not be the handwriting of Z, A has not given false evidence.

(d) A, being bound by an oath to state the truth, states that he knows that Z was at a particular place on a particular day, not knowing anything upon the subject. A gives false evidence whether Z was at that place on the day named or not.

(e) A, an interpreter or translator, gives or certifies as a true interpretation or translation of a statement or document which he is bound by oath to interpret or translate truly, that which is not and which he does not believe to be a true interpretation or translation. A has given false evidence.

192. Fabricating false evidence.—Whoever causes any circumstance to exist or ¹[makes any false entry in any book or record, or electronic record or makes any document or electronic record containing a false statement,] intending that such circumstance, false entry or false statement may appear in evidence in a judicial proceeding, or in a proceeding taken by law before a public servant as such, or before an arbitrator, and that such circumstance, false entry or false statement, so appearing in evidence, may cause any person who in such proceeding is to form an opinion upon the evidence, to entertain an erroneous opinion touching any point material to the result of such proceeding is said “to fabricate false evidence”.

Illustrations

(a) A puts jewels into a box belonging to Z, with the intention that they may be found in that box, and that this circumstance may cause Z to be convicted of theft. A has fabricated false evidence.

(b) A makes a false entry in his shop-book for the purpose of using it as corroborative evidence in a Court of Justice. A has fabricated false evidence.

(c) A, with the intention of causing Z to be convicted of a criminal conspiracy, writes a letter in imitation of Z's handwriting, purporting to be addressed to an accomplice in such criminal conspiracy, and puts the letter in a place which he knows that the officers of the police are likely to search. A has fabricated false evidence.

193. Punishment for false evidence.—Whoever intentionally gives false evidence in any stage of a judicial proceeding, or fabricates false evidence for the purpose of being used in any stage of a judicial proceeding, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine,

and whoever intentionally gives or fabricates false evidence in any other case, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

1. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for certain words (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

Explanation 1.—A trial before a Court-martial ^{1***}is a judicial proceeding.

Explanation 2.—An investigation directed by law preliminary to a proceeding before a Court of Justice, is a stage of a judicial proceeding, though that investigation may not take place before a Court of Justice.

Illustration

A, in an enquiry before a Magistrate for the purpose of ascertaining whether Z ought to be committed for trial, makes on oath a statement which he knows to be false. As this enquiry is a stage of a judicial proceeding, A as given false evidence.

Explanation 3.—An investigation directed by a Court of Justice according to law, and conducted under the authority of a Court of Justice, is a stage of a judicial proceeding, though that investigation may not take place before a Court of Justice.

Illustration

A, in an enquiry before an officer deputed by a Court of Justice to ascertain on the spot the boundaries of land, makes on oath a statement which he knows to be false. As this enquiry is a stage of a judicial proceeding, A has given false evidence.

194. Giving or fabricating false evidence with intent to procure conviction of capital offence.—Whoever gives or fabricates false evidence, intending thereby to cause, or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby cause, any person to be convicted of an offence which is capital ²[by the law for the time being in force in ³[India]] shall be punished with ⁴[imprisonment for life], or with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine;

if innocent person be thereby convicted and executed.—and if an innocent person be convicted and executed in consequence of such false evidence, the person who gives such false evidence shall be punished either with death or the punishment hereinbefore described.

195. Giving or fabricating false evidence with intent to procure conviction of offence punishable with imprisonment for life or imprisonment.—Whoever gives or fabricates false evidence intending thereby to cause, or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby cause, any person to be convicted of an offence which ²[by the law for the time being in force in ³[India]] is not capital, but punishable with ⁴[imprisonment for life], or imprisonment for a term of seven years or upwards, shall be punished as a person convicted of that offence would be liable to be punished.

Illustration

A gives false evidence before a Court of Justice, intending thereby to cause Z to be convicted of a dacoity. The punishment of dacoity is ⁴[imprisonment for life], or rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, with or without fine. A, therefore, is liable to ⁵[imprisonment for life] or imprisonment, with or without fine.

⁶[195A. Threatening any person to give false evidence.]—Whoever threatens another with any injury to his person, reputation or property or to the person or reputation of any one in whom that person is interested, with intent to cause that person to give false evidence shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or with fine, or with both;

and if innocent person is convicted and sentenced in consequence of such false evidence, with death or imprisonment for more than seven years, the person who threatens shall be punished with the same punishment and sentence in the same manner and to the same extent such innocent person is punished and sentenced.]

196. Using evidence known to be false.—Whoever corruptly uses or attempts to use as true or genuine evidence any evidence which he knows to be false or fabricated, shall be punished in the same manner as if he gave or fabricated false evidence.

1. The words “or before a Military Court of Request” omitted by Act 13 of 1889, s. 2 and Sch.

2. Subs. by the A.O. 1948, for “by the law of British India or England”.

3. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., for “the States”.

4. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

5. Subs. by s. 117 and the Schedule, *ibid.*, for “such transportation” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

6. Ins. by Act 2 of 2006, s. 2 (w.e.f. 16-4-2006).

197. Issuing or signing false certificate.—Whoever issues or signs any certificate required by law to be given or signed, or relating to any fact of which such certificate is by law admissible in evidence, knowing or believing that such certificate is false in any material point, shall be punished in the same manner as if he gave false evidence.

198. Using as true a certificate known to be false.—Whoever corruptly uses or attempts to use any such certificate as a true certificate, knowing the same to be false in any material point, shall be punished in the same manner as if he gave false evidence.

199. False statement made in declaration which is by law receivable as evidence.—Whoever, in any declaration made or subscribed by him, which declaration any Court of Justice, or any public servant or other person, is bound or authorised by law to receive as evidence of any fact, makes any statement which is false, and which he either knows or believes to be false or does not believe to be true, touching any point material to the object for which the declaration is made or used, shall be punished in the same manner as if he gave false evidence.

200. Using as true such declaration knowing it to be false.—Whoever corruptly uses or attempts to use as true any such declaration, knowing the same to be false in any material point, shall be punished in the same manner as if he gave false evidence.

Explanation.—A declaration which is inadmissible merely upon the ground of some informality, is a declaration within the meaning of sections 199 and 200.

201. Causing disappearance of evidence of offence, or giving false information to screen offender.—Whoever, knowing or having reason to believe that an offence has been committed, causes any evidence of the commission of that offence to disappear, with the intention of screening the offender from legal punishment, or with that intention gives any information respecting the offence which he knows or believes to be false,

if a capital offence.—shall, if the offence which he knows or believes to have been committed is punishable with death be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine;

if punishable with imprisonment for life.—and if the offence is punishable with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment which may extend to ten years, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine;

if punishable with less than ten years' imprisonment.—and if the offence is punishable with imprisonment for any term not extending to ten years, shall be punished with imprisonment of the description provided for the offence, for a term which may extend to one-fourth part of the longest term of the imprisonment provided for the offence, or with fine, or with both.

Illustration

A, knowing that B has murdered Z, assists B to hide the body with the intention of screening B from punishment. A is liable to imprisonment of either description for seven years, and also to fine.

202. Intentional omission to give information of offence by person bound to inform.—Whoever, knowing or having reason to believe that an offence has been committed, intentionally omits to give any information respecting that offence which he is legally bound to give, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both.

203. Giving false information respecting an offence committed.—Whoever, knowing or having reason to believe that an offence has been committed, gives any information respecting that offence which he knows or believes to be false, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and Schedule, for "transportation for life" (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

¹[Explanation.—In sections 201 and 202 and in this section the word “offence” includes any act committed at any place out of ²[India], which, if committed in ²[India], would be punishable under any of the following sections, namely, 302, 304, 382, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 402, 435, 436, 449, 450, 457, 458, 459 and 460.]

204. Destruction of document to prevent its production as evidence.—Whoever secretes or destroys any ³[document or electronic record] which he may be lawfully compelled to produce as evidence in a Court of Justice, or in any proceeding lawfully held before a public servant, as such, or obliterates or renders illegible the whole or any part of such ³[document or electronic record] with the intention of preventing the same from being produced or used as evidence before such Court or public servant as aforesaid, or after he shall have been lawfully summoned or required to produce the same for that purpose, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

205. False personation for purpose of act or proceeding in suit or prosecution.—Whoever falsely personates another, and in such assumed character makes any admission or statement, or confesses judgment, or causes any process to be issued or becomes bail or security, or does any other act in any suit or criminal prosecution, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

206. Fraudulent removal or concealment of property to prevent its seizure as forfeited or in execution.—Whoever fraudulently removes, conceals, transfers or delivers to any person any property or any interest therein, intending thereby to prevent that property or interest therein from being taken as a forfeiture or in satisfaction of a fine, under a sentence which has been pronounced, or which he knows to be likely to be pronounced, by a Court of Justice or other competent authority, or from being taken in execution of a decree or order which has been made, or which he knows to be likely to be made by a Court of Justice in a civil suit, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years or with fine, or with both.

207. Fraudulent claim to property to prevent its seizure as forfeited or in execution.—Whoever fraudulently accepts, receives or claims any property or any interest therein, knowing that he has no right or rightful claim to such property or interest, or practices any deception touching any right to any property or any interest therein, intending thereby to prevent that property or interest therein from being taken as a forfeiture or in satisfaction of a fine, under a sentence which has been pronounced, or which he knows to be likely to be pronounced by a Court of Justice or other competent authority, or from being taken in execution of a decree or order which has been made, or which he knows to be likely to be made by a Court of Justice in a civil suit, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

208. Fraudulently suffering decree for sum not due.—Whoever fraudulently causes or suffers a decree or order to be passed against him at the suit of any person for a sum not due or for a larger sum than is due to such person or for any property or interest in property to which such person is not entitled, or fraudulently causes or suffers a decree or order to be executed against him after it has been satisfied, or for anything in respect of which it has been satisfied, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

Illustration

A institutes a suit against Z. Z knowing that A is likely to obtain a decree against him, fraudulently suffers a judgment to pass against him for a larger amount at the suit of B, who has no just claim against him, in order that B, either on his own account or for the benefit of Z, may share in the proceeds of any sale of Z's property which may be made under A's decree. Z has committed an offence under this section.

1. Added by Act 3 of 1894, s. 6.

2. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

3. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for “document” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

209. Dishonesty making false claim in Court.—Whoever fraudulently or dishonestly, or with intent to injure or annoy any person, makes in a Court of Justice any claim which he knows to be false, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, and shall also be liable to fine.

210. Fraudulently obtaining decree for sum not due.—Whoever fraudulently obtains a decree or order against any person for a sum not due, or for a larger sum than is due, or for any property or interest in property to which he is not entitled, or fraudulently causes a decree or order to be executed against any person after it has been satisfied or for anything in respect of which it has been satisfied, or fraudulently suffers or permits any such act to be done in his name, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

211. False charge of offence made with intent to injure.—Whoever, with intent to cause injury to any person, institutes or causes to be instituted any criminal proceeding against that person, or falsely charges any person with having committed an offence, knowing that there is no just or lawful ground for such proceeding or charge against that person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both;

and if such criminal proceeding be instituted on a false charge of an offence punishable with death,¹[imprisonment for life], or imprisonment for seven years or upwards, shall be punishable with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

STATE AMENDMENTS

Chhattisgarh.—

In Section 211 of the Indian Penal Code, 1860 (here-in-after referred to as the Penal Code), the following proviso shall be inserted, namely: —

Provided that, if such criminal proceeding be instituted on a false charge, of an offence punishable under section 354, section 354A, section 354B, section 354C, section 354D, section 354E, section 376B, section 376C, section 376F, section 509, section 509A or section 509B shall be punishable with imprisonment of either description which shall not be less than three years but which may extend to five years and shall also be liable to fine.

[*Vide Chhattisgarh Act 25 of 2015, sec. 2.*]

212. Harbouuring offender.—Whenever an offence has been committed, whoever harbours or conceals a person whom he knows or has reason to believe to be the offender, with the intention of screening him from legal punishment,

if a capital offence.—shall, if the offence is punishable with death, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, and shall also be liable to fine;

if punishable with imprisonment for life, or with imprisonment.—and if the offence is punishable with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment which may extend to ten years, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine;

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

and if the offence is punishable with imprisonment which may extend to one year, and not to ten years, shall be punished with imprisonment of the description provided for the offence for a term which may extend to one-fourth part of the longest term of imprisonment provided for the offence, or with fine, or with both.

¹[“Offence” in this section includes any act committed at any place out of ²[India], which, if committed in ²[India], would be punishable under any of the following sections, namely, 302, 304, 382, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 402, 435, 436, 449, 450, 457, 458, 459 and 460; and every such act shall, for the purposes of this section, be deemed to be punishable as if the accused person had been guilty of it in ²[India].]

Exception.—This provision shall not extend to any case in which the harbour or concealment is by the husband or wife of the offender.

Illustration

A, knowing that B has committed dacoity, knowingly conceals B in order to screen him from legal punishment. Here, as B is liable to ³[imprisonment for life], A is liable to imprisonment of either description for a term not exceeding three years, and is also liable to fine.

213. Taking gift, etc., to screen an offender from punishment.—Whoever accepts or attempts to obtain, or agrees to accept, any gratification for himself or any other person, or any restitution of property to himself or any other person, in consideration of his concealing an offence or of his screening any person from legal punishment for any offence, or of his not proceeding against any person for the purpose of bringing him to legal punishment,

if a capital offence.—shall, if the offence is punishable with death, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine;

if punishable with imprisonment for life, or with imprisonment.—and if the offence is punishable with ³[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment which may extend to ten years, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine;

and if the offence is punishable with imprisonment not extending to ten years, shall be punished with imprisonment of the description provided for the offence for a term which may extend to one-fourth part of the longest term of imprisonment provided for the offence, or with fine, or with both.

214. Offering gift or restoration of property in consideration of screening offender.—Whoever gives or causes, or offers or agrees to give or cause, any gratification to any person, or ⁴[restores or causes the restoration of] any property to any person, in consideration of that person's concealing an offence, or of his screening any person from legal punishment for any offence, or of his not proceeding against any person for the purpose of bringing him to legal punishment,

if a capital offence.—shall, if the offence is punishable with death, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine;

if punishable with imprisonment for life, or with imprisonment.—and if the offence is punishable with ³[imprisonment for life] or with imprisonment which may extend to ten years, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine;

and if the offence is punishable with imprisonment not extending to ten years, shall be punished with imprisonment of the description provided for the offence for a term which may extend to one-fourth part of the longest term of imprisonment provided for the offence, or with fine, or with both.

1. Ins. by Act 3 of 1894, s. 7.

2. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951 s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

3. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

4. Subs. by Act 42 of 1953, s. 4 and the Third Sch., for “to restore or cause the restoration of”.

¹[*Exception.*—The provisions of sections 213 and 214 do not extend to any case in which the offence may lawfully be compounded.]

2*

*

*

*

*

215. Taking gift to help to recover stolen property, etc.—Whoever takes or agrees or consents to take any gratification under pretence or on account of helping any person to recover any movable property of which he shall have been deprived by any offence punishable under this Code, shall, unless he uses all means in his power to cause the offender to be apprehended and convicted of the offence, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

216. Harbouring offender who has escaped from custody or whose apprehension has been ordered.—Whenever any person convicted of a charged with an offence, being in lawful custody for that offence, escapes from such custody,

or whenever a public servant, in the exercise of the lawful powers of such public servant, orders a certain person to be apprehended for an offence, whoever, knowing of such escape or order for apprehension, harbours or conceals that person with the intention of preventing him from being apprehended, shall be punished in the manner following, that is to say,

if a capital offence.—if the offence for which the person was in custody or is ordered to be apprehended is punishable with death, he shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine;

if punishable with imprisonment for life, or with imprisonment.—if the offence is punishable with ³[imprisonment for life] or imprisonment for ten years, he shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, with or without fine;

and if the offence is punishable with imprisonment which may extend to one year and not to ten years, he shall be punished with imprisonment of the description provided for the offence for a term which may extend to one-fourth part of the longest term of the imprisonment provided for such offence, or with fine, or with both.

⁴[“Offence” in this section includes also any act or omission of which a person is alleged to have been guilty out of ⁵[India], which, if he had been guilty of it in ⁵[India], would have been punishable as an offence, and for which he is, under any law relating to extradition, ^{6***} or otherwise, liable to be apprehended or detained in custody in ⁵[India], and every such act or omission shall, for the purposes of this section, be deemed to be punishable as if the accused person had been guilty of it in ⁵[India].]

Exception.—The provision does not extend to the case in which the harbour or concealment is by the husband or wife of the person to be apprehended.

⁷[**216A. Penalty for harbouring robbers or dacoits.**—Whoever, knowing or having reason to believe that any persons are about to commit or have recently committed robbery or dacoity, harbours them or any of them, with the intention of facilitating the commission of such robbery or dacoity, or of screening them or any of them from punishment, shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this section it is immaterial whether the robbery or dacoity is intended to be committed, or has been committed, within or without ⁵[India].

Exception.—This provision does not extend to the case in which the harbour is by the husband or wife of the offender.]

⁷[**216B. Definition of “harbour” in sections 212, 216 and 216A.**] Rep. by the Indian Penal Code (Amendment) Act, 1942 (8 of 1942), s. 3.

1. Subs. by Act 8 of 1882, s. 6, for the original Exception.

2. *Illustrations* rep. by Act 10 of 1882, s. 2 and the First Sch.

3. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

4. Ins. by Act 10 of 1886, s. 23.

5. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

6. The words “or under the Fugitive Offenders Act, 1881,” omitted by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch.

7. Ins. by Act 3 of 1894, s. 8.

217. Public servant disobeying direction of law with intent to save person from punishment or property from forfeiture.—Whoever, being a public servant, knowingly disobeys any direction of the law as to the way in which he is to conduct himself as such public servant, intending thereby to save, or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby save, any person from legal punishment, or subject him to a less punishment than that to which he is liable, or with intent to save, or knowing that he is likely thereby to save, any property from forfeiture or any charge to which it is liable by law, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

218. Public servant framing incorrect record or writing with intent to save person from punishment or property from forfeiture.—Whoever, being a public servant, and being as such public servant, charged with the preparation of any record or other writing, frames that record or writing in a manner which he knows to be incorrect, with intent to cause, or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby cause, loss or injury to the public or to any person, or with intent thereby to save, or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby save, any person from legal punishment, or with intent to save, or knowing that he is likely thereby to save, any property from forfeiture or other charge to which it is liable by law, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

219. Public servant in judicial proceeding corruptly making report, etc., contrary to law.—Whoever, being a public servant, corruptly or maliciously makes or pronounces in any stage of a judicial proceeding, any report, order, verdict, or decision which he knows to be contrary to law, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or with fine, or with both.

220. Commitment for trial or confinement by person having authority who knows that he is acting contrary to law.—Whoever, being in any office which gives him legal authority to commit persons for trial or to confinement, or to keep persons in confinement, corruptly or maliciously commits any person for trial or to confinement, or keeps any person in confinement, in the exercise of that authority knowing that in so doing he is acting contrary to law, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or with fine, or with both.

221. Intentional omission to apprehend on the part of public servant bound to apprehend.—Whoever, being a public servant, legally bound as such public servant to apprehend or to keep in confinement any person charged with or liable to be apprehended for an offence, intentionally omits to apprehend such person, or intentionally suffers such person to escape, or intentionally aids such person in escaping or attempting to escape from such confinement, shall be punished as follows, that is to say:—

with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, with or without fine, if the person in confinement, or who ought to have been apprehended, was charged with, or liable to be apprehended for, an offence punishable with death; or

with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, with or without fine, if the person in confinement, or who ought to have been apprehended, was charged with, or liable to be apprehended for, an offence punishable with ¹[imprisonment for life] or imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years; or

with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, with or without fine, if the person in confinement, or who ought to have been apprehended, was charged with, or liable to be apprehended for, an offence punishable with imprisonment for a term less than ten years.

222. Intentional omission to apprehend on the part of public servant bound to apprehend person under sentence or lawfully committed.—Whoever, being a public servant, legally bound as such public servant to apprehend or to keep in confinement any person under sentence of a Court of Justice for any offence ²[or lawfully committed to custody], intentionally omits to apprehend such person, or intentionally suffers such person to escape or intentionally aids such person in escaping or attempting to escape from such confinement, shall be punished as follows, that is to say:—

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).
2. Ins. by Act 27 of 1870, s. 8.

with ¹[imprisonment for life] or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to fourteen years, with or without fine, if the person in confinement, or who ought to have been apprehended, is under sentence of death; or

with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, with or without fine, if the person in confinement, or who ought to have been apprehended, is subject, by a sentence of a Court of Justice, or by virtue of a commutation of such sentence, to ¹[imprisonment for life] ^{2*** 3*** 4*** 5***} or imprisonment for a term of ten years or upwards; or

with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both, if the person in confinement, or who ought to have been apprehended is subject, by a sentence of a Court of Justice, to imprisonment for a term not extending to ten years ⁶[or if the person was lawfully committed to custody].

223. Escape from confinement or custody negligently suffered by public servant.—Whoever, being a public servant legally bound as such public servant to keep in confinement any person charged with or convicted of any offence ⁶[or lawfully committed to custody], negligently suffers such person to escape from confinement, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

224. Resistance or obstruction by a person to his lawful apprehension.—Whoever intentionally offers any resistance or illegal obstruction to the lawful apprehension of himself for any offence with which he is charged or of which he has been convicted, or escapes or attempts to escape from any custody in which he is lawfully detained for any such offence, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

Explanation.—The punishment in this section is in addition to the punishment for which the person to be apprehended or detained in custody was liable for the offence with which he was charged, or of which he was convicted.

225. Resistance or obstruction to lawful apprehension of another person.—Whoever intentionally offers any resistance or illegal obstruction to the lawful apprehension of any other person for an offence, or rescues or attempts to rescue any other person from any custody in which that person is lawfully detained for an offence, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both;

or, if the person to be apprehended, or the person rescued or attempted to be rescued, is charged with or liable to be apprehended for an offence punishable with ¹[imprisonment for life] or imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine;

or, if the person to be apprehended or rescued, or attempted to be rescued, is charged with or liable to be apprehended for an offence punishable with death, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine;

or, if the person to be apprehended or rescued, or attempted to be rescued, is liable under the sentence of a Court of Justice, or by virtue of a commutation of such a sentence, to ¹[imprisonment for life], ^{3*** 4*** 7***} or imprisonment, for a term of ten years or upwards, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine;

or, if the person to be apprehended or rescued, or attempted to be rescued, is under sentence of death, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life] or imprisonment of either description for a term not exceeding ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117, and Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

2. The words “or penal servitude for life,” omitted by Act 17 of 1949, s. 2 (w.e.f. 6-4-1949).

3. The words “or to” omitted by Act 36 of 1957, s. 3 and the Second Sch.

4. The word “transportation” omitted by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch. (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

5. The words “or penal servitude” omitted by Act 17 of 1949, s. 2 (w.e.f. 6-4-1949).

6. Ins. by Act 27 of 1870, s. 8.

7. The words “penal servitude,” omitted by Act 17 of 1949, s. 2 (w.e.f. 6-4-1949).

¹[**225A. Omission to apprehend, or sufferance of escape, on part of public servant, in cases not otherwise, provided for.**—Whoever, being a public servant legally bound as such public servant to apprehend, or to keep in confinement, any person in any case not provided for in section 221, section 222 or section 223, or in any other law for the time being in force, omits to apprehend that person or suffers him to escape from confinement, shall be punished—

(a) if he does so intentionally, with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both; and

(b) if he does so negligently, with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

225B. Resistance or obstruction to lawful apprehension, or escape or rescue in cases not otherwise provided for.—Whoever, in any case not provided for in section 224 or section 225 or in any other law for the time being in force, intentionally offers any resistance or illegal obstruction to the lawful apprehension of himself or of any other person, or escapes or attempts to escape from any custody in which he is lawfully detained, or rescues or attempts to rescue any other person from any custody in which that person is lawfully detained, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both.]

226. [Unlawful return from transportation.] Rep. by the Code of Criminal Procedure (Amendment) Act, 1955 (26 of 1955), s. 117 and the Sch. (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

227. Violation of condition of remission of punishment.—Whoever, having accepted any conditional remission of punishment, knowingly violates any condition on which such remission was granted, shall be punished with the punishment to which he was originally sentenced, if he has already suffered no part of that punishment, and if he has suffered any part of that punishment, then with so much of that punishment as he has not already suffered.

228. Intentional insult or interruption to public servant sitting in judicial proceeding.—Whoever intentionally offers any insult, or causes any interruption to any public servant, while such public servant is sitting in any stage of a judicial proceeding, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

²[**228A. Disclosure of identity of the victim of certain offences, etc.**—(1) Whoever prints or publishes the name or any matter which may make known the identity of any person against whom an offence under section 376, ³[section 376A, section 376AB, section 376B, section 376C, section 376D, section 376DA, section 376DB] or section 376E] is alleged or found to have been committed (hereafter in this section referred to as the victim) shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years and shall also be liable to fine.

(2) Nothing in sub-section (1) extends to any printing or publication of the name or any matter which may make known the identity of the victim if such printing or publication is—

(a) by or under the order in writing of the officer-in-charge of the police station or the police officer making the investigation into such offence acting in good faith for the purposes of such investigation; or

(b) by, or with the authorisation in writing of, the victim; or

(c) where the victim is dead or minor or of unsound mind, by, or with the authorisation in writing of, the next-of-kin of the victim:

Provided that no such authorisation shall be given by the next-of-kin to anybody other than the chairman or the secretary, by whatever name called, of any recognised welfare institution or organisation.

1. Subs. by Act 10 of 1886, s. 24(I), for section 225A which had been ins. by Act 27 of 1870, s. 9.

2. Ins. by Act 43 of 1983, s. 2.

3. Subs. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 4, for “offence under section 376, section 376A, section 376B, section 376C or section 376D” (w.e.f. 3-2-2013).

4. Subs. by Act 22 of 2018, s. 3, for “section 376A, section 376B, section 376C, section 376D” (w.e.f. 21-4-2018).

Explanation.—For the purposes of this sub-section, “recognised welfare institution or organisation” means a social welfare institution or organisation recognised in this behalf by the Central or State Government.

(3) Whoever prints or publishes any matter in relation to any proceeding before a court with respect to an offence referred to in sub-section (1) without the previous permission of such court shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation.—The printing or publication of the judgment of any High Court or the Supreme Court does not amount to an offence within the meaning of this section.]

STATE AMENDMENT

Arunachal Pradesh

Amendment of section 228A.—In section 228A of the Penal Code, in sub-section (1), for the words, figure and letters “offence under section 376, section 376A, section 376B, section 376C or section 376D or section 376E” the words, figure and letters “offence under section 376, section 376A, section 376AA, section 376B, section 376C, section 376D, section 376DA or section 376E” shall be substituted.

[*Vide Arunachal Pradesh Act 3 of 2019, s. 4]*

229. Personation of a juror or assessor.—Whoever, by personation or otherwise, shall intentionally cause, or knowingly suffer himself to be returned, empanelled or sworn as a juryman or assessor in any case in which he knows that he is not entitled by law to be so returned, empanelled or sworn, or knowing himself to have been so returned, empanelled or sworn contrary to law, shall voluntarily serve on such jury or as such assessor, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

¹[**229A. Failure by person released on bail or bond to appear in court.**—Whoever, having been charged with an offence and released on bail or on bond without sureties, fails without sufficient cause (the burden of proving which shall lie upon him), to appear in court in accordance with the terms of the bail or bond, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

Explanation.—The punishment under this section is—

(a) in addition to the punishment to which the offender would be liable on a conviction for the offence with which he has been charged; and

(b) without prejudice to the power of the court to order forfeiture of the bond.]

CHAPTER XII

OF OFFENCES RELATING TO COIN AND GOVERNMENT STAMPS

230. “Coin” defined.—²[Coin is metal used for the time being as money, and stamped and issued by the authority of some State or Sovereign Power in order to be so used.]

³[**Indian coin.**—Indian coin is metal stamped and issued by the authority of the Government of India in order to be used as money; and metal which has been so stamped and issued shall continue to be Indian coin for the purposes of this Chapter, notwithstanding that it may have ceased to be used as money.]

Illustrations

(a) Cowries are not coin.

(b) Lumps of unstamped copper, though used as money, are not coin.

(c) Medals are not coin, in as much as they are not intended to be used as money.

(d) The coin denominated as the Company’s rupee is ⁴[Indian coin].

⁵[(e) The “Farukhabad rupee”, which was formerly used as money under the authority of the Government of India, is ⁶[Indian coin] although it is no longer so used.]

1. Ins. by Act 25 of 2005, s. 44 (w.e.f. 23-6-2005).

2. Subs. by Act 19 of 1872, s. 1, for the first paragraph.

3. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for the second paragraph.

4. Subs. *ibid.*, for “the Queen’s coin”.

5. Added by Act 6 of 1896, s. 1(2).

6. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for “Queen’s coin”

231. Counterfeiting coin.—Whoever counterfeits or knowingly performs any part of the process of counterfeiting coin, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation.—A person commits this offence who intending to practise deception, or knowing it to be likely that deception will thereby be practised, causes a genuine coin to appear like a different coin.

232. Counterfeiting Indian coin.—Whoever counterfeits, or knowingly performs any part of the process of counterfeiting ¹[Indian coin], shall be punished with ²[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

233. Making or selling instrument for counterfeiting coin.—Whoever makes or mends, or performs any part of the process of making or mending, or buys, sells or disposes of, any die or instrument, for the purpose of being used, or knowing or having reason to believe that it is intended to be used, for the purpose of counterfeiting coin, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

234. Making or selling instrument for counterfeiting Indian coin.—Whoever makes or mends, or performs any part of the process of making or mending, or buys, sells or disposes of, any die or instrument, for the purpose of being used, or knowing or having reason to believe that it is intended to be used, for the purpose of counterfeiting ¹[Indian coin], shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

235. Possession of instrument or material for the purpose of using the same for counterfeiting coin.—Whoever is in possession of any instrument or material, for the purpose of using the same for counterfeiting coin, or knowing or having reason to believe that the same is intended to be used for that purpose, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine;

if Indian coin.—and if the coin to be counterfeited is ¹[Indian coin], shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

236. Abetting in India the counterfeiting out of India of coin.—Whoever, being within ³[India], abets the counterfeiting of coin out of ³[India], shall be punished in the same manner as if he abetted the counterfeiting of such coin within ³[India].

237. Import or export of counterfeit coin.—Whoever imports into ³[India], or exports therefrom, any counterfeit coin, knowing or having reason to believe that the same is counterfeit, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

238. Import or export of counterfeits of the Indian coin.—Whoever imports into ³[India], or exports therefrom, any counterfeit coin, which he knows or has reason to believe to be a counterfeit of ¹[Indian coin], shall be punished with ²[Imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

239. Delivery of coin, possessed with knowledge that it is counterfeit.—Whoever, having any counterfeit coin, which at the time when he became possessed of it, he knew to be counterfeit, fraudulently or with intent that fraud may be committed, delivers the same to any person, or attempts to induce any person to receive it, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, and shall also be liable to fine.

240. Delivery of Indian coin, possessed with knowledge that it is counterfeit.—Whoever, having any counterfeit coin, which is a counterfeit of ⁴[Indian coin], and which, at the time when he became possessed of it, he knew to be a counterfeit of ⁴[Indian coin], fraudulently or with intent that fraud may be committed, delivers the same to any person, or attempts to induce any person to receive it, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

241. Delivery of coin as genuine, which, when first possessed, the deliverer did not know to be counterfeit.—Whoever delivers to any other person as genuine, or attempts to induce any other person to

1. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for “the Queen’s coin”

2. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

3. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

4. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “Queen’s coin”.

receive as genuine, any counterfeit coin which he knows to be counterfeit, but which he did not know to be counterfeit at the time when he took it into his possession, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine to an amount which may extend to ten times the value of the coin counterfeited, or with both.

Illustration

A, a coiner, delivers counterfeit Company's rupees to his accomplice B, for the purpose of uttering them. B sells the rupees to C, another utterer, who buys them knowing them to be counterfeit. C pays away the rupees for goods to D, who receives them, not knowing them to be counterfeit. D, after receiving the rupees, discovers that they are counterfeit and pays them away as if they were good. Here D is punishable only under this section, but B and C are punishable under section 239 or 240, as the case may be.

242. Possession of counterfeit coin by person who knew it to be counterfeit when he became possessed thereof.—Whoever, fraudulently or with intent that fraud may be committed, is in possession of counterfeit coin, having known at the time when he became possessed thereof that such coin was counterfeit, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

243. Possession of Indian coin by person who knew it to be counterfeit when he became possessed thereof.—Whoever, fraudulently or with intent that fraud may be committed, is in possession of counterfeit coin, which is a counterfeit of ¹[Indian coin], having known at the time when he became possessed of it that it was counterfeit, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

244. Person employed in mint causing coin to be of different weight or composition from that fixed by law.—Whoever, being employed in any mint lawfully established in ²[India], does any act, or omits what he is legally bound to do, with the intention of causing any coin issued from that mint to be of a different weight or composition from the weight or composition fixed by law shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

245. Unlawfully taking coining instrument from mint.—Whoever, without lawful authority, takes out of any mint, lawfully established in ²[India], any coining tool or instrument, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

246. Fraudulently or dishonestly diminishing weight or altering composition of coin.—Whoever fraudulently or dishonestly performs on any coin any operation which diminishes the weight or alters the composition of that coin, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation.—A person who scoops out part of the coin and puts anything else into the cavity alters the composition of that coin.

247. Fraudulently or dishonestly diminishing weight or altering composition of Indian coin.—Whoever fraudulently or dishonestly performs on ³[any Indian coin] any operation which diminishes the weight or alters the composition of that coin, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

248. Altering appearance of coin with intent that it shall pass as coin of different description.—Whoever performs on any coin any operation which alters the appearance of that coin, with the intention that the said coin shall pass as a coin of a different description, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

249. Altering appearance of Indian coin with intent that it shall pass as coin of different description.—Whoever performs on ³[any Indian coin] any operation which alters the appearance of that coin, with the intention that the said coin shall pass as a coin of a different description, shall be punished

1. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for "the Queen's coin".

2. The words "British India" have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

3. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for "any of the Queen's coin".

with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

250. Delivery of coin, possessed with knowledge that it is altered.—Whoever, having coin in his possession with respect to which the offence defined in section 246 or 248 has been committed, and having known at the time when he became possessed of such coin that such offence had been committed with respect to it, fraudulently or with intent that fraud may be committed, delivers such coin to any other person, or attempts to induce any other person to receive the same, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, and shall also be liable to fine.

251. Delivery of Indian coin, possessed with knowledge that it is altered.—Whoever, having coin in his possession with respect to which the offence defined in section 247 or 249 has been committed, and having known at the time when he became possessed of such coin that such offence had been committed with respect to it, fraudulently or with intent that fraud may be committed, delivers such coin to any other person, or attempts to induce any other person to receive the same, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

252. Possession of coin by person who knew it to be altered when he became possessed thereof.—Whoever, fraudulently or with intent that fraud may be committed, is in possession of coin with respect to which the offence defined in either of the section 246 or 248 has been committed, having known at the time of becoming possessed thereof that such offence had been committed with respect to such coin, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

253. Possession of Indian coin by person who knew it to be altered when he became possessed thereof.—Whoever, fraudulently or with intent that fraud may be committed, is in possession of coin with respect to which the offence defined in either of the section 247 or 249 has been committed having known at the time of becoming possessed thereof, that such offence had been committed with respect to such coin, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, and shall also be liable to fine.

254. Delivery of coin as genuine, which, when first possessed, the deliverer did not know to be altered.—Whoever delivers to any other person as genuine or as a coin of a different description from what it is, or attempts to induce any person to receive as genuine, or as a different coin from what it is, any coin in respect of which he knows that any such operation as that mentioned in section 246, 247, 248 or 249 has been performed, but in respect of which he did not, at the time when he took it into his possession, know that such operation had been performed, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine to an amount which may extend to ten times the value of the coin for which the altered coin is passed, or attempted to be passed.

255. Counterfeiting Government stamp.—Whoever counterfeits, or knowingly performs any part of the process of counterfeiting, any stamp issued by Government for the purpose of revenue, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life] or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation.—A person commits this offence who counterfeits by causing a genuine stamp of one denomination to appear like a genuine stamp of a different denomination.

256. Having possession of instrument or material for counterfeiting Government stamp.—Whoever has in his possession any instrument or material for the purpose of being used, or knowing or having reason to believe that it is intended to be used, for the purpose of counterfeiting any stamp issued by Government for the purpose of revenue, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

257. Making or selling instrument for counterfeiting Government stamp.—Whoever makes or performs any part of the process of making, or buys, or sells, or disposes of, any instrument for the purpose of being used, or knowing or having reason to believe that it is intended to be used, for the purpose of counterfeiting any stamp issued by Government for the purpose of revenue, shall be punished

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

258. Sale of counterfeit Government stamp.—Whoever sells, or offers for sale, any stamp which he knows or has reason to believe to be a counterfeit of any stamp issued by Government for the purpose of revenue, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

259. Having possession of counterfeit Government stamp.—Whoever has in his possession any stamp which he knows to be a counterfeit of any stamp issued by Government for the purpose of revenue, intending to use, or dispose of the same as a genuine stamp, or in order that it may be used as a genuine stamp, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

260. Using as genuine a Government stamp known to be counterfeit.—Whoever uses as genuine any stamp, knowing it to be a counterfeit of any stamp issued by Government for the purpose of revenue, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or with fine, or with both.

261. Effacing writing from substance bearing Government stamp, or removing from document a stamp used for it, with intent to cause loss to Government.—Whoever, fraudulently or with intent to cause loss to the Government, removes or effaces from any substance, bearing any stamp issued by Government for the purpose of revenue, any writing or document for which such stamp has been used, or removes from any writing or document a stamp which has been used for such writing or document, in order that such stamp may be used for a different writing or document, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

262. Using Government stamp known to have been before used.—Whoever, fraudulently or with intent to cause loss to the Government, uses for any purpose a stamp issued by Government for the purpose of revenue, which he knows to have been before used, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

263. Erasure of mark denoting that stamp has been used.—Whoever, fraudulently or with intent to cause loss to Government, erases or removes from a stamp issued by Government for the purpose of revenue, any mark, put or impressed upon such stamp for the purpose of denoting that the same has been used, or knowingly has in his possession or sells or disposes of any such stamp from which such mark has been erased or removed, or sells or disposes of any such stamp which he knows to have been used, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

¹[**263A. Prohibition of fictitious stamps.**—(1) Whoever—

(a) makes, knowingly utters, deals in or sells any fictitious stamp, or knowingly uses for any postal purpose any fictitious stamp, or

(b) has in his possession, without lawful excuse, any fictitious stamp, or

(c) makes or, without lawful excuse, has in his possession any die, plate, instrument or materials for making any fictitious stamp,

shall be punished with fine which may extend to two hundred rupees.

(2) Any such stamps, die, plate, instrument or materials in the possession of any person for making any fictitious stamp ²[may be seized and, if seized] shall be forfeited.

(3) In this section “fictitious stamp” means any stamp falsely purporting to be issued by Government for the purpose of denoting a rate of postage, or any facsimile or imitation or representation, whether on paper or otherwise, of any stamp issued by Government for that purpose.

(4) In this section and also in sections 255 to 263, both inclusive, the word “Government”, when used in connection with, or in reference to, any stamp issued for the purpose of denoting a rate of postage,

1. Added by Act 3 of 1895, s. 2.

2. Subs. by Act 42 of 1953, s. 4 and the Third Sch., for “may be seized and”.

shall, notwithstanding anything in section 17, be deemed to include the person or persons authorized by law to administer executive government in any part of India, and also in any part of Her Majesty's dominions or in any foreign country.]

CHAPTER XIII

OF OFFENCES RELATING TO WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

264. Fraudulent use of false instrument for weighing.—Whoever fraudulently uses any instrument for weighing which he knows to be false, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

265. Fraudulent use of false weight or measure.—Whoever fraudulently uses any false weight or false measure of length or capacity, or fraudulently uses any weight or any measure of length or capacity as a different weight or measure from what it is, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

266. Being in possession of false weight or measure.—Whoever is in possession of any instrument for weighing, or of any weight, or of any measure of length or capacity, which he knows to be false,^{1***} intending that the same may be fraudulently used, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

267. Making or selling false weight or measure.—Whoever makes, sells or disposes of any instrument for weighing, or any weight, or any measure of length or capacity which he knows to be false, in order that the same may be used as true, or knowing that the same is likely to be used as true, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

CHAPTER XIV

OF OFFENCES AFFECTING THE PUBLIC HEALTH, SAFETY, CONVENIENCE, DECENCY AND MORALS

268. Public nuisance.—A person is guilty of a public nuisance who does any act or is guilty of an illegal omission which causes any common injury, danger or annoyance to the public or to the people in general who dwell or occupy property in the vicinity, or which must necessarily cause injury, obstruction, danger or annoyance to persons who may have occasion to use any public right.

A common nuisance is not excused on the ground that it causes some convenience or advantage.

269. Negligent act likely to spread infection of disease dangerous to life.—Whoever unlawfully or negligently does any act which is, and which he knows or has reason to believe to be, likely to spread the infection of any disease dangerous to life, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both.

270. Malignant act likely to spread infection of disease dangerous to life.—Whoever malignantly does any act which is, and which he knows or has reason to believe to be, likely to spread the infection of any disease dangerous to life, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

271. Disobedience to quarantine rule.—Whoever knowingly disobeys any rule made and promulgated²[by the^{3***} Government^{4***}] for putting any vessel into a state of quarantine, or for regulating the intercourse of vessels in a state of quarantine with the shore or with other vessels, or for regulating the intercourse between places where an infectious disease prevails and other places, shall be

1. The word "and" omitted by Act 42 of 1953, s. 4 and the Third Sch.

2. Subs. by the A. O. 1937, for "by the G. of I., or by any Govt.".

3. The words "Central or any Provincial" omitted by the A. O. 1950.

4. The words "or the Crown Representative" omitted by the A. O. 1948.

punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both.

272. Adulteration of food or drink intended for sale.—Whoever adulterates any article of food or drink, so as to make such article noxious as food or drink, intending to sell such article as food or drink, or knowing it to be likely that the same will be sold as food or drink, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

273. Sale of noxious food or drink.—Whoever sells, or offers or exposes for sale, as food or drink, any article which has been rendered or has become noxious, or is in a state unfit for food or drink, knowing or having reason to believe that the same is noxious as food or drink, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

274. Adulteration of drugs.—Whoever adulterates any drug or medical preparation in such a manner as to lessen the efficacy or change the operation of such drug or medical preparation, or to make it noxious, intending that it shall be sold or used for, or knowing it to be likely that it will be sold or used for, any medicinal purpose, as if it had not undergone such adulteration, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

275. Sale of adulterated drugs.—Whoever, knowing any drug or medical preparation to have been adulterated in such a manner as to lessen its efficacy, to change its operation, or to render it noxious, sells the same, or offers or exposes it for sale, or issues it from any dispensary for medicinal purposes as unadulterated, or causes it to be used for medicinal purposes by any person not knowing of the adulteration, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

276. Sale of drug as a different drug or preparation.—Whoever knowingly sells, or offers or exposes for sale, or issues from a dispensary for medicinal purposes, any drug or medical preparation, as a different drug or medical preparation, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

277. Fouling water of public spring or reservoir.—Whoever voluntarily corrupts or fouls the water of any public spring or reservoir, so as to render it less fit for the purpose for which it is ordinarily used, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three months, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both.

278. Making atmosphere noxious to health.—Whoever voluntarily vitiates the atmosphere in any place so as to make it noxious to the health of persons in general dwelling or carrying on business in the neighbourhood or passing along a public way, shall be punished with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees.

279. Rash driving or riding on a public way.—Whoever drives any vehicle, or rides, on any public way in a manner so rash or negligent as to endanger human life, or to be likely to cause hurt or injury to any other person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

280. Rash navigation of vessel.—Whoever navigates any vessel in a manner so rash or negligent as to endanger human life, or to be likely to cause hurt or injury to any other person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

281. Exhibition of false light, mark or buoy.—Whoever exhibits any false light, mark or buoy, intending or knowing it to be likely that such exhibition will mislead any navigator, shall be punished

with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or with fine, or with both.

282. Conveying person by water for hire in unsafe or overloaded vessel.—Whoever knowingly or negligently conveys, or causes to be conveyed for hire, any person by water in any vessel, when that vessel is in such a state or so loaded as to endanger the life of that person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

283. Danger or obstruction in public way or line of navigation.—Whoever, by doing any act, or by omitting to take order with any property in his possession or under his charge, causes danger, obstruction or injury to any person in any public way or public line of navigation, shall be punished, with fine which may extend to two hundred rupees.

284. Negligent conduct with respect to poisonous substance.—Whoever does, with any poisonous substance, any act in a manner so rash or negligent as to endanger human life, or to be likely to cause hurt or injury to any person,

or knowingly or negligently omits to take such order with any poisonous substance in his possession as is sufficient to guard against probable danger to human life from such poisonous substance,

shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

285. Negligent conduct with respect to fire or combustible matter.—Whoever does, with fire or any combustible matter, any act so rashly or negligently as to endanger human life, or to be likely to cause hurt or injury to any other person,

or knowingly or negligently omits to take such order with any fire or any combustible matter in his possession as is sufficient to guard against any probable danger to human life from such fire or combustible matter,

shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

286. Negligent conduct with respect to explosive substance.—Whoever does, with any explosive substance, any act so rashly or negligently as to endanger human life, or to be likely to cause hurt or injury to any other person,

or knowingly or negligently omits to take such order with any explosive substance in his possession as is sufficient to guard against any probable danger to human life from that substance,

shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

287. Negligent conduct with respect to machinery.—Whoever does, with any machinery, any act so rashly or negligently as to endanger human life or to be likely to cause hurt or injury to any other person,

or knowingly or negligently omits to take such order with any machinery in his possession or under his care as is sufficient to guard against any probable danger to human life from such machinery,

shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

288. Negligent conduct with respect to pulling down or repairing buildings.—Whoever, in pulling down or repairing any building, knowingly or negligently omits to take such order with that building as is sufficient to guard against any probable danger to human life from the fall of that building, or of any part thereof, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

289. Negligent conduct with respect to animal.—Whoever knowingly or negligently omits to take such order with any animal in his possession as is sufficient to guard against any probable danger to human life, or any probable danger of grievous hurt from such animal, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

STATE AMENDMENTS

Himachal Pradesh.—

After section 289 of the Indian Penal Code, in its application to the State of Himachal Pradesh, the following section shall be added, namely:—

“289-A. Feeding of Monkeys in public place.—Whoever throws eatables in public place, other than those notified by the State Government in the Official Gazette, and thereby entice monkeys to assemble at such place fro taking eatables which result in causing danger to human life or to be likely to cause injury or annoyance to the public or to the people in general or to cause hindrance in smooth running of vehicular traffic, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one month or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees or with both”.

[*Vide* Himachal Pradesh Act 15 of 2006, sec. 2].

290. Punishment for public nuisance in cases not otherwise provided for.—Whoever commits a public nuisance in any case not otherwise punishable by this Code, shall be punished with fine which may extend to two hundred rupees.

291. Continuance of nuisance after injunction to discontinue.—Whoever repeats or continues a public nuisance, having been enjoined by any public servant who has lawful authority to issue such injunction not to repeat or continue such nuisance, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both.

¹[**292. Sale, etc., of obscene books, etc.**—²[(*I*) For the purposes of sub-section (2), a book, pamphlet, paper, writing, drawing, painting, representation, figure or any other object, shall be deemed to be obscene if it is lascivious or appeals to the prurient interest or if its effect, or (where it comprises two or more distinct items) the effect of any one of its items, is, if taken as a whole, such as to tend to deprave and corrupt persons who are likely, having regard to all relevant circumstances, to read, see or hear the matter contained or embodied in it.]

³[(2)] Whoever—

(a) sells, lets to hire, distributes, publicly exhibits or in any manner puts into circulation, or for purposes of sale, hire, distribution, public exhibition or circulation, makes, produces or has in his possession any obscene book, pamphlet, paper, drawing, painting, representation or figure or any other obscene object whatsoever, or

(b) imports, exports or conveys any obscene object for any of the purposes aforesaid, or knowing or having reason to believe that such object will be sold, let to hire, distributed or publicly exhibited or in any manner put into circulation, or

(c) takes part in or receives profits from any business in the course of which he knows or has reason to believe that any such obscene objects are, for any of the purposes aforesaid, made, produced, purchased, kept, imported, exported, conveyed, publicly exhibited or in any manner put into circulation, or

(d) advertises or makes known by any means whatsoever that any person is engaged or is ready to engage in any act which is an offence under this section, or that any such obscene object can be procured from or through any person, or

(e) offers or attempts to do any act which is an offence under this section,

1. Subs. by Act 8 of 1925, s. 2, for s. 292.

2. Ins. by Act 36 of 1969, s. 2.

3. S. 292 renumbered as sub-section (2) thereof by Act 36 of 1969, s. 2.

shall be punished ¹[on first conviction with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, and with fine which may extend to two thousand rupees, and, in the event of a second or subsequent conviction, with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, and also with fine which may extend to five thousand rupees].

²[*Exception.*—This section does not extend to—

(a) any book, pamphlet, paper, writing, drawing, painting, representation or figure—

(i) the publication of which is proved to be justified as being for the public good on the ground that such book, pamphlet, paper, writing, drawing, painting, representation or figure is in the interest of science, literature, art or learning or other objects of general concern, or

(ii) which is kept or used *bona fide* for religious purposes;

(b) any representation sculptured, engraved, painted or otherwise represented on or in—

(i) any ancient monument within the meaning of the Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Sites and Remains Act, 1958 (24 of 1958), or

(ii) any temple, or on any car used for the conveyance of idols, or kept or used for any religious purpose.]]

STATE AMENDMENT

Orissa

Amendment of section 292 (45 of 1860).--In section 292 of the Indian Penal Code (hereinafter Act referred to as the said Code), for the words “which may extend to three months” the words “which may extend to two years” shall be substituted and the following proviso shall be inserted before the Exception, namely:—

“Provided that for a second or any subsequent offence under this section, he shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than six months and not more than two years and with fine.”

[*Vide* Orissa Act 13 of 1962, s. 2]

Insertion of new section 292-A in Act 45 of 1860.—After section 292 of the said Code, the following new section shall be inserted, namely:—

“292-A. Printing, etc., of grossly indecent or scurrilous matter or matter intended for blackmail.—Whoever—

(a) Prints or causes to be printed in any newspaper, periodical or circular or exhibits or causes to be exhibited to public view or distributes or causes to be distributed or in any manner puts into circulation any picture or any printed or written document which is grossly indecent, or is scurrilous or intended for blackmail; or

(b) Sells or lets for hire, or for purposes of sale or hire makes, produces or has in his possession, any picture or any printed or written document which is grossly indecent or is scurrilous or intended for blackmail; or

(c) conveys any picture or any printed or written document which is grossly indecent or is scurrilous or intended for blackmail knowing or having reason to believe that such picture or document will be printed, sold, let for hire, distributed or publicly exhibited or in any manner put into circulation; or

(d) takes part in or receives profits from, any business in the course of which he knows or has reason to believe that any business in the course of which he knows or has reason to believe that any such newspaper, periodical, circular, picture or other printed or written document is printed, exhibited, distributed, circulated, sold, let for hire, made, produced, kept, conveyed or purchased; or

(e) advertises or makes known by any means whatsoever that any person is engaged or is ready to engage in any act which is an offence under this section, or that any such newspaper, periodical, circular, picture or other printed or written document which is grossly indecent or is scurrilous or intended for blackmail can be procured from or through any person; or

1. Subs. Act 36 of 1969,s. 2,for certain words (w.e.f.7-9-1969).

2. Subs. by s. 2, *ibid.*, for *Exception* (w.e.f.7-9-1969).

(f) offers or attempts to do any act which is an offence under this section, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both:

Provided that for a second or any subsequent offence under this section, he shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than six months and not more than two years and with fine.

Explanation I—For the purpose of this section, the word “scurrilous” shall be deemed to include any matter which is likely to be injurious to morality or is calculated to injure any person:

Provided that it is not scurrilous to express in good faith anything whatever respecting the conduct of—

(I) a public servant in the discharge of his public functions or respecting his character, so far as his character appears in that conduct and no further ; or

(II) any person touching any public question and respecting his character, so far as his character appears in that conduct and no further.

Explanation II—In deciding whether any person has committed an offence under this section, the Court shall have regard, inter alia, to the following considerations, namely:—

(a) the good character of the person charged, and where relevant, the nature of his business;

(b) the general character and dominant effect of the matter alleged to be grossly indecent or scurrilous or intended for blackmail;

(c) Any evidence offered or called by or on behalf of the accused person as to his intention in committing any of the acts specified in this section.”

[*Vide* Orissa Act 13 of 1962, s. 3]

¹[**293. Sale, etc., of obscene objects to young person.**—Whoever sells, lets to hire, distributes, exhibits or circulates to any person under the age of twenty years any such obscene object as is referred to in the last preceding section, or offers or attempts so to do, shall be punished ²[on first conviction with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and with fine which may extend to two thousand rupees, and, in the event of a second or subsequent conviction, with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and also with fine which may extend to five thousand rupees].]

STATE AMENDMENT

Orissa

Amendment of section 293.--In section 293 of the said Code—

(i) for the words “any such obscene object as is referred to in the last preceding section”, the words, figures and letter “any such obscene object as is referred to in section 292 or any such newspaper, periodical, circular, picture or other printed or written document as is referred to in section 292-A” shall be substituted;

(ii) for the words “which may extend to six months”, the words “which may extend to three years” shall be substituted;

(iii) in the marginal note, after the words “obscene objects” the words “and grossly indecent or scurrilous matter or matter intended for blackmail”, shall be inserted.

[*Vide* Orissa Act 13 of 1962, s. 4]

³[**294. Obscene acts and songs.**—Whoever, to the annoyance of others,

(a) does any obscene act in any public place, or

(b) sings, recites or utters any obscene song, ballad or words, in or near any public place,

shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three months, or with fine, or with both.]

⁴[**294A. Keeping lottery office.**—Whoever keeps any office or place for the purpose of drawing any lottery ⁵[not being ⁶[a State lottery] or a lottery authorised by the ⁷[State] Government], shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine, or with both.

And whoever publishes any proposal to pay any sum, or to deliver any goods, or to do or forbear doing anything for the benefit of any person, on any event or contingency relative or applicable to the drawing of any ticket, lot, number or figure in any such lottery, shall be punished with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees.]

CHAPTER XV

OF OFFENCES RELATING TO RELIGION

295. Injuring or defiling place of worship, with intent to insult the religion of any class.—

Whoever destroys, damages or defiles any place of worship, or any object held sacred by any class of persons with the intention of thereby insulting the religion of any class of persons or with the knowledge

1. Subs. by Act 8 of 1925, s. 2, for section 293.

2. Subs. by Act 36 of 1969, s. 2, for certain words (w.e.f. 7-9-1969).

3. Subs. by Act 3 of 1895, s. 3, for section 294.

4. Ins. by Act 27 of 1870, s. 10.

5. Subs. by the A. O. 1937, for “not authorized by Government”.

6. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., for “a lottery organized by the Central Government or the Government of a Part A State or a Part B State”.

7. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for “Provincial”.

that any class of persons is likely to consider such destruction, damage or defilement as an insult to their religion, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

¹[295A. Deliberate and malicious acts, intended to outrage religious feelings of any class by insulting its religion or religious beliefs.]—Whoever, with deliberate and malicious intention of outraging the religious feelings of any class of ²[citizens of India], ³[by words, either spoken or written, or by signs or by visible representations or otherwise], insults or attempts to insult the religion or the religious beliefs of that class, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ⁴[three years], or with fine, or with both.]

296. Disturbing religious assembly.—Whoever voluntarily causes disturbance to any assembly lawfully engaged in the performance of religious worship, or religious ceremonies, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

297. Trespassing on burial places, etc.—Whoever, with the intention of wounding the feelings of any person, or of insulting the religion of any person, or with the knowledge that the feelings of any person are likely to be wounded, or that the religion of any person is likely to be insulted thereby,

commits any trespass in any place of worship or on any place of sepulture, or any place set apart for the performance of funeral rites or as a depository for the remains of the dead, or offers any indignity to any human corpse, or causes disturbance to any persons assembled for the performance of funeral ceremonies,

shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

298. Uttering words, etc., with deliberate intent to wound religious feelings.—Whoever, with the deliberate intention of wounding the religious feelings of any person, utters any word or makes any sound in the hearing of that person or makes any gesture in the sight of that person or places any object in the sight of that person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

CHAPTER XVI

OF OFFENCES AFFECTING THE HUMAN BODY

Of offences affecting life

299. Culpable homicide.—Whoever causes death by doing an act with the intention of causing death, or with the intention of causing such bodily injury as is likely to cause death, or with the knowledge that he is likely by such act to cause death, commits the offence of culpable homicide.

Illustrations

(a) A lays sticks and turf over a pit, with the intention of thereby causing death, or with the knowledge that death is likely to be thereby caused. Z, believing the ground to be firm, treads on it, falls in and is killed. A has committed the offence of culpable homicide.

(b) A knows Z to be behind a bush. B does not know it. A, intending to cause, or knowing it to be likely to cause Z's death, induces B to fire at the bush. B fires and kills Z. Here B may be guilty of no offence; but A has committed the offence of culpable homicide.

(c) A, by shooting at a fowl with intent to kill and steal it, kills B, who is behind a bush; A not knowing that he was there. Here, although A was doing an unlawful act, he was not guilty of culpable homicide, as he did not intend to kill B, or to cause death by doing an act that he knew was likely to cause death.

Explanation 1.—A person who causes bodily injury to another who is labouring under a disorder, disease or bodily infirmity, and thereby accelerates the death of that other, shall be deemed to have caused his death.

1. Ins. by Act 25 of 1927, s. 2.

2. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for "His Majesty's subjects".

3. Subs. by Act 41 of 1961, s. 3, for certain words (w.e.f. 27-9-1961).

4. Subs. by s. 3, *ibid.*, for "two years".

Explanation 2.—Where death is caused by bodily injury, the person who causes such bodily injury shall be deemed to have caused the death, although by resorting to proper remedies and skilful treatment the death might have been prevented.

Explanation 3.—The causing of the death of a child in the mother's womb is not homicide. But it may amount to culpable homicide to cause the death of a living child, if any part of that child has been brought forth, though the child may not have breathed or been completely born.

300. Murder.—Except in the cases hereinafter excepted, culpable homicide is murder, if the act by which the death is caused is done with the intention of causing death, or—

2ndly.—If it is done with the intention of causing such bodily injury as the offender knows to be likely to cause the death of the person to whom the harm is caused, or—

3rdly.—If it is done with the intention of causing bodily injury to any person and the bodily injury intended to be inflicted is sufficient in the ordinary course of nature to cause death, or—

4thly.—If the person committing the act knows that it is so imminently dangerous that it must, in all probability, cause death, or such bodily injury as is likely to cause death, and commits such act without any excuse for incurring the risk of causing death or such injury as aforesaid.

Illustrations

(a) A shoots Z with the intention of killing him. Z dies in consequence. A commits murder.

(b) A, knowing that Z is labouring under such a disease that a blow is likely to cause his death, strikes him with the intention of causing bodily injury. Z dies in consequence of the blow. A is guilty of murder, although the blow might not have been sufficient in the ordinary course of nature to cause the death of a person in a sound state of health. But if A, not knowing that Z is labouring under any disease, gives him such a blow as would not in the ordinary course of nature kill a person in a sound state of health, here A, although he may intend to cause bodily injury, is not guilty of murder, if he did not intend to cause death, or such bodily injury as in the ordinary course of nature would cause death.

(c) A intentionally gives Z a sword-cut or club-wound sufficient to cause the death of a man in the ordinary course of nature. Z dies in consequence. Here A is guilty of murder, although he may not have intended to cause Z's death.

(d) A without any excuse fires a loaded cannon into a crowd of persons and kills one of them. A is guilty of murder, although he may not have had a premeditated design to kill any particular individual.

Exception 1.—When culpable homicide is not murder.—Culpable homicide is not murder if the offender, whilst deprived of the power of self-control by grave and sudden provocation, causes the death of the person who gave the provocation or causes the death of any other person by mistake or accident.

The above exception is subject to the following provisos:—

First.—That the provocation is not sought or voluntarily provoked by the offender as an excuse for killing or doing harm to any person.

Secondly.—That the provocation is not given by anything done in obedience to the law, or by a public servant in the lawful exercise of the powers of such public servant.

Thirdly.—That the provocation is not given by anything done in the lawful exercise of the right of private defence.

Explanation.—Whether the provocation was grave and sudden enough to prevent the offence from amounting to murder is a question of fact.

Illustrations

(a) A, under the influence of passion excited by a provocation given by Z, intentionally kills Y, Z's child. This is murder, inasmuch as the provocation was not given by the child, and the death of the child was not caused by accident or misfortune in doing an act caused by the provocation.

(b) Y gives grave and sudden provocation to A. A, on this provocation, fires a pistol at Y, neither intending nor knowing himself to be likely to kill Z, who is near him, but out of sight. A kills Z. Here A has not committed murder, but merely culpable homicide.

(c) A is lawfully arrested by Z, a bailiff. A is excited to sudden and violent passion by the arrest, and kills Z. This is murder, inasmuch as the provocation was given by a thing done by a public servant in the exercise of his powers.

(d) A appears as a witness before Z, a Magistrate. Z says that he does not believe a word of A's deposition, and that A has perjured himself. A is moved to sudden passion by these words, and kills Z. This is murder.

(e) A attempts to pull Z's nose. Z, in the exercise of the right of private defence, lays hold of A to prevent him from doing so. A is moved to sudden and violent passion in consequence, and kills Z. This is murder, inasmuch as the provocation was given by a thing done in the exercise of the right of private defence.

(f) Z strikes B. B is by this provocation excited to violent rage. A, a bystander, intending to take advantage of B's rage, and to cause him to kill Z, puts a knife into B's hand for that purpose. B kills Z with the knife. Here B may have committed only culpable homicide, but A is guilty of murder.

Exception 2.—Culpable homicide is not murder if the offender, in the exercise in good faith of the right of private defence of person or property, exceeds the power given to him by law and causes the death of the person against whom he is exercising such right of defence without premeditation, and without any intention of doing more harm than is necessary for the purpose of such defence.

Illustration

Z attempts to horsewhip A, not in such a manner as to cause grievous hurt to A. A draws out a pistol. Z persists in the assault. A believing in good faith that he can by no other means prevent himself from being horsewhipped, shoots Z dead. A has not committed murder, but only culpable homicide.

Exception 3.—Culpable homicide is not murder if the offender, being a public servant or aiding a public servant acting for the advancement of public justice, exceeds the powers given to him by law, and causes death by doing an act which he, in good faith, believes to be lawful and necessary for the due discharge of his duty as such public servant and without ill-will towards the person whose death is caused.

Exception 4.—Culpable homicide is not murder if it is committed without premeditation in a sudden fight in the heat of passion upon a sudden quarrel and without the offender's having taken undue advantage or acted in a cruel or unusual manner.

Explanation.—It is immaterial in such cases which party offers the provocation or commits the first assault.

Exception 5.—Culpable homicide is not murder when the person whose death is caused, being above the age of eighteen years, suffers death or takes the risk of death with his own consent.

Illustration

A, by instigation, voluntarily causes Z, a person under eighteen years of age to commit suicide. Here, on account of Z's youth, he was incapable of giving consent to his own death; A has therefore abetted murder.

301. Culpable homicide by causing death of person other than person whose death was intended.—If a person, by doing anything which he intends or knows to be likely to cause death, commits culpable homicide by causing the death of any person, whose death he neither intends nor knows himself to be likely to cause, the culpable homicide committed by the offender is of the description of which it would have been if he had caused the death of the person whose death he intended or knew himself to be likely to cause.

302. Punishment for murder.—Whoever commits murder shall be punished with death, or ¹[imprisonment for life], and shall also be liable to fine.

303. Punishment for murder by life-convict.—Whoever, being under sentence of ¹[imprisonment for life], commits murder shall be punished with death.

304. Punishment for culpable homicide not amounting to murder.—Whoever commits culpable homicide not amounting to murder shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine, if the act by which the death is caused is done with the intention of causing death, or of causing such bodily injury as is likely to cause death;

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for "transportation for life" (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, or with fine, or with both, if the act is done with the knowledge that it is likely to cause death, but without any intention to cause death, or to cause such bodily injury as is likely to cause death.

¹[**304A. Causing death by negligence.**—Whoever causes the death of any person by doing any rash or negligent act not amounting to culpable homicide, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.]

STATE AMENDMENTS

Himachal Pradesh.—

After Section 304 A of the Indian Penal Code, 1860, in its application to the State of Himachal Pradesh, the following section shall be added, namely: —

“304-AA. Causing death or injury by driving a public service vehicle while in a state of intoxication.—Whoever, while in a state of intoxication, drives or attempts to drive a public service vehicle and causes the death of any person not amounting to culpable homicide, or causes any bodily injury likely to cause death, shall be punished with imprisonment for life, or imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine, as if the act by which death or bodily injury is caused, is done with the knowledge that he is likely by such act to cause death or cause such bodily injury as is likely to cause death.

Explanation. —“Public service vehicle” means any motor vehicle used or adapted to be used for the carriage of passengers for hire or reward, and includes a maxicab, a motorcab, contract carriage and stage carriage”.

[*Vide* Himachal Pradesh Act 19 of 1997, sec. 2].

In Section 304-AA of the Indian Penal Code, 1860, in its application to the State of Himachal Pradesh, —

(a) for the words “a public service vehicle” where ever these occur, the words “any vehicle” shall be substituted; and

(b) the Explanation shall be omitted.

[*Vide* Himachal Pradesh Act 7 of 2012, s. 2]

²[**304B. Dowry death.**—(1) Where the death of a woman is caused by any burns or bodily injury or occurs otherwise than under normal circumstances within seven years of her marriage and it is shown that soon before her death she was subjected to cruelty or harassment by her husband or any relative of her husband for, or in connection with, any demand for dowry, such death shall be called “dowry death”, and such husband or relative shall be deemed to have caused her death.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this sub-section, “dowry” shall have the same meaning as in section 2 of the Dowry Prohibition Act, 1961 (28 of 1961).

(2) Whoever commits dowry death shall be punished with imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than seven years but which may extend to imprisonment for life.]

305. Abetment of suicide of child or insane person.—If any person under eighteen years of age, any insane person, any delirious person, any idiot, or any person in a state of intoxication, commits

1. Ins. by Act 27 of 1870, s. 12.

2. Ins. by Act 43 of 1986, s. 10 (w.e.f. 19-11-1986).

suicide, whoever abets the commission of such suicide, shall be punished with death or ¹[imprisonment for life], or imprisonment for a term not exceeding ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

306. Abetment of suicide.—If any person commits suicide, whoever abets the commission of such suicide, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

307. Attempt to murder.—Whoever does any act with such intention or knowledge, and under such circumstances that, if he by that act caused death, he would be guilty of murder, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine; and if hurt is caused to any person by such act, the offender shall be liable either to ¹[imprisonment for life], or to such punishment as is hereinbefore mentioned.

Attempts by life-convicts.—²[When any person offending under this section is under sentence of ¹[imprisonment for life], he may, if hurt is caused, be punished with death.]

Illustrations

(a) A shoots at Z with intention to kill him, under such circumstances that, if death ensued, A would be guilty of murder. A is liable to punishment under this section.

(b) A, with the intention of causing the death of a child of tender years, exposes it in a desert place. A has committed the offence defined by this section, though the death of the child does not ensue.

(c) A, intending to murder Z, buys a gun and loads it. A has not yet committed the offence. A fires the gun at Z. He has committed the offence defined in this section, and, if by such firing he wounds Z, he is liable to the punishment provided by the latter part of ³[the first paragraph of] this section.

(d) A, intending to murder Z by poison, purchases poison and mixes the same with food which remains in A's keeping; A has not yet committed the offence defined in this section. A places the food on Z's table or delivers it to Z's servants to place it on Z's table. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

308. Attempt to commit culpable homicide.—Whoever does any act with such intention or knowledge and under such circumstances that, if he by that act caused death, he would be guilty of culpable homicide not amounting to murder, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both; and, if hurt is caused to any person by such act, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or with fine, or with both.

Illustration

A, on grave and sudden provocation, fires a pistol at Z, under such circumstances that if he thereby caused death he would be guilty of culpable homicide not amounting to murder. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

309. Attempt to commit suicide.—Whoever attempts to commit suicide and does any act towards the commission of such offence, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one year ⁴[or with fine, or with both.]

310. Thug.—Whoever, at any time after the passing of this Act, shall have been habitually associated with any other or others for the purpose of committing robbery or child-stealing by means of or accompanied with murder, is a thug.

311. Punishment.—Whoever is a thug, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], and shall also be liable to fine.

Of the causing of miscarriage, of injuries to unborn children, of the exposure of infants, and of the concealment of births.

312. Causing miscarriage.—Whoever voluntarily causes a woman with child to miscarry, shall, if such miscarriage be not caused in good faith for the purpose of saving the life of the woman, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both; and, if the woman be quick with child, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

2. Ins. by Act 24 of 1870, s. 11.

3. Ins. by Act 12 of 1891, s. 2 and the Second Sch.

4. Subs. by Act 8 of 1882, s. 7, for “and shall also be liable to fine”.

Explanation.—A woman who causes herself to miscarry, is within the meaning of this section.

313. Causing miscarriage without woman's consent.—Whoever commits the offence defined in the last preceding section without the consent of the woman, whether the woman is quick with child or not, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

314. Death caused by act done with intent to cause miscarriage.—Whoever, with intent to cause the miscarriage of a woman with child, does any act which causes the death of such woman, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine;

if act done without woman's consent.—and if the act is done without the consent of the woman, shall be punished either with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with the punishment above mentioned.

Explanation.—It is not essential to this offence that the offender should know that the act is likely to cause death.

315. Act done with intent to prevent child being born alive or to cause it to die after birth.—Whoever before the birth of any child does any act with the intention of thereby preventing that child from being born alive or causing it to die after its birth, and does by such act prevent that child from being born alive, or causes it to die after its birth, shall, if such act be not caused in good faith for the purpose of saving the life of the mother, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, or with fine, or with both.

316. Causing death of quick unborn child by act amounting to culpable homicide.—Whoever does any act under such circumstances, that if he thereby caused death he would be guilty of culpable homicide, and does by such act cause the death of a quick unborn child, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Illustration

A, knowing that he is likely to cause the death of a pregnant woman, does an act which, if it caused the death of the woman, would amount to culpable homicide. The woman is injured, but does not die; but the death of an unborn quick child with which she is pregnant is thereby caused. A is guilty of the offence defined in this section.

317. Exposure and abandonment of child under twelve years, by parent or person having care of it.—Whoever being the father or mother of a child under the age of twelve years, or having the care of such child, shall expose or leave such child in any place with the intention of wholly abandoning such child, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or with fine, or with both.

Explanation.—This section is not intended to prevent the trial of the offender for murder or culpable homicide, as the case may be, if the child die in consequence of the exposure.

318. Concealment of birth by secret disposal of dead body.—Whoever, by secretly burying or otherwise disposing of the dead body of a child whether such child die before or after or during its birth, intentionally conceals or endeavors to conceal the birth of such child, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

Of Hurt

319. Hurt.—Whoever causes bodily pain, disease or infirmity to any person is said to cause hurt.

320. Grievous hurt.—The following kinds of hurt only are designated as “grievous”:

First.—Emasculation.

Secondly.—Permanent privation of the sight of either eye.

Thirdly.—Permanent privation of the hearing of either ear.

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

Fourthly.—Privation of any member or joint.

Fifthly.—Destruction or permanent impairing of the powers of any member or joint.

Sixthly.—Permanent disfigurement of the head or face.

Seventhly.—Fracture or dislocation of a bone or tooth.

Eighthly.—Any hurt which endangers life or which causes the sufferer to be during the space of twenty days in severe bodily pain, or unable to follow his ordinary pursuits.

321. Voluntarily causing hurt.—Whoever does any act with the intention of thereby causing hurt to any person, or with the knowledge that he is likely thereby to cause hurt to any person, and does thereby cause hurt to any person, is said “voluntarily to cause hurt”.

322. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt.—Whoever voluntarily causes hurt, if the hurt which he intends to cause or knows himself to be likely to cause is grievous hurt, and if the hurt which he causes is grievous hurt, is said “voluntarily to cause grievous hurt”.

Explanation.—A person is not said voluntarily to cause grievous hurt except when he both causes grievous hurt and intends or knows himself to be likely to cause grievous hurt. But he is said voluntarily to cause grievous hurt, if intending or knowing himself to be likely to cause grievous hurt of one kind, he actually causes grievous hurt of another kind.

Illustration

A, intending of knowing himself to be likely permanently to disfigure Z's face, gives Z a blow which does not permanently disfigure Z's face, but which causes Z to suffer severe bodily pain for the space of twenty days. A has voluntarily caused grievous hurt.

323. Punishment for voluntarily causing hurt.—Whoever, except in the case provided for by section 334, voluntarily causes hurt, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

324. Voluntarily causing hurt by dangerous weapons or means.—Whoever, except in the case provided for by section 334, voluntarily causes hurt by means of any instrument for shooting, stabbing or cutting, or any instrument which, used as a weapon of offence, is likely to cause death, or by means of fire or any heated substance, or by means of any poison or any corrosive substance, or by means of any explosive substance or by means of any substance which it is deleterious to the human body to inhale, to swallow, or to receive into the blood, or by means of any animal, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

325. Punishment for voluntarily causing grievous hurt.—Whoever, except in the case provided for by section 335, voluntarily causes grievous hurt, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

326. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt by dangerous weapons or means.—Whoever, except in the case provided for by section 335, voluntarily causes grievous hurt by means of any instrument for shooting, stabbing or cutting, or any instrument which, used as a weapon of offence, is likely to cause death, or by means of fire or any heated substance, or by means of any poison or any corrosive substance, or by means of any explosive substance, or by means of any substance which it is deleterious to the human body to inhale, to swallow, or to receive into the blood, or by means of any animal, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

²[326A. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt by use of acid, etc.]—Whoever causes permanent or partial damage or deformity to, or burns or maims or disfigures or disables, any part or parts of the body of a person or causes grievous hurt by throwing acid on or by administering acid to that person, or by using any other means with the intention of causing or with the knowledge that he is likely to cause such injury or hurt, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than ten years but which may extend to imprisonment for life, and with fine:

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).
2. Ins. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 5 (w.e.f. 3-2-2013).

Provided that such fine shall be just and reasonable to meet the medical expenses of the treatment of the victim:

Provided further that any fine imposed under this section shall be paid to the victim.

326B. Voluntarily throwing or attempting to throw acid.—Whoever throws or attempts to throw acid on any person or attempts to administer acid to any person, or attempts to use any other means, with the intention of causing permanent or partial damage or deformity or burns or maiming or disfigurement or disability or grievous hurt to that person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than five years but which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation 1.—For the purposes of section 326A and this section, "acid" includes any substance which has acidic or corrosive character or burning nature, that is capable of causing bodily injury leading to scars or disfigurement or temporary or permanent disability.

Explanation 2.—For the purposes of section 326A and this section, permanent or partial damage or deformity shall not be required to be irreversible.]

327. Voluntarily causing hurt to extort property, or to constrain to an illegal to an act.—Whoever voluntarily causes hurt, for the purpose of extorting from the sufferer, or from any person interested in the sufferer, any property or valuable security, or of constraining the sufferer or any person interested in such sufferer to do anything which is illegal or which may facilitate the commission of an offence, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

328. Causing hurt by means of poison, etc., with intent to commit and offence.—Whoever administers to or causes to be taken by any person any poison or any stupefying, intoxicating or unwholesome drug, or other thing with intent to cause hurt to such person, or with intent to commit or to facilitate the commission of an offence or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby cause hurt, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

329. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt to extort property, or to constrain to an illegal act.—Whoever voluntarily causes grievous hurt for the purpose of extorting from the sufferer or from any person interested in the sufferer any property or valuable security, or of constraining the sufferer or any person interested in such sufferer to do anything that is illegal or which may facilitate the commission of an offence, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

330. Voluntarily causing hurt to extort confession, or to compel restoration of property.—Whoever voluntarily causes hurt, for the purpose of extorting from the sufferer or from any person interested in the sufferer, any confession or any information which may lead to the detection of an offence or misconduct, or for the purpose of constraining the sufferer or any person interested in the sufferer to restore or to cause the restoration of any property or valuable security or to satisfy any claim or demand, or to give information which may lead to the restoration of any property or valuable security, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Illustrations

(a) A, a police-officer, tortures Z in order to induce Z to confess that he committed a crime. A is guilty of an offence under this section.

(b) A, a police-officer, tortures B to induce him to point out where certain stolen property is deposited. A is guilty of an offence under this section.

(c) A, a revenue officer, tortures Z in order to compel him to pay certain arrears of revenue due from Z. A is guilty of an offence under this section.

(d) A, a zamindar, tortures a raiyat in order to compel him to pay his rent. A is guilty of an offence under this section.

331. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt to extort confession, or to compel restoration of property.—Whoever voluntarily causes grievous hurt for the purpose of extorting from the sufferer or

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for "transportation for life" (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

from any person interested in the sufferer any confession or any information which may lead to the detection of an offence or misconduct, or for the purpose of constraining the sufferer or any person interested in the sufferer to restore or to cause the restoration of any property or valuable security, or to satisfy any claim or demand or to give information which may lead to the restoration of any property or valuable security, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

332. Voluntarily causing hurt to deter public servant from his duty.—Whoever voluntarily causes hurt to any person being a public servant in the discharge of his duty as such public servant, or with intent to prevent or deter that person or any other public servant from discharging his duty as such public servant, or in consequence of anything done or attempted to be done by that person in the lawful discharge of his duty as such public servant, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

STATE AMENDMENT

Maharashtra.

Amendment of section 332 of 45 of 1860.—In section 332 of the Indian Penal Code, 1860, in its application to the State of Maharashtra (hereinafter, in this Chapter, referred to as “the said Code”), for the words “three years” the words “five years” shall be substituted.

[*Vide* Maharashtra Act 50 of 2018, sec. 2]

333. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt to deter public servant from his duty.—Whoever voluntarily causes grievous hurt to any person being a public servant in the discharge of his duty as such public servant, or with intent to prevent or deter that person or any other public servant from discharging his duty as such public servant, or in consequence of anything done or attempted to be done by that person in the lawful discharge of his duty as such public servant, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

334. Voluntarily causing hurt on provocation.—Whoever voluntarily causes hurt on grave and sudden provocation, if he neither intends nor knows himself to be likely to cause hurt to any person other than the person who gave the provocation, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both.

335. Voluntarily causing grievous hurt on provocation.—Whoever ¹[voluntarily] causes grievous hurt on grave and sudden provocation, if he neither intends nor knows himself to be likely to cause grievous hurt to any person other than the person who gave the provocation, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to four years, or with fine which may extend to two thousand rupees, or with both.

Explanation.—The last two sections are subject to the same provisos as *Exception 1*, section 300.

336. Act endangering life or personal safety of others.—Whoever does any act so rashly or negligently as to endanger human life or the personal safety of others, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three months or with fine which may extend to two hundred and fifty rupees, or with both.

337. Causing hurt by act endangering life or personal safety of others.—Whoever causes hurt to any person by doing any act so rashly or negligently as to endanger human life, or the personal safety of others, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to six months, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both.

338. Causing grievous hurt by act endangering life or personal safety of others.—Whoever causes grievous hurt to any person by doing any act so rashly or negligently as to endanger human life, or the personal safety of others, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

Of wrongful restraint and wrongful confinement

339. Wrongful restraint.—Whoever voluntarily obstructs any person so as to prevent that person from proceeding in any direction in which that person has a right to proceed, is said wrongfully to restrain that person.

1. Ins. by Act 8 of 1882, s. 8.

Exception.—The obstruction of a private way over land or water which a person in good faith believes himself to have a lawful right to obstruct, is not an offence within the meaning of this section.

Illustration

A obstructs a path along which Z has a right to pass, A not believing in good faith that he has a right to stop the path. Z is thereby prevented from passing. A wrongfully restrains Z.

340. Wrongful confinement.—Whoever wrongfully restrains any person in such a manner as to prevent that person from proceedings beyond certain circumscribing limits, is said “wrongfully to confine” that person.

Illustrations

(a) A causes Z to go within a walled space, and locks Z in Z. is thus prevented from proceeding in any direction beyond the circumscribing line of wall. A wrongfully confines Z.

(b) A places men with firearms at the outlets of a building, and tells Z that they will fire at Z if Z attempts to leave the building. A wrongfully confines Z.

341. Punishment for wrongful restraint.—Whoever wrongfully restrains any person shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both.

342. Punishment for wrongful confinement.—Whoever wrongfully confines any person shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

343. Wrongful confinement for three or more days.—Whoever wrongfully confines any person for three days, or more, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

344. Wrongful confinement for ten or more days.—Whoever wrongfully confines any person for ten days, or more, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

345. Wrongful confinement of person for whose liberation writ has been issued.—Whoever keeps any person in wrongful confinement, knowing that a writ for the liberation of that person has been duly issued, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years in addition to any term of imprisonment to which he may be liable under any other section of this Chapter.

346. Wrongful confinement in secret.—Whoever wrongfully confines any person in such manner as to indicate an intention that the confinement of such person may not be known to any person interested in the person so confined, or to any public servant, or that the place of such confinement may not be known to or discovered by any such person or public servant as hereinbefore mentioned, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years in addition to any other punishment to which he may be liable for such wrongful confinement.

347. Wrongful confinement to extort property, or constrain to illegal act.—Whoever wrongfully confines any person for the purpose of extorting from the person confined, or from any person interested in the person confined, any property or valuable security or of constraining the person confined or any person interested in such person to do anything illegal or to give any information which may facilitate the commission of an offence, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

348. Wrongful confinement to extort confession, or compel restoration of property.—Whoever wrongfully confines any person for the purpose of extorting from the person confined or any person interested in the person confined any confession or any information which may lead to the detection of an offence or misconduct, or for the purpose of constraining the person confined or any person interested in the person confined to restore or to cause the restoration of any property or valuable security or to satisfy any claim or demand, or to give information which may lead to the restoration of any property or valuable security, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Of Criminal Force and Assault

349. Force.—A person is said to use force to another if he causes motion, change of motion, or cessation of motion to that other, or if he causes to any substance such motion, or change of motion, or cessation of motion as brings that substance into contact with any part of that other's body, or with anything which that other is wearing or carrying, or with anything so situated that such contact affects that other's sense of feeling: Provided that the person causing the motion, or change of motion, or cessation of motion, causes that motion, change of motion, or cessation of motion in one of the three ways hereinafter described:

First.—By his own bodily power.

Secondly.—By disposing any substance in such a manner that the motion or change or cessation of motion takes place without any further act on his part, or on the part of any other person.

Thirdly.—By inducing any animal to move, to change its motion, or to cease to move.

350. Criminal force.—Whoever intentionally uses force to any person, without that person's consent, in order to the committing of any offence, or intending by the use of such force to cause, or knowing it to be likely that by the use of such force he will cause injury, fear or annoyance to the person to whom the force is used, is said to use criminal force to that other.

Illustrations

(a) Z is sitting in a moored boat on a river. A unfastens the moorings, and thus intentionally causes the boat to drift down the stream. Here A intentionally causes motion to Z, and he does this by disposing substances in such a manner that the motion is produced without any other action on any person's part. A has therefore intentionally used force to Z; and if he has done so without Z's consent, in order to the committing of any offence, or intending or knowing it to be likely that this use of force will cause injury, fear or annoyance to Z, A has used criminal force to Z.

(b) Z is riding in a chariot. A lashes Z's horses, and thereby causes them to quicken their pace. Here A has caused change of motion to Z by inducing the animals to change their motion. A has therefore used force to Z; and if A has done this without Z's consent, intending or knowing it to be likely that he may thereby injure, frighten or annoy Z, A has used criminal force to Z.

(c) Z is riding in a palanquin. A, intending to rob Z, seizes the pole and stops the palanquin. Here A has caused cessation of motion to Z, and he has done this by his own bodily power. A has therefore used force to Z; and as A has acted thus intentionally, without Z's consent, in order to the commission of an offence. A has used criminal force to Z.

(d) A intentionally pushes against Z in the street. Here A has by his own bodily power moved his own person so as to bring it into contact with Z. He has therefore intentionally used force to Z; and if he has done so without Z's consent, intending or knowing it to be likely that he may thereby injure, frighten or annoy Z, he has used criminal force to Z.

(e) A throws a stone, intending or knowing it to be likely that the stone will be thus brought into contact with Z, or with Z's clothes, or with something carried by Z, or that it will strike water and dash up the water against Z's clothes or something carried by Z. Here, if the throwing of the stone produce the effect of causing any substance to come into contact with Z, or Z's clothes, A has used force to Z; and if he did so without Z's consent, intending thereby to injure, frighten or annoy Z, he has used criminal force to Z.

(f) A intentionally pulls up a woman's veil. Here A intentionally uses force to her, and if he does so without her consent intending or knowing it to be likely that he may thereby injure, frighten or annoy her, he has used criminal force to her.

(g) Z is bathing. A pours into the bath water which he knows to be boiling. Here A intentionally by his own bodily power causes such motion in the boiling water as brings that water into contact with Z, or with other water so situated that such contact must affect Z's sense of feeling; A has therefore intentionally used force to Z; and if he has done this without Z's consent intending or knowing it to be likely that he may thereby cause injury, fear or annoyance to Z, A has used criminal force.

(h) A incites a dog to spring upon Z, without Z's consent. Here, if A intends to cause injury, fear or annoyance to Z, he uses criminal force to Z.

351. Assault.—Whoever makes any gesture, or any preparation intending or knowing it to be likely that such gesture or preparation will cause any person present to apprehend that he who makes that gesture or preparation is about to use criminal force to that person, is said to commit an assault.

Explanation.—Mere words do not amount to an assault. But the words which a person uses may give to his gestures or preparation such a meaning as may make those gestures or preparations amount to an assault.

Illustrations

(a) A shakes his fist at Z, intending or knowing it to be likely that he may thereby cause Z to believe that A is about to strike Z. A has committed an assault.

(b) A begins to unloose the muzzle of a ferocious dog, intending or knowing it to be likely that he may thereby cause Z to believe that he is about to cause the dog to attack Z. A has committed an assault upon Z.

(c) A takes up a stick, saying to Z, "I will give you a beating". Here, though the words used by A could in no case amount to an assault, and though the mere gesture, unaccompanied by any other circumstances, might not amount to an assault, the gesture explained by the words may amount to an assault.

352. Punishment for assault or criminal force otherwise than on grave provocation.—Whoever assaults or uses criminal force to any person otherwise than on grave and sudden provocation given by that person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three months, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both.

Explanation.—Grave and sudden provocation will not mitigate the punishment for an offence under this section, if the provocation is sought or voluntarily provoked by the offender as an excuse for the offence, or

if the provocation is given by anything done in obedience to the law, or by a public servant, in the lawful exercise of the powers of such public servant, or

if the provocation is given by anything done in the lawful exercise of the right of private defence.

Whether the provocation was grave and sudden enough to mitigate the offence, is a question of fact.

353. Assault or criminal force to deter public servant from discharge of his duty.—Whoever assaults or uses criminal force to any person being a public servant in the execution of his duty as such public servant, or with intent to prevent or deter that person from discharging his duty as such public servant, or in consequence of anything done or attempted to be done by such person to the lawful discharge of his duty as such public servant, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

STATE AMENDMENT

Maharashtra.—

Amendment of section 353 of 45 of 1860.—In section 353 of the said Code, for the words "two years" the words "five years" shall be substituted.

[*Vide* Maharashtra Act 40 of 2018, sec. 3]

354. Assault or criminal force to woman with intent to outrage her modesty.—Whoever assaults or uses criminal force to any woman, intending to outrage or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby outrage her modesty,¹ [shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than one year but which may extend to five years, and shall also be liable to fine].

STATE AMENDMENT

Chhattisgarh

In Section 354 of the Penal Code, the following proviso shall be inserted, namely: —

Provided that where offence is committed, under this Section by a relative, guardian or teacher or a person in a position of trust or authority towards the person assaulted, he shall be punishable with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than two years but which may extend to seven years and shall also be liable to fine.

[*Vide* Chhattisgarh Act 25 of 2015, sec. 3]

²[354A. Sexual harassment and punishment for sexual harassment.]—(1) A man committing any of the following acts—

(i) physical contact and advances involving unwelcome and explicit sexual overtures; or

1. Subs. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 6, for "shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both" (w.e.f. 3-2-2013).
2. Ins. by s. 7, *ibid.*, (w.e.f. 3-2-2013).

- (ii) a demand or request for sexual favours; or
- (iii) showing pornography against the will of a woman; or
- (iv) making sexually coloured remarks,

shall be guilty of the offence of sexual harassment.

(2) Any man who commits the offence specified in clause (i) or clause (ii) or clause (iii) of sub-section (1) shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

(3) Any man who commits the offence specified in clause (iv) of sub-section (1) shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

354B. Assault or use of criminal force to woman with intent to disrobe.—Any man who assaults or uses criminal force to any woman or abets such act with the intention of disrobing or compelling her to be naked, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than three years but which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

354C. Voyeurism.—Any man who watches, or captures the image of a woman engaging in a private act in circumstances where she would usually have the expectation of not being observed either by the perpetrator or by any other person at the behest of the perpetrator or disseminates such image shall be punished on first conviction with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than one year, but which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine, and be punished on a second or subsequent conviction, with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than three years, but which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation 1.—For the purpose of this section, “private act” includes an act of watching carried out in a place which, in the circumstances, would reasonably be expected to provide privacy and where the victim's genitals, posterior or breasts are exposed or covered only in underwear; or the victim is using a lavatory; or the victim is doing a sexual act that is not of a kind ordinarily done in public.

Explanation 2.—Where the victim consents to the capture of the images or any act, but not to their dissemination to third persons and where such image or act is disseminated, such dissemination shall be considered an offence under this section.

354D. Stalking.—(1) Any man who—

- (i) follows a woman and contacts, or attempts to contact such woman to foster personal interaction repeatedly despite a clear indication of disinterest by such woman; or
 - (ii) monitors the use by a woman of the internet, email or any other form of electronic communication,
- commits the offence of stalking:

Provided that such conduct shall not amount to stalking if the man who pursued it proves that—

(i) it was pursued for the purpose of preventing or detecting crime and the man accused of stalking had been entrusted with the responsibility of prevention and detection of crime by the State; or

(ii) it was pursued under any law or to comply with any condition or requirement imposed by any person under any law; or

(iii) in the particular circumstances such conduct was reasonable and justified.

(2) Whoever commits the offence of stalking shall be punished on first conviction with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine; and be punished on a second or subsequent conviction, with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, and shall also be liable to fine.]

STATE AMENDMENT

Jammu and Kashmir and Ladakh (UTs)

After section 354D, insert the following section, namely:-

354E. Sextortion.—(1) Whoever,—

- (a) being in a position of authority; or
- (b) being in a fiduciary relationship; or
- (c) being a public servant,

abuses such authority or fiduciary relationship or misuses his official position to employ physical or non physical forms of coercion to extort or demand sexual favours from any woman in exchange of some benefits or other favours that such person is empowered to grant or withhold, shall be guilty of offence of sextortion.

Explanation.—For the purpose of this section, ‘sexual favour’ shall mean and include any kind of unwanted sexual activity ranging from sexually suggestive conduct, sexually explicit actions such as touching, exposure of private body parts to sexual intercourse, including exposure over the electronic mode of communication.

(2) Any person who commits the offence of sextortion shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than three years but may extend to five years and with fine.

[Ins. by the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganization (Adaptation of Central Laws) Order, 2020, *vide* notification No. S.O. 1123(E) dated (18-3-2020) and *vide* Union Territory of Ladakh Reorganisation (Adaptation of Central Laws) Order, 2020, notification No. S.O.3774(E), dated (23-10-2020).

Chhattisgarh

After Section 354D of the Penal Code, the following shall be inserted, namely:—

354E. Liability person present who fails to prevent the commission of offence under Section 354, 354A, 354B, 354C, 354D.—

Whoever, being present at the time of commission of an offence under section 354, section 354A, section 354B, section 354C or section 354D and being able to prevent such offence, fails to prevent the commission of such offence or not being in position to prevent the commission of such offence, fails to give information of the commission of such offence to the nearest magistrate or police officer, by any mode, with the intention of screening the offender from legal punishment, shall be liable for abetment of such offence and shall be punished with imprisonment of either description which may extend to three years or with fine or with both.]

[*Vide* Chhattisgarh Act 25 of 2015, s. 3]

Arunachal Pradesh

Amendment of section 354.—In section 354 of the principal Act, for the words “shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than one year but which may extend to five years, and shall also be liable to fine “the words “ shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than two years but which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine” shall be substituted.

[*Vide* Arunachal Pradesh Act 3 of 2019, s. 5]

Amendment of section 354B.—In section 354B of the principal Act, for the words “shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than three years but which may extend to seven years and shall also be liable to fine” the words “shall be punished on first conviction with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than three years but which may extend to seven years and shall also be liable to fine; and be punished on a second or subsequent convicting with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than seven years but which may extend to ten years with fine which shall not be less than one lakh rupees” shall be substituted.

[*Vide* Arunachal Pradesh Act 3 of 2019, s. 6]

Amendment of section 354D.—In section 354D of the principal Act, for sub-section (2), the following sub-section shall be substituted, namely:—

“(2) Whoever commits the offence of stalking shall be punished on first conviction with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years and shall also be liable to fine; and be punished on a second or subsequent conviction with imprisonment or either description for a

term which shall not be less than three years but which may extend to seven years and with fine which shall not be less than one lakh rupees:

Provided that the court may, for adequate and special reasons to be mentioned in the judgment, impose a sentence of lesser period of imprisonment than specified minimum imprisonment.”.

[*Vide* Arunachal Pradesh Act 3 of 2019, s.7]

355. Assault or criminal force with intent to dishonour person, otherwise than on grave provocation.—Whoever assaults or uses criminal force to any person, intending thereby to dishonor that person, otherwise than on grave and sudden provocation given by that person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

356. Assault or criminal force in attempt to commit theft of property carried by a person.—Whoever assaults or uses criminal force to any person, in attempting to commit theft on any property which that person is then wearing or carrying, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

357. Assault or criminal force in attempt wrongfully to confine a person.—Whoever assaults or uses criminal force to any person, in attempting wrongfully to confine that person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

358. Assault or criminal force on grave provocation.—Whoever assaults or uses criminal force to any person on grave and sudden provocation given by that person, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one month, or with fine which may extend to two hundred rupees, or with both.

Explanation.—The last section is subject to the same *Explanation* as section 352.

Of Kidnapping, Abduction, Slavery and Forced Labour

359. Kidnapping.—Kidnapping is of two kinds: kidnapping from ¹[India], and kidnapping from lawful guardianship.

360. Kidnapping from India.—Whoever conveys any person beyond the limits of ¹[India] without the consent of that person, or of some person legally authorised to consent on behalf of that person, is said to kidnap that person from ¹[India].

361. Kidnapping from lawful guardianship.—Whoever takes or entices any minor under ²[sixteen] years of age if a male, or under ³[eighteen] years of age if a female, or any person of unsound mind, out of the keeping of the lawful guardian of such minor or person of unsound mind, without the consent of such guardian, is said to kidnap such minor or person from lawful guardianship.

Explanation.—The words “lawful guardian” in this section include any person lawfully entrusted with the care or custody of such minor or other person.

Exception.—This section does not extend to the act of any person who in good faith believes himself to be the father of an illegitimate child, or who in good faith believes himself to be entitled to the lawful custody of such child, unless such act is committed for an immoral or unlawful purpose.

362. Abduction.—Whoever by force compels, or by any deceitful means induces, any person to go from any place, is said to abduct that person.

363. Punishment for kidnapping.—Whoever kidnaps any person from ¹[India] or from lawful guardianship, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

⁴[363A. **Kidnapping or maiming a minor for purposes of begging.**—(1) Whoever kidnaps any minor or, not being the lawful guardian of a minor, obtains the custody of the minor, in order that such

1. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

2. Subs. by Act 42 of 1949, s. 2, for “fourteen”.

3. Subs. by s. 2, *ibid.*, for “sixteen”.

4. Ins. by Act 52 of 1959, s. 2 (w.e.f. 15-1-1960).

minor may be employed or used for the purposes of begging shall be punishable with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

(2) Whoever maims any minor in order that such minor may be employed or used for the purposes of begging shall be punishable with imprisonment for life, and shall also be liable to fine.

(3) Where any person, not being the lawful guardian of a minor, employs or uses such minor for the purposes of begging, it shall be presumed, unless the contrary is proved, that he kidnapped or otherwise obtained the custody of that minor in order that the minor might be employed or used for the purposes of begging.

(4) In this section,—

(a) “begging” means—

(i) soliciting or receiving alms in a public place, whether under the pretence of singing, dancing, fortunetelling, performing tricks or selling articles or otherwise;

(ii) entering on any private premises for the purpose of soliciting or receiving alms;

(iii) exposing or exhibiting, with the object of obtaining or extorting alms, any sore, wound, injury, deformity or disease, whether of himself or of any other person or of an animal;

(iv) using a minor as an exhibit for the purpose of soliciting or receiving alms;

(b) “minor” means—

(i) in the case of a male, a person under sixteen years of age; and

(ii) in the case of a female, a person under eighteen years of age.]

364. Kidnapping or abducting in order to murder.—Whoever kidnaps or abducts any person in order that such person may be murdered or may be so disposed of as to be put in danger of being murdered, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life] or rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Illustrations

(a) A kidnaps Z from ²[India], intending or knowing it to be likely that Z may be sacrificed to an idol. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

(b) A forcibly carries or entices B away from his home in order that B may be murdered. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

³[**364A. Kidnapping for ransom, etc.**—Whoever kidnaps or abducts any person or keeps a person in detention after such kidnapping or abduction, and threatens to cause death or hurt to such person, or by his conduct gives rise to a reasonable apprehension that such person may be put to death or hurt, or causes hurt or death to such person in order to compel the Government or ⁴[any foreign State or international inter-governmental organisation or any other person] to do or abstain from doing any act or to pay a ransom, shall be punishable with death, or imprisonment for life, and shall also be liable to fine.]

365. Kidnapping or abducting with intent secretly and wrongfully to confine person.—Whoever kidnaps or abducts any person with intent to cause that person to be secretly and wrongfully confined, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

366. Kidnapping, abducting or inducing woman to compel her marriage, etc.—Whoever kidnaps or abducts any woman with intent that she may be compelled, or knowing it to be likely that she will be compelled, to marry any person against her will, or in order that she may be forced or seduced to illicit intercourse, or knowing it to be likely that she will be forced or seduced to illicit intercourse, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

2. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

3. Ins. by Act 42 of 1993, s. 2.

4. Subs. by Act 24 of 1995, s. 2, for “any other person”.

be liable to fine; ¹[and whoever, by means of criminal intimidation as defined in this Code or of abuse of authority or any other method of compulsion, induces any woman to go from any place with intent that she may be, or knowing that it is likely that she will be, forced or seduced to illicit intercourse with another person shall also be punishable as aforesaid].

²[**366A. Procuration of minor girl.**—Whoever, by any means whatsoever, induces any minor girl under the age of eighteen years to go from any place or to do any act with intent that such girl may be, or knowing that it is likely that she will be, forced or seduced to illicit intercourse with another person shall be punishable with imprisonment which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.]

366B. Importation of girl from foreign country.—Whoever imports into ³[India] from any country outside India ⁴[or from the State of Jammu and Kashmir] any girl under the age of twenty-one years with intent that she may be, or knowing it to be likely that she will be, forced or seduced to illicit intercourse with another person, ^{5***}shall be punishable with imprisonment which may extend to ten years and shall also be liable to fine.]

367. Kidnapping or abducting in order to subject person to grievous hurt, slavery, etc.—Whoever kidnaps or abducts any person in order that such person may be subjected, or may be so disposed of as to be put in danger of being subjected to grievous hurt, or slavery, or to the unnatural lust of any person, or knowing it to be likely that such person will be so subjected or disposed of, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

368. Wrongfully concealing or keeping in confinement, kidnapped or abducted person.—Whoever, knowing that any person has been kidnapped or has been abducted, wrongfully conceals or confines such person, shall be punished in the same manner as if he had kidnapped or abducted such person with the same intention or knowledge, or for the same purpose as that with or for which he conceals or detains such person in confinement.

369. Kidnapping or abducting child under ten years with intent to steal from its person.—Whoever kidnaps or abducts any child under the age of ten years with the intention of taking dishonestly any movable property from the person of such child, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

⁶[**370. Trafficking of person.**—(1) Whoever, for the purpose of exploitation, (a) recruits, (b) transports, (c) harbours, (d) transfers, or (e) receives, a person or persons, by—

First.—using threats, or

Secondly.—using force, or any other form of coercion, or

Thirdly.—by abduction, or

Fourthly.—by practising fraud, or deception, or

Fifthly.—by abuse of power, or

Sixthly.—by inducement, including the giving or receiving of payments or benefits, in order to achieve the consent of any person having control over the person recruited, transported, harboured, transferred or received,

commits the offence of trafficking.

Explanation 1.—The expression "exploitation" shall include any act of physical exploitation or any form of sexual exploitation, slavery or practices similar to slavery, servitude, or the forced removal of organs.

Explanation 2.—The consent of the victim is immaterial in determination of the offence of trafficking.

(2) Whoever commits the offence of trafficking shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than seven years, but which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

1. Ins. by Act 20 of 1923, s. 2.

2. Ins. by s. 3, *ibid.*

3. The words "British India" have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above.

4. Ins. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., (w.e.f. 1-4-1951).

5. Certain words omitted by s. 3 and the Sch., *ibid.*

6. Subs. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 8, for section 370 (w.e.f. 3-2-2013).

(3) Where the offence involves the trafficking of more than one person, it shall be punishable with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than ten years but which may extend to imprisonment for life, and shall also be liable to fine.

(4) Where the offence involves the trafficking of a minor, it shall be punishable with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than ten years, but which may extend to imprisonment for life, and shall also be liable to fine.

(5) Where the offence involves the trafficking of more than one minor, it shall be punishable with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than fourteen years, but which may extend to imprisonment for life, and shall also be liable to fine.

(6) If a person is convicted of the offence of trafficking of minor on more than one occasion, then such person shall be punished with imprisonment for life, which shall mean imprisonment for the remainder of that person's natural life, and shall also be liable to fine.

(7) When a public servant or a police officer is involved in the trafficking of any person then, such public servant or police officer shall be punished with imprisonment for life, which shall mean imprisonment for the remainder of that person's natural life, and shall also be liable to fine.

370A. Exploitation of a trafficked person.—(1) Whoever, knowingly or having reason to believe that a minor has been trafficked, engages such minor for sexual exploitation in any manner, shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than five years, but which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

(2) Whoever, knowingly by or having reason to believe that a person has been trafficked, engages such person for sexual exploitation in any manner, shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than three years, but which may extend to five years, and shall also be liable to fine.]

371. Habitual dealing in slaves.—Whoever habitually imports, exports, removes, buys, sells, traffics or deals in slaves, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term not exceeding ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

372. Selling minor for purposes of prostitution, etc.—Whoever sells, lets to hire, or otherwise disposes of any ²[person under the age of eighteen years with intent that such person shall at any age be employed or used for the purpose of prostitution or illicit intercourse with any person or for any unlawful and immoral purpose, or knowing it to be likely that such person will at any age be] employed or used for any such purpose, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

³[*Explanation I.*—When a female under the age of eighteen years is sold, let for hire, or otherwise disposed of to a prostitute or to any person who keeps or manages a brothel, the person so disposing of such female shall, until the contrary is proved, be presumed to have disposed of her with the intent that she shall be used for the purpose of prostitution.

Explanation II.—For the purposes of this section “illicit intercourse” means sexual intercourse between persons not united by marriage or by any union or tie which, though not amounting to a marriage, is recognised by the personal law or custom of the community to which they belong or, where they belong to different communities, of both such communities, as constituting between them a *quasi-marital relation*.]

373. Buying minor for purposes of prostitution, etc.—Whoever buys, hires or otherwise obtains possession of any ⁴[person under the age of eighteen years with intent that such person shall at any age be employed or used for the purpose of prostitution or illicit intercourse with any person or for any unlawful and immoral purpose, or knowing it to be likely that such person will at any age be] employed or used for any such purpose, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

⁵[*Explanation I.*—Any prostitute or any person keeping or managing a brothel, who buys, hires or otherwise obtains possession of a female under the age of eighteen years shall, until the contrary is proved, be presumed to have obtained possession of such female with the intent that she shall be used for the purpose of prostitution.

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

2. Subs. by Act 18 of 1924, s. 2, for certain words.

3. Ins. by Act 18 of 1924, s. 3

4. Subs. by s. 2, *ibid.*, for certain words.

5. Ins. by s. 4, *ibid.*

Explanation II.—“Illicit intercourse” has the same meaning as in section 372.]

374. Unlawful compulsory labour.—Whoever unlawfully compels any person to labour against the will of that person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

¹[*Sexual offences*]

²[**375. Rape.**—A man is said to commit “rape” if he—

(a) penetrates his penis, to any extent, into the vagina, mouth, urethra or anus of a woman or makes her to do so with him or any other person; or

(b) inserts, to any extent, any object or a part of the body, not being the penis, into the vagina, the urethra or anus of a woman or makes her to do so with him or any other person; or

(c) manipulates any part of the body of a woman so as to cause penetration into the vagina, urethra, anus or any part of body of such woman or makes her to do so with him or any other person; or

(d) applies his mouth to the vagina, anus, urethra of a woman or makes her to do so with him or any other person,

under the circumstances falling under any of the following seven descriptions:—

First.—Against her will.

Secondly.—Without her consent.

Thirdly.—With her consent, when her consent has been obtained by putting her or any person in whom she is interested, in fear of death or of hurt.

Fourthly.—With her consent, when the man knows that he is not her husband and that her consent is given because she believes that he is another man to whom she is or believes herself to be lawfully married.

Fifthly.—With her consent when, at the time of giving such consent, by reason of unsoundness of mind or intoxication or the administration by him personally or through another of any stupefying or unwholesome substance, she is unable to understand the nature and consequences of that to which she gives consent.

Sixthly.—With or without her consent, when she is under eighteen years of age.

Seventhly.—When she is unable to communicate consent.

Explanation 1.—For the purposes of this section, “vagina” shall also include *labia majora*.

Explanation 2.—Consent means an unequivocal voluntary agreement when the woman by words, gestures or any form of verbal or non-verbal communication, communicates willingness to participate in the specific sexual act:

Provided that a woman who does not physically resist to the act of penetration shall not by the reason only of that fact, be regarded as consenting to the sexual activity.

Exception 1.—A medical procedure or intervention shall not constitute rape.

Exception 2.—Sexual intercourse or sexual acts by a man with his own wife, the wife not being under fifteen years of age, is not rape.

376. Punishment for rape.—(1) Whoever, except in the cases provided for in sub-section (2), commits rape, shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment of either description for a term which ³[shall not be less than ten years, but which may extend to imprisonment for life, and shall also be liable to fine].

(2) Whoever,—

(a) being a police officer, commits rape—

1. Subs. by Act 43 of 1983, s. 3, for the heading “*Of rape*” and ss. 375 and 376.

2. Subs. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 9, for sections 375, 376, 376A, 376B, 376C and 376D (w.e.f. 03-02-2013).

3. Subs. by Act 22 of 2018, s. 4, for “shall not be less than seven years, but which may extend to imprisonment for life, and shall also be liable to fine” (w.e.f. 21-4-2018).

- (i) within the limits of the police station to which such police officer is appointed; or
 - (ii) in the premises of any station house; or
 - (iii) on a woman in such police officer's custody or in the custody of a police officer subordinate to such police officer; or
 - (b) being a public servant, commits rape on a woman in such public servant's custody or in the custody of a public servant subordinate to such public servant; or
 - (c) being a member of the armed forces deployed in an area by the Central or a State Government commits rape in such area; or
 - (d) being on the management or on the staff of a jail, remand home or other place of custody established by or under any law for the time being in force or of a women's or children's institution, commits rape on any inmate of such jail, remand home, place or institution; or
 - (e) being on the management or on the staff of a hospital, commits rape on a woman in that hospital; or
 - (f) being a relative, guardian or teacher of, or a person in a position of trust or authority towards the woman, commits rape on such woman; or
 - (g) commits rape during communal or sectarian violence; or
 - (h) commits rape on a woman knowing her to be pregnant; or
- * * * *
- (j) commits rape, on a woman incapable of giving consent; or
 - (k) being in a position of control or dominance over a woman, commits rape on such woman; or
 - (l) commits rape on a woman suffering from mental or physical disability; or
 - (m) while committing rape causes grievous bodily harm or maims or disfigures or endangers the life of a woman; or
 - (n) commits rape repeatedly on the same woman,

shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than ten years, but which may extend to imprisonment for life, which shall mean imprisonment for the remainder of that person's natural life, and shall also be liable to fine.

*Explanation.—*For the purposes of this sub-section,—

- (a) “armed forces” means the naval, military and air forces and includes any member of the Armed Forces constituted under any law for the time being in force, including the paramilitary forces and any auxiliary forces that are under the control of the Central Government or the State Government;
- (b) “hospital” means the precincts of the hospital and includes the precincts of any institution for the reception and treatment of persons during convalescence or of persons requiring medical attention or rehabilitation;
- (c) “police officer” shall have the same meaning as assigned to the expression “police” under the Police Act, 1861 (5 of 1861);
- (d) “women's or children's institution” means an institution, whether called an orphanage or a home for neglected women or children or a widow's home or an institution called by any other name, which is established and maintained for the reception and care of women or children.

²[(3) Whoever, commits rape on a woman under sixteen years of age shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than twenty years, but which may extend to imprisonment for life, which shall mean imprisonment for the remainder of that person's natural life, and shall also be liable to fine:

1. Clause (i) omitted by Act 22 of 2018 s. 4. (w.e.f. 21-4-2018).
2. Ins. by s. 4. *ibid.*, (w.e.f. 21-4-2018).

Provided that such fine shall be just and reasonable to meet the medical expenses and rehabilitation of the victim:

Provided further that any fine imposed under this sub-section shall be paid to the victim.]

¹[376A. Punishment for causing death or resulting in persistent vegetative state of victim.]—Whoever, commits an offence punishable under sub-section (1) or sub-section (2) of section 376 and in the course of such commission inflicts an injury which causes the death of the woman or causes the woman to be in a persistent vegetative state, shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than twenty years, but which may extend to imprisonment for life, which shall mean imprisonment for the remainder of that person's natural life, or with death.

STATE AMENDMENT

Arunachal Pradesh

Insertion of section 376AA.—After section 376A of the principal act, the following section shall be inserted, namely:—

“376AA. Punishment for rape on a women up to twelve years of age.”—Whoever commits rape on a women up to twelve years of age shall be punished with death, or rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than fourteen years but which may extend to imprisonment for life which shall mean imprisonment for the remained of that person's natural life, and shall also be liable to fine.”.

[*Vide Arunachal Pradesh Act 3 of 2019, s. 8]*

Insertion of section 376DA.—After section 376D of the principal Act, the following section shall be inserted namely:—

“376D.Punishment for gang rape on a woman twelve years of age.”—Where a woman up to twelve years of age, is raped by one or more persons constituting a group of action in furtherance of a common intention, each of those persons shall be deemed to have committed the offence of rape and shall be punished with death, or rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than twenty years, but which may extend to imprisonment for life which shall mean imprisonment for the remainder of that person's natural life, and shall also be liable to fine:

Provided that such fine shall be just and reasonable to meet the medical expenses and rehabilitation of the victim:

Provided further that any fine imposed under this section shall be paid to the victim.”.

[*Vide Arunachal Pradesh Act 3 of 2019, s. 9]*

²[376AB.Punishment for rape on woman under twelve years of age.]—Whoever, commits rape on a woman under twelve years of age shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than twenty years, but which may extend to imprisonment for life, which shall mean imprisonment for the remainder of that person's natural life, and with fine or with death:

Provided that such fine shall be just and reasonable to meet the medical expenses and rehabilitation of the victim:

Provided further that any fine imposed under this section shall be paid to the victim.]

¹[376B. Sexual intercourse by husband upon his wife during separation.]—Whoever has sexual intercourse with his own wife, who is living separately, whether under a decree of separation or otherwise, without her consent, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than two years but which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

*Explanation.—*In this section, “sexual intercourse” shall mean any of the acts mentioned in clauses (a) to (d) of section 375.

¹[376C. Sexual intercourse by a person in authority.]—Whoever, being—

(a) in a position of authority or in a fiduciary relationship; or

1. Subs. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 9, for sections 375, 376, 376A, 376B, 376C and 376D (w.e.f. 03-02-2013).

2. Ins. by Act 22 of 2018, s. 5 (w.e.f. 21-4-2018).

(b) a public servant; or

(c) superintendent or manager of a jail, remand home or other place of custody established by or under any law for the time being in force, or a women's or children's institution; or

(d) on the management of a hospital or being on the staff of a hospital,

abuses such position or fiduciary relationship to induce or seduce any woman either in his custody or under his charge or present in the premises to have sexual intercourse with him, such sexual intercourse not amounting to the offence of rape, shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment of either description for a term which shall not be less than five years, but which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation 1.—In this section, “sexual intercourse” shall mean any of the acts mentioned in clauses (a) to (d) of section 375.

Explanation 2.—For the purposes of this section, *Explanation 1* to section 375 shall also be applicable.

Explanation 3.—“Superintendent”, in relation to a jail, remand home or other place of custody or a women's or children's institution, includes a person holding any other office in such jail, remand home, place or institution by virtue of which such person can exercise any authority or control over its inmates.

Explanation 4.—The expressions “hospital” and “women's or children's institution” shall respectively have the same meaning as in *Explanation* to sub-section (2) of section 376.]

¹[**376D. Gang rape.**—Where a woman is raped by one or more persons constituting a group or acting in furtherance of a common intention, each of those persons shall be deemed to have committed the offence of rape and shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than twenty years, but which may extend to life which shall mean imprisonment for the remainder of that person's natural life, and with fine:

Provided that such fine shall be just and reasonable to meet the medical expenses and rehabilitation of the victim:

Provided further that any fine imposed under this section shall be paid to the victim.]

²[**376DA.Punishment for gang rape on woman under sixteen years of age.**—Where a woman under sixteen years of age is raped by one or more persons constituting a group or acting in furtherance of a common intention, each of those persons shall be deemed to have committed the offence of rape and shall be punished with imprisonment for life, which shall mean imprisonment for the remainder of that person's natural life, and with fine:

Provided that such fine shall be just and reasonable to meet the medical expenses and rehabilitation of the victim:

Provided further that any fine imposed under this section shall be paid to the victim.

²[**376DB.Punishment for gang rape on woman under twelve years of age.**—Where a woman under twelve years of age is raped by one or more persons constituting a group or acting in furtherance of a common intention, each of those persons shall be deemed to have committed the offence of rape and shall be punished with imprisonment for life, which shall mean imprisonment for the remainder of that person's natural life, and with fine, or with death:

Provided that such fine shall be just and reasonable to meet the medical expenses and rehabilitation of the victim:

1. Subs. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 9, for sections 375, 376, 376A, 376B, 376C and 376D (w.e.f. 03-02-2013).

2. Ins. by Act 22 of 2018, s. 6 (w.e.f. 21-4-2018).

Provided further that any fine imposed under this section shall be paid to the victim.]

376E. Punishment for repeat offenders.—Whoever has been previously convicted of an offence punishable under section 376 or section 376A or ¹[section 376AB or section 376D or section 376DA or section 376DB,] and is subsequently convicted of an offence punishable under any of the said sections shall be punished with imprisonment for life which shall mean imprisonment for the remainder of that person's natural life, or with death.]]

STATE AMENDMENT

Chhattisgarh

After Section 376E of the Penal Code, the following shall be inserted, namely:—

376F. Liability of person in-charge of workplace and others to give information about offence.

—Whoever, being person in-charge of any work place or any other person present at such place, having knowledge that an offence under section 376 or section 376D, is being committed at such place and being in a position to prevent commission of such offence fails so, to prevent such offence or to give information of the commission of such offence, to any magistrate or police officer, by any mode, with the intention of screening the offender from legal punishment, shall be liable to be punished for abetment of such offence with imprisonment of either description which may extend to three years and fine and no such person shall incur any liability for giving such information.

Explanation:—Work-place includes any mode of transport owned, hired or otherwise engaged by the person in-charge of the work place for the conveyance of the woman, who was subjected to such offence, to and from her residence to such work-place.

[*Vide Chhattisgarh Act 25 of 2015, s. 5.*]

Of Unnatural Offences

377. Unnatural offences.—Whoever voluntarily has carnal intercourse against the order of nature with any man, woman or animal, shall be punished with ²[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation.—Penetration is sufficient to constitute the carnal intercourse necessary to the offence described in this section.

CHAPTER XVII

OF OFFENCES AGAINST PROPERTY

Of Theft

378. Theft.—Whoever, intending to take dishonestly any movable property out of the possession of any person without that person's consent, moves that property in order to such taking, is said to commit theft.

Explanation 1.—A thing so long as it is attached to the earth, not being movable property, is not the subject of theft; but it becomes capable of being the subject of theft as soon as it is severed from the earth.

Explanation 2.—A moving effected by the same act which effects the severance may be a theft.

Explanation 3.—A person is said to cause a thing to move by removing an obstacle which prevented it from moving or by separating it from any other thing, as well as by actually moving it.

Explanation 4.—A person, who by any means causes an animal to move, is said to move that animal, and to move everything which, in consequence of the motion so caused, is moved by that animal.

Explanation 5.—The consent mentioned in the definition may be express or implied, and may be given either by the person in possession, or by any person having for that purpose authority either express or implied.

Illustrations

(a) A cuts down a tree on Z's ground, with the intention of dishonestly taking the tree out of Z's possession without Z's consent. Here, as soon as A has severed the tree in order to such taking, he has committed theft.

1. Subs. by Act 22 of 2018, s. 7, for "section 376D" (w.e.f. 21-4-2018).

2. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for "transportation for life" (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

(b) A puts a bait for dogs in his pocket, and thus induces Z's dog to follow it. Here, if A's intention be dishonestly to take the dog out of Z's possession without Z's consent, A has committed theft as soon as Z's dog has begun to follow A.

(c) A meets a bullock carrying a box of treasure. He drives the bullock in a certain direction, in order that he may dishonestly take the treasure. As soon as the bullock begins to move, A has committed theft of the treasure.

(d) A being Z's servant, and entrusted by Z with the care of Z's plate, dishonestly runs away with the plate, without Z's consent. A has committed theft.

(e) Z, going on a journey, entrusts his plate to A, the keeper of a warehouse, till Z shall return. A carries the plate to a goldsmith and sells it. Here the plate was not in Z's possession. It could not therefore be taken out of Z's possession, and A has not committed theft, though he may have committed criminal breach of trust.

(f) A finds a ring belonging to Z on a table in the house which Z occupies. Here the ring is in Z's possession, and if A dishonestly removes it, A commits theft.

(g) A finds a ring lying on the highroad, not in the possession of any person. A, by taking it, commits no theft, though he may commit criminal misappropriation of property.

(h) A sees a ring belonging to Z lying on a table in Z's house. Not venturing to misappropriate the ring immediately for fear of search and detection, A hides the ring in a place where it is highly improbable that it will ever be found by Z, with the intention of taking the ring from the hiding place and selling it when the loss is forgotten. Here A, at the time of first moving the ring, commits theft.

(i) A delivers his watch to Z, a jeweller, to be regulated. Z carries it to his shop. A, not owing to the jeweller any debt for which the jeweller might lawfully detain the watch as a security, enters the shop openly, takes his watch by force out of Z's hand, and carries it away. Here A, though he may have committed criminal trespass and assault, has not committed theft, inasmuch as what he did was not done dishonestly.

(j) If A owes money to Z for repairing the watch, and if Z retains the watch lawfully as a security for the debt, and A takes the watch out of Z's possession, with the intention of depriving Z of the property as a security for his debt, he commits theft, inasmuch as he takes it dishonestly.

(k) Again, if A, having pawned his watch to Z, takes it out of Z's possession without Z's consent, not having paid what he borrowed on the watch, he commits theft, though the watch is his own property inasmuch as he takes it dishonestly.

(l) A takes an article belonging to Z out of Z's possession without Z's consent, with the intention of keeping it until he obtains money from Z as a reward for its restoration. Here A takes dishonestly; A has therefor committed theft.

(m) A, being on friendly terms with Z, goes into Z's library in Z's absence, and takes away a book without Z's express consent for the purpose merely of reading it, and with the intention of returning it. Here, it is probable that A may have conceived that he had Z's implied consent to use Z's book. If this was A's impression, A has not committed theft.

(n) A asks charity from Z's wife. She gives A money, food and clothes, which A knows to belong to Z her husband. Here it is probable that A may conceive that Z's wife is authorised to give away alms. If this was A's impression, A has not committed theft.

(o) A is the paramour of Z's wife. She gives a valuable property, which A knows to belong to her husband Z, and to be such property as she has not authority from Z to give. If A takes the property dishonestly, he commits theft.

(p) A, in good faith, believing property belonging to Z to be A's own property, takes that property out of B's possession. Here, as A does not take dishonestly, he does not commit theft.

379. Punishment for theft.—Whoever commits theft shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

STATE AMENDMENT

Gujarat.—

In the Indian Penal Code, 1860 (XLV of 1860), after section 379, the following sections shall be inserted, namely:—

379A. Snatching.—(1) Whoever, with the intention to commit theft, suddenly or quickly or forcibly seizes or secures or grabs or takes away from any person or from his physical possession any moveable property, and makes or attempt to make escape with such property, is said to commit snatching.

(2) Whoever attempts to commit snatching shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than five years but which may extend to ten years, and with fine which may extend to twenty-five thousand rupees.

(3) Whoever commits snatching shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than seven years but which may extend to ten years, and with fine which may extend to twenty-five thousand rupees.

(4) Whoever, after committing or attempting to commit snatching, causes hurt or wrongful restraint of fear of hurt, in order to effect his escape shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to three years, in addition to the punishment provided for the offence of snatching by the preceding sub-sections.

379B. Snatching after preparation made for causing death, hurt or restraint in order to the committing of snatching.—Whoever commits or attempts to commit snatching, having made preparation for causing death, or hurt, or restraint, or fear of death, or of hurt, or of restraint, to any person, in order to the committing of such snatching, or in order to the retaining of property taken by such snatching, shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than seven years but which may extend to ten years, and with fine which may extend to twenty-five thousand rupees.

[Vide Gujarat Act 6 of 2019, s. 2]

380. Theft in dwelling house, etc.—Whoever commits theft in any building, tent or vessel, which building, tent or vessel is used as a human dwelling, or used for the custody of property, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

381. Theft by clerk or servant of property in possession of master.—Whoever, being a clerk or servant, or being employed in the capacity of a clerk or servant, commits theft in respect of any property in the possession of his master or employer, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

382. Theft after preparation made for causing death, hurt or restraint in order to the committing of the theft.—Whoever commits theft, having made preparation for causing death, or hurt, or restraint, or fear of death, or of hurt, or of restraint, to any person, in order to the committing of such theft, or in order to the effecting of his escape after the committing of such theft, or in order to the retaining of property taken by such theft, shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Illustrations

(a) A commits theft on property in Z's possession; and while committing this theft, he has a loaded pistol under his garment having provided this pistol for the purpose of hurting Z in case Z should resist. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

(b) A picks Z's pocket, having posted several of his companions near him, in order that they may restrain Z, if Z should perceive what is passing and should resist, or should attempt to apprehend A. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

STATE AMENDMENT

Tripura

After the section 382 of the Indian Penal Code, the following new sections will be inserted:—

“382A. Snatching: Whoever commits theft stealthily from a person or through assault or by using criminal force and thereby causes hurt or endangers the life of that person is said to commit the offence of ‘Snatching’.

382B. Whoever commits ‘Snatching’ shall be punished with imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than seven years but may extend to a term of ten years or with fine or with both.

382C. Vehicle lifting: Whoever commits theft of a ‘vehicle’ either from open or close arena, is said to commit the offence of ‘vehicle lifting’.

Note:—The term ‘Vehicle’ shall have the same meaning as defined in sub-section 28 of section 2 of Motor Vehicles Act 1988:;

382D. Whoever commits the offence of ‘vehicle lifting’ shall be punished with imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than seven years but may extend to a term of ten years or with fine or with both”.

382E. Cattle lifting: Whoever commits theft of a ‘Cattle’ either from open or close arena, is said to commit the offence of ‘Cattle lifting’.

Note:- For the purpose of this section, the term ‘Cattle’ means a cow and a calf, whether male or female, bull, bullock, buffalo-male or female or calf of she-buffalo, whether male or female and an ox or oxen.

382F. Whoever commits the offence of ‘Cattle lifting’ shall be punished with imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than seven years but may extend to a term of ten years or with fine or with both.”

[*Vide* Tripura Act 4 of 2019, s. 2]

Of Extortion

383. Extortion.—Whoever intentionally puts any person in fear of any injury to that person, or to any other, and thereby dishonestly induces the person so put in fear to deliver to any person any property, or valuable security or anything signed or sealed which may be converted into a valuable security, commits “extortion”.

Illustrations

(a) A threatens to publish a defamatory libel concerning Z unless Z gives him money. He thus induces Z to give him money. A has committed extortion.

(b) A threatens Z that he will keep Z's child in wrongful confinement, unless Z will sign and deliver to A a promissory note binding Z to pay certain monies to A. Z signs and delivers the note. A has committed extortion.

(c) A threatens to send club-men to plough up Z's field unless Z will sign and deliver to B a bond binding Z under a penalty to deliver certain produce to B, and thereby induces Z to sign and deliver the bond. A has committed extortion.

(d) A, by putting Z in fear of grievous hurt, dishonestly induces Z to sign or affix his seal to a blank paper and deliver it to A. Z signs and delivers the paper to A. Here, as the paper so signed may be converted into a valuable security. A has committed extortion.

384. Punishment for extortion.—Whoever commits extortion shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

385. Putting person in fear of injury in order to commit extortion.—Whoever, in order to the committing of extortion, puts any person in fear, or attempts to put any person in fear, of any injury, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

386. Extortion by putting a person in fear of death or grievous hurt.—Whoever commits extortion by putting any person in fear of death or of grievous hurt to that person or to any other, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

387. Putting person in fear of death or of grievous hurt, in order to commit extortion.—Whoever, in order to the committing of extortion, puts or attempts to put any person in fear of death or of grievous hurt to that person or to any other, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

388. Extortion by threat of accusation of an offence punishable with death or imprisonment for life, etc.—Whoever commits extortion by putting any person in fear of an accusation against that person or any other, of having committed or attempted to commit any offence punishable with death, or with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, or of having attempted to induce any other person to commit such offence, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine; and, if the offence be one punishable under section 377 of this Code, may be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life].

389. Putting person in fear or accusation of offence, in order to commit extortion.—Whoever, in order to the committing of extortion, puts or attempts to put any person in fear of an accusation, against that person or any other, of having committed, or attempted to commit, an offence punishable with death or with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine; and, if the offence be punishable under section 377 of this Code, may be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life].

Of Robbery and dacoity

390. Robbery.—In all robbery there is either theft or extortion.

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

When theft is robbery.—Theft is “robbery” if, in order to the committing of the theft, or in committing the theft, or in carrying away or attempting to carry away property obtained by the theft, the offender, for that end voluntarily causes or attempts to cause to any person death or hurt or wrongful restraint, or fear of instant death or of instant hurt, or of instant wrongful restraint.

When extortion is robbery.—Extortion is “robbery” if the offender, at the time of committing the extortion, is in the presence of the person put in fear, and commits the extortion by putting that person in fear of instant death, of instant hurt, or of instant wrongful restraint to that person or to some other person, and, by so putting in fear, induces the person so put in fear then and there to deliver up the thing extorted.

Explanation.—The offender is said to be present if he is sufficiently near to put the other person in fear of instant death, of instant hurt, or of instant wrongful restraint.

Illustrations

(a) A holds Z down, and fraudulently takes Z's money and jewels from Z's clothes, without Z's consent. Here A has committed theft, and, in order to the committing of that theft, has voluntarily caused wrongful restraint to Z. A has therefore committed robbery.

(b) A meets Z on the high road, shows a pistol, and demands Z's purse. Z, in consequence, surrenders his purse. Here A has extorted the purse from Z by putting him in fear of instant hurt, and being at the time of committing the extortion in his presence. A has therefore committed robbery.

(c) A meets Z and Z's child on the high road. A takes the child, and threatens to filing it down a precipice, unless Z delivers his purse. Z, in consequence, delivers his purse. Here A has extorted the purse from Z, by causing Z to be in fear of instant hurt to the child who is there present. A has therefore committed robbery on Z.

(d) A obtains property from Z by saying “Your child is in the hands of my gang, and will be put to death unless you send us ten thousand rupees”. This is extortion, and punishable as such: but it is not robbery, unless Z is put in fear of the instant death of his child.

391. Dacoity.—When five or more persons conjointly commit or attempt to commit a robbery, or where the whole number of persons conjointly committing or attempting to commit a robbery, and persons present and aiding such commission or attempt, amount to five or more, every person so committing, attempting or aiding, is said to commit “dacoity”.

392. Punishment for robbery.—Whoever commits robbery shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine; and, if the robbery be committed on the highway between sunset and sunrise, the imprisonment may be extended to fourteen years.

393. Attempt to commit robbery.—Whoever attempts to commit robbery shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

394. Voluntarily causing hurt in committing robbery.—If any person, in committing or in attempting to commit robbery, voluntarily causes hurt, such person, and any other person jointly concerned in committing or attempting to commit such robbery, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

395. Punishment for dacoity.—Whoever commits dacoity shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

396. Dacoity with murder.—If any one of five or more persons, who are conjointly committing dacoity, commits murder in so committing dacoity, every one of those persons shall be punished with death, or ¹[imprisonment for life], or rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

397. Robbery, or dacoity, with attempt to cause death or grievous hurt.—If, at the time of committing robbery or dacoity, the offender uses any deadly weapon, or causes grievous hurt to any

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

person, or attempts to cause death or grievous hurt to any person, the imprisonment with which such offender shall be punished shall not be less than seven years.

398. Attempt to commit robbery or dacoity when armed with deadly weapon.—If, at the time of attempting to commit robbery or dacoity, the offender is armed with any deadly weapon, the imprisonment with which such offender shall be punished shall not be less than seven years.

399. Making preparation to commit dacoity.—Whoever makes any preparation for committing dacoity, shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

400. Punishment for belonging to gang of dacoits.—Whoever, at any time after the passing of this Act, shall belong to a gang of persons associated for the purpose of habitually committing dacoity, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

401. Punishment for belonging to gang of thieves.—Whoever, at any time after the passing of this Act, shall belong to any wandering or other gang of persons associated for the purpose of habitually committing theft or robbery, and not being a gang of *thugs* or dacoits, shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

402. Assembling for purpose of committing dacoity.—Whoever, at any time after the passing of this Act, shall be one of five or more persons assembled for the purpose of committing dacoity, shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Of criminal misappropriation of property

403. Dishonest misappropriation of property.—Whoever dishonestly misappropriates or converts to his own use any movable property, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

Illustrations

(a) A takes property belonging to Z out of Z's possession, in good faith believing at the time when he takes it, that the property belongs to himself. A is not guilty of theft; but if A, after discovering his mistake, dishonestly appropriates the property to his own use, he is guilty of an offence under this section.

(b) A, being on friendly terms with Z, goes into Z's library in Z's absence, and takes away a book without Z's express consent. Here, if A was under the impression that he had Z's implied consent to take the book for the purpose of reading it, A has not committed theft. But, if A afterwards sells the book for his own benefit, he is guilty of an offence under this section.

(c) A and B, being, joint owners of a horse, A takes the horse out of B's possession, intending to use it. Here, as A has a right to use the horse, he does not dishonestly misappropriate it. But, if A sells the horse and appropriates the whole proceeds to his own use, he is guilty of an offence under this section.

Explanation 1.—A dishonest misappropriation for a time only is a misappropriation within the meaning of this section.

Illustration

A finds a Government promissory note belonging to Z, bearing a blank endorsement. A, knowing that the note belongs to Z, pledges it with a banker as a security or a loan, intending at a future time to restore it to Z. A has committed an offence under this section.

Explanation 2.—A person who finds property not in the possession of any other person, and takes such property for the purpose of protecting it for, or of restoring it to, the owner, does not take or misappropriate it dishonestly, and is not guilty of an offence; but he is guilty of the offence above defined, if he appropriates it to his own use, when he knows or has the means of discovering the owner, or before he has used reasonable means to discover and give notice to the owner and has kept the property a reasonable time to enable the owner to claim it.

What are reasonable means or what is a reasonable time in such a case, is a question of fact.

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for "transportation for life" (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

It is not necessary that the finder should know who is the owner of the property, or that any particular person is the owner of it; it is sufficient if, at the time of appropriating it, he does not believe it to be his own property, or in good faith believe that the real owner cannot be found.

Illustrations

(a) A finds a rupee on the high road, not knowing to whom the rupee belongs, A picks up the rupee. Here A has not committed the offence defined in this section.

(b) A finds a letter on the road, containing a bank note. From the direction and contents of the letter he learns to whom the note belongs. He appropriates the note. He is guilty of an offence under this section.

(c) A finds a cheque payable to bearer. He can form no conjecture as to the person who has lost the cheque. But the name of the person, who has drawn the cheque, appears. A knows that this person can direct him to the person in whose favour the cheque was drawn. A appropriates the cheque without attempting to discover the owner. He is guilty of an offence under this section.

(d) A sees Z drop his purse with money in it. A picks up the purse with the intention of restoring it to Z, but afterwards appropriates it to his own use. A has committed an offence under this section.

(e) A finds a purse with money, not knowing to whom it belongs; he afterwards discovers that it belongs to Z, and appropriates it to his own use. A is guilty of an offence under this section.

(f) A finds a valuable ring, not knowing to whom it belongs. A sells it immediately without attempting to discover the owner. A is guilty of an offence under this section.

404. Dishonest misappropriation of property possessed by deceased person at the time of his death.—Whoever dishonestly misappropriates or converts to his own use property, knowing that such property was in the possession of a deceased person at the time of that person's decease, and has not since been in the possession of any person legally entitled to such possession, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine, and if the offender at the time of such person's decease was employed by him as a clerk or servant, the imprisonment may extend to seven years.

Illustration

Z dies in possession of furniture and money. His servant A, before the money comes into the possession of any person entitled to such possession, dishonestly misappropriates it. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

Of criminal breach of trust

405. Criminal breach of trust.—Whoever, being in any manner entrusted with property, or with any dominion over property, dishonestly misappropriates or converts to his own use that property, or dishonestly uses or disposes of that property in violation of any direction of law prescribing the mode in which such trust is to be discharged, or of any legal contract, express or implied, which he has made touching the discharge of such trust, or wilfully suffers any other person so to do, commits "criminal breach of trust".

¹[²[Explanation 1].—A person, being an employer ³[of an establishment whether exempted under section 17 of the Employees' Provident Funds and Miscellaneous Provisions Act, 1952 (19 of 1952) or not] who deducts the employee's contribution from the wages payable to the employee for credit to a Provident Fund or Family Pension Fund established by any law for the time being in force, shall be deemed to have been entrusted with the amount of the contribution so deducted by him and if he makes default in the payment of such contribution to the said Fund in violation of the said law, shall be deemed to have dishonestly used the amount of the said contribution in violation of a direction of law as aforesaid.]

⁴[Explanation 2.—A person, being an employer, who deducts the employees' contribution from the wages payable to the employee for credit to the Employees' State Insurance Fund held and administered by the Employees' State Insurance Corporation established under the Employees' State Insurance Act, 1948 (34 of 1948), shall be deemed to have been entrusted with the amount of the contribution so deducted by him and if he makes default in the payment of such contribution to the said Fund in violation of the said Act, shall be deemed to have dishonestly used the amount of the said contribution in violation of a direction of law as aforesaid.]

Illustrations

(a) A, being executor to the will of a deceased person, dishonestly disobeys the law which directs him to divide the effects according to the will, and appropriates them to his own use. A has committed criminal breach of trust.

1. Ins. by Act 40 of 1973, s. 9 (w.e.f. 1-11-1973).

2. Explanation numbered as *Explanation 1* by Act 38 of 1975, s. 9 (w.e.f. 1-9-1975).

3. Ins. by Act 33 of 1988, s. 27 (w.e.f. 1-8-1988).

4. Ins. by Act 38 of 1975, s. 9 (w.e.f. 1-9-1975).

(b) A is a warehouse-keeper. Z going on a journey, entrusts his furniture to A, under a contract that it shall be returned on payment of a stipulated sum for warehouse room. A dishonestly sells the goods. A has committed criminal breach of trust.

(c) A, residing in Calcutta, is agent for Z, residing at Delhi. There is an express or implied contract between A and Z, that all sums remitted by Z to A shall be invested by A, according to Z's direction. Z remits a lakh of rupees to A, with directions to A to invest the same in Company's paper. A dishonestly disobeys the directions and employs the money in his own business. A has committed criminal breach of trust.

(d) But if A, in the last illustration, not dishonestly but in good faith, believing that it will be more for Z's advantage to hold shares in the Bank of Bengal, disobeys Z's directions, and buys shares in the Bank of Bengal, for Z, instead of buying Company's paper, here, thought Z should suffer loss, and should be entitled to bring a civil action against A, on account of that loss, yet A, not having acted dishonestly, has not committed criminal breach of trust.

(e) A, a revenue-officer, is entrusted with public money and is either directed by law, or bound by a contract, express or implied, with the Government, to pay into a certain treasury all the public money which he holds. A dishonestly appropriates the money. A has committed criminal breach of trust.

(f) A, a carrier, is entrusted by Z with property to be carried by land or by water. A dishonestly misappropriates the property. A has committed criminal breach of trust.

406. Punishment for criminal breach of trust.—Whoever commits criminal breach of trust shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

407. Criminal breach of trust by carrier, etc.—Whoever, being entrusted with property as a carrier, wharfinger or warehouse-keeper, commits criminal breach of trust in respect of such property, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

408. Criminal breach of trust by clerk or servant.—Whoever, being a clerk or servant or employed as a clerk or servant, and being in any manner entrusted in such capacity with property, or with any dominion over property, commits criminal breach of trust in respect of that property, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

409. Criminal breach of trust by public servant, or by banker, merchant or agent.—Whoever, being in any manner entrusted with property, or with any dominion over property in his capacity of a public servant or in the way of his business as a banker, merchant, factor, broker, attorney or agent, commits criminal breach of trust in respect of that property, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Of the receiving of stolen property

410. Stolen property.—Property, the possession whereof has been transferred by theft, or by extortion, or by robbery, and property which has been criminally misappropriated or in respect of which ^{2***3***}criminal breach of trust has been committed, is designated as “stolen property”, ⁴[whether the transfer has been made, or the misappropriation or breach of trust has been committed, within or without ⁵[India]]. But, if such property subsequently comes into the possession of a person legally entitled to the possession thereof, it then ceases to be stolen property.

411. Dishonestly receiving stolen property.—Whoever dishonestly receives or retains any stolen property, knowing or having reason to believe the same to be stolen property, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

412. Dishonestly receiving property stolen in the commission of a dacoity.—Whoever dishonestly receives or retains any stolen property, the possession whereof he knows or has reason to believe to have been transferred by the commission of dacoity, or dishonestly receives from a person, whom he knows or has reason to believe to belong or to have belonged to a gang of dacoits, property which he knows or has

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

2. The word “the” rep by Act 12 of 1891, s. 2 and the First Sch.

3. The words “offence of” rep. by Act 8 of 1882, s. 9.

4. Ins. by s. 9, *ibid*.

5. The words “British India” have successively been subs. by the A. O. 1948, the A. O. 1950 and Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Sch., to read as above (w.e.f. 1-4-1951).

reason to believe to have been stolen, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with rigorous imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

413. Habitually dealing in stolen property.—Whoever habitually receives or deals in property which he knows or has reason to believe to be stolen property, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

414. Assisting in concealment of stolen property.—Whoever voluntarily assists in concealing or disposing of or making away with property which he knows or has reason to believe to be stolen property, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

Of Cheating

415. Cheating.—Whoever, by deceiving any person, fraudulently or dishonestly induces the person so deceived to deliver any property to any person, or to consent that any person shall retain any property, or intentionally induces the person so deceived to do or omit to do anything which he would not do or omit if he were not so deceived, and which act or omission causes or is likely to cause damage or harm to that person in body, mind, reputation or property, is said to “cheat”.

Explanation.—A dishonest concealment of facts is a deception within the meaning of this section.

Illustrations

(a) A, by falsely pretending to be in the Civil Service, intentionally deceives Z, and thus dishonestly induces Z to let him have on credit goods for which he does not mean to pay. A cheats.

(b) A, by putting a counterfeit mark on an article, intentionally deceives Z into a belief that this article was made by a certain celebrated manufacturer, and thus dishonestly induces Z to buy and pay for the article. A cheats.

(c) A, by exhibiting to Z a false sample of an article intentionally deceives Z into believing that the article corresponds with the sample, and thereby dishonestly induces Z to buy and pay for the article. A cheats.

(d) A, by tendering in payment for an article a bill on a house with which A keeps no money, and by which A expects that the bill will be dishonoured, intentionally deceives Z, and thereby dishonestly induces Z to deliver the article, intending not to pay for it. A cheats.

(e) A, by pledging as diamond articles which he knows are not diamonds, intentionally deceives Z, and thereby dishonestly induces Z to lend money. A cheats.

(f) A intentionally deceives Z into a belief that A means to repay any money that Z may lend to him and thereby dishonestly induces Z to lend him money, A not intending to repay it. A cheats.

(g) A intentionally deceives Z into a belief that A means to deliver to Z a certain quantity of indigo plant which he does not intend to deliver, and thereby dishonestly induces Z to advance money upon the faith of such delivery. A cheats; but if A, at the time of obtaining the money, intends to deliver the indigo plant, and afterwards breaks his contract and does not deliver it, he does not cheat, but is liable only to a civil action for breach of contract.

(h) A intentionally deceives Z into a belief that A has performed A's part of a contract made with Z, which he has not performed, and thereby dishonestly induces Z to pay money. A cheats.

(i) A sells and conveys an estate to B. A, knowing that in consequence of such sale he has no right to the property, sells or mortgages the same to Z, without disclosing the fact of the previous sale and conveyance to B, and receives the purchase or mortgage money from Z. A cheats.

416. Cheating by personation.—A person is said to “cheat by personation” if he cheats by pretending to be some other person, or by knowingly substituting one person for another, or representing that he or any other person is a person other than he or such other person really is.

Explanation.—The offence is committed whether the individual personated is a real or imaginary person.

Illustrations

(a) A cheats by pretending to be a certain rich banker of the same name. A cheats by personation.

(b) A cheats by pretending to be B, a person who is deceased. A cheats by personation.

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

417. Punishment for cheating.—Whoever cheats shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

418. Cheating with knowledge that wrongful loss may ensue to person whose interest offender is bound to protect.—Whoever cheats with the knowledge that he is likely thereby to cause wrongful loss to a person whose interest in the transaction to which the cheating relates, he was bound, either by law, or by a legal contract, to protect, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

419. Punishment for cheating by personation.—Whoever cheats by personation shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

420. Cheating and dishonestly inducing delivery of property.—Whoever cheats and thereby dishonestly induces the person deceived to deliver any property to any person, or to make, alter or destroy the whole or any part of a valuable security, or anything which is signed or sealed, and which is capable of being converted into a valuable security, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Of fraudulent feeds and dispositions of property

421. Dishonest or fraudulent removal or concealment of property to prevent distribution among creditors.—Whoever dishonestly or fraudulently removes, conceals or delivers to any person, or transfers or causes to be transferred to any person, without adequate consideration, any property, intending thereby to prevent, or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby prevent, the distribution of that property according to law among his creditors or the creditors of any other person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

422. Dishonestly or fraudulently preventing debt being available for creditors.—Whoever dishonestly or fraudulently prevents any debt or demand due to himself or to any other person from being made available according to law for payment of his debts or the debts of such other person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

423. Dishonest or fraudulent execution of deed of transfer containing false statement of consideration.—Whoever dishonestly or fraudulently signs, executes or becomes a party to any deed or instrument which purports to transfer or subject to any charge any property, or any interest therein, and which contains any false statement relating to the consideration for such transfer or charge, or relating to the person or persons for whose use or benefit it is really intended to operate, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

424. Dishonest or fraudulent removal or concealment of property.—Whoever dishonestly or fraudulently conceals or removes any property of himself or any other person, or dishonestly or fraudulently assists in the concealment or removal thereof, or dishonestly releases any demand or claim to which he is entitled, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

Of mischief

425. Mischief.—Whoever with intent to cause, or knowing that he is likely to cause, wrongful loss or damage to the public or to any person, causes the destruction of any property, or any such change in any property or in the situation thereof as destroys or diminishes its value or utility, or affects it injuriously, commits “mischief”.

Explanation 1.—It is not essential to the offence of mischief that the offender should intend to cause loss or damage to the owner of the property injured or destroyed. It is sufficient if he intends to cause, or knows that he is likely to cause, wrongful loss or damage to any person by injuring any property, whether it belongs to that person or not.

Explanation 2.—Mischief may be committed by an act affecting property belonging to the person who commits the act, or to that person and others jointly.

Illustrations

- (a) A voluntarily burns a valuable security belonging to Z intending to cause wrongful loss to Z. A has committed mischief.
- (b) A introduces water in to an ice-house belonging to Z and thus causes the ice to melt, intending wrongful loss to Z. A has committed mischief.
- (c) A voluntarily throws into a river a ring belonging to Z, with the intention of thereby causing wrongful loss to Z. A has committed mischief.
- (d) A, knowing that his effects are about to be taken in execution in order to satisfy a debt due from him to Z, destroys those effects, with the intention of thereby preventing Z from obtaining satisfaction of the debt, and of thus causing damage to Z. A has committed mischief.
- (e) A having insured a ship, voluntarily causes the same to be cast away, with the intention of causing damage to the underwriters. A has committed mischief.
- (f) A causes a ship to be cast away, intending thereby to cause damage to Z who has lent money on bottomry on the ship. A has committed mischief.
- (g) A, having joint property with Z in a horse, shoots the horse, intending thereby to cause wrongful loss to Z. A has committed mischief.
- (h) A causes cattle to enter upon a field belonging to Z, intending to cause and knowing that he is likely to cause damage to Z's crop. A has committed mischief.

426. Punishment for mischief.—Whoever commits mischief shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three months, or with fine, or with both.

427. Mischief causing damage to the amount of fifty rupees.—Whoever commits mischief and thereby causes loss or damage to the amount of fifty rupees or upwards, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

428. Mischief by killing or maiming animal of the value of ten rupees.—Whoever commits mischief by killing, poisoning, maiming or rendering useless any animal or animals of the value of the ten rupees or upwards, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

429. Mischief by killing or maiming cattle, etc., of any value or any animal of the value of fifty rupees.—Whoever commits mischief by killing, poisoning, maiming or rendering useless, any elephant, camel, horse, mule, buffalo, bull, cow or ox, whatever may be the value thereof, or any other animal of the value of fifty rupees or upwards, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, or with fine, or with both.

430. Mischief by injury to works of irrigation or by wrongfully diverting water.—Whoever commits mischief by doing any act which causes, or which he knows to be likely to cause, a diminution of the supply of water for agricultural purposes, or for food or drink for human beings or for animals which are property, or for cleanliness or for carrying on any manufacture, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, or with fine, or with both.

431. Mischief by injury to public road, bridge, river or channel.—Whoever commits mischief by doing any act which renders or which he knows to be likely to render any public road, bridge, navigable river or navigable channel, natural or artificial, impassable or less safe for travelling or conveying property, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, or with fine, or with both.

432. Mischief by causing inundation or obstruction to public drainage attended with damage.—Whoever commits mischief by doing any act which causes or which he knows to be likely to cause an inundation or an obstruction to any public drainage attended with injury or damage, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, or with fine, or with both.

433. Mischief by destroying, moving or rendering less useful a light-house or sea-mark.—Whoever commits mischief by destroying or moving any light-house or other light used as a sea-mark, or any sea-mark or buoy or other thing placed as a guide for navigators, or by any act which renders any such light-house, sea-mark, buoy or other such thing as aforesaid less useful as a guide for navigators, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or with fine, or with both.

434. Mischief by destroying or moving, etc., a land-mark fixed by public authority.—Whoever commits mischief by destroying or moving any land-mark fixed by the authority of a public servant, or by any act which renders such land-mark less useful as such, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

435. Mischief by fire or explosive substance with intent to cause damage to amount of one hundred or (in case of agricultural produce) ten rupees.—Whoever commits mischief by fire or any explosive substance intending to cause, or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby cause, damage to any property to the amount of one hundred rupees or upwards¹[or (where the property is agricultural produce) ten rupees or upwards], shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years and shall also be liable to fine.

436. Mischief by fire or explosive substance with intent to destroy house, etc.—Whoever commits mischief by fire or any explosive substance, intending to cause, or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby cause, the destruction of any building which is ordinarily used as a place of worship or as a human dwelling or as a place for the custody of property, shall be punished with²[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

437. Mischief with intent to destroy or make unsafe a decked vessel or one of twenty tons burden.—Whoever commits mischief to any decked vessel or any vessel of a burden of twenty tons or upwards, intending to destroy or render unsafe, or knowing it to be likely that he will thereby destroy or render unsafe, that vessel, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

438. Punishment for the mischief described in section 437 committed by fire or explosive substance.—Whoever commits, or attempts to commit, by fire or any explosive substance, such mischief as is described in the last preceding section, shall be punished with²[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

439. Punishment for intentionally running vessel aground or ashore with intent to commit theft, etc.—Whoever intentionally runs any vessel aground or ashore, intending to commit theft of any property contained therein or to dishonestly misappropriate any such property, or with intent that such theft or misappropriation of property may be committed, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

440. Mischief committed after preparation made for causing death or hurt.—Whoever commits mischief, having made preparation for causing to any person death, or hurt, or wrongful restraint, or fear of death, or of hurt, or of wrongful restraint, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Of criminal trespass

441. Criminal trespass.—Whoever enters into or upon property in the possession of another with intent to commit an offence or to intimidate, insult or annoy any person in possession of such property,

or having lawfully entered into or upon such property, unlawfully remains there with intent thereby to intimidate, insult or annoy any such person, or with intent to commit an offence,
is said to commit “criminal trespass”.

STATE AMENDMENT

Orissa

Amendment of section 441.—In the Indian Penal Code, 1860 (45 of 1860), for section 441, the following section shall be substituted, namely:—

“441.Criminal trespass.—Whoever enters into or upon property in possession of another with intent to commit an offence or to intimidate, insult or annoy any person in possession of such property,

1. Ins. by Act 8 of 1882, s. 10

2. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation forlife” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

Or having lawfully entered into or upon such property, unlawfully remains there with intent thereby to intimidate, insult or annoy any such person or with intent to commit an offence.

Or having lawfully entered into or upon such property, remains there with the intention of taking unauthorized possession or making unauthorized use of such property and fails to withdraw from such property or its possession or use, when called upon to do so by that another person by notice in writing, duly served on him,

Is said to commit criminal trespass."

[*Vide* Orissa Act 22 of 1986, s. 2]

442. House-trespass.—Whoever commits criminal trespass by entering into or remaining in any building, tent or vessel used as a human dwelling or any building used as a place for worship, or as a place for the custody of property, is said to commit "house-trespass".

Explanation.—The introduction of any part of the criminal trespasser's body is entering sufficient to constitute house-trespass.

443. Lurking house-trespass.—Whoever commits house-trespass having taken precautions to conceal such house-trespass from some person who has a right to exclude or eject the trespasser from the building, tent or vessel which is the subject of the trespass, is said to commit "lurking house-trespass".

444. Lurking house-trespass by night.—Whoever commits lurking house-trespass after sunset and before sunrise, is said to commit "lurking house-trespass by night".

445. House-breaking.—A person is said to commit "house-breaking" who commits house-trespass if he effects his entrance into the house or any part of it in any of the six ways hereinafter described; or if, being in the house or any part of it for the purpose of committing an offence, or having committed an offence therein, he quits the house or any part of it in any of such six ways, that is to say:—

First.—If he enters or quits through a passage made by himself, or by any abettor of the house-trespass, in order to the committing of the house-trespass.

Secondly.—If he enters or quits through any passage not intended by any person, other than himself or an abettor of the offence, for human entrance; or through any passage to which he has obtained access by scaling or climbing over any wall or building.

Thirdly.—If he enters or quits through any passage which he or any abettor of the house-trespass has opened, in order to the committing of the house-trespass by any means by which that passage was not intended by the occupier of the house to be opened.

Fourthly.—If he enters or quits by opening any lock in order to the committing of the house-trespass, or in order to the quitting of the house after a house-trespass.

Fifthly.—If he effects his entrance or departure by using criminal force or committing an assault, or by threatening any person with assault.

Sixthly.—If he enters or quits by any passage which he knows to have been fastened against such entrance or departure, and to have been unfastened by himself or by an abettor of the house-trespass.

Explanation.—Any out-house or building occupied with a house, and between which and such house there is an immediate internal communication, is part of the house within the meaning of this section.

Illustrations

(a) A commits house-trespass by making a hole through the wall of Z's house, and putting his hand through the aperture. This is house-breaking.

(b) A commits house-trespass by creeping into a ship at a port-hole between decks. This is house-breaking.

(c) A commits house-trespass by entering Z's house through a window. This is house-breaking.

(d) A commits house-trespass by entering Z's house through the door, having opened a door which was fastened. This is house-breaking.

(e) A commits house-trespass by entering Z's house through the door, having lifted a latch by putting a wire through a hole in the door. This is house-breaking.

(f) A finds the key of Z's house door, which Z had lost, and commits house-trespass by entering Z's house, having opened the door with that key. This is house-breaking.

(g) Z is standing in his doorway. A forces a passage by knocking Z down, and commits house-trespass by entering the house. This is house-breaking.

(h) Z, the door-keeper of Y, is standing in Y's doorway. A commits house-trespass by entering the house, having deterred Z from opposing him by threatening to beat him. This is house-breaking.

446. House-breaking by night.—Whoever commits house-breaking after sunset and before sunrise, is said to commit "house-breaking by night".

447. Punishment for criminal trespass.—Whoever commits criminal trespass shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three months, or with fine which may extend to five hundred rupees, or with both.

448. Punishment for house-trespass.—Whoever commits house-trespass shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine which may extend to one thousand rupees, or with both.

449. House-trespass in order to commit offence punishable with death.—Whoever commits house-trespass in order to the committing of any offence punishable with death, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with rigorous imprisonment for a term not exceeding ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

450. House-trespass in order to commit offence punishable with imprisonment for life.—Whoever commits house-trespass in order to the committing of any offence punishable with ¹[imprisonment for life], shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term not exceeding ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

451. House-trespass in order to commit offence punishable with imprisonment.—Whoever commits house-trespass in order to the committing of any offence punishable with imprisonment, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, and shall also be liable to fine; and if the offence intended to be committed is theft, the term of the imprisonment may be extended to seven years.

452. House-trespass alter preparation for hurt, assault or wrongful restraint.—Whoever commits house-trespass, having made preparation for causing hurt to any person or for assaulting any person, or for wrongfully restraining any person, or for putting any person in fear of hurt, or of assault, or of wrongful restraint, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

453. Punishment for lurking house-trespass or house-breaking.—Whoever commits lurking house-trespass or house-breaking, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, and shall also be liable to fine.

454. Lurking house-trespass or house-breaking in order to commit offence punishable with imprisonment.—Whoever commits lurking house-trespass or house-breaking, in order to the committing of any offence punishable with imprisonment, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine; and if the offence intended to be committed is theft, the term of the imprisonment may be extended to ten years.

455. Lurking house-trespass or house-breaking after preparation for hurt, assault or wrongful restraint.—Whoever commits lurking house-trespass, or house-breaking, having made preparation for causing hurt to any person, or for assaulting any person, or for wrongfully restraining any person, or for putting any person in fear of hurt or of assault or of wrongful restraint, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description or a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

456. Punishment for lurking house-trespass or house-breaking by night.—Whoever commits lurking house-trespass by night, or house-breaking by night, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

457. Lurking house-trespass or house-breaking by night in order to commit offence punishable with imprisonment.—Whoever commits lurking house-trespass by night, or house-breaking by night, in order to the committing of any offence punishable with imprisonment, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, and shall also be liable to

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for "transportation for life" (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

fine; and, if the offence intended to be committed is theft, the term of the imprisonment may be extended to fourteen years.

458. Lurking house-trespass or house-breaking by night after preparation for hurt, assault, or wrongful restraint.—Whoever commits lurking house-trespass by night, or house-breaking by night, having made preparation for causing hurt to any person or for assaulting any person, or for wrongfully restraining any person, or for putting any person in fear of hurt, or of assault, or of wrongful restraint, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to fourteen years, and shall also be liable to fine.

459. Grievous hurt caused whilst committing lurking house-trespass or house-breaking.—Whoever, whilst committing lurking house-trespass or house-breaking, causes grievous hurt to any person or attempts to cause death or grievous hurt to any person, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

460. All persons jointly concerned in lurking house-trespass or house-breaking by night punishable where death or grievous hurt caused by one of them.—If, at the time of the committing of lurking house-trespass by night or house-breaking by night, any person guilty of such offence shall voluntarily cause or attempt to cause death or grievous hurt to any person, every person jointly concerned in committing such lurking house-trespass by night or house-breaking by night, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

461. Dishonestly breaking open receptacle containing property.—Whoever dishonestly or with intent to commit mischief, breaks open or unfastens any closed receptacle which contains or which he believes to contain property, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

462. Punishment for same offence when committed by person entrusted with custody.—Whoever, being entrusted with any closed receptacle which contains or which he believes to contain property, without having authority to open the same, dishonestly, or with intent to commit mischief, breaks open or unfastens that receptacle, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

CHAPTER XVIII

OF OFFENCES RELATING TO DOCUMENTS AND TO^{2***} PROPERTY MARKS

463. Forgery.—³[Whoever makes any false document or false electronic record or part of a document or electronic record, with intent to cause damage or injury], to the public or to any person, or to support any claim or title, or to cause any person to part with property, or to enter into any express or implied contract, or with intent to commit fraud or that fraud may be committed, commits forgery.

464. Making a false document.—³[A person is said to make a false document or false electronic record—

First.—Who dishonestly or fraudulently—

- (a) makes, signs, seals or executes a document or part of a document;
- (b) makes or transmits any electronic record or part of any electronic record;
- (c) affixes any ⁴[electronic signature] on any electronic record;
- (d) makes any mark denoting the execution of a document or the authenticity of the ⁴[electronic signature],

with the intention of causing it to be believed that such document or part of document, electronic record or ⁴[electronic signature] was made, signed, sealed, executed, transmitted or affixed by or by the authority of a person by whom or by whose authority he knows that it was not made, signed, sealed, executed or affixed; or

Secondly.—Who without lawful authority, dishonestly or fraudulently, by cancellation or otherwise, alters a document or an electronic record in any material part thereof, after it has been made, executed or affixed with ⁴[electronic signature] either by himself or by any other person, whether such person be living or dead at the time of such alteration; or

Thirdly.—Who dishonestly or fraudulently causes any person to sign, seal, execute or alter a document or an electronic record or to affix his ⁴[electronic signature] on any electronic record knowing that such person by reason of unsoundness of mind

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

2. The words “TRADE OR” omitted by Act 43 of 1958, s. 135 and Sch. (w.e.f. 25-11-1959).

3. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for certain words (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

4. Subs. by Act 10 of 2009, s. 51, for “digital signature” (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

or intoxication cannot, or that by reason of deception practised upon him, he does not know the contents of the document or electronic record or the nature of the alteration.]

Illustrations

(a) A has a letter of credit upon B for rupees 10,000, written by Z. A, in order to defraud B, adds cipher to the 10,000, and makes the sum 1,00,000 intending that it may be believed by B that Z so wrote the letter. A has committed forgery.

(b) A, without Z's authority, affixes Z's seal to a document purporting to be a conveyance of an estate from Z to A, with the intention of selling the estate to B and thereby of obtaining from B the purchase-money. A has committed forgery.

(c) A picks up a cheque on a banker signed by B, payable to bearer, but without any sum having been inserted in the cheque. A fraudulently fills up the cheque by inserting the sum of ten thousand rupees. A commits forgery.

(d) A leaves with B, his agent, a cheque on a banker, signed by A, without inserting the sum payable and authorizes B to fill up the cheque by inserting a sum not exceeding ten thousand rupees for the purpose of making certain payments. B fraudulently fills up the cheque by inserting the sum of twenty thousand rupees. B commits forgery.

(e) A draws a bill of exchange on himself in the name of B without B's authority, intending to discount it as a genuine bill with a banker and intending to take up the bill on its maturity. Here, as A draws the bill with intent to deceive the banker by leading him to suppose that he had the security of B, and thereby to discount the bill, A is guilty of forgery.

(f) Z's will contains these words—"I direct that all my remaining property be equally divided between A, B and C." A dishonestly scratches out B's name, intending that it may be believed that the whole was left to himself and C. A has committed forgery.

(g) A endorses a Government promissory note and makes it payable to Z or his order by writing on the bill the words "Pay to Z or his order" and signing the endorsement. B dishonestly erases the words "Pay to Z or his order", and thereby converts the special endorsement into a blank endorsement. B commits forgery.

(h) A sells and conveys an estate to Z. A afterwards, in order to defraud Z of his estate, executes a conveyance of the same estate to B, dated six months earlier than the date of the conveyance to Z, intending it to be believed that he had conveyed the estate to B before he conveyed it to Z. A has committed forgery.

(i) Z dictates his will to A. A intentionally writes down a different legatee named by Z, and by representing to Z that he has prepared the will according to his instructions, induces Z to sign the will. A has committed forgery.

(j) A writes a letter and signs it with B's name without B's authority, certifying that A is a man of good character and in distressed circumstances from unforeseen misfortune, intending by means of such letter to obtain alms from Z and other persons. Here, as A made a false document in order to induce Z to part with property, A has committed forgery.

(k) A without B's authority writes a letter and signs it in B's name certifying to A's character, intending thereby to obtain employment under Z. A has committed forgery inasmuch as he intended to deceive Z by the forged certificate, and thereby to induce Z to enter into an express or implied contract for service.

Explanation 1.—A man's signature of his own name may amount to forgery.

Illustrations

(a) A signs his own name to a bill of exchange, intending that it may be believed that the bill was drawn by another person of the same name. A has committed forgery.

(b) A writes the word "accepted" on a piece of paper and signs it with Z's name, in order that B may afterwards write on the paper a bill of exchange drawn by B upon Z, and negotiate the bill as though it had been accepted by Z. A is guilty of forgery; and if B, knowing the fact, draws the bill upon the paper pursuant to A's intention, B is also guilty of forgery.

(c) A picks up a bill of exchange payable to the order of a different person of the same name. A endorses the bill in his own name, intending to cause it to be believed that it was endorsed by the person to whose order it was payable; here A has committed forgery.

(d) A purchases an estate sold under execution of a decree against B. B, after the seizure of the estate, in collusion with Z, executes a lease of the estate, to Z at a nominal rent and for a long period and dates the lease six months prior to the seizure, with intent to defraud A, and to cause it to be believed that the lease was granted before the seizure. B, though he executes the lease in his own name, commits forgery by antedating it.

(e) A, a trader, in anticipation of insolvency, lodges effects with B for A's benefit, and with intent to defraud his creditors; and in order to give a colour to the transaction, writes a promissory note binding himself to pay to B a sum for value received, and antedates the note, intending that it may be believed to have been made before A was on the point of insolvency. A has committed forgery under the first head of the definition.

Explanation 2.—The making of a false document in the name of a fictitious person, intending it to be believed that the document was made by a real person, or in the name of a deceased person, intending it to be believed that the document was made by the person in his lifetime, may amount to forgery.

Illustration

A draws a bill of exchange upon a fictitious person, and fraudulently accepts the bill in the name of such fictitious person with intent to negotiate it. A commits forgery.

¹[*Explanation 3.*—For the purposes of this section, the expression "affixing ²[electronic signature]" shall have the meaning assigned to it in clause (d) of sub-section (1) of section 2 of the Information Technology Act, 2000 (21 of 2000).]

465. Punishment for forgery.—Whoever commits forgery shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

466. Forgery of record of Court or of public register, etc.—³[Whoever forges a document or an electronic record], purporting to be a record or proceeding of or in a Court of Justice, or a register of birth, baptism, marriage or burial, or a register kept by a public servant as such, or a certificate or document purporting to be made by a public servant in his official capacity, or an authority to institute or defend a suit, or to take any proceedings therein, or to confess judgment, or a power of attorney, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

⁴[*Explanation.*—For the purposes of this section, "register" includes any list, data or record of any entries maintained in the electronic form as defined in clause (r) of sub-section (1) of section 2 of the Information Technology Act, 2000 (21 of 2000).]

467. Forgery of valuable security, will, etc.—Whoever forges a document which purports to be a valuable security or a will, or an authority to adopt a son, or which purports to give authority to any person to make or transfer any valuable security, or to receive the principal, interest or dividends thereon, or to receive or deliver any money, movable property, or valuable security, or any document purporting to be an acquittance or receipt acknowledging the payment of money, or an acquittance or receipt for the delivery of any movable property or valuable security, shall be punished with ⁴[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

1. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch. (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

2. Subs. by Act 10 of 2009, s. 51, for "digital signature" (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

3. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for certain words (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

4. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for "transportation for life" (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

468. Forgery for purpose of cheating.—Whoever commits forgery, intending that the ¹[document or electronic record forged] shall be used for the purpose of cheating, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

469. Forgery for purpose of harming reputation.—Whoever commits forgery, ²[intending that the document or electronic record forged] shall harm the reputation of any party, or knowing that it is likely to be used for that purpose, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

470. Forged document.—A false ³[document or electronic record] made wholly or in part by forgery is designated “a forged ³[document or electronic record]”.

471. Using as genuine a forged document or electronic record.—Whoever fraudulently or dishonestly uses as genuine any ³[document or electronic record] which he knows or has reason to believe to be a forged ³[document or electronic record], shall be punished in the same manner as if he had forged such ³[document or electronic record].

472. Making or possessing counterfeit seal, etc., with intent to commit forgery punishable under section 467.—Whoever makes or counterfeits any seal, plate or other instrument for making an impression, intending that the same shall be used for the purpose of committing any forgery which would be punishable under section 467 of this Code, or, with such intent, has in his possession any such seal, plate or other instrument, knowing the same to be counterfeit, shall be punished with ⁴[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

473. Making or possessing counterfeit seal, etc., with intent to commit forgery punishable otherwise.—Whoever makes or counterfeits any seal, plate or other instrument for making an impression, intending that the same shall be used for the purpose of committing any forgery which would be punishable under any section of this Chapter other than section 467, or, with such intent, has in his possession any such seal, plate or other instrument, knowing the same to be counterfeit, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

474. Having possession of document described in section 466 or 467, knowing it to be forged and intending to use it genuine.—⁵[Whoever has in his possession any document or electronic record, knowing the same to be forged and intending that the same shall fraudulently or dishonestly be used as genuine, shall, if the document or electronic record is one of the description mentioned in section 466 of this Code], be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine; and if the document is one of the description mentioned in section 467, shall be punished with ⁴[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description, for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

475. Counterfeiting device or mark used for authenticating documents described in section 467, or possessing counterfeit marked material.—Whoever counterfeits upon, or in the substance of, any material, any device or mark used for the purpose of authenticating any document described in section 467 of this Code, intending that such device or mark shall be used for the purpose of giving the appearance of authenticity to any document then forged or thereafter to be forged on such material, or who, with such intent, has in his possession any material upon or in the substance of which any such device or mark has been counterfeited, shall be punished with ⁴[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

476. Counterfeiting device or mark used for authenticating documents other than those described in section 467, or possessing counterfeit marked material.—Whoever counterfeits upon, or in the substance of, any material, any device or mark used for the purpose of authenticating ⁶[any document or electronic record] other than the documents described in section 467 of this Code, intending that such device or mark shall be used for the purpose of giving the appearance of authenticity to any document then forged or thereafter to be forged on such material, or who with such intent, has in his possession any material upon or in the substance of which any such device or mark has been counterfeited, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

1. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., “document forged” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

2. Subs. by s. 91, and the First Sch., *ibid.*, “intending that the document forged” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

3. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for “document” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

5. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

4. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for certain words (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

6. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for “any document” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

477. Fraudulent cancellation, destruction, etc., of will, authority to adopt, or valuable security.—Whoever fraudulently or dishonestly, or with intent to cause damage or injury to the public or to any person, cancels, destroys or defaces, or attempts to cancel, destroy or deface, or secretes or attempts to secrete any document which is or purports to be a will, or an authority to adopt a son, or any valuable security, or commits mischief in respect of such document, shall be punished with¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

²[477A. Falsification of accounts.]—Whoever, being a clerk, officer or servant, or employed or acting in the capacity of a clerk, officer or servant, wilfully, and with intent to defraud, destroys, alters, mutilates or falsifies any³[book, electronic record, paper, writing] valuable security or account which belongs to or is in the possession of his employer, or has been received by him for or on behalf of his employer, or wilfully, and with intent to defraud, makes or abets the making of any false entry in, or omits or alters or abets the omission or alteration of any material particular from or in, any such⁵[book, electronic record, paper, writing] valuable security or account, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or with fine, or with both.

Explanation.—It shall be sufficient in any charge under this section to allege a general intent to defraud without naming any particular person intended to be defrauded or specifying any particular sum of money intended to be the subject of the fraud, or any particular day on which the offence was committed.]

⁴[*Of* ⁵*** *property and other marks*

478. [Trade Mark.] Rep. by the Trade and Merchandise Marks Act, 1958 (43 of 1958), s. 135 and Sch. (w.e.f. 25-11-1959).

479. Property mark.—A mark used for denoting that movable property belongs to a particular person is called a property mark.

480. [Using a false trade mark.] Rep. by the Trade and Merchandise Marks Act, 1958 (43 of 1958), s. 135 and Sch. (w.e.f. 25- 11-1959).

481. Using a false property mark.—Whoever marks any movable property or goods or any case, package or other receptacle containing movable property or goods, or uses any case, package or other receptacle having any mark thereon, in a manner reasonably calculated to cause it to be believed that the property or goods so marked, or any property or goods contained in any such receptacle so marked, belong to a person to whom they do not belong, is said to use a false property mark.

482. Punishment for using a false property mark.—Whoever uses⁶*** any false property mark shall, unless he proves that he acted without intent to defraud, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

483. Counterfeiting a property mark used by another.—Whoever counterfeits any⁷*** property mark used by any other person shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

484. Counterfeiting a mark used by a public servant.—Whoever counterfeits any property mark used by a public servant, or any mark used by a public servant to denote that any property has been manufactured by a particular person or at a particular time or place, or that the property is of a particular quality or has passed through a particular office, or that it is entitled to any exemption, or uses as genuine any such mark knowing the same to be counterfeit, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, and shall also be liable to fine.

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

2. Ins. by Act 3 of 1895, s. 4.

3. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 91 and the First Sch., for “book, paper, writing” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

4. Subs. by Act 4 of 1889, s. 3, for the original heading and ss. 478 to 489.

5. The word “*Trade*” omitted by Act 43 of 1958, s. 135 and the Sch. (w.e.f. 25-11-1959).

6. The words “any false trade mark or” omitted by s. 135 and the Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 25-11-1959).

7. The words “trade mark or” omitted by s. 135 and the Sch., *ibid.* (w.e.f. 25-11-1959).

¹[**485. Making or possession of any instrument for counterfeiting a property mark.**—Whoever makes or has in his possession any die, plate or other instrument for the purpose of counterfeiting a property mark, or has in his possession a property mark for the purpose of denoting that any goods belong to a person to whom they do not belong, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.]

486. Selling goods marked with a counterfeit property mark.—²[Whoever sells, or exposes, or has in possession for sale, any goods or things with a counterfeit property mark] affixed to or impressed upon the same or to or upon any case, package or other receptacle in which such goods are contained, shall, unless he proves

(a) that, having taken all reasonable precautions against committing an offence against this section, he had at the time of the commission of the alleged offence no reason to suspect the genuineness of the mark, and

(b) that, on demand made by or on behalf of the prosecutor, he gave all the information in his power with respect to the persons from whom he obtained such goods or things, or

(c) that otherwise he had acted innocently,

be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

487. Making a false mark upon any receptacle containing goods.—Whoever makes any false mark upon any case, package or other receptacle containing goods, in a manner reasonably calculated to cause any public servant or any other person to believe that such receptacle contains goods which it does not contain or that it does not contain goods which it does contain, or that the goods contained in such receptacle are of a nature or quality different from the real nature or quality thereof, shall, unless he proves that he acted without intent to defraud, be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

488. Punishment for making use of any such false mark.—Whoever makes use of any such false mark in any manner prohibited by the last foregoing section shall, unless he proves that he acted without intent to defraud, be punished as if he had committed an offence against that section.

489. Tampering with property mark with intent to cause injury.—Whoever removes, destroys, defaces or adds to any property mark, intending or knowing it to be likely that he may thereby cause injury to any person, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.]

³[*Of currency-notes and bank-notes*

489A. Counterfeiting currency-notes or bank-notes.—Whoever counterfeits, or knowingly performs any part of the process of counterfeiting, any currency-note or bank-note, shall be punished with ⁴[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this section and of sections 489B, ⁵[489C, 489D and 489E], the expression “bank-note” means a promissory note or engagement for the payment of money to bearer on demand issued by any person carrying on the business of banking in any part of the world, or issued by or under the authority of any State or Sovereign Power, and intended to be used as equivalent to, or as a substitute for money.

489B. Using as genuine, forged or counterfeit currency-notes or bank-notes.—Whoever sells to, or buys or receives from, any other person, or otherwise traffics in or uses as genuine, any forged or counterfeit currency-note or bank-note, knowing or having reason to believe the same to be forged or counterfeit, shall be punished with ⁴[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

1. Subs. by Act 43 of 1958, s. 135 and the Sch., for s. 485 (w.e.f. 25-11-1959).

2. Subs. by s. 135 and the Sch., *ibid.*, for certain words (w.e.f. 25-11-1959).

3. Added by Act 12 of 1899, s. 2.

4. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

5. Subs. by Act 35 of 1950, s. 3 and the Second Sch., for “489C and 489D”.

489C. Possession of forged or counterfeit currency-notes or bank-notes.—Whoever has in his possession any forged or counterfeit currency-note or bank-note, knowing or having reason to believe the same to be forged or counterfeit and intending to use the same as genuine or that it may be used as genuine, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or with fine, or with both.

489D. Making or possessing instruments or materials for forging or counterfeiting currency notes or bank-notes.—Whoever makes, or performs any part of the process of making, or buys or sells or disposes of, or has in his possession, any machinery, instrument or material for the purpose of being used, or knowing or having reason to believe that it is intended to be used, for forging or counterfeiting any currency-note or bank-note, shall be punished with ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.]

²[**489E. Making or using documents resembling currency-notes or bank-notes.**—(1) Whoever makes, or causes to be made, or uses for any purpose whatsoever, or delivers to any person, any document purporting to be, or in any way resembling, or so nearly resembling as to be calculated to deceive, any currency-note or bank-note shall be punished with fine which may extend to one hundred rupees.

(2) If any person, whose name appears on a document the making of which is an offence under sub-section (1), refuses, without lawful excuse, to disclose to a police-officer on being so required the name and address of the person by whom it was printed or otherwise made, he shall be punished with fine which may extend to two hundred rupees.

(3) Where the name of any person appears on any document in respect of which any person is charged with an offence under sub-section (1) or on any other document used or distributed in connection with that document it may, until the contrary is proved, be presumed that that person caused the document to be made.]

CHAPTER XIX

OF THE CRIMINAL BREACH OF CONTRACTS OF SERVICE

490. [*Breach of contract of service during voyage or journey.*] Rep. by the Workmen's Breach of Contract (Repealing) Act, 1925 (3 of 1925), s. 2 and Sch.

491. Breach of contract to attend on and supply wants of helpless person.—Whoever, being bound by a lawful contract to attend on or to supply the wants of any person who, by reason of youth, or of unsoundness of mind, or of a disease or bodily weakness, is helpless or incapable of providing for his own safety or of supplying his own wants, voluntarily omits so to do, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to three months, or with fine which may extend to two hundred rupees, or with both.

492. [*Breach of contract to serve at distant place to which servant is conveyed at master's expense.*] Rep. by the Workmen's Breach of Contract (Repealing) Act, 1925 (3 of 1925), s. 2 and Sch.

CHAPTER XX

OF OFFENCES RELATING TO MARRIAGE

493. Cohabitation caused by a man deceitfully inducing a belief of lawful marriage.—Every man who by deceit causes any woman who is not lawfully married to him to believe that she is lawfully married to him and to cohabit or have sexual intercourse with him in that belief, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

494. Marrying again during lifetime of husband or wife.—Whoever, having a husband or wife living, marries in any case in which such marriage is void by reason of its taking place during the life of such husband or wife, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for "transportation for life" (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

2. Ins. by Act 6 of 1943, s. 2.

Exception.—This section does not extend to any person whose marriage with such husband or wife has been declared void by a Court of competent jurisdiction,

nor to any person who contracts a marriage during the life of a former husband or wife, if such husband or wife, at the time of the subsequent marriage, shall have been continually absent from such person for the space of seven years, and shall not have been heard of by such person as being alive within that time provided the person contracting such subsequent marriage shall, before such marriage takes place, inform the person with whom such marriage is contracted of the real state of facts so far as the same are within his or her knowledge.

495. Same offence with concealment of former marriage from person with whom subsequent marriage is contracted.—Whoever commits the offence defined in the last preceding section having concealed from the person with whom the subsequent marriage is contracted, the fact of the former marriage, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to ten years, and shall also be liable to fine.

496. Marriage ceremony fraudulently gone through without lawful marriage.—Whoever, dishonestly or with a fraudulent intention, goes through the ceremony of being married, knowing that he is not thereby lawfully married, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, and shall also be liable to fine.

497. Adultery.—Whoever has sexual intercourse with a person who is and whom he knows or has reason to believe to be the wife of another man, without the consent or connivance of that man, such sexual intercourse not amounting to the offence of rape, is guilty of the offence of adultery, and shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to five years, or with fine, or with both. In such case the wife shall not be punishable as an abettor.

498. Enticing or taking away or detaining with criminal intent a married woman.—Whoever takes or entices away any woman who is and whom he knows or has reason to believe to be the wife of any other man, from that man, or from any person having the care of her on behalf of that man, with intent that she may have illicit intercourse with any person, or conceals or detains with that intent any such woman, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

¹[CHAPTER XXA

OF CRUELTY BY HUSBAND OR RELATIVES OF HUSBAND

498A. Husband or relative of husband of a woman subjecting her to cruelty.—Whoever, being the husband or the relative of the husband of a woman, subjects such woman to cruelty shall be punished with imprisonment for a term which may extend to three years and shall also be liable to fine.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this section, “cruelty” means—

(a) any wilful conduct which is of such a nature as is likely to drive the woman to commit suicide or to cause grave injury or danger to life, limb or health (whether mental or physical) of the woman; or

(b) harassment of the woman where such harassment is with a view to coercing her or any person related to her to meet any unlawful demand for any property or valuable security or is on account of failure by her or any person related to her to meet such demand.]

CHAPTER XXI

OF DEFAMATION

499. Defamation.—Whoever, by words either spoken or intended to be read, or by signs or by visible representations, makes or publishes any imputation concerning any person intending to harm, or knowing or having reason to believe that such imputation will harm, the reputation of such person, is said, except in the cases hereinafter excepted, to defame that person.

1. Ins. by Act 46 of 1983, s. 2 (w.e.f. 25-12-1983).

Explanation 1.—It may amount to defamation to impute anything to a deceased person, if the imputation would harm the reputation of that person if living, and is intended to be hurtful to the feelings of his family or other near relatives.

Explanation 2.—It may amount to defamation to make an imputation concerning a company or an association or collection of persons as such.

Explanation 3.—An imputation in the form of an alternative or expressed ironically, may amount to defamation.

Explanation 4.—No imputation is said to harm a person's reputation, unless that imputation directly or indirectly, in the estimation of others, lowers the moral or intellectual character of that person, or lowers the character of that person in respect of his caste or of his calling, or lowers the credit of that person, or causes it to be believed that the body of that person is in a loathsome state, or in a state generally considered as disgraceful.

Illustrations

(a) A says—"Z is an honest man; he never stole B's watch"; intending to cause it to be believed that Z did steal B's watch. This is defamation, unless it fall within one of the exceptions.

(b) A is asked who stole B's watch. A points to Z, intending to cause it to be believed that Z stole B's watch. This is defamation, unless it fall within one of the exceptions.

(c) A draws a picture of Z running away with B's watch, intending it to be believed that Z stole B's watch. This is defamation, unless it fall within one of the exceptions.

First Exception.—Imputation of truth which public good requires to be made or published.—It is not defamation to impute anything which is true concerning any person, if it be for the public good that the imputation should be made or published. Whether or not it is for the public good is a question of fact.

Second Exception.—Public conduct of public servants.—It is not defamation to express in good faith any opinion whatever respecting the conduct of a public servant in the discharge of his public functions, or respecting his character, so far as his character appears in that conduct, and no further.

Third Exception.—Conduct of any person touching any public question.—It is not defamation to express in good faith any opinion whatever respecting the conduct of any person touching any public question, and respecting his character, so far as his character appears in that conduct, and no further.

Illustration

It is not defamation in A to express in good faith any opinion whatever respecting Z's conduct in petitioning Government on a public question, in signing a requisition for a meeting on a public question, in presiding or attending at such meeting, in forming or joining any society which invites the public support, in voting or canvassing for a particular candidate for any situation in the efficient discharge of the duties of which the public is interested.

Fourth Exception.—Publication of reports of proceedings of courts.—It is not defamation to publish substantially true report of the proceedings of a Court of Justice, or of the result of any such proceedings.

Explanation.—A Justice of the Peace or other officer holding an enquiry in open Court preliminary to a trial in a Court of Justice, is a Court within the meaning of the above section.

Fifth Exception.—Merits of case decided in Court or conduct of witnesses and others concerned.—It is not defamation to express in good faith any opinion whatever respecting the merits of any case, civil or criminal, which has been decided by a Court of Justice, or respecting the conduct of any person as a party, witness or agent, in any such case, or respecting the character of such person, as far as his character appears in that conduct, and no further.

Illustrations

(a) A says—"I think Z's evidence on that trial is so contradictory that he must be stupid or dishonest." A is within this exception if he says this in good faith, inasmuch as the opinion which he expresses respects Z's character as it appears in Z's conduct as a witness, and no farther.

(b) But if A says—"I do not believe what Z asserted at that trial because I know him to be a man without veracity"; A is not within this exception, inasmuch as the opinion which express of Z's character, is an opinion not founded on Z's conduct as a witness.

Sixth Exception.—Merits of public performance.—It is not defamation to express in good faith any opinion respecting the merits of any performance which its author has submitted to the judgment of the

public, or respecting the character of the author so far as his character appears in such performance, and no further.

Explanation.—A performance may be submitted to the judgment of the public expressly or by acts on the part of the author which imply such submission to the judgment of the public.

Illustrations

(a) A person who publishes a book, submits that book to the judgment of the public.

(b) A person who makes a speech in public, submits that speech to the judgment of the public.

(c) An actor or singer who appears on a public stage, submits his acting or singing to the judgment of the public.

(d) A says of a book published by Z—"Z's book is foolish; Z must be a weak man. Z's book is indecent; Z must be a man of impure mind". A is within the exception, if he says this in good faith, inasmuch as the opinion which he expresses of Z respects Z's character only so far as it appears in Z's book, and no further.

(e) But if A says "I am not surprised that Z's book is foolish and indecent, for he is a weak man and a libertine". A is not within this exception, in as much as the opinion which he expresses of Z's character is an opinion not founded on Z's book.

Seventh Exception.—Censure passed in good faith by person having lawful authority over another.—It is not defamation in a person having over another any authority, either conferred by law or arising out of a lawful contract made with that other, to pass in good faith any censure on the conduct of that other in matters to which such lawful authority relates.

Illustration

A Judge censuring in good faith the conduct of a witness, or of an officer of the Court; a head of a department censuring in good faith those who are under his orders, a parent censuring in good faith a child in the presence of other children; a schoolmaster, whose authority is derived from a parent, censuring in good faith a pupil in the presence of other pupils; a master censuring a servant in good faith for remissness in service; a banker censuring in good faith the cashier of his bank for the conduct of such cashier as such cashier- are within this exception.

Eighth Exception.—Accusation preferred in good faith to authorised person.—It is not defamation to prefer in good faith an accusation against any person to any of those who have lawful authority over that person with respect to the subject-matter of accusation.

Illustration

If A in good faith accuses Z before a Magistrate; if A in good faith complains of the conduct of Z, a servant, to Z's master; if A in good faith complains of the conduct of Z, a child, to Z's father-A is within this exception.

Ninth Exception.—Imputation made in good faith by person for protection of his or other's interests.—It is not defamation to make an imputation on the character of another provided that the imputation be made in good faith for the protection of the interests of the person making it, or of any other person, or for the public good.

Illustrations

(a) A, a shopkeeper, says to B, who manages his business—"Sell nothing to Z unless he pays you ready money, for I have no opinion of his honesty." A is within the exception, if he has made this imputation on Z in good faith for the protection of his own interests.

(b) A, a Magistrate, in making a report to his own superior officer, casts an imputation on the character of Z. Here, if the imputation is made in good faith, and for the public good, A is within the exception.

Tenth Exception.—Caution intended for good of person to whom conveyed or for public good.—It is not defamation to convey a caution, in good faith, to one person against another, provided that such caution be intended for the good of the person to whom it is conveyed, or of some person in whom that person is interested, or for the public good.

500. Punishment for defamation.—Whoever defames another shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

501. Printing or engraving matter known to be defamatory.—Whoever prints or engravings any matter, knowing or having good reason to believe that such matter is defamatory of any person, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

502. Sale of printed or engraved substance containing defamatory matter.—Whoever sells or offers for sale any printed or engraved substance containing defamatory matter, knowing that it contains

such matter, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

CHAPTER XXII

OF CRIMINAL INTIMIDATION, INSULT AND ANNOYANCE

503. Criminal intimidation.—Whoever threatens another with any injury to his person, reputation or property, or to the person or reputation of any one in whom that person is interested, with intent to cause alarm to that person, or to cause that person to do any act which he is not legally bound to do, or to omit to do any act which that person is legally entitled to do, as the means of avoiding the execution of such threat, commits criminal intimidation.

Explanation.—A threat to injure the reputation of any deceased person in whom the person threatened is interested, is within this section.

Illustration

A, for the purpose of inducing B to resist from prosecuting a civil suit, threatens to burn B's house. A is guilty of criminal intimidation.

504. Intentional insult with intent to provoke breach of the peace.—Whoever intentionally insults, and thereby gives provocation to any person, intending or knowing it to be likely that such provocation will cause him to break the public peace, or to commit any other offence, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both.

¹[505. Statements conduced to public mischief.—²[(I)] Whoever makes, publishes or circulates any statement, rumour or report,—

(a) with intent to cause, or which is likely to cause, any officer, soldier, ³[sailor or airman] in the Army, ⁴[Navy or Air Force] ⁵[of India] to mutiny or otherwise disregard or fail in his duty as such; or

(b) with intent to cause, or which is likely to cause, fear or alarm to the public, or to any section of the public whereby any person may be induced to commit an offence against the State or against the public tranquility; or

(c) with intent to incite, or which is likely to incite, any class or community of persons to commit any offence against any other class or community,

shall be punished with imprisonment which may extend to ⁶[three years], or with fine, or with both.

⁷[(2) Statements creating or promoting enmity, hatred or ill-will between classes.]—Whoever makes, publishes or circulates any statement or report containing rumour or alarming news with intent to create or promote, or which is likely to create or promote, on grounds of religion, race, place of birth, residence, language, caste or community or any other ground whatsoever, feelings of enmity, hatred or ill-will between different religious, racial, language or regional groups or castes or communities, shall be punished with imprisonment which may extend to three years, or with fine, or with both.

(3) Offence under sub-section (2) committed in place of worship, etc.—Whoever commits an offence specified in sub-section (2) in any place of worship or in any assembly engaged in the performance of religious worship or religious ceremonies, shall be punished with imprisonment which may extend to five years and shall also be liable to fine.]

Exception.—It does not amount to an offence, within the meaning of this section, when the person making, publishing or circulating any such statement, rumour or report, has reasonable grounds for

1. Subs. by Act 4 of 1898, s. 6, for s. 505.

2. Section 505 re-numbered as sub-section (1) of that section by Act 35 of 1969, s. 3 (w.e.f. 4-9-1969).

3. Subs. by Act 10 of 1927, s. 2 and the First Sch., for "or sailor".

4. Subs. by s. 2 and the First Sch., *ibid.*, for "or Navy".

5. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for "of Her Majesty or in the Imperial Service Troops" The words "or in the Royal Indian Marine" occurring after the word "Majesty" omitted by Act 35 of 1934, s. 2 and Sch.

6. Subs. by Act 41 of 1961, s. 4, for "two years" (w.e.f. 12-9-1961).

7. Ins. by Act 35 of 1969, s. 3 (w.e.f. 4-9-1969).

believing that such statement, rumour or report is true and makes, publishes or circulates it ²[in good faith and] without any such intent as aforesaid.]

506. Punishment for criminal intimidation.—Whoever commits the offence of criminal intimidation shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, or with fine, or with both;

If threat be to cause death or grievous hurt, etc.—and if the threat be to cause death or grievous hurt, or to cause the destruction of any property by fire, or to cause an offence punishable with death or ¹[imprisonment for life], or with imprisonment for a term which may extend to seven years, or to impute unchastity to a woman, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to seven years, or with fine, or with both.

507. Criminal intimidation by an anonymous communication.—Whoever commits the offence of criminal intimidation by an anonymous communication, or having taken precaution to conceal the name or abode of the person from whom the threat comes, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to two years, in addition to the punishment provided for the offence by the last preceding section.

508. Act caused by inducing person to believe that he will be rendered an object of the Divine displeasure.—Whoever voluntarily causes or attempts to cause any person to do anything which that person is not legally bound to do, or to omit to do anything which he is legally entitled to do, by inducing or attempting to induce that person to believe that he or any person in whom he is interested will become or will be rendered by some act of the offender an object of Divine displeasure if he does not do the thing which it is the object of the offender to cause him to do, or if he does the thing which it is the object of the offender to cause him to omit, shall be punished with imprisonment of either description for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both.

Illustrations

(a) A sits dhurna at Z's door with the intention of causing it to be believed that, by so sitting, he renders Z an object of Divine displeasure. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

(b) A threatens Z that, unless Z performs a certain act, A will kill one of A's own children, under such circumstances that the killing would be believed to render Z an object of Divine displeasure. A has committed the offence defined in this section.

509. Word, gesture or act intended to insult the modesty of a woman.—Whoever, intending to insult the modesty of any woman, utters any words, makes any sound or gesture, or exhibits any object, intending that such word or sound shall be heard, or that such gesture or object shall be seen, by such woman, or intrudes upon the privacy of such woman, ²[shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to three years, and also with fine].

STATE AMENDMENT

Chhattisgarh

After Section 509 of the Penal Code, the following shall be inserted, namely: —

509A. Sexual harassment by relative.—Whoever, being related to a woman through blood, adoption or marriage, and not being her husband, takes the advantage of his proximity and induces, seduces or threatens such woman with intent to insult her modesty by word, gesture or act shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment which shall not be less than one year but which may extend to five years and shall also liable to fine.

509B. Sexual harassment by electronic mode.—Whoever, by means of telecommunication device or by any other electronic mode including internet, creates, solicits or initiates the transmission of any comment, request, suggestion, proposal, image or other communication, which is obscene, lewd, lascivious, filthy or indecent with intent to harass or cause or having knowledge that it would harass or cause annoyance or mental agony to a woman shall be punished with rigorous imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than six months but may extend to two years and shall also be liable to fine.

[*Vide Chhattisgarh Act 25 of 2015, sec. 6.*]

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

2. Subs. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 10, for “shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one year, or with fine, or with both” (w.e.f. 3-2-2013).

510. Misconduct in public by a drunken person.—Whoever, in a state of intoxication, appears in any public place, or in any place which it is a trespass in him to enter, and there conducts himself in such a manner as to cause annoyance to any person, shall be punished with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to twenty-four hours, or with fine which may extend to ten rupees, or with both.

CHAPTER XXIII
OF ATTEMPTS TO COMMIT OFFENCES

511. Punishment for attempting to commit offences punishable with imprisonment for life or other imprisonment.—Whoever attempts to commit an offence punishable by this Code with ¹[imprisonment for life] or imprisonment, or to cause such an offence to be committed, and in such attempt does any act towards the commission of the offence, shall, where no express provision is made by this Code for the punishment of such attempt, be punished with ²[imprisonment of any description provided for the offence, for a term which may extend to one-half of the imprisonment for life or, as the case may be, one-half of the longest term of imprisonment provided for that offence], or with such fine as is provided for the offence, or with both.

Illustrations

(a) A makes an attempt to steal some jewels by breaking open a box, and finds after so opening the box, that there is no jewel in it. He has done an act towards the commission of theft, and therefore is guilty under this section.

(b) A makes an attempt to pick the pocket of Z by thrusting his hand into Z's pocket. A fails in the attempt in consequence of Z's having nothing in his pocket. A is guilty under this section.

1. Subs. by Act 26 of 1955, s. 117 and the Sch., for “transportation for life” (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).
2. Subs. by s. 117 and the Sch., *ibid.*, for certain words (w.e.f. 1-1-1956).

Criminal Procedure Code (CRPC) 1973

1. Short title, extent and commencement.-

(1) This Act may be called the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973.

(2) It extends to the whole of India except the State of Jammu and Kashmir:

Provided that the provisions of this Code, other than those relating to Chapters VIII, X and XI thereof, shall not apply-

(a)to the State of Nagaland,

(b)to the tribal areas,

but the concerned State Government may, by notification, apply such provisions or any of them to the whole or part of the State of Nagaland or such tribal areas, as the case may be, with such supplemental, incidental or consequential modifications, as may be specified in the notification.

Explanation.- In this section, “tribal areas” means the territories which immediately before the 21st day of January, 1972, were included in the tribal areas of Assam, as referred to in paragraph 20 of the Sixth Schedule to the Constitution, other than those within the local limits of the municipality of Shillong.

(3) It shall come into force on the 1st day of April, 1974.

2. Definitions.- In this Code, unless the context otherwise requires, –

(a) “bailable offence” means an offence which is shown as bailable in the First Schedule, or which is made bailable by any other law for the time being in force; and “non-bailable offence” means any other offence;

(b) “charge” includes any head of charge when the charge contains more heads than one;

(c) “cognizable offence” means an offence for which, and “cognizable case” means a case in which, a police officer may, in accordance with the First Schedule or under any other law for the time being in force, arrest without warrant;

(d) “complaint” means any allegation made orally or in writing to a Magistrate, with a view to his taking action under this Code, that some person, whether

known or unknown, has committed an offence, but does not include a police report.

Explanation.- A report made by a police officer in a case which discloses, after investigation, the commission of a non-cognizable offence shall be deemed to be a complaint; and the police officer by whom such report is made shall be deemed to be the complainant;

(e)"High Court" means, –

(i) in relation to any State, the High Court for that State;

(ii) in relation to a Union territory to which the jurisdiction of the High Court for a State has been extended by law, that High Court;

(iii) in relation to any other Union territory, the highest Court of criminal appeal for that territory other than the Supreme Court of India;

(f)"Indian" means the territories to which this Code extends;

(g)"inquiry" means every inquiry, other than a trial, conducted under this Code by a Magistrate or Court;

(h)"investigation" includes all the proceedings under this Code for the collection of evidence conducted by a police officer or by any person (other than a Magistrate) who is authorised by a Magistrate in this behalf;

(i)"judicial proceeding" includes any proceeding in the course of which evidence is or may be legally taken on oath;

(j)"local jurisdiction", in relation to a Court or Magistrate, means the local area within which the Court or Magistrate may exercise all or any of its or his powers under this Code;

(k)"metropolitan area" means the area declared, or deemed to be declared, under section 8, to be a metropolitan area;

(l)"non-cognizable offence" means an offence for which, and "non-cognizable case" means a case in which, a police officer has no authority to arrest without warrant;

(m)"notification" means a notification published in the Official Gazette;

(n)"offence" means any act or omission made punishable by any law for the time being in force and includes any act in respect of which a complaint may be made under section 20 of the Cattle-trespass Act, 1871(1 of 1871);

(o)"officer in charge of a police station" includes, when the officer in charge of the police station is absent from the station-house or unable from illness or other cause to perform his duties, the police officer present at the station-house who is next in rank to such officer and is above the rank of constable or, when the State Government so directs, any other police officer so present;

(p)"place" includes a house, building, tent, vehicle and vessel;

(q)"pleader", when used with reference to any proceeding in any Court, means a person authorised by or under any law for the time being in force, to practise in such Court, and includes any other person appointed with the permission of the Court to act in such proceeding;

(r) " police report" means a report forwarded by a police officer to a Magistrate under sub-section (2) of section 173;

(s)"police report" means a report forwarded by a police officer or specially by the State Government, to be a police station, and includes any local area specified by the State Government in this behalf;

(t)"prescribed" means prescribed by rules made under this Code;

(u)"Public Prosecutor" means any person appointed under section 24, and includes any person acting under the directions of a Public Prosecutor;

(v)"sub-division" means a sub-division of a district;

(w)"summons-case" means a case relating to an offence, and not being a warrant-case;

(x)"warrant-case" means a case relating to an offence punishable with death, imprisonment for life or imprisonment for a term exceeding two years;

(y)words and expressions used herein and not defined but defined in the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860) have the meanings respectively assigned to them in that Code.

3. Construction of references.-

(1) In this Code, -

(a) any reference, without any qualifying words, to a Magistrate, shall be construed, unless the context otherwise requires, –

(i)in relation to an area outside a metropolitan area, as a reference to a Judicial Magistrate;

(ii)in relation to a metropolitan area, as a reference to a Metropolitan Magistrate;

(b) any reference to a Magistrate of the second class shall, in relation to an area outside a metropolitan area, be construed as a reference to a Judicial Magistrate of the second class, and, in relation to a metropolitan area, as a reference to a Metropolitan Magistrate;

(c) any reference to a Magistrate of the first class shall, –

(i)in relation to a metropolitan area, be construed as a reference to a Metropolitan Magistrate exercising jurisdiction in that area,

(ii)in relation to any other area, be construed as a reference to a Judicial Magistrate of the first class exercising jurisdiction in that area;

(d) any reference to the Chief Judicial Magistrate shall, in relation to a metropolitan area, be construed as a reference to the Chief Metropolitan Magistrate exercising jurisdiction in that area.

(2) In this Code, unless the context otherwise requires, any reference to the Court of a Judicial Magistrate shall, in relation to a metropolitan area, be construed as a reference to the Court of the Metropolitan Magistrate for that area.

(3) Unless the context otherwise requires, any reference in any enactment passed before the commencement of this Code, -

(a) to a Magistrate of the first class, shall be construed as a reference to a Judicial Magistrate of the first class;

(b) to a Magistrate of the second class or of the third class, shall be construed as a reference to a Judicial Magistrate of the second class;

(c) to a Presidency Magistrate or Chief Presidency Magistrate, shall be construed as a reference, respectively, to a Metropolitan Magistrate or the Chief Metropolitan Magistrate;

(d) to any area which is included in a metropolitan area, as a reference to such metropolitan area, and any reference to a Magistrate of the first class or of the second class in relation to such area, shall be construed as reference to the Metropolitan Magistrate exercising jurisdiction in such area.

(4) Where, under any law, other than this Code, the function exercisable by a Magistrate relate to matters-

(a) which involve the appreciation or sifting of evidence or the formulation of any decision which exposes any person to any punishment or penalty or detention in custody pending investigation, inquiry or trial or would have the effect of sending him for trial before any Court, they shall, subject to the provisions of this Code, be exercisable by a Judicial Magistrate; or

(b) which are administrative or executive in nature, such as, the granting of a licence, the suspension or cancellation of a licence, sanctioning a prosecution or withdrawing from a prosecution, they shall, subject as aforesaid, be exercisable by an Executive Magistrate.

4.Trial of offences under the Indian Penal Code and other laws.-

(1) All offences under the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) shall be investigated, inquired into, tried, and otherwise dealt with according to the provisions hereinafter contained.

(2) All offences under any other law shall be investigated, inquired into, tried, and otherwise dealt with according to the same provisions, but subject to any enactment for the time being in force regulating the manner or place of investigating, inquiring into, trying or otherwise dealing with such offences.

5.Saving.— Nothing contained in this Code shall, in the absence of a specific provision to the contrary, affect any special or local law for the time being in force, or any special jurisdiction or power conferred, or any special form of procedure prescribed, by any other law for the time being in force.

CHAPTER II

CONSTITUTION OF CRIMINAL COURTS AND OFFICES

6.Classes of Criminal Courts.-

Besides the High Courts and the Courts constituted under any law, other than this Code, there shall be, in every State, the following classes of Criminal Courts, namely:-

- (i) Courts of Session;
- (ii) Judicial Magistrates of the first class and, in any metropolitan area, Metropolitan Magistrates;
- (iii) Judicial Magistrates of the second class; and
- (iv) Executive Magistrates.

7.Territorial divisions.—

(1) Every State shall be a sessions division or shall consist of sessions divisions; and every sessions division shall, for the purposes of this Code, be a district or consist of districts:

Provided that every metropolitan area shall, for the said purposes, be a separate sessions division and district.

(2) The State Government may, after consultation with the High Court, alter the limits or the number of such divisions and districts.

(3) The State Government may, after consultation with the High Court, divide any district into sub-divisions and may alter the limits or the number of such sub-divisions.

(4) The sessions divisions, districts and sub-divisions existing in a State at the commencement of this Code, shall be deemed to have been formed under this section.

8.Metropolitan areas.—

(1) The State Government may, by notification, declare that , as from such date as may be specified in the notification, any area in the State comprising a city or town whose population exceeds one million shall be a metropolitan area for the purposes of this Code.

(2) As from the commencement of this Code, each of the Presidency-towns of Bombay, Calcutta and Madras and the city of Ahmedabad shall be deemed to be declared under sub-section (1) to be a metropolitan area.

(3) The State Government may, by notification, extend, reduce or alter the limits of a metropolitan area but the reduction or alteration shall not be so made as to reduce the population of such area to less than one million.

(4) Where, after an area has been declared, or deemed to have been declared to be, a metropolitan area, the population of such area falls below one million, such area shall, on and from such date as the State Government may, by notification, specify in this behalf, cease to be a metropolitan area; but notwithstanding such cesser, any inquiry, trial or appeal pending immediately before such cesser before any Court or Magistrate in such area shall continue to be dealt with under this Code, as if such cesser had not taken place.

(5) Where the State Government reduces or alters, under sub-section (3), the limits of any metropolitan area, such reduction or alteration shall not affect any inquiry, trial or appeal pending immediately before such reduction or alteration before any Court or Magistrate, and every such inquiry, trial or appeal shall continue to be dealt with under this Code as if such reduction or alteration had not taken place.

Explanation.- In this section, the expression “population” means the population as ascertained at the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published.

9. Court of Session.—

(1) The State Government shall establish a Court of Session for every sessions division.

(2) Every Court of Session shall be presided over by a Judge, to be appointed by the High Court.

(3) The High Court may also appoint Additional Sessions Judges and Assistant Sessions Judges to exercise jurisdiction in a Court of Session.

(4) The Sessions Judge of one sessions division may be appointed by the High Court to be also an Additional Sessions Judge of another division, and in such case he may sit for the disposal of cases at such place or places in the other division as the High Court may direct.

(5) Where the office of the Sessions Judge is vacant, the High Court may make arrangements for the disposal of any urgent application which is, or may be, made or pending before such Court of Session by an Additional or Assistant Sessions Judge, or, if there be no Additional or Assistant Sessions Judge, by a Chief Judicial Magistrate, in the sessions division; and every such Judge or Magistrate shall have jurisdiction to deal with any such application.

(6) The Court of Session shall ordinarily hold its sitting at such place or places as the High Court may, by notification, specify; but, if, in any particular case,

the Court of Session is of opinion that it will tend to the general convenience of the parties and witnesses to hold its sittings at any other place in the sessions division, it may, with the consent of the prosecution and the accused, sit at that place for the disposal of the case or the examination of any witness or witnesses therein.

Explanation.- For the purposes of this Code, “appointment” does not include the first appointment, posting or promotion of a person by the Government to any Service, or post in connection with the affairs of the Union or of a State, where under any law, such appointment, posting or promotion is required to be made by Government.

10. Subordination of Assistant Sessions Judges.-

(1) All Assistant Sessions Judges shall be subordinate to the Sessions Judge in whose Court they exercise jurisdiction.

(2) The Sessions Judge may, from time to time, make rules consistent with this Code, as to the distribution of business among such Assistant Sessions Judges.

(3) The Sessions Judge may also make provision for the disposal of any urgent application, in the event of his absence or inability to act, by an Additional or Assistant Sessions Judge, or, if there be no Additional or Assistant Sessions Judge, by the Chief Judicial Magistrate, and every such Judge or Magistrate shall be deemed to have jurisdiction to deal with any such application.

11. Courts of Judicial Magistrates.-

(1) In every district (not being a metropolitan area), there shall be established as many Courts of Judicial Magistrates of the first class and of the second class, and at such places, as the State Government may, after consultation with the High Court, by notification, specify.

(2) The presiding officers of such Courts shall be appointed by the High Court.

(3) The High Court may, whenever it appears to it to be expedient or necessary, confer the powers of a Judicial Magistrate of the first class or of the second class on any member of the Judicial Service of the State, functioning as a Judge in a Civil Court.

12. Chief Judicial Magistrate and Additional Chief Judicial Magistrate, etc.-

- (1) In every district (not being a metropolitan area), the High Court shall appoint a Judicial Magistrate of the first class to be the Chief Judicial Magistrate.
- (2) The High Court may appoint any Judicial Magistrate of the first class to be an Additional Chief Judicial Magistrate, and such Magistrate shall have all or any of the powers of a Chief Judicial Magistrate under this Code or under any other law for the time being in force as the High Court may direct.
- (3) (a) The High Court may designate any Judicial Magistrate of the first class in any sub-division as the Sub-divisional Judicial Magistrate and relieve him of the responsibilities specified in this section as occasion requires.
- (b) Subject to the general control of the Chief Judicial Magistrate, every Sub-divisional Judicial Magistrate shall also have and exercise, such powers of supervision and control over the work of the Judicial Magistrates (other than Additional Chief Judicial Magistrates) in the sub-division as the High Court may, by general or special order, specify in this behalf.

13. Special Judicial Magistrates.-

(1) The High Court may, if requested by the Central or State Government so to do, confer upon any person who holds or has held any post under the Government, all or any of the powers conferred or conferrable by or under this Code on a Judicial Magistrate of the second class, in respect to particular cases or to particular classes of cases or to cases generally, in any district, not being a metropolitan area:

Provided that no such power shall be conferred on a person unless he possesses such qualification or experience in relation to legal affairs as the High Court may, by rules, specify.

(2) Such Magistrates shall be called Special Judicial Magistrates and shall be appointed for such term, not exceeding one year at a time, as the High Court may, by general or special order, direct.

14. Local jurisdiction of Judicial Magistrates.-

(1) Subject to the control of the High Court, the Chief Judicial Magistrate may, from time to time, define the local limits of the areas within which the Magistrates appointed under section 11 or under section 13 may exercise all or

any of the powers with which they may respectively be invested under this Code.

(2) Except as otherwise provided by such definition, the jurisdiction and powers of every such Magistrate shall extend throughout the district.

15. Subordination of Judicial Magistrates.-

(1) Every Chief Judicial Magistrate shall be subordinate to the Sessions Judge; and every other Judicial Magistrate shall, subject to the general control of the Sessions Judge, be subordinate to the Chief Judicial Magistrate.

(2) The Chief Judicial Magistrate may, from time to time, make rules or give special orders, consistent with this Code, as to the distribution of business among the Judicial Magistrates subordinate to him.

16. Courts of Metropolitan Magistrates.-

(1) In every metropolitan area, there shall be established as many Courts of Metropolitan

Magistrates, and at such places, as the State Government may, after consultation with the High Court, by notification, specify.

(2) The presiding officers of such Courts shall be appointed by the High Court.

(3) The jurisdiction and powers of every Metropolitan Magistrate shall extend throughout the metropolitan area.

17. Chief Metropolitan Magistrate and Additional Chief Metropolitan Magistrates.-

(1) The High Court shall, in relation to every metropolitan area within its local jurisdiction, appoint a Metropolitan Magistrate to be the Chief Metropolitan Magistrate for such metropolitan area.

(2) The High Court may appoint any Metropolitan Magistrate to be an Additional Chief Metropolitan Magistrate, and such Magistrate shall have all or any of the powers of a Chief Metropolitan Magistrate under this Code or under any other law for the time being in force as the High Court may direct.

18. Special Metropolitan Magistrates.-

(1) The High Court may, if requested by the Central or State Government so to do, confer upon any person who holds or has held any post under the Government, all or any of the powers conferred or conferrable by or under this

Code on a Metropolitan Magistrate, in respect to particular cases or to particular classes of cases or to cases generally, in any metropolitan area within its local jurisdiction:

Provided that no such power shall be conferred on a person unless he possesses such qualification or experience in relation to legal affairs as the High Court may, by rules, specify.

(2) Such Magistrates shall be called Special Metropolitan Magistrates and shall be appointed for such term, not exceeding one year at a time, as the High Court may, by general or special order, direct.

(3) Notwithstanding anything contained elsewhere in this Code, a Special Metropolitan Magistrate shall not impose a sentence which a Judicial Magistrate of the second class is not competent to impose outside the Metropolitan area.

19. Subordination of Metropolitan Magistrates.-

(1) The Chief Metropolitan Magistrate and every Additional Chief Metropolitan Magistrate shall be subordinate to the Sessions Judge; and every other Metropolitan Magistrate shall, subject to the general control of the Sessions Judge, be subordinate to the Chief Metropolitan Magistrate.

(2) The High Court may, for the purposes of this Code, define the extent of the subordination, if any, of the Additional Chief Metropolitan Magistrates to the Chief Metropolitan Magistrate.

(3) The Chief Metropolitan Magistrate may, from time to time, make rules or give special orders, consistent with this Code, as to the distribution of business among the Metropolitan Magistrates and as to the allocation of business to an Additional Chief Metropolitan Magistrate.

20. Executive Magistrates.-

(1) In every district and in every metropolitan area, the State Government may appoint as many persons as it thinks fit to be Executive Magistrates and shall appoint one of them to be the District Magistrate.

(2) The State Government may appoint any Executive Magistrate to be an Additional district Magistrate, and such Magistrate shall have all or any of the powers of a District Magistrate under this Code or under any other law for the time being in force.

(3) Whenever, in consequence of the office of a District Magistrate becoming vacant, any officer succeeds temporarily to the executive administration of the district, such officer shall, pending the orders of the State Government, exercise all the powers and perform all the duties respectively conferred and imposed by this Code on the District Magistrate.

(4) The State Government may place an Executive Magistrate in charge of a sub-division and may relieve him of the charge as occasion requires; and the Magistrate so placed in charge of a sub-division shall be called the Sub-divisional Magistrate.

(5) Nothing in this section shall preclude the State Government from conferring, under any law for the time being in force, on a Commissioner of Police, all or any of the powers of an Executive Magistrate in relation to a metropolitan area.

21. Special Executive Magistrates.-

The State Government may appoint, for such term as it may think fit, Executive Magistrates, to be known as Special Executive Magistrates for particular areas or for the performance of particular functions and confer on such Special Executive Magistrates such of the powers as are conferrable under this Code on Executive Magistrates, as it may deem fit.

22. Local jurisdiction of Executive Magistrates.-

(1) Subject to the control of the State Government, the District Magistrate may, from time to time, define the local limits of the areas within which the Executive Magistrates may exercise all or any of the powers with which they may be invested under this Code.

(2) Except as otherwise provided by such definition, the jurisdiction and powers of every such Magistrate shall extend throughout the district.

23. Subordination of Executive Magistrates.-

(1) All Executive Magistrates, other than the Additional District Magistrate, shall be subordinate to the District Magistrate, and every Executive Magistrate (other than the Sub-divisional Magistrate) exercising powers in a sub-division shall also be subordinate to the Sub-divisional Magistrate, subject, however, to the general control of the District Magistrate.

(2) The District Magistrate may, from time to time, make rules or give special orders, consistent with this Code, as to the distribution of business among the

Executive Magistrates subordinate to him and as to the allocation of business to an Additional District Magistrate.

24. Public Prosecutors.-

(1) For every High Court, the Central Government or the State Government shall, after consultation with the High Court, appoint a Public Prosecutor for conducting, in such Court, any prosecution, appeal or other proceeding on behalf of the Central or State Government, as the case may be.

(2) For every district the State Government shall appoint a Public Prosecutor and may also appoint one or more Additional Public Prosecutors for the district.

(3) The District Magistrate shall, in consultation with the Sessions Judge, prepare a panel of names of persons who are, in his opinion, fit to be appointed as the Public Prosecutor or Additional Public Prosecutor for the district.

(4) No person shall be appointed by the State Government as the Public Prosecutor or Additional Public Prosecutor for the district unless his name appears on the panel of names prepared by the District Magistrate under sub-section (3).

(5) A person shall only be eligible to be appointed as a Public Prosecutor or an Additional Public Prosecutor under sub-section (1) or sub-section (2), if he has been in practice as an advocate for not less than seven years.

(6) The Central Government or the State Government may appoint, for the purposes of any case or class of cases, an advocate who has been in practice for not less than ten years, as a Special Public Prosecutor.

25. Assistant Public Prosecutors.-

(1) The State Government shall appoint in every district one or more Assistant Public Prosecutors for conducting prosecutions in the Courts of Magistrates.

(2) Save as otherwise provided in sub-section (3), no police officer shall be eligible to be appointed as an Assistant Public Prosecutor.

(3) Where no Assistant Public Prosecutor is available for the purposes of any particular case,
the District Magistrate may appoint any other person to be the Assistant Public Prosecutor in charge of that case:

Provided that a police officer shall not be so appointed-

(a) if he has taken any part in the investigation into the offence with respect to which the accused is being prosecuted; or

(b) if he is below the rank of Inspector.

CHAPTER III

POWER OF COURTS

26.Courts by which offences are triable.-

Subject to the other provisions of this Code.-

(a) any offence under the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) may be tried by –

(i) (i) the High Court, or

(ii) the Court of Session, or

(iii) any other Court by which such offence is shown in the First Schedule to be triable;

(b) any offence under any other law shall, when any Court is mentioned in this behalf in such law, be tried by such Court and when no Court is so mentioned, may be tried by-

(i) the High Court, or

(ii) any other Court by which such offence is shown in the First Schedule to be triable.

27.Jurisdiction in the case of juveniles.-

Any offence not punishable with death or imprisonment for life, committed by any person who at the date when he appears or is brought before the Court is under the age of sixteen years, may be tried by the Court of a Chief Judicial Magistrate, or by any Court specially empowered under the Children Act, 1960,(60 of 1960) or any other law for the time being in force providing for the treatment, training and rehabilitation of youthful offenders.

28.Sentences which High Courts and Sessions Judges may pass.-

(1) A High Court may pass any sentence authorised by law.

(2) A Sessions Judge or Additional Sessions Judge may pass any sentence authorised by law; but any sentence of death passed by any such Judge shall be subject to confirmation by the High Court.

(3) An Assistant Sessions Judge may pass any sentence authorised by law except a sentence of death or of imprisonment for life or of imprisonment for a term exceeding ten years.

29.Sentences which Magistrates may pass.-

(1) The Court of a Chief Judicial Magistrate may pass any sentence authorised by law except a sentence of death or of imprisonment for life or of imprisonment for a term exceeding seven years.

(2) The Court of a Magistrate of the first class may pass a sentence of imprisonment for a term not exceeding three years, or of fine not exceeding five thousand rupees, or of both.

(3) The Court of a Magistrate of the second class may pass a sentence of imprisonment for a term not exceeding one year, or of fine not exceeding one thousand rupees, or of both.

(3) The Court of a Chief Metropolitan Magistrate shall have the powers of the Court of a Chief Judicial Magistrate and that of a Metropolitan Magistrate, the powers of the Court of a Magistrate of the first class.

30.Sentence of imprisonment in default of fine.-

(1) The Court of a Magistrate may award such term of imprisonment in default of payment of fine as is authorised by law:

Provided that the term-

(a) is not in excess of the powers of the Magistrate under section 29;

(b) shall not, where imprisonment has been awarded as part of the substantive sentence, exceed one-fourth of the term of imprisonment which the Magistrate is competent to inflict as punishment for the offence otherwise than as imprisonment in default of payment of the fine.

(2) The imprisonment awarded under this section may be in addition to a substantive sentence of imprisonment for the maximum term awardable by the Magistrate under section 29.

31.Sentence in cases of conviction of several offences at one trial.-

(1) When a person is convicted at one trial of two or more offences, the Court may, subject to the provisions of section 71 of the Indian Penal Code,(45 of 1860) sentence him for such offences, to the several punishments prescribed therefor which such Court is competent to inflict; such punishments when

consisting of imprisonment to commence the one after the expiration of the other in such order as the Court may direct, unless the Court directs that such punishments shall run concurrently.

(2) In the case of consecutive sentences, it shall not be necessary for the Court by reason only of the aggregate punishment for the several offences being in excess of the punishment which it is competent to inflict on conviction of a single offence, to send the offender for trial before a higher Court:

Provided that-

(a) in no case shall such person be sentenced to imprisonment for a longer period than fourteen years;

(b) the aggregate punishment shall not exceed twice the amount of punishment which the Court is competent to inflict for a single offence.

(3) For the purpose of appeal by a convicted person, the aggregate of the consecutive sentences passed against him under this section shall be deemed to be a single sentence.

32. Mode of conferring powers.-

(1) In conferring powers under this Code, the High Court or the State Government, as the case may be, may, by order, empower persons specially by name or in virtue of their offices or classes of officials generally by their official titles.

(2) Every such order shall take effect from the date on which it is communicated to the person so empowered.

33. Powers of officers appointed.-

Whenever any person holding an office in the service of Government who has been invested by the High Court or the State Government with any powers under this Code throughout any local area is appointed to an equal or higher office of the same nature, within a like local area under the same State Government, he shall, unless the High Court or the State Government, as the case may be, otherwise directs, or has otherwise directed, exercise the same powers in the local area in which he is so appointed.

34. Withdrawal of powers.-

- (1) The High Court or the State Government, as the case may be, may withdraw all or any of the powers conferred by it under this Code on any person or by any officer subordinate to it.
- (2) Any powers conferred by the Chief Judicial Magistrate or by the District Magistrate may be withdrawn by the respective Magistrate by whom such powers were conferred.

35. Powers of Judges and Magistrates exercisable by their successors-in-office.-

- (1) Subject to the other provisions of this Code, the powers and duties of a Judge or Magistrate may be exercised or performed by his successor-in-office.
- (2) When there is any doubt as to who is the successor-in-office of any Additional or Assistant Sessions Judge, the Sessions Judge shall determine by order in writing the Judge who shall, for the purposes of this Code or of any proceedings or order thereunder, be deemed to be the successor-in-office of such Additional or Assistant Sessions Judge.
- (3) When there is any doubt as to who is the successor-in-office of any Magistrate, the Chief Judicial Magistrate, or the District Magistrate, as the case may be, shall determine by order in writing the Magistrate who shall, for the purpose of this Code or of any proceedings or order thereunder, be deemed to be the successor-in-office of such Magistrate.

CHAPTER IV

A.- POWERS OF SUPERIOR OFFICERS OF POLICE

36. Powers of superior officers of police.-

Police officers superior in rank to an officer in charge of a police station may exercise the same powers, throughout the local area to which they are appointed, as may be exercised by such officer within the limits of his station.

B.-AID TO THE MAGISTRATES AND THE POLICE

37. Public when to assist Magistrates and police.-

Every person is bound to assist a Magistrate or police officer reasonably demanding his aid-

- (a) in the taking or preventing the escape of any other person whom such Magistrate or police officer is authorised to arrest; or
- (b) in the prevention or suppression of a breach of the peace; or
- (c) in the prevention of any injury attempted to be committed to any railway, canal, telegraph or public property.

38.Aid to person, other than police officer, executing warrant.-

When a warrant is directed to a person other than a police officer, any other person may aid in the execution of such warrant, if the person to whom the warrant is directed be near at hand and acting in the execution of the warrant.

39.Public to give information of certain offences.-

(1) Every person, aware of the commission of , or of the intention of any other person

to commit, any offence punishable under any of the following sections of the Indian Penal

Code,(45 of 1860) namely:-

(i) sections 121 to 126, both inclusive, and section 130 (that is to say, offences against the State specified in Chapter VI of the said Code);

(ii) sections 143, 144, 145, 147 and 148 (that is to say, offences against the public tranquillity specified in Chapter VIII of the said Code);

(iii) sections 161 to 165A, both inclusive (that is to say, offences relating to illegal gratification);

(iv) sections 272 to 278, both inclusive (that is to say, offences relating to adulteration of food and drugs, etc.);

(v) sections 302, 303 and 304 (that is to say, offences affecting life);

(vi) section 382 (that is to say, offence of theft after preparation made for causing death, hurt or restraint in order to the committing of the theft);

(vii) sections 392 to 399, both inclusive, and section 402 (that is to say, offences of robbery and dacoity);

(viii) section 409 (that is to say, offence relating to criminal breach of trust by public servant, etc.);

(ix) sections 431 to 439, both inclusive (that is to say, offences of mischief against property);

(x) sections 449 and 450 (that is to say, offence of house-trespass);

(xi) sections 456 to 460, both inclusive (that is to say, offences of lurking house-trespass); and

(xii) sections 489A to 489E, both inclusive (that is to say, offences relating to currency notes and bank notes),

shall, in the absence of any reasonable excuse, the burden of proving which excuse shall lie upon the person so aware, forthwith give information to the nearest Magistrate or police officer of such commission or intention.

(2) For the purposes of this section, the term “offence” includes any act committed at any place out of India which would constitute an offence if committed in India.

40. Duty of officers employed in connection with the affairs of a village to make certain report.-

(1) Every officer employed in connection with the affairs of a village and every person residing in a village shall forthwith communicate to the nearest Magistrate or to the officer in charge of the nearest police station, whichever is nearer, any information which he may possess respecting-

(a) the permanent or temporary residence of any notorious receiver or vendor of stolen property in or near such village;

(b) the resort to any place within, or the passage through, such village of any person whom he knows, or reasonably suspects, to be a thug, robber, escaped convict or proclaimed offender;

(c) the commission of, or intention to commit, in or near such village any non-bailable offence or any offence punishable under section 143, section 144, section 145, section 147, or section 148 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860);

(d) the occurrence in or near such village of any sudden or unnatural death or of any death under suspicious circumstances or the discovery in or near such village of any corpse or part of a corpse, in circumstances which lead to a reasonable suspicion that such a death has occurred or the disappearance from such village of any person in circumstances which lead to a reasonable suspicion that a non-bailable offence has been committed in respect of such person;

(e) the commission of, or intention to commit, at any place out of India near such village any act which, if committed in India, would be an offence punishable under any of the following sections of the Indian Penal Code,(45 of 1860) namely, 231 to 238 (both inclusive), 302, 304, 382, 392 to 399 (both inclusive), 402, 435, 436, 449, 450, 457 to 460 (both inclusive), 489A, 489B, 489C and 489D;

(f) any matter likely to affect the maintenance of order or the prevention of crime or the safety of person or property respecting which the District Magistrate, by general or special order made with the previous sanction of the State Government, has directed him to communicate information.

(2) In this section, –

(i) “village” includes village-lands;

(ii) the expression “proclaimed offender” includes any person proclaimed as an offender by any Court or authority in any territory in India to which this Code does not extend, in respect of any act which if committed in the territories to which this Code extends, would be an offence punishable under any of the following sections of the Indian Penal Code,(45 of 1860) namely, 302, 304, 382, 392 to 399 (both inclusive), 402, 435, 436, 449, 450 and 457 to 460 (both inclusive);

(iii) the words “officer employed in connection with the affairs of the village” means a member of the panchayat of the village and includes the headman and every officer or other person appointed to perform any function connected with the administration of the village.

CHAPTER V

ARREST OF PERSONS

41. When police may arrest without warrant

(1) Any police officer may without an order from a Magistrate and without a warrant, arrest any person-

(a) who has been concerned in any cognizable offence, or against whom a reasonable complaint has been made, or credible information has been received, or a reasonable suspicion exists, of his having been so concerned; or

(b) who has in his possession without lawful excuse, the burden of proving which excuse shall lie on such person, any implement of house-breaking; or

(c) who has been proclaimed as an offender either under this Code or by order of the State Government; or

(d) in whose possession anything is found which may reasonably be suspected to be stolen property and who may reasonably be suspected of having committed an offence with reference to such thing; or

- (e) who obstructs a police officer while in the execution of his duty, or who has escaped, or attempts to escape, from lawful custody; or
- (f) who is reasonably suspected of being a deserter from any of the Armed Forces of the Union; or
- (g) who has been concerned in, or against whom a reasonable complaint has been made, or credible information has been received, or a reasonable suspicion exists, of his having been concerned in, any act committed at any place out of India which, if committed in India, would have been punishable as an offence, and for which he is, under any law relating to extradition, or otherwise, liable to be apprehended or detained in custody in India; or
- (h) who, being a released convict, commits a breach of any rule made under sub-section (5) of section 356; or
- (I) for whose arrest any requisition, whether written or oral, has been received from another police officer, provided that the requisition specifies the person to be arrested and the offence or other cause for which the arrest is to be made and it appears therefrom that the person might lawfully be arrested without a warrant by the officer who issued the requisition.

(2) Any officer in charge of a police station may, in like manner, arrest or cause to be arrested any person, belonging to one or more of the categories of persons specified in section 109 or section 110.

42. Arrest on refusal to give name and residence.-

- (1) When any person who, in the presence of a police officer, has committed or has been accused of committing a non-cognizable offence refuses, on demand of such officer, to give his name and residence or gives a name or residence which such officer has reason to believe to be false, he may be arrested by such officer in order that his name or residence may be ascertained.
- (2) When the true name and residence of such person have been ascertained, he shall be released on his executing a bond, with or without sureties, to appear before a Magistrate if so required:

Provided that, if such person is not resident in India, the bond shall be secured by a surety or sureties resident in India.
- (4) (3) Should the true name and residence of such person not be ascertained within twenty-four hours from the time of arrest or should he fail to execute

the bond, or, if so required, to furnish sufficient sureties, he shall forthwith be forwarded to the nearest Magistrate having jurisdiction.

43.Arrest by Private person and procedure on such arrest.-

(1) Any private person may arrest or cause to be arrested any person who in his presence commits a non-bailable and cognizable offence, or any proclaimed offender, and, without unnecessary delay, shall make over or cause to be made over any person so arrested to a police officer, or, in the absence of a police officer, take such person or cause him to be taken in custody to the nearest police station.

(2) If there is reason to believe that such person comes under the provisions of section 41, a police officer shall re-arrest him.

(3) If there is reason to believe that he has committed a non-cognizable offence, and he refuses on the demand of a police officer to give his name and residence, or gives a name or residence which such officer has reason to believe to be false, he shall be dealt with under the provisions of section 42; but if there is no sufficient reason to believe that he has committed any offence, he shall be at once released.

44.Arrest by Magistrate.-

(1) When any offence is committed in the presence of a Magistrate, whether Executive or Judicial, within his local jurisdiction, he may himself arrest or order any person to arrest the offender, and may thereupon, subject to the provisions herein contained as to bail, commit the offender to custody.

(2) Any Magistrate, whether Executive or Judicial, may at any time arrest or direct the arrest, in his presence, within his local jurisdiction, of any person for whose arrest he is competent at the time and in the circumstances to issue a warrant.

45.Protection of members of the Armed Forces from arrest.-

(1) Notwithstanding anything contained in sections 41 to 44 (both inclusive), no member of the Armed Forces of the Union shall be arrested for anything done or purported to be done by him in the discharge of his official duties except after obtaining the consent of the Central Government.

(2) The State Government may, by notification, direct that the provisions of sub-section (1) shall apply to such class or category of the members of the Force charged with the maintenance of public order as may be specified therein, wherever they may be serving, and thereupon the provisions of that

sub-section shall apply as if for the expression "Central Government" occurring therein, the expression "State Government" were substituted.

46.Arrest how made.-

- (1) In making an arrest the police officer or other person making the same shall actually touch or confine the body of the person to be arrested, unless there be a submission to the custody by word or action.
- (2) If such person forcibly resists the endeavour to arrest him, or attempts to evade the arrest, such police officer or other person may use all means necessary to effect the arrest.
- (3) Nothing in this section gives a right to cause the death of a person who is not accused of an offence punishable with death or with imprisonment for life.

47.Search of place entered by person sought to be arrested.-

- (1) If any person acting under a warrant of arrest, or any police officer having authority to arrest, has reason to believe that the person to be arrested has entered into, or is within, any place, any person residing in, or being in charge of, such place shall, on demand of such person acting as aforesaid or such police officer, allow him free ingress thereto, and afford all reasonable facilities for a search therein.
- (2) If ingress to such place cannot be obtained under sub-section (1), it shall be lawful in any case for a person acting under a warrant and in any case in which a warrant may issue, but cannot be obtained without affording the person to be arrested an opportunity of escape, for a police officer to enter such place and search therein, and in order to effect an entrance into such place, to break open any outer or inner door or window of any house or place, whether that of the person to be arrested or of any other person, if after notification of his authority and purpose, and demand of admittance duly made, he cannot otherwise obtain admittance;

Provided that, if any such place is an apartment in the actual occupancy of a female (not being the person to be arrested) who, according to custom, does not appear in public, such person or police officer shall, before entering such apartment, give notice to such female that she is at liberty to withdraw and shall afford her every reasonable facility for withdrawing, and may then break open the apartment and enter it.

- (3) Any police officer or other person authorised to make an arrest may break open any outer or inner door or window of any house or place in order to

liberate himself or any other person who, having lawfully entered for the purpose of making an arrest, is detained therein.

48.Pursuit of offenders into other jurisdictions.-

A police officer may, for the purpose of arresting without warrant any person whom he is authorised to arrest, pursue such person into any place in India.

49.No unnecessary restraint.-

The Person arrested shall not be subjected to more restraint than is necessary to prevent his escape.

50.Person arrested to be informed of grounds of arrest and of right to bail.-

(1) Every police officer or other person arresting any person without warrant shall forthwith communicate to him full particulars of the offence for which he is arrested or other grounds for such arrest.

(2) Where a police officer arrests without warrant any person other than a person accused of a non-bailable offence, he shall inform the person arrested that he is entitled to be released on bail and that he may arrange for sureties on his behalf.

51.Search of arrested person.-

(1) Whenever a person is arrested by a police officer under a warrant which does not provide for the taking of bail, or under a warrant which provides for the taking of bail but the person arrested cannot furnish bail, and

whenever a person is arrested without warrant, or by a private person under a warrant, and cannot legally be admitted to bail, or is unable to furnish bail, the officer making the arrest or, when the arrest is made by a private person, the police officer to whom he makes over the person arrested, may search such person, and place in safe custody all articles, other, than necessary wearing-apparel, found upon him and where any article is seized from the arrested person, a receipt showing the articles taken in possession by the police officer shall be given to such person.

(2) Whenever it is necessary to cause a female to be searched, the search shall be made by another female with strict regard to decency.

52.Power to seize offensive weapons.-

The officer or other person making any arrest under this Code may take from the person arrested any offensive weapons which he has about his person, and shall deliver all weapons so taken to the Court or officer before which or whom

the officer or person making the arrest is required by this Code to produce the person arrested.

53.Examination of accused by medical practitioner at the request of police officer.-

(1) When a person is arrested on a charge of committing an offence of such a nature and alleged to have been committed under such circumstances that there are reasonable grounds for believing that an examination of his person will afford evidence as to the commission of an offence, it shall be lawful for a registered medical practitioner, acting at the request of a police officer not below the rank of sub-inspector, and for any person acting in good faith in his aid and under his direction, to make such an examination of the person arrested as is reasonably necessary in order to ascertain the facts which may afford such evidence, and to use such force as is reasonably necessary for that purpose.

(2) Whenever the person of a female is to be examined under this section, the examination shall be made only by, or under the supervision of, a female registered medical practitioner.

Explanation.- In this section and in section 54, “registered medical practitioner” means a medical practitioner who possesses any recognized medical qualification as defined in clause (h) of section 2 of the Indian Medical Council Act, 1956,(102 of 1956) and whose name has been entered in a State Medical Register.

54.Examination of arrested person by medical practitioner at the request of the arrested person.-

When a person who is arrested, whether on a charge or otherwise, alleges, at the time when he is produced before a Magistrate or at any time during the period of his detention in custody that the examination of his body will afford evidence which will disprove the commission by him of any offence or which will establish the commission by any other person of any offence against his body, the Magistrate shall, if requested by the arrested person so to do direct the examination of the body of such person by a registered medical practitioner unless the Magistrate considers that the request is made for the purpose of vexation or delay or for defeating the ends of justice.

55.Procedure when police officer deputes subordinate to arrest without warrant.-

(1) When any officer in charge of a police station or any police officer making an investigation under Chapter XII requires any officer subordinate to him to

arrest without a warrant (otherwise than in his presence) any person who may lawfully be arrested without a warrant, he shall deliver to the officer required to make the arrest an order in writing, specifying the person to be arrested and the offence or other cause for which the arrest is to be made and the officer so required shall, before making the arrest, notify to the person to be arrested the substance of the order and, if so required by such person, shall show him the order.

(2) Nothing in sub-section (1) shall affect the power of a police officer to arrest a person under section 41.

56. Person arrested to be taken before Magistrate or officer in charge of police station.-

A police officer making an arrest without warrant shall, without unnecessary delay and subject to the provisions herein contained as to bail, take or send the person arrested before a Magistrate having jurisdiction in the case, or before the officer in charge of a police station.

57. Person arrested not to be detained more than twenty-four hours.-

No police officer shall detain in custody a person arrested without warrant for a longer period than under all the circumstances of the case is reasonable, and such period shall not, in the absence of a special order of a Magistrate under section 167, exceed twenty-four hours exclusive of the time necessary for the journey from the place of arrest to the Magistrate's Court.

58. Police to report apprehensions.-

Officers in charge of police stations shall report to the District Magistrate, or, if he so directs, to the Sub-divisional Magistrate, the cases of all persons arrested without warrant, within the limits of their respective stations, whether such persons have been admitted to bail or otherwise.

59. Discharge of person apprehended.-

No person who has been arrested by a police officer shall be discharged except on his own bond, or on bail, or under the special order of a Magistrate.

60. Power, on escape, to pursue and retake.

-(1) If a person in lawful custody escapes or is rescued, the person from whose custody he escaped or was rescued may immediately pursue and arrest him in any place in India.

(2) The provisions of section 47 shall apply to arrests under sub-section (1) although the person making any such arrest is not acting under a warrant and is not a police officer having authority to arrest.

CHAPTER VI **PROCESSES TO COMPEL APPEARANCE**

A.- Summons

61. Form of summons.-

Every summons issued by a Court under this Code shall be in writing, in duplicate, signed by the presiding officer of such Court or by such other officer as the High Court may, from time to time, by rule direct, and shall bear the seal of the Court.

62. Summons how served.-

(1) Every summons shall be served by a police officer, or subject to such rules as the State Government may make in this behalf, by an officer of the Court issuing it or other public servant.

(2) The summons shall, if practicable, be served personally on the person summoned, by delivering or tendering to him one of the duplicates of the summons.

(3) Every person on whom a summons is so served shall, if so required by the serving officer, sign a receipt therefor on the back of the other duplicate.

63. Service of summons on corporate bodies and societies.-

Service of a summons on a corporation may be effected by serving it on the secretary, local manager or other principle officer of the corporation, or by letter sent by registered post, addressed to the chief officer of the corporation in India, in which case the service shall be deemed to have been effected when the letter would arrive in ordinary course of post.

Explanation.- In this section, “corporation” means an incorporated company or other body corporate and includes a society registered under the Societies Registration Act, 1860.

64. Service when persons summoned cannot be found.-

Where the person summoned cannot, by the exercise of due diligence, be found, the summons may be served by leaving one of the duplicates for him with some adult male member of his family residing with him, and the person with whom the summons is so left shall, if so required by the serving officer, sign a receipt therefor on the back of the other duplicate.

Explanation.- A servant is not a member of the family within the meaning of this section.

65. Procedure when service cannot be effected as before provided.-

If service cannot by the exercise of due diligence be effected as provided in section 62, section 63 or section 64, the serving officer shall affix one of the duplicates of the summons to some conspicuous part of the house or homestead in which the person summoned ordinarily resides; and thereupon the Court, after making such inquiries as it thinks fit, may either declare that the summons has been duly served or order fresh service in such manner as it considers proper.

66. Service on Government.-

(1) Where the person summoned is in the active service of the Government, the Court issuing the summons shall ordinarily send it in duplicate to the head of the office in which such person is employed; and such head shall thereupon cause the summons to be served in the manner provided by section 62, and shall return it to the Court under his signature with the endorsement required by that section.

(2) Such signature shall be evidence of due service.

67. Service of summons outside local limits.-

When a Court desires that a summons issued by it shall be served at any place outside its local jurisdiction, it shall ordinarily send such summons in duplicate to a Magistrate within whose local jurisdiction the person summoned resides, or is, to be there served.

68. Proof of service in such cases and when serving officer not present.-

(1) When a summons issued by a Court is served outside its local jurisdiction, and in any case where the officer who has served a summons is not present at the hearing of the case, an affidavit, purporting to be made before a Magistrate, that such summons has been served, and a duplicate of the summons purporting to be endorsed (in the manner provided by section 62 or section 64) by the person to whom it was delivered or tendered or with whom it was left, shall be admissible in evidence, and the statements made therein shall be deemed to be correct unless and until the contrary is proved.

(2) The affidavit mentioned in this section may be attached to the duplicate of the summons are returned to the Court.

69.Service of summons on witness by post.-

- (1) Notwithstanding anything contained in the preceding sections of this Chapter, a Court issuing a summons to a witness may, in addition to and simultaneously with the issue of such summons, direct a copy of the summons to be served by registered post addressed to the witness at the place where he ordinarily resides or carries on business or personally works for gain.
- (2) When an acknowledgment purporting to be signed by the witness or an endorsement purporting to be made by a postal employee that the witness refused to take delivery of the summons has been received, the Court issuing the summons may declare that the summons has been duly served.

B.- Warrant of arrest

70.Form of warrant of arrest and duration.-

- (1) Every warrant of arrest issued by a Court under this Code shall be in writing, signed by the presiding officer of such Court and shall bear the seal of the Court.
- (2) Every such warrant shall remain in force until it is cancelled by the Court which issued it, or until it is executed.

71.Power to direct security to be taken.-

- (1) Any Court issuing a warrant for the arrest of any person may in its discretion direct by endorsement on the warrant that, if such person executes a bond with sufficient sureties for his attendance before the Court at a specified time and thereafter until otherwise directed by the Court, the officer to whom the warrant is directed shall take such security and shall release such person from custody.
- (2) The endorsement shall state-
- (a) the number of sureties;
 - (b) the amount in which they and the person for whose arrest the warrant is issued, are respectively bound;
 - (c) the time at which he is to attend before the Court.
- (3) Whenever security is taken under this section, the officer to whom the warrant is directed shall forward the bond to the Court.

72.Warrants to whom directed.-

- (1) A warrant of arrest shall ordinarily be directed to one or more police officers; but the Court issuing such a warrant may, if its immediate execution

is necessary and no police officer is immediately available, direct it to any other person or persons, and such person or persons shall execute the same.

(2) When a warrant is directed to more officers or persons than one, it may be executed by all, or by any one or more of them.

73. Warrant may be directed to any person.-

(1) The Chief Judicial Magistrate or a Magistrate of the first class may direct a warrant to any person within his local jurisdiction for the arrest of any escaped convict, proclaimed offender or of any person who is accused of a non-bailable offence and is evading arrest.

(2) Such person shall acknowledge in writing the receipt of the warrant, and shall execute it if the person for whose arrest it was issued, is in, or enters on, any land or other property under his charge.

(3) When the person against whom such warrant is issued is arrested, he shall be made over with the warrant to the nearest police officer, who shall cause him to be taken before a Magistrate having jurisdiction in the case, unless security is taken under section 71.

74. Warrant directed to police officer.-

A warrant directed to any police officer may also be executed by any other police officer whose name is endorsed upon the warrant by the officer to whom it is directed or endorsed.

75. Notification of substance of warrant.-

The police officer or other person executing a warrant of arrest shall notify the substance thereof to the person to be arrested, and, if so required, shall show him the warrant.

76. Person arrested to be brought before Court without delay.-

The police officer or other person executing a warrant of arrest shall (subject to the provisions of section 71 as to security) without unnecessary delay bring the person arrested before the Court before which he is required by law to produce such person:

Provided that such delay shall not, in any case, exceed twenty-four hours exclusive of the time necessary for the journey from the place of arrest to the Magistrate's Court.

77. Where warrant may be executed.-

A warrant of arrest may be executed at any place in India.

78.Warrant forwarded for execution outside jurisdiction.-

(1) When a warrant is to be executed outside the local jurisdiction of the Court issuing it, such Court may, instead of directing the warrant to a police officer within its jurisdiction, forward it by post or otherwise to any Executive Magistrate or District Superintendent of Police or Commissioner of Police within the local limits of whose jurisdiction it is to be executed; and the Executive Magistrate or District Superintendent or Commissioner shall endorse his name thereon, and if practicable, cause it to be executed in the manner herein before provided.

(2) The Court issuing a warrant under sub-section (1) shall forward, along with the warrant, the substance of the information against the person to be arrested together with such documents, if any, as may be sufficient to enable the Court acting under section 81 to decide whether bail should or should not be granted to the person.

79.Warrant directed to police officer for execution outside jurisdiction.-

(1) When a warrant directed to a police officer is to be executed beyond the local jurisdiction of the Court issuing the same, he shall ordinarily take it for endorsement either to an Executive Magistrate or to a police officer not below the rank of an officer in charge of a police station, within the local limits of whose jurisdiction the warrant is to be executed.

(2) Such Magistrate or police officer shall endorse his name thereon and such endorsement shall be sufficient authority to the police officer to whom the warrant is directed to execute the same, and the local police shall, if so required, assist such officer in executing such warrant.

(3) Whenever there is reason to believe that the delay occasioned by obtaining the endorsement of the Magistrate or police officer within whose local jurisdiction the warrant is to be executed will prevent such execution, the police officer to whom it is directed may execute the same without such endorsement in any place beyond the local jurisdiction of the Court which issued it.

80.Procedure on arrest of person against whom warrant issued.-

When a warrant of arrest is executed outside the district in which it was issued, the person arrested shall, unless the Court which issued the warrant is within thirty kilometres of the place of arrest or is nearer than the Executive Magistrate or District Superintendent of Police or Commissioner of Police within the local limits of whose jurisdiction the arrest was made, or unless

security is taken under section 71, be taken before such Magistrate or District Superintendent or Commissioner.

81. Procedure by Magistrate before whom such person arrested is brought.-

(1) The Executive Magistrate or District Superintendent of Police or Commissioner of Police shall, if the person arrested appears to be the person intended by the Court which issued the warrant, direct his removal in custody to such Court:

Provided that, if the offence is bailable, and such person is already and willing to give bail to the satisfaction of such Magistrate, District Superintendent or Commissioner, or a direction has been endorsed under section 71 on the warrant and such person is ready and willing to give the security required by such direction, the Magistrate, District Superintendent or Commissioner shall take such bail or security, as the case may be, and forward the bond, to the Court which issued the warrant:

Provided further that if the offence is a non-bailable one, it shall be lawful for the Chief Judicial Magistrate (subject to the provisions of section 437), or the Sessions Judge, of the district in which the arrest is made on consideration of the information and the documents referred to in sub-section (2) of section 78, to release such person on bail.

(2) Nothing in this section shall be deemed to prevent a police officer from taking security under section 71.

C.- Proclamation and attachment

82. Proclamation for person absconding.-

(1) If any Court has reason to believe (whether after taking evidence or not) that any person against whom a warrant has been issued by it has absconded or is concealing himself so that such warrant cannot be executed, such Court may public a written proclamation requiring him to appear at a specified place and at a specified time not less than thirty days from the date of publishing such proclamation.

(2) The proclamation shall be published as follows:-

(i) (a) it shall be publicly read in some conspicuous place of the town or village in which such person ordinarily resides;

(b) it shall be affixed to some conspicuous part of the house or homestead in which such person ordinarily resides or to some conspicuous place of such town or village;

(c) a copy thereof shall be affixed to some conspicuous part of the Court-house;

(ii) the Court may also, if it thinks fit, direct a copy of the proclamation to be published in a daily newspaper circulating in the place in which such person ordinarily resides.

(3) A statement in writing by the Court issuing the proclamation to the effect that the proclamation was duly published on a specified day, in the manner specified in clause (I) of sub-section (2), shall be conclusive evidence that the requirements of this section have been complied with, and that the proclamation was published on such day.

83. Attachment of property of person absconding.-

(1) The Court issuing a proclamation under section 82 may, for reasons to be recorded in writing, at any time after the issue of the proclamation, order the attachment of any property, movable or immovable, or both, belonging to the proclaimed person:

Provided that where at the time of the issue of the proclamation the Court is satisfied, by affidavit or otherwise that the person in relation to whom the proclamation is to be issued, –

(a) is about to dispose of the whole or any part of his property, or

(b) is about to remove the whole or any part of his property from the local jurisdiction of the Court,

it may order the attachment simultaneously with the issue of the proclamation.

(2) Such order shall authorise the attachment of any property belonging to such person within the district in which it is made; and it shall authorise the attachment of any property belonging to such person without such district when endorsed by the District Magistrate within whose district such property is situate.

(3) If the property ordered to be attached is a debt or other movable property, the attachment under this section shall be made-

- (a) by seizure; or
- (b) by the appointment of a receiver; or
- (c) by an order in writing prohibiting the delivery of such property to the proclaimed person or to any one on his behalf; on
- (d) by all or any two of such methods, as the Court thinks fit.

(4) If the property ordered to be attached is immovable, the attachment under this section shall, in the case of land paying revenue to the State Government, be made through the Collector of the district in which the land is situate, and in all other cases-

- (a) by taking possession; or
- (b) by the appointment of a receiver; or
- (c) by an order in writing prohibiting the payment of rent on delivery of property to
the proclaimed person or to any one on his behalf; or
- (d) by all or any two of such methods, as the Court thinks fit.

(5) If the property ordered to be attached consists of live-stock or is of a perishable nature, the Court may, if it thinks it expedient, order immediate sale thereof, and in such case the proceeds of the sale shall abide the order of the Court.

(6) The powers, duties and liabilities of a receiver appointed under this section shall be the same as those of a receiver appointed under the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908(5 of 1908).

84. Claims and objections to attachment.-

(1) If any claim is preferred to, or objection made to the attachment of, any property attached under section 83, within six months from the date of such attachment, by any person other than the proclaimed person, on the ground that the claimant or objector has an interest in such property, and that such interest is not liable to attachment under section 83, the claim or objection shall be inquired into, and may be allowed or disallowed in whole or in part:

Provided that any claim preferred or objection made within the period allowed by this sub-section may, in the event of the death of the claimant or objector, be continued by his legal representative.

(2) Claims or objections under sub-section (1) may be preferred or made in the Court by which the order of attachment is issued, or, if the claim or objection is in respect of property attached under an order endorsed under sub-section (2) of section 83, in the Court of the Chief Judicial Magistrate of the district in which the attachment is made.

(3) Every such claim or objection shall be inquired into by the Court in which it is preferred or made:

Provided that, if it is preferred or made in the Court of a Chief Judicial Magistrate, he may make it over for disposal to any Magistrate subordinate to him.

(4) Any person whose claim or objection has been disallowed in whole or in part by an order under sub-section (1) may, within a period of one year from the date of such order, institute a suit to establish the right which he claims in respect of the property in dispute; but subject to the result of such suit, if any, the order shall be conclusive.

85. Release, sale and restoration of attached property.-

(1) If the proclaimed person appears within the time specified in the proclamation, the Court shall make an order releasing the property from the attachment.

(2) If the proclaimed person does not appear within the time specified in the proclamation, the property under the attachment shall be at the disposal of the State Government; but it shall not be sold until the expiration of six months from the date of the attachment and until any claim preferred or objection made under section 84 has been disposed of under that section, unless it is subject to speedy and natural decay, or the Court considers that the sale would be for the benefit of the owner; in either of which cases the Court may cause it to be sold whenever it thinks fit.

(3) If, within two years from the date of the attachment, any person whose property is or has been at the disposal of the State Government, under sub-section (2), appears voluntarily or is apprehended and brought before the Court by whose order the property was attached, or the Court to which such Court is subordinate, and proves to the satisfaction of such Court that he did

not abscond or conceal himself for the purpose of avoiding execution of the warrant, and that he had not such notice of the proclamation as to enable him to attend within the time specified therein such property, or, if the same has been sold, the net proceeds of the sale, or, if part only thereof has been sold, the net proceeds of the sale, and the residue of the property, shall, after satisfying therefrom all costs incurred in consequence of the attachment, be delivered to him.

86. Appeal from order rejecting application for restoration of attached property.-

Any person referred to in sub-section (3) of section 85, who is aggrieved by any refusal to deliver property or the proceeds of the sale thereof may appeal to the Court to which appeals ordinarily lie from the sentences of the first-mentioned Court.

D.- Other rules regarding processes

87. Issue of warrant in lieu of, or in addition to, summons.-

A Court may, in any case in which it is empowered by this Code to issue a summons for the appearance of any person, issue, after recording its reasons in writing, a warrant for his arrest-

(a) if, either before the issue of such summons, or after the issue of the same but before the time fixed for his appearance, the Court sees reason to believe that he has absconded or will not obey the summons; or

(b) if at such time he fails to appear and the summons is proved to have been duly served in time to admit of his appearing in accordance therewith and no reasonable excuse is offered for such failure.

88. Power to take bond for appearance.-

When any person for whose appearance or arrest the officer presiding in any Court is empowered to issue a summons or warrant, is present in such Court, such officer may require such person to execute a bond, with or without sureties, for his appearance in such Court, or any other Court to which the case may be transferred for trial.

89. Arrest on breach of bond for appearance.-

When any person who is bound by any bond taken under this Code to appear before a Court, does not appear, the officer presiding in such Court may issue a warrant directing that such person be arrested and produced before him.

90. Provisions of this Chapter generally applicable to summonses and warrants of arrest.-

The provisions contained in this Chapter relating to a summons and warrant, and their issue, service and execution, shall, so far as may be, apply to every summons and every warrant of arrest issued under this Code.

CHAPTER VII PROCESSES TO COMPEL THE PRODUCTION OF THINGS

A.- Summons to produce

91. Summons to produce document or other thing.-

(1) Whenever any Court or any officer in charge of a police station considers that the production of any document or other thing is necessary or desirable for the purposes of any investigation, inquiry, trial or other proceeding under this Code by or before such Court or officer, such Court may issue a summons, or such officer a written order, to the person in whose possession or power such document or thing is believed to be, requiring him to attend and produce it, or to produce it, at the time and place stated in the summons or order.

(2) Any person required under this section merely to produce a document or other thing shall be deemed to have complied with the requisition if he causes such document or thing to be produced instead of attending personally to produce the same.

(3) Nothing in this section shall be deemed-

(a) to affect sections 123 and 124 of the Indian Evidence Act, 1872,(1 of 1872) or the Bankers' Books Evidence Act, 1891,(13 of 1891) or

(b) to apply to a letter, postcard, telegram, or other document or any parcel or thing in the custody of the postal or telegraph authority.

92. Procedure as to letters and telegrams.-

(1) If any document, parcel or thing in the custody of a postal or telegraph authority is, in the opinion of the District Magistrate, Chief Judicial Magistrate, Court of Session or High Court wanted for the purpose of any investigation, inquiry, trial or other proceeding under this Code, such Magistrate or Court may require the postal or telegraph authority, as the case may be, to deliver the document, parcel or thing to such person as the Magistrate or Court directs.

(2) If any such document, parcel or thing is, in the opinion of any other Magistrate, whether Executive or Judicial, or of any Commissioner of Police or

District Superintendent of Police, wanted for any such purpose, he may require the postal or telegraph authority, as the case may be, to cause search to be made for and to detain such document, parcel or thing pending the order of a District Magistrate, Chief Judicial Magistrate or Court under sub-section (1).

B.- Search-warrants

93. When search warrant may be issued.-

(1) (a) Where any Court has reason to believe that a person to whom a summons or order under section 91 or a requisition under sub-section (1) of section 92 has been, or might be, addressed, will not or would not produce the document or thing as required by such summons or requisition, or
(b) where such document or thing is not known to the Court to be in the possession of any person, or

(c) where the Court considers that the purposes of any inquiry, trial or other proceeding under this Code will be served by a general search or inspection,

it may issue a search-warrant; and the person to whom such warrant is directed, may search or inspect in accordance therewith and the provisions hereinafter contained.

(2) The Court may, if it thinks fit, specify in the warrant the particular place or part thereof to which only the search or inspection shall extend; and the person charged with the execution of such warrant shall then search or inspect only the place or part so specified.

(3) Nothing contained in this section shall authorise any Magistrate other than a District Magistrate or Chief Judicial Magistrate to grant a warrant to search for a document, parcel or other thing in the custody of the postal or telegraph authority.

94. Search of place suspected to contain stolen property forged documents etc.-

(1) If a 'District Magistrate, Sub-divisional Magistrate or Magistrate of the first class, upon information and after such inquiry as he thinks necessary, has reason to believe that any place is used for the deposit or sale of stolen property, or for the deposit, sale or production of any objectionable article to which this section applies, or that any such objectionable article is deposited in any place, he may by warrant authorise any police officer above the rank of a constable-

(a) to enter, with such assistance as may be required, such place,

(b) to search the same in the manner specified in the warrant,

(c) to take possession of any property or article therein found which he reasonably
suspects to be stolen property or objectionable article to which this section
applies,

(d) to convey such property or article before a Magistrate, or to guard the
same on the
spot until the offender is taken before a Magistrate, or otherwise to dispose of
it in
some place of safety,

(e) to take into custody and carry before a Magistrate every person found in
such
place who appears to have been privy to the deposit, sale or production of any
such
property or article knowing or having reasonable cause to suspect it to be
stolen
property or, as the case may be, objectionable article to which this section
applies.

(2) The objectionable articles to which this section applies are –

- (a) counterfeit coin;
- (b) pieces of metal made in contravention of the Metal Tokens Act, 1889,(1 of 1899) or brought into India in contravention of any notification for the time being in force under section 11 of the Customs Act, 1962(52 of 1962);
- (c) counterfeit currency note; counterfeit stamps;
- (d) forged documents;
- (e) false seals;
- (f) obscene objects referred to in section 292 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860);
- (g) instruments or materials used for the production of any of the articles mentioned
in clauses (a) to (f).

95. Power to declare certain publications forfeited and to issue search-warrants for the same.-

(1) Where –

- (a) any newspaper, or book, or
- (b) any document,

wherever printed, appears to the State Government to contain any matter the publication of which is punishable under section 124A or section 153A or section 153B or section 292 or section 293 or section 295A of the Indian Penal Code, the State Government may, by notification, stating the grounds of its opinion, declare every copy of the issue of the newspaper containing such matter, and every copy of such book or other document to be forfeited to Government, and thereupon any police officer may seize the same wherever found in India and any Magistrate may by warrant authorise any police officer not below the rank of sub-inspector to enter upon and search for the same in any premises where any copy of such issue or any such book or other document may be or may be reasonably suspected to be.

(2) In this section and in section 96, –

- (a) “newspaper” and “book” have the same meaning as in the Press and Registration of Books Act, 1867(25 of 1867);
- (b) “document” includes any painting, drawing or photograph, or other visible representation.

(3) No order passed or action taken under this section shall be called in question in any Court otherwise than in accordance with the provisions of section 96.

96. Application to High Court to set aside declaration of forfeiture.-

(1) Any person having any interest in any newspaper, book or other document, in respect of which a declaration of forfeiture has been made under section 95, may, within two months from the date of publication in the Official Gazette of such declaration, apply to the High Court to set aside such declaration on the ground that the issue of the newspaper, or the book or other document, in respect of which the declaration was made, did not contain any such matter as is referred to in sub-section (1) of section 95.

(2) Every such application shall, where the High Court consists of three or more Judges, be heard and determined by a Special Bench of the High Court composed of three Judges and where the High Court consists of less than three Judges, such Special Bench shall be composed of all the Judges of that High Court.

(3) On the hearing of any such application with reference to any newspaper, any copy of such newspaper may be given in evidence in aid of the proof of the nature or tendency of the words, signs or visible representations contained in such newspaper, in respect of which the declaration of forfeiture was made.

(4) The High Court shall, if it is not satisfied that the issue of the newspaper, or the book or other document, in respect of which the application has been made, contained any such matter as is referred to in sub-section (1) of section 95, set aside the declaration of forfeiture.

(5) Where there is a difference of opinion among the Judges forming the Special Bench, the decision shall be in accordance with the opinion of the majority of those Judges.

97. Search for persons wrongfully confined.-

If any District Magistrate, Sub-divisional Magistrate or Magistrate of the first class has reason to believe that any person is confined under such circumstances that the confinement amounts to an offence, he may issue a search-warrant, and the person to whom such warrant is directed may search for the person so confined; and such search shall be made in accordance therewith, and the person, if found, shall be immediately taken before a Magistrate, who shall make such order as in the circumstances of the case seems proper.

98. Power to compel restoration of abducted females.-

Upon complaint made on oath of the abduction or unlawful detention of a woman, or a female child under the age of eighteen years, for any unlawful purpose, a District Magistrate, Sub-divisional Magistrate or Magistrate of the first class may make an order for the immediate restoration of such woman to her liberty, or of such female child to her husband, present, guardian or other person having the lawful charge of such child, and may compel compliance with such order, using such force as may be necessary.

C.General provisions relating to searches

99. Direction, etc., of search-warrants.-

The provisions of sections 38, 70, 72, 74, 77, 78 and 79 shall, so far as may be, apply to all search-warrants issued under section 93, section 94, section 95 or section 97.

100. Persons in charge of closed place to allow search.-

(1) Whenever any place liable to search or inspection under this Chapter is closed, any person residing in, or being in charge of, such place, shall, on demand of the officer or other person executing the warrant, and on production of the warrant, allow his free ingress thereto, and afford all reasonable facilities for a search therein.

(2) If ingress into such place cannot be so obtained, the officer or other person executing the warrant may proceed in the manner provided by sub-section (2) of section 47.

(3) Where any person in or about such place is reasonably suspected of concealing about his person any article for which search should be made, such person may be searched and if such person is a woman, the search shall be made by another woman with strict regard to decency.

(4) Before making a search under this Chapter, the officer or other person about to make it shall call upon two or more independent and respectable inhabitants of the locality in which the place to be searched is situate or of any other locality if no such inhabitant of the said locality is available or is willing to be a witness to the search, to attend and witness the search and may issue an order in writing to them or any of them so to do.

(5) The search shall be made in their presence, and a list of all things seized in the course of such search and of the places in which they are respectively found shall be prepared by such officer or other person and signed by such witnesses; but no person witnessing a search under this section shall be required to attend the Court as a witness of the search unless specially summoned by it.

(6) The occupant of the place searched, or some person in his behalf, shall, in every instance, be permitted to attend during the search, and a copy of the list prepared under this section, signed by the said witnesses, shall be delivered to such occupant or person.

(7) When any person is searched under sub-section (3), a list of all things taken possession of shall be prepared, and a copy thereof shall be delivered to such person.

(8) Any person who, without reasonable cause, refuses or neglects to attend and witness a search under this section, when called upon to do so by an order in writing delivered or tendered to him, shall be deemed to have committed an offence under section 187 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).

101. Disposal of things found in search beyond jurisdiction.-

When, in the execution of a search-warrant at any place beyond the local jurisdiction of the Court which issued the same, any of the things for which search is made, are found, such things, together with the list of the same prepared under the provisions hereinafter contained, shall be immediately taken before the Court issuing the warrant, unless such place is nearer to the Magistrate having jurisdiction therein than to such Court, in which case the list and things shall be immediately taken before such Magistrate; and, unless there be good cause to the contrary, such Magistrate shall make an order authorising them to be taken to such Court.

D.- Miscellaneous

102. Power of police officer to seize certain property.-

(1) Any police officer may seize any property which may be alleged or suspected to have been stolen, or which may be found under circumstances which create suspicion of the commission of any offence.

(2) Such police officer, if subordinate to the officer in charge of a police station, shall forthwith report the seizure to that officer.

103. Magistrate may direct search in his presence.-

Any Magistrate may direct a search to be made in his presence of any place for the search of which he is competent to issue a search-warrant.

104. Power to impound document, etc., produced.- Any Court may, if it thinks fit, impound any document or thing produced before it under this Code.

105. Reciprocal arrangements regarding processes.-

(1) Where a Court in the territories to which this Code extends (hereafter in this section referred to as the said territories) desires that –

(a) a summons to an accused person, or

(b) a warrant for the arrest of an accused person, or

(c) a summons to any person requiring him to attend and produce a document or other thing, or to produce it, or

(d) a search-warrant,

issued by it shall be served or executed at any place within the local jurisdiction of a Court in any State or area in India outside the said territories, it may send such summons or warrant in duplicate by post or otherwise, to the presiding officer of that Court to be served or executed; and where any summons referred to in clause (a) or clause (c) has been so served, the provisions of section 68 shall apply in relation to such summons as if the presiding officer of the Court to whom it is sent were a Magistrate in the said territories.

(2) Where a Court in the said territories has received for service or execution-

(a) a summons to an accused person, or

(b) a warrant for the arrest of an accused person, or

(c) a summons to any person requiring him to attend and produce a document or

other thing or to produce it, or

(d) a search-warrant,

issued by a Court in any State or area in India outside the said territories, it shall cause the same to be served or executed as if it were a summons or warrant received by it from another Court in the said territories for service or execution within its local jurisdiction: and where-

(i) a warrant of arrest has been executed, the person arrested shall, so far as possible, be dealt with in accordance with the procedure prescribed by sections 80 and 81.

(ii) a search-warrant has been executed, the things found in the search shall, so far as possible, be dealt with in accordance with the procedure prescribed by section

101.CHAPTER VIII

SECURITY FOR KEEPING THE PEACE AND FOR GOOD BEHAVIOUR

106.Security for keeping the peace on conviction.-

(1) When a Court of Session or Court of a Magistrate of the first class convicts a person of any of the offences specified in sub-section (2) or of abetting any such offence and is of opinion that it is necessary to take security from such person for keeping the peace, the Court may, at the time of passing sentence

on such person, order him to execute a bond, with or without sureties, for keeping the peace for such period, not exceeding three years, as it thinks fit.

(2) The offences referred to in sub-section (1) are-

- (a) any offence punishable under Chapter VIII of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) other than an offence punishable under section 153A or section 153B or section 154 thereof;
- (b) any offence which consists of, or includes, assault or using criminal force or committing mischief;
- (c) any offence of criminal intimidation;
- (d) any other offence which caused, or was intended or known to be likely to cause, a breach of the peace.

(3) If the conviction is set aside on appeal or otherwise, the bond so executed shall become void.

(4) An order under this section may also be made by an Appellate Court or by a Court when exercising its powers of revision.

107. Security for keeping the peace in other cases.-

(1) When an Executive Magistrate receives information that any person is likely to commit a breach of the peace or disturb the public tranquillity or to do any wrongful act that may probably occasion a breach of the peace or disturb the public tranquillity and is of opinion that there is sufficient ground for proceeding, he may, in the manner hereinafter provided, require such person to show cause why he should not be ordered to execute a bond, for keeping the peace for such period, not exceeding one year, as the Magistrate thinks fit.

(2) Proceeding under this section may be taken before any Executive Magistrate when either the place where the breach of the peace or disturbance is apprehended is within his local jurisdiction or there is within such jurisdiction a person who is likely to commit a breach of the peace or disturb the public tranquillity or to do any wrongful act as aforesaid beyond such jurisdiction.

108. Security for good behaviour from persons disseminating seditious matters.-

(1) When a Judicial Magistrate of the first class receives information that there is within his local jurisdiction any person who, within or without such jurisdiction, –

(i) either orally or in writing or in any other manner, intentionally disseminates or attempts to disseminate or abets the dissemination of, –

(a) any matter the publication of which is punishable under section 124A or section 153A or section 153B or section 295A of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) or

(b) any matter concerning a Judge acting or purporting to act in the discharge of his official duties which amounts to criminal intimidation or defamation under the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860).

(ii)makes, produces, publishes or keeps for sale, imports, exports, conveys, sells, lets to hire, distributes, publicly exhibits or in any other manner puts into circulation any obscene matter such as is referred to in section 292 of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860)

(ii) and the Magistrate is of opinion that there is sufficient ground for proceeding, the Magistrate may, in the manner hereinafter provided, require such person to show cause why he should not be ordered to execute a bond, with or without sureties, for his good behaviour for such period, not exceeding one year, as the Magistrate thinks fit.

(2) No proceedings shall be taken under this section against the editor, proprietor, printer or publisher of any publication registered under, and edited, printed and published in conformity with, the rules laid down in the Press and Registration of Books Act, 1867, (25 of 1867) with reference to any matter contained in such publication except by the order or under the authority of the State Government or some officer empowered by the State Government in this behalf.

109. Security for good behaviour from suspected persons.-

When a Judicial Magistrate of the first class receives information that there is within his local jurisdiction a person taking precautions to conceal his presence and that there is reason to believe that he is doing so with a view to committing a cognizable offence, the Magistrate may, in the manner hereinafter provided, require such person to show cause why he should no the ordered to execute a bond, with or without sureties, for his good behaviour for such period, not exceeding one year, as the Magistrate thinks fit.

110. Security for good behaviour from habitual offenders..

When a Judicial Magistrate of the first class receives information that there is within his local jurisdiction a person who –

- (a) is by habit a robber, house-breaker, thief, or forger, or
- (b) is by habit a receiver of stolen property knowing the same to have been stolen, or
- (c) habitually protects or harbours thieves, or aids in the concealment or disposal of stolen property, or
- (d) habitually commits, or attempts to commit, or abets the commission of, the offence of kidnapping, abduction, extortion, cheating or mischief, or any offence punishable under Chapter XII of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) or under section 489A, section 489B, section 489C or section 489D of that Code, or
- (e) habitually commits, or attempts to commit, or abets the commission of, offences, involving a breach of the peace, or
- (f) habitually commits, or attempts to commit, or abets the commission of –
 - (i) any offence under one or more of the following Acts, namely:-
 - (a) the Drugs and Cosmetics Act, 1940 (23 of 1940);
 - (b) the Foreign Exchange Regulation Act, 1973 (7 of 1973);
 - (c) the Employees' Provident Funds and Family Pension Fund Act, 1952 (19 of 1952);
 - (d) the Prevention of Food Adulteration Act, 1954 (37 of 1954);
 - (e) the Essential Commodities Act, 1955(10 of 1955);
 - (f) the Untouchability (Offences) Act, 1955 (22 of 1955);
 - (g) the Customs Act, 1962 (52 of 1962); or
 - (ii) any offence punishable under any other law providing for the prevention of hoarding or profiteering or of adulteration of food or drugs or of corruption, or
- (g) is so desperate and dangerous as to render his being at large without security hazardous to the community,

such Magistrate may, in the manner hereinafter provided, require such person to show cause why he should not be ordered to execute a bond, with sureties, for his good behaviour for such period, not exceeding three years, as the Magistrate thinks fit.

111. Order to be made.-

When a Magistrate acting under section 107, section 108, section 109 or section 110, deems it necessary to require any person to show cause under such section, he shall make an order in writing, setting forth the substance of the information received, the amount of the bond to be executed, the term for which it is to be in force, and the number, character and class of sureties (if any) required.

112. Procedure in respect of person in Court.-

If the person in respect of whom such order is made is present in Court, it shall be read over to him, or, if he so desires, the substance thereof shall be explained to him.

113. Summons or warrant in case of person not so present.-

If such person is not present in Court, the Magistrate shall issue a summons requiring him to appear, or, when such person is in custody, a warrant directing the officer in whose custody he is to bring him before the Court;

Provided that whenever it appears to such Magistrate, upon the report of a police officer or upon other information (the substance of which report or information shall be recorded by the Magistrate), that there is reason to fear the commission of a breach of the peace, and that such breach of the peace cannot be prevented otherwise than by the immediate arrest of such person, the Magistrate may at any time issue a warrant for his arrest.

114. Copy of order to accompany summons or warrant.-

Every summons or warrant issued under section 113, shall be accompanied by a copy of the order made under section 111, and such copy shall be delivered by the officer serving or executing such summons or warrant to the person served with, or arrested under, the same.

115. Power to dispense with personal attendance.-

The Magistrate may, if he sees sufficient cause, dispense with the personal attendance of any person called upon to show cause why he should not be ordered to execute a bond for keeping the peace or for good behaviour and may permit him to appear by a pleader.

116.Inquiry as to truth of information.-

(1) When an order under section 111 has been read or explained under section 112 to a person present in Court, or when any person appears or is brought before a Magistrate in compliance with, or in execution of, a summons or warrant, issued under section 113, the Magistrate shall proceed to inquire into the truth of the information upon which action has been taken, and to take such further evidence as may appear necessary.

(2) Such inquiry shall be made, as nearly as may be practicable, in the manner hereinafter prescribed for conducting trial and recording evidence in summons-cases.

(3) After the commencement, and before the completion, of the inquiry under sub-section (1), the Magistrate, if he considers that immediate measures are necessary for the prevention of a breach of the peace or disturbance of the public tranquillity or the commission of any offence or for the public safety, may, for reasons to be recorded in writing, direct the person in respect of whom the order under section 111 has been made to execute a bond, with or without sureties, for keeping the peace or maintaining good behaviour until the conclusion of the inquiry, and may detail him in custody until such bond is executed or, in default of execution, until the inquiry is concluded:

Provided that-

(a) no person against whom proceedings are not being taken under section 108, section 109, or section 110 shall be directed to execute a bond for maintaining good behaviour;

(b) the conditions of such bond, whether as to the amount thereof or as to the provision of sureties or the number thereof or the pecuniary extent of their liability, shall not be more onerous than those specified in the order under section 111.

(4) For the purpose of this section the fact that a person is an habitual offender or is so desperate and dangerous as to render his being at large without security hazardous to the community may be proved by evidence of general repute or otherwise.

(5) Where two or more persons have been associated together in the matter under inquiry, they may be dealt with in the same or separate inquiries as the Magistrate shall think just.

(6) The inquiry under this section shall be completed within a period of six months from the date of its commencement, and if such inquiry is not so completed, the proceedings under this Chapter shall on the expiry of the said period, stand terminated unless, for special reasons to be recorded in writing, the Magistrate otherwise directs:

Provided that where any person has been kept in detention pending such inquiry, the proceeding against that person, unless terminated earlier, shall stand terminated on the expiry of a period of six months of such detention.

(7) Where any direction is made under sub-section (6) permitting the continuance of proceedings, the Sessions Judge may, on an application made to him by the aggrieved party, vacate such direction if he is satisfied that it was not based on any special reason or was perverse.

117. Order to give security.-

If, upon such inquiry, it is proved that it is necessary for keeping the peace or maintaining good behaviour, as the case may be, that the person in respect of whom the inquiry is made should execute a bond, with or without sureties, the Magistrate shall make an order accordingly:

Provided that-

(a) no person shall be ordered to give security of a nature different from, or of an amount large than, or for a period longer than, that specified in the order made under section 111;

(b) the amount of every bond shall be fixed with due regard to the circumstances of the case and shall not be excessive;

(c) when the person in respect of whom the inquiry is made is a minor, the bond shall be executed only by his sureties.

118. Discharge of person informed against.-

If, on an inquiry under section 116, it is not proved that it is necessary for keeping the peace or maintaining good behaviour, as the case may be, that the person in respect of whom the inquiry is made, should execute a bond, the Magistrate shall make an entry on the record to that effect, and if such person is in custody only for the purposes of the inquiry, shall release him, or, if such person is not in custody, shall discharge him.

119. Commencement of period for which security is required.-

(1) If any person, in respect of whom an order requiring security is made under section 106 or section 117, is, at the time such order is made, sentenced

to, or undergoing a sentence of, imprisonment, the period for which such security is required shall commence on the expiration of such sentence.

(2) In other cases such period shall commence on the date of such order unless the Magistrate, for sufficient reason, fixes a later date.

120. Contents of bond.-

The bond to be executed by any such person shall bind him to keep the peace or to be of good behaviour, as the case may be, and in the latter case the commission or attempt to commit, or the abetment of, any offence punishable with imprisonment, wherever it may be committed, is a breach of the bond.

121. Power to reject sureties.-

(1) A Magistrate may refuse to accept any surety offered, or may reject any surety previously accepted by him or his predecessor under this Chapter on the ground that such surety is an unfit person for the purposes of the bond:

Provided that, before so refusing to accept or rejecting any such surety, he shall either himself hold an inquiry on oath into the fitness of the surety, or cause such inquiry to be held and a report to be made thereon by a Magistrate subordinate to him.

(2) Such Magistrate shall, before holding the inquiry, give reasonable notice to the surety and to the person by whom the surety was offered and shall, in making the inquiry, record the substance of the evidence adduced before him.

(3) If the Magistrate is satisfied, after considering the evidence so adduced either before him or before a Magistrate deputed under sub-section (1), and the report of such Magistrate (if any), that the surety is an unfit person for the purposes of the bond, he shall make an order refusing to accept or rejecting, as the case may be, such surety and recording his reasons for so doing:

Provided that, before making an order rejecting any surety who has previously been accepted, the Magistrate shall issue his summons or warrant, as he thinks fit, and cause the person for whom the surety is bound to appear or to be brought before him.

122. Imprisonment in default of security.

-(1) (a) If any person ordered to give security under section 106 or section 117 does not give such security on or before the date on which the period for which such security is to be given commences, he shall, except in the case next hereinafter mentioned, be committed to prison, or, if he is already in prison,

be detained in prison until such period expires or until within such period he gives the security to the Court or Magistrate who made the order requiring it.

(b) If any person after having executed a bond without sureties for keeping the peace in pursuance of an order of a Magistrate under section 117, is proved, to the satisfaction of such Magistrate or his successor-in-office, to have committed breach of the bond, such Magistrate or successor-in-office may, after recording the grounds of such proof, order that the person be arrested and detained in prison until the expiry of the period of the bond and such order shall be without prejudice to any other punishment or forfeiture to which the said person may be liable in accordance with law.

(2) When such person has been ordered by a Magistrate to give security for a period exceeding one year, such Magistrate shall, if such person does not give such security as aforesaid, issue a warrant directing him to be detained in prison pending the orders of the Sessions Judge and the proceedings shall be laid, as soon as conveniently may be, before such Court.

(3) Such Court, after examining such proceedings and requiring from the Magistrate any further information or evidence which it thinks necessary, and after giving the concerned person a reasonable opportunity of being heard, may pass such order on the case as it thinks fit:

Provided that the period (if any) for which any person is imprisoned for failure to give security shall not exceed three years.

(4) If security has been required in the course of the same proceeding from two or more persons in respect of any one of whom the proceedings are referred to the Sessions Judge under sub-section (2), such reference shall also include the case of any other of such persons who has been ordered to give security, and the provisions of sub-sections (2) and (3) shall, in that event, apply to the case of such other person also, except that the period (if any) for which he may be imprisoned shall not exceed the period for which he was ordered to give security.

(5) A Sessions Judge may in his discretion transfer any proceedings laid before him under sub-section (2) or sub-section (4) to an Additional Sessions Judge or Assistant Sessions Judge and upon such transfer, such Additional Sessions Judge or Assistant Sessions Judge may exercise the powers of a Sessions Judge under this section in respect of such proceedings.

(6) If the security is tendered to the officer in charge of the jail, he shall forthwith refer the matter to the Court or Magistrate who made the order, and shall await the orders of such Court or Magistrate.

(7) Imprisonment for failure to give security for keeping the peace shall be simple.

(8) Imprisonment for failure to give security for good behaviour shall, where the proceedings have been taken under section 108, be simple, and, where the proceedings have been taken under section 109 or section 110, be rigorous or simple as the Court or Magistrate in each case directs.

123. Power to release persons imprisoned for failing to give security.-

(1) Whenever the Chief Judicial Magistrate is of opinion that any person imprisoned for failing to give security under this Chapter may be released without hazard to the community or to any other person, he may order such person to be discharged.

(2) Whenever any person has been imprisoned for failing to give security under this Chapter, the High Court or Court of Session, or, where the order was made by any other Court, the Chief Judicial Magistrate, may make an order reducing the amount of the security or the number of sureties or the time for which security has been required.

(3) An order under sub-section (1) may direct the discharge of such person either without conditions or upon any conditions which such person accepts:

Provided that any condition imposed shall cease to be operative when the period for which such person was ordered to give security has expired.

(4) The State Government may prescribe the conditions upon which a conditional discharge may be made.

(5) If any condition upon which any person has been discharged it, in the opinion of the Chief Judicial Magistrate by whom the order of discharge was made or of his successor, not fulfilled, he may cancel the same.

(6) When a conditional order of discharge has been cancelled under sub-section (5), such person may be arrested by any police officer without warrant, and shall thereupon be produced before the Chief Judicial Magistrate.

(7) Unless such person gives security in accordance with the terms of the original order for the unexpired portion of the term for which he was in the first instance committed or ordered to be detained (such portion being deemed to be a period equal to the period between the date of the breach of the conditions of discharge and the date on which, except for such conditional discharge, he would have been entitled to release), the Chief Judicial Magistrate may remand such person to prison to undergo such unexpired portion.

(8) A person remanded to prison under sub-section (7) shall, subject to the provisions of section 122, be released at any time on giving security in accordance with the terms of the original order for the unexpired portion aforesaid to the Court or Magistrate by whom such order was made, or to its or his successor.

(9) The High Court or Court of Session may at any time, for sufficient reasons to be recorded in writing, cancel any bond for keeping the peace or for good behaviour executed under this Chapter by any order made by it, and the Chief Judicial Magistrate may make such cancellation where such bond was executed under his order or under the order of any other Court in his direct.

(10) Any surety for the peaceable conduct or good behaviour of another person ordered to execute a bond under this Chapter may at any time apply to the Court making such order to cancel the bond and on such application being made, the Court shall issue a summons or warrant, as it thinks fit, requiring the person for whom such surety is bound to appear or to be brought before it.

124. Security for unexpired period of bond.

-(1) When a person for whose appearance a summons or warrant has been issued under the proviso to sub-section (3) of section 121 or under sub-section (10) of section 123, appears or is brought before the Magistrate or Court, the Magistrate or Court shall cancel the bond executed by such person and shall order such person to give, for the unexpired portion of the term of such bond, fresh security of the same description as the original security.

(2) Every such order shall, for the purposes of sections 120 to 123 (both inclusive), be deemed to be an order made under section 106 or section 117, as the case may be.

125. Order for maintenance of wives, children and parents.-

(1) If any person having sufficient means neglects or refuses to maintain-

(a) his wife, unable to maintain herself, or

(b) his legitimate or illegitimate minor child, whether married or not, unable to maintain itself, or

(c) his legitimate or illegitimate child (not being a married daughter) who has attained majority, where such child is by reason of any physical or mental abnormality or injury unable to maintain itself, or

(d) his father or mother, unable to maintain himself or herself,

a Magistrate of the first class may, upon proof of such neglect or refusal, order such person to make a monthly allowance for the maintenance of his wife or such child, father or mother, at such monthly rate not exceeding five hundred rupees in the whole, as such Magistrate thinks fit, and to pay the same to such person as the Magistrate may from time to time direct:

Provided that the Magistrate may order the father of a minor female child referred to in clause (b) to make such allowance, until she attains her majority, if the Magistrate is satisfied that the husband of such minor female child, if married, is not possessed of sufficient means.

Explanation.- For the purposes of this Chapter, -

(a) "minor" means a person who, under the provisions of the Indian Majority Act, 1875(9 of 1875) is deemed not to have attained his majority;

(b) "wife" includes a woman who has been divorced by, or has obtained a divorce from, her husband and has not remarried.

(2) Such allowance shall be payable from the date of the order, or, if so ordered, from the date of the application for maintenance.

(3) If any person so ordered fails without sufficient cause to comply with the order, any such Magistrate may, for every breach of the order, issue a warrant for levying the amount due in the manner provided for levying fines, and may sentence such person, for the whole or any part of each month's allowance remaining unpaid after the execution of the warrant, to imprisonment for a term which may extend to one month or until payment if sooner made:

Provided that no warrant shall be issued for the recovery of any amount due under this section unless application be made to the Court to levy such amount within a period of one year from the date on which it became due:

Provided further that if such person offers to maintain his wife on condition of her living with him, and she refuses to live with him, such Magistrate may consider any grounds of refusal stated by her, and may make an order under this section notwithstanding such offer, if he is satisfied that there is a just ground for so doing.

Explanation.- If a husband has contracted marriage with another woman or keeps a mistress, it shall be considered to be just ground for his wife's refusal to live with him.

(4) No wife shall be entitled to receive an allowance from her husband under this section if she is living in adultery, or if, without any sufficient reason, she refuses to live with her husband, or if they are living separately by mutual consent.

(5) On proof that any wife in whose favour an order has been made under this section is living in adultery, or that without sufficient reason she refuses to live with her husband, or that they are living separately by mutual consent, the Magistrate shall cancel the order.

126. **Procedure.-** (1) Proceedings under section 125 may be taken against any person in any district-

(a) where he is, or

(b) where he or his wife resides, or

(c) where he last resided with his wife, or as the case may be, with the mother of the illegitimate child.

(2) All evidence in such proceedings shall be taken in the presence of the person against whom an order for payment of maintenance is proposed to be made, or, when his personal attendance is dispensed with in the presence of his pleader, and shall be recorded in the manner prescribed for summons-cases:

Provided that if the Magistrate is satisfied that the person against whom an order for payment of maintenance is proposed to be made is wilfully avoiding service, or wilfully neglecting to attend the Court, the Magistrate may proceed

to hear and determine the case ex parte and any order so made may be set aside for good cause shown on an application made within three months from the date thereof subject to such terms including terms as to payment of costs to the opposite party as the Magistrate may think just and proper.

(3) The Court in dealing with applications under section 125 shall have power to make such order as to costs as may be just.

127.Alteration in allowance.-

(1) On proof of a change in the circumstances of any person, receiving, under section 125 a monthly allowance, or ordered under the same section to pay a monthly allowance to his wife, child, father or mother, as the case may be, the Magistrate may make such alteration in the allowance as he thinks fit:

Provided that if he increase the allowance, the monthly rate of five hundred rupees in the whole shall not be exceeded.

(2) Where it appears to the Magistrate that, in consequence of any decision of a competent Civil Court, any order made under section 125 should be cancelled or varied, he shall cancel the order or, as the case may be, vary the same accordingly.

(3) Where any order has been made under section 125 in favour of a woman who has been divorced by, or has obtained a divorce from, her husband, the Magistrate shall, if he is satisfied that –

(a) the woman has, after the date of such divorce, remarried, cancel such order as from the date of her remarriage;

(b) the woman has been divorced by her husband and that she has received, whether before or after the date of the said order, the whole of the sum which, under any customary or personal law applicable to the parties, was payable on such divorce, cancel such order, –

(i) in the case where such sum was paid before such order from the date on which such order was made,

(ii) in any other case, from the date of expiry of the period, if any, for which maintenance has been actually paid by the husband to the woman;

(c) the woman has obtained a divorce from her husband and that she had voluntarily surrendered her rights to maintenance after her divorce, cancel the order from the date thereof.

(4) At the time of making any decree for the recovery of any maintenance or dowry by any person, to whom a monthly allowance has been ordered to be paid under section 125, the Civil Court shall take into account the sum which has been paid to, or recovered by, such person as monthly allowance in pursuance of the said order.

128. Enforcement of order of maintenance.-

A copy of the order of maintenance shall be given without payment to the person in whose favour it is made, or to his guardian, if any, or to the person to whom the allowance is to be paid; and such order may be enforced by any Magistrate in any place where the person against whom it is made may be, on such Magistrate being satisfied as to the identity of the parties and the non-payment of the allowance due.

CHAPTER X
MAINTENANCE OF PUBLIC ORDER AND TRANQUILLITY

A.- Unlawful assemblies

129. Dispersal of assembly by use of civil force.-

(1) Any Executive Magistrate or officer incharge of a police station or, in the absence of such officer incharge, any police officer, not below the rank of a sub-inspector, may command any unlawful assembly, or any assembly of five or more persons likely to cause a disturbance of the public peace, to disperse; and it shall thereupon be the duty of the members of such assembly to disperse accordingly.

(2) If, upon being so commanded, any such assembly does not disperse, or if, without being so commanded, it conducts itself in such a manner as to show a determination not to disperse, any Executive Magistrate or police officer referred to in sub-section (1), may proceed to disperse such assembly by force, and may require the assistance of any male person, not being an officer or member of the armed forces and acting as such, for the purpose of dispersing such assembly, and, if necessary, arresting and confining the persons who form part of it, in order to disperse such assembly or that they may be punished according to law.

130. Use of armed forces to disperse assembly.-

(1) If any such assembly cannot be otherwise dispersed, and if it is necessary for the public security that it should be dispersed, the Executive Magistrate of the highest rank who is present may cause it to be dispersed by the armed forces.

(2) Such Magistrate may require any officer in command of any group of persons belonging to the armed forces to disperse the assembly with the help of the armed forces under his command, and to arrest and confine such persons forming part of it as the Magistrate may direct, or as it may be necessary to arrest and confine in order to disperse the assembly or to have them punished according to law.

(3) Every such officer of the armed forces shall obey such requisition in such manner as he thinks fit, but in so doing he shall use as little force, and do as little injury to person and property, as may be consistent with dispersing the assembly and arresting and detaining such persons.

131. Power of certain armed force officers to disperse assembly.-

When the public security is manifestly endangered by any such assembly and no Executive Magistrate can be communicated with, any commissioned or gazetted officer of the armed forces may disperse such assembly with the help of the armed forces under his command, and may arrest and confine any persons forming part of it, in order to disperse such assembly or that they may be punished according to law; but if, while he is acting under this section, it becomes practicable for him to communicate with an Executive Magistrate, he shall do so, and shall thenceforward obey the instructions of the Magistrate, as to whether he shall or shall not continue such action.

132. Protection against prosecution for acts done under preceding sections.-

(1) No prosecution against any person for any act purporting to be done under section 129, section 130 or section 131 shall be instituted in any Criminal Court except –

(a) with the sanction of the Central Government where such person is an officer or member of the armed forces;

(b) with the sanction of the State Government in any other case.

(2) (a) No Executive Magistrate or police officer acting under any of the said sections in good faith;

(b) no person doing any act in good faith in compliance with a requisition under section 129 or section 130;

(c) no officer of the armed forces acting under section 131 in good faith;

(d) no member of the armed forces doing any act in obedience to any order which he was bound to obey,
shall be deemed to have thereby committed an offence.

(3) In this section and in the preceding sections of this Chapter, –

(a) the expression “armed forces” means the military, naval and air forces, operating as land forces and includes any other Armed Forces of the Union so operating;

(b) “officer”, in relation to the armed forces, means a person commissioned, gazetted or in pay as an officer of the armed forces and includes a junior commissioned officer, a warrant officer, a petty officer, a non-commissioned officer and a non-gazetted officer;

(c) “member”, in relation to the armed forces, means a person in the armed forces other than an officer.

B.- Public nuisances

133. Conditional order for removal of nuisance.-

(1) Whenever a District Magistrate or a Sub-divisional Magistrate or any other Executive Magistrate specially empowered in this behalf by the State Government, on receiving the report of a police officer or other information and on taking such evidence (if any) as he thinks fit, considers –

(a) that any unlawful obstruction or nuisance should be removed from any public place or from any way, river or channel which is or may be lawfully used by the public; or

(b) that the conduct of any trade or occupation, or the keeping of any goods or merchandise, is injurious to the health or physical comfort of the community , and that in consequence such trade or occupation should be prohibited or regulated or such goods or merchandise should be removed or the keeping thereof regulated; or

(c) that the construction of any building, or, the disposal of any substance , as is likely to occasion conflagration or explosion, should be prevented or stopped; or

(d) that any building, tent or structure, or any tree is in such a condition that it is likely to fall and thereby cause injury to persons living or carrying on business in the neighbourhood or passing by, and that in consequence the

removal, repair or support of such building, tent or structure, or the removal or support of such tree, is necessary; or

(e) that any tank, well or excavation adjacent to any such way or public place should be fenced in such manner as to prevent danger arising to the public; or

(f) that any dangerous animal should be destroyed, confined or otherwise disposed of,

such Magistrate may make a conditional order requiring the person causing such obstruction or nuisance, or carrying on such trade or occupation, or keeping any such goods or merchandise, or owning, possessing or controlling such building, tent, structure, substance, tank, well or excavation, or owning or possessing such animal or tree, within a time to be fixed in the order-

(i) to remove such obstruction or nuisance; or

(ii) to desist from carrying on, or to remove or regulate in such manner as may be directed, such trade or occupation, or to remove such goods or merchandise, or to regulate the keeping thereof in such manner as may be directed; or

(iii) to prevent or stop the construction of such building, or to alter the disposal of such substance; or

(iv) to remove, repair or support such building, tent or structure, or to remove or support such trees; or

(v) to fence such tank, well or excavation; or

(vi) to destroy, confine or dispose of such dangerous animal in the manner provided in the said order;

or, if he objects so to do, to appear before himself or some other Executive Magistrate subordinate to him at a time and place to be fixed by the order, and show cause, in the manner hereinafter provided, why the order should not be made absolute.

(2) No order duly made by a Magistrate under this section shall be called in question in any Civil Court.

Explanation.- A “public place” includes also property belonging to the State, camping grounds and left unoccupied for sanitary or recreative purposes.

134.Service or notification of order.-

(1)The order shall, if practicable, be served on the person against whom it is made, in the manner herein provided for service of a summons.

(2) If such order cannot be so served, it shall be notified by proclamation, published in such manner as the State Government may, by rules, direct, and a copy thereof shall be stuck up at such place or places as may be fittest for conveying the information to such person.

135.Person to whom order is addressed to obey or show cause.-

The person against whom such order is made shall –

(a) perform, within the time and in the manner specified in the order, the act directed thereby; or

(b) appear in accordance with such order and show cause against the same.

136.Consequences of his failing to do so.-

If such person does not perform such act or appear and show cause, he shall be liable to the penalty prescribed in that behalf in section 188 of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860)and the order shall be made absolute.

137.Procedure where existence of public right is denied.-

(1) Where an order is made under section 133 for the purpose of preventing obstruction, nuisance or danger to the public in the use of any way, river, channel or place, the Magistrate shall, on the appearance before him of the person against whom the order was made, question him as to whether he denies the existence of any public right in respect of the way, river, channel or place, and if he does so, the Magistrate shall, before proceeding under section 138, inquire into the matter.

(2) If in such inquiry the Magistrate finds that there is any reliable evidence in support of such denial, he shall stay the proceedings until the matter of the existence of such right has been decided by a competent Court; and, if he finds that there is no such evidence, he shall proceed as laid down in section 138.

(3) A person who has, on being questioned by the Magistrate under sub-section (1), failed to deny the existence of a public right of the nature therein referred to, or who, having made such denial, has failed to adduce reliable

evidence in support thereof, shall not in the subsequent proceedings be permitted to make any such denial.

138. Procedure where he appears to show cause.-

(1) If the person against whom an order under section 133 is made appears and shows cause against the order, the Magistrate shall take evidence in the matter as in a summons-case.

(2) If the Magistrate is satisfied that the order, either as originally made or subject to such modification as he considers necessary, is reasonable and proper, the order shall be made absolute without modification or, as the case may be, with such modification.

(3) If the Magistrate is not so satisfied, no further proceedings shall be taken in the case.

139. Power of Magistrate to direct local investigation and examination of an expert.-

The Magistrate may, for the purposes of an inquiry under section 137 or section 138-

(a) direct a local investigation to be made by such person as he thinks fit; or

(b) summon and examine an expert.

140. Power of Magistrate to furnish written instructions, etc.-

(1) Where the Magistrate directs a local investigation by any person under section 139, the Magistrate may –

(a) furnish such person with such written instructions as may seem necessary for his guidance;

(b) declare by whom the whole or any part of the necessary expenses of the local investigation shall be paid.

(2) The report of such person may be read as evidence in the case.

(3) Where the Magistrate summons and examines an expert under section 139, the Magistrate may direct by whom the costs of such summoning and examination shall be paid.

141. Procedure on order being made absolute and consequences of disobedience.-

(1) When an order has been made absolute under section 136 or section 138, the Magistrate shall give notice of the same to the person against whom the order was made, and shall further require him to perform the act directed by the order within a time to be fixed in the notice, and inform him that, in case of disobedience, he will be liable to the penalty provided by section 188 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860).

(2) If such act is not performed within the time fixed, the Magistrate may cause it to be performed, and may recover the costs of performing it, either by the sale of any building, goods or other property removed by his order, or by the distress and sale of any other movable property of such person within or without such Magistrate's local jurisdiction and if such other property is without such jurisdiction, the order shall authorise its attachment and sale when endorsed by the Magistrate within whose local jurisdiction the property to be attached is found.

(3) No suit shall lie in respect of anything done in good faith under this section.

142.Injunction pending inquiry.

– (1) If a Magistrate making an order under section 133 considers that immediate measures should be taken to prevent imminent danger or injury of a serious kind to the public, he may issue such an injunction to the person against whom the order was made, as is required to obviate or prevent such danger or injury pending the determination of the matter.

(2) In default of such person forthwith obeying such injunction, the Magistrate may himself use, or cause to be used, such means as he thinks fit to obviate such danger or to prevent such injury.

(3) No suit shall lie in respect of anything done in good faith by a Magistrate under this section.

143.Magistrate may prohibit repetition or continuance of public nuisance.-

A District Magistrate or Sub-divisional Magistrate, or any other Executive Magistrate empowered by the State Government or the District Magistrate in this behalf, may order any person not to repeat or continue a public nuisance, as defined in the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) or any special or local law.

C.- Urgent cases of nuisance or apprehended danger

144. Power to issue order in urgent cases of nuisance or apprehended danger.-

(1) In cases where, in the opinion of a District Magistrate, a Sub-divisional Magistrate or any other Executive Magistrate specially empowered by the State Government in this behalf, there is sufficient ground for proceeding under this section and immediate prevention or speedy remedy is desirable, such Magistrate may, by a written order stating the material facts of the case and served in the manner provided by section 134, direct any person to abstain from a certain act or to take certain order with respect to certain property in his possession or under his management, if such Magistrate considers that such direction is likely to prevent, or tends to prevent, obstruction, annoyance or injury to any person lawfully employed, or danger to human life, health or safety, or a disturbance of the public tranquillity, or a riot, or an affray.

(2) An order under this section may, in cases of emergency or in cases where the circumstances do not admit of the serving in due time of a notice upon the person against whom the order is directed, be passed ex parte.

(3) An order under this section may be directed to a particular individual, or to persons residing in a particular place or area, or to the public generally when frequenting or visiting a particular place or area.

(4) No order under this section shall remain in force for more than two months from the making thereof:

Provided that, if the State Government considers it necessary so to do for preventing danger to human life, health or safety or for preventing a riot or any affray, it may, by notification, direct that an order made by a Magistrate under this section shall remain in force for such further period not exceeding six months from the date on which the order made by the Magistrate would have, but for such order, expired, as it may specify in the said notification.

(5) Any Magistrate may, either on his own motion or on the application of any person aggrieved, rescind or alter any order made under this section, by himself or any Magistrate subordinate to him or by his predecessor-in-office.

(6) The State Government may, either on its own motion or on the application of any person aggrieved, rescind or alter any order made by it under the proviso to sub-section (4).

(7) Where an application under sub-section (5) or sub-section (6) is received, the Magistrate, or the State Government, as the case may be, shall afford to the applicant an early opportunity of appearing before him or it, either in person or by pleader and showing cause against the order; and if the Magistrate or the State Government, as the case may be, rejects the application wholly or in part, he or it shall record in writing the reasons for so doing.

D.- Disputes as to immovable property

145. Procedure where dispute concerning land or water is likely to cause breach of peace.-

(1) Whenever an Executive Magistrate is satisfied from a report of a police or upon other information that a dispute likely to cause a breach of the peace exists concerning any land or water or the boundaries thereof, within his local jurisdiction, he shall make an order in writing, stating the grounds of his being so satisfied, and requiring the parties concerned in such dispute to attend his Court in person or by pleader on a specified date and time, and to put in written statements of their respective claims as respects the fact of actual possession of the subject of dispute.

(2) For the purposes of this section, the expression “land or water” includes buildings, markets, fisheries, crops or other produce of land, and the rents or profits of any such property.

(3) A copy of the order shall be served in the manner provided by this Code for the service of a summons upon such person or persons as the Magistrate may direct, and at least one copy shall be published by being affixed to some conspicuous place at or near the subject of dispute.

(4) The Magistrate shall then, without reference to the merits or the claims of any of the parties to a right to possess the subject of dispute, peruse the statements so put in, hear the parties, receive all such evidence as may be produced by them, take such further evidence, if any, as he thinks necessary, and, if possible, decide whether any and which of the parties was, at the date of the order made by him under sub-section (1), in possession of the subject of dispute:

Provided that if it appears to the Magistrate that any party has been forcibly and wrongfully dispossessed within two months next before the date on which the report of a police officer or other information was received by the Magistrate, or after that date and before the date of his order under sub-

section (1), he may treat the party so dispossessed as if that party had been in possession on the date of his order under sub-section (1).

(5) Nothing in this section shall preclude any party so required to attend, or any other person interested, from showing that no such dispute as aforesaid exists or has existed; and in such case the Magistrate shall cancel his said order, and all further proceedings thereon shall be stayed, but, subject to such cancellation, the order of the Magistrate under sub-section (1) shall be final.

(6) (a) If the Magistrate decides that one of the parties was, or should under the proviso to sub-section (4) be treated as being, in such possession of the said subject, he shall issue an order declaring such party to be entitled to possession thereof until evicted therefrom in due course of law, and forbidding all disturbance of such possession until such eviction; and when he proceeds under the proviso to sub-section (4), may restore to possession the party forcibly and wrongfully dispossessed.

(b) The order made under this sub-section shall be served and published in the manner laid down in sub-section (3).

(7) When any party to any such proceeding dies, the Magistrate may cause the legal representative of the deceased party to be made a party to the proceeding and shall thereupon continue the inquiry, and if any question arises as to who the legal representative of a deceased party for the purposes of such proceeding is, all persons claiming to be representatives of the deceased party shall be made parties thereto.

(8) If the Magistrate is of opinion that any crop or other produce of the property, the subject of dispute in a proceeding under this section pending before him, is subject to speedy and natural decay, he may make an order for the proper custody or sale of such property, and, upon the completion of the inquiry, shall make such order for the disposal of such property, or the sale-proceeds thereof, as he thinks fit.

(9) The Magistrate may, if he thinks fit, at any stage of the proceedings under this section, on the application of either party, issue a summons to any witness directing him to attend or to produce any document or thing.

(10) Nothing in this section shall be deemed to be in derogation of the powers of the Magistrate to proceed under section 107.

146. Power to attach subject of dispute and to appoint receiver.-

(1) If the Magistrate at any time after making the order under sub-section (1) of section 145 considers the case to be one of emergency, or if he decides that none of the parties was then in such possession as is referred to in section 145, or if he is unable to satisfy himself as to which of them was then in such possession of the subject of dispute, he may attach the subject of dispute until a competent Court has determined the rights of the parties thereto with regard to the person entitled to the possession thereof:

Provided that such Magistrate may withdraw the attachment at any time if he is satisfied that there is no longer any likelihood of breach of the peace with regard to the subject of dispute.

(2) When the Magistrate attaches the subject of dispute, he may, if no receiver in relation to such subject of dispute has been appointed by any Civil Court, make such arrangements as he considers proper for looking after the property or if he thinks fit, appoint a receiver thereof, who shall have, subject to the control of the Magistrate, all the powers of a receiver appointed under the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908:

Provided that in the event of a receiver being subsequently appointed in relation to the subject of dispute by any Civil Court, the Magistrate-

(a) shall order the receiver appointed by him to hand over the possession of the subject of dispute to the receiver appointed by the Civil Court and shall thereafter discharge the receiver appointed by him;

(b) may make such other incidental or consequential orders as may be just.

147. Dispute concerning right of use of land or water.-

(1) Whenever an Executive Magistrate is satisfied from the report of a police officer or upon other information, that a dispute likely to cause a breach of the peace exists regarding any alleged right of user of any land or water within his local jurisdiction, whether such right be claimed as an easement or otherwise, he shall make an order in writing, stating the grounds of his being so satisfied and requiring the parties concerned in such dispute to attend his Court in person or by pleader on a specified date and time and to put in written statements of their respective claims.

Explanation.- The expression “land or water” has the meaning given to it in sub-section (2) of section 145.

(2) The Magistrate shall then peruse the statements so put in, hear the parties, receive all such evidence as may be produced by them respectively, consider

the effect of such evidence, take such further evidence, if any, as he thinks necessary and, if possible, decide whether such right exists; and the provisions of section 145 shall, so far as may be, apply in the case of such inquiry.

(3) If it appears to such Magistrate that such rights exist, he may make an order prohibiting any interference with the exercise of such right, including, in a proper case, an order for the removal of any obstruction in the exercise of any such right:

Provided that no such order shall be made where the right is exercisable at all times of the year, unless such right has been exercised within three months next before the receipt under sub-section (1) of the report of a police officer or other information leading to the institution of the inquiry, or where the right is exercisable only at particular seasons or on particular occasions, unless the right has been exercised during the last of such seasons or on the last of such occasions before such receipt.

(4) When in any proceedings commenced under sub-section (1) of section 145 the Magistrate finds that the dispute is as regards an alleged right of user of land or water, he may, after recording his reasons, continue with the proceedings as if they had been commenced under sub-section (1);

and when in any proceedings commenced under sub-section (1) the magistrate finds that the dispute should be dealt with under section 145, he may, after recording his reasons, continue with the proceedings as if they had been commenced under sub-section (1) of section 145.

148. Local inquiry.-

(1) Whenever a local inquiry is necessary for the purposes of section 145, section 146 or section 147, a District Magistrate or Sub-divisional Magistrate may depute any Magistrate subordinate to him to make the inquiry, and may furnish him with such written instructions as may seem necessary for his guidance, and may declare by whom the whole or any part of the necessary expenses of the inquiry shall be paid.

(2) The report of the person so deputed may be read as evidence in the case.

(3) When any costs have been incurred by any party to a proceeding under section 145, section 146 or section 147, the Magistrate passing a decision may direct by whom such costs shall be paid, whether by such party or by any other party to the proceeding, and whether in whole or in part or proportion and

such costs may include any expenses incurred in respect of witnesses and of pleaders' fees, which the Court may consider reasonable.

CHAPTER XI

PREVENTIVE ACTION OF THE POLICE

149. Police to prevent cognizable offences.-

Every police officer may interpose for the purpose of preventing, and shall, to the best of his ability, prevent, the commission of any cognizable offence.

150. Information of design to commit cognizable offences.-

Every police officer receiving information of a design to commit any cognizable offence shall communicate such information to the police officer to whom he is subordinate, and to any other officer whose duty it is to prevent or take cognizance of the commission of any such offence.

151. Arrest to prevent the commission of cognizable offences.-

(1) A police officer knowing of a design to commit any cognizable offence may arrest, without orders from a Magistrate and without a warrant, the person so designing, if it appears to such officer that the commission of the offence cannot be otherwise prevented.

(2) No person arrested under sub-section (1) shall be detained in custody for a period exceeding twenty-four hours from the time of his arrest unless his further detention is required or authorised under any other provisions of this Code or of any other law for the time being in force.

152. Prevention of injury to public property.-

A police officer may of his own authority interpose to prevent any injury attempted to be committed in his view to any public property, movable or immovable, or the removal of injury of any public landmark or buoy or other mark used for navigation.

153. Inspection of weights and measures.-

(1) Any officer in charge of a police station may, without a warrant, enter any place within the limits of such station for the purpose of inspecting or searching for any weights or measures or instruments for weighing, used or kept therein, whenever he has reason to believe that there are in such place any weights, measures or instruments for weighing which are false.

(2) If he finds in such place any weights, measures or instruments for weighing which are false, he may seize the same, and shall forthwith give information of such seizure to a Magistrate having jurisdiction.

CHAPTER XII

INFORMATION TO THE POLICE AND THEIR POWERS TO INVESTIGATE

154. Information in cognizable cases.-

(1) Every information relating to the commission of a cognizable offence, if given orally to an officer in charge of a police station, shall be reduced to writing by him or under his direction, and be read over to the informant; and every such information, whether given in writing or reduced to writing as aforesaid, shall be signed by the person giving it, and the substance thereof shall be entered in a book to be kept by such officer in such form as the State Government may prescribe in this behalf.

(2) A copy of the information as recorded under sub-section (1) shall be given forthwith, free of cost, to the informant.

(3) Any person aggrieved by a refusal on the part of an officer in charge of a police station to record the information referred to in sub-section (1) may send the substance of such information, in writing and by post, to the Superintendent of Police concerned who, if satisfied that such information discloses the commission of a cognizable offence, shall either investigate the case himself or direct an investigation to be made by any police officer subordinate to him, in the manner provided by this Code, and such officer shall have all the powers of an officer in charge of the police station in relation to that offence.

155. Information as to non-cognizable cases and investigation of such cases.-

(1) When information is given to an officer in charge of a police station of the commission within the limits of such station of a non-cognizable offence, he shall enter or cause to be entered the substance of the information in a book to be kept by such officer in such form as the State Government may prescribe in this behalf, and refer the informant to the Magistrate.

(2) No police officer shall investigate a non-cognizable case without the order of a Magistrate having power to try such case or commit the case for trial.

(3) Any police officer receiving such order may exercise the same powers in respect of the investigation (except the power to arrest without warrant) as an officer in charge of a police station may exercise in a cognizable case.

(4) Where a case relates to two or more offences of which at least one is cognizable, the case shall be deemed to be a cognizable case, notwithstanding that the other offences are non-cognizable.

156. Police officers power to investigate cognizable case.-

(1) Any officer in charge of a police station may, without the order of a Magistrate, investigate any cognizable case which a Court having jurisdiction over the local area within the limits of such station would have power to inquire into or try under the provisions of Chapter XIII.

(2) No proceeding of a police officer in any such case shall at any stage be called in question on the ground that the case was one which such officer was not empowered under this section to investigate.

(3) Any Magistrate empowered under section 190 may order such an investigation as above-mentioned.

157. Procedure for investigation.-

(1) If, from information received or otherwise, an officer in charge of a police station has reason to suspect the commission of an offence which he is empowered under section 156 to investigate, he shall forthwith send a report of the same to a Magistrate empowered to take cognizance of such offence upon a police report and shall proceed in person, or shall depute one of his subordinate officers not being below such rank as the State Government may, by general or special order, prescribe in this behalf, to proceed, to the spot, to investigate the facts and circumstances of the case, and, if necessary, to take measures for the discovery and arrest of the offender:

Provided that-

(a) when information as to the commission of any such offence is given against any person by name and the case is not of a serious nature, the officer in charge of a police station need not proceed in person or depute a subordinate officer to make an investigation on the spot;

(b) if it appears to the officer in charge of a police station that there is no sufficient ground for entering on an investigation, he shall not investigate the case.

(2) In each of the cases mentioned in clauses (a) and (b) of the proviso to sub-section (1), the officer in charge of the police station shall state in his report his reasons for not fully complying with the requirements of that sub-section, and, in the case mentioned in clause (b) of the said proviso, the officer shall

also forthwith notify to the informant, if any, in such manner as may be prescribed by the State Government, the fact that he will not investigate the case or cause it to be investigated.

158. Report how submitted.-

(1) Every report sent to a Magistrate under section 157 shall, if the State Government so directs, be submitted through such superior officer of police as the State Government, by general or special order, appoints in that behalf.

(2) Such superior officer may give such instructions to the officer in charge of the police station as he thinks fit, and shall, after recording such instructions on such report, transmit the same without delay to the Magistrate.

159. Power to hold investigation or preliminary inquiry.-

Such Magistrate, on receiving such report, may direct an investigation, or, if he thinks fit, at once proceed, or depute any Magistrate subordinate to him to proceed, to hold a preliminary inquiry into, or otherwise to dispose of, the case in the manner provided in this Code.

160. Police officers power to require attendance of witnesses.-

(1) Any police officer making an investigation under this Chapter may, by order in writing, require the attendance before himself of any person being within the limits of his own or any adjoining station who, from the information given or otherwise, appears to be acquainted with the facts and circumstances of the case; and such person shall attend as so required:

Provided that no male person under the age of fifteen years or woman shall be required to attend at any place other than the place in which such male person or woman resides.

(2) The State Government may, by rules made in this behalf, provide for the payment by the police officer of the reasonable expenses of every person, attending under sub-section (1) at any place other than his residence.

161. Examination of witnesses by police.-

(1) Any police officer making an investigation under this Chapter, or any police officer not below such rank as the State Government may, by general or special order, prescribe in this behalf, acting on the requisition of such officer, may examine orally any person supposed to be acquainted with the facts and circumstances of the case.

(2) Such person shall be bound to answer truly all questions relating to such case put to him by such officer, other than questions the answers to which

would have a tendency to expose him to a criminal charge or to a penalty or forfeiture.

(3) The police officer may reduce into writing any statement made to him in the course of an examination under this section; and if he does so, he shall make a separate and true record of the statement of each such person whose statement he records.

162. Statements to police not to be signed:

Use of statements in evidence.- (1) No statement made by any person to a police officer in the course of an investigation under this Chapter, shall, if reduced to writing, be signed by the person making it; nor shall any such statement or any record thereof, whether in a police diary or otherwise, or any part of such statement or record, be used for any purpose, save as hereinafter provided, at any inquiry or trial in respect of any offence under investigation at the time when such statement was made:

Provided that when any witness is called for the prosecution in such inquiry or trial whose statement has been reduced into writing as aforesaid, any part of his statement, if duly proved, may be used by the accused, and with the permission of the Court, by the prosecution, to contradict such witness in the manner provided by section 145 of the Indian Evidence Act , 1872; (1 of 1872) and when any part of such statement is so used, any part thereof may also be used in the re-examination of such witness, but for the purpose only of explaining any matter referred to in his cross-examination.

(2) Nothing in this section shall be deemed to apply to any statement falling within the provisions of clause (1) of section 32 of the Indian Evidence Act, 1872, (1 of 1872) or to affect the provisions of section 27 of that Act.

Explanation.- An omission to state a fact or circumstance in the statement referred to in sub-section (1) may amount to contradiction if the same appears to be significant and otherwise relevant having regard to the context in which such omission occurs and whether any omission amounts to a contradiction in the particular context shall be a question of fact.

163. No inducement to be offered.-

(1) No police officer or other person in authority shall offer or make, or cause to be offered or made, any such inducement, threat or promise as is mentioned in section 24 of the Indian Evidence Act, 1872(1 of 1872).

(2) But no police officer or other person shall prevent, by any caution or otherwise, any person from making in the course of any investigation under

this Chapter any statement which he may be disposed to make of his own free will:

Provided that nothing in this sub-section shall affect the provisions of sub-section (4) of section 164.

164. Recording of confessions and statements.-

(1) Any Metropolitan Magistrate or Judicial Magistrate may, whether or not he has jurisdiction in the case, record any confession or statement made to him in the course of an investigation under this Chapter or under any other law for the time being in force, or at any time afterwards before the commencement of the inquiry or trial:

Provided that no confession shall be recorded by a police officer on whom any power of a Magistrate has been conferred under any law for the time being in force.

(2) The Magistrate shall, before recording any such confession, explain to the person making it that he is not bound to make a confession and that, if he does so, it may be used as evidence against him; and the Magistrate shall not record any such confession unless, upon questioning the person making it, he has reason to believe that it is being made voluntarily.

(3) If at any time before the confession is recorded, the person appearing before the Magistrate states that he is not willing to make the confession, the Magistrate shall not authorise the detention of such person in police custody.

(4) Any such confession shall be recorded in the manner provided in section 281 for recording the examination of an accused person and shall be signed by the person making the confession; and the Magistrate shall make a memorandum at the foot of such record to the following effect:-

“I have explained to (name) that he is not bound to make a confession and that, if he does so, any confession he may make may be used as evidence against him and I believe that this confession was voluntarily made. It was taken in my presence and hearing, and was read over to the person making it and admitted by him to be correct, and it contains a full and true account of the statement made by him.

(Signed) A. B.
Magistrate”.

(5) Any statement (other than a confession) made under sub-section (1) shall be recorded in such manner hereinafter provided for the recording of evidence

as is, in the opinion of the Magistrate, best fitted to the circumstances of the case; and the Magistrate shall have power to administer oath to the person whose statement is so recorded.

(6) The Magistrate recording a confession or statement under this section shall forward it to the Magistrate by whom the case is to be inquired into or tried.

165. Search by police officer

(1) Whenever an officer in charge of a police station or a police officer making an investigation has reasonable grounds for believing that anything necessary for the purposes of an investigation into any offence which he is authorised to investigate may be found in any place within the limits of the police station of which he is in charge, or to which he is attached, and that such thing cannot in his opinion be otherwise obtained without undue delay, such officer may, after recording in writing the grounds of his belief and specifying in such writing, so far as possible, the thing for which search is to be made, search, or cause search to be made, for such thing in any place within the limits of such station.

(2) A police officer proceeding under sub-section (1), shall, if practicable, conduct the search in person.

(3) If he is unable to conduct the search in person, and there is no other person competent to make the search present at the time, he may, after recording in writing his reasons for so doing, require any officer subordinate to him to make the search, and he shall deliver to such subordinate officer an order in writing, specifying the place to be searched, and so far as possible, the thing for which search is to be made; and such subordinate officer may thereupon search for such thing in such place.

(4) The provisions of this Code as to search-warrants and the general provisions as to searches contained in section 100 shall, so far as may be, apply to a search made under this section.

(5) Copies of any record made under sub-section (1) or sub-section (3) shall forthwith be sent to the nearest Magistrate empowered to take cognizance of the offence, and the owner or occupier of the place searched shall, on application, be furnished, free of cost, with a copy of the same by the Magistrate.

166. When officer in charge of police station may require another to issue search warrant.-

(1) An officer in charge of a police station or a police officer not being below the rank of sub-inspector making an investigation may require an officer in charge of another police station, whether in the same or a different district, to cause a search to be made in any place, in any case in which the former officer might cause such search to be made, within the limits of his own station.

(2) Such officer, on being so required, shall proceed according to the provisions of section 165, and shall forward the thing found, if any, to the officer at whose request the search was made.

(3) Whenever there is reason to believe that the delay occasioned by requiring an officer in-charge of another police station to cause a search to be made under sub-section (1) might result in evidence of the commission of an offence being concealed or destroyed, it shall be lawful for an officer in-charge of a police station or a police officer making any investigation under this Chapter to search, or cause to be searched, any place in the limits of another police station in accordance with the provisions of section 165, as if such place were within the limits of his own police station.

(4) Any officer conducting a search under sub-section (3) shall forthwith send notice of the search to the officer in charge of the police station within the limits of which such place is situate, and shall also send with such notice a copy of the list (if any) prepared under section 100, and shall also send to the nearest Magistrate empowered to take cognizance of the offence, copies of the records referred to in sub-sections (1) and (3) of section 165.

(5) The owner or occupier of the place searched shall, on application, be furnished free of cost with a copy of any record sent to the Magistrate under sub-section (4).

167. Procedure when investigation cannot be completed in twenty four hours.-

(1) Whenever any person is arrested and detained in custody, and it appears that the investigation cannot be completed within the period of twenty-four hours fixed by section 57, and there are grounds for believing that the accusation or information is well-founded, the officer in charge of the police station or the police officer making the investigation, if he is not below the rank of sub-inspector, shall forthwith transmit to the nearest Judicial Magistrate a copy of the entries in the diary hereinafter prescribed relating to the case, and shall at the same time forward the accused to such Magistrate.

(2) The Magistrate to whom an accused person is forwarded under this section may, whether he has or has not jurisdiction to try the case, from time to time, authorise the detention of the accused in such custody as such Magistrate thinks fit, for a term not exceeding fifteen days in the whole; and if he has no jurisdiction to try the case or commit it for trial, and considers further detention unnecessary, he may order the accused to be forwarded to a Magistrate having such jurisdiction:

Provided that-

(a) the Magistrate may authorise detention of the accused person, otherwise than in custody of the police, beyond the period of fifteen days if he is satisfied that adequate grounds exist for doing so, but no Magistrate shall authorise the detention of the accused person in custody under this section for a total period exceeding sixty days, and on the expiry of the said period of sixty days, the accused person shall be released on bail if he is prepared to and does furnish bail; and every person released on bail under this section shall be deemed to be so released under the provisions of Chapter XXXIII for the purposes of that Chapter;

(b) no Magistrate shall authorise detention in any custody under this section unless the accused is produced before him;

(c) no Magistrate of the second class, not specially empowered in this behalf by the High Court, shall authorise detention in the custody of the police.

Explanation.- If any question arises whether an accused person was produced before the Magistrate as required under paragraph (b), the production of the accused person may be proved by his signature on the order authorising detention.

(3) A Magistrate authorising under this section detention in the custody of the police shall record his reasons for so doing.

(4) Any Magistrate other than the Chief Judicial Magistrate making such order shall forward a copy of his order, with his reasons for making it, to the Chief Judicial Magistrate.

(5) If in any case triable by a Magistrate as a summons-case, the investigation is not concluded within a period of six months from the date on which the accused was arrested, the Magistrate shall make an order stopping further investigation into the offence unless the officer making the investigation satisfies the Magistrate that for special reasons and in the interests of justice

the continuation of the investigation beyond the period of six months is necessary.

(6) Where any order stopping further investigation into an offence has been made under sub-section (5), the Sessions Judge may, if he is satisfied, on an application made to him or otherwise, that further investigation into the offence ought to be made, vacate the order made under sub-section (5) and direct further investigation to be made into the offence subject to such directions with regard to bail and other matters as he may specify.

168. Report of investigation by subordinate police officer.-

When any subordinate police officer has made any investigation under this Chapter, he shall report the result of such investigation to the officer in charge of the police station.

169. Release of accused when evidence deficient.-

If, upon an investigation under this Chapter, it appears to the officer in charge of the police station that there is not sufficient evidence or reasonable ground of suspicion to justify the forwarding of the accused to a Magistrate, such officer shall, if such person is in custody, release him on his executing a bond, with or without sureties, as such officer may direct, to appear, if and when so required, before a Magistrate empowered to take cognizance of the offence on a police report, and to try the accused or commit him for trial.

170. Cases to be sent to Magistrate when evidence is sufficient.-

(1) If, upon an investigation under this Chapter, it appears to the officer in charge of the police station that there is sufficient evidence or reasonable ground as aforesaid, such officer shall forward the accused under custody to a Magistrate empowered to take cognizance of the offence upon a police report and to try the accused or commit him for trial, or, if the offence is bailable and the accused is able to give security, shall take security from him for his appearance before such Magistrate on a day fixed and for his attendance from day to day before such Magistrate until otherwise directed.

(2) When the officer in charge of a police station forwards an accused person to a Magistrate or takes security for his appearance before such Magistrate under this section, he shall send to such Magistrate any weapon or other article which it may be necessary to produce before him, and shall require the complainant (if any) and so many of the persons who appear to such officer to be acquainted with the facts and circumstances of the case as he may think necessary, to execute a bond to appear before the Magistrate as thereby

directed and prosecute or give evidence (as the case may be) in the matter of the charge against the accused.

(3) If the Court of the Chief Judicial Magistrate is mentioned in the bond, such Court shall be held to include any Court to which such Magistrate may refer the case for inquiry or trial, provided reasonable notice of such reference is given to such complainant or persons.

(4) The officer in whose presence the bond is executed shall deliver a copy thereof to one of the persons who executed it, and shall then send to the Magistrate the original with his report.

171.Complainant and witnesses not to be required to accompany police officer and not to be subjected to restraint.-

No complainant or witness on his way to any Court shall be required to accompany a police officer, or shall be subjected to unnecessary restraint or inconvenience, or required to give any security for his appearance other than his own bond:

Provided that, if any complainant or witness refuses to attend or to execute a bond as directed in section 170, the officer in charge of the police station may forward him in custody to the Magistrate, who may detain him in custody until he executes such bond, or until the hearing of the case is completed.

172.Diary of proceedings in investigation.-

(1) Every police officer making an investigation under this Chapter shall day by day enter his proceedings in the investigation in a diary, setting forth the time at which the information reached him, the time at which he began and closed his investigation, the place or places visited by him, and a statement of the circumstances ascertained through his investigation.

(2) Any Criminal Court may send for the police diaries of a case under inquiry or trial in such Court, and may use such diaries, not as evidence in the case, but to aid it in such inquiry or trial.

(3) Neither the accused nor his agents shall be entitled to call for such diaries, nor shall he or they be entitled to see them merely because they are referred to by the Court; but, if they are used by the police officer who made them to refresh his memory, or if the Court uses them for the purpose of contradicting such police officer, the provisions of section 161 or section 145 as the case may be, of the Indian Evidence Act, 1872, (1 of 1872) shall apply.

173.Report of police officer on completion of investigation.-

- (1) Every investigation under this Chapter shall be completed without unnecessary delay.
- (2) (i) As soon as it is completed, the officer in charge of the police station shall forward to a Magistrate empowered to take cognizance of the offence on a police report, a report in the form prescribed by the State Government, stating –
- (a) the names of the parties;
 - (b) the nature of the information;
 - (c) the names of the persons who appear to be acquainted with the circumstances of the case;
 - (d) whether any offence appears to have been committed and, if so, by whom;
 - (e) whether the accused has been arrested;
 - (f) whether he has been released on his bond and, if so, whether with or without sureties;
 - (g) whether he has been forwarded in custody under section 170.
- (ii) The officer shall also communicate, in such manner as may be prescribed by the State Government, the action taken by him, to the person, if any, by whom the information relating to the commission of the offence was first given.
- (3) Where a superior officer of police has been appointed under section 158, the report shall, in any case in which the State Government by general or special order so directs, be submitted through that officer, and he may, pending the orders of the Magistrate, direct the officer in charge of the police station to make further investigation.
- (4) Whenever it appears from a report forwarded under this section that the accused has been released on his bond, the Magistrate shall make such order for the discharge of such bond or otherwise as he thinks fit.
- (5) When such report is in respect of a case to which section 170 applies, the police officer shall forward to the Magistrate along with the report-

- (a) all documents or relevant extracts thereof on which the prosecution proposes to rely other than those already sent to the Magistrate during investigation;
- (b) the statements recorded under section 161 of all the persons whom the prosecution proposes to examine as its witnesses.
- (6) If the police officer is of opinion that any part of any such statement is not relevant to the subject-matter of the proceedings or that its disclosure to the accused is not essential in the interest of justice and is inexpedient in the public interest, he shall indicate that part of the statement and append a note requesting the Magistrate to exclude that part from the copies to be granted to the accused and stating his reasons for making such request.
- (7) Where the police officer investigating the case finds it convenient so to do, he may furnish to the accused copies of all or any of the documents referred to in sub-section (5).
- (8) Nothing in this section shall be deemed to preclude further investigation in respect of an offence after a report under sub-section (2) has been forwarded to the Magistrate and, where upon such investigation, the officer in charge of the police station obtains further evidence, oral or documentary, he shall forward to the Magistrate a further report or reports regarding such evidence in the form prescribed; and the provisions of sub-sections (2) to (6) shall, as far as may be, apply in relation to such report or reports as they apply in relation to a report forwarded under sub-section (2).

174. Police to enquire and report on suicide, etc.-

- (1) When the officer in charge of a police station or some other police officer specially empowered by the State Government in that behalf receives information that a person has committed suicide, or has been killed by another or by an animal or by machinery or by an accident, or has died under circumstances raising a reasonable suspicion that some other person has committed an offence, he shall immediately give intimation thereof to the nearest Executive Magistrate empowered to hold inquests, and, unless otherwise directed by any rule prescribed by the State Government, or by any general or special order of the District or Sub-divisional Magistrate, shall proceed to the place where the body of such deceased person is, and there, in the presence of two or more respectable inhabitants of the neighbourhood, shall make an investigation, and draw up a report of the apparent cause of death, describing such wounds, fractures, bruises, and other marks of injury

as may be found on the body, and stating in what manner, or by what weapon or instrument (if any); such marks appear to have been inflicted.

(2) The report shall be signed by such police officer and other persons, or by so many of them as concur therein, and shall be forthwith forwarded to the District Magistrate or the Sub-divisional Magistrate.

(3) When there is any doubt regarding the cause of death, or when for any other reason the police officer considers it expedient so to do, he shall, subject to such rules as the State Government may prescribe in this behalf, forward the body, with a view to its being examined, to the nearest Civil Surgeon, or other qualified medical man appointed in this behalf by the State Government, if the state of the weather and the distance admit of its being so forwarded without risk of such putrefaction on the road as would render such examination useless.

(4) The following Magistrates are empowered to hold inquests, namely, any District Magistrate or Sub-divisional Magistrate and any other Executive Magistrate specially empowered in this behalf by the State Government or the District Magistrate.

175. Power to summon persons.-

(1) A police officer proceeding under section 174 may, by order in writing, summon two or more persons as aforesaid for the purpose of the said investigation, and any other person who appears to be acquainted with the facts of the case and every person so summoned shall be bound to attend and to answer truly all questions other than questions the answers to which would have a tendency to expose him to a criminal charge or to a penalty or forfeiture.

(2) If the facts do not disclose a cognizable offence to which section 170 applies, such persons shall not be required by the police officer to attend a Magistrate's Court.

176. Inquiry by Magistrate into cause of death.-

(1) When any person dies while in the custody of the police, the nearest Magistrate empowered to hold inquests shall, and in any other case mentioned in sub-section (1) of section 174, any Magistrate so empowered may hold an inquiry into the cause of death either instead of, or in addition to, the investigation held by the police officer; and if he does so, he shall have all the powers in conducting it which he would have in holding an inquiry into an offence.

(2) The Magistrate holding such an inquiry shall record the evidence taken by him in connection therewith in any manner hereinafter prescribed according to the circumstances of the case.

(3) Whenever such Magistrate considers it expedient to make an examination of the dead body of any person who has been already interred, in order to discover the cause of his death, the Magistrate may cause the body to be disinterested and examined.

(4) Where an inquiry is to be held under this section, the Magistrate shall, wherever practicable, inform the relatives of the deceased whose names and addresses are known, and shall allow them to remain present at the inquiry.

Explanation.- In this section, the expression “relative” means parents, children, brothers, sisters and spouse.

CHAPTER XIII

JURISDICTION OF THE CRIMINAL COURTS IN INQUIRIES AND TRIALS

177. Ordinary place of inquiry and trial.-

Every offence shall ordinarily be inquired into and tried by a Court within whose local jurisdiction it was committed.

178. Place of inquiry or trial.-

(a) When it is uncertain in which of several local areas an offence was committed, or

(b) where an offence is committed partly in one local area and partly in another, or

(c) where an offence is a continuing one, and continues to be committed in more local areas than one, or

(d) where it consists of several acts done in different local areas.

it may be inquired into or tried by a Court having jurisdiction over any of such local areas.

179. Offence triable where act is done or consequence ensues.-

When an act is an offence by reason of anything which has been done and of a consequence which has ensued, the offence may be inquired into or tried by a Court within whose local jurisdiction such thing has been done or such consequence has ensued.

180. Place of trial where act is an offence by reason of relation to other offence.-

When an act is an offence by reason of its relation to any other act which is also an offence or which would be an offence if the doer were capable of committing an offence, the first-mentioned offence may be inquired into or tried by a Court within whose local jurisdiction either act was done.

181. Place of trial in case of certain offences.-

(1) Any offence of being a thug, or murder committed by a thug , of dacoity, of dacoity with murder, of belonging to a gang of dacoits, or of escaping from custody, may be inquired into or tried by a Court within whose local jurisdiction the offence was committed or the accused person is found.

(2) Any offence of kidnapping or abduction of a person may be inquired into or tried by a Court within whose local jurisdiction the person was kidnapped or abducted or was conveyed or concealed or detained.

(3) Any offence of theft, extortion or robbery may be inquired into or tried by a Court within whose local jurisdiction the offence was committed or the stolen property which is the subject of the offence was possessed by any person committing it or by any person who received or retained such property knowing or having reason to believe it to be stolen property.

(4) Any offence of criminal misappropriation or of criminal breach of trust may be inquired into or tried by a Court within whose local jurisdiction the offence was committed or any part of the property which is the subject of the offence was received or retained, or was required to be returned or accounted for, by the accused person.

(5) Any offence which includes the possession of stolen property may be inquired into or tried by a Court within whose local jurisdiction the offence was committed or the stolen property was possessed by any person who received or retained it knowing or having reason to believe it to be stolen property.

182. Offences committed by letters, etc.-

(1) Any offence which includes cheating may, if the deception is practised by means of letters or telecommunication messages, be inquired into or tried by any Court within whose local jurisdiction such letters or messages were sent or were received; and any offence of cheating and dishonestly inducing delivery of property may be inquired into or tried by a Court within whose local

jurisdiction the property was delivered by the person deceived or was received by the accused person.

(2) Any offence punishable under section 494 or section 495 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) may be inquired into or tried by a Court within whose local jurisdiction the offence was committed or the offender last resided with his or her spouse by the first marriage.

183.Offence committed on journey or voyage.-

When an offence is committed whilst the person by or against whom, or the thing in respect of which, the offence is committed is in the course of performing a journey or voyage, the offence may be inquired into or tried by a Court through or into whose local jurisdiction that person or thing passed in the course of that journey or voyage.

184.Place of trial for offences triable together.-

Where-

(a) the offences committed by any person are such that he may be charged with, and tried at one trial for, each such offence by virtue of the provisions of section 219, section 220 or section 221, or

(b) the offence or offences committed by several persons are such that they may be charged with and tried together by virtue of the provisions of section 223,

the offences may be inquired into or tried by any Court competent to inquire into or try and of the offences.

185.Power to order cases to be tried in different sessions divisions.-

Notwithstanding anything contained in the preceding provisions of this Chapter, the State Government may direct that any cases or class of cases committed for trial in any district may be tried in any sessions division:

Provided that such direction is not repugnant to any direction previously issued by the High Court or the Supreme Court under the Constitution, or under this Code or any other law for the time being in force.

186.High Court to decide, in case of doubt, district where inquiry or trial shall take place.-

Where two or more Courts have taken cognizance of the same offence and a question arises as to which of them ought to inquire into or try that offence, the question shall be decided –

- (a) if the Courts are subordinate to the same High Court, by that High Court;
- (b) if the Courts are not subordinate to the same High Court, by the High Court within the local limits of whose appellate criminal jurisdiction the proceedings were first commenced,

and thereupon all other proceedings in respect of that offence shall be discontinued.

187. Power to issue summons or warrant for offence committed beyond local jurisdiction.-

(1) When a Magistrate of the first class sees reason to believe that any person within his local jurisdiction has committed outside such jurisdiction (whether within or outside India) an offence which cannot, under the provisions of sections 177 to 185 (both inclusive), or any other law for the time being in force, be inquired into or tried within such jurisdiction but is under some law for the time being in force triable in India, such Magistrate may inquire into the offence as if it had been committed within such local jurisdiction and compel such person in the manner hereinbefore provided to appear before him, and send such person to the Magistrate having jurisdiction to inquire into or try such offence, or, if such offence is not punishable with death or imprisonment for life and such person is ready and willing to give bail to the satisfaction of the Magistrate acting under this section, take a bond with or without sureties for his appearance before the Magistrate having such jurisdiction.

(2) When there are more Magistrates than one having such jurisdiction and the Magistrate acting under this section cannot satisfy himself as to the Magistrate to or before whom such person should be sent or bound to appear, the case shall be reported for the orders of the High Court.

188. Offence committed outside India.- When an offence is committed outside India –

- (a) by a citizen of India, whether on the high seas or elsewhere; or
- (b) by a person, not being such citizen, on any ship or aircraft registered in India,

he may be dealt with in respect of such offence as if it had been committed at any place within India at which he may be found:

Provided that, notwithstanding anything in any of the preceding sections of this Chapter, no such offence shall be inquired into or tried in India except with the previous sanction of the Central Government.

189. Receipt of evidence relating to offences committed outside India.-

When any offence alleged to have been committed in a territory outside India is being inquired into or tried under the provisions of section 188, the Central Government may, if it thinks fit, direct that copies of depositions made or exhibits produced before a Judicial officer in or for that territory or before a diplomatic or consular representative of India in or for that territory shall be received as evidence by the Court holding such inquiry or trial in any case in which such Court might issue a commission for taking evidence as to the matters to which such depositions or exhibits relate.

CHAPTER XIV CONDITIONS REQUISITE FOR INITIATION OF PROCEEDING

190. Cognizance of offences by Magistrates.-

(1) Subject to the provisions of this Chapter, any Magistrate of the first class, and any Magistrate of the second class specially empowered in this behalf under sub-section (2), may take cognizance of any offence –

- (a) upon receiving a complaint of facts which constitute such offence;
- (b) upon a police report of such facts;
- (c) upon information received from any person other than a police officer, or upon his own knowledge, that such offence has been committed.

(2) The Chief Judicial Magistrate may empower any Magistrate of the second class to take cognizance under sub-section (1) of such offences as are within his competence to inquire into or try.

191. Transfer on application of the accused.-

When a Magistrate takes cognizance of an offence under clause (c) of sub-section (1) of section 190, the accused shall, before any evidence is taken, be informed that he is entitled to have the case inquired into or tried by another Magistrate, and if the accused or any of the accused, if there be more than one, objects to further proceedings before the Magistrate taking cognizance, the

case shall be transferred to such other Magistrate as may be specified by the Chief Judicial Magistrate in this behalf.

192. Making over of cases to Magistrates.-

(1) Any Chief Judicial Magistrate may, after taking cognizance of an offence, make over the case for inquiry or trial to any competent Magistrate subordinate to him.

(2) Any Magistrate of the first class empowered in this behalf by the Chief Judicial Magistrate may, after taking cognizance of an offence, make over the case for inquiry or trial to such other competent Magistrate as the Chief Judicial Magistrate may, by general or special order, specify, and thereupon such Magistrate may hold the inquiry or trial.

193. Cognizance of offences by Courts of Session.-

Except as otherwise expressly provided by this Code or by any other law for the time being in force, no Court of Session shall take cognizance of any offence as a Court of original jurisdiction unless the case has been committed to it by a Magistrate under this Code.

194. Additional and Assistant Sessions Judges to try cases made over to them.

As Additional Sessions Judge or Assistant Sessions Judge shall try such cases as the Sessions Judge of the division may, by general or special order, make over to him for trial or as the High Court may, by special order, direct him to try.

195. Prosecution for contempt of lawful authority of public servants, for offences against public justice and for offences relating to documents given in evidence.-

(1) No Court shall take cognizance-

(a) (I) of any offence punishable under sections 172 to 188 (both inclusive) of the Indian Penal Code,(45 of 1860) or

(ii) of any abetment of, or attempt to commit, such offence, or

(iii) of any criminal conspiracy to commit such offence,

except on the complaint in writing of the public servant concerned or of some other public servant to whom he is administratively subordinate;

(b) (I) of any offence punishable under any of the following sections of the Indian Penal Code,(45 of 1860) namely, sections 193 to 196 (both inclusive), 199, 200, 205 to 211 (both inclusive) and 228, when such offence is alleged to have been committed in, or in relation to, any proceeding in any Court, or

(ii) of any offence described in section 463, or punishable under section 471, section 475 or section 476, of the said Code, when such offence is alleged to have been committed in respect of a document produced or given in evidence in a proceeding in any Court, or

(iii) of any criminal conspiracy to commit, or attempt to commit, or the abetment of, any offence specified in sub-clause (I) or sub-clause (ii),

except on the complaint in writing of that Court, or of some other Court to which that Court is subordinate.

(2) Where a complaint has been made by a public servant under clause (a) of sub-section (1) any authority to which he is administratively subordinate may order the withdrawal of the complaint and send a copy of such order to the Court; and upon its receipt by the Court, no further proceedings shall be taken on the complaint:

Provided that no such withdrawal shall be ordered if the trial in the Court of first instance has been concluded.

(3) In clause (b) of sub-section (1), the term “Court” means a Civil, Revenue or Criminal Court, and includes a tribunal constituted by or under a Central, Provincial or State Act if declared by that Act to be a Court for the purposes of this section.

(4) For the purposes of clause (b) of sub-section (1), a Court shall be deemed to be subordinate to the Court to which appeals ordinarily lie from the appealable decrees or sentences of such former Court, or in the case of a Civil Court from whose decrees no appeal ordinarily lies, to the Principal Court having ordinary original civil jurisdiction within whose local jurisdiction such Civil Court is situate:

Provided that-

(a) where appeals lie to more than one Court, the Appellate Court of inferior jurisdiction shall be the Court to which such Court shall be deemed to be subordinate;

(b) where appeals lie to a Civil and also to a Revenue Court, such Court shall be deemed to be subordinate to the Civil or Revenue Court according to the

nature of the case or proceeding in connection with which the offence is alleged to have been committed.

196. Prosecution for offences against the State and for criminal conspiracy to commit such offence.- (1) No Court shall take cognizance of –

(a) any offence punishable under Chapter VI or under section 153A, section 153B, section 295A or section 505 of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) or

(b) a criminal conspiracy to commit such offence, or

(c) any such abetment, as is described in section 108A of the Indian Penal Code,

(45 of 1860)

except with the previous sanction of the Central Government or of the State Government.

(2) No Court shall take cognizance of the offence of any criminal conspiracy punishable under section 120B of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) other than a criminal conspiracy to commit a cognizable offence punishable with death, imprisonment for life or rigorous imprisonment for a term of two years or upwards, unless the State Government or the District Magistrate has consented in writing to the initiation of the proceedings:

Provided that where the criminal conspiracy is one to which the provisions of section 195 apply, no such consent shall be necessary.

(3) The Central Government or the State Government may, before according sanction under sub-section (1) and the State Government or the District Magistrate may, before giving consent under sub-section (2), order a preliminary investigation by a police officer not being below the rank of Inspector, in which case such police officer shall have the powers referred to in sub-section (3) of section 155.

197. Prosecution of Judges and public servants.

– (1) When any person who is or was a Judge or Magistrate or a public servant not removable from his office save by or with the sanction of the Government is accused of any offence alleged to have been committed by him while acting or purporting to act in the discharge of his official duty, no Court shall take cognizance of such offence except with the previous sanction-

(a) in the case of a person who is employed or, as the case may be, was at the time of commission of the alleged offence employed, in connection with the affairs of the Union, of the Central Government;

(b) in the case of a person who is employed or, as the case may be, was at the time of commission of the alleged offence employed, in connection with the affairs of a State, of the State Government.

(2) No Court shall take cognizance of any offence alleged to have been committed by any member of the Armed Forces of the Union while acting or purporting to act in the discharge of his official duty, except with the previous sanction of the Central Government.

(3) The State Government may, by notification, direct that the provisions of sub-section (2) shall apply to such class or category of the members of the Forces charged with the maintenance of public order as may be specified therein, wherever they may be serving, and thereupon the provisions of that sub-section will apply as if for the expression "Central Government" occurring therein, the expression "State Government" were substituted.

(4) The Central Government or the State Government, as the case may be, may determine the person by whom, the manner in which, and the offence or offences for which, the prosecution of such Judge, Magistrate or public servant is to be conducted, and may specify the Court before which the trial is to be held.

198. Prosecution for offences against marriage.-

(1) No Court shall take cognizance of an offence punishable under Chapter XX of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) except upon a complaint made by some person aggrieved by the offence:

Provided that-

(a) where such person is under the age of eighteen years, or is an idiot or a lunatic, or is from sickness or infirmity unable to make a complaint, or is a woman who, according to the local customs and manners, ought not to be compelled to appear in public, some other person may, with the leave of the Court, make a complaint on his or her behalf;

(b) where such person is the husband and he is serving in any of the Armed Forces of the Union under conditions which are certified by his Commanding Officer as precluding him from obtaining leave of absence to enable him to make a complaint in person, some other person authorised by the husband in

accordance with the provisions of sub-section (4) may make a complaint on his behalf;

(c) where the person aggrieved by an offence punishable under section 494 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) is the wife, complaint may be made on her behalf by her father, mother, brother, sister, son or daughter or by her father's or mother's brother or sister.

(2) For the purposes of sub-section (1), no person other than the husband of the woman shall be deemed to be aggrieved by any offence punishable under section 497 or section 498 of the said Code:

Provided that in the absence of the husband, some person who had care of the woman on his behalf at the time when such offence was committed may, with the leave of the Court, make a complaint on his behalf.

(3) When in any case falling under clause (a) of the proviso to sub-section (1), the complaint is sought to be made on behalf of a person under the age of eighteen years or of a lunatic by a person who has not been appointed or declared by a competent authority to be the guardian of the person of the minor or lunatic, and the Court is satisfied that there is a guardian so appointed or declared, the Court shall, before granting the application for leave, cause notice to be given to such guardian and give him a reasonable opportunity of being heard.

(4) The authorisation referred to in clause (b) of the proviso to sub-section (1), shall be in writing, shall be signed or otherwise attested by the husband, shall contain a statement to the effect that he has been informed of the allegations upon which the complaint is to be founded, shall be countersigned by his Commanding Officer, and shall be accompanied by a certificate signed by that Officer to the effect that leave of absence for the purpose of making a complaint in person cannot for the time being be granted to the husband.

(5) Any document purporting to be such an authorisation and complying with the provisions of sub-section (4), and any document purporting to be a certificate required by that sub-section shall, unless the contrary is proved, be presumed to be genuine and shall be received in evidence.

(6) No Court shall take cognizance of an offence under section 376 of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) where such offence consists of sexual intercourse by a man with his own wife, the wife being under fifteen years of age, if more than one year has elapsed from the date of the commission of the

offence.

(7) The provisions of this section apply to the abetment of, or attempt to commit, an offence as they apply to the offence.

199. Prosecution for defamation.-

(1) No Court shall take cognizance of an offence punishable under Chapter XXI of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) except upon a complaint made by some person aggrieved by the offence:

Provided that where such person is under the age of eighteen years, or is an idiot or a lunatic, or is from sickness or infirmity unable to make a complaint, or is a woman who, according to the local customs and manners, ought not to be compelled to appear in public, some other person may, with the leave of the Court, make a complaint on his or her behalf.

(2) Notwithstanding anything contained in this Code, when any offence falling under Chapter XXI of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) is alleged to have been committed against a person who, at the time of such commission, is the President of India, the Vice-President of India, the Governor of a State, the Administrator of a Union territory or a Minister of the Union or of a State or of a Union territory, or any other public servant employed in connection with the affairs of the Union or of a State in respect of his conduct in the discharge of his public functions a Court of Session may take cognizance of such offence, without the case being committed to it, upon a complaint in writing made by the Public Prosecutor.

(3) Every complaint referred to in sub-section (2) shall set forth the facts which constitute the offence alleged, the nature of such offence and such other particulars as are reasonably sufficient to give notice to the accused of the offence alleged to have been committed by him.

(4) No complaint under sub-section (2) shall be made by the Public Prosecutor except with the previous sanction-

(a) of the State Government, in the case of a person who is or has been the Governor of that State or a Minister of that Government;

(b) of the State Government, in the case of any other public servant employed in connection with the affairs of the State;

(c) of the Central Government, in any other case.

(5) No Court of Session shall take cognizance of an offence under sub-section (2) unless the complaint is made within six months from the date on which the offence is alleged to have been committed.

(6) Nothing in this section shall affect the right of the person against whom the offence is alleged to have been committed, to make a complaint in respect of that offence before a Magistrate having jurisdiction or the power of such Magistrate to take cognizance of the offence upon such complaint.

CHAPTER XV

COMPLAINTS TO MAGISTRATES

200.Examination of complainant.-

A Magistrate taking cognizance of an offence on complaint shall examine upon oath the complainant and the witnesses present, if any, and the substance of such examination shall be reduced to writing and shall be signed by the complainant and the witnesses, and also by the Magistrate:

Provided that, when the complaint is made in writing, the Magistrate need not examine the complainant and the witnesses-

(a) if a public servant acting or purporting to act in the discharge of his official duties or a Court has made the complainant; or

(b) if the Magistrate makes over the case for inquiry or trial to another Magistrate under section 192:

Provided further that if the Magistrate makes over the case to another Magistrate under section 192 after examining the complainant and the witnesses, the latter Magistrate need not re-examine them.

201.Procedure by Magistrate not competent to take cognizance of the case.-

If the complaint is made to a Magistrate who is not competent to take cognizance of the offence, he shall, –

(a) if the complaint is in writing, return it for presentation to the proper Court with an endorsement to that effect;

(b) if the complaint is not in writing, direct the complainant to the proper Court.

202.Postponement of issue of process.-

(1) Any Magistrate , on receipt of a complaint of an offence of which he is authorised to take cognizance or which has been made over to him under section 192, may, if he thinks fit, postpone the issue of process against the accused, and either inquire into the case himself or direct an investigation to be made by a police officer or by such other person as he thinks fit, for the purpose of deciding whether or not there is sufficient ground for proceeding:

Provided that no such direction for investigation shall be made, –

(a) where it appears to the Magistrate that the offence complained of is triable exclusively by the Court of Session; or

(b) where the complaint has not been made by a Court, unless the complainant and the witnesses present (if any) have been examined on oath under section 200.

(2) In an inquiry under sub-section (1), the Magistrate may, if he thinks fit, take evidence of witnesses on oath:

Provided that if it appears to the Magistrate that the offence complained of is triable exclusively by the Court of Session, he shall call upon the complainant to produce all his witnesses and examine them on oath.

(3) If an investigation under sub-section (1) is made by a person not being a police officer, he shall have for that investigation all the powers conferred by this Code on an officer in charge of a police station except the power to arrest without warrant.

203. Dismissal of complaint.-

If, after considering the statements on oath (if any) of the complainant and of the witnesses and the result of the inquiry or investigation (if any) under section 202, the Magistrate is of opinion that there is no sufficient ground for proceeding, he shall dismiss the complaint, and in every such case he shall briefly record his reasons for so doing.

CHAPTER XVI COMMENCEMENT OF PROCEEDINGS BEFORE MAGISTRATES

204. Issue of process.-

(1) If in the opinion of a Magistrate taking cognizance of an offence there is sufficient ground for proceeding, and the case appears to be –

- (a) a summons-case, he shall issue his summons for the attendance of the accused, or
- (b) a warrant-case, he may issue a warrant, or, if he thinks fit, a summons, for causing the accused to be brought or to appear at a certain time before such Magistrate or (if he has no jurisdiction himself) some other Magistrate having jurisdiction.
- (2) No summons or warrant shall be issued against the accused under sub-section (1) until a list of the prosecution witnesses has been filed.
- (3) In a proceeding instituted upon a complaint made in writing, every summons or warrant issued under sub-section (1) shall be accompanied by a copy of such complaint.
- (4) When by any law for the time being in force any process-fees or other fees are payable, no process shall be issued until the fees are paid and, if such fees are not paid within a reasonable time, the Magistrate may dismiss the complaint.
- (5) Nothing in this section shall be deemed to affect the provisions of section 87.

205. Magistrate may dispense with personal attendance of accused.- (1)
Whenever a Magistrate issues a summons, he may, if he sees reason so to do, dispense with the personal attendance of the accused and permit him to appear by his pleader.

(2) But the Magistrate inquiring into or trying the case may, in his discretion, at any stage of the proceedings, direct the personal attendance of the accused, and, if necessary, enforce such attendance in the manner hereinbefore provided.

206. Special summons in cases of petty offence.-

(1) If, in the opinion of a Magistrate taking cognizance of a petty offence, the case may be summarily disposed of under section 260, the Magistrate shall, except where he is, for reasons to be recorded in writing of a contrary opinion, issue summons to the accused requiring him either to appear in person or by pleader before the Magistrate on a specified date, or if he desires to plead guilty to the charge without appearing before the Magistrate, to transmit before the specified date, by post or by messenger to the Magistrate, the said plea in writing and the amount of fine specified in the summons or if he desires to appear by pleader and to plead guilty to the charge through such

pleader, to authorise, in writing, the pleader to plead guilty to the charge on his behalf and to pay the fine through such pleader:

Provided that the amount of the fine specified in such summons shall not exceed one hundred rupees.

(2) For the purposes of this section, "petty offence" means any offence punishable only with fine not exceeding one thousand rupees, but does not include any offence so punishable under the Motor Vehicles Act, 1939, (4 of 1939) or under any other law which provides for convicting the accused person in his absence on a plea of guilty.

207. Supply to the accused of copy of police report and other documents.-

In any case where the proceeding has been instituted on a police report, the Magistrate shall without delay furnish to the accused, free of cost, a copy of each of the following:-

- (I) the police report;
- (ii) the first information report recorded under section 154;
- (iii) the statements recorded under sub-section (3) of section 161 of all persons whom the prosecution proposes to examine as its witnesses, excluding therefrom any part in regard to which a request for such exclusion has been made by the police officer under sub-section (6) of section 173;
- (iv) the confessions and statements, if any, recorded under section 164;
- (v) any other document or relevant extract thereof forwarded to the Magistrate with the police report under sub-section (5) of section 173:

Provided that the Magistrate may, after perusing any such part of a statement as is referred to in clause (iii) and considering the reasons given by the police officer for the request, direct that a copy of that part of the statement or of such portion thereof as the Magistrate thinks proper, shall be furnished to the accused:

Provided further that if the Magistrate is satisfied that any document referred to in clause (v) is voluminous, he shall, instead of furnishing the accused with a copy thereof, direct that he will only be allowed to inspect it either personally or through pleader in Court.

208. Supply of copies of statements and documents to accused in other cases triable by Court of Session..

Where, in a case instituted otherwise than on a police report, it appears to the Magistrate issuing process under section 204 that the offence is triable exclusively by the Court of Session, the Magistrate shall without delay furnish to the accused, free of cost, a copy of each of the following:-

- (i) the statements recorded under section 200 or section 202, of all persons examined by the Magistrate;
- (ii) the statements and confessions, if any, recorded under section 161 or section 164;
- (iii) any documents produced before the Magistrate on which the prosecution proposes to rely:

Provided that if the Magistrate is satisfied that any such document is voluminous, he shall, instead of furnishing the accused with a copy thereof, direct that he will only be allowed to inspect it either personally or through pleader in Court.

209. Commitment of case to Court of Session when offence is triable exclusively by it.-

When in a case instituted on a police report or otherwise, the accused appears or is brought before the Magistrate and it appears to the Magistrate that the offence is triable exclusively by the Court of Session, he shall-

- (a) commit the case to the Court of Session;
- (b) subject to the provisions of this Code relating to bail, remand the accused to custody during, and until the conclusion of, the trial;
- (c) send to that Court the record of the case and the documents and articles, if any, which are to be produced in evidence;
- (d) notify the Public Prosecutor of the commitment of the case to the Court of Session.

210. Procedure to be followed when there is a complaint case and police investigation in respect of the same offence.-

(1) When in a case instituted otherwise than on a police report (hereinafter referred to as a complaint case), it is made to appear to the Magistrate, during the course of the inquiry or trial held by him, that an investigation by the

police is in progress in relation to the offence which is the subject-matter of the inquiry or trial held by him, the Magistrate shall stay the proceedings of such inquiry or trial and call for a report on the matter from the police officer conducting the investigation.

(2) If a report is made by the investigating police officer under section 173 and on such report cognizance of any offence is taken by the Magistrate against any person who is an accused in the complaint case, the Magistrate shall inquire into or try together the complaint case and the case arising out of the police report as if both the cases were instituted on a police report.

(3) If the police report does not relate to any accused in the complaint case or if the Magistrate does not take cognizance of any offence on the police report, he shall proceed with the inquiry or trial, which was stayed by him, in accordance with the provisions of this Code.

CHAPTER XVII THE CHARGE

A.- Form of charges

211. Contents of charge.-

(1) Every charge under this Code shall state the offence with which the accused is charged.

(2) If the law which creates the offence gives it any specific name, the offence may be described in the charge by that name only.

(3) If the law which creates the offence does not give it any specific name, so much of the definition of the offence must be stated as to give the accused notice of the matter with which he is charged.

(4) The law and section of the law against which the offence is said to have been committed shall be mentioned in the charge.

(5) The fact that the charge is made is equivalent to a statement that every legal condition required by law to constitute the offence charged was fulfilled in the particular case.

(6) The charge shall be written in the language of the Court.

(7) If the accused, having been previously convicted of any offence, is liable, by reason of such previous conviction, to enhanced punishment, or to

punishment of a different kind, for a subsequent offence, and it is intended to prove such previous conviction for the purpose of affecting the punishment which the Court may think fit to award for the subsequent offence, the fact, date and place of the previous conviction shall be stated in the charge; and if such statement has been omitted, the Court may add it at any time before sentence is passed.

Illustrations

(a) A is charged with the murder of B. This is equivalent to a statement that A's act fell within the definition of murder given in section 299 and 300 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860); that it did not fall within any of the general exceptions of the said Code; and that it did not fall within any of the five exceptions to section 300, or that, if it did fall within Exception 1, one or other of the three provisos to that exception applied to it.

(b) A is charged under section 326 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) with voluntarily causing grievous hurt to B by means of an instrument for shooting. This is equivalent to a statement that the case was not provided for by section 335 of the said Code, and that the general exceptions did not apply to it.

(c) A is accused of murder, cheating, theft, extortion, adultery or criminal intimidation, or using a false property-mark. The charge may state that A committed murder, or cheating, or theft, or extortion, or adultery, or criminal intimidation, or that he used a false property-mark, without reference to the definitions of those crime contained in the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860); but the sections under which the offence is punishable must, in each instance, be referred to in the charge.

(d) A is charged under section 184 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) with intentionally obstructing a sale of property offered for sale by the lawful authority of a public servant. The charge should be in those words.

212. Particulars as to time, place and person.-

(1) The charge shall contain such particulars as to the time and place of the alleged offence, and the person (if any) against whom, or the thing (if any) in respect of which, it was committed, as are reasonably sufficient to give the accused notice of the matter with which he is charged.

(2) When the accused is charged with criminal breach of trust or dishonest misappropriation of money or other movable property, it shall be sufficient to specify the gross sum or, as the case may be, describe the movable property in respect of which the offence is alleged to have been committed, and the dates

between which the offence is alleged to have been committed, without specifying particular items or exact dates, and the charge so framed shall be deemed to be a charge of one offence within the meaning of section 219:

Provided that the time included between the first and last of such dates shall not exceed one year.

213. When manner of committing offence must be stated.-

When the nature of the case is such that the particulars mentioned in sections 211 and 212 do not give the accused sufficient notice of the matter with which he is charged, the charge shall also contain such particulars of the manner in which the alleged offence was committed as will be sufficient for that purpose.

Illustrations

- (a) A is accused of the theft of a certain article at a certain time and place. The charge need not set out the manner in which the theft was effected.
- (b) A is accused of cheating B at a given time and place. The charge must set out the manner in which A cheated B.
- (c) A is accused of giving false evidence at a given time and place. The charge must set out that portion of the evidence given by A which is alleged to be false.
- (d) A is accused of obstructing B, a public servant, in the discharge of his public functions at a given time and place. The charge must set out the manner in which A obstructed B in the discharge of his functions.
- (e) A is accused of the murder B at a given time and place. The charge need not state the manner in which A murdered B.
- (f) A is accused of disobeying a direction of the law with intent to save B from punishment. The charge must set out the disobedience charged and the law infringed.

214. Words in charge taken in sense of law under which offence is punishable.-

In every charge words used in describing an offence shall be deemed to have been used in the sense attached to them respectively by the law under which such offence is punishable.

215. Effect of errors.-

No error in stating either the offence or the particulars required to be stated in the charge, and no omission to state the offence or those particulars, shall be regarded at any stage of the case as material, unless the accused was in fact misled by such error or omission, and it has occasioned a failure of justice.

(a) A is charged under section 242 of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860.) with "having been in possession of counterfeit coin, having known at the time when he became possessed thereof that such coin was counterfeit", the word "fraudulently" being omitted in the charge. Unless it appears that A was in fact misled by this omission, the error shall not be regarded as material.

(b) A is charged with cheating B, and the manner in which he cheated B is not set out in the charge, or is set out incorrectly. A defends himself, calls witnesses and gives his own account of the transaction. The Court may infer from this that the omission to set out the manner of the cheating is not material.

(c) A is charged with cheating B, and the manner in which he cheated B is not set out in the charge. There were many transactions between A and B, and A had no means of knowing to which of them the charge referred, and offered no defence. The Court may infer from such facts that the omission to set out the manner of the cheating was, in the case, a material error.

(d) A is charged with the murder of Khoda Baksh on the 21st January, 1882. In fact, the murdered person's name was Haidar Baksh, and the date of the murder was the 20th January, 1882. A was never charged with any murder but one, and had heard the inquiry before the Magistrate, which referred exclusively to the case of Haidar Baksh. The Court may infer from these facts that A was not misled, and that the error in the charge was immaterial.

(e) A was charged with murdering Haidar Baksh on the 20th January, 1882, and Khoda Baksh (who tried to arrest him for that murder) on the 21st January, 1882. When charged for the murder of Haidar Baksh, he was tried for the murder of Khoda Baksh. The witnesses present in his defence were witnesses in the case of Haidar Baksh. The Court may infer from this that A was misled, and that the error was material.

216. Court may alter charge.-

(1) Any Court may alter or add to any charge at any time before judgment is pronounced.

(2) Every such alteration or addition shall be read and explained to the accused.

(3) If the alteration or addition to a charge is such that proceeding immediately with the trial is not likely, in the opinion of the Court, to prejudice the accused in his defence or the prosecutor in the conduct of the case, the Court may, in its discretion, after such alteration or addition has been made, proceed with the trial as if the altered or added charge had been the original charge.

(4) If the alteration or addition is such that proceeding immediately with the trial is likely, in the opinion of the Court, to prejudice the accused or the prosecutor as aforesaid, the Court may either direct a new trial or adjourn the trial for such period as may be necessary.

(5) If the offence stated in the altered or added charge is one for the prosecution of which previous sanction is necessary, the case shall not be proceeded with until such sanction is obtained, unless sanction has been already obtained for a prosecution on the same facts as those on which the altered or added charge is founded.

217. Recall of witnesses when charge altered..

Whenever a charge is altered or added to by the Court after the commencement of the trial, the prosecutor and the accused shall be allowed –

(a) to recall or re-summon, and examine with reference to such alteration or addition, any witness who may have been examined, unless the Court, for reasons to be recorded in writing, considers that the prosecutor or the accused, as the case may be, desires to recall or re-examine such witness for the purpose of vexation or delay or for defeating the ends of justice;

(b) also to call any further witness whom the Court may think to be material.

B.- Joinder of charges

218. Separate charges for distinct offences.-

(1) For every distinct offence of which any person is accused there shall be a separate charge, and every such charge shall be tried separately:

Provided that where the accused person, by an application in writing, so desires and the Magistrate is of opinion that such person is not likely to be prejudiced thereby, the Magistrate may try together all or any number of the charges framed against such person.

(2) Nothing in sub-section (1) shall affect the operation of the provisions of sections 219, 220, 221 and 223.

Illustration

A is accused of a theft on one occasion, and of causing grievous hurt on another occasion. A must be separately charged and separately tried for the theft and causing grievous hurt.

219.Three offences of same kind within year may be charged together.-

(1) When a person is accused of more offences than one of the same kind committed within the space of twelve months from the first to the last of such offences, whether in respect of the same person or not, he may be charged with, and tried at one trial for, any number of them not exceeding three.

(2) Offences are of the same kind when they are punishable with the same amount of punishment under the same section of the Indian Penal Code or of any special or local law:

Provided that, for the purposes of this section, an offence punishable under section 379 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) shall be deemed to be an offence of the same kind as an offence punishable under section 380 of the said Code,(45 of 1860) and that an offence punishable under any section of the said Code, or of any special or local law, shall be deemed to be an offence of the same kind as an attempt to commit such offence, when such an attempt is an offence.

220.Trial for more than one offence.-

(1) If, in one series of acts so connected together as to form the same transaction, more offences than one are committed by the same person, he may be charged with, and tried at one trial for, every such offence.

(2) When a person charged with one or more offences of criminal breach of trust or dishonest misappropriation of property as provided in sub-section (2) of section 212 or in sub-section (1) of section 219, is accused of committing, for the purpose of facilitating or concealing the commission of that offence or those offences, one or more offences of falsification of accounts, he may be charged with, and tried at one trial for, every such offence.

(3) If the acts alleged constitute an offence falling within two or more separate definitions of any law in force for the time being by which offences are defined or punished, the person accused of them may be charged with, and tried at one trial for, each of such offences.

(4) If several acts, of which one or more than one would by itself or themselves constitute an offence, constitute when combined a different offence, the person accused of them may be charged with, and tried at one trial for the offence constituted by such acts when combined, and for any offence constituted by any one, or more, of such acts.

(5) Nothing contained in this section shall affect section 71 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860).

Illustrations to sub-section (1)

(a) A rescues B, a person in lawful custody, and in so doing causes grievous hurt to C, a constable in whose custody B was.A may be charged with, and convicted of, offences under sections 225 and 333 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860).

(b) A commits house-breaking by day with intent to commit adultery, and commits, in the house so entered, adultery with B's wife.A may be separately charged with, and convicted of, offences under sections 454 and 497 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).

(c) A entices B, the wife of C, away from C, with intent to commit adultery with B, and then commits adultery with her.A may be separately charged with , and convicted of, offences under sections 498 and 497 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860).

(d) A has in his possession several seals, knowing them to be counterfeit and intending to use them for the purpose of committing several forgeries punishable under section 466 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860).A may be separately charged with, and convicted of, the possession of each seal under section 473 of the Indian Penal Code.

(e) With intent to cause injury to B, A institutes a criminal proceeding against him, knowing that there is no just or lawful ground for such proceeding, and also falsely accuses B of having committed an offence, knowing that there is no just or lawful ground for such charge.A may be separately charged with, and convicted of, two offences under section 211 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860).

(f) A, with intent to cause injury to B, falsely accuses him of having committed an offence, knowing that there is no just or lawful ground for such charge.On the trial, A gives false evidence against B, intending thereby to cause B to be

convicted of a capital offence.A may be separately charged with, and convicted of, offences under sections 211 and 194 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860).

(g) A, with six others, commits the offences of rioting, grievous hurt and assaulting a public servant endeavouring in the discharge of his duty as such to suppress the riot.A may be separately charged with, and convicted of offences under sections 147, 325 and 152 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860).

(h) A threatens B, C and D at the same time with injury to their persons with intent to cause alarm to them.A may be separately charged with, and convicted of, each of the three offences under section 506 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).

The separate charges referred to in Illustrations (a) to (h), respectively, may be tried at the same time.

(I) Where it is doubtful what offence has been committed.- A wrongfully strikes B with a cane.A may be separately charged with and convicted of, offences under sections 352 and 323 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).

(j) Several stolen sacks of corn are made over to A and B, who knew they are stolen property, for the purpose of concealing them.A and B thereupon voluntarily assist each other to conceal the sacks at the bottom of a grain-pit.A and B may be separately charged with, and convicted of, offences under sections 41 and 414 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).

(k) A exposes her child with the knowledge that she is thereby likely to cause its death.The child dies in consequence of such exposure.A may be separately charged with and convicted of, offences under sections 317 and 304 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).

(l) A dishonestly uses a forged document as genuine evidence, in order to convict B, a public servant, of an offence under section 167 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860).A may be separately charged with, and convicted of, offences under sections 471 (read with section 466) and 196 of that Code.

Illustration to sub-section (4)

(m) A commits robbery on B, and in doing so voluntarily causes hurt to him.A may be separately charged with, and convicted of, offences under sections 323, 392 and 394 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).

221.(1) If a single act or series of acts is of such a nature that it is doubtful which of several offences the facts which can be proved will constitute, the accused may be charged with having committed all or any of such offences , and any number of such charges may be tried at once; or he may be charged in the alternative with having committed some one of the said offences.

(2) If in such a case the accused is charged with one offence, and it appears in evidence that he committed a different offence for which he might have been charged under the provisions of sub-section (1), he may be convicted of the offence which he is shown to have committed, although he was not charged with it.

Illustrations

(a) A is accused of an act which may amount to theft, or receiving stolen property, or criminal breach of trust or cheating. He may be charged with theft, receiving stolen property, criminal breach of trust and cheating, or he may be charged with having committed theft, or receiving stolen property, or criminal breach of trust or cheating.

(b) In the case mentioned, A is only charged with theft. It appears that he committed the offence of criminal breach of trust, or that of receiving stolen goods. He may be convicted of criminal breach of trust or of receiving stolen goods (as the case may be), though he was not charged with such offence.

(c) A states on oath before the Magistrate that he saw B hit C with a club. Before the Sessions Court A states on oath that B never hit C. A may be charged in the alternative and convicted of intentionally giving false evidence, although it cannot be proved which of these contradictory statements was false.

222. When offence proved included in offence charged.-

1) When a person is charged with an offence consisting of several particulars, a combination of some only of which constitutes a complete minor offence, and such combination is proved, but the remaining particulars are not proved, he may be convicted of the minor offence, though he was not charged with it.

(2) When a person is charged with an offence and facts are proved which reduce it to a minor offence, he may be convicted of the minor offence, although he is not charged with it.

(3) When a person is charged with an offence, he may be convicted of an attempt to commit such offence although the attempt is not separately charged.

(4) Nothing in this section shall be deemed to authorise a conviction of any minor offence where the conditions requisite for the initiation of proceedings in respect of that minor offence have not been satisfied.

Illustrations

(a) A is charged, under section 407 of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) with criminal breach of trust in respect of property entrusted to him as a carrier. It appears, that he did commit criminal breach of trust under section 406 of that Code in respect of the property, but that it was not entrusted to him as a carrier. He may be convicted of criminal breach of trust under the said section 406.

(b) A is charged, under section 325 of the Indian Penal Code, with causing grievous hurt. He proves that he acted on grave and sudden provocation. He may be convicted under section 335 of that Code (45 of 1860).

223. What persons may be charged jointly.-

The following persons may be charged and tried together, namely:-

(a) persons accused of the same offence committed in the course of the same transaction;

(b) persons accused of an offence and persons accused of abetment of, or attempt to commit, such offence;

(c) persons accused of more than one offence of the same kind, within the meaning of section 219 committed by them jointly within the period of twelve months;

(d) persons accused of different offences committed in the course of the same transaction;

(e) persons accused of an offence which includes theft, extortion, cheating, or criminal misappropriation, and persons accused of receiving or retaining, or assisting in the disposal or concealment of, property possession of which is alleged to have been transferred by any such offence committed by the first-named persons, or of abetment of or attempting to commit any such last-named offence;

(f) persons accused of offences under sections 411 and 414 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) or either of those sections in respect of stolen property the possession of which has been transferred by one offence;

(g) Persons accused of any offence under Chapter XII of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860) relating to counterfeit coin and persons accused of any other offence under the said Chapter relating to the same coin, or of abetment of or attempting to commit any such offence; and the provisions contained in the former part of this Chapter shall, so far as may be, apply to all such charges:

Provided that where a number of persons are charged with separate offences and such persons do not fall within any of the categories specified in this section, the Magistrate may, if such persons by an application in writing, so desire, and if he is satisfied that such persons would not be prejudicially affected thereby, and it is expedient so to do, try all such persons together.

224. Withdrawal of remaining charges on conviction on one of several charges.-

When a charge containing more heads than one is framed against the same person, and when a conviction has been had on one or more of them, the complainant, or the officer conducting the prosecution, may, with the consent of the Court, withdraw the remaining charge or charges, or the Court of its own accord may stay the inquiry into, or trial of, such charge or charges and such withdrawal shall have the effect of an acquittal on such charge or charges, unless the conviction be set aside, in which case the said Court (subject to the order of the Court setting aside the conviction) may proceed with the inquiry into, or trial of, the charge of charges so withdrawn.

CHAPTER XVIII TRIAL BEFORE A COURT OF SESSION

225. Trial to be conducted by Public Prosecutor.-

In every trial before a Court of Session, the prosecution shall be conducted by a Public Prosecutor.

226. Opening case for prosecution.- When the accused appears or is brought before the Court in pursuance of a commitment of the case under section 209, the prosecutor shall open his case by describing the charge brought against the accused and stating by what evidence he proposes to prove the guilt of the accused.

227. Discharge.-

If, upon consideration of the record of the case and the documents submitted therewith, and after hearing the submissions of the accused and the prosecution in this behalf, the Judge considers that there is not sufficient

ground for proceeding against the accused, he shall discharge the accused and record his reasons for so doing.

228.Framing of charge.-

(1) If, after such consideration and hearing as aforesaid, the Judge, is of opinion that there is ground for presuming that the accused has committed an offence which –

(a) is not exclusively triable by the Court of Session, he may, frame a charge against the accused and, by order, transfer the case for trial to the Chief Judicial Magistrate, and thereupon the Chief Judicial Magistrate shall try the offence in accordance with the procedure for the trial of warrant-cases instituted on a police report;

(b) is exclusively triable by the Court, he shall frame in writing a charge against the accused.

(2) Where the Judge frames any charge under clause (b) of sub-section (1), the charge shall be read and explained to the accused and the accused shall be asked whether he pleads guilty of the offence charged or claims to be tried.

229.Conviction on plea of guilty.-

If the accused pleads guilty, the Judge shall record the plea and may, in his discretion, convict him thereon.

230.Date for prosecution evidence.-

If the accused refuses to plead, or does not plead, or claims to be tried or is not convicted under section 229, the Judge shall fix a date for the examination of witnesses, and may, on the application of the prosecution, issue any process for compelling the attendance of any witness or the production of any document or other thing.

231.Evidence for prosecution.-

(1) On the date so fixed, the Judge shall proceed to take all such evidence as may be produced in support of the prosecution.

(2) The Judge may, in his discretion, permit the cross-examination of any witness to be deferred until any other witness or witnesses have been examined or recall any witness for further cross-examination.

232.Acquittal.-

If, after taking the evidence for the prosecution, examining the accused and hearing the prosecution and the defence on the point, the Judge considers that

there is no evidence that the accused committed the offence, the Judge shall record an order of acquittal.

233.Entering upon defence.-

(1) Where the accused is not acquitted under section 232, he shall be called upon to enter on his defence and adduce any evidence he may have in support thereof.

(2) If the accused puts in any written statement, the Judge shall file it with the record.

(3) If the accused applies for the issue of any process for compelling the attendance of any witness or the production of any document or thing, the Judge shall issue such process unless he considers, for reasons to be recorded, that such application should be refused on the ground that it is made for the purpose of vexation or delay or for defeating the ends of justice.

234.Arguments.-

When the examination of the witnesses (if any) for the defence is complete, the prosecutor shall sum up his case and the accused or his pleader shall be entitled to reply:

Provided that where any point of law is raised by the accused or his pleader, the prosecution may, with the permission of the Judge, make his submissions with regard to such point of law.

235.Judgment of acquittal or conviction.-

(1) After hearing arguments and points of law (if any), the Judge shall give a judgment in the case.

(2) If the accused is convicted, the Judge shall, unless he proceeds in accordance with the provisions of section 360, hear the accused on the questions of sentence, and then pass sentence on him according to law.

236.Previous conviction.-

In a case where a previous conviction is charged under the provisions of sub-section (7) of section 211, and the accused does not admit that he has been previously convicted as alleged in the charge, the Judge may, after he has convicted the said accused under section 229 or section 235, take evidence in respect of the alleged previous conviction, and shall record a finding thereon:

Provided that no such charge shall be read out by the Judge nor shall the accused be asked to plead thereto nor shall the previous conviction be referred

to by the prosecution or in any evidence adduced by it, unless and until the accused has been convicted under section 229 or section 235.

237. Procedure in cases instituted under section 199(2).-

(1) A Court of Session taking cognizance of an offence under sub-section (2) of section 199 shall try the case in accordance with the procedure for the trial of warrant-cases instituted otherwise than on a police report before a Court of Magistrate:

Provided that the person against whom the offence is alleged to have been committed shall, unless the Court of Session, for reasons to be recorded, otherwise directs, be examined as a witness for the prosecution.

(2) Every trial under this section shall be held in camera if either party thereto so desires or if the Court thinks fit so to do.

(3) If, in any such case, the Court discharges or acquits all or any of the accused and is of opinion that there was no reasonable cause for making the accusation against them or any of them, it may, by its order of discharge or acquittal, direct the person against whom the offence was alleged to have been committed (other than the President, Vice-President or the Governor of a State or the Administrator of a Union territory) to show cause why he should not pay compensation to such accused or to each or any of such accused, when there are more than one.

(4) The Court shall record and consider any cause which may be shown by the person so directed, and if it is satisfied that there was no reasonable cause for making the accusation, it may, for reasons to be recorded, make an order that compensation to such amount not exceeding one thousand rupees, as it may determine, be paid by such person to the accused or to each or any of them.

(5) Compensation awarded under sub-section (4) shall be recovered as if it were a fine imposed by a Magistrate.

(6) No person who has been directed to pay compensation under sub-section (4) shall, by reason of such order, be exempted from any civil or criminal liability in respect of the complaint made under this section:

Provided that any amount paid to an accused person under this section shall be taken into account in awarding compensation to such person in any subsequent civil suit relating to the same matter.

(7) The person who has been ordered under sub-section (4) to pay compensation may appeal from the order, in so far as it relates to the payment of compensation, to the High Court.

(8) When an order for payment of compensation to an accused person is made, the compensation shall not be paid to him before the period allowed for the presentation of the appeal has elapsed, or, if an appeal is presented, before the appeal has been decided.

CHAPTER XIX TRIAL OF WARRANT-CASES BY MAGISTRATES

A.- Cases instituted on a police report

238.Compliance with section 207.-

When, in any warrant-case instituted on a police report, the accused appears or is brought before a Magistrate at the commencement of the trial, the Magistrate shall satisfy himself that he has complied with the provisions of section 207.

239.When accused shall be discharged.-

If, upon considering the police report and the documents sent with it under section 173 and making such examination, if any, of the accused as the Magistrate thinks necessary and after giving the prosecution and the accused an opportunity of being heard, the Magistrate considers the charge against the accused to be groundless, he shall discharge the accused, and record his reasons for so doing.

240.Framing of charge

(1) If, upon such consideration, examination, if any, and hearing, the Magistrate is of opinion that there is ground for presuming that the accused has committed an offence triable under this Chapter, which such Magistrate is competent to try and which, in his opinion, could be adequately punished by him, he shall frame in writing a charge against the accused.

(2) The charge shall then be read and explained to the accused, and he shall be asked whether he pleads guilty of the offence charged or claims to be tried.

241.Conviction on plea of guilty.-

If the accused pleads guilty, the Magistrate shall record the plea and may, in his discretion, convict him thereon.

242.Evidence for prosecution.-

(1) If the accused refuses to plead or does not plead, or claims to be tried or the Magistrate does not convict the accused under section 241, the Magistrate shall fix a date for the examination of witnesses.

(2) The Magistrate may, on the application of the prosecution, issue a summons to any of its witnesses directing him to attend or to produce any document or other thing.

(3) On the date so fixed, the Magistrate shall proceed to take all such evidence as may be produced in support of the prosecution:

Provided that the Magistrate may permit the cross-examination of any witness to be deferred until any other witness or witnesses have been examined or recall any witness for further cross-examination.

243. Evidence for defence.-

(1) The accused shall then be called upon to enter upon his defence and produce his evidence; and if the accused puts in any written statement, the Magistrate shall file it with the record.

(2) If the accused, after he has entered upon his defence, applies to the Magistrate to issue any process for compelling the attendance of any witness for the purpose of examination or cross-examination, or the production of any document or other thing, the Magistrate shall issue such process unless he considers that such application should be refused on the ground that it is made for the purpose of vexation or delay or for defeating the ends of justice and such ground shall be recorded by him in writing:

Provided that, when the accused has cross-examined or had the opportunity of cross-examining any witness before entering on his defence, the attendance of such witness shall not be compelled under this section, unless the Magistrate is satisfied that it is necessary for the ends of justice.

(3) The Magistrate may, before summoning any witness on an application under sub-section (2), require that the reasonable incurred by the witness in attending for the purposes of the trial be deposited in Court.

B.- Cases instituted otherwise than on police report

244. Evidence for prosecution.-

(1) When, in any warrant-case instituted otherwise than on a police report, the accused appears or is brought before a Magistrate, the Magistrate shall proceed to hear the prosecution and take all such evidence as may be produced in support of the prosecution.

(2) The Magistrate may, on the application of the prosecution, issue a summons to any of its witnesses directing him to attend or to produce any document or other thing.

245. When accused shall be discharged.-

(1) If, upon taking all the evidence referred to in section 244, the Magistrate considers, for reasons to be recorded, that no case against the accused has been made out which, if unrebutted, would warrant his conviction, the Magistrate shall discharge him.

(2) Nothing in this section shall be deemed to prevent a Magistrate from discharging the accused at any previous stage of the case if, for reasons to be recorded by such Magistrate, he considers the charge to be groundless.

246. Procedure where accused is not discharged.

– (1) If, when such evidence has been taken, or at any previous stage of the case, the Magistrate is of opinion that there is ground for presuming that the accused has committed an offence triable under this Chapter, which such Magistrate is competent to try and which, in his opinion, could be adequately punished by him, he shall frame in writing a charge against the accused.

(2) The charge shall then be read and explained to the accused, and he shall be asked whether he pleads guilty or has any defence to make.

(3) If the accused pleads guilty, the Magistrate shall record the plea, and may, in his discretion, convict him thereon.

(4) If the accused refuses to plead, or does not plead or claims to be tried or if the accused is not convicted under sub-section (3), he shall be required to state, at the commencement of the next hearing of the case, or, if the Magistrate for reasons to be recorded in writing so thinks fit, forthwith, whether he wishes to cross-examine any, and, if so, which, of the witnesses for the prosecution whose evidence has been taken.

(5) If he says he does so wish, the witnesses named by him shall be recalled and, after cross-examination and re-examination (if any), they shall be discharged.

(6) The evidence of any remaining witnesses for the prosecution shall next be taken, and after cross-examination and re-examination (if any), they shall also be discharged.

247. Evidence for defence.-

The accused shall then be called upon to enter upon his defence and produce his evidence; and the provisions of section 243 shall apply to the case.

C.- Conclusion of trial

248.Acquittal or conviction.-

(1) If, in any case under this Chapter in which a charge has been framed, the Magistrate finds the accused not guilty, he shall record an order of acquittal.

(2) Where, in any case under this Chapter, the Magistrate finds the accused guilty, but does not proceed in accordance with the provisions of section 325 or section 360, he shall, after hearing the accused on the question of sentence, pass sentence upon him according to law.

(3) Where, in any case under this Chapter, a previous conviction is charged under the provisions of sub-section (7) of section 211 and the accused does not admit that he has been previously convicted as alleged in the charge, the Magistrate may, after he has convicted the said accused, take evidence in respect of the alleged previous conviction, and shall record a finding thereon:

Provided that no such charge shall be read out by the Magistrate no shall the accused be asked to plead thereto no shall the previous conviction be referred to by the prosecution or in any evidence adduced by it, unless and until the accused has been convicted under sub-section (2).

249.Absence of complainant.-

When the proceedings have been instituted upon complaint, and on any day fixed for the hearing of the case, the complainant is absent, and the offence may be lawfully compounded or is not a cognizable offence, the Magistrate may, in his discretion, notwithstanding anything hereinbefore contained, at any time before the charge has been framed, discharge the accused.

250.Compensation for accusation without reasonable cause.-

(1) If, in any case instituted upon complaint or upon information given to a police officer or to a Magistrate, one or more persons is or are accused before a Magistrate of any offence triable by a Magistrate, and the Magistrate by whom the case is heard discharges or acquits all or any of the accused, and is of opinion that there was no reasonable ground for making the accusation against them or any of them, the Magistrate may, by his order of discharge or acquittal, if the person upon whose complaint or information the accusation was made is present, call upon him forthwith to show cause why he should not pay compensation to such accused or to each or any of such accused when

there are more than one; or, if such person is not present, direct the issue of a summons to him to appear and show cause as aforesaid.

(2) The Magistrate shall record and consider any cause which such complainant or informant may show, and if he is satisfied that there was no reasonable ground for making the accusation, may, for reasons to be recorded, make an order that compensation to such amount, not exceeding the amount of fine he is empowered to impose, as he may determine, be paid by such complainant or informant to the accused or to each or any of them.

(3) The Magistrate may, by the order directing payment of the compensation under sub-section (2), further order that, in default of payment, the person ordered to pay such compensation shall undergo simple imprisonment for a period not exceeding thirty days.

(4) When any person is imprisoned under sub-section (3), the provisions of sections 68 and 69 of the Indian Penal Code shall, so far as may be, apply.

(5) No person who has been directed to pay compensation under this section shall, by reason of such order, be exempted from any civil or criminal liability in respect of the complaint made or information given by him:

Provided that any amount paid to an accused person under this section shall be taken into account in awarding compensation to such person in any subsequent civil suit relating to the same matter.

(6) A complainant or informant who has been ordered under sub-section (2) by a Magistrate of the second class to pay compensation exceeding one hundred rupees, may appeal from the order, as if such complainant or informant had been convicted on a trial held by such Magistrate.

(7) When an order for payment of compensation to an accused person is made in a case which is subject to appeal under sub-section (6), the compensation shall not be paid to him before the period allowed for the presentation of the appeal has elapsed, or, if an appeal is presented, before the appeal has been decided; and where such order is made in a case which is not so subject to appeal the compensation shall not be paid before the expiration of one month from the date of the order.

(8) The provisions of this section apply to summons-cases as well as to warrant-cases.

CHAPTER XX

TRIAL OF SUMMONS-CASES BY MAGISTRATES

251. Substance of accusation to be stated.-

When in a summons-case the accused appears or is brought before the Magistrate, the particulars of the offence of which he is accused shall be stated to him, and he shall be asked whether he pleads guilty or has any defence to make, but it shall not be necessary to frame a formal charge.

252. Conviction on plea of guilty.

– If the accused pleads guilty, the Magistrate shall record the plea as nearly as possible in the words used by the accused and may, in his discretion, convict him thereon.

253. Conviction on plea of guilty in absence of accused in petty cases.-

(1) Where a summons has been issued under section 206 and the accused desires to plead guilty to the charge without appearing before the Magistrate, he shall transmit to the Magistrate, by post or by messenger, a letter containing his plea and also the amount of fine specified in the summons.

(2) The Magistrate may, in his discretion, convict the accused in his absence, on his plea of guilty and sentence him to pay the fine specified in the summons, and the amount transmitted by the accused shall be adjusted towards that fine, or where a pleader authorised by the accused in this behalf pleads guilty on behalf of the accused, the Magistrate shall record the plea as nearly as possible in the words used by the pleader and may, in his discretion, convict the accused on such plea and sentence him as aforesaid.

254. Procedure when not convicted.-

(1) If the Magistrate does not convict the accused under section 252 or section 253, the Magistrate shall proceed to hear the prosecution and take all such evidence as may be produced in support of the prosecution, and also to hear the accused and take all such evidence as he produces in his defence.

(2) The Magistrate may, if he thinks fit, on the application of the prosecution or the accused, issue a summons to any witness directing him to attend or to produce any document or other thing.

(3) The Magistrate may, before summoning any witness on such application, require that the reasonable expenses of the witness incurred in attending for the purposes of the trial be deposited in Court.

255. Acquittal or conviction.-

(1) If the Magistrate, upon taking the evidence referred to in section 254 and such further evidence, if any, as he may, of his own motion, cause to be produced, finds the accused not guilty, he shall record an order of acquittal.

(2) Where the Magistrate does not proceed in accordance with the provisions of section 325 or section 360, he shall, if he finds the accused guilty, pass sentence upon him according to law.

(3) A Magistrate may, under section 252 or section 255, convict the accused of any offence triable under this Chapter, which from the facts admitted or proved he appears to have committed, whatever may be the nature of the complaint or summons, if the Magistrate is satisfied that the accused would not be prejudiced thereby.

256. Non-appearance or death of complainant.-

(1) If the summons has been issued on complaint, and on the day appointed for the appearance of the accused, or any day subsequent thereto to which the hearing may be adjourned, the complainant does not appear, the Magistrate shall, notwithstanding anything hereinbefore contained, acquit the accused, unless for some reason he thinks it proper to adjourn the hearing of the case to some other day:

Provided that where the complainant is represented by a pleader or by the officer conducting the prosecution or where the Magistrate is of opinion that the personal attendance of the complainant is not necessary, the Magistrate may dispense with his attendance and proceed with the case.

(2) The provisions of sub-section (1) shall, so far as may be, apply also to cases where the non-appearance of the complainant is due to his death.

257. Withdrawal of complaint.-

If a complainant, at any time before a final order is passed in any case under this Chapter, satisfies the Magistrate that there are sufficient grounds for permitting him to withdraw his complaint against the accused, or if there be more than one accused, against all or any of them, the Magistrate may permit him to withdraw the same, and shall thereupon acquit the accused against whom the complaint is so withdrawn.

258. Power to stop proceedings in certain cases.-

In any summons-case instituted otherwise than upon complaint, a Magistrate of the first class or, with the previous sanction of the Chief Judicial Magistrate, any other Judicial Magistrate, may, for reasons to be recorded by him, stop the

proceedings at any stage without pronouncing any judgment and where such stoppage of proceedings is made after the evidence of the principal witnesses has been recorded, pronounce a judgment of acquittal, and in any other case, release the accused, and such release shall have the effect of discharge.

259. Power of Court to convert summons-cases into warrant-cases.-

When in the course of the trial of a summons-case relating to an offence punishable with imprisonment for a term exceeding six months, it appears to the Magistrate that in the interests of justice, the offence should be tried in accordance with the procedure for the trial of warrant-cases, such Magistrate may proceed to re-hear the case in the manner provided by this Code for the trial of warrant-cases and may re-call any witness who may have been examined.

CHAPTER XXI
SUMMARY TRIALS

260. Power to try summarily.-

(1) Notwithstanding anything contained in this Code-

- (a) any Chief Judicial Magistrate;
- (b) any Metropolitan Magistrate;

(c) any Magistrate of the first class specially empowered in this behalf by the High Court,

may, if he thinks fit, try in a summary way all or any of the following offences:

(I) offences not punishable with death, imprisonment for life or imprisonment for a term exceeding two years;

(ii) theft, under section 379, section 380 or section 381 of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) where the value of the property stolen does not exceed two hundred rupees;

(iii) receiving or retaining stolen property, under section 411 of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) where the value of the property does not exceed two hundred rupees;

(iv) assisting in the concealment or disposal of stolen property, under section 414 of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) where the value of such property does not exceed two hundred rupees;

- (v) offences under sections 454 and 456 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860);
- (vi) insult with intent to provoke a breach of the peace, under section 504, and criminal intimidation, under section 506 of the Indian Penal Code(45 of 1860);
- (vii) abetment of any of the foregoing offences;
- (viii) an attempt to commit any of the foregoing offences, when such attempt is an offence;
- (ix) any offence constituted by an act in respect of which a complaint may be made under section 20 of the Cattle-trespass Act, 1871(1 of 1871).

(2) When, in the course of a summary trial it appears to the Magistrate that the nature of the case is such that it is undesirable to try it summarily, the Magistrate shall recall any witnesses who may have been examined and proceed to re-hear the case in the manner provided by this Code.

261. Summary trial by Magistrate of the second class.-

The High Court may confer on any Magistrate invested with the powers of a Magistrate of the second class power to try summarily any offence which is punishable only with fine or with imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months with or without fine, and any abetment of or attempt to commit any such offence.

262. Procedure for summary trials.-

(1) In trials under this Chapter, the procedure specified in this Code for the trial of summons-case shall be followed except as hereinafter mentioned.

(2) No sentence of imprisonment for a term exceeding three months shall be passed in the case of any conviction under this Chapter.

263. Record in summary trials.-

In every case tried summarily, the Magistrate shall enter, in such form as the State Government may direct, the following particulars, namely:-

- (a) the serial number of the case;
- (b) the date of the commission of the offence;
- (c) the date of the report or complaint;
- (d) the name of the complainant (if any);

- (e) the name, parentage and residence of the accused;
- (f) the offence complained of and the offence (if any) proved, and in cases coming under clause (ii), clause (iii) or clause (iv) of sub-section (1) of section 260, the value of the property in respect of which the offence has been committed;
- (g) the plea of the accused and his examination (if any);
- (h) the finding;
- (i) the sentence or other final order
- (j) the date on which proceedings terminated.

264. Judgment in cases tried summarily.-

In every case tried summarily in which the accused does not plead guilty, the Magistrate shall record the substance of the evidence and a judgment containing a brief statement of the reasons for the finding.

265. Language of record and judgment.-

- (1) Every such record and judgment shall be written in the language of the Court.
- (2) The High Court may authorise any Magistrate empowered to try offences summarily to prepare the aforesaid record or judgment or both by means of an officer appointed in this behalf by the Chief Judicial Magistrate, and the record or judgment so prepared shall be signed by such Magistrate

**CHAPTER XXII : ATTENDANCE OF PERSONS CONFINED OR
DETAINED IN PRISONS**

266. Definition :- In this chapter-,

- (a) "detained" includes detained under any law providing for preventive detention;
- (b) 'prison' includes –
 - (i) any place which has been declared by the Government, by general or special order, a subsidiary jail;
 - (ii) any reformatory, Borstal institution or institution of a like nature.

267. Power to require attendance of prisoner:-(1) Whenever, in the course of an inquiry, trial or proceeding under this Code, it appears to a Criminal Court,-

(a) that a person confined or detained in a prison should be brought before the Court for answer to a charge of an offence, or for the purpose any proceedings against him, or

(b) that it is necessary for the ends of justice to examine such person as a witness,

the Court may make an order requiring the officer in charge of the prison to produce such person before the Court answering to the charge or for the purpose of such proceed or, as the case may be, for giving evidence.

(2) Where an order under sub-section (1) is made by a Magistrate of the second class, it shall not be forwarded to, or acted upon by, the officer in charge of the prison unless it is countersigned by the Chief Judicial Magistrate, to whom such Magistrate is subordinate.

(3) Every order submitted for countersigning under sub-section (2) shall be accompanied by a statement of the facts which, in the opinion of the Magistrate, render the order necessary, and the Chief Judicial Magistrate to whom it is submitted may, after considering such statement, decline to countersign the order.

268. Power of State Government to exclude certain persons from operation of Section 267 -(1) The State Government may, at any time, having regard to the matter specified in sub-section (2), by general or special order, direct that any person or class of persons shall not be removed from the prison in which he or they may be confined or detained, and thereupon, so long as the order remains in force, no order made under Section 267, whether before or after the order of the State Government, shall have effect in respect of such person or class of persons.

(2) Before making an order under sub-section (1), the State Government shall have regard to the following matters, namely :–

(a) the nature of the offence for which, or the grounds on which, the person or class of persons has been ordered to be confined or detained in prison;

(b) the likelihood of the disturbance of public order if the person or class of persons is allowed to be removed from the prison;

(c) the public interest, generally.

269. Officer in charge of prison to abstain from carrying out order in certain contingencies :- Where the person in respect of whom an order is made under Section 267 –

- (a) is by reason of sickness or infirmity unfit to be removed from the prison; or
- (b) is under committal for trial or under remand pending trial or pending a preliminary investigation; or
- (c) is in custody for a period which would expire before the expiration of the time required for complying with the order and for taking him back to the prison in which he is confined or detained; or
- (d) is a person to whom an order made by the State Government under Section 268 applies,

the officer in charge of the prison shall abstain from carrying out the Court's order and shall send to the Court a statement of reasons for so abstaining:

Provided that where the attendance of such person required for giving evidence at a place not more than twenty five kilometres distant from the prison, the officer in charge of the prison shall not so abstain for the reason mentioned in Clause (b).

270. Prisoner to be brought to Court in custody:- Subject to the provisions of Section 269, the officer in charge of the prison shall, upon delivery of an order under sub-section (1) of Section 267 and duly countersign where necessary, under sub-section (2) thereof, cause the person named in the order to be taken to the Court in which his attendance is required, so as to be present there at the time mentioned in the order, and shall cause him to be kept in custody in or near the Court until he has been examined or until the Court authorises him to be taken back to the prison in which he was confined or detained.

271. Power to issue commission for examination of witness in prison :- The provisions of this Chapter shall be without prejudice to the power of the Court to issue, under Section 284, a commission for the examination, as witness, of any person confined or detained in a prison; and the provisions of Part B of Chapter XXIII shall apply in relation to the examination on commission of any such person in the prison as they apply in relation to the examination on commission of any other person.

CHAPTER XXIII : EVIDENCE IN INQUIRIES AND TRIALS

A – Mode of Taking and Recording Evidence

272. Language of Courts :- The State Government may determine what shall be, for purposes of this Code, the language of each Court within the State other than the High Court.

273. Evidence to be taken in presence of accused:- Except as otherwise expressly provided, all evidence taken in the course of the trial or other proceeding shall be taken in the presence of the accused, or, when his personal attendance is dispensed with, in presence of his pleader.

Explanation – In this Section, “accused” includes a person in relation to whom any proceeding under Chapter VIII has been commenced under this Code.

274. Record in summons-cases and inquiries:-(1) In all summons-cases tried before a Magistrate, in all inquiries under Sections 145 to 148 (both inclusive), and in all proceedings under Section 446 otherwise than in the course of a trial, the Magistrate shall, as the examination of each witness proceeds, make a memorandum of the substance of his evidence in the language of the Court:

Provided that if the Magistrate is unable to make such memorandum himself, he shall, after recording the reason of his inability, cause such memorandum to be made in writing or from his dictation in open Court.

(2) Such memorandum shall be signed by the Magistrate and shall form part of the record.

275. Record in warrant-cases:-(1) In all warrant-cases tried before a Magistrate, the evidence of each witness shall, as his examination proceeds, be taken down in writing either by the Magistrate himself or by his dictation in open Court or, where he is unable to do so owing to a physical or other incapacity, under his direction and superintendence, by an officer of the Court appointed by him in this behalf.

(2) Where the Magistrate causes the evidence to be taken down, he shall record a certificate that the evidence could not be taken down by himself for the reasons referred to in sub-section (1).

(3) Such evidence shall ordinarily be taken down in the form of a narrative; but the Magistrate may, in his discretion take down or cause to be taken down, any part of such evidence in the form of question and answer.

(4) The evidence so taken down shall be signed by the Magistrate and shall form part of the record.

276. Record in trial before Court of Session:-(1) In all trials before a Court of Session, the evidence of each witness shall, as his examination

proceeds, be taken down in writing either by the presiding Judge himself or by his dictation in open Court, or under his direction and superintendence, by an officer of the Court appointed by him in this behalf.

(2) Such evidence shall ordinarily be taken down in the form of a narrative, but the presiding Judge may, in his discretion, take down, or cause to be taken down, any part of such evidence in the form of question and answer.

(3) The evidence so taken down shall be signed by the presiding Judge and shall form part of the record.

277. Language of record of evidence:- In every case where evidence is taken down under Sections 275 and 276:-

(a) if the witness gives evidence in the language of the Court, it shall be taken down in that language;

(b) if he gives evidence in any other language, it may, if practicable, be taken down in that language, and if it is not practicable to do so, a true translation of the evidence in the language of the Court shall be prepared as the examination of the witness proceeds, signed by the Magistrate or presiding Judge, and shall form part of the record;

(c) where under Clause (b) evidence is taken down in a language other than the language of the Court, a true transaction thereof in the language of the Court shall be prepared as soon as practicable, signed by the Magistrate or presiding Judge, and shall form part of the record:

Provided that when under clause (b) evidence is taken down in English and a translation thereof in the language of the Court is not required by any of the parties, the Court may dispense with such translation.

278. Procedure in regard to such evidence when completed.-(1) As the evidence of each witness taken under Section 275 or Section 276 is completed, it shall be read over to him in the presence of the accused, if in attendance, or of his pleader, if he appears by pleader, and shall, if necessary, be corrected.

(2) If the witness denies the correctness of any part of the evidence when the same is read over to him, the Magistrate or presiding Judge may, instead of correcting the evidence, make a memorandum thereon of the objection made to it by the witness, and shall add such remarks as he thinks necessary.

(3) If the record of the evidence is in a language different from that in which it has been given and the witness does not understand that language, the record

shall be interpreted to him in the language in which it was given, or in a language which he understands.

279. Interpretation of evidence to accused or his pleader :-

- (1) Whenever any evidence is given in a language not understood by the accused, and he is present in Court in person, it shall be interpreted to him in open Court in a language understood by him.
- (2) If he appears by pleader and the evidence is given in a language other than the language of the Court, and not understood by the pleader, it shall be interpreted to such pleader in that language.
- (3) When documents are put for the purpose of formal proof, it shall be in the discretion of the Court to interpret as much thereof as appears necessary.

280. Remarks respecting demeanour of witness:- When a presiding Judge or Magistrate has recorded the evidence of a witness, he shall also record such remarks (if any) as he thinks material respecting the demeanour of such witness whilst under examination.

281. Record of examination of accused :- (1) Whenever the accused is examined by a Metropolitan Magistrate, the Magistrate shall make a memorandum of the substance of the examination of the accused in the language of the Court and such memorandum shall be signed by the Magistrate and shall form part of the record.

(2) Whenever the accused is examined by any Magistrate other than a Metropolitan Magistrate, or by a Court of Session, the whole of such examination, including every question put to him and every answer given by him, shall be recorded in full by the presiding Judge or Magistrate himself or where he is unable to do so owing to a physical or other incapacity, under his direction and superintendence by an officer of the Court appointed by him in this behalf.

(3) The record shall, if practicable, be in the language in which the accused is examined, or if that is not practicable, in the language of the Court.

(4) The record shall be shown or read to the accused, or, if he does not understand the language in which it is written, shall be interpreted to him in a language which he understands, and he shall be at liberty to explain or add to his answers.

(5) It shall thereafter be signed by the accused and by the Magistrate or presiding Judge, who shall certify under his own hand that the examination was taken in his presence and hearing and that the record contains a full and true account of the statement made by the accused.

(6) Nothing in this section shall be deemed to apply to the examination of an accused person in the course of a summary trial.

282. Interpreter to be bound to interpret truthfully:- When the services of an interpreter are required by any Criminal Court for the interpretation of any evidence or statement, he shall be bound to state the true interpretation of such evidence or statement.

283. Record in High Court:- Every High Court may, by general rule, prescribe the manner in which the evidence of witnesses and the examination of the accused shall be taken down in cases coming before it, and such evidence and examination shall be taken down in accordance with such rule.

284. When attendance of witness may be dispensed with and commission issued :-(1) Whenever, in the course of any inquiry, trial or other proceeding under this Code, it appears to a Court or Magistrate that the examination of a witness is necessary for the ends of justice, and that the attendance of such witness cannot be procured without an amount of delay, expense or inconvenience which, under the circumstances of the case, would be unreasonable, the Court or Magistrate may dispense with such attendance and may issue a commission for the examination of the witness in accordance with the provisions of this Chapter:

Provided that where the examination of the President or the Vice-President of India or the Governor of a State; or the Administrator of a Union Territory as a witness is necessary for the ends of Justice, a commission shall be issued for the examination of such a witness.

(2) The Court may, when issuing a commission for, the examination of a witness for the prosecution, direct that such amount as the Court considers reasonable to meet the expenses of the accused, including the pleader's fees, be paid by the prosecution.

B – Commissions for Examination of Witnesses

285. Commission to whom to be issued :-(1) If witness is within the territories to which this Code extend the commission shall be directed to the Chief Metropolitan Magistrate or the Chief Judicial Magistrate, as the case may be, within whose local jurisdiction the witness is to be found.

(2) If the witness is in India, but in a State or an area to which this Code does not extend, the commission, shall be directed to such Court or officer as the Central Government may, by notification, specify in this behalf.

(3) If the witness is in a country or place outside India and arrangements have been made by the Central Government with the Government of such country

or place for taking the evidence of witnesses in relation to criminal matters, the commission shall be issued in such form, directed to such Court or officer, and sent to such authority for transmission as the Central Government may, by notification, prescribed in this behalf.

286. Execution of commissions :- Upon receipt of the Commission, the Chief Metropolitan Magistrate, or Chief Judicial Magistrate, or such Metropolitan or Judicial Magistrate as he may appoint in this behalf, shall summon the witness before him or proceed to the place where the witness is, and shall take down his evidence in the same manner, and may for this purpose exercise the same powers, as in trials or warrant cases under this Code.

287. Parties may examine witnesses :-(1) The parties to any proceeding under this Code in which a commission is issued may respectively forward any interrogatories in writing which the Court or Magistrate directing the commission may think relevant to the issue, and it shall be lawful for the Magistrate, Court or officer to whom the commission, is directed, or to whom the duty of executing it is delegated, to examine the witness upon such interrogatories.

(2) Any such party may appear before such magistrate, Court or Officer by Pleader, or if not in custody, in person, and may examine, cross-examine and re-examine (as the case may be) the said witness.

288. Return of Commission:- (1) After any commission issued under Section 284 has been duly executed, it shall be returned, together with the deposition of the witness examined thereunder, to the Court or Magistrate issuing the commission, and the commission, the return thereto and the deposition shall be open at all reasonable times to inspection of the parties, and may, subject to all just exceptions, be read in evidence in the case by either party, and shall form part of the record.

(2) Any deposition so taken, if it satisfies the conditions prescribed by Section 33 of the Indian Evidence Act,, 1872 (1 of 1872), may also be received in evidence at any subsequent stage of the case before another Court.

289. Adjournment of proceeding:- In every case in which a commission is issued under Section 284, the inquiry, trial or other proceeding may be adjourned for a specified time reasonably sufficient for the execution and return of the commission.

290. Execution of foreign commissions:- (1) The Provisions of Section 286 and so much of Section 287 and Section 288 as relate to the execution of a

commission and its return shall apply in respect of commissions issued by any of the Courts, Judges or Magistrates hereinafter mentioned as they apply to commissions issued under Section 284.

(2) The Courts, Judges and Magistrates referred to in sub-section (1) are-

(a) any such Court, Judge or Magistrate exercising jurisdiction within an area in India to which this Code does not extent, as the Central Government may, by notification, specify in this behalf;

(b) any Court, Judge or Magistrate exercising jurisdiction in any such country or place outside India, as the Central Government may, by notification, specify in this behalf, and having authority, under the law in force in that country or place, to issue commissions for the examination of witnesses in relation to criminal matters.

291. Deposition of medical witness:- (1) The deposition of a civil surgeon or other medical witness, taken and attested by a Magistrate in the presence of the accused, or taken on commission under this chapter, may be given in evidence in any inquiry, trial or other proceeding under this code, although the deponent is not called as witness.

(2) The Court may, if it thinks fit, and shall, on the application of the prosecution or the accused, summon and examine any such deponent as to the subject-matter of his deposition.

292. Evidence of Officers of the Mint : - (1) Any document purporting to be a report under the hand of any such Gazetted Officer of the Mint or of the Indian Security Press (including the Officer of the Controller of Stamps and stationery) as the Central Government may, by notification, specify in this behalf, upon any matter or thing duly submitted to him for examination and report in the course of any proceeding under this Code, may be used as evidence in any inquiry, trial or other proceeding under this Code, although such officer is not called as a witness.

(2) The court may, if it thinks fit, summon and examine any such officer as to be the subject-matter of his report:

Provided that no such officer shall be summoned to produce any records on which the report is based.

(3) Without prejudice to the provisions of Sections 123 and 124 of the Indian Evidence Act, 1872 (1 of 1872), no such officer shall, except with the permission of the Master of the Mint or the Indian Security Press or the Controller of Stamps and Stationery, as the case may be, permitted,

(a) to give any evidence derived from any unpublished official records on which the report is based ; or

(b) to disclose the nature or particulars of any test applied by him in the course of the examination of the matter or thing.

293. Reports of certain Government scientific experts:-(1) Any document purporting to be a report under the hand of a Government scientific expert to whom this Section applies, upon any matter or thing duly submitted to him for examination or analysis and report in the course of any proceeding under this Code, may be used as evidence in any, inquiry, trial or other proceeding under this Code.

(2) The Court may, if it thinks fit, summon and examine any such expert as to the subject-matter of his report.

(3) Where any such expert is summoned by a Court, and he is unable to attend personally, he may, unless the Court has expressly directed him to appear personally depute any responsible officer working with him to attend the Court, if such officer is conversant with the facts of the case and can satisfactorily depose in Court on his behalf.

(4) This Section applies to the following Government scientific experts, namely:-

(a) any Chemical Examiner or Assistant Chemical Examiner to Government

(b) the Chief Inspector of Explosives;

(c) the Director of the Finger Print Bureau;

(d) the Director Haffkeine Institute, Bombay ;

(e) the Director, Deputy Director or Assistant Director of a Central Forensic Science Laboratory or a State

Forensic Science Laboratory;

(f) the Serologist to the Government.

294. No formal proof of certain documents:-Where any document is filed before any Court by the prosecution or the accused, the particulars of every such document shall be included in a list and the prosecution or the accused, as the case may be, or the pleader for the prosecution or the accused,

if any, shall be called upon to admit or deny the genuineness of each such document.

(2) The list of documents shall be in such form as be prescribed by the State Government.

(3) Where the genuineness of any document is not disputed, such document may be read in evidence in inquiry, trial or other proceeding under this Code without proof of the signature of the person to whom it purports to be signed :

Provided that the Court may, in its discretion, require such signature to be proved.

295. Affidavit in proof of conduct of public servant:- When any application is made to any Court in the course of any inquiry, trial or other proceedings under this Code, and allegations are made therein respecting any public servant the applicant may give evidence of the facts alleged in the application by affidavit, and the Court may, if it thinks fit, order that evidence relating to such facts to be given.

296. Evidence of formal character on affidavit:- (1) The evidence of any person whose evidence is of a formal character may be given by affidavit and may, subject to all just exceptions, be read in evidence in any inquiry, trial or other proceeding under this Code.

(2) The Court may, if it thinks fit, and shall, on the application of the prosecution or the accused, summons and examine any such person as to the facts contained in his affidavit.

297. Authorities before whom affidavits may be sworn:- (1) Affidavits to be used before any Court under this Code may be sworn or affirmed before,-

(a) any Judge or Judicial or Executive Magistrate, or

(b) any commissioner of Oaths appointed by a High Court or Court of Session, or

(c) any notary appointed under the Notaries Act, 1952 (53 of 1952).

(2) Affidavits shall be confined to, and shall state separately, such facts as the deponent is able to prove from his own knowledge and such facts as he has reasonable ground to believe to be true, and in the latter case, the deponent shall clearly state the grounds of such belief.

(3) The Court may order any scandalous and irrelevant matter in the affidavit to be struck out or amended.

298. Previous conviction or acquittal how proved:- In any inquiry, trial or other proceeding under this Code, a previous conviction or acquittal may be proved, in addition to any other mode provided by any law for the time being in force,-

(a) by an extract certified under the hand of the officer having the custody, of the records of the Court in which such conviction or acquittal was held, to be a copy of the sentence or order; or

(b) in case of a conviction, either by a certificate signed by the officer in charge of the Jail in which the punishment or any part thereof was undergone, or by production of the warrant of commitment under which the punishment was suffered, together with, in each of such cases, evidence as to the identity of the accused person with the person so convicted or acquitted.

299. Record of evidence in absence of accused:- (1) If it is proved that an accused person has absconded, and that there is no immediate prospect of arresting him, the Court competent to try or commit for trial, such person for the offence complained of, may, in his absence, examine the witnesses (if any) produced on behalf of the prosecution, and record their depositions and any such deposition may, on the arrest of such person, be given in evidence against him on the inquiry into, or trial for, the offence with which he is charged, if the deponent is dead or incapable of giving evidence or cannot be found or his presence cannot be procured without an amount of delay, expense or inconvenience which, under the circumstances of the case, would be unreasonable.

(2) If it appears that an offence punishable with death or imprisonment for life has been committed by some person or persons unknown, the High Court or the Sessions Judge may direct that any Magistrate of the first class shall hold an inquiry and examine any witnesses who can give evidence concerning the offence and any depositions so taken may be given in evidence against any person who is subsequently accused of the offence, if the deponent is dead or incapable of giving evidence or beyond the limits of India.

STATE AMENDMENT

Uttar Pradesh - In sub-sec. (1), for the words "competent to try such person", the Words "competent to try such person or to commit him for trial", shall be substituted – U.P. Act 16 of 1976, w.e.f. 1-5-1976.

CHAPTER XXIV : GENERAL PROVISIONS AS TO INQUIRIES AND TRIALS

300. Person once convicted or acquitted not to be tried for same offence:-

(1) A person who has once been tried by a Court of competent jurisdiction for an offence and convicted or acquitted of such offence shall, while such conviction or acquittal remains in force, not be liable to be tried again for the same offence, nor on the same facts for any Other Offence for which a different charge from the one made against him might have been made under sub-section (1) of Section 221, or for which he might have been convicted under sub-section (2) thereof.

(2) A person acquitted or convicted of any offence, may be afterwards tried, with the consent of the State Government, for any distinct offence for which a separate charge might have been made against him at the former trial under sub-section (1) of Section 220.

(3) A person convicted of any offence constituted by any act causing consequences which, together with such act, constituted a different offence from that of which he was convicted, may be afterwards tried for such last mentioned offence, if the consequences had not happened,

(4) A person acquitted convicted of any offence constituted by any acts may, notwithstanding such acquittal or conviction, be subsequently charged with, and tried for, any other offence constituted by the same acts which he may have committed if the Court by which he was first tried was not competent to try the offence with which he is subsequently charged.

(5) A Person discharged under Section 258 shall not be tried again for the same offence except with the consent of the Court by which he was discharged or of any other Court to which the first mentioned Court is subordinate.

(6) Nothing in this Section shall affect the provisions ,of Section 26 of the General Clauses Act, 1897 (10 of 1897) or of Section 188 of this Code.

Explanation:- The dismissal of a complaint, or the discharge of the accused, is not an acquittal for the purpose of this Section.

**CHAPTER XXIV : GENERAL PROVISIONS AS TO INQUIRIES
AND TRIALS**

301. Appearance by Public Prosecutors:- (1) The Public Prosecutor or Assistant Public Prosecutor in charge of a case may appear and plead without any written authority before any Court in which that case is under inquiry, trial or appeal.

(2) If in any such case any private person instructs a pleader to prosecute any person in any Court, the Public Prosecutor or Assistant Public Prosecutor in charge of the case shall conduct the prosecution, and the pleader so instructed

shall act therein under the directions of the Public Prosecutor or Assistant Public Prosecutor, and may, with the permission of the Court, submit written arguments after the evidence is closed in the case.

STATE AMENDMENT

West Bengal:- Substitute the following for sub-sec. 301 (I)

(1)(a) The Public Prosecutor in charge of a case may appear and plead without any written authority before any Court in which that case is under inquiry, trial or appeal.

(b) The Assistant Public Prosecutor in charge of a case may appear and plead without any written authority before any Court in which that case is under inquiry or trial.”

W.B. Act No. 26 of 1990, enforcement date not yet notified.

302. Permission to conduct prosecution :-(1) Any Magistrate inquiring into or trying a case may permit the prosecution to be conducted by any person other than a police officer below the rank of inspector, but no person, other than the Advocate-General, or Government Advocate or a Public Prosecutor or Assistant Public Prosecutor, shall be entitled to do so without such permission:

Provided that no police officer shall be permitted to conduct the prosecution if he has taken part in the investigation into the offence with respect to which the accused is being prosecuted.

(2) Any person conducting the prosecution may do so personally or by a pleader.

303. Right of person against whom proceedings instituted to be defended :- Any person accused of offence before a Criminal Court or against whom proceedings are instituted under this Code, may of right be defended by a pleader of his choice.

304. Legal aid to accused at State expense in certain cases :-(1)

Where, in a trial before the Court of Session, the accused is not represented by a pleader, and where appears to the Court that the accused has not sufficient means to engage a pleader, the Court shall assign a pleader for his defence at the expense of the State.

(2) The High Court may, with the previous approval of the State Government, make rules providing for,-

(a) the mode of selecting pleaders for defence under sub-section (1) ;

- (b) the facilities to be allowed to such pleaders by the Courts;
 - (c) the fees payable to such pleaders by the Government and generally, for carrying out the purposes of sub-section (1).
- (3) The State Government may, by notification, direct that, as from such date as may be specified in the notification the provisions of sub-sections (1) and (2) shall apply in relation to any class of trials before other Courts in the State as they apply in relation to trials before Courts of Session.

305. Procedure when corporation or registered society is an accused:-

(1) In this section, "corporation" means an incorporated company or other body corporate, and includes a society registered under the Societies Registration Act, 1860 (21 of 1860).

(2) Where a corporation is the accused person or one of the accused persons in an inquiry or trial, it may appoint a representative for the purpose of the inquiry or trial and such appointment need not be under the seal of the corporation.

(3) Where a representative of a corporation appears, any requirement of this code that anything shall be done in the presence of the accused or shall be read or stated or explained to the accused, shall be construed as a requirement that the thing shall be done in the presence of the representative, and any requirement that the accused shall be examined shall be construed as a requirement that the representative shall be examined.

(4) Where a representative of a corporation does not appear, any such requirement as is referred to in sub-section (3) shall not apply.

(5) Where a statement in writing purporting to be signed by the managing director of the corporation or by any person (by whatever name called) having, or being one of the persons having the management of the affairs of the Corporation to the effect that the person named in the statement has been appointed as the representative of the corporation for the purposes of this Section, is filed, the Court shall, unless the contrary is proved, presume that such person has been so appointed.

(6) If a question arises as to whether any person, appearing as the representative of a corporation in an inquiry or trial before a Court is or is not such representative, the question shall be determined by the Court.

306. Tender of pardon to accomplice :-(1) With a view to obtaining the evidence of any person supposed to have been directly or indirectly concerned

in or privy to an offence to which this Section applies, the Chief Judicial Magistrate or a Metropolitan Magistrate at any stage of the investigation or inquiry into, or the trial of, the offence, and the Magistrate of the first class inquiring into, or trying the offence, at any stage of the inquiry or trial, may tender pardon to such person on condition of his making a full and true disclosure of the whole of the circumstances within his knowledge relative to the offence and to every other person concerned, whether as principle or abettor, in the commission thereof.

(2) This Section applies to—

(a) any offence triable exclusively by the Court of Session or by the Court of a Special Judge appointed under the Criminal Law Amendment Act, 1952 (46 of 1952);

(b) any offence punishable with imprisonment which may extend to seven years or with a more severe sentence.

(3) Every Magistrate who tenders a pardon under sub- section (1) shall record-

(a) his reasons for so doing

(b) whether the tender was or was not accepted by the person to whom it was made;

and shall, on application made by the accused, furnish him with a copy of such record free of cost.

(4) Every person accepting a tender of pardon made under sub-section (1)-

(a) shall be examined as a witness in the Court of the Magistrate taking cognizance of the offence and in the subsequent trial, if any;

(b) shall, unless he is already on bail, be detained in custody until the termination of the trial.

(5) Where a person has accepted a tender of pardon made under sub-section (1) and has been examined under sub-section (4), the Magistrate taking cognizance of the offence shall, without making any further inquiry in the case-

(a) commit it for trial-

(i) to the Court of Session if the offence is triable exclusively by that Court or if the Magistrate taking cognizance is the Chief Judicial Magistrate ;

(ii) to a Court of Special Judge appointed under the Criminal Law Amendment Act, 1952, (46 of 1952), if the offence is triable exclusively by that Court ;

(b) in any other case, make over the case to the Chief Judicial Magistrate who shall try the case himself.

307. Power to direct tender of pardon :- At any time after commitment of a case but before judgement is passed, the Court to which the commitment is made may, with a view to obtaining at the trial the evidence of any person supposed to have been directly or indirectly concerned in, or privy to, any such offence, tender a pardon on the same condition to such person.

308. Trial of person not complying with conditions of pardon :-

(1) Where, in regard to a person who has accepted a tender of pardon made under Section 306 or Section 307 the Public Prosecutor certifies that in his opinion such person has, either by wilfully concealing anything essential or by giving false evidence, not complied with the condition on which the tender was made, such person may be tried for the offence in respect of which the pardon was so tendered, or for any other offence of which he appears to have been guilty in connection with the same matter, and also for the offence of giving false evidence:

Provided that such person shall not be tried jointly with any of the other accused :

Provided further that such person shall not be tried for the offence of giving false evidence except with the sanction of the High Court, and nothing contained in Section 195 Section 340 shall apply to that offence.

(2) Any statement made by such person accepting tender of pardon and recorded by a Magistrate under Sec 164 or by a Court under sub-section (4) of Section 306 may be given in evidence against him at such trial.

(3) At such trial, the accused shall be entitled to plead that he has complied with the condition upon which such tender was made ; in which case it shall be for the prosecution to prove that such condition has not been complied with.

(4) At such trial, the Court shall-

(a) if it is a Court of Session, before the charge is read out and explained to the accused ;

(b) if it is the Court of a Magistrate, before the evident of the witnesses for the prosecution is taken,

ask the accused whether he pleads that he has complied with the conditions on which the tender of pardon was made.

(5) If the accused does so plead, the Court shall record, the plea and proceed with the trial and it shall, before passing judgement in the case, find whether or not the accused has complied with the conditions of the pardon, and, if it finds that he has so complied, it shall, notwithstanding anything contained in this Code, pass judgement of acquittal.

309. Power to postpone or adjourn proceedings:- (1) In every inquiry or trial, the proceedings shall be held as expeditiously as possible, and in particular, when the examination of witnesses has once begun, the same shall be continued from day to day until all the witnesses in attendance have been examined, unless the Court finds the adjournment of the same beyond the following day to be necessary for reasons to be recorded.

If the Court after taking cognizance of an offence, or commencement of trial, finds it necessary or advisable to postpone the commencement of, or adjourn, any inquiry or trial, it may, from time to time, for reasons to be recorded, postpone or adjourn the same on such terms as it thinks fit, for such time as it considers reasonable and may by a warrant remand the accused if in custody:

Provided that no Magistrate shall remand an accused person to custody under this Section for a term exceeding fifteen days at a time :

Provided further that when witnesses are in attendance, no adjournment or postponement shall be granted, without examining them, except for special reasons to be recorded in writing.

Explanation 1:- If sufficient evidence has been obtained to raise a suspicion that the accused may have committed an offence, and it appears likely that further evidence may be obtained by a remand, this is a reasonable cause for a remand.

Explanation 2 :- The terms on which an adjournment or postponement may be granted include, in appropriate cases, the payment of costs by the prosecution or the accused.

CODE OF CRIMINAL PROCEDURE, 1973
CHAPTER XXIV : GENERAL PROVISIONS AS TO INQUIRIES
AND TRIALS

310. Local Inspection:- (1) Any judge or Magistrate may, at any stage of any inquiry, trial or other proceeding, after due notice to the parties, visit and inspect any place in which an offence is alleged to have been committed, or any other place which it is in his opinion necessary to view for the purpose of properly appreciating the evidence given at such inquiry or trial, and shall without unnecessary delay record a memorandum of any relevant facts observed at such inspection.

(2) Such memorandum shall form part of the record of the case and if the prosecutor, complainant or accused or any other party to the case, so desires, a copy of the memorandum shall be furnished to him free of cost.

311. Power to summon material witness, or examine Person Present:-

Any Court may, at any stage of any inquiry, trial or other proceeding under this Code, summon any person as a witness, or examine any person in attendance, though not summoned, as a witness, or recall and re-examine any person already examined ; and the Court shall summon and examine or recall and re-examine any such person if his evidence appears to it to be essential to the just decision of the case.

312. Expenses of complainants and witnesses:- Subject to any rules made by the State Government, any Criminal Court may, if it thinks fit, order payment, on the part of the Government, of the reasonable expenses of any complainant or witness attending for the purposes of any inquiry trial or other proceeding before such Court under this Code.

313. Power to examine the accused :-(1) In every inquiry or trial, for the purpose of enabling the accused personally to explain any circumstances appearing in the evidence against him, the Court –

(a) may, at any stage, without previously warning the accused, put such questions to him as the Court considers necessary;

(b) shall, after the witnesses for the prosecution have been examined and before he is called on for his defence, question him generally on the case:

Provided that in a summons-case, where the Court has dispensed with the personal attendance of the accused, it may also dispense with his examination under Clause (b).

(2) No oath shall be administered to the accused when he is examined under sub-section (1).

(3) The accused shall not render himself liable to punishment by refusing to answer such questions, or by giving false answers to them.

(4) The answers given by the accused may be taken into consideration in such inquiry or trial, and put in evidence for, or against him in any other inquiry into, or trial for, any other offence which such answers may tend to show he has committed.

314. Oral arguments and memorandum of arguments:- (1) Any party to a proceeding may, as soon as may be, after the close of his evidence, address concise oral arguments; and may, before he concludes the oral arguments, if any, submit a memorandum to the Court setting forth concisely and under distinct headings, the arguments in support of his case and every such memorandum shall form part of the record.

(2) A copy of every such memorandum shall be simultaneously furnished to the opposite party.

(3) No adjournment of the proceedings shall be granted for the purpose of filing the written arguments unless the Court, for reasons to be recorded in writing, considers it necessary to grant such adjournment.

(4) The Court may, if it is of opinion that the arguments are not concise or relevant, regulate arguments.

315. Accused person to be competent witness:- (1) Any person accused of an offence before a Criminal Court shall be a competent witness for the defence and may, evidence on oath in disproof of the charges made against him or any person charged together with him at the same trial :
Provided that-

(a) he shall not be called as a witness except on own request in writing :

(b) his failure to give evidence shall not be made subject of any comment by any of the parties the Court or give rise to any presumption ago himself or any person charged together with that the same trial.

(2) Any person against whom proceedings are instituted in any Criminal Court under Section 98, or Section 107, Section 108, or Section 109, or Section 110, or under Chapter IX or under Part B, Part C or Part D or Chapter X, may offer himself as a witness in such proceedings:

Provided that in proceedings under Section 108, Section 109, or Section 110, the failure of such person to give evidence shall not be made the subject of any comment by any of the parties or the Court or give rise to any presumption against him or any other person proceeded against together with him at the same inquiry.

316. No Influence to be used to induce disclosure:- Except as provided in Section 306 and 307, no influence, by means of any promise or threat or otherwise, shall be used to an accused person to induce him to disclose or withhold any matter within his knowledge.

317. Provision for inquiries and trial being held in the absence of accused in certain cases:- (1) At any stage of an inquiry or trial under this code, if the Judge or Magistrate is satisfied, for reasons to be recorded, that the personal attendance of the accused before the Court is not necessary in the interests of justice, or that the accused persistently disturbs the proceedings in court, the Judge or Magistrate may, if the accused is represented by a pleader, dispense with his attendance and proceed with such inquiry or trial in his absence, and may, at any subsequent stage of the proceedings, direct the personal attendance of such accused.

(2) If the accused in any such case is not represented by a pleader, or if the Judge or Magistrate considers his personal attendance necessary, he may, if he thinks fit and for reasons to be recorded by him, either adjourn such inquiry to trial, or order that the case of such accused be taken up or tried separately.

318. Procedure where accused does not understand proceedings:- If the accused, though not of unsound mind, cannot be made to understand the proceedings, the court may proceed with the inquiry or trial; and, in the case of Court other than a High Court, if such proceedings result in a conviction, the proceedings shall be forwarded to the High court with a report of the circumstances of the case, and the High Court shall pass thereon such order as it thinks fit.

319. Power to proceed against other persons appearing to be guilty of offence:- (1) Where, in the course of any inquiry into, or trial of an offence, it appears from the evidence that any person not being the accused has committed any offence for which such person could be tried together with the accused, the Court may proceed against such person for the offence which he appears to have committed.

(2) Where such person is not attending the Court, he may be arrested or summoned, as the circumstances of the case may require, for the purpose aforesaid.

(3) Any person attending the Court, although not under arrest or upon a summons, may be detained by such Court for the purpose of the inquiry into, or trial of, the offence which he appears to have committed.

(4) Where the Court proceeds against any person under sub-section (1), then-

(a) the proceedings in respect of such person shall be commenced afresh, and the witnesses reheard;

(b) subject to the provisions of clause (a), the case may proceed as if such person had been an

accused person when the Court took cognizance of the offence upon which the inquiry or trial was

commenced.

CHAPTER XXIV : GENERAL PROVISIONS AS TO INQUIRIES AND TRIALS

320. Compounding of offence:- (1) The offences punishable under the Sections of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860) specified in the first two columns of the Table next following may be compounded by the persons mentioned in the third column of that Table:

Offences Section of the Person by whom offence may be compounded

Indian Penal

applicable Code

(1) (2) (3)

Uttering words etc., with deliberate ²⁹⁸ The person whose religious feelings are intended to

intent to wound the religious be wounded

feelings of any person

causing hurt ^{323, 334} The person to whom the hurt is caused

Wrongfully restraining or confining ^{341, 342} The person restrained or confined

any person

Assault or use of criminal force 352, 355, 358 The person assaulted or to whom criminal force is used.

Mischief, when the only loss or 426, 427 The person to whom the loss or damage is caused

damage caused is loss or damage to

a private person

Criminal trespass 447 The person in possession of the property trespassed upon.

House-trespass 448 -do-

Criminal breach of contract of service 491 The person with whom the offender has contracted

Adultery 497 The husband of the woman

Enticing or taking away or detaining 498 -do-

with criminal intent of a married woman

Defamation, except such cases as are 500 The person defamed specified against section 500 of the IPC

(45 of 1860 in column 1 of the Table under sub-section (2).

Printing or engraving matter, knowing 501 -do- it to be defamatory

Sale of printed or engraved substance 502 -do- containing defamatory matter, knowing it to contain such matter

Insult intended to provoke a breach 504 The person insulted of the peace

Criminal intimidation except when the 506 The person intimidated offence is punishable with imprisonment for seven years

Acts caused by making a person believe 508 The person against whom the offence was committed.

that he will be an object of divine displeasure.

(2) The offences punishable under the sections of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860) specified in the first two columns of the table next following may, with the permission of the Court before which any prosecution for such offence is pending, be compounded by the persons mentioned in the third column of that Table.—

Offence Section of Person by whom offence may be compounded
Indian Penal
Code applicable

(1) (2) (3)

Voluntarily causing hurt by dangerous 324 The person to whom is caused weapons or means

Voluntarily causing grievous hurt 325 -do-

Voluntarily causing grievous hurt 335 -do-
on grave and sudden provocation

Causing hurt by doing an act so 337 -do-

rashly and negligently as to endanger
human life or the personal safety of
others

Causing grievous hurt by doing an 338 -do-
act so rashly and negligently as to
endanger human life or the personal
safety of others

Wrongfully confining a person for 343 The person confined
three days or more

Wrongfully confining for ten or more 344 -do-
days

Wrongfully confining a person in 346 -do-
secret

Assault or criminal force to woman 354 The woman assaulted to whom the
criminal force was used.

with intent to outrage her modesty

Assault or criminal force in attempting 357 The person assaulted or to whom
the force was used.

wrongfully to confine a person

Theft, where the value of property 379 The owner of the property stolen
stolen does not exceed two hundred
and fifty rupees

Theft by clerk or servant of property 381 -do-
in possession of master, where the

value of the property stolen does not exceed two hundred and fifty rupees

Dishonest misappropriation of property 403 The owner of the property misappropriated.

Criminal breach of trust, where the value 406 The owner of the property in respect of which the breach of
of the property does not exceed two trust has been committed.
hundred and fifty rupees

Criminal breach of trust by a carrier, 407 The owner of the property in respect of which the breach of
wharfinger, etc. where the value of the trust has been committed
property does not exceed two hundred
and fifty rupees

Criminal breach of trust by a clerk or 408 The owner of the property in respect of which the breach of
servant, where the value of the property trust has been committed
does not exceed two hundred and fifty
rupees

Dishonestly receiving stolen property 411 The owner of the property stolen knowing it to be stolen, when the value
of the stolen property does not exceed
two hundred and fifty rupees

Assisting in the concealment or disposal 414 -do-
of stolen property, knowing it to be stolen,
where the value of the stolen property does

not exceed two hundred and fifty rupees

Cheating 417 The person cheated

Cheating a person whose interest 418 -do-
the offender was bound, either by law or by
legal contract, to protect

Cheating by personation 419 -do-

Cheating and dishonestly inducing delivery 420 -do-
of property or the making, alteration or
destruction of a valuable security

Fraudulent removal or concealment of 421 The Creditors who are affected
thereby

property etc. to prevent distribution
among creditors

Fraudulently preventing from 422 -do-
being made available for his creditors
a debt or demand due to the offender

Fraudulent execution of deed of transfer 423 The person affected thereby
containing false statement of consideration

Fraudulent removal or concealment of 424 -do-
property

Mischief by killing or maiming animal of 428 The owner of the animal
the value of ten rupees or upwards

Mischief by killing or maiming cattle, etc., 429 The owner of the cattle or
animal

of any value or any other animal of the
value of fifty rupees or upwards

Mischief by injury to work of irrigation by 430 The person to whom the loss or
damage is caused

wrongfully diverting water when the only
loss or damage caused is loss or damage
to a private person

House trespass to commit an offence 451 The person in possession of the
house trespassed upon

(other than theft) punishable with
imprisonment

Using a false trade or property mark 482 The person to whom loss or injury is
caused by such use

Counterfeiting a trade or property mark 483 The person whose trade or
property mark is counterfeited

used by another

Knowingly selling, or exposing or 486 -do-
possessing for sale or for manufacturing
purpose, goods marked with a counterfeit
property mark

Marrying again during the life time of 494 The husband or wife of the person
so marrying

a husband or wife

Defamation against the President or the 500 The person defamed
Vice-President or the Governor of a State

or the Administrator of a Union Territory
or a Minister in respect of his conduct in
the discharge of his public functions when
instituted upon a complaint made by the
Public Prosecutor

Uttering words or sounds or making gestures 509 The woman whom it was intended to insult or whose
or exhibiting any object intending to insult the privacy was intruded upon modesty of a woman or intruding upon the privacy of a woman.

(3) When any offence is compoundable under this section, the abatement of such offence or an attempt to Commit such offence (when such attempt is itself an offence) may be compounded in like manner.

(4)(a) When the person who would otherwise be competent to compound an offence under this section is under the age of eighteen years or is an idiot or a lunatic, any person competent to contract on his behalf may, with the permission of the Court, compound such offence.

(b) When the person who would otherwise be competent to compound an offence under this section is dead, the legal representative, as defined in the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908 (5 of 1908) of such person may, with the consent of the Court, compound such offence.

(5) When the accused has been committed for trial or when he has been convicted and an appeal is pending, no composition for the offence shall be allowed without the leave of the Court to which he is committed, or, as the case may be, before which the appeal is to be heard.

(6) A High Court or Court of Session acting in the exercise of its powers of revision under Section 401 may allow any person to compound any offence which such person is competent to compound under this Section.

(7) No offence shall be compounded if the accused is, by reason of a previous conviction, liable either to enhanced punishment or to a punishment of a different kind for such offence.

(8) The composition of an offence under this Section shall have the effect of an acquittal of the accused with whom the offence has been compounded.

(9) No offence shall be compounded except as provided by this Section.

CHAPTER XXIV : GENERAL PROVISIONS AS TO INQUIRIES AND TRIALS

321. Withdrawal from prosecution :- The Public Prosecutor or Assistant Public Prosecutor in charge of a case may, with the consent of the Court, at any time before the judgement is pronounced, withdraw from the prosecution of any person either generally or in respect of any one or more of the offences for which he is tried ; and, upon such withdrawal —

(a) if it is made before a charge has been framed, the accused shall be discharged in respect of such offence or offences ;

(b) if it is made after a charge has been framed, or when under this Code no charge is required, he shall be acquitted in respect of such offence or offences:

Provided that where such offence

(i) was against any law relating to a matter to which the executive power of the Union extends ; or

(ii) was investigated by the Delhi Special Police Establishment under the Delhi Special Police Establishment Act, 1946 (25 of 1946) ; or

(iii) involved the misappropriation or destruction of, or damage to, any property belonging to the Central Government ; or

(iv) was committed by a person in the service of the Central Government while acting or purporting to act in the discharge of his official duty,

and the Prosecutor in charge of the case has not been appointed by the Central Government, he shall not, unless he has been permitted by the Central Government to do so, move the Court for its consent to withdraw from the prosecution and the Court shall, before according consent, direct the Prosecutor to produce before it the permission granted by the Central Government to withdraw from the prosecution.

STATE AMENDMENT

Uttar Pradesh :- After the words “in charge of a case may” insert the words “on the written permission of the State Government to that effect (which shall be filed in Court)” U.P. Act 18 of 1991, w.e.f 16-2-1991.

322. Procedure in cases which Magistrate cannot dispose of :-(1)If, in the course of any inquiry into an offence or a trial before a Magistrate in any district, the evidence appears to him to warrant a presumption —

- (a) that he has no jurisdiction to try the case or commit it for trial ; or
- (b) that the case is one which should be tried or committed for trial by some other Magistrate in the district, or
- (c) that the case should be tried by the Chief Judicial Magistrate,

he shall stay the proceedings and submit the case, with a brief report explaining its nature, to the Chief Judicial Magistrate or to such other Magistrate, having jurisdiction, as the Chief Judicial Magistrate directs.

(2) The Magistrate to whom the case is submitted may, if so empowered, either try the case himself, or refer it to any Magistrate subordinate to him having jurisdiction, or commit the accused for trial.

323. Procedure when, after commencement of inquiry or trial, Magistrate finds case should be committed :- If, in any inquiry into an offence or a trial before a Magistrate, it appears to him at any stage of the proceedings before signing the judgement that the case is one which ought to be tried by the Court of Session, he shall commit it to that Court under the provisions hereinbefore contained and thereupon the provisions of Chapter XVIII shall apply to the commitment so made.

324. Trial of persons previously convicted of offences against coinage, stamp-law or property :-(1) Where a person, having been convicted of an offence punishable under Chapter XII or Chapter XVII of the Indian Penal Code, (45 of 1860) with imprisonment for a term of three years or upwards, is again accused of any offence punishable under either of those chapters with imprisonment for a term of three years or upwards, and the Magistrate before whom the case is pending is satisfied that there is ground for presuming that such person has committed the offence, he shall be sent for trial to the Chief Judicial Magistrate or committed to the Court of Session, unless the Magistrate is competent to try the case and is of opinion that he can himself pass an adequate-sentence if the accused is convicted.

(2) When any person is sent for trial to the Chief Judicial Magistrate or committed to the Court of Session under sub-section (1), any other person

accused jointly with him in the same inquiry or trial shall be similarly sent or committed, unless the Magistrate discharges such other person under Section 239 or Section 245, as the case may be.

325. Procedure when Magistrate cannot pass sentence sufficiently severe :-(1) Whenever a Magistrate is of opinion, after hearing the evidence for the prosecution and the accused, that the accused is guilty, and that he ought to receive a punishment different in kind from, or more severe than, that which such Magistrate is empowered to inflict, or, being a Magistrate of the second class, is of opinion that the accused ought to be required to execute a bond under Section 106, he may record the opinion and submit his proceedings, and forward the accused, to the Chief Judicial Magistrate to whom he is subordinate.

(2) When more accused than one are being tried together, and the Magistrate considers it necessary to proceed under sub-section (1), in regard to any of such accused, he shall forward all the accused, who are in his opinion guilty, to the Chief Judicial Magistrate.

(3) The Chief Judicial Magistrate to whom the proceedings are submitted may, if he thinks fit, examine the parties and recall and examine any witness who has already given evidence in the case, and may call for and take any further evidence, and shall pass such judgement, sentence or order in the case as he thinks fit, and is according to law.

326. Conviction or commitment on evidence partly recorded by one Magistrate and partly by another :- (1) Whenever any Judge or Magistrate, after having heard and recorded the whole or any part of the evidence in any enquiry or a trial, ceases to exercise jurisdiction therein and is succeeded by another Judge or Magistrate who has and who exercises such jurisdiction, the Judge or Magistrate so succeeding may act on the evidence so recorded by his predecessor, or partly recorded by his predecessor and partly recorded by himself:

Provided that if the succeeding Judge or Magistrate is of opinion that further examination of any of the witnesses whose evidence has already been recorded is necessary in the interests of Justice, he may re-summon any such witness, and after such further examination, cross-examination and re-examination, if any, as he may permit, the witness shall be discharged.

(2) When a case is transferred under the provisions of this Code from one judge to another Judge or from one Magistrate to another Magistrate, the former shall be deemed to cease to exercise jurisdiction therein, and to be succeeded by the latter, within the meaning of sub-section (1).

(3) Nothing in this section applies to summary trials or to cases in which proceedings have been stayed under Section 322 or in which proceedings have been submitted to a superior Magistrate under Section 325.

STATE AMENDMENTS

Rajasthan & Uttar Pradesh :-(a) In sub-section (1) for the words "Magistrate" wherever occurring substitute the words "Judge or Magistrate".
(b) In sub-section (2) before the words "from the Magistrate to another Magistrate" insert the words "from one Judge to another Judge" Raj Act 10 of 1977, w.e.f. 3-9-1977 and U.P. Act 16 of 1976 w.e.f. 1-5-1976.

327. Court to be open :- (1) The place in which any Criminal Court is held for the purpose of inquiring into, or trying any offence shall be deemed to be an open Court, to which the public generally may have access, so far as the same can conveniently contain them :

Provided that the presiding Judge or Magistrate may, if he thinks fit, order at any stage of any inquiry into, or trial of, any particular case, that the public generally, or any particular person, shall not have access to, or be or remain in, the room or building used by the Court.

(2) Notwithstanding anything contained in sub- section (1), the inquiry into and trial of rape or an offence under Section 376, Section 376-A, Section 376-B, Section 376-C or Section 376-D of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860) shall be conducted in camera :

Provided that the presiding Judge may, if he thinks fit, or on an application made by either of the parties, allow any particular person to have access to, or be or remain in the room or building used by Court.

(3) Where any proceedings are held under sub- section (2), it shall not be lawful for any person to print or publish any matter in relation to any such proceedings exceptwith the previous permission of the Court.

CHAPTER XXV : PROVISIONS AS TO ACCUSED PERSONS OF UNSOUND MIND

328. Procedure in case of accused being lunatic:- (1)When a Magistrate holding an inquiry has reason to believe that the person against whom the inquiry is being held is of unsound mind and consequently incapable of making his defence, the Magistrate shall inquire into the fact of such unsoundness of mind, and shall cause such person to be examined by the civil surgeon of the district or such other medical officer as the State

Government may direct, and thereupon shall examine such surgeon or other officer as a witness, and shall reduce the examination to writing.

(2) Pending such examination and inquiry, the Magistrate may deal with such person in accordance with the provisions of Section 330.

(3) If such Magistrate is of opinion that the person referred to in sub-section (1) is of unsound mind and consequently incapable of making his defence, he shall record a finding to that effect and shall postpone further proceedings in the case.

329. Procedure in case of person of unsound mind tried before Court:-

(1) If at the trial of any person before a Magistrate or Court of Session, it appears to the Magistrate or Court that such person is of unsound mind and consequently incapable of making his defence, the Magistrate or Court shall, in the first instance, try the fact of such unsoundness and incapacity, and if the Magistrate or Court, after considering such medical and other evidence as may be produced before him or it, is satisfied of the fact, he or it shall record a finding to that effect and shall postpone further proceedings in the case.

(2) The trial of the fact of the unsoundness of mind and incapacity of the accused shall be deemed to be part of his trial before the Magistrate or Court.

330. Release of lunatic pending investigation or trial:-

(1) Whenever a person is found under Section 328, or Section 329 to be of unsound mind and incapable of making his defence, the Magistrate or Court, as the case may be, whether the case is one in which bail may be taken or not, may release him on sufficient security being given that he shall be properly taken care of and shall be prevented from doing injury to himself or to any person, and for his appearance when required before the Magistrate or Court or such office as the Magistrate or Court appoints in this behalf.

(2) If the case is one in which, in the opinion of the Magistrate or Court, bail should not be taken, or if sufficient security is not given, the Magistrate or Court, as the case may be, shall order the accused to be detained in safe custody in such place and manner as he or it may think fit, and shall report the action taken to the State Government:

Provided that no order for the detention of the accused in a lunatic asylum shall be made otherwise than in accordance with such rules as the State Government may have made under the Indian Lunacy Act, 1912 (4 of 1912).

331. Resumption of inquiry or trial.-

(1) Whenever an inquiry or a trial is postponed under Section 328 or Section 329, the Magistrate or Court, as the

case may be, may at any time after the person concerned has ceased to be of unsound mind, resume the inquiry or trial and require the accused to appear or be brought before such Magistrate or Court.

(2) When the accused has been released under Section 330, and the sureties for his appearance produce him to the officer whom the Magistrate or Court appoints in this behalf, the certificate of such officer that the accused is capable of making his defence shall be receivable in evidence.

332. Procedure on accused appearing before Magistrate or Court :-

(1) If, when the accused appears or is again brought before the Magistrate or Court, as the case may be, the Magistrate or Court considers him capable of making his defence, the inquiry or trial shall proceed.

(2) If the Magistrate or Court considers the accused to be still incapable of making his defence, the Magistrate or Court shall act according to the provisions of Section or Section 329, as the case may be, and if the accused is found to be of unsound mind and consequently incapable making his defence, shall deal with such accused in accord with the provisions of Section 330.

333. When accused appears to have been of so mind :- When the accused appears to be of sound mind at the time of inquiry or trial and the Magistrate is satisfied, from the evidence given before him that there is reason to believe that the accused committed an act, which, if he had been of sound mind, would have been an offence, and that he was, at the time when the act was committed, by reason of unsoundness of mind, incapable of knowing the nature of the act or that it was wrong or contrary to law, the Magistrate shall proceed with the case, and, if the accused ought to be tried by the court of session, commit him for trial before the Court of Session.

334. Judgement of acquittal on ground of unsoundness of mind:- Whenever any person is acquitted upon the ground that, at the time at which he is alleged to have committed an offence, he was, by reason of unsoundness of mind, incapable of knowing the nature of the act alleged as constituting the offence, or that it was wrong or contrary to law, the finding shall state specifically whether he committed the act or not.

335. Person acquitted on such ground to be detained in safe custody:-

(1) Whenever the finding states that the accused person committed the act alleged, the Magistrate or Court before whom or which the trial has been held, shall, if such act would, but for the incapacity found, have constituted an offence,-

(a) order such person to be detained in safe custody in such place and manner as the Magistrate or Court thinks fit; or

(b) order such person to be delivered to any relative or friend of such person.

(2) No order for the detention of the accused in a lunatic asylum shall be made under clause (a) of sub- section (1) otherwise than in accordance with such rules as the State Government may have made under the Indian Lunacy Act, 1912 (4 of 1912).

(3) No order for the delivery of the accused to a relative or friend shall be made under clause (b) of sub-section (1) except upon the application of such relative or friend and on his giving security to the satisfaction of the Magistrate or Court that the person delivered shall

(a) be properly taken care of and prevented from doing injury to himself or to any other person.

(b) be produced for the inspection of such officer, and at such times and places, as the State Government may direct.

(4) The Magistrate or Court shall report to the State Government the action taken under sub-section (1).

336. Power of State Government to empower officer-in-charge to discharge :- The State Government may empower the officer in charge of the jail in which a person is confined under the provisions of Section 330 or Section 335 to discharge all or any of the functions of the Inspector-General of Prisons under Section 337 or Section 338.

337. Procedure where lunatic prisoner is reported capable of making his defence:- If such person is detained under the provisions of sub-section (2) of Section 330, and in the case of a person detained in a jail, the Inspector General of Prisons, or, in the case of a person detained a lunatic asylum, the visitors of such asylum, or any two of them shall certify that, in his or their opinion, such person is capable of making his defence, he shall be taken before the Magistrate or Court, as the case may be, at such time as the Magistrate or Court appoints, and the Magistrate or Court shall deal with such person under the provisions of Section 332 and the certificate of such Inspector-General or visitors as aforesaid shall be receivable as evidence.

338. Procedure where lunatic detained is declared fit to be released:- (1) If such person is detained under the provisions of sub-section (2) of section 330 or Section 335, and such Inspector-General or visitors shall

certify that, in his or their judgement, he may be released without danger of his doing injury to himself or to any other person, the State Government may thereupon order him to be released, or to be detained in custody, or to be transferred to a public lunatic asylum if he has not been already sent to such an asylum, and in case it orders him to be transferred to an asylum, may appoint a Commission, consisting of a Judicial and two medical officers. (2) Such Commission shall make a formal inquiry into the state of mind of such person, take such evidence as is necessary, and shall report to the State Government, which may order his release or detention as it thinks fit.

339. Delivery of lunatic to care of relative or friend:- (1) Whenever any relative or friend of any person detained under the provisions of Section 330 or Section 335 desires that he shall be delivered to his care and custody, the State Government may, upon the application of such relative or friend and on his giving security to the satisfaction of such State Government, that the person delivered shall,—

- (a) be properly taken care of, and prevented from doing injury to himself or to any other person;
- (b) be produced for the inspection of such officer, and at such time and places, as the State Government may direct,
- (c) in the case of a person detained under sub-section (2) of Section 330, be produced when required before such Magistrate or Court, order such person to be delivered to such relative or friend.

(2) If the person so delivered is accused of any offence, the trial of which has been postponed by reason of his being of unsound mind and incapable of making his defence, and the inspecting officer referred to in clause (b) of sub-section (1) certifies at any time to the Magistrate or Court that such person is capable of making his defence, such Magistrate or Court shall call upon the relative or friend to whom such accused was delivered to produce him before the Magistrate or Court and upon such production the Magistrate or Court shall proceed in accordance with the provisions of Section 332, and the certificate of the inspecting office shall be receivable as evidence.

CHAPTER XXVI : PROVISIONS AS TO OFFENCES AFFECTING THE ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE

340. Procedure in cases mentioned in Section 195:- (1) When, upon an application made to it in this behalf or otherwise, any Court is of opinion that it is expedient in the interest of Justice that an inquiry should be made into

any offence referred to in clause (b) of sub-section (1) of Section 195, which appears to have been committed in or in relation to a proceeding in that Court, or as the case may be, in respect of a document produced or given in evidence in a proceeding in that Court, such Court may, after such preliminary inquiry, if any, as it thinks necessary,—

- (a) record a finding to that effect;
- (b) make a complaint thereof in writing;
- (c) send it to a Magistrate of the first class jurisdiction;
- (d) take sufficient security for the appearance of the accused before such Magistrate or if the alleged offence is non-bailable and the Court thinks it necessary so to do, send the accused in custody to such Magistrate, and
- (e) bind over any person to appear and give evidence before such Magistrate.

(2) The power conferred on a Court by sub-section (1) in respect of an offence may, in any case where that Court has neither made a complaint under sub-section (1) in respect of that offence nor rejected an application for the making of such complaint, be exercised by the Court to which such former Court is subordinate within the meaning of sub-section (4) of Section 195.

(3) A complaint made under this section shall be signed—

- (a) where the Court making the complaint is a High Court, by such officer of the Court as the Court may appoint;
- (b) in any other case, by the presiding officer of the Court.

(4) In this section, “Court” has the same meaning as in Section 195.

341. Appeal :-(1) Any person on whose application any Court other than a High Court has refused to make a complaint under sub-section (1) or sub-section (1) or sub-section (2) of Section 340, or against whom such a complaint has been made by such Court, may appeal to the Court to which such former Court is subordinate within the meaning of sub-section (4) of Section 195, and the superior Court May thereupon, after notice to the parties concerned, direct the withdrawal of the complaint, or, as the case may be, making of the complaint which such former Court might have made under Section 340, and, if it makes such complaint, the provisions of that section shall apply accordingly.

(2) An order under this section, and subject to any such order, an order under Section 340, shall be final and shall not be subject to revision.

342. Power to order costs:- Any Court dealing with an application made to it for filing a complaint under Section 340 or an appeal under Section 341, shall have power to make such order as to costs as may be just.

343. Procedure of Magistrate taking cognizance:- (1) A Magistrate to whom a complaint is made under Section 340 or Section 341 shall, notwithstanding anything contained in Chapter XV, proceed, as far as may be, to deal with the case as if it were instituted on a police report.

(2) Where it is brought to the notice of such Magistrate, or of any other Magistrate to whom the case may have been transferred, that an appeal is pending against the decision arrived at in the judicial proceeding out of which the matter has arisen, he may, if he thinks fit, at any stage, adjourn the hearing of the case until such appeal is decided.

344. Summary procedure for trial for giving false evidenced:- (1) If, at the time of delivery of any judgement of final order disposing of any judicial proceeding, a Court of Session or Magistrate of the first class expresses an opinion to the effect that any witness appearing in such proceeding had knowingly or wilfully given false evidence or had fabricated false evidence with the intention that such evidence should be used in such proceeding, it or he may, if satisfied that it is necessary and expedient in the interest of justice that the witness should be tried summarily for giving or fabricating, as the case may be, false evidence, take cognizance of the offence and may, after giving the offender a reasonable opportunity of showing cause why he should not be punished for such offence, try such offender summarily and sentence him to imprisonment for a term which may extend to three months, or to fine which may extend to fivehundred rupees, or with both.

(2) In every such case the Court shall follow, as nearly as may be practicable, the procedure prescribed for summary trials.

(3) Nothing in this section shall affect the power of the Court to make a complaint under Section 340 for the offence, where it does not choose to proceed under this section.

(4) Where, after any action is initiated under sub-section (1), it is made to appear to the Court of Session or Magistrate of the first class that an appeal or an application for revision has been preferred or filed against the judgement or order in which the opinion referred to in that sub-section has been expressed, it or he shall stay further proceedings of the trial until the disposal of the appeal or the application for revision, as the case may be, and thereupon

the further proceedings of the trial shall abide by the results of the appeal or application for revision.

345. Procedure in certain cases of contempt:-(1) When any such offence as is described in Section 175, Section 178, Section 179, Section 180, or Section 228 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860), is committed in the view or presence of any Civil, Criminal, or Revenue Court, the Court may cause the offender to be detained in custody, and may, at any time before the rising of the Court or the same day, take cognizance of the offence and, after giving the offender a reasonable opportunity of showing cause why he should not be punished under this section, sentence offender to fine not exceeding two hundred rupees, and, in default of payment of fine, to simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one month, unless such fine be sooner paid. (2) In every such case the Court shall record the fact constituting the offence, with the statement (if any) made by the offender, as well as the finding and sentence.

(3) If the offence is under Section 228 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860), the record shall show the nature and stage of the judicial proceeding in which the Court interrupted or insulted was sitting, and the nature of the interruption or insult.

346. Procedure where Court considers that case should not be dealt with under Section 345.- (1) If the Court in any case considers that a person accused of any of the offences referred to in Section 345 and committed in its view or presence should be imprisoned otherwise than in default of payment of fine, or that a fine exceeding two hundred rupees should be imposed upon him, or such Court is for any other reason of opinion that the case should not be disposed of under Section 345, such Court, after recording the facts constituting the offence and the statement of the accused as hereinbefore provided, may forward the case to a Magistrate having jurisdiction to try the same, and may require security to be given for the appearance of such person before such Magistrate, or if sufficient security is not given, shall forward such person in custody to such Magistrate.

(2) The Magistrate to whom any case is forwarded under this section shall proceed to deal with, as far as may be, as if it were instituted on a police report.

347. When Registrar or Sub-Registrar to be deemed a Civil Court.- When the State Government so directs, any Registrar or any Sub-Registrar appointed under the Registration Act, 1908 (16 of 1908), shall be deemed to be a Civil Court within the meaning of Section 345 and 346.

348. Discharge of offender on submission apology:- When any Court has under Section 345 adjudged an offender to punishment, or has under Section forwarded him to a Magistrate for trial, for refusing or omitting to do anything which he was lawfully required to do or for any intentional insult or interruption, the Court may, in its discretion, discharge the offender or remit the punishment on his submission to the order or requisition of such court, or on apology being made to its satisfaction.

349. Imprisonment or committal of person refusing to answer or produce document:- If any witness or person called to produce a document or thing before a Criminal Court refuses to answer such questions as are put to him or to produce any document or thing in his possession or power which the Court requires him to produce, and does not, after a reasonable opportunity has been given to him so to do, offer any reasonable excuse for such refusal, such Court may, for reasons to be recorded in writing, sentence him to simple imprisonment, or by warrant under the hand of the Presiding Magistrate or Judge commit him to the custody of an officer of the Court for any term not exceeding seven days, unless in the meantime, such person consents to be examined and to answer, or to produce the document or thing and in the event of his persisting in his refusal, he may be dealt with according to the provisions of section 345 or section 346.

350. Summary procedure for punishment for non-attendance by a witness in obedience to summons:- (1) If any witness being summoned to appear before a Criminal Court is legally bound to appear at a certain place and time in obedience to the summons and without just excuse neglects or refuses to attend at that place or time or departs from the place where he has to attend before the time at which it is lawful for him to depart, and the Court before which the witness is to appear is satisfied that it is expedient in the interest of Justice that such a witness should be tried summarily, the Court may take cognizance of the offence and after giving the offender an opportunity of showing cause why he should not be punished under this section, sentence him to fine not exceeding one hundred rupees.
(2) In every such case the Court shall follow, as nearly as may be practicable, the procedure prescribed for summary trials.

351. Appeals from convictions under Sections 344, 345, 349 and 350:- (1) Any person sentenced by any Court other than a High Court under Section 344, Section 345, Section 349, or Section 350 may, notwithstanding anything contained in this Code, appeal to the Court to which decrees or orders made in such Court are ordinarily appealable.

(2) The provisions of Chapter XXIX shall, so far as they are applicable, apply to appeals under this section, and the Appellate Court may alter to reverse the finding or reduce or reverse the sentence appealed against.

(3) An appeal from such conviction by a Court of Small Causes shall lie to the Court of Session for the sessions division within which such Court is situate.

(4) An appeal from such conviction by any Registrar or Sub-Registrar deemed to be a Civil Court by virtue of a direction issued under Section 347 shall lie to the Court of Session for the sessions division within which the office of such Registrar or Sub-Registrar is situate.

352. Certain Judges and Magistrates not to try certain offences

when committed before themselves:- Except as provided in Sections 344, 345, 349, and 350, no Judge of a Criminal Court (other than a Judge of a High Court) or Magistrate shall try any person for any offence referred to in Section 195, when such offence is committed before himself or in contempt of his authority, or is brought under his notice as such Judge or Magistrate in the course of a judicial proceeding.

CHAPTER XXVII : THE JUDGEMENT

353. Judgement:- (1) The judgement in every trial in any Criminal Court or original jurisdiction shall be pronounced in open Court by the presiding officer immediately after the termination of the trial or at some subsequent time of which notice shall be given to the parties or their pleaders:-

(a) by delivering the whole of the judgement; or

(b) by reading out the whole of the judgement; or

(c) by reading out the operative part of the judgement and explaining the substance of the judgement in a language which is understood by the accused or his pleader.

(2) Where the judgement is delivered under clause (a) of sub-section (1), the presiding officer shall cause it to be taken down in short-hand, sign the transcript and every page thereof as soon as it is made ready, and write on it the date of the delivery of the judgement in open Court.

(3) Where the judgement or the operative part thereof is read out under clause (b) or clause (c) of sub-section (1) as the case may be, it shall be dated and signed by the presiding officer in open Court, and if it is not written with his own hand, every page of the judgement shall be signed by him.

(4) Where the judgement is pronounced in the manner specified in the clause (c) of sub-section (1), the whole judgement or a copy thereof shall be immediately made available for the perusal of the parties or their pleaders free of cost.

(5) If the accused is in custody, he shall be brought up to hear the judgement pronounced.

(6) If the accused is not in custody, he shall be required by the Court to attend to hear the judgement pronounced, except where his personal attendance during the trial has been dispensed with and the sentence is one of fine only or he is acquitted:

Provided that, where there are more accused than one, and one or more of them do not attend the Court on the date on which judgement is to be pronounced, the presiding officer may, in order to avoid undue delay in the disposal of the case, pronounce the judgement notwithstanding their absence.

(7) No judgement delivered by any Criminal Court shall be deemed to be invalid by reason only of the absence of any party or his pleader on the day or from the place notified for the delivery thereof, or of any omission to serve, or defect in serving, on the parties or their pleaders, or any of them, the notice of such day and place.

(8) Nothing in this section shall be construed to limit in any way the extent of the provisions of Section 465.

354. Language and contents of judgement:- (1) Except as otherwise expressly provided by this Code, every judgement referred to in Section 353,-

(a) shall be written in the language of the Court;

(b) shall contain the point or points for determination, the decision thereon and the reasons for the decision;

(c) shall specify the offence (if any) of which, and the Section of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860) or other law under which, the accused is convicted, and the punishment to which he is sentenced.

(d) if it be a judgement of acquittal, shall state the offence of which the accused is acquitted and direct that he be set at liberty.

(2) When the conviction is under the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860) and it is doubtful under which of two sections, or under which of two parts of the same

section, of that Code the offence falls, the Court shall distinctly express the same, and pass judgement in the alternative.

(3) When the conviction is for an offence punishable with death or, in the alternative, with imprisonment for life or imprisonment for a term of years, the judgement shall state the reasons for the sentence awarded, and, in the case of sentence of death, the special reasons for such sentence.

(4) When the conviction is for an offence punishable with imprisonment for a term of one year or more, but the Court imposes a sentence of imprisonment for a term of less than three months, it shall record its reasons for awarding such sentence, unless the sentence is one of imprisonment till the rising of the Court or unless the case was tried summarily under the provisions of this Code.

(5) When any person is sentenced to death, the sentence shall direct that he be hanged by the neck till he is dead.

(6) Every order under Section 117 or sub-section (2) of Section 138 and every final order made under Section 125, Section 145 or Section 147 shall contain the point or points for determination, the decision thereon and the reasons for the decision.

355. Metropolitan Magistrate's judgement:- Instead of recording a judgement in the manner hereinbefore provided, a Metropolitan Magistrate shall record the following particulars, namely:—

- (a) the serial number of the case;
- (b) the date of the commission of the offence;
- (c) the name of the complainant (if any);
- (d) the name of the accused person, and his parentage and residence;
- (e) the offence complained of or proved,
- (f) the plea of the accused and his examination (if any);
- (g) the final order;
- (h) the date of such order;

(i) in all cases in which an appeal lies from the final order either under Section 373 or under sub-section (3) of Section 374, a brief statement of the reasons for the decision.

356. Order for notifying address of previously convicted offender:-

(1) When any person, having been convicted by a Court in India of an offence punishable under Section 215, Section 489A, Section 489B, Section 489C, or Section 489D of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860), or of any offence punishable under Chapter XII or Chapter XVII of that code, with imprisonment for a term of three years, or upwards, is again convicted of any offence punishable under any of those sections or chapters with imprisonment for a term of three years or upwards by any Court other than that of a Magistrate of the Second class, such Court may, if it thinks fit, at the time of passing a sentence of imprisonment on such person, also order that his residence and any change of, or absence from, such residence after release be notified as hereinafter provided for a term not exceeding five years from the date of the expiration of such sentence.

(2) The provisions of sub-section (1) with reference to the offences named therein, apply also to criminal conspiracies to commit such offences and to the abatement of such offences and attempts to commit them.

(3) If such conviction is set aside on appeal or otherwise, such order shall become void.

(4) An order under this section may also be made by Appellate Court or by the High Court or Court of Session when exercising its powers of revision.

(5) The State Government may, by notification, make rules to carry out the provisions of this section relating to the notification of residence or change of, or absence from, residence by released convicts.

(6) Such rules may provide for punishment for the breach thereof and any person charged with a breach of any such rule may be tried by a Magistrate of competent jurisdiction in the district in which the place last notified by him as his place of residence is situated.

357. Order to pay compensation:- (1) When a Court imposes a sentence of fine or a sentence (including a sentence of death) of which fine forms a part, the Court may, when passing judgement, order the whole or any part of the fine recovered to be applied:-

(a) in defraying the expenses of properly incurred in the prosecution;

(b) in the payment to any person of compensation for any loss or injury caused by the offence, when compensation is, in the opinion of the Court, recoverable by such person in a Civil Court;

(c) when any person is convicted of any offence for having caused the death of another person or of having abetted the commission of such an offence, in paying compensation to the persons who are, under the Fatal Accidents Act, 1855 (13 of 1855), entitled to recover damages from the person sentenced for the loss resulting to them from such death;

(d) when any person is convicted of any offence which includes theft, criminal misappropriation, criminal breach of trust, or cheating, or of having dishonestly received or retained or of having voluntarily assisted in disposing of, stolen property knowing or having reason to believe the same to be stolen, in compensating any bona fide purchaser of such property is restored to the possession of the person entitled thereto.

(2) If the fine is imposed in a case which is subject to appeal no such payment shall be made before the period allowed for presenting the appeal has elapsed, or, if an appeal has elapsed, or, if an appeal be presented, before the decision of the appeal.

(3) When a Court imposes a sentence, of which fine does not form a part, the Court may, when passing judgement, order the accused person to pay, by way of compensation, such amount as may be specified in the order to the person who has suffered any loss or injury by reason of the act for which the accused person as been so sentenced.

(4) An order under this section may also be made by an Appellate Court or by the High Court or Court of Session when exercising its powers of revision.

(5) At the time of awarding compensation in any subsequent civil suit relating to the same matter, the Court shall take into account any sum paid or recovered as compensation under this section.

STATE AMENDMENTS

Andhra Pradesh: (I) in sub-sec. (1), after the words “the Court may”, Insert the expression “and where a person against whom an offence is committed belongs to Scheduled Castes or Scheduled Tribes as defined in Clauses (24) and (25) of Article 366 of the Constitution of India except when both the accused person and the person, against whom an offence is committed belong either to such castes or tribes, the Court shall” ; and

(ii) for sub-sec. (3), substitute the following, namely,—

(3) When a Court imposes a sentence, of which fine does not form a part, the Court may, and where a person against whom an offence is committed belongs to Scheduled Castes or Scheduled Tribes as defined in Clauses (24) of Article 366 of the Constitution of India, the Court shall, when passing judgement order the accused person to pay, by way of compensation, such amount as may be specified in the order to the person who has suffered any loss or injury by reason of the act for which the accused person has been so sentenced:

Provided that the Court may not order the accused person to pay by way of compensation any amount, if both the accused person and the person against whom an offence is committed belong either to the Scheduled Castes or the Scheduled Tribes". A P Act 21 of 1993, w.e.f. 3-9-1993.

Bihar:- insert the following proviso: After sub-section (1).

"Provided that the person against whom an offence is committed belongs to Scheduled Castes and to Scheduled Tribes as defined under clauses (24) and (25) to Article 366 of the constitution, the court shall, at the time of judgement, pass order that the entire amount of fine realised or any part of it will be utilised for the benefit of such person by way of compensation" – Bihar Act 9 of 1985, w.e.f., 13-8-1985.

Karnataka:- (1) In sub-section (1), after the words "the Court may", the brackets, the figures and words " and where the person against whom an offence is committed belongs to a Scheduled Caste or a Scheduled Tribe as defined in clause (24) and (25) of Article 366 of the Constitution and the accused person does not belong to a Scheduled Caste or a Scheduled Tribe, the Court shall" shall be inserted.

(2) Substitute the following for sub-section (3).

"(3) When a Court imposes a sentence, of which the fine does not form a part, the court may, and where a person against whom an offence is committed belongs to Scheduled Caste or Scheduled Tribe as defined in clauses (24) and (25) of Article 366 of the Constitution and the accused person does not belong to a Scheduled Caste or Scheduled Tribe, the Court shall, when passing judgement, order the accused person to pay, by way of compensation such amount as may be specified in the order to the person who has suffered any loss or injury by reason of the act for which the accused person has been so sentenced". Karnataka Act 27 of 1987, w.e.f. 13-8-1987.

Madhya Pradesh:- (a) In sub-section (1) for the words “(1) when a Court imposes a sentence of fine or a sentence (including a sentence of death) or which fine forms a part, the Court may, when passing judgement, order the whole or any part of the fine recovered to be applied”, the words “(1) when a Court imposes a sentence of fine or a sentence (including a sentence of death) of which fine forms a part, the Court may, and where a person against whom an offence is committed belongs to Scheduled Castes or Scheduled Tribes as defined in clauses (24) and (25) of Article 366 of the Constitution except when both the accused person and the person against whom an offence is committed belongs either to such Caste or Tribes, the Court shall, when passing judgement, order the whole or any part of the fine recovered to be applied”, shall be substituted; and

(b) For sub-sec. (3), the following shall be substituted,

“(3) When a Court imposes a sentence, of which fine does not form a part, the Court may, and where a person against whom an offence is committed belongs to Scheduled Caste or Scheduled Tribes as defined in clause (24) and (25) of Article 366 of the Constitution, the Court shall, when passing judgement, order the accused person to pay, by way of compensation, such amount as may be specified in the order to the person who has suffered any loss or injury by reason of the act for which the accused person has been so sentenced:

Provided that the Court may not order the accused person to pay by way of compensation any amount, if both the accused person and the person against whom an offence is committed belong either to the Scheduled Castes or the Scheduled Tribes” – M.P.Act No. 29 of 1978, w.e.f. 5-10-1978.

Rajasthan – In Section 357,-

(i) in sub-section (1), between the expression “the Court may”, and the expression “When passing judgement” insert the expression “and where the person against whom an offence is committed belongs to a Scheduled Caste or a Scheduled Tribe but the accused person does not so belong, the Court shall”, and

(ii) in sub-section (3) between the expression “the Court may”, and the expression “when passing judgement” insert the expression “and where the person against whom an offence is committed belongs to a Scheduled Caste or a Scheduled Tribe but the accused person does not so belong, the Court shall” – Rajasthan Act 3 of 1993.

Uttar Pradesh :- (a) in sub-section (1), after clause (d) insert the following proviso, namely:-

“Provided that if a person who may receive compensation under clauses (b), (c) and (d) is a member of the Scheduled Castes or the Scheduled Tribes and the person sentenced is not a member of such Castes or Tribes, the Court shall order the whole or any part of the fine recovered to be applied in payment of such compensation”.

(b) for sub-section (3) substitute the following sub-section, namely,

“(3) When the Court imposes a sentence, of which fine does not form a part, the Court may, and where the person who has suffered the loss or injury is a member of the Scheduled Castes or the Scheduled Tribes and the person sentenced is not a member of such Castes or Tribes the Court shall, when passing judgement, order the person sentenced to pay, by way of compensation, such amount as may be specified in the order to the person who has suffered any loss or injury by reason of the act for which the person has been so sentenced”.

(c) after sub-section (5) insert the following Explanation, namely,-

“Explanation:- For the purposes of, this section expressions “Scheduled Castes” and “Scheduled Tribes” shall have the meanings respectively assigned to them in clauses (24) (25) of Article 366 of the Constitution” – U.P.Act 17 of 1992.

West Bengal :- (a) in sub-section (1), for the words “When a Court imposes a sentence of fine or a sentence (including sentence of death) of which fine forms a part, the Court may, when passing judgement, order the whole or any part of the recovered to be applied”, the words “When a Court imposes a sentence of fine or a sentence (including a sentence of death) of which fine forms a part, the Court may, and where the person against whom an offence has been committed belongs to Scheduled Castes or Scheduled Tribes, except when both the accused per and the person against whom an offence has been committed belongs either to Scheduled Castes or to Scheduled Tribes, shall, when passing judgement order the whole or any part of the fine recovered be applied”- shall be substituted.

(b) for sub-section (3), substitute the following sub-section

“(3) When a Court imposes a sentence, of which fine does not form a part, the Court may, and where the person against whom an offence has been committed belongs to Scheduled Caste or Scheduled Tribes shall, when passing judgement, order the accused person to pay, by way of compensation, such amount as may be specified in the order to the person who has suffered any

loss injury by reason of the act for which the accused person has been so sentenced:

Provided that the Court may not order the accused per to pay by way of compensation, any amount if both the accused person and the person against whom an offence has been committed belong either to Scheduled Castes or to Scheduled Tribes"; and

(c) the following Explanation shall be inserted after sub-section (5);

"Explanation:- For the purposes of this section, expressions "Scheduled Castes" and "Scheduled Tribes" shall have the meanings respectively assigned to them in clauses (24) and (25) of Article 366 of the Constitution of India" – W.B.Act of 1985.

358. Compensation to persons groundlessly arrested:-(1) Whenever any person causes a police officer to arrest another person, if it appears to the Magistrate by whom the case is heard that there was no sufficient ground for causing such arrest, the Magistrate may award such compensation, not exceeding one hundred rupees, to be paid by the person so causing the arrest to the person so arrested, for his loss of time and expenses in the matter, as the Magistrate thinks fit.

(2) In such cases, if more persons than one are arrested, the Magistrate may, in like manner, award to each of them such compensation not exceeding one hundred rupees, as such Magistrate thinks fit.

(3) All Compensation awarded under this Section may be recovered as if it were a fine, and if it cannot be so recovered, the person by whom it is payable shall be sentenced to simple imprisonment for such term not exceeding thirty days as the Magistrate directs, unless such sum is sooner paid.

359. Order to pay costs in non-cognizable cases:- (1)Whenever any complaint of a non-cognizable offence is made to a Court, the Court, if it convicts the accused, may, in addition to the penalty imposed upon him, order him to pay to the complainant, in whole or in part, the cost incurred by him in the prosecution, and may further order that in default of payment, the accused shall suffer simple imprisonment for a period not exceeding thirty days and such costs may include any expenses incurred in respect of process-fees, witnesses and pleader's fees which the Court may consider reasonable.

(2) An order under this section may also be made by an Appellate Court or by the High Court or Court of Session when exercising its powers of revision.

360. Order to release on probation of good conduct or after admonition :-

(1) When any person not under twenty-one years of age is convicted of an offence punishable with fine only or with imprisonment for a term of seven years or less, or when any person under twenty-one years of age or any woman is convicted of an offence not punishable with death or imprisonment for life, and no previous conviction is proved against the offender, if it appears to the Court before which he is convicted, regard being had to the age, character or antecedents of the offender, and to the circumstances in which the offence was committed, that it is expedient that the offender should be released on probation of good conduct, the Court may, instead of sentencing him at once to any punishment, direct that he be released on his entering into a bond, with or without sureties, to appear and receive sentence when called upon during such period (not exceeding three years) as the Court may direct, and in the meantime to keep the peace and be of good behaviour:

Provided that, where any first offender is convicted by a Magistrate of the second class not specially empowered by the High Court, and the Magistrate is of opinion that the powers conferred by this section should be exercised, he shall record his opinion to that effect, and submit the proceedings to a Magistrate of the first class, forwarding the accused to, or taking bail for his appearance before such Magistrate, who shall dispose of the case in the manner provided by sub-section (2).

(2) Where proceedings are submitted to a Magistrate of the first class as provided by sub-section (1), such Magistrate may thereupon pass such sentence or make such order as he might have passed or made if the case had originally been heard by him, and, if he thinks further inquiry or additional evidence on any point to be necessary, he may make such inquiry or take such evidence himself or direct such inquiry or evidence to be made or taken.

(3) In any case in which a person is convicted of theft, theft in a building, dishonest misappropriation, cheating or any offence under the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860), punishable with not more than two years, imprisonment or any offence punishable with fine only and no previous conviction is proved against him, the Court before which he is so convicted may, if it thinks fit, having regard to the age, character, antecedents or physical or mental condition of the offender and to the trivial nature of the offence or any extenuating circumstances under which the offence was committed, instead of sentencing him to any punishment, release him after due admonition.

(4) An order under this section may be made by any Appellate Court or by the High Court or Court of Session when exercising its powers of revision.

(5) When an order has been made under this section in respect of any offender, the High Court or Court of Session may, on appeal when there is a right of appeal to such Court, or when exercising its powers of revision, set aside such order, and in lieu, thereof pass sentence on such offender according to law:

Provided that the High Court or Court of Session shall not under this sub-section inflict a greater punishment than might have been inflicted by the Court by which the offender was convicted.

(6) The provisions of Sections 121, 124 and 373 shall, so far as may be, apply in the case of sureties offered in pursuance of the provisions of this section.

(7) The Court before directing the release of an offender under sub-section (1), shall be satisfied that an offender or his surety (if any) has a fixed place of abode or regular occupation in the place for which the Court acts or in which the offender is likely to live during the period named for the observance of the conditions.

(8) If the Court which convicted the offender, or a Court which could have dealt with the offender in respect of his original offence, is satisfied that the offender has failed to observe any of the conditions of his recognisance, it may issue a warrant for his apprehension.

(9) An offender, when apprehended on any such warrant shall be brought forthwith before the Court issuing warrant, and such Court may either remand him in custody until the case is heard or admit him to bail with a sufficient surety conditioned on his appearing for sentence and Court may, after hearing the case, pass sentence.

(10) Nothing in this section shall affect the provisions of the Probation of Offenders Act, 1958 (20 of 1951), the Children Act, 1960 (60 of 1960) or any other law for the time being in force for the treatment, training or rehabilitation of youthful offenders.

361. Special reasons to be recorded in certain cases:- Where in any case the Court could have dealt with,-

(a) an accused person under Section 360 or under the provisions of the Probation of Offenders Act, 1958 (20 of 1958); or

(b) a youthful offender under the Children Act, 1960 (60 of 1960) or any other law for the time being in force for the treatment, training or rehabilitation of youthful offenders, but has not done so, it shall record in its judgement the special reasons for not having done so.

362. Court not to alter judgement:- Save as otherwise provided by this Code or by any other law for the time being in force, no Court, when it has signed its judgement or order disposing of a case, shall alter or review the same except to correct a clerical or arithmetical error.

363. Copy of judgement to be given to the accused and other persons:- (1) When the accused is sentenced to imprisonment, a copy of the judgement shall, immediately after the pronouncement of the judgement be given to him free of cost.

(2) On the application of the accused, a certified copy of the judgement, or when he so desires, a translation in his own language if practicable or in the language of the Court, shall be given to him without delay, and such copy shall, in every case where the judgement is appealable by the accused, be given free of cost:

Provided that where a sentence of death is passed or confirmed by the High Court, a certified copy of the judgement shall be immediately given to the accused free of cost whether or not he applies for the same.

(3) The provisions of sub-section (2) shall apply in relation to an order under Section 117 as they apply in relation to a judgement which is appealable by the accused.

(4) When the accused is sentenced to death by any Court and an appeal lies from such judgement as of right, the Court shall inform him of the period within which, if he wishes to appeal, his appeal should be preferred.

(5) Save as otherwise provided in sub-section (2), any person affected by a judgement or order passed by a Criminal Court shall, on an application made in this behalf and on payment of the prescribed charges, be given a copy of such judgement or order or of any deposition or other part of the record:

Provided that the Court may, if it thinks fit for some special reasons, give it to him free of cost.

(6) The High Court may, by rules, provide for the grant of copies of any judgement or order of a Criminal Court to any person who is not affected by a

judgement or order, on payment, by such person, of such fees, and subject to such conditions, as the High Court may, by such rules, provide.

STATE AMENDMENT

Karnataka :- Insert the following, after the proviso to sub-section (5), “Provided further that the State shall, on an application made in this behalf by the Prosecuting Officer, be given, free of cost, a certified copy of such judgement, order deposition or record with the prescribed endorsement” – Karnataka Act 19 of 1985, w.e.f. 25-6-1985.

364. Judgement when to be translated:- The original judgement shall be filed with the record of proceedings where the original is recorded in a language different from that of the Court, and the accused so requires, a translation thereof into the language of the Court shall be added to such record.

365. Court of Session to send copy of finding and sentence to District Magistrate:- In cases tried by the Court of Session or a Chief Judicial Magistrate, the Court or such Magistrate, as the case may be, shall forward a copy of its or his finding and sentence (if any) to the District Magistrate within whose local jurisdiction the trial was held.

CHAPTER XXVIII : SUBMISSION OF DEATH SENTENCES FOR CONFIRMATION

366. Sentence of death to be submitted by Court of Session for confirmation :-(1) When the Court of Session passes a sentence of death, the proceedings shall be submitted to the High Court, and the sentence shall not be executed unless it is confirmed by the High Court.

(2) The Court passing the sentence shall commit the convicted person to jail custody under a warrant.

367. Power to direct further inquiry to be made or additional evidence to be taken :-(1) If, when such proceedings are submitted, the High Court thinks that further inquiry should be made into, or additional evidence taken upon, any point bearing upon the guilt or innocence of the convicted person, it may make such inquiry or take such evidence itself, or direct it to be made or taken by the Court of Session.

(2) Unless the High Court otherwise directs, the presence of the convicted person may be dispensed with when such inquiry is made or such evidence is taken.

(3) When the inquiry or evidence (if any) is not made or taken by the High Court, the result of such inquiry or evidence shall be certified to such Court.

368. Power of High Court to confirm sentence or annul conviction :-

In any case submitted under Section 366, the High Court,—
(a) may confirm the sentence, or pass any other sentence warranted by law, or

(b) may annul the conviction and convict the accused of any offence of which the Court of Session might have convicted him, or order a new trial on the same or an amended charge, or

(c) may acquit the accused person :

Provided that no order of confirmation shall be made under this section until the period allowed for preferring an appeal has expired, or, if an appeal is presented within such period, until such appeal is disposed of.

369. Confirmation or new sentence to be signed by two Judges.- In every case so submitted, the confirmation of the sentence, or any new sentence or order passed by the High Court, shall, when such Court consists of two or more Judges, be made, passed and signed by at least two of them.

370. Procedure in case of difference of opinion:- Where any such case is heard before a Bench of Judges and such Judges are equally divided in opinion, the case shall be decided in the manner provided by Section 392.

371. Procedure in cases submitted to High Court for confirmation:- In cases submitted by the Court of Session to the High Court for the confirmation of a sentence of death, the proper officer of the High Court shall, without delay, after the order of confirmation or other order has been made by the High Court, send a copy of the order, the seal of the High Court and attested with his official signature, to the Court of Session.

CHAPTER XXIX : APPEALS

372. No appeal to lie unless otherwise provided:- No appeal shall lie from any judgement or order of a Criminal Court except as provided for by this Code or by any law for the time being in force.

373. Appeal from orders requiring security or refusal to accept or rejecting surety for keeping peace or good behaviour :- Any person,—
(i) who has been ordered under Section 117 to security for keeping the peace or for good behaviour, or

(ii) who is aggrieved by any order refusing to accept or rejecting a surety under Section 121,

may appeal against such order to the Court of Session:

Provided that nothing in this section shall apply to persons the proceedings against whom are laid before a sessions Judge in accordance with the provisions of sub-section (2) or sub-section (4) of Section 122.

374. Appeals from convictions:-(1) Any person convicted on a trial held by a High Court in its extraordinary original criminal jurisdiction may appeal to the Supreme Court.

(2) Any person convicted on a trial held by a Sessions Judge or an Additional Sessions Judge or on a trial held any other Court in which a sentence of imprisonment more than seven years has been against him or against any other person convicted at the same trial may appeal to the High Court.

(3) Save as otherwise provided in sub-section (2), any person:—

- (a) convicted on a trial held by a Metropolitan Magistrate or Assistant Sessions Judge or Magistrate of the first class, or of the second class, or
- (b) sentenced under Section 325, or
- (c) in respect of whom an order has been made or a sentence has been passed under Section 360 by any Magistrate may appeal to the Court of Session.

CASE-LAW

Prior statement of a witness cannot be used as substantive evidence, 1997 (1) SCC 145.

STATE AMENDMENTS

Punjab :- In sub-section (3) for the words “Magistrate of First Class” the words “Executive Magistrate” shall be substituted.

Union Territory of Chandigarh :- Same as in Punjab.

375. No appeal in certain cases when accused pleads guilty:-

Notwithstanding anything contained in Section 374, where an accused person has pleaded guilty and has been convicted on such plea, there shall be no appeal:—

- (a) if the conviction is by a High Court ; or
- (b) if the conviction is by a Court of Session, Metropolitan Magistrate or Magistrate of the first or

second class, except as to the extent or legality of the sentence.

376. No appeal in petty cases:- Notwithstanding anything contained in Section 374, there shall be no appeal by a convicted person in any of the following cases, namely:-

(a) where a High Court passes only a sentence of imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or of

fine not exceeding one thousand rupees, or of both such imprisonment and fine;

(b) where a Court of Session or a Metropolitan Magistrate passes only a sentence of imprisonment for a term

not exceeding three months or of not exceeding two hundred rupees, or of both such imprisonment and fine;

(c) where a Magistrate of the first class passes only a sentence of fine not exceeding one hundred rupees ;

or

(d) where, in a case tried summarily, a Magistrate empowered to act under Section 260 passes only a

sentence of fine not exceeding two hundred rupees:-

Provided that an appeal may be brought against such sentence if any other punishment is combined with it, but such sentence shall not be appealable merely on the ground:-

(i) that the person convicted is ordered to furnish security to keep the peace; or

(ii) that a direction for imprisonment in default payment of fine is included in the sentence; or

(iii) that more than one sentence of fine is passed in the case, if the total amount of fine imposed not exceed the amount hereinbefore specified in respect of the case.

377. Appeal by the State Government against sentence:-(1) Save as otherwise provided in section (2), the State Government may, in any case of

conviction on a trial held by any Court other than a High Court, direct the Public Prosecutor to present an appeal to the High Court against the sentence on the ground of its inadequacy.

(2) If such conviction is in a case in which the offence has been investigated by the Delhi Special Police Establishment, constituted under the Delhi Special Police Establishment Act, 1946 (25 of 1946), or by any other agency empowered to make investigation into an offence under any Central Act other than this Code, the Central Government may also direct the Public Prosecutor to present an appeal to the High Court against the sentence on the ground of its inadequacy.

(3) When an appeal has been filed against the sentence on the ground of its inadequacy, the High Court shall not enhance the sentence except after giving to the accused a reasonable opportunity of showing cause against such enhancement and while showing cause; the accused may plead of his acquittal or for the reduction of the sentence.

378. Appeal in case of acquittal :-(1) Save as otherwise provided in sub-section (2) and subject to the provisions of sub-sections (3) and (5), the State Government may, in any case, direct the Public Prosecutor to present an appeal to the High Court from an original or appellate order of acquittal passed by any Court other than a High Court, or an order of acquittal passed by the Court of Session in revision.

(2) If such an order of acquittal is passed in any case in which the offence has been investigated by the Delhi Special Police Establishment constituted under the Delhi Special Police Establishment Act, 1946 (25 of 1946), or by any other agency empowered to make investigation into an offence under any Central Act other than this Code, the Central Government may also direct the Public Prosecutor to present an appeal, subject to the provisions of sub-section (3), to the high Court from the order of acquittal.

(3) No appeal under sub-section (1) or sub-section (2) shall be entertained except with the leave of the High Court.

(4) If such an order of acquittal is passed in any case instituted upon complaint and the High Court, on an application made to it by the complainant in this behalf, grants special leave to appeal from the order of acquittal, the complainant may present such an appeal to the High Court.

(5) No application under sub-section (4) for the grant of special leave to appeal from an order of acquittal shall be entertained by the High Court after

the expiry of six months, where the complainant is a public servant, and sixty days in every other case, computed from the date of that order of acquittal.

(6) If, in any case, the application under sub-section (4) for the grant of special leave to appeal from an order of acquittal is refused, no appeal from that order of acquittal shall lie under sub-section (1) or under sub-section (2).

379. Appeal against conviction by High Court in certain cases:-

Where the High Court has, on appeal, reversed an order of acquittal of an accused person and convicted him and sentenced him to death or to imprisonment for life or to imprisonment for a term of ten years or more, he may appeal to the Supreme Court.

380. Special right of appeal in certain cases.- Notwithstanding anything contained in this chapter, when more persons than one are convicted in one trial, and an appealable judgement or order has been passed in respect of any of such persons, all or any of the persons convicted at such trial shall have a right of appeal.

381. Appeal to Court of Session how heard:- (1) Subject to the provisions of sub-section (2), an appeal to the Court of Session or Sessions Judge shall be heard by the Sessions Judge or by an Additional Sessions Judge:

Provided that an appeal against a conviction on a trial held by a Magistrate of the second class may be heard and disposed of by an Assistant Sessions Judge or a Chief Judicial Magistrate.

(2) An Additional Sessions Judge, Assistant Sessions Judge or a Chief Judicial Magistrate shall hear only such appeals as the Sessions Judge of the division may, by general or special order, make over to him or as the High Court may, by special order, direct him to hear.

382. Petition of appeal:- Every appeal shall be made in the form of a petition in writing presented by the appellant or his pleader, and every such petition shall (unless the Court to which it is presented otherwise directs) be accompanied by a copy of the judgement or order appealed against.

STATE AMENDMENTS

Andaman, Nicobar Island and Lakshadweep Island:- (I) Section 382 renumbered as sub-section (1), the following proviso shall be added to sub-section (1) so renumbered:-

“Provided that where it is not practicable to file the petition of appeal to the proper Appellate Court, the petition of appeal may be presented to the Administrator or to an Executive Magistrate not below the rank of a sub-divisional Magistrate, who shall forward the same to the proper Appellate

Court; and, when any such appeal is presented to the Administrator or to an Executive Magistrate, he shall record thereon the date of its presentation and, if he is satisfied that, by reason of the weather, transport or other difficulties, it is not possible for the appellant to obtain, from the proper Appellate Court, orders for the suspension of the sentence or for bail, he may, in respect of such appeal, or an appeal forwarded to him under Section 383 exercise all or any of the powers of the proper Appellate Court under sub-section (1) of Section 389 with regard to suspension of sentence or release of a convicted person on bail:

Provided further that the order so made by the Administrator or the Executive Magistrate shall have effect until it is reversed or modified by the proper Appellate Court.

Explanation:- For the purposes of the provisos to this Section and Section 383, "Administrator" in relation to a Union Territory, means the Administrator appointed by the President under Article 239 of the Constitution, for the Union Territory.

(i) After sub-section (1) so renumbered, the following sub-section (2) shall be inserted,

namely,—

(2) For the purposes of computation of the period of limitation, and for all other purposes, an appeal presented to an Administrator or an Executive Magistrate under sub-section (1) or, as the case may be, under section 383, shall be deemed to be an appeal presented to the proper Appellate Court".
Regulation 1 of 1974, w.e.f. 30-3-1974.

383. Procedure when appellant in jail:- If the appellant is in jail, he may present his petition of appeal and the copies accompanying the same to the officer in charge of the jail, who shall thereupon forward such petition and copies to the proper Appellate Court.

STATE AMENDMENTS

Andaman, Nicobar Islands and Lakshadweep Islands:-

Insert the following words at the end:—

"Or if, by reason of the weather, transport or other difficulties, it is not possible to forward them to the proper Appellate Court, they shall be forwarded to the Administrator or an Executive Magistrate, not below the rank of a Sub-Divisional Magistrate, who shall, on receipt of such petition of appeal and copies, record thereon the date of receipt thereof and thereafter

forward the same to the proper Appellate Court". Regulation 1 of 1974, w.e.f. 30-3-1974.

384. Summary dismissal of appeal:-(1) If upon examining the petition of appeal and copy of the judgement received under Section 382 or Section 383, the Appellate Court considers that there is no sufficient ground for interfering, it may dismiss the appeal summarily:-

Provided that-

(a) no appeal presented under Section 382 shall be dismissed unless the appellant or his pleader has had a reasonable opportunity of being heard in support of the same;

(b) no appeal presented under Section 383 shall be dismissed except after giving the appellant a reasonable opportunity of being heard in support of the same, unless the Appellate Court considers, that the appeal is frivolous or that the production of the accused in custody before the Court would involve such inconvenience as would be disproportionate in the circumstances of the case;

(c) no appeal presented under Section 383 shall be dismissed summarily until the period allowed for preferring such appeal has expired.

(2) Before dismissing an appeal under this Section, the Court may call for the record of the case.

(3) Where the Appellate Court dismissing an appeal under this section is a Court of Session or of the Chief Judicial Magistrate, it shall record its reasons for doing so.

(4) Where an appeal presented under Section 383 has been dismissed summarily under this section and the Appellate Court finds that another petition of appeal duly presented under Section 382 on behalf of the same appellant has not been considered by it, that Court may, notwithstanding anything contained in Section 393, if satisfied that it is necessary in the interests of Justice so to do, hear and dispose of such appeal in accordance with law.

385. Procedure for hearing appeals not dismissed summarily :-(1) If the Appellate Court does not dismiss the appeal summarily, it shall cause notice of the time and place at which such appeal will be heard to be given:-

(i) to the appellant or his pleader;

(ii) to such officer as the State Government may appoint in this behalf;

(iii) if the appeal is from a judgement of conviction in a case instituted upon complaint, to the complainant

(iv) if the appeal is under Section 377 or Section 378, to the accused,

and shall also furnish such officer, complainant and accused with a copy of the grounds of appeal.

(2) The Appellate Court shall then send for the record of the case, if such record is not already available in the Court, and hear the parties:

Provided that if the appeal is only as to the extent of the legality of the sentence, the Court may dispose of the appeal without sending for the record.

(3) Where the only ground for appeal from a conviction is the alleged severity of the sentence, the appellant shall not, except with the leave of the Court, urge or be heard in support of any other ground.

386. Powers of the Appellate Court:- After perusing, such record and hearing the appellant or his pleader, if he appears, and the Public Prosecutor, if he appears and in case of an appeal under Section 377 or Section 378, the accused if he appears, the Appellate Court may, if it considers that there is no sufficient ground for interfering, dismiss the appeal, or may:—

(a) in an appeal from an order of acquittal, reverse such order and direct that further inquiry be made, or

that the accused be re-tried or committed for trial, as the case may be, or find him guilty and pass sentence on

him according to law.

(b) in an appeal from a conviction:—

(i) reverse the finding and sentence and acquit or discharge the accused, or order him to be re-tried by a

Court of competent jurisdiction subordinate to such Appellate Court or committed for trial, or

(ii) after the finding, maintaining the sentence, or

(iii) with or without altering the finding, alter the nature or the extent, or the nature and extent, of the

sentence, but not so as to enhance the same—

(c) in an appeal for enhancement of sentence:—

(i) reverse the finding and sentence and acquit or discharge the accused or order him to be re-tried

by a Court competent to try the offence, or

(ii) after the finding maintaining the sentence, or

(iii) with or without altering the finding, alter the nature or the extent, or, the nature and extent, of

the sentence, so as to enhance or reduce the same;

(d) in an appeal from any other order, alter or reverse such order;

(e) make any amendment or any consequential or incidental order that may be just or proper:

Provided that the sentence shall not be enhanced unless the accused has had an opportunity of showing cause against such enhancement:

Provided further that the Appellate Court shall not inflict greater punishment for the offence which in its opinion the accused has committed, than might have been inflicted for that offence by the Court passing the order or sentence under appeal.

387. Judgements of Subordinate Appellate Court : - The rules contained in Chapter XXVII as to the judgement of a Criminal Court of original jurisdiction shall apply, so far as may be practicable, to the judgement in appeal of a Court of Session or Chief Judicial Magistrate:

Provided that, unless the Appellate Court otherwise directs, the accused shall not be brought up, or required to attend, to hear the judgement delivered.

388. Order of High Court on appeal to be certified to lower Court:-

(1) Whenever a case is decided on appeal by the High Court under this Chapter, it shall certify its judgement or order to the Court by which the finding, sentence or order appealed against was recorded or passed and if such Court is that of a Judicial Magistrate other than the Chief Judicial Magistrate, the High Court's judgement or order shall be sent through the Chief Judicial

Magistrate, and if such Court is that of an Executive Magistrate, the High Court judgement or order shall be sent through the District Magistrate.

(2) The Court to which the High Court certifies its judgement or order shall thereupon make such orders as are comfortable to the judgement or order of the High Court, and if necessary, the record shall be amended in accordance therewith.

389. Suspension of sentence pending the appeal; release of

appellant on bail:- (1) Pending any appeal by a convicted person, the Appellate Court may, for reasons to be recorded by it in writing, order that the execution of the sentence or order appealed against be suspended and, also if he is in confinement, that he be released on bail, or on his own bond.

(2) The power conferred by this section on a Appellate Court may be exercised also by the High Court in the case of an appeal by a convicted person to a Court subordinate thereto.

(3) Where the convicted person satisfies the Court by which he is convicted that he intends to present an appeal, the Court shall.—

(i) where such person, being on bail, is sentenced to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three years, or

(ii) where the offence of which such person has been convicted is a bailable one, and he is on bail,

order that the convicted person be released on bail, unless there are special reasons for refusing bail, for such period as will afford sufficient time to present the appeal and obtain the orders of the Appellate Court under sub-section (1), and the sentence of imprisonment shall, so long as he is so released on bail, be deemed to be suspended.

(4) When the appellant is ultimately sentenced to imprisonment for a term or to imprisonment for life, the time during which he is so released shall be excluded in computing the term for which he is so sentenced.

390. Arrest of accused in appeal from acquittal.- When an appeal is presented under Section 378, the High Court may issue a warrant directing that the accused be arrested and brought before it or any Subordinate Court, and the Court before which he is brought may commit him to prison pending the disposal of the appeal or admit him to bail.

391. Appellate Court may take further evidence or direct it to be taken:-

(1) In dealing with any appeal under this Chapter, the Appellate Court, if it thinks additional evidence to be necessary, shall record its reasons and may either take such evidence itself, or direct it to be taken by a Magistrate, or, when the Appellate Court is a High Court, by a Court of Session or a Magistrate.

(2) When the additional evidence is taken by the Court of Session or the Magistrate, it or he shall certify such evidence to the Appellate Court, and such Court shall thereupon proceed to dispose of the appeal.

(3) The accused or his pleader shall have the right to be present when the additional evidence is taken.

(4) The taking of evidence under this section shall be subject to the provisions of Chapter XXIII, as if it were an inquiry.

392. Procedure where Judges of Court of Appeal are equally divided:-

When an appeal under this chapter is heard by a High Court before a Bench of Judges and they are divided in opinion, the appeal, with their opinions, shall be laid before another Judge of that Court, and that Judge, after such hearing as he thinks fit, shall deliver his opinion, and the judgement or order shall follow that opinion:

Provided that if one of the Judges constituting the Bench, or, where the appeal is laid before another Judge under this section, that Judge, so requires, the appeal shall be re-heard and decided by a larger Bench of Judges.

393. Finality of judgements and orders on appeal:- Judgements and orders passed by an Appellate Court upon an appeal shall be final, except in the cases provided for in Section 377, Section 378, sub-section (4) of Section 384 or Chapter XXX:

Provided that notwithstanding the final disposal of an appeal against conviction in any case, the Appellate Court may hear and dispose of, on the merits..-

(a) an appeal against acquittal under Section 378, arising out of the same case, or

(b) an appeal for the enhancement of sentence under Section 377, arising out of the same case.

394. Abatement of appeals :-(1) Every appeal under Section 377 or Section 378 shall finally abate on the death of the accused.

(2) Every other appeal under this chapter appeal from a sentence of fine shall finally abate on the death of the appellant:

Provided that where the appeal is against a conviction and sentence of death or of imprisonment, and the appellant dies during the pendency of the appeal, any of his near relatives may, within thirty days of the death of the appellant, apply to the Appellate Court for leave to continue the appeal; and if leave is granted, the appeal shall not abate.

Explanation.- In this Section “near relative” means apparent, spouse, lineal descendant, brother or sister.

CHAPTER XXX : REFERENCE AND REVISION

395. Reference to High Court:-(1) Where any Court is satisfied that a case pending before it involves a question as to the validity of any Act, Ordinance or Regulation or of any provision contained in an Act, Ordinance or Regulation, the determination of which is necessary for the disposal of the case, and is of opinion that such Act, Ordinance, Regulation or provision is invalid or inoperative but has not been so declared by the High Court to which that Court is Subordinate or by the Supreme Court, the Court shall state a case setting out its opinion and the reasons therefor, and refer the same for the decision of the High Court.

Explanation- In this section, “Regulation” means any Regulation as defined in the General Clauses Act, 1897 (10 of 1897), or in the General Clauses Act of a State.

(2) A Court of Session or a Metropolitan Magistrate may, if it or he thinks fit in any case pending before it or him to which the provisions of sub-section (1) do not apply, refer for the decision of the High Court any question of law arising in the hearing of such case.

(3) Any Court making a reference to the High Court under sub-section (1) or sub-section (2) may, pending decision of the High Court thereon, either commit the accused to jail or release him on bail to appear when called upon.

396. Disposal of case according to decision of High Court:-(1) When a question has been so referred, the High Court shall pass such order thereon as it thinks fit, and shall cause a copy of such order to be sent to the Court by which the reference was made, which shall dispose of the case conformably to the said order.

(2) The High Court may direct by whom the costs of such reference shall be paid.

397. Calling for records to exercise powers of revision:-(1)The High Court or any Sessions Judge may call for and examine the record of any proceeding before any inferior Criminal Court situate within its or his local jurisdiction for the purpose of satisfying itself or himself; to the correctness, legality or propriety of any finding, sentence or order, recorded or passed, and as to the regularity of any proceedings of such inferior Court, and may, when calling, for such record, direct that the execution of any sentence or order be suspended, and if the accused is in confinement that he be released on bail or on his own bond pending the examination of the record.

Explanation:- All Magistrates, whether Executive or Judicial and whether exercising original or appellate jurisdiction shall be deemed to be inferior to the Sessions Judge for the purposes of this sub-section and of Section 398.
(2) The powers of revision conferred by sub-section (1) shall not be exercised in relation to any interlocutor order passed in any appeal, inquiry, trial or other proceeding.

(3) If an application under this section has been made by any person either to the High Court or to the Sessions Judge, no further application by the same person shall be entertained by the other of them.

398. Power to order inquiry:- On examining any record under Section 397 or otherwise, the High Court or the Sessions Judge may direct the Chief Judicial Magistrate by himself or by any of the Magistrates subordinate to him to make, and the Chief Judicial Magistrate may himself make, or direct any subordinate Magistrate to make, further inquiry into any complaint which has been dismissed under Section 203 or sub-section (4) of Section 204, or into the case of any person accused of an offence who has been discharged:
Provided that no Court shall make any direction under this section for inquiry into the case of any person who has been discharged unless such person has had an opportunity of showing cause why such direction should not be made.

399. Sessions Judge's powers of revision : (1) In the case of any proceeding the record of which has been called for by himself, the Sessions Judge may exercise all or any of the powers which may be exercised by the High Court under sub-section (1) of Section 401.
(2) Where any proceeding by way of revision is commenced before a Sessions Judge under sub-section (1), the provisions of sub-sections (2), (3), (4) and (5) of Section 401 shall, so far as may be, apply to such proceeding and references in the said sub-sections to the High Court shall be construed as references to the Sessions Judge.

(3) Where any application for revision is made by or on behalf of any person before the Sessions Judge, the decision of the Sessions Judge thereon in relation to such person shall be final and no further proceeding by way of revision at the instance of such person shall be entertained by the High Court or any other Court.

400. Power of Additional Sessions Judge.—An Additional Sessions Judge shall have and may exercise all the powers of a Sessions Judge under this chapter in respect of any case which may be transferred to him by or under any general or special order of the Sessions Judge.

401. High Court's powers of revision:-(1) In the case of any proceeding the record of which has been called for by itself or which otherwise comes to its knowledge the High Court may, in its discretion, exercise any of the powers conferred on a Court of Appeal by Sections 386, 389, 390 and 391 or on a Court of Session by Section 307, and, when the Judges composing the Court of Revision are equally divided in opinion, the case shall be disposed of in the manner provided Section 392.

(2) No order under this section shall be made to the prejudice of the accused or other person unless he has had an opportunity of being heard either personally or by plead in his own defence.

(3) Nothing in this section shall be deemed to authorise a High Court to convert a finding of acquittal into one conviction.

(4) Where under this Code an appeal lies and no appeal is brought, no proceeding by way of revision shall be entertained at the instance of the party who could have, appealed.

(5) Where under this Code an appeal lies but an application for revision has been made to the High Court by any person and the High Court is satisfied that such application was made under the erroneous belief that no appeal lies thereto and that it is necessary in the interests of Justice so to do, the High Court may treat the application for revision as a petition of appeal and deal with the same accordingly.

402. Power of High Court to withdraw or transfer revision cases:-

(1) Whenever one or more persons convicted at the same trial makes or make application to a High Court for revision and any other person convicted at the same trial makes an application to the Sessions Judge for revision, the High Court shall decide, having regard to the general convenience of the parties and the importance of the questions involved, which of the two Courts should finally dispose of the applications for revision and when the High Court

decides that all the applications for revision should be disposed of by itself, the High Court shall direct that the applications for revision pending before the Sessions Judge be transferred to itself and where the High Court decides that it is not necessary for it to dispose of the applications for revision, it shall direct that the applications for revision made to it be transferred to the Sessions Judge.

(2) Whenever any application for revision is transferred to the High Court, that Court shall deal with the same as if it were an application duly made before itself.

(3) Whenever any application for revision is transferred to the Sessions Judge, that Judge shall deal with the same as if it were an application duly made before himself.

(4) Where an application for revision is transferred by the High Court to the Sessions Judge, no further application for revision shall lie to the High Court or to any other Court at the instance of the person or persons whose application for revision have been disposed of by the Sessions Judge.

403. Option of Court to hear parties.- Save as otherwise expressly provided by this Code, no party has any right to be heard either personally or by pleader before any Court exercising its powers of revision, but the Court may if it thinks fit, when exercising such powers, hear any party either personally or by pleader.

404. Statement by Metropolitan Magistrate of grounds of his decision to be considered by High Court: When the record of any trial held by a Metropolitan Magistrate is called for by the High Court or Court of Session under Section 397, the Magistrate may submit with the record a statement setting forth the grounds of his decision or order and any facts which he thinks material to the issue, and that Court shall consider such statement before overruling or setting aside the said decision or order.

405. High Court's order to be certified to lower Court:- When a case is revised under this Chapter by the High Court or a Sessions Judge, it or he shall, in the manner provided by Section 388, certify its decision or order to the Court by which the finding, sentence or order revised was recorded or passed, and the Court to which the decision or order is so certified shall thereupon-make such orders as are conformable to the decision so certified, and, if necessary, the record shall be amended in accordance therewith.

CHAPTER XXXI : TRANSFER OF CRIMINAL CASES

406. Power of Supreme Court to transfer cases and appeals:-

(1) Whenever it is made to appear to the Supreme Court that an order under

this section is expedient for the ends of justice, it may direct that any particular case or appeal be transferred from one High Court to another High Court or from a Criminal Court subordinate to one High Court to another Criminal Court of equal or superior jurisdiction subordinate to another High Court.

(2) The Supreme Court may act under this section only on the application of the Attorney-General of India or of a party interested, and every such application shall be made by motion, which shall, except when the applicant is the Attorney-General of India or the Advocate-General of the State, be supported by affidavit or affirmation.

(3) Where any application for the exercise of the powers conferred by this section is dismissed, the Supreme Court may, if it is of opinion that the application was frivolous or vexatious, order the applicant to pay by way of compensation to any person who has opposed the application such sum not exceeding one thousand rupees as it may consider appropriate in the circumstances of the case.

407. Power of High Court to transfer cases and appeals:-(1) Whenever it is made to appear to the High Court:—

(a) that a fair and impartial inquiry or trial cannot be had in any Criminal Court subordinate thereto, or

(b) that some question of law of unusual difficulty is likely to arise, or

(c) that an order under this section is required by any provision of this Code, or will tend to the general convenience of the parties or witnesses, or is expedient for the ends of justice,

it may order —

(i) that any offence be inquired into or tried by any Court not qualified under Sections 177 to 185 (both

inclusive), but in other respects competent to inquire into or try such offence;

(ii) that any particular case or appeal, or class of cases or appeals, be transferred from a Criminal Court

subordinate to its authority to any other such Criminal Court of equal or superior jurisdiction;

(iii) that any particular case be committed for trial to a Court of Session; or

(iv) that any particular case or appeal be transferred to and tried before itself

(2) The High Court may act either on the report of the lower Court, or on the application of a party interested, or on its own initiative:

Provided that no application shall lie to the High Court for transferring a case from one Criminal Court to another Criminal Court in the same sessions division, unless an application for such transfer has been made to the Session Judge and rejected by him.

(3) Every application for an order under sub section (1) shall be made by motion, which shall, excel when the applicant is the Advocate-General of the State, be supported by affidavit or affirmation.

(4) When such application is made by an accused person, the High Court may direct him to execute a bond, with or without sureties, for the payment of any compensation which the High Court may award under sub-section (7)

(5) Every accused person making such application shall give to the Public Prosecutor notice in writing of the application, together with a copy of the grounds on which it is made, and no order shall be made on the merits of the applications unless at least twenty-four hours have elapsed between the giving of such notice and the hearing of the application.

(6) Where the application is for the transfer of a case or appeal from any Subordinate Court, the High Court may if it is satisfied that it is necessary so to do in the interest of Justice, order that, pending the disposal of the application the proceedings in the Subordinate Court shall be stayed, on such terms as the High Court may think fit to impose:

Provided that such stay shall not affect the Subordinate Court's power of remand under Section 309.

(7) Where an application for an order under sub-section (1) is dismissed, the High Court may, if it is of opinion that the application was frivolous or vexatious, order the applicant to pay by way of compensation to any person who has opposed the application such sum not exceeding one thousand rupees as it may consider proper in the circumstances of the case.

(8) When the High Court orders under sub-section (1) that a case be transferred from any Court for trial before itself, it shall observe in such trial the same procedure which that Court would have observed if the case had not been so transferred.

(9) Nothing in this section shall be deemed to affect any order of Government under Section 197.

408. Power of Sessions Judge to transfer cases and appeals:-(1)

Whenever it is made to appear to a Sessions Judge that an order under this sub-section is expedient for the ends of justice, he may order that any particular case be transferred from one Criminal Court to another Criminal Court in his Sessions division.

(2) The Sessions Judge may act either on the report of the lower Court, or on the application of a party interested, or on his own initiative.

(3) The provisions of sub-sections (3), (4), (5), (6) (7) and (9) of Section 407 shall apply in relation to an application to the Session, Judge for an order under sub-section (1) as they apply in relation to an application to High Court for an order under sub-sec. (1) of Section 407 except that sub-section (7) of that section shall so apply as if for the words, "one thousand rupees" occurring therein the words "two hundred and fifty rupees" were substituted.

409. Withdrawal of cases and appeals by Session Judge: -(1) A

Sessions Judge may withdraw any case or appeal from, or recall any case or appeal which he has made over to, any Assistant Sessions Judge or Chief Judicial Magistrate subordinate to him.

(2) At any time before the trial of the case or the hearing of the appeal has commenced before the Additional Sessions Judge, a Sessions Judge may recall any case appeal which he has made over to any Additional Session Judge.

(3) Where a Sessions Judge withdraws or recalls case or appeal under sub-section (1) or sub-section (2), he may either try the case in his own Court or hear the appeal himself, or make it over in accordance with the provision of this Code to another Court for trial or hearing, as the case may be.

410. Withdrawal of cases by Judicial Magistrate:- (1)Any Chief

Judicial Magistrate may withdraw any case from, or recall any case which he has made over to, any Magistrate subordinate to him, and may inquire into or try such case himself, or refer it for inquiry or trial to any other such Magistrate competent to inquire into or try the same.

(2) Any Judicial Magistrate may recall any case made over by him under sub-section (2) of Section 192 to any other Magistrate and may inquire into or try such case himself.

411. Making over or withdrawal of cases by Executive

Magistrates.- Any District Magistrate or Sub- Divisional Magistrate may —

(a) make over, for disposal, any proceeding which has been started before him, to any Magistrate

subordinate to him;

(b) withdraw any case from, or recall any case which he has made over to, any Magistrate subordinate to

him and dispose of such proceeding himself, or refer it for disposal to any other Magistrate.

412. Reasons to be recorded:- A Sessions Judge or Magistrate making an order under Section 408, Section 409, Section 410 or Section 411 shall record his reasons for making it.

CHAPTER XXXII : EXECUTION, SUSPENSION, REMISSION AND COMMUTATION OF SENTENCES

A – Death Sentences

413. Execution of order passed under Section 368.- When in a case submitted to the High Court for the confirmation of a sentence of death, the Court of Session receives the order of confirmation or other order of the High Court thereon, it shall cause such order to be carried into effect by issuing a warrant or taking such other steps as may be necessary.

414. Execution of sentence of death passed by High Court:- When a sentence of death is passed by the High Court in appeal or in revision, the Court of Session shall, or receiving the order of the High Court, cause the sentence to be carried into effect by issuing a warrant.

415. Postponement of execution of sentence of death in case of appeal to Supreme Court:- (1) Where a person is sentenced to death by the High Court and an appeal from its judgement lies to the Supreme Court under sub-clause (a) or sub-clause (b) of Clause (1) of Article 134 of the Constitution, the High Court shall order the execution of the sentence to be postponed until the period allowed for preferring such appeal has expired, or if an appeal is preferred within that period, until such appeal is disposed of. (2) Where a sentence of death is passed or confirmed by the High Court, and the person sentenced makes an application to the High Court for the grant of a certificate under Article 132 or under sub-clause (c) of Clause (1) of Article 134 of the Constitution, the High Court shall order the execution of the sentence to be postponed until such application is disposed of by the High Court or if a certificate is granted on such application, until the period allowed for preferring an appeal to the Supreme Court on such certificate has expired.

(3) Where a sentence of death is passed or confirmed by the High Court, and the High Court is satisfied that the person sentenced intends to present a petition to the Supreme Court for the grant of special leave to appeal under Article 136 of the Constitution, the High Court shall order the execution of the sentence to be postponed for such period as it considers sufficient to enable him to present such petition.

416. Postponement of capital sentence on pregnant woman.- If a woman sentenced to death is found to be pregnant, the High Court shall order the execution of the sentence to be postponed, and may, if it thinks fit, commute the sentence to imprisonment for life.

CODE OF CRIMINAL PROCEDURE, 1973

B – Imprisonment

417. Power to appoint place of imprisonment:- (1) Except when otherwise provided by any law for the time being in force, the State Government may direct in what place any person liable to be imprisoned or committed to custody under this Code shall be confined.

(2) If any person liable to be imprisoned or committed to custody under this Code is in confinement in a civil jail, the Court or Magistrate ordering the imprisonment or committal may direct that the person be removed to a criminal jail:

(3) When a person is removed to a criminal jail under sub-section (2) he shall, on being released therefrom, be sent back to the civil jail, unless either,—

(a) three years have elapsed since he was removed to the criminal jail, in which case he shall be deemed

to have been released from the civil jail under Section 58 of the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908 (5 of 1908),

or Section 23 of the Provincial Insolvency Act, 1920 (5 of 1920), as the case may be, or

(b) the Court which ordered his imprisonment in the civil jail has certified to the officer in charge of the

criminal jail that he is entitled to be released under Section 58 of the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908 (5 of 1908), or

under Section 23 of the Provincial Insolvency Act, 1920 (5 of 1920), as the case may be.

418. Execution of sentence of imprisonment:-(1) Where the accused is sentenced to imprisonment for, life or to imprisonment for a term in cases other than those provided for by Section 413, the Court passing the sentence shall forthwith forward a warrant to the jail or other place in which he is, or is to be, confined, and, unless the accused is already confined in such jail or other place, shall forward him to such jail or other place, with the warrant: Provided that where the accused is sentenced to imprisonment till the rising of the Court, it shall not be necessary to prepare or forward a warrant to a jail, and the accused may be confined in such place as the Court may direct.

(2) Where the accused is not present in Court when he is sentenced to such imprisonment as is mentioned in sub-section (1), the Court shall issue a warrant for his arrest for the purpose of forwarding him to the jail or other place in which he is to be confined; and in such case, the sentence shall commence on the date of his arrest.

419. Direction of warrant for execution:- Every warrant for the execution of a sentence of imprisonment shall be directed to the officer in charge of the jail or other place in which the prisoner is, or is to be, confined.

420. Warrant with whom to be lodged:- When the prisoner is to be confined in jail, the warrant shall be lodged with the jailor.

C - Levy of fine

421. Warrant for levy of fine.-(1) When an offender has been sentenced to pay a fine, the Court passing the sentence may take action for the recovery of the fine in either or both of the following ways, that is to say, it may,-

(a) issue a warrant for the levy of the amount by attachment and sale of any movable property

belonging to the offender;

(b) issue a warrant to the Collector of the district, authorising him to realise the amount as arrears of land revenue from the movable or immovable property, or both, of the defaulter:

Provided that, if the sentence directs that in default of payment of the fine, the offender shall be imprisoned, and if such offender has undergone the whole of such imprisonment in default, no Court shall issue such warrant unless, for special reasons to be recorded in writing, it considers it necessary so to do, or unless, it has made an order for the payment of expenses or compensation out of the fine under Section 357.

(2) The State Government may make rules regulating the manner in which warrants under Clause (a) of sub-section (1) are to be executed, and for the summary determination of any claims made by any person other than the offender in respect of any property attached in execution of such warrant.

(3) Where the Court issues a warrant to the Collector under Clause (b) of sub-section (1), the Collector shall realise the amount in accordance with the law relating to recovery of arrears of land revenue, as if such warrant were a certificate issued under such law:

Provided that no such warrant shall be executed by the arrest or detention in prison of the offender.

422. Effect of such warrant:- A warrant issued under Clause (a) of sub-section (1) of Section 421 by any Court may be executed within the local jurisdiction of such Court, and it shall authorise the attachment and sale of any such property outside such jurisdiction, when it is endorsed by the District Magistrate within whose local jurisdiction such property is found.

423. Warrant for levy of fine issued by a Court in any territory to which this Code does not extend:- Notwithstanding anything contained in this Code or in any other law for the time being in force, when an offender has been sentenced to pay a fine by a Criminal Court in any territory to which this Code does not extend and the Court passing the sentence issued a warrant to the Collector of a district in the territories to which this Code extends, authorising him to realise the amount as if it were an arrears of land revenue, such warrant shall be deemed to be a warrant issued under Clause (b) of sub-section (1) of Section 421 by a Court in the territories to which this Code extends, and the provisions of sub-section (3) of the said section as to the execution of such warrant shall apply accordingly.

424. Suspension of execution of sentence of imprisonment: -(1) When an offender has been sentenced to fine only and to imprisonment in default of payment of the fine, and the fine is not paid forthwith, the Court may-(a) order that the fine shall be payable either in full on or before a date not more than thirty days from the

date of the order, or in two or three instalments, of which the first shall be payable on or before a date not

more than thirty days from the date of the order and the other or others at an interval or at intervals, as the

case may be, of not more than thirty days.

(b) suspend the execution of the sentence of imprisonment and release the offender, on the execution by

the offender of a bond, with or without sureties, as the Court thinks fit, conditioned for his appearance before

the Court on the date or dates on or before which payment of the fine or the instalments thereof, as the case

may be, is to be made, and if the amount of the fine or of any instalment, as the case may be, is not realised

on or before the latest date on which it is payable under the order, the Court may direct the sentence of

imprisonment to be carried into execution at once.

(2) The provisions of sub-section (1) shall be applicable also in any case in which an order for the payment of money has been made on non-recovery of which imprisonment may be awarded and the money is not paid forthwith, and, if the person against whom the order has been made, on being required to enter into a bond such as is referred to in that sub-section, fails to do so, the Court may at once pass sentence of imprisonment.

D – General provisions regarding execution

425. Who may issue warrant:- Every warrant for the execution of a sentence may be issued either by the Judge or Magistrate who passed the sentence, or by his successor-in-charge.

426. Sentence on escaped convict when to take effect:- (1) When a sentence of death, imprisonment for life or fine is passed under this Code on an escaped convict, such sentence shall, subject to the provisions hereinbefore contained, take effect immediately.

(2) When a sentence of imprisonment for a term is passed under this Code on an escaped convict-

(a) if such sentence is severer in kind than the sentence which such convict was undergoing when he escaped, the new sentence shall take effect immediately;

(b) if such sentence is not severer in kind than the sentence which such convict was undergoing when he escaped, the new sentence shall take effect after he has suffered imprisonment for a further period equal to that which, at the time of his escape, remained unexpired of his former sentence.

(3) For the purposes of sub-section (2), a sentence of rigorous imprisonment shall be deemed to be severer in kind than a sentence of simple imprisonment.

427. Sentence on offender already sentenced for another offence:-

(1) When a person already undergoing a sentence on a subsequent conviction to imprisonment or imprisonment for life, such imprisonment or imprisonment for life shall commence at the expiration of the imprisonment to which he has been previously sentenced, unless the Court directs that the subsequent sentence shall run concurrently with such previous sentence: Provided that where a person who has been sentenced to imprisonment by an order under Section 122 in default of furnishing security is, whilst undergoing such sentence, sentenced to imprisonment for an offence committed prior to the making of such order, the latter sentence shall commence immediately.

(2) When a person already undergoing a sentence of imprisonment for life is sentenced on a subsequent conviction to imprisonment for a term or imprisonment for life, subsequent sentence shall run concurrently with such previous sentence.

STATE AMENDMENT

Tamilnadu :- Insert the following sub-section after sub- section (I):-

“(IA) Notwithstanding anything contained in sub-section (1), when a person already undergoing a sentence of imprisonment is sentenced on a subsequent conviction to imprisonment under sub-section (2) of Section 380 of the Indian Penal Code (Central Act XLV of 1860), for an offence of theft of any idol or icon in any building used as a place of worship, such imprisonment shall commence at the expiration of the imprisonment to which he has been previously sentenced” – T.N. Act 28 of 1993.

428. Period of detention undergone by the accuser to be set off against the sentence of imprisonment:-

Where an accused person has, on conviction, been sentenced to imprisonment for a term, not being imprisonment in default of payment of fine, the period of detention, if any undergone by him during the investigation, inquiry or trial of the same case and before the date of such conviction, shall be set off against the term of imprisonment imposed on him on such conviction, and the liability of such person to undergo imprisonment on such conviction shall be restricted to the remainder, if any, of the term of imprisonment imposed on him.

429. Saving.— (1) Nothing in Section 426 or Section 427 shall be held to excuse any person from any part of the punishment to which he is liable upon his former or subsequent conviction.

(2) When an award of imprisonment in default of payment of a fine is annexed to a substantive sentence of imprisonment and the person undergoing the sentence is after its execution to undergo a further substantive sentence or further substantive sentences of imprisonment, effect shall not be given to the award of imprisonment in default of payment of the fine until the person has undergone the further sentence or sentences.

430. Return of warrant on execution of sentence:- When a sentence has been fully executed, the officer executing it shall return the warrant to the Court from which it is issued, with an endorsement under his hand certifying the manner in which the sentence has been executed.

431. Money ordered to be paid recoverable as a fine:- Any money (other than a fine) payable by virtue of any order made under this Code, and the method of recovery of which is not otherwise expressly provided for, shall be recoverable as if it were a fine:

Provided that Section 421 shall, in its application to an order under Section 359, by virtue of this section, be construed as if in the proviso to sub-section (1) of Section 421, after the words and figures "under Section 357", the words and figures "or an order for payment of costs under Section 359" had been inserted.

E – Suspension, remission and commutation of sentences

432. Power to suspend or remit sentences:- (1) When any person has been sentenced to punishment for an offence, the appropriate Government may, at any time, without conditions or upon any conditions which the person sentenced accepts, suspend the execution of his sentence or remit the whole or any part of the punishment to which he has been sentenced.

(2) Whenever an application is made to the appropriate Government for the suspension or remission of a sentence, the appropriate Government may require the presiding Judge of the Court before or by which the conviction was had or confirmed, to state his opinion as to whether the application should be granted or refused, together with his reasons for such opinion and also to forward with the statement of such opinion a certified copy of the record of the trial or of such record thereof as exists.

(3) If any condition on which a sentence has been suspended or remitted is, in the opinion of the appropriate Government, not fulfilled, the appropriate Government may, cancel the suspension or remission, and thereupon the person in whose favour the sentence has been suspended or remitted may, if at large, be arrested by any police officer, without warrant and remanded to undergo the unexpired portion of the sentence.

(4) The condition on which a sentence is suspended or remitted under this section may be one to be fulfilled by the person in whose favour the sentence is suspended or remitted, or one independent of his will.

(5) The appropriate Government may, by general rules or special orders, give directions as to the suspension of sentences and the conditions on which petitions should be presented and dealt with:

Provided that in the case of any sentence (other than a sentence of fine) passed on a male person above the age of eighteen years, no such petition by the person sentenced or by any other person on his behalf shall be entertained, unless the person sentenced is in jail, and —

(a) where such petition is made by the person sentenced, it is presented through the officer in charge of

the jail; or

(b) where such petition is made by any other person, it contains a declaration that the person sentenced is

in jail.

(6) The provisions of the above sub-sections shall also apply to any order passed by a Criminal Court under any section of this Code or of any other law, which restricts the liberty of any person or imposes any liability upon him or his property.

(7) In this section and in Section 433, the expression “appropriate Government” means,—

(a) in cases where the sentence is for an offence against, or the order referred to in sub-section (6) is

passed under, any law relating to a matter to which the executive power of the Union extends, the Central

Government;

(b) in other cases, the Government of the State within which the offender is sentenced or the said order is passed.

E – Suspension, remission and commutation of sentences

433. Power to commute sentence:- The appropriate Government may,

without the consent of the person sentenced, commute —

(a) a sentence of death, for any other punishment provided by the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860);

(b) a sentence of imprisonment for life, for imprisonment for a term not exceeding fourteen years or for fine;

(c) a sentence of rigorous imprisonment, for simple imprisonment for any term to which that person might have been sentenced, or for fine;

(d) a sentence of simple imprisonment, or fine.

433A. Restriction on powers of remission or commutation in certain cases:-

Notwithstanding anything contained in Section 432, where a sentence of imprisonment for life is imposed on conviction of a person for an offence for which death is one of the punishments provided by law, or where a sentence of death imposed on a person has been commuted under Section 433 into one of imprisonment for life, such person shall not be released from prison unless he had served at least fourteen years of imprisonment.

434. Concurrent power of Central Government in case of death sentences:-

The powers conferred by Sections 432 and 433 upon the State Government may, in the case of sentences of death, also exercised by the Central Government.

435. State Government to act after consultation with Central Government in certain cases:-

(1) The powers conferred by Sections 432 and 433 upon the State Government to remit or commute a sentence, in any case where the sentence is for an offence —

(a) which was investigated by the Delhi Special Police Establishment constituted under the Delhi Special

Police Establishment Act, 1946, (25 of 1946), or by any other agency empowered to make investigation into

an offence under any Central Act other than this Code, or

(b) which involved the misappropriation or destruction of, or damage to, any property belonging to the

Central Government, or

(c) which was committed by a person in the service of the Central Government while acting or purporting

to act in the discharge of his official duty,
shall not be exercised by the State Government except after consultation with
the Central Government.

(2) No order of suspension, remission or commutation of sentences passed by
the State Government in relation to a person, who has been convicted of
offences, some of which relate to matters to which the executive power of the
Union extends, and who has been sentenced to separate terms of
imprisonment which are to run concurrently, shall have effect unless an order
for the suspension, remission or commutation, as the case may be, of such
sentences has also been made by the Central Government in relation to the
offences committed by such person with regard to matters to which the
executive power of the Union extends.

CHAPTER XXXIII : PROVISIONS AS TO BAIL AND BONDS

436. In what cases bail to be taken:-—(1) When any person other than a
person accused of a non-bailable offence is arrested or detained without
warrant by an officer in charge of a police station, or appears or is brought
before a Court, and is prepared at any time while in the custody of such officer
or at any stage of the proceeding before such Court to give bail, such person
shall be released on bail:

Provided that such officer or Court, if he or it thinks fit, may, instead of taking
bail from such person, discharge him on his executing a bond without sureties
for his appearance as hereinafter provided:-

Provided further that nothing in this section shall be deemed to affect the
provisions of sub-section (3) of Section 116 or Section 446A.

(2) Notwithstanding anything contained in sub-section (1), where a person has
failed to comply with the conditions of the bail bond as regards the time and
place of attendance, the Court may refuse to release him on bail, when on a
subsequent occasion in the same case he appears before the Court or is
brought in custody and any such refusal shall be without prejudice to the
powers of the Court to call upon any person bound by such bond to pay the
penalty thereof under Section 446.

STATE AMENDMENTS

Uttar Pradesh:- In sub-section, in first proviso for the word “discharge” the
word “release” shall be substituted – I.P Act 1 of 1984 w.e.f. 1-5-1984.

437. When bail may be taken in case of non bailable offence:- (1)
When any person accused of, or suspected of, the commission of any non-

bailable offence is arrested or detained without warrant by an officer-in-charge of a police station or appears or is brought before a Court other than the High Court or Court of session, he may be released on bail, but-

(i) such person shall not be so released if there appears reasonable grounds for believing that he has

been guilty of an offence punishable with death or imprisonment for life;

(ii) such person shall not be so released if such offence is a cognizable offence and he has been

previously convicted of an offence punishable with death, imprisonment for life or imprisonment for seven

years or more, or he had been previously convicted on two or more occasions of a non-bailable and

cognizable offence:

Provided that the Court may direct that a person referred to in clause (1) of clause (ii) be released on bail if such person is under the age of sixteen years or is a woman or is sick or infirm:

Provided further that the Court may also direct that a person referred to in clause (ii) be released on bail if it is satisfied that it is just and proper so to do for any other special reason:

Provided also that the mere fact that an accused person may be required for being identified by witnesses during investigation shall not be sufficient ground for refusing to grant bail if he is otherwise entitled to be released on bail and gives an undertaking that he shall comply with such directions as may be given by the Court.

(2) If it appears to such officer or Court at any stage of the investigation, inquiry or trial, as the case may be, that there are no reasonable grounds for believing that the accused has committed a non-bailable offence, but there are sufficient grounds for further inquiry into his guilt, the accused shall, subject to the provisions of Section 446A and pending such inquiry, be released on bail, or, at the discretion of such officer or Court, on the execution by him of a bond without sureties for his appearance as hereinafter provided.

(3) When a person accused or suspected of the commission of an offence punishable with imprisonment which may extend to seven years or more or of

an offence under Chapter VI, Chapter XVI or Chapter XVII of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860) or abatement of, or conspiracy or attempt to commit, any such offence, is released on bail under sub-section (1), the Court may impose any condition which the Court considers necessary,-

(a) in order to ensure that such person shall attend in accordance with the conditions of the bond

executed under this Chapter, or

(b) in order to ensure that such person shall not commit an offence similar to the offence of which he is

accused or of the commission of which he is suspected, or

(c) otherwise in the interests of Justice.

(4) An officer or a Court releasing any person on bail under sub-section (1) or sub-section (2), shall record in writing his or its reasons or special reasons, for so doing.

(5) Any Court which has released a person on bail under sub-section (1) or sub-section (2), may, if it considers it necessary so to do, direct that such person be arrested and commit him to custody.

(6) If, in any case triable by a Magistrate, the trial of a person accused of any non-bailable offence is not concluded within a period of sixty days from the first date fixed for taking evidence in the case, such person shall, if he is in custody during the whole of the said period, be released on bail to the satisfaction of the Magistrate, unless for reasons to be recorded in writing, the Magistrate otherwise directs.

(7) If, at any time, after the conclusion of the trial of a person accused of a non-bailable offence and before judgement is delivered, the Court is of opinion that there are reasonable grounds for believing that the accused is not guilty of any such offence, it shall release the accused, if he is in custody, on the execution by him of a bond without sureties for his appearance to hear judgement delivered.

CASE LAW

Guiding factors for granting or refusing bail. MR 1979 SC 1360 = M9 Cr LJ 1036 = i 984 (3) SCC 555 = 1984 Cr. LJ 1211.

STATE AMENDMENT

Punjab – In Sec. 437, after sub-sec. (7), the following sub-sec (8) shall be added, namely –

“(8) Before releasing the accused on bail under sub-section (1) or sub-section (2), the Court shall give the prosecution a reasonable opportunity to show cause against such release.” Punj: Act 22 of 1983, w.e.f. 27-6-1983.

Union Territory of Chandigarh – Same as in Punjab.

438. Direction for grant of bail to person apprehending arrest:—(1) When any person has reason to believe that he may be arrested on an accusation of having committed a non-bailable offence, he may apply to the High Court or the Court of Sessions for a direction under this section, and that Court may, if it thinks fit, direct that in the event of such arrest, he shall be released on bail.

(2) When the High Court or the Court of Sessions makes a direction under sub-section (1), it may include such conditions in such direction in the light of the facts of the particular case, as it may think fit, including-

(i) a condition that the person shall make himself available for interrogation by a police officer as and

when required;

(ii) a condition that the person shall not, directly or indirectly, make any inducement, threat or promise

to any person acquainted with the facts of the case so as to dissuade him from disclosing such facts to the

Court or to any police officer;

(iii) a condition that the person shall not leave India without the previous permission of the Court;

(iv) such other condition as may be imposed under sub-section (3) of section 437, as if the bail were

granted under that section.

(2) If such person is thereafter arrested without warrant by an officer in charge of a police station on such

accusation, and is prepared either at the time of arrest or at any time while in the custody of such officer to

give bail, he shall be released on bail, and if a Magistrate taking cognizance of such offence decides that a

warrant should be issued in the first instance against that person, he shall issue a bailable warrant in

confirmity with the direction of the Court under sub-section (1).

STATE AMENDMENTS

Maharashtra:- Substitute the following section for section 438:-

“438 Direction for grant of bail to person apprehending arrest:– (1) When any person has reason to believe that he may be arrested on an accusation of having committed a non-bailable offence, he may apply to the High Court or the Court of sessions for a direction under this section that in the event of such arrest, he shall be released on bail, and that Court may, after taking into consideration, inter alia, the following factors:-

(i) the nature and gravity or seriousness of the accusation as apprehended by the applicant;

(ii) the antecedents of the applicant including the fact as to whether he has, on conviction by a Court,

previously undergone imprisonment for a term in respect of any cognizable offence;

(iii) the likely object of the accusation to humiliate or malign the reputation of the applicant by

having him so arrested, and

(iv) the possibility of the applicant, if granted anticipatory bail, fleeing from justice;

either reject the application forthwith or issue an interim order for the grant of anticipatory bail:

Provided that, where the High Court or as the case may be, the Court of Sessions, has not passed any interim order under this sub-section or has rejected the application for grant of anticipatory bail, it shall be open to an

officer in charge of a police station to arrest, without warrant the applicant on the basis of the accusation apprehended in such application.

(2) Where the High Court or, as the case may be, the Court of Session, considers it expedient to issue an interim order to grant anticipatory bail under sub-section (1) the Court shall indicate therein the date, on which the application for grant of, anticipatory bail shall be finally heard for passing an order thereon, as the Court may deem fit and if the Court passes any order granting anticipatory bail, such order shall include inter alia the following conditions, namely:-

(i) that the applicant shall make himself available for interrogation by a police officer as and when required;

(ii) that the applicant shall not, directly or indirectly, make any inducement, threat or promise to any person

acquainted with the facts of the accusation against him so as to dissuade him from disclosing such facts to

the Court or to any police officer;

(iii) that the applicant shall not leave India without the previous permission of the Court; and

(iv) such other condition as may be imposed under sub- section (3) of Section 437 as if the bail was

granted under that section.

(3) Where the Court grants an interim order under sub-section (1), it shall forthwith cause a notice, being not less than seven days' notice, together with a copy of such order to be served on the Public Prosecutor and the Commissioner of Police, or as the case may be, the concerned Superintendent of Police, with a view to give the Public Prosecutor a reasonable opportunity of being heard when the application shall be finally heard by the Court.

(4) The presence of the applicant seeking anticipatory bail shall be obligatory at the time of final hearing of the application and passing of final order by the Court if on an application made to it by the Public Prosecutor, the Court considers such presence necessary in the interest of Justice.

(5) On the date indicated in the interim order under sub-section (2), the Court shall hear the Public Prosecutor and the applicant and after due consideration of their contentions, it may either confirm, modify or cancel the interim order made under sub-section (1)" Maharashtra Act XXIV of 1993.

Orissa the following proviso after sub-section (I):-

"Provided that where the apprehended accusation relates to an offence punishable with death imprisonment for life or imprisonment for a term of not less than seven years, no final order shall be made on such application without giving the State notice to present its case". Orissa Act 11 of 1988, w.e.f 22-7-1988.

Uttar Pradesh :- Section 438 shall be omitted. – U.P. Act 16 of 1976, w.e.f. 1-5-1976.

West Bengal :- Substitute the following, for sub-section. (I):-

"(1) (a) When any person has reason to believe that he may be arrested on an accusation of having committed a non-bailable offence, he may apply to the High Court or the Court of Sessions for a direction under this section that in the event of such arrest, he shall be released on bail:

Provided that the mere fact that a person has applied to the High Court or the Court of sessions for a direction under this section shall not, in the absence of any order by that Court, be a bar to the apprehension of such person, or the detention of such person in custody, by an officer in charge of a police station.

(b) The High Court or the Court of Sessions, as the case may be, shall dispose of an application for a direction under this sub-section within thirty days of the date of such application:

Provided that where the apprehended accusation relates to an offence punishable with death, imprisonment for life or imprisonment for a term of not less than seven years, no final order shall be made on such application without giving the State not less than seven days' notice to present its case.

(c) If any person is arrested and detained in custody by an officer in charge of a police station before the disposal of the application of such person for a direction under " sub-section, the release of such person on bail by a Court having jurisdiction pending such be subject to the provision of section 437.

(IA) The provisions of sub-section (1) shall have effect notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained elsewhere in this Act or in any judgement, decree or any Court, Tribunal or other Authority." W.B. Act 25 of 1990.

439. Special powers of High Court or Court of Sessions regarding bail:

(1) A High Court or Court of Sessions may direct,-

(a) that any person accused of an offence and in custody be released on bail, and if the offence is of the

nature specified in sub-section (3) of Section 437, may impose any condition which it considers necessary for

the purposes mentioned in that sub-section;

(b) that any condition imposed by a Magistrate when releasing any person on bail be set aside or modified:

Provided that the High Court or the Court of Sessions shall, before granting bail to a person who is accused of an offence which is triable exclusively by the Court of Sessions or which, though not so triable, is punishable with imprisonment for life, give notice of the application for bail to the Public Prosecutor unless it is, for reasons to be recorded in writing, of opinion that it is not practicable to give such notice.

(2) A High Court or Court of Sessions may direct that any person who has been released on bail under this chapter be arrested and commit him to custody.

STATE AMENDMENTS

Punjab:- After sec. 439 the following shall be inserted, namely,-

“439 A. Notwithstanding anything contained in this Code, no person-

(a) who, being accused or suspected of committing an offence under any of the following sections namely – Sections 120-B, 121, 121-A, 122, 123, 134-A, 153-A, 302, 307, 326, 333, 363, 364, 365, 367, 368, 392, 394, 395, 396, 412, 431, 436, 449 and 450 of the Indian Penal Code, 1860, Sections 3,4,5 and 6 of the Explosive Substances Act, 1908, and Sections 25,26,27,28,29,30 and 31 of the Arms Act, 1959, is arrested or appears or is brought before a Court;

OR

(b) who, having any reason to believe that he may be arrested on accusation of committing an offence as specified in Clause (a), has applied to the High Court or the Court of Session for a direction for his release on bail in the event of his arrest, shall be released on bail or, as the case may be, directed to be released on bail, except on one or more of the following grounds, namely:-

- (i) that the Court including the High Court or the Court of Session for reasons to be recorded in writing is satisfied that there are reasonable grounds for believing that such person is not guilty of any offence specified in Clause (a);
- (ii) that such person is under the age of sixteen years or a woman or a sick or an infirm person;
- (iii) that the Court including the High Court or the Court of Session for reasons to be recorded in writing is satisfied that there are exceptional and sufficient grounds to release or direct the release of the accused on bail".
Punjab Act, 22 of 1983, w.e.f 27-6-1993.

Union Territory of Chandigarh :- Same as in Punjab.

Tripura :- Insert Section 439A, after Section 439.

"439A. Power to grant bail :- Notwithstanding anything contained in this Code, no person-

(a) who being accused of or suspected of committing an offence under Sections 120B, 121, 121A, 122, 123, 124A, 153A, 302, 303, 304, 307, 326, 333, 364, 365, 366, 366A, 366B, 367, 368, 376, 386, 387, 392, 394, 395, 396, 397, 399, 412, 436, 449 and 450 of the Indian Penal Code 1860 (45 of 1860) or Sections 25, 26, 27, and 28 of the Arms Act, 1959 (54 of 1959) or Sections 3, 4, 5 and 6 of the Explosives Substances Act, 1908 (VI of 1908), is arrested or appears or is brought before a Court;

OR

(b) who having any reason to believe that he may be arrested on an accusation of committing an offence as specified in clause (a) has applied to the High Court or Court of Sessions for a direction for his release on bail in the event of his arrest,

shall be released on bail or, as the case may be, directed to be released on bail except on one or more of the following grounds namely-

- (i) that the Court including the High Court or the Court of Sessions, for reasons to be recorded in writing, is satisfied that there are reasonable grounds for believing that such person is not guilty of any offence specified in clause (a);
- (ii) that such person is under the age of sixteen years or any woman or any sick or infirm person;

(iii) that the Court including the High Court or the Court of Session, for reasons to be recorded in writing, is satisfied that there are exceptional and sufficient grounds to release or direct the release of the accused on bail.”
Punjab Act 22 of 1983, w.e.f 27-6-1983.

Union Territory of Chandigarh:- Same as in Punjab.

Tripura: Insert Section 439A, after Section 439.

“439A. Power to grant bail:- Notwithstanding anything contained in this Code, no person-

(a) who, being accused of or suspended of committing an offence under sections 120B, 121, 121A, 123, 124A, 153A, 302, 303, 304, 307, 326, 333, 364, 365, 366, 366A, 366B, 367, 368, 376, 386, 392, 394, 395, 396, 397, 399, 412, 436, 449 and 450 of the Indian Penal Code 1860 (45 of 1860) or sections 25,26,27 and 28 of the Arms Act, 1959 (54 of 1959) or sections 3,4,5 and 6 of the Explosives Substances Act, 1908 (VI of 1908), is arrested or appears or is brought before a Court;

OR

(b) who, having any reason to believe that he may be arrested on an accusation of committing an offence as specified in clause (a) has applied to the High Court or Court of Sessions for a direction for his release on bail in the event of his arrest,

shall be released on bail or, as the case may be, directed to be released on bail, except on one or more of the following grounds namely-

(i) that the Court including the High Court or the Court of Sessions, for reasons to be recorded in

writing, is satisfied that there are reasonable grounds for believing that such person is not guilty of any

offence specified in clause (a);

(ii) that such person is under the age of sixteen years or any woman or any sick or infirm person;

(iii) that the Court including the High Court or the Court of Session, for reasons to be recorded in

writing, is satisfied that there are exceptional and sufficient grounds to release or direct the release of the

accused on bail." Tripura Act 6 of 1992, w.e.f. 29-7-1992.

440. Amount of bond and reduction thereof: – (1) The amount of every bond executed under this chapter shall be fixed with due regard to the circumstances of the case, and shall not be excessive.

(2) The High Court or the Court of Sessions may direct that the bail required by a police officer or Magistrate be reduced.

441. Bond of accused and sureties:-(1) Before any person is released on bail or released on his own bond, a bond for such sum of money as the police officer or Court, as the case may be, thinks sufficient shall be executed by such person, and, when he is released on bail, by one or more sufficient sureties conditioned that such person shall attend at the time and place mentioned in the bond, and shall continue so to attend until otherwise directed by the police officer or Court, as the case may be.

(2) Where any condition is imposed for the release of any person on bail, the bond shall also contain that condition.

(3) If the case so requires, the bond shall also bind the person released on bail to appear when called upon at the High Court, Court of Sessions or other Court to answer the charge.

(4) For the purpose of determining whether the sureties are fit or sufficient, the Court may accept affidavits in proof of the facts contained therein relating to the sufficiency or fitness of the sureties, or, if it considers necessary, may either hold an enquiry itself or cause an inquiry to be made by a Magistrate subordinate to the Court, as to such sufficiency or fitness.

442. Discharge from custody: (1) As soon as the bond has been executed, the person for whose appearance it has been executed shall be released; and when he is in jail, the court admitting him to bail shall issue an order of release to the officer in charge of the jail, and such officer on receipt of the orders shall release him.

(2) Nothing in this section, Section 436 or Section 437, shall be deemed to require the release of any person liable to be detained for some matter other than that in respect of which the bond was executed.

443. Power to order sufficient bail when that first taken is insufficient :-

If, through mistake, fraud or otherwise, insufficient sureties have been accepted, or if they afterwards become insufficient the Court may issue a warrant of arrest directing that the person released on bail be brought before it and may order him to find sufficient sureties, and, on his failing so to do, may commit him to jail.

444. Discharge of sureties:-(1) All or any sureties for the attendance and appearance of a person released on bail may at any time apply to a Magistrate to discharge the bond, either wholly or so far as relates to the applicants.

(2) On such application being made the Magistrate shall issue his warrant of arrest directing that the person so released be brought before him.

(3) On the appearance of such person pursuant to the warrant, or on his voluntary surrender, the Magistrate shall direct the bond to be discharged either wholly or so far as relates to the applicants, and shall call upon such person to find other sufficient sureties, and, if he fails to do so, may commit him to jail.

445. Deposit instead of recognisance:- When any person is required by any Court or officer to execute a bond with or without sureties, such Court or officer may, except in the case of a bond for good behaviour, permit him to deposit a sum of money or Government promissory note to such amount as the Court or officer may fix, in lieu of executing such bond.

446. Procedure when bond has been forfeited:-(1) Where a bond under this Code is for appearance, or for production of property, before a Court and it is proved to the satisfaction of that Court, or of any Court to which the case has subsequently been transferred, that the bond has been forfeited, or where, in respect of any other bond under this Code, it is proved to the satisfaction of the Court by which the bond was taken or of any Court to which the case has subsequently been transferred, or of the Court of any Magistrate of the first class, that the bond has been forfeited,

the Court shall record the grounds of such proof, and may call upon any person bound by such bond to pay the penalty thereof, or to show cause why it should not be paid.

Explanation:- A condition in a bond for appearance, or for production of property, before a Court shall be construed as including a condition for appearance, or as the case may be, for production of property, before any Court to which the case may subsequently be transferred.

(2) If sufficient cause is not shown and the penalty is not paid, the Court may proceed to recover the same as if such penalty were a fine imposed by it under this Code:

Provided that where such penalty is not paid and cannot be recovered in the manner aforesaid, the person so bound as Surety shall be liable, by order of the Court ordering the recovery of the penalty, to imprisonment in civil jail for a term which may extend to six months.

(3) The Court may, as its discretion, remit any portion of the penalty mentioned and enforce payment in part only.

(4) Where a surety to a bond dies before the bond is forfeited, his estate shall be discharged from all liability in respect of the bond.

(5) Where any person who has furnished security under section 106 or section 117 or section 360 is convicted of an offence the commission of which constitutes a breach of the conditions of his bond, or of a bond executed in lieu of his bond under Section 448, a certified copy of the judgement of the Court by which he was convicted of such offence may be used as evidence in proceedings under this section against his surety or sureties, and, if such certified copy is so used, the Court shall presume that such offence was committed by him unless the contrary is proved.

446A. Cancellation of bond and bail bond: Without prejudice to the provisions of Section 446, where a bond under this Code is for appearance of a person in a case and it is forfeited for breach of a condition,-

(a) the bond executed by such person as well as the bond, if any, executed by one or more of his

sureties in that case shall stand cancelled; and

(b) thereafter no such person shall be released only on his own bond in that case, if the Police Officer

or the Court, as the case may be, for appearance before whom the bond was executed, is, satisfied that

there was no sufficient cause for the failure of the person bound by the bond to comply with its

condition:

Provided that subject to any other provisions of this code he may be released in that case upon the execution of a fresh personal bond for such sum of money and bond by one or more of such sureties as the Police Officer or the Court, as the case may be, thinks sufficient.

447. Procedure in case of insolvency of death of surety or when a bond is forfeited:- When any surety to a bond under this Code becomes insolvent or dies, or when any bond is forfeited under the provisions of Section 446, the Court by whose order such bond was taken, or Magistrate of the first class, may order the person from whom such security was demanded to furnish fresh securities in accordance with the directions of the original order, and, if such security is not furnished, such Court or Magistrate may proceed as if there had been a default in complying with such original Order.

448. Bond required from minor:- When the person required by any Court, or officer to execute a bond is a minor, such Court or officer may accept, in lieu thereof, bond executed by a surety or sureties only.

449. Appeal from orders under Section 446:- All orders passed under Section 446 shall be appealable-

- (i) in the case of an order made by a Magistrate, to the Sessions-Judge;
- (ii) in the case of an order made by a Court of Sessions, to the Court to which an appeal lies from an order made by such Court.

450. Power to direct levy of amount due on certain recognizances:- The High Court or Court of Sessions may direct any Magistrate to levy the amount due on a bond for appearance or attendance at such High Court or Court of Sessions.

CHAPTER XXXIV : DISPOSAL OF PROPERTY

451. Order for custody and disposal of property pending trial in certain cases:- When any property is produced before any Criminal Court during any inquiry or trial, the Court may make such order as it thinks fit for the proper custody of such property pending the conclusion of the inquiry or trial, and, if the property is subject to speedy and natural decay, or if it is otherwise expedient so to do, the Court may, after recording such evidence as it thinks necessary, order it to be sold or otherwise disposed of.

Explanation:- For the purposes of this section, "property" includes:-

- (a) property of any kind or document which is produced before the Court or which is in its custody,
- (b) any property regarding which an offence appears to have been committed or which appears to have

been used for the commission of any offence.

452. Order for disposal of property at conclusion of trial:- (1) When an inquiry or trial in any Criminal Court is concluded, the Court may make such order as it thinks fit for the disposal, by destruction, confiscation, or delivery to any person claiming to be entitled to possession thereof or otherwise, of any property or document produced before it or in its custody, or regarding which any offence appears to have been committed, or which has been used for the commission of any offence.

(2) An order may be made under sub-section (1) for the delivery of any property to any person claiming to be entitled to the possession thereof, without any condition or on condition that he executes a bond, with or without securities, to the satisfaction of the Court, engaging to restore such property to the Court if the order made under sub-section (1) is modified or set aside on appeal or revision.

(3) A Court of Session may, instead of itself making an order under sub-section (1), direct the property to be delivered to the Chief Judicial Magistrate, who shall thereupon deal with it in the manner provided in section 457, 458 and 459.

(4) Except where the property is livestock or is subject to speedy and natural decay, or where a bond has been executed in pursuance of sub-sec. (2), an order made under sub-sec. (1) shall not be carried out for two months, or when an appeal is presented, until such appeal has been disposed of.

(5) In this section, the term “property” includes, in the case of property regarding which an offence appears to have been committed, not only such property as has been originally in the possession or under the control of any party, but also any property into or for which the same may have, been converted or exchanged, and anything acquired by such conversion or exchange, whether immediately or otherwise.

453. Payment to innocent purchaser of money found on accused :- When any person is convicted of any offence which includes, or amounts to, theft or receiving stolen property, and it is proved that any other person bought the stolen property from him without knowing, or having reason to believe, that the same was stolen, and that any money has on his arrest been taken out of the possession of the convicted person, the Court may, on the application of such purchase and on the restitution of the stolen property to the person entitled to the possession thereof, order that out of such money a sum not exceeding the price paid by such purchase be delivered to him.

454. Appeal against orders under Section 452 or Section 453:-

(1) Any person aggrieved by an order made by a Court under Section 452 or Section 453, may appeal against it to the Court to which appeals ordinarily lie from convictions by the former Court.

(2) On such appeal, the Appellate Court may direct the order to be stayed pending disposal of the appeal, or may modify, alter or annul the order and make any further orders that may be just.

(3) The powers referred to in sub-section (2) may also be exercised by a Court of appeal confirmation or revision while dealing with the case in which the order referred to in sub-section (1) was made.

455. Destruction of libellous and other matter:- (1) On a conviction under Section 292, Section 293, Section 501 or Section 502 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860), the Court may order the destruction of all the copies of the thing in respect of which the conviction was had, and which arein the custody of the Court or remain in the possession or power of the person convicted.

(2) The Court may, in like manner, on a conviction under Section 272, Section 273, Section 274 or Section 275 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860), order the food, drink, drug or medical preparation in respect of which the conviction was had, to be destroyed.

456. Power to restore possession of immovable property:- (1) When a person is convicted of an offence Attended by criminal force or show of force or by criminal intimidation, and it appears to the Court that, by such force or show of force or intimidation, any person has been dispossessed of any immovable property, the Court may, if it thinks fit, order that possession of the same be restored to that person after evicting by force, if necessary, any other person who may be in possession of the property:

Provided that no such order shall be made by the Court more than one month after the date of the conviction.

(2) Where the Court trying the offence has not made an order under sub-section (1), the Court of appeal, confirmation or revision may, if it thinks fit, make such order while disposing of the appeal, reference or revision, as the case may be.

(3) Where an order has been made under sub- section (1), the provisions of Section 454 shall apply in relation thereto as they apply in relation to an order under Section 453.

(4) No order made in this section shall prejudice any right or interest to or in such immovable property which any person may be able to establish in a civil suit.

457. Procedure by police upon Seizure of property:- (1) Whenever the seizure of property by any police officer is reported to a Magistrate under the provisions of this Code, and such property is not produced before a Criminal Court during an inquiry or trial, the Magistrate may make such order as he thinks fit respecting the disposal of such property or the delivery of such property to the person entitled to the possession thereof, or if such person cannot be ascertained respecting the custody and production of such property. (2) If the person so entitled is known, the Magistrate may order the property to be delivered to him on such conditions (if any) as the Magistrate thinks fit and if such person is unknown, the Magistrate may detain it and shall in such case, issue a proclamation specifying the article of which such property consists, and requiring any person who may have a claim thereto, to appear before him and establish his claim within six months from the date of such proclamation.

458. Procedure where no claimant appears within six months.- (1) If no person within such period establish his claim to such property, and if the person in whose possession such property was found is unable to show that it was legally acquired by him, the Magistrate may, by order direct that such property shall be at the disposal of the State Government, and may be sold by that Government and the proceeds of such sale shall be dealt with in such manner as may be prescribed.

(2) An appeal shall lie against any such order to the Court to which appeals ordinarily lie from convictions by the Magistrate.

459. Power to sell perishable property.- If the person entitled to the possession of such property is unknown or absent and the property is subject to speedy and natural decay, or if the Magistrate to whom its seizure is reported is of opinion that its sale would be for the benefit of the owner, or that the value of such property is less than ten rupees, the Magistrate may at any time direct it to be sold, and the provisions of Sections 457 and 458 shall, as nearly as may be practicable, apply to the net proceeds of such sale.

CHAPTER XXXV : IRREGULAR PROCEEDINGS

460. Irregularities which do not vitiate proceedings.- If any Magistrate not empowered by law to do any of the following things, namely:-
(a) to issue a search-warrant under Section 94;

- (b) to order, under Section 155, the police to investigate an offence;
- (c) to hold an inquest under Section 176;
- (d) to issue process, under Section 187, for the apprehension of a person within his local jurisdiction who has committed an offence outside the limits of such jurisdiction;
- (e) to take cognizance of an offence under clause (a) or clause (b) of sub-section (1) of Section 190;
- (f) to make over a case under sub-section (2) of Section 192;
- (g) to tender a pardon under Section 306;
- (h) to recall a case and try it himself under Section 410; or
- (i) to sell property under Section 458 or Section 459, erroneously in good faith does that thing, his proceedings shall not be set aside merely on the ground of his not being so empowered.

461. Irregularities which vitiate proceedings:- If any Magistrate, not being empowered by law in this behalf, does any of the following things, namely:-

- (a) attaches and sells property under Section 83,
- (b) issues a search-warrant for a document, parcel or other things in the custody of a postal or telegraph authority;
- (c) demands security to keep the peace.,
- (d) demands security for good behaviour;
- (e) discharges a person lawfully bound to be of good behaviour;
- (f) cancels a bond to keep the peace;
- (g) makes an order for maintenance;
- (h) makes an order under Section 133 as to a local nuisance;
- (i) prohibits, under Section 143, the repetition continuance of a public nuisance;

- (j) makes an order under Part C or Part D of Chapter X;
- (k) takes cognizance of an offence under Clause (c) of sub-section (1) of Section 190;
- (l) tries an offender;
- (m) tries an offender summarily;
- (n) passes a sentence, under Section 325, on proceedings recorded by another Magistrate;
- (o) decides an appeal;
- (p) calls under Section 397, for proceedings; or
- (q) revises, an order passed under Section 446,
his proceedings shall be void.

462. Proceedings in wrong place:- No finding sentence or order of any Criminal Court shall be set aside merely on the ground that the inquiry, trial or other proceeding in the course of which it was arrived at or passed, took place in a wrong sessions division, district, sub-division or other local area, unless it appears that such error has in fact occasioned a failure of justice.

463. Non-compliance with provisions of Section 164 or Section 281:-(1) If any Court, before which a confession or other statement of an accused person recorded, or purporting to be recorded under Section 164 or Section 281, is tendered, or has been received, in evidence, finds that any of the provisions of either of such sections have not been complied with by the Magistrate recording the statement, it may, notwithstanding anything contained in Section 91 of the Indian Evidence Act, 1872 (1 of 1872), take evidence in regard to such non-compliance, and may, if satisfied that such non-compliance has not injured the accused in his defence on the merits and that he duly made the statement recorded, admit such statement.

(2) The provisions of this section apply to Courts of appeal, reference and revision.

464. Effect of omission to frame, or absence of, or error in, charge.-
(1)No finding sentence or order by a Court of competent jurisdiction shall be deemed invalid merely on the ground that no charge was framed or on the ground of any error, omission or irregularity in the charge including any misjoinder of charges, unless, in the opinion of the Court of appeal,

confirmation or revision, a failure of Justice has in fact been occasioned thereby.

(2) If the Court of appeal, confirmation or revision, is of opinion that a failure of justice has in fact been occasioned, it may —

(a) in the case of an omission to frame a charge, order that a charge be framed, and that the trial be

recommended from the point immediately after the framing of the charge;

(b) in the case of an error, omission or irregularity in the charge, direct a new trial to be had upon a charge

framed in whatever manner it thinks fit:

Provided that if the Court is of opinion that the facts of the case are such that no valid charge could be preferred against the accused in respect of the facts proved, it shall quash the conviction.

465. Finding or sentence when reversible by reason of

error, omission or irregularity:-(1) Subject to the provisions hereinbefore contained, no finding, sentence or order passed by a Court of competent Jurisdiction shall be reversed or altered by a Court of appeal, confirmation of revision on account of any error, omission or irregularity in the complaint, summons, warrant, proclamation, order judgement or other proceedings before or during trial or in any inquiry or other proceedings under this Code, or any error, or irregularity in any sanction for the prosecution unless in the opinion of that Court, a failure of justice has in fact been occasioned thereby.

(2) In determining whether any error, omission or irregularity in any proceeding under this Code, or any error or irregularity in any sanction for the prosecution has occasioned a failure of justice, the Court shall have regard to the fact whether the objection could and should have been raised at an earlier stage in the proceedings.

466. Defect or error not to make attachment unlawful :- No

attachment made under this Code shall be deemed unlawful, nor shall any person making the same be deemed to trespasser, on account of any defect or want of form in summons, conviction, writ of attachment or other proceedings relating thereto.

**CHAPTER XXXVI : LIMITATION FOR TAKING COGNIZANCE OF
CERTAIN OFFENCES**

467. Definitions:-For the purposes of this chapter unless the context otherwise requires, “period of limitation” means the period specified in Section 468 for taking cognizance of an offence.

468. Bar to taking cognizance after lapse of the period of limitation:-(1)Except as otherwise provided elsewhere in this Code, no Court shall take cognizance of an offence of the category specified in sub-section (2), after the expiry of the period of limitation.

(2) The period of limitation shall be :-

- (a) six months, if the offence is punishable with fine only;
- (b) one year, if the offence is punishable with imprisonment for a term not exceeding one year;
- (c) three years, if the offence is punishable with imprisonment for a term exceeding one year but not exceeding three years.

(3) For the purposes of this section, the period of limitation, in relation to offences which may be tried together, shall be determined with reference to the offence which is punishable with the more severe punishment or, as the case may be, the most severe punishment.

469. Commencement of the period of limitation:- (1)The period of limitation, in relation to an offender, shall commence –

- (a) on the date of the offence; or
- (b) where the commission of the offence was not known to the person aggrieved by the offence or to any police officer, the first day on which offence comes to the knowledge of such person or to any police officer, whichever is earlier; or
- (c) where it is not known by whom the offence committed, the first day on which the identity of the offender is known to the person aggrieved by the offence or to the police officer making investigation into the offence, whichever is earlier

(2) In computing the said period, the day from which such period is to be computed shall be excluded.

470. Exclusion of time in certain cases:- (1) In computing the period of limitation, the time during which any person has been prosecuting with due diligence another prosecution, whether in a Court of first instance or in a Court of appeal or revision, against the offender, shall be excluded:

Provided that no such exclusion shall be made unless the prosecution relates to the same facts and is prosecuted in good faith in a Court which from defect of jurisdiction or other cause of a like nature, is unable to entertain it.

(2) Where the institution of the prosecution in respect of an offence has been stayed by an injunction or order, then, in computing the period of limitation, the period of the continuance of the injunction or order, the day on which it was issued or made, and the day on which it was withdrawn, shall be excluded.

(3) Where notice of prosecution for an offence been given, or where, under any law for the time being, in force, the previous consent or sanction of the Government or any other authority is required for the institution of any prosecution for an offence, then, in computing the period of limitation, the period of such notice or, as the case be, the time required for obtaining such consent or sanction shall be excluded.

Explanation:- In computing the time required for obtaining the consent or sanction of the Government or any other authority, the date on which the application was made for obtaining the consent or sanction and the date of receipt of the order of the Government or other authority shall both be excluded.

(4) In computing the period of limitation, the time during which the offender,-

(a) has been absent from India or from any territory outside India which is under the

administration of the Central Government, or

(b) has avoided arrest by absconding or concealing himself,

shall be excluded.

471. Exclusion of date on which Court is closed:- Where the period of limitation expires on a day when the Court is closed, the Court may take cognizance on the day on which the Court reopens.

Explanation:- A Court shall be deemed to be closed on any day within the meaning of this section, if, during its normal working hours, it remains closed on that day.

472. Continuing offence:- In the case of a continuing offence, a fresh period of limitation shall begin to run at every moment of the time during which the offence continues.

473. Extension of period of limitation in certain cases:-

Notwithstanding anything contained in the foregoing provisions of this chapter, any court may take cognizance of an offence after the expiry of the period of limitation, if it is satisfied of the facts and in the circumstances of the case that the delay has been properly explained or that it is necessary so to do in the interests of justice.

CHAPTER XXXVII : MISCELLANEOUS

474. Trials before High Courts:- When an offence is tried by the High Court otherwise than under Section 407, it shall, in the trial of the offences, observe the same procedure as a Court of Sessions would observe if it were trying the case.

475. Delivery to commanding officers of persons liable to be tried by Court-martial :-(1)The Central Government may make rules, consistent with this Code and the Army Act, 1950 (46 of 1950), the Navy Act, 1957 (62 of 1957), and the Air Force Act, 1950 (45 of 1950), and any other law, relating to the Armed Forces of the Union, for the time being in force, as to cases in which persons subject to military, naval or air-force law, or such other law, shall be tried by a Court to which this Code applies, or by a Court martial; and when any person is brought before a Magistrate and charged with an offence for which he is liable to be tried either by a Court to which this Code applies or by a Court-martial, such Magistrate shall have regard to such rules, and shall in proper cases deliver him, together with a statement of the offence of which he is accused, to the commanding officer of the unit to which he belongs, or to the commanding officer of the nearest military, naval or air-force station, as the case may be, for the purpose of being tried by a Court-martial.

Explanation:- In this Section-

(a) “Unit” includes a regiment, corps, ship, detachment, group battalion or Company,

(b) “Court-Martial” includes any Tribunal with the powers similar to those of a Court-martial constituted under the relevant law applicable to the Armed Forces of the Union.

(2) Every Magistrate shall, on receiving a written application for that purpose by the commanding officer of any unit or body of soldiers, sailors or airmen stationed or employed at any such place, use his utmost endeavours to apprehend and secure any person accused of such offence.

(3) A High Court may, if it thinks fit, direct that a prisoner detained in any jail situate within the State be brought before a Court-martial for trial or to be examined touching any matter pending before the Court-martial.

476. Forms:- Subject to the power conferred by Article 227 of the Constitution, the forms set forth in the Second Schedule, with such variations as the circumstances of each case require, may be used for the respective purposes therein mentioned, and if used shall be sufficient.

477. Power of High Court to make rules:- (1) Every High Court may, with the previous approval of the State Government, make rules.

(a) as to the persons who may be permitted to act as petition writers in the Criminal Courts subordinate to it;

(b) regulating the issue of licences to such persons, the conduct of business by them, and the scale of fees to be charged by them;

(c) providing a penalty for a contravention of any of the rules so made and determining the authority by which such contravention may be investigated and the penalties imposed;

(d) any other matter which is required to be, or may be, prescribed.

(2) All rules made under this section shall be published in the Official Gazette.

478. Power to alter functions allocated to Executive Magistrate in certain cases:- If the Legislative Assembly of a State by a resolution so permits, the State Government may, after consultation with the High Court, by notification, direct that references in Sections 108, 109, 110, 145 and 147 to an Executive Magistrate shall be construed as references to a Judicial Magistrate of the first class.

STATE AMENDMENTS

Andaman and Nicobar Islands ; Dadra and Nagar Haveli,

Lakshadweep Islands :- In Section 478, the words "if the State Legislature by a resolution so requires" shall be omitted Regn. 1 of 1974, w.e.f. 30-3-1974.

Maharashtra - For the words "to an Executive Magistrate shall be construed", substitute the words "to an Executive Magistrate in the areas of

the State outside Greater Bombay shall be construed”, Maharashtra Act 1 of 1978, w.e.f. 15-4-1978.

479. Case in which Judge or Magistrate is personally interested:- No Judge or Magistrate shall, except with permission of the Court to which an appeal lies from Court, try or commit for trial any case to or in which he is a party, or personally interested, and no Judge or Magistrate shall hear an appeal from any judgement or order passed or made by himself.

Explanation:- A Judge or Magistrate shall not be deemed to be a party to, or personally interested in, any case by reason only that he is concerned therein in a public capacity, or by reason only that he has viewed the place in which an offence is alleged to have been committed, or other place in which any other transaction material to the case is alleged to have occurred, and made an inquiry in connection with the case.

480. Practising pleader not to sit as Magistrate in certain Courts:-

No pleader who practises in the Court of any Magistrate shall sit as a Magistrate in that Court or in any Court within the local jurisdiction of that Court.

STATE AMENDMENT

Karnataka :- After Section 480, the following new Section 480A shall be inserted-

“480A. Other powers of Magistrate..- Any Judicial Magistrate or Executive Magistrate shall be entitled to attest, verify or authenticate any document brought before him for the purpose of attestation, verification or authentication, as the case may be, and to affix seals thereon, as may be prescribed by any law for the time being in force.” Karnataka Act 35 of 1984.

481. Public servant concerned in sale not purchase or bid for property:- A public servant having any duty to perform in connection with the sale of any property under this Code shall not purchase or bid for the property.

482. Saying of inherent powers of High Court:- Nothing in this Code shall be deemed to limit or affect the inherent powers of the High Court to make such orders as may be necessary to give effect to any order under this Code, or to prevent abuse of the process of any Court or otherwise to secure the ends of justice.

483. Duty of High Court to exercise continuous superintendence over Courts of Judicial Magistrates:- Every High Court shall so exercise its superintendence over the Courts of Judicial Magistrates subordinate to it as to ensure that there is an expeditious and proper disposal of cases by such Magistrates.

484. Repeal and savings:- (1) The Code of Criminal Procedure, 1898 (5 of 1898), is hereby repealed.

(2) Notwithstanding such repeal-

(a) if, immediately before the date on which this Code comes into force, there is any appeal, application trial, inquiry or investigation pending then, such appeal, application, trial, inquiry or investigation shall be disposed of, continued, held or made, the case may be, in accordance with the provisions of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1898 (5 of 1898), as in force immediately before such commencement (hereinafter referred to as the old Code), as if this Code had not come into force: Provided that every inquiry under Chapter XVIII of the old Code, which is pending at the commencement of this Code, shall be dealt with and disposed of in accordance with the provisions of this Code;

(b) all notifications published, proclamations issued, powers conferred, forms prescribed, local jurisdictions defined, sentences passed and order rules and appointments, not being appointments as Special Magistrates, made under the old Code are which are in force immediately before the commencement of this Code, shall be deemed respectively, to have been published, issued, conferred, prescribed, defined, passed or made under the corresponding provisions of the Code;

(c) any sanction accorded or consent given under the old Code in pursuance of which no proceedings was commenced under that Code, shall be deemed to have been accorded or given under the corresponding provisions of this Code and proceedings may be commenced under this Code in pursuance of such sanction of consent;

(d) the provisions of the old Code shall continue to apply in relation to every prosecution against a Ruler within the meaning of Article 363 of the Constitution.

(3) Where the period prescribed for an application or other proceeding under the Old Code had expired on or before the commencement of this Code, nothing in this Code shall be construed as enabling any such application to be made or proceeding to be commenced under this Code by reason only of the fact that a longer period therefor is prescribed by this Code or provisions are made in this Code for the extension of time.

STATE AMENDMENT

Uttar Pradesh :- (1) In sub-section (2), after clause (d), the following clause shall be inserted.

“(e) the provisions of the United Provinces Borstal Act, 1938 (U.P. Act 7 of 1938), the United Provinces First Offenders Probation Act 1938 (U.P. Act 6 of 1938) and the Uttar Pradesh Children Act, 1951, (U.P. Act 1 of 1951) shall continue in force in the State of Uttar Pradesh until altered or repealed or amended by the competent Legislature or other competent authority, and accordingly, the provisions of Section 360 of this Code shall not apply to that State, and the provisions of Section 361 shall apply with the substitution of references to the Central Acts named therein by references to the corresponding Acts in force in that State.” U.P. Act 16 of 1976, w.e.f. 1-5-1976.

(2) In sub-section (2), clause (a), the following second proviso shall be inserted:-

“Provided further that the provisions of Section 326 of this Code as amended by the Code of Criminal Procedure (U.P. Amendment Act) Act, 1976 shall also apply to every trial pending in a Court of Sessions at the commencement of this Code and also pending at the commencement of the Code of Criminal Procedure (U.P. Amendment) Act, 1983.” U.P. Act 1 of 1984, w.e.f. 1-5-1984.

r offence, although he is not charged with it.

(3) When a person is charged with an offence, he may, be convicted of an attempt to commit such offence although the attempt is not separately charged.

(4) Nothing in this section shall be deemed to authorise a conviction of any minor offence where the conditions requisite for the initiation of proceedings in respect of that minor offence have not been satisfied.

THE INDIAN EVIDENCE ACT, 1872

Last updated:-13-3-2020

ARRANGEMENT OF SECTIONS

Preamble.

PART I

RELEVANCY OF FACTS

CHAPTER I. — PRELIMINARY

SECTIONS

1. Short title.

Extent.

Commencement of Act.

2. [Repealed.]

3. Interpretation-clause.

“Court”.

“Fact”.

“Relevant”.

“Facts in issue”.

“Document”.

“Evidence”.

“Proved”.

“Disproved”.

“Not proved”.

“India”.

4. “May Presume.”

“Shall presume.”

“Conclusive proof”.

CHAPTER II. —OF THE RELEVANCY OF FACTS

5. Evidence may be given of facts in issue and relevant facts.

6. Relevancy of facts forming part of same transaction.

7. Facts which are the occasion, cause or effect of facts in issue.

8. Motive, preparation and previous or subsequent conduct.

9. Facts necessary to explain or introduce relevant facts.

10. Things said or done by conspirator in reference to common design.

11. When facts not otherwise relevant become relevant.

12. In suits for damages, facts tending to enable Court to determine amount are relevant.

13. Facts relevant when right or custom is in question.

SECTIONS

14. Facts showing existence of state of mind, or of body, or bodily feeling.
15. Facts bearing on question whether act was accidental or intentional.
16. Existence of course of business when relevant.

ADMISSIONS

17. Admission defined.
18. Admission—
 - by party to proceeding or his agent;
 - by suitor in representative character;
 - by party interested in subject-matter;
 - by person from whom interest derived.
19. Admissions by persons whose position must be proved as against party to suit.
20. Admissions by persons expressly referred to by party to suit.
21. Proof of admissions against persons making them, and by or on their behalf.
22. When oral admissions as to contents of documents are relevant.
- 22A. When oral admission as to contents of electronic records are relevant.
23. Admissions in civil cases when relevant.
24. Confession caused by inducement, threat or promise, when irrelevant in criminal proceeding.
25. Confession to police-officer not to be proved.
26. Confession by accused while in custody of Police not to be proved against him.
27. How much of information received from accused may be proved.
28. Confession made after removal of impression caused by inducement, threat or promise, relevant.
29. Confession otherwise relevant not to become irrelevant because of promise of secrecy, etc.
30. Consideration of proved confession affecting person making it and others jointly under trial for same offence.
31. Admissions not conclusive proof, but may estop.

STATEMENTS BY PERSONS WHO CANNOT BE CALLED AS WITNESSES

32. Cases in which statement of relevant fact by person who is dead or cannot be found, etc., is relevant.
 - When it relates to cause of death;
 - or is made in course of business;
 - or against interest of maker;
 - or gives opinion as to public right or custom, or matters of general interest;
 - or relates to existence of relationship;
 - or is made in will or deed relating to family affairs;
 - or in document relating to transaction mentioned in section 13, clause (a);
 - or is made by several persons and expresses feelings relevant to matter in question.

SECTIONS

33. Relevancy of certain evidence for proving, in subsequent proceeding, the truth of facts therein stated.

STATEMENTS MADE UNDER SPECIAL CIRCUMSTANCES

34. Entries in books of account when relevant.
35. Relevancy of entry in public record made in performance of duty.
36. Relevancy of statements in maps, charts and plans.
37. Relevancy of statement as to fact of public nature contained in certain Acts or notifications.
38. Relevancy of statements as to any law contained in law-books.

HOW MUCH OF A STATEMENT IS TO BE PROVED

39. What evidence to be given when statement forms part of a conversation, document, electronic record, book or series of letters or papers.

JUDGMENTS OF COURTS OF JUSTICE WHEN RELEVANT

40. Previous judgments relevant to bar a second suit or trial.
41. Relevancy of certain judgments in probate, etc., jurisdiction.
42. Relevancy and effect of judgments, orders or decrees, other than those mentioned in section 41.
43. Judgments, etc., other than those mentioned in sections 40, 41 and 42, when relevant.
44. Fraud or collusion in obtaining judgment, or incompetency of Court, may be proved.

OPINIONS OF THIRD PERSONS WHEN RELEVANT

45. Opinions of experts.
- 45A. Opinion of Examiner of Electronic Evidence.
46. Facts bearing upon opinions of experts.
47. Opinion as to handwriting, when relevant.
- 47A. Opinion as to digital signature, when relevant.
48. Opinion as to existence of right or custom, when relevant.
49. Opinion as to usages, tenets, etc., when relevant.
50. Opinion on relationship, when relevant.
51. Grounds of opinion, when relevant.

CHARACTER WHEN RELEVANT

52. In civil cases character to prove conduct imputed, irrelevant.
53. In criminal cases previous good character relevant.
- 53A. Evidence of character or previous sexual experience not relevant in certain cases.
54. Previous bad character not relevant, except in reply.
55. Character as affecting damages.

PART II

ON PROOF

CHAPTER III.—FACTS WHICH NEED NOT BE PROVED

56. Fact judicially noticeable need not be proved.

SECTIONS

- 57. Facts of which Court must take judicial notice.
- 58. Facts admitted need not be proved.

CHAPTER IV.—OF ORAL EVIDENCE

- 59. Proof of facts by oral evidence.
- 60. Oral evidence must be direct.

CHAPTER V.— OF DOCUMENTARY EVIDENCE

- 61. Proof of contents of documents.
- 62. Primary evidence.
- 63. Secondary evidence.
- 64. Proof of documents by primary evidence.
- 65. Cases in which secondary evidence relating to documents may be given.
- 65A. Special provisions as to evidence relating to electronic record.
- 65B. Admissibility of electronic records.
- 66. Rules as to notice to produce.
- 67. Proof of signature and handwriting of person alleged to have signed or written document produced.
- 67A. Proof as to electronic signature.
- 68. Proof of execution of document required by law to be attested.
- 69. Proof where no attesting witness found.
- 70. Admission of execution by party to attested document.
- 71. Proof when attesting witness denies the execution.
- 72. Proof of document not required by law to be attested.
- 73. Comparison of signature, writing or seal with others admitted or proved.
- 73A. Proof as to verification of digital signature.

PUBLIC DOCUMENTS

- 74. Public documents.
- 75. Private documents.
- 76. Certified copies of public documents.
- 77. Proof of documents by production of certified copies.
- 78. Proof of other official documents.

PRESUMPTIONS AS TO DOCUMENTS

- 79. Presumption as to genuineness of certified copies.
- 80. Presumption as to documents produced as record of evidence.
- 81. Presumption as to Gazettes, newspapers, private Acts of Parliament and other documents.
- 81A. Presumption as to Gazettes in electronic forms.
- 82. Presumption as to document admissible in England without proof of seal or signature.

SECTIONS

83. Presumption as to maps or plans made by authority of Government.
84. Presumption as to collections of laws and reports of decisions.
85. Presumptions as to powers-of-attorney.
- 85A. Presumption as to electronic agreements.
- 85B. Presumption as to electronic records and electronic signatures.
- 85C. Presumption as to Electronic Signature Certificates.
86. Presumption as to certified copies of foreign judicial records.
87. Presumption as to books, maps and charts.
88. Presumption as to telegraphic messages.
- 88A. Presumption as to electronic messages.
89. Presumption as to due execution, etc., of documents not produced.
90. Presumption as to documents thirty years old.
- 90A. Presumption as to electronic records five years old.

CHAPTER VI.— OF THE EXCLUSION OF ORAL BY DOCUMENTARY EVIDENCE

91. Evidence of terms of contracts, grants and other dispositions of property reduced to form of document.
92. Exclusion of evidence of oral agreement.
93. Exclusion of evidence to explain or amend ambiguous document.
94. Exclusion of evidence against application of document to existing facts.
95. Evidence as to document unmeaning in reference to existing facts.
96. Evidence as to application of language which can apply to one only of several persons.
97. Evidence as to application of language to one of two sets of facts, to neither of which the whole correctly applies.
98. Evidence as to meaning of illegible characters, etc.
99. Who may give evidence of agreement varying terms of document.
100. Saving of provisions of Indian Succession Act relating to wills.

PART III

PRODUCTION AND EFFECT OF EVIDENCE

CHAPTER VII.— OF THE BURDEN OF PROOF

101. Burden of proof.
102. On whom burden of proof lies.
103. Burden of proof as to particular fact.
104. Burden of proving fact to be proved to make evidence admissible.
105. Burden of proving that case of accused comes within exceptions.

SECTIONS

106. Burden of proving fact especially within knowledge.
107. Burden of proving death of person known to have been alive within thirty years.
108. Burden of proving that person is alive who has not been heard of for seven years.
109. Burden of proof as to relationship in the cases of partners, landlord and tenant, principal and agent.
110. Burden of proof as to ownership.
111. Proof of good faith in transactions where one party is in relation of active confidence.
- 111A. Presumption as to certain offences.
112. Birth during marriage, conclusive proof of legitimacy.
113. Proof of cession of territory.
- 113A. Presumption as to abetment of suicide by a married woman.
- 113B. Presumption as to dowry death.
114. Court may presume existence of certain facts.
- 114A. Presumption as to absence of consent in certain prosecution for rape

CHAPTER VIII.—ESTOPPEL

115. Estoppel.
116. Estoppel of tenants and of licensee of person in possession.
117. Estoppel of acceptor of bill of exchange, bailee or licensee.

CHAPTER IX.—OF WITNESSES

118. Who may testify.
119. Witness unable to communicate verbally.
120. Parties to civil suit, and their wives or husbands. Husband or wife of person under criminal trial.
121. Judges and Magistrates.
122. Communications during marriage.
123. Evidence as to affairs of State.
124. Official communications.
125. Information as to commission of offences.
126. Professional communications.
127. Section 126 to apply to interpreters, etc.
128. Privilege not waived by volunteering evidence.
129. Confidential communications with legal advisers.
130. Production of title-deeds of witness not a party.
131. Production of documents or electronic records which another person, having possession, could refuse to produce.

SECTIONS

132. Witness not excused from answering on ground that answer will criminate.

Proviso.

133. Accomplice.

134. Number of witnesses.

CHAPTER X.—OF THE EXAMINATION OF WITNESSES

135. Order of production and examination of witnesses.

136. Judge to decide as to admissibility of evidence.

137. Examination-in-chief.

Cross-examination.

Re-examination.

138. Order of examinations.

Direction of re-examination.

139. Cross-examination of person called to produce a document.

140. Witnesses to character.

141. Leading questions.

142. When they must not be asked.

143. When they may be asked.

144. Evidence as to matters in writing.

145. Cross-examination as to previous statements in writing.

146. Questions lawful in cross-examination.

147. When witness to be compelled to answer.

148. Court to decide when question shall be asked and when witness compelled to answer.

149. Question not to be asked without reasonable grounds.

150. Procedure of Court in case of question being asked without reasonable grounds.

151. Indecent and scandalous questions.

152. Questions intended to insult or annoy.

153. Exclusion of evidence to contradict answers to questions testing veracity.

154. Question by party to his own witness.

155. Impeaching credit of witness.

156. Questions tending to corroborate evidence of relevant fact, admissible.

157. Former statements of witness may be proved to corroborate later testimony as to same fact.

158. What matters may be proved in connection with proved statement relevant under section 32 or 33.

SECTIONS

159. Refreshing memory.

When witness may use copy of document to refresh memory.

160. Testimony to facts stated in document mentioned in section 159.

161. Right of adverse party as to writing used to refresh memory.

162. Production of documents.

Translation of documents.

163. Giving, as evidence, of document called for and produced on notice.

164. Using, as evidence, of document production of which was refused on notice.

165. Judge's power to put questions or order production.

166. Power of jury or assessors to put questions.

CHAPTER XI.— OF IMPROPER ADMISSION AND REJECTION OF EVIDENCE

167. No new trial for improper admission or rejection of evidence.

THE SCHEDULE — [*Repealed.*]

THE INDIAN EVIDENCE ACT, 1872

ACT NO. 1 OF 1872¹

[15th March, 1872.]

Preamble.—WHEREAS it is expedient to consolidate, define and amend the law of Evidence; It is hereby enacted as follows: —

PART I

RELEVANCY OF FACTS

CHAPTER I.—PRELIMINARY

1. Short title.—This Act may be called the Indian Evidence Act, 1872.

Extent.—It extends to the whole of India ^{2[3***]} and applies to all judicial proceedings in or before any Court, including Courts-martial, ^{4[other than Courts-martial convened under the Army Act (44 & 45 Vict., c. 58)]} ^{5[the Naval Discipline Act [29 & 30 Vict., 109]; or} ^{6***} the Indian Navy (Discipline) Act, 1934 (34 of 1934),] ^{7[or the Air Force Act (7 Geo. 5, c. 51)]} but not to affidavits⁸ presented to any Court or officer, nor to proceedings before an arbitrator;

Commencement of Act.—And it shall come into force on the first day of September, 1872.

2. [Repeal of enactments].—*Rep. by the Repealing Act, 1938 (1 of 1938), s. 2 and Schedule.*

3. Interpretation-clause.—In this Act the following words and expressions are used in the following senses, unless a contrary intention appears from the context: —

“Court”.—“Court” includes all Judges⁹ and Magistrates¹⁰, and all persons, except arbitrators, legally authorised to take evidence.

“Fact”.—“Fact” means and includes—(1) anything, state of things, or relation of things, capable of being perceived by the senses;

(2) any mental condition of which any person is conscious.

Illustrations

(a) That there are certain objects arranged in a certain order in a certain place, is a fact.

(b) That a man heard or saw something, is a fact.

(c) That a man said certain words, is a fact.

(d) That a man holds a certain opinion, has a certain intention, acts in good faith or fraudulently, or uses a particular word in a particular sense, or is or was at a specified time conscious of a particular sensation, is a fact.

(e) That a man has a certain reputation, is a fact.

1. The Act has been extended to Goa, Daman and Diu by Reg. 11 of 1963, s. 3 and Schedule, extended to and brought into force in Dadra and Nagar Haveli by Reg. 6 of 1963, s. 2 and Schedule I (w.e.f. 1-7-1965) and to the whole of the Union territory of Lakshadweep by Reg. 8 of 1965 (w.e.f. 1-10-1967). The Act came into force in Pondicherry on 1-10-1963 vide Reg. 7 of 1963, s. 3 and Schedule I. The Act has been amended in West Bengal by West Bengal Act 20 of 1960 and in Tamil Nadu by Tamil Nadu Act 67 of 1979.

2. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Schedule, for “except Part B States”.

3. The words “except the State of Jammu and Kashmir” omitted by Act 34 of 2019, s. 95 and the Fifth Schedule (w.e.f. 31-10-2019).

3. Ins. by Act 18 of 1919, s. 2 and the First Schedule.

4. Ins. by Act 35 of 1934, s. 2 and the Schedule.

5. The words “that Act as modified by” Omitted by the A.O. 1950.

6. Ins. by Act 10 of 1927, s. 2 and the First Schedule.

7. As to practice relating to affidavits, See the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908 (Act 5 of 1908), s. 30 (c) and the First Schedule, Order XIX. See also the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (Act 2 of 1974), ss. 295 and 297.

8. Cf. the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908 (Act 5 of 1908), s. 2, the Indian Penal Code (Act 45 of 1860), s. 19; and for a definition of “District Judge”, the General Clauses Act, 1897 (10 of 1897), s. 3(17).

9. Cf. the General Clauses Act, 1897 (10 of 1897), s. 3(32) and the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (Act 2 of 1974).

“Relevant”. — One fact is said to be relevant to another when the one is connected with the other in any of the ways referred to in the provisions of this Act relating to the relevancy of facts.

“Facts in issue”. — The expression “facts in issue” means and includes—

any fact from which, either by itself or in connection with other facts, the existence, non-existence, nature or extent of any right, liability, or disability, asserted or denied in any suit or proceeding, necessarily follows.

Explanation.—Whenever, under the provisions of the law for the time being in force relating to Civil Procedure,¹ any Court records an issue of fact, the fact to be asserted or denied in the answer to such issue is a fact in issue.

Illustrations

A is accused of the murder of B.

At his trial the following facts may be in issue:—

That A caused B’s death;

That A intended to cause B’s death;

That A had received grave and sudden provocation from B;

That A, at the time of doing the act which caused B’s death, was, by reason of unsoundness of mind, incapable of knowing its nature.

“Document”. —“Document”² means any matter expressed or described upon any substance by means of letters, figures or marks, or by more than one of those means, intended to be used, or which may be used, for the purpose of recording that matter.

Illustrations

A writing³ is a document;

³Words printed lithographed or photographed are documents;

A map or plan is a document;

An inscription on a metal plate or stone is a document;

A caricature is a document.

“Evidence”. —“Evidence” means and includes —

(1) all statements which the Court permits or requires to be made before it by witnesses, in relation to matters of fact under inquiry;

such statements are called oral evidence;

(2)⁴[all documents including electronic records produced for the inspection of the Court;]

such documents are called documentary evidence.

“Proved”.—A fact is said to be proved when, after considering the matters before it, the Court either believes it to exist, or considers its existence so probable that a prudent man ought, under the circumstances of the particular case, to act upon the supposition that it exists.

“Disproved”.—A fact is said to be disproved when, after considering the matters before it, the Court either believes that it does not exist, or considers its non-existence so probable that a prudent man

1. See now the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908 (Act 5 of 1908); as to the settlement of issues, see Schedule I, order XIV.

2. Cf. the Indian Penal Code (Act 45 of 1860), s. 29 and the General Clauses Act, 1897 (10 of 1897), s. 3 (18).

3. Cf. definition of “writing” in the General Clauses Act, 1897 (10 of 1897), s. 3(65).

4. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule, for the words “all documents produced for the inspection of the Court” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

ought, under the circumstances of the particular case, to act upon the supposition that it does not exist.

“Not proved”. — A fact is said not to be proved when it is neither proved nor disproved.

¹[**“India”.** — “India” means the territory of India excluding the State of Jammu and Kashmir.]

²[the expressions “Certifying Authority”, ³[electronic signature], ⁴[(Electronic Signature Certificate], “electronic form”, “electronic records”, “information”, “secure electronic record”, “secure digital signature” and “subscriber” shall have the meanings respectively assigned to them in the Information Technology Act, 2000 (21 of 2000).]

4. “May presume”.—Whenever it is provided by this Act that the Court may presume a fact, it may either regard such fact as proved, unless and until it is disproved, or may call for proof of it.

“Shall presume”.—Whenever it is directed by this Act that the Court shall presume a fact, it shall regard such fact as proved, unless and until it is disproved.

“Conclusive proof”.—When one fact is declared by this Act to be conclusive proof of another, the Court shall, on proof of the one fact, regard the other as proved, and shall not allow evidence to be given for the purpose of disproving it.

CHAPTER II. — OF THE RELEVANCY OF FACTS

5. Evidence may be given of facts in issue and relevant facts. —Evidence may be given in any suit or proceeding of the existence of non-existence of every fact in issue and of such other facts as are hereinafter declared to be relevant, and of no others.

Explanation.—This section shall not enable any person to give evidence of a fact which he is disentitled to prove by any provision of the law for the time being in force relating to Civil Procedure⁵.

Illustrations

(a) A is tried for the murder of B by beating him with a club with the intention of causing his death.

At A’s trial the following facts are in issue:—

A’s beating B with the club;

A’s causing B’s death by such beating;

A’s intention to cause B’s death.

(b) A suitor does not bring with him, and have in readiness for production at the first hearing of the case, a bond on which he relies. This section does not enable him to produce the bond or prove its contents at a subsequent stage of the proceedings, otherwise than in accordance with the conditions prescribed by the Code of Civil Procedure⁵.

6. Relevancy of facts forming part of same transaction.—Facts which, though not in issue, are so connected with a fact in issue as to form part of the same transaction, are relevant, whether they occurred at the same time and place or at different times and places.

Illustrations

(a) A is accused of the murder of B by beating him. Whatever was said or done by A or B or the by-standers at the beating, or so shortly before or after it as to form part of the transaction, is a relevant fact.

1. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Schedule, for the definitions of “State” and “States” which were ins. by the A.O. 1950.

2. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule, (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

3. Subs. by Act 10 of 2009, s. 52, for “digital signature” (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

4. Subs. by s. 52, *ibid.*, for “Digital Signature Certificate” (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

5. See now the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908 (Act 5 of 1908).

(b) A is accused of waging war against the ¹[Government of India] by taking part in an armed insurrection in which property is destroyed, troops are attacked and gaols are broken open. The occurrence of these facts is relevant, as forming part of the general transaction, though A may not have been present at all of them.

(c) A sues B for a libel contained in a letter forming part of a correspondence. Letters between the parties relating to the subject out of which the libel arose, and forming part of the correspondence in which it is contained, are relevant facts, though they do not contain the libel itself.

(d) The question is, whether certain goods ordered from B were delivered to A. The goods were delivered to several intermediate persons successively. Each delivery is a relevant fact.

7. Facts which are the occasion, cause or effect of facts in issue. — Facts which are the occasion, cause or effect, immediate or otherwise, of relevant facts, or facts in issue, or which constitute the state of things under which they happened, or which afforded an opportunity for their occurrence or transaction, are relevant.

Illustrations

(a) The question is, whether A robbed B.

The facts that, shortly before the robbery, B went to a fair with money in his possession, and that he showed it, or mentioned the fact that he had it, to third persons, are relevant.

(b) The question is, whether A murdered B.

Marks on the ground, produced by a struggle at or near the place where the murder was committed, are relevant facts.

(c) The question is, whether A poisoned B.

The state of B's health before the symptoms ascribed to poison, and habits of B, known to A, which afforded an opportunity for the administration of poison, are relevant facts.

8. Motive, preparation and previous or subsequent conduct. — Any fact is relevant which shows or constitutes a motive or preparation for any fact in issue or relevant fact.

The conduct of any party, or of any agent to any party, to any suit or proceeding, in reference to such suit or proceeding, or in reference to any fact in issue therein or relevant thereto, and the conduct of any person an offence against whom is the subject of any proceeding, is relevant, if such conduct influences or is influenced by any fact in issue or relevant fact, and whether it was previous or subsequent thereto.

Explanation 1.—The word “conduct” in this section does not include statements, unless those statements accompany and explain acts other than statements; but this *explanation* is not to affect the relevancy of statements under any other section of this Act.

Explanation 2.—When the conduct of any person is relevant, any statement made to him or in his presence and hearing, which affects such conduct, is relevant.

Illustrations

(a) A is tried for the murder of B.

The facts that A murdered C, that B knew that A had murdered C, and that B had tried to extort money from A by threatening to make his knowledge public, are relevant.

(b) A sues B upon a bond for the payment of money, B denies the making of the bond.

1. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “Queen”.

The fact that, at the time when the bond was alleged to be made, B required money for a particular purpose, is relevant.

(c) A is tried for the murder of B by poison.

The fact that, before the death of B, A procured poison similar to that which was administered to B, is relevant.

(d) The question is, whether a certain document is the will of A.

The facts that, not long before, the date of the alleged will, A made inquiry into matters to which the provisions of the alleged will relate; that he consulted vakils in reference to making the will, and that he caused drafts of other wills to be prepared, of which he did not approve, are relevant.

(e) A is accused of a crime.

The facts that, either before, or at the time of, or after the alleged crime, A provided evidence which would tend to give to the facts of the case an appearance favourable to himself, or that he destroyed or concealed evidence, or prevented the presence or procured the absence of persons who might have been witnesses, or suborned persons to give false evidence respecting it, are relevant.

(f) The question is, whether A robbed B.

The facts that, after B was robbed, C said in A's presence — "the police are coming to look for the man who robbed B," and that immediately afterwards A ran away, are relevant.

(g) The question is, whether A owes B rupees 10,000.

The facts that A asked C to lend him money, and that D said to C in A's presence and hearing— "I advise you not to trust A, for he owes B 10,000 rupees," and that A went away without making any answer, are relevant facts.

(h) The question is, whether A committed a crime.

The fact that A absconded, after receiving a letter, warning him that inquiry was being made for the criminal, and the contents of the letter, are relevant.

(i) A is accused of a crime.

The facts that, after the commission of the alleged crime, he absconded, or was in possession of property or the proceeds of property acquired by the crime, or attempted to conceal things which were or might have been used in committing it, are relevant.

(j) The question is, whether A was ravished.

The facts that, shortly after the alleged rape, she made a complaint relating to the crime, the circumstances under which, and the terms in which, the complaint was made, are relevant.

The fact that, without making a complaint, she said that she had been ravished is not relevant as conduct under this section, though it may be relevant as a dying declaration under section 32, clause (1), or as corroborative evidence under section 157.

(k) The question is, whether A was robbed.

The fact that, soon after the alleged robbery, he made a complaint relating to the offence, the circumstances under which, and the terms in which, the complaint was made, are relevant.

The fact that he said he had been robbed, without making any complaint, is not relevant, as conduct under this section, though it may be relevant as a dying declaration under section 32, clause (1), or as corroborative evidence under section 157.

9. Facts necessary to explain or introduce relevant facts.—Facts necessary to explain or introduce a fact in issue or relevant fact, or which support or rebut an inference suggested by a fact in issue or relevant fact, or which establish the identity of any thing or person whose identity is relevant, or fix the time or place at which any fact in issue or relevant fact happened, or which show the relation of parties by whom any such fact was transacted, are relevant in so far as they are necessary for that purpose.

Illustrations

(a) The question is, whether a given document is the will of A.

The state of A's property and of his family at the date of the alleged will may be relevant facts.

(b) A sues B for a libel imputing disgraceful conduct to A; B affirms that the matter alleged to be libellous is true.

The position and relations of the parties at the time when the libel was published may be relevant facts as introductory to the facts in issue.

The particulars of a dispute between A and B about a matter unconnected with the alleged libel are irrelevant, though the fact that there was a dispute may be relevant if it affected the relations between A and B.

(c) A is accused of a crime.

The fact that, soon after the commission of the crime, A absconded from his house, is relevant under section 8, as conduct subsequent to and affected by facts in issue.

The fact that, at the time when he left home, he had sudden and urgent business at the place to which he went, is relevant, as tending to explain the fact that he left home suddenly.

The details of the business on which he left are not relevant, except in so far as they are necessary to show that the business was sudden and urgent.

(d) A sues B for inducing C to break a contract of service made by him with A. C, on leaving A's service, says to A—"I am leaving you because B has made me a better offer." This statement is a relevant fact as explanatory of C's conduct, which is relevant as a fact in issue.

(e) A, accused of theft, is seen to give the stolen property to B, who is seen to give it to A's wife. B says as he delivers it—"A says you are to hide this." B's statement is relevant as explanatory of a fact which is part of the transaction.

(f) A is tried for a riot and is proved to have marched at the head of a mob. The cries of the mob are relevant as explanatory of the nature of the transaction.

10. Things said or done by conspirator in reference to common design.—Where there is reasonable ground to believe that two or more persons have conspired together to commit an offence or an actionable wrong, anything said, done or written by any one of such persons in reference to their common intention, after the time when such intention was first entertained by any one of them, is a relevant fact as against each of the persons believed to be so conspiring, as well for the purpose of proving the existence of the conspiracy as for the purpose of showing that any such person was a party to it.

Illustrations

Reasonable ground exists for believing that A has joined in a conspiracy to wage war against the ¹[Government of India].

The facts that B procured arms in Europe for the purpose of the conspiracy, C collected money in Calcutta for a like object, D persuaded persons to join the conspiracy in Bombay, E published writings advocating the object in view at Agra, and F transmitted from Delhi to G at Kabul the money which C had collected at Calcutta, and the contents of a letter written by H giving an account of the conspiracy, are each relevant, both to prove the existence of the conspiracy, and to prove A's complicity in it, although he may have been ignorant of all of them, and although the persons by whom they were done were strangers to him, and although they may have taken place before he joined the conspiracy or after he left it.

11. When facts not otherwise relevant become relevant.—Facts not otherwise relevant are relevant—

- (1) if they are inconsistent with any fact in issue or relevant fact;
- (2) if by themselves or in connection with other facts they make the existence or non-existence of any fact in issue or relevant fact highly probable or improbable.

Illustrations

(a) The question is, whether A committed a crime at Calcutta on a certain day.

The fact that, on that day, A was at Lahore is relevant.

The fact that, near the time when the crime was committed, A was at a distance from the place where it was committed, which would render it highly improbable, though not impossible, that he committed it, is relevant.

(b) The question is, whether A committed a crime.

The circumstances are such that the crime must have been committed either by A, B, C or D. Every fact which shows that the crime could have been committed by no one else, and that it was not committed by either B, C or D, is relevant.

12. In suits for damages, facts tending to enable Court to determine amount are relevant. — In suits in which damages are claimed, any fact which will enable the Court to determine the amount of damages which ought to be awarded, is relevant.

13. Facts relevant when right or custom is in question.—Where the question is as to the existence of any right or custom, the following facts are relevant:—

- (a) any transaction by which the right or custom in question was created, claimed, modified, recognised, asserted or denied, or which was inconsistent with its existence;
- (b) particular instances in which the right or custom was claimed, recognised or exercised, or in which its exercise was disputed, asserted or departed from.

1. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for "Queen".

Illustrations

The question is, whether A has a right to a fishery.

A deed conferring the fishery on A's ancestors, a mortgage of the fishery by A's father, a subsequent grant of the fishery by A's father, irreconcilable with the mortgage, particular instances in which A's father exercised the right, or in which the exercise of the right was stopped by A's neighbours, are relevant facts.

14. Facts showing existence of state of mind, or of body of bodily feeling.—Facts showing the existence of any state of mind such as intention, knowledge, good faith, negligence, rashness, ill-will or good-will towards any particular person, or showing the existence of any state of body or bodily feeling, are relevant, when the existence of any such state of mind or body or bodily feeling is in issue or relevant.

¹[*Explanation 1*.—A fact relevant as showing the existence of a relevant state of mind must show that the state of mind exists, not generally, but in reference to the particular matter in question.]

Explanation 2.—But where, upon the trial of a person accused of an offence, the previous commission by the accused of an offence is relevant within the meaning of this section, the previous conviction of such person shall also be a relevant fact.²]

Illustrations

(a) A is accused of receiving stolen goods knowing them to be stolen. It is proved that he was in possession of a particular stolen article.

The fact that, at the same time, he was in possession of many other stolen articles is relevant, as tending to show that he knew each and all of the articles of which he was in possession to be stolen.

³[(b) A is accused of fraudulently delivering to another person a counterfeit coin which, at the time when he delivered it, he knew to be counterfeit.

The fact that, at the time of its delivery, A was possessed of a number of other pieces of counterfeit coin is relevant.

The fact that A had been previously convicted of delivering to another person as genuine a counterfeit coin knowing it to be counterfeit is relevant.]

(c) A sues B for damage done by a dog of B's, which B knew to be ferocious.

The fact that the dog had previously bitten X, Y and Z, and that they had made complaints to B, are relevant.

(d) The question is, whether A, the acceptor of a bill of exchange, knew that the name of the payee was fictitious.

The fact that A had accepted other bills drawn in the same manner before they could have been transmitted to him by the payee if the payee had been a real person, is relevant, as showing that A knew that the payee was a fictitious person.

(e) A is accused of defaming B by publishing an imputation intended to harm the reputation of B.

The fact of previous publications by A respecting B, showing ill-will on the part of A towards B is relevant, as proving A's intention to harm B's reputation by the particular publication in question.

1. Subs. by Act 3 of 1891, s. 1(*I*), for the Original *Explanation*.

2. See the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1898 (5 of 1898), s. 311.

3. Subs. by Act 3 of 1891, s. 1(2), *ibid.* for the original *Illustration (b)*.

The facts that there was no previous quarrel between A and B, and that A repeated the matter complained of as he heard it, are relevant, as showing that A did not intend to harm the reputation of B.

(f) A is sued by B for fraudulently representing to B that C was solvent, whereby B, being induced to trust C, who was insolvent, suffered loss.

The fact that, at the time when A represented C to be solvent, C was supposed to be solvent by his neighbours and by persons dealing with him, is relevant, as showing that A made the representation in good faith.

(g) A is sued by B for the price of work done by B, upon a house of which A is owner, by the order of C, a contractor.

A's defence is that B's contract was with C.

The fact that A paid C for the work in question is relevant, as proving that A did, in good faith, make over to C the management of the work in question, so that C was in a position to contract with B on C's own account, and not as agent for A.

(h) A is accused of the dishonest misappropriation of property which he had found, and the question is whether, when he appropriated it, he believed in good faith that the real owner could not be found.

The fact that public notice of the loss of the property had been given in the place where A was, is relevant, as showing that A did not in good faith believe that the real owner of the property could not be found.

The fact that A knew, or had reason to believe, that the notice was given fraudulently by C, who had heard of the loss of the property and wished to set up a false claim to it, is relevant, as showing that the fact that A knew of the notice did not disprove A's good faith.

(i) A is charged with shooting at B with intent to kill him. In order to show A's intent the fact of A's having previously shot at B may be proved.

(j) A is charged with sending threatening letters to B. Threatening letters previously sent by A to B may be proved, as showing the intention of the letters.

(k) The question is, whether A has been guilty of cruelty towards B, his wife.

Expressions of their feeling towards each other shortly before or after the alleged cruelty are relevant facts.

(l) The question is whether A's death was caused by poison.

Statements made by A during his illness as to his symptoms are relevant facts.

(m) The question is, what was the state of A's health at the time when an assurance on his life was effected.

Statements made by A as to the state of his health at or near the time in question are relevant facts.

(n) A sues B for negligence in providing him with a carriage for hire not reasonably fit for use, whereby A was injured.

The fact that B's attention was drawn on other occasions to the defect of that particular carriage is relevant.

The fact that B was habitually negligent about the carriages which he let to hire is irrelevant.

(o) A is tried for the murder of B by intentionally shooting him dead.

The fact that A on other occasions shot at B is relevant as showing his intention to shoot B.

The fact that A was in the habit of shooting at people with intent to murder them is irrelevant.

(p) A is tried for a crime.

The fact that he said something indicating an intention to commit that particular crime is relevant.

The fact that he said something indicating a general disposition to commit crimes of that class is irrelevant.

15. Facts bearing on question whether act was accidental or intentional.—When there is a question whether an act was accidental or intentional,¹ [or done with a particular knowledge or intention,] the fact that such act formed part of a series of similar occurrences, in each of which the person doing the act was concerned, is relevant.

Illustrations

(a) A is accused of burning down his house in order to obtain money for which it is insured.

The facts that A lived in several houses successively each of which he insured, in each of which a fire occurred, and after each of which fires A received payment from a different insurance office, are relevant, as tending to show that the fires were not accidental.

(b) A is employed to receive money from the debtors of B. It is A's duty to make entries in a book showing the amounts received by him. He makes an entry showing that on a particular occasion he received less than he really did receive.

The question is, whether this false entry was accidental or intentional.

The facts that other entries made by A in the same book are false, and that the false entry is in each case in favour of A, are relevant.

(c) A is accused of fraudulently delivering to B a counterfeit rupee.

The question is, whether the delivery of the rupee was accidental.

The facts that, soon before or soon after the delivery to B, A delivered counterfeit rupees to C, D and E are relevant, as showing that the delivery to B was not accidental.

16. Existence of course of business when relevant.—When there is a question whether a particular act was done, the existence of any course of business, according to which it naturally would have been done, is a relevant fact.

Illustrations

(a) The question is, whether a particular letter was despatched.

The facts that it was the ordinary course of business for all letters put in a certain place to be carried to the post, and that particular letter was put in that place are relevant.

(b) The question is, whether a particular letter reached A. The facts that it was posted in due course, and was not returned through the Dead Letter Office, are relevant.

1. Ins. by Act 3 of 1891, s. 2.

ADMISSIONS

17. Admission defined.—An admission is a statement, ¹[oral or documentary or contained in electronic form], which suggests any inference as to any fact in issue or relevant fact, and which is made by any of the persons, and under the circumstances, hereinafter mentioned.

18. Admission by party to proceeding or his agent.—Statements made by a party to the proceeding, or by an agent to any such party, whom the Court regards, under the circumstances of the case, as expressly or impliedly authorised by him to make them, are admissions.

by suitor in representative character.—Statements made by parties to suits suing or sued in a representative character, are not admissions, unless they were made while the party making them held that character.

Statements made by

—
(1) by party interested in subject-matter.—persons who have any proprietary or pecuniary interest in the subject-matter of the proceeding, and who make the statement in their character of persons so interested, or

(2) by person from whom interest derived.—persons from whom the parties to the suit have derived their interest in the subject-matter of the suit,

are admissions, if they are made during the continuance of the interest of the persons making the statements.

19. Admissions by persons whose position must be proved as against party to suit.—Statements made by persons whose position or liability, it is necessary to prove as against any party to the suit, are admissions, if such statements would be relevant as against such persons in relation to such position or liability in a suit brought by or against them, and if they are made whilst the person making them occupies such position or is subject to such liability.

Illustration

A undertakes to collect rents for B.

B sues A for not collecting rent due from C to B.

A denies that rent was due from C to B.

A statement by C that he owed B rent is an admission, and is a relevant fact as against A, if A denies that C did owe rent to B.

20. Admissions by persons expressly referred to by party to suit.—Statements made by persons to whom a party to the suit has expressly referred for information in reference to a matter in dispute are admissions.

Illustration

The question is, whether a horse sold by A to B is sound.

A says to B — “Go and ask C, C knows all about it.” C’s statement is an admission.

21. Proof of admissions against persons making them, and by or on their behalf.—Admissions are relevant and may be proved as against the person who makes them, or his representative in interest;

1. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule, for “oral or documentary,” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

but they cannot be proved by or on behalf of the person who makes them or by his representative in interest, except in the following cases:—

(1) An admission may be proved by or on behalf of the person making it, when it is of such a nature that, if the person making it were dead, it would be relevant as between third persons under section 32.

(2) An admission may be proved by or on behalf of the person making it, when it consists of a statement of the existence of any state of mind or body, relevant or in issue, made at or about the time when such state of mind or body existed, and is accompanied by conduct rendering its falsehood improbable.

(3) An admission may be proved by or on behalf of the person making it, if it is relevant otherwise than as an admission.

Illustrations

(a) The question between A and B is whether a certain deed is or is not forged. A affirms that it is genuine, B that it is forged.

A may prove a statement by B that the deed is genuine, and B may prove a statement by A that deed is forged; but A cannot prove a statement by himself that the deed is genuine, nor can B prove a statement by himself that the deed is forged.

(b) A, the captain of a ship, is tried for casting her away.

Evidence is given to show that the ship was taken out of her proper course.

A produces a book kept by him in the ordinary course of his business showing observations alleged to have been taken by him from day to day, and indicating that the ship was not taken out of her proper course. A may prove these statements, because they would be admissible between third parties, if he were dead, under section 32, clause (2).

(c) A is accused of a crime committed by him at Calcutta.

He produces a letter written by himself and dated at Lahore on that day, and bearing the Lahore post-mark of that day.

The statement in the date of the letter is admissible, because, if A were dead, it would be admissible under section 32, clause (2).

(d) A is accused of receiving stolen goods knowing them to be stolen.

He offers to prove that he refused to sell them below their value.

A may prove these statements, though they are admissions, because they are explanatory of conduct influenced by facts in issue.

(e) A is accused of fraudulently having in his possession counterfeit coin which he knew to be counterfeit.

He offers to prove that he asked a skilful person to examine the coin as he doubted whether it was counterfeit or not, and that that person did examine it and told him it was genuine.

A may prove these facts for the reasons stated in the last preceding *illustration*.

22. When oral admissions as to contents of documents are relevant.—Oral admissions as to the contents of a document are not relevant, unless and until the party proposing to prove them shows that he

is entitled to give secondary evidence of the contents of such document under the rules hereinafter contained, or unless the genuineness of a document produced is in question.

¹[**22A. When oral admission as to contents of electronic records are relevant.**—Oral admissions as to the contents of electronic records are not relevant, unless the genuineness of the electronic record produced is in question.]

23. Admissions in civil cases when relevant.—In civil cases no admission is relevant, if it is made either upon an express condition that evidence of it is not to be given, or under circumstances from which the Court can infer that the parties agreed together that evidence of it should not be given.

Explanation.—Nothing in this section shall be taken to exempt any barrister, pleader, attorney or vakil from giving evidence of any matter of which he may be compelled to give evidence under section 126.

24. Confession caused by inducement, threat or promise, when irrelevant in criminal proceeding.—A confession made by an accused person is irrelevant in a criminal proceeding, if the making of the confession appears to the Court to have been caused by any inducement, threat or ²promise having reference to the charge against the accused person, proceeding from a person in authority and sufficient, in the opinion of the Court, to give the accused person grounds which would appear to him reasonable for supposing that by making it he would gain any advantage or avoid any evil of a temporal nature in reference to the proceedings against him.

25. Confession to police-officer not to be proved.—No confession made to a police-officer³, shall be proved as against a person accused of any offence.

26. Confession by accused while in custody of police not to be proved against him.—No confession made by any person whilst he is in the custody of a police-officer, unless it be made in the immediate presence of a Magistrate⁴, shall be proved as against such person.

⁵[*Explanation.*—In this section “Magistrate” does not include the head of a village discharging magisterial functions in the Presidency of Fort St. George ^{6***} or elsewhere, unless such headman is a Magistrate exercising the powers of a Magistrate under the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1882⁷ (10 of 1882).]

27. How much of information received from accused may be proved.—Provided that, when any fact is deposed to as discovered in consequence of information received from a person accused of any offence, in the custody of a police-officer, so much of such information, whether it amounts to a confession or not, as relates distinctly to the fact thereby discovered, may be proved.

28. Confession made after removal of impression caused by inducement, threat or promise, relevant.—If such a confession as is referred to in section 24 is made after the impression caused by any such inducement, threat or promise has, in the opinion of the Court, been fully removed, it is relevant.

29. Confession otherwise relevant not to become irrelevant because of promise of secrecy, etc.—If such a confession is otherwise relevant, it does not become irrelevant merely because it was made under a promise of secrecy, or in consequence of a deception practiced on the accused person for the purpose of obtaining it, or when he was drunk, or because it was made in answer to questions which

1. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

2. For prohibition of such inducements, etc., *see* the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (Act of 1974), s. 316.

3. As to statements made to police-officer investigating a case, *see* s. 162, *ibid.*

4. A coroner has been declared to be a Magistrate for the Purposes of this section, *see* the coroners Act, 1871(Act 4 of 1871), s. 20.

5. Ins. by Act 3 of 1891, s. 3.

6. The words “or in Burma” rep. by the A.O. 1937.

7. *See* now the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (Act 2 of 1974).

he need not have answered, whatever may have been the form of those questions, or because he was not warned that he was not bound to make such confession, and that evidence of it might be given against him.

30. Consideration of proved confession affecting person making it and others jointly under trial for same offence.—When more persons than one are being tried jointly for the same offence, and a confession made by one of such persons affecting himself and some other of such persons is proved, the Court may take into consideration such confession as against such other person as well as against the person who makes such confession.

¹[*Explanation.*—“Offence,” as used in this section, includes the abetment of, or attempt to commit, the offence.]²

Illustrations

(a) A and B are jointly tried for the murder of C. It is proved that A said—“B and I murdered C”. The Court may consider the effect of this confession as against B.

(b) A is on his trial for the murder of C. There is evidence to show that C was murdered by A and B, and that B said —“A and I murdered C”.

This statement may not be taken into consideration by the Court against A, as B is not being jointly tried.

31. Admissions not conclusive proof, but may estop.—Admissions are not conclusive proof of the matters admitted but they may operate as estoppels under the provisions hereinafter contained.

STATEMENTS BY PERSONS WHO CANNOT BE CALLED AS WITNESSES

32. Cases in which statement of relevant fact by person who is dead or cannot be found, etc., is relevant.— Statements, written or verbal, of relevant facts made by a person who is dead, or who cannot be found, or who has become incapable of giving evidence, or whose attendance cannot be procured without an amount of delay or expense which under the circumstances of the case appears to the Court unreasonable, are themselves relevant facts in the following cases: —

(I) When it relates to cause of death.—When the statement is made by a person as to the cause of his death, or as to any of the circumstances of the transaction which resulted in his death, in cases in which the cause of that person’s death comes into question.

Such statements are relevant whether the person who made them was or was not, at the time when they were made, under expectation of death, and whatever may be the nature of the proceeding in which the cause of his death comes into question.

(2) or is made in course of business.—When the statement was made by such person in the ordinary course of business, and in particular when it consists of any entry or memorandum made by him in books kept in the ordinary course of business, or in the discharge of professional duty; or of an acknowledgement written or signed by him of the receipt of money, goods, securities or property of any kind; or of a document used in commerce written or signed by him; or of the date of a letter or other document usually dated, written or signed by him.

(3) or against interest of maker.—When the statement is against the pecuniary or proprietary interest of the person making it, or when, if true, it would expose him or would have exposed him to a criminal prosecution or to a suit for damages.

1. Ins. by Act 3 of 1891, s. 4.

2. Cf. the Indian Penal Code (Act 45 of 1860), *Explanation* 4 to s. 108.

(4) or gives opinion as to public right or custom, or matters of general interest.—When the statement gives the opinion of any such person, as to the existence of any public right or custom or matter of public or general interest, of the existence of which, if it existed, he would have been likely to be aware, and when such statement was made before any controversy as to such right, custom or matter had arisen.

(5) or relates to existence of relationship.—When the statement relates to the existence of any relationship ¹[by blood, marriage or adoption] between persons as to whose relationship ¹[by blood, marriage or adoption] the person making the statement had special means of knowledge, and when the statement was made before the question in dispute was raised.

(6) or is made in will or deed relating to family affairs.—When the statement relates to the existence of any relationship ¹[by blood, marriage or adoption] between persons deceased, and is made in any will or deed relating to the affairs of the family to which any such deceased person belonged, or in any family pedigree, or upon any tombstone, family portrait or other thing on which such statements are usually made, and when such statement was made before the question in dispute was raised.

(7) or in document relating to transaction mentioned in section 13, clause (a).—When the statement is contained in any deed, will or other document which relates to any such transaction as is mentioned in section 13, clause (a).

(8) or is made by several persons and expresses feelings relevant to matter in question.—When the statement was made by a number of persons, and expressed feelings or impressions on their part relevant to the matter in question.

Illustrations

(a) The question is, whether A was murdered by B; or

A dies of injuries received in a transaction in the course of which she was ravished. The question is whether she was ravished by B; or

The question is, whether A was killed by B under such circumstances that a suit would lie against B by A's widow.

Statements made by A as to the cause of his or her death, referring respectively to the murder, the rape and the actionable wrong under consideration, are relevant facts.

(b) The question is as to the date of A's birth.

An entry in the diary of a deceased surgeon regularly kept in the course of business, stating that, on a given day he attended A's mother and delivered her of a son, is a relevant fact.

(c) The question is, whether A was in Calcutta on a given day.

A statement in the diary of a deceased solicitor, regularly kept in the course of business, that on a given day the solicitor attended A at a place mentioned, in Calcutta, for the purpose of conferring with him upon specified business, is a relevant fact.

(d) The question is, whether a ship sailed from Bombay harbour on a given day.

A letter written by a deceased member of a merchant's firm by which she was chartered to their correspondents in London, to whom the cargo was consigned, stating that the ship sailed on a given day from Bombay harbour, is a relevant fact.

1. Ins. by Act 18 of 1872, s. 2.

(e) The question is, whether rent was paid to A for certain land.

A letter from A's deceased agent to A, saying that he had received the rent on A's account and held it at A's orders is a relevant fact.

(f) The question is, whether A and B were legally married.

The statement of a deceased clergyman that he married them under such circumstances that the celebration would be a crime, is relevant.

(g) The question is, whether A, a person who cannot be found, wrote a letter on a certain day. The fact that a letter written by him is dated on that day is relevant.

(h) The question is, what was the cause of the wreck of a ship.

A protest made by the Captain, whose attendance cannot be procured, is a relevant fact.

(i) The question is, whether a given road is a public way.

A statement by A, a deceased headman of the village, that the road was public, is a relevant fact.

(j) The question is, what was the price of grain on a certain day in a particular market.

A statement of the price, made by a deceased banya in the ordinary course of his business, is a relevant fact.

(k) The question is, whether A, who is dead, was the father of B.

A statement by A that B was his son, is a relevant fact.

(l) The question is, what was the date of the birth of A.

A letter from A's deceased father to a friend, announcing the birth of A on a given day, is a relevant fact.

(m) The question is, whether, and when, A and B were married.

An entry in a memorandum book by C, the deceased father of B, of his daughter's marriage with A on a given date, is a relevant fact.

(n) A sues B for a libel expressed in a painted caricature exposed in a shop window. The question is as to the similarity of the caricature and its libellous character. The remarks of a crowd of spectators on these points may be proved.

33. Relevancy of certain evidence for proving, in subsequent proceeding, the truth of facts therein stated.—Evidence given by a witness in a judicial proceeding, or before any person authorised by law to take it, is relevant for the purpose of proving, in a subsequent judicial proceeding, or in a later stage of the same judicial proceeding, the truth of the facts which it states, when the witness is dead or cannot be found, or is incapable of giving evidence, or is kept out of the way by the adverse party, or if his presence cannot be obtained without an amount of delay or expense which, under the circumstances of the case, the Court considers unreasonable:

Provided —

that the proceeding was between the same parties or their representatives in interest; that the adverse party in the first proceeding had the right and opportunity to cross-examine;

that the questions in issue were substantially the same in the first as in the second proceeding.

Explanation.—A criminal trial or inquiry shall be deemed to be a proceeding between the prosecutor and the accused within the meaning of this section.

STATEMENTS MADE UNDER SPECIAL CIRCUMSTANCES

34. Entries in books of account when relevant.—¹[Entries in the books of account, including those maintained in an electronic form], regularly kept in the course of business, are relevant whenever they refer to a matter into which the Court has to inquire, but such statements shall not alone be sufficient evidence to charge any person with liability.

Illustration

A sues B for Rs. 1,000, and shows entries in his account books showing B to be indebted to him to this amount. The entries are relevant, but are not sufficient, without other evidence, to prove the debt.

35. Relevancy of entry in public record made in performance of duty.— An entry in any public or other official book, register or ²[record or an electronic record], stating a fact in issue or relevant fact, and made by a public servant in the discharge of his official duty, or by any other person in performance of a duty specially enjoined by the law of the country in which such book, register or ²[record or an electronic record], is kept, is itself a relevant fact.

36. Relevancy of statements in maps, charts and plans.—Statements of facts in issue or relevant facts, made in published maps or charts generally offered for public sale, or in maps or plans made under the authority of ³[the Central Government or any State Government], as to matters usually represented or stated in such maps, charts or plans, are themselves relevant facts.

37. Relevancy of statement as to fact of public nature contained in certain Acts or notifications.—When the Court has to form an opinion as to the existence of any fact of a public nature, any statement of it, made in a recital contained in any Act of Parliament ⁴[of the United Kingdom] or in any ⁵[Central Act, Provincial Act or ⁶[a State Act] or in a Government notification or notification by the Crown Representative appearing in the Official Gazette or in any printed paper purporting to be the London Gazette or the Government Gazette of any Dominion, colony or possession of his Majesty is a relevant fact].

7*

*

*

*

*

38. Relevancy of statements as to any law contained in law-books.—When the Court has to form an opinion as to a law of any country, any statement of such law contained in a book purporting to be printed or published under the authority of the Government of such country and to contain any such law, and any report of a ruling of the Courts of such country contained in a book purporting to be a report of such rulings, is relevant.

HOW MUCH OF A STATEMENT IS TO BE PROVED

⁸[39. What evidence to be given when statement forms part of a conversation, document, electronic record, book or series of letters or papers.]—When any statement of which evidence is given

-
1. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule, for “entries in the books of account” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).
 2. Subs. by s. 92 and the Second Schedule, *ibid.*, for “record” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).
 3. Subs. by the A.O. 1948, for “any Government in British India”.
 4. Ins. by the A. O. 1950.
 5. The original words were “Act of the Governor General of India in Council or of the Governors in Council of Madras or Bombay, or of the Lieutenant Governor in Council of Bengal, or in a notification of the Government appearing in the Gazette of India, or in the Gazette of any L.G., or in any printed paper purporting to be the London Gazette or the Government Gazette of any colony or possession of the Queen, is a relevant fact”. This was amended first by the Repealing and Amending Act, 1914 (10 of 1914), and then by the A.O. 1937, the A.O. 1948 and the A.O. 1950 to read as above.
 6. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Schedule, for “an Act of the Legislature of a Part A State or a Part C State”.
 7. The “last paragraph” omitted by Act 10 of 1914, s. 3 and the Second Schedule.
 8. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule, for “s. 39” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

forms part of a longer statement, or of a conversation or part of an isolated document, or is contained in a document which forms part of a book, or is contained in part of electronic record or of a connected series of letters or papers, evidence shall be given of so much and no more of the statement, conversation, document, electronic record, book or series of letters or papers as the Court considers necessary in that particular case to the full understanding of the nature and effect of the statement, and of the circumstances under which it was made.]

JUDGMENTS OF COURTS OF JUSTICE WHEN RELEVANT

40. Previous judgments relevant to bar a second suit or trial.—The existence of any judgment, order or decree which by law prevents any Court from taking cognizance of a suit or holding a trial, is a relevant fact when the question is whether such Court ought to take cognizance of such suit or to hold such trial.

41. Relevancy of certain judgments in probate, etc., jurisdiction.—A final judgment, order or decree of a competent Court, in the exercise of probate, matrimonial, admiralty or insolvency jurisdiction, which confers upon or takes away from any person any legal character, or which declares any person to be entitled to any such character, or to be entitled to any specific thing, not as against any specified person but absolutely, is relevant when the existence of any such legal character, or the title of any such person to any such thing, is relevant.

Such judgment, order or decree is conclusive proof —

that any legal character which it confers accrued at the time when such judgment, order or decree came into operation;

that any legal character, to which it declares any such person to be entitled, accrued to that person at the time when such judgment¹ [order or decree] declares it to have accrued to that person;

that any legal character which it takes away from any such person ceased at the time from which such judgment, ¹[order or decree] declared that it had ceased or should cease;

and that anything to which it declares any person to be so entitled was the property of that person at the time from which such judgment, ¹[order or decree] declares that it had been or should be his property.

42. Relevancy and effect of judgments, orders or decrees, other than those mentioned in section 41. — Judgments, orders or decrees other than those mentioned in section 41 are relevant if they relate to matters of a public nature relevant to the enquiry; but such judgments, orders or decrees are not conclusive proof of that which they state.

Illustration

A sues B for trespass on his land. B alleges the existence of a public right of way over the land, which A denies.

The existence of a decree in favour of the defendant, in a suit by A against C for a trespass on the same land, in which C alleged the existence of the same right of way, is relevant, but it is not conclusive proof that the right of way exists.

43. Judgments, etc., other than those mentioned in sections 40, 41 and 42, when relevant.— Judgments, orders or decrees, other than those mentioned in sections 40, 41 and 42, are irrelevant, unless the existence of such judgment, order or decree is a fact in issue, or is relevant under some other provision of this Act.

1. Ins. by Act 18 of 1872, s. 3.

Illustrations

(a) A and B separately sue C for a libel which reflects upon each of them. C in each case says that the matter alleged to be libellous is true, and the circumstances are such that it is probably true in each case, or in neither.

A obtains a decree against C for damages on the ground that C failed to make out his justification. The fact is irrelevant as between B and C.

(b) A prosecutes B for adultery with C, A's wife.

B denies that C is A's wife, but the Court convicts B of adultery.

Afterwards, C is prosecuted for bigamy in marrying B during A's lifetime.

C says that she never was A's wife.

The judgment against B is irrelevant as against C.

(c) A prosecutes B for stealing a cow from him. B is convicted.

A afterwards sues C for the cow, which B had sold to him before his conviction. As between A and C, the judgment against B is irrelevant.

(d) A has obtained a decree for the possession of land against B. C, B's son, murders A in consequence.

The existence of the judgment is relevant, as showing motive for a crime.

¹[(e) A is charged with theft and with having been previously convicted of theft. The previous conviction is relevant as a fact in issue.

(f) A is tried for the murder of B. The fact that B prosecuted A for libel and that A was convicted and sentenced is relevant under section 8 as showing the motive for the fact in issue.]

44. Fraud or collusion in obtaining judgment, or incompetency of Court, may be proved.—Any party to a suit or other proceeding may show that any judgment, order or decree which is relevant under section 40, 41 or 42, and which has been proved by the adverse party, was delivered by a Court not competent to deliver it, or was obtained by fraud or collusion.

OPINIONS OF THIRD PERSONS WHEN RELEVANT

45. Opinions of experts.—When the Court has to form an opinion upon a point of foreign law or of science, or art, or as to identity of handwriting ²[or finger impressions], the opinions upon that point of persons specially skilled in such foreign law, science or art, ³[or in questions as to identity of handwriting] ²[or finger impressions] are relevant facts.

Such persons are called experts.

Illustrations

(a) The question is, whether the death of A was caused by poison.

The opinions of experts as to the symptoms produced by the poison by which A is supposed to have died, are relevant.

1. Ins. by Act 3 of 1891, s. 5.

2. Ins. by Act 5 of 1899, s. 3 for discussion in Council as to whether "finger impressions" include "thumb impressions" see Gazette of India, 1898, pt.VI, p. 24.

3. Ins. by Act 18 of 1872, s. 4.

(b) The question is, whether A, at the time of doing a certain act, was, by reason of unsoundness of mind, incapable of knowing the nature of the act, or that he was doing what was either wrong or contrary to law.

The opinions of experts upon the question whether the symptoms exhibited by A commonly show unsoundness of mind, and whether such unsoundness of mind usually renders persons incapable of knowing the nature of the acts which they do, or of knowing that what they do is either wrong or contrary to law, are relevant.

(c) The question is, whether a certain document was written by A. Another document is produced which is proved or admitted to have been written by A.

The opinions of experts on the question whether the two documents were written by the same person or by different persons, are relevant.

¹[**45A. Opinion of Examiner of Electronic Evidence.**—When in a proceeding, the court has to form an opinion on any matter relating to any information transmitted or stored in any computer resource or any other electronic or digital form, the opinion of the Examiner of Electronic Evidence referred to in section 79A of the Information Technology Act, 2000 (21 of 2000), is a relevant fact.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this section, an Examiner of Electronic Evidence shall be an expert.]

46. Facts bearing upon opinions of experts.—Facts, not otherwise relevant, are relevant if they support or are inconsistent with the opinions of experts, when such opinions are relevant.

Illustrations

(a) The question is, whether A was poisoned by a certain poison.

The fact that other persons, who were poisoned by that poison, exhibited certain symptoms which experts affirm or deny to be the symptoms of that poison, is relevant.

(b) The question is, whether an obstruction to a harbour is caused by a certain sea-wall.

The fact that other harbours similarly situated in other respects, but where there were no such sea-walls, began to be obstructed at about the same time, is relevant.

47. Opinion as to hand-writing, when relevant.—When the Court has to form an opinion as to the person by whom any document was written or signed, the opinion of any person acquainted with the handwriting of the person by whom it is supposed to be written or signed that it was or was not written or signed by that person, is a relevant fact.

Explanation.—A person is said to be acquainted with the hand-writing of another person when he has seen that person write, or when he has received documents purporting to be written by that person in answer to documents written by himself or under his authority and addressed to that person, or when, in the ordinary course of business, documents purporting to be written by that person have been habitually submitted to him.

1. Ins. by Act 10 of 2009, s. 52 (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

Illustration

The question is, whether a given letter is in the hand-writing of A, a merchant in London.

B is a merchant in Calcutta, who has written letters addressed to A and received letters purporting to be written by him. C, is B's clerk whose duty it was to examine and file B's correspondence. D is B's broker, to whom B habitually submitted the letters purporting to be written by A for the purpose of advising with him thereon.

The opinions of B, C and D on the question whether the letter is in the handwriting of A are relevant, though neither B, C nor D ever saw A write.

¹[**47A. Opinion as to digital signature, when relevant.**—When the Court has to form an opinion as to the ²[electronic signature of any person, the opinion of the Certifying Authority which has issued the ³[electronic Signature Certificate] is a relevant fact.]

48. Opinion as to existence of right or custom, when relevant.—When the Court has to form an opinion as to the existence of any general custom or right, the opinions, as to the existence of such custom or right, of persons who would be likely to know of its existence if it existed, are relevant.

Explanation.—The expression “general custom or right” includes customs or rights common to any considerable class of persons.

Illustration

The right of the villagers of a particular village to use the water of a particular well is a general right within the meaning of this section.

49. Opinion as to usages, tenets, etc., when relevant. — When the Court has to form an opinion as to—

the usages and tenets of any body of men or family,
the constitution and government of any religious or charitable foundation, or
the meaning of words or terms used in particular districts or by particular classes of people,
the opinions of persons having special means of knowledge thereon are, relevant facts.

50. Opinion on relationship, when relevant. —When the Court has to form an opinion as to the relationship of one person to another, the opinion, expressed by conduct, as to the existence of such relationship, of any person who, as a member of the family or otherwise, has special means of knowledge on the subject, is a relevant fact:

Provided that such opinion shall not be sufficient to prove a marriage in proceedings under the Indian Divorce Act, 1869 (4 of 1869), or in prosecutions under section 494, 495, 497 or 498 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).

Illustrations

(a) The question is, whether A and B, were married.

The fact that they were usually received and treated by their friends as husband and wife, is relevant.

1. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

2. Subs. by Act 10 of 2009, s. 52, for “digital signature” (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

3. Subs. by s 52, *ibid.*, for “Digital Signature Certificate” (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

(b) The question is, whether A was the legitimate son of B. The fact that A was always treated as such by members of the family, is relevant.

51. Grounds of opinion, when relevant.—Whenever the opinion of any living person is relevant, the grounds on which such opinion is based are also relevant.

Illustration

An expert may give an account of experiments performed by him for the purpose of forming his opinion.

CHARACTER WHEN RELEVANT

52. In civil cases character to prove conduct imputed, irrelevant.—In civil cases, the fact that the character of any person concerned is such as to render probable or improbable any conduct imputed to him, is irrelevant, except in so far as such character appears from facts otherwise relevant.

53. In criminal cases previous good character relevant.—In criminal proceedings, the fact that the person accused is of a good character, is relevant.

¹[**53A. Evidence of character or previous sexual experience not relevant in certain cases.**— In a prosecution for an offence under section 354, section 354A, section 354B, section 354C, section 354D, section 376, ²[section 376A, section 376AB, section 376B, section 376C, section 376D, section 376DA, section 376DB] or section 376E of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860) or for attempt to commit any such offence, where the question of consent is in issue, evidence of the character of the victim or of such person's previous sexual experience with any person shall not be relevant on the issue of such consent or the quality of consent.]

³[**54. Previous bad character not relevant, except in reply.**— In criminal proceedings, the fact that the accused person has a bad character, is irrelevant, unless evidence has been given that he has a good character, in which case it becomes relevant.

Explanation 1.—This section does not apply to cases in which the bad character of any person is itself a fact in issue.

Explanation 2.—A previous conviction is relevant as evidence of bad character.]

55. Character as affecting damages.—In civil cases, the fact that the character of any person is such as to affect the amount of damages which he ought to receive, is relevant.

Explanation.—In sections 52, 53, 54 and 55, the word “character” includes both reputation and disposition; but, ⁴[except as provided in section 54], evidence may be given only of general reputation and general disposition, and not of particular acts by which reputation or disposition were shown.

PART II

ON PROOF

CHAPTER III.—FACTS WHICH NEED NOT BE PROVED

56. Fact judicially noticeable need not be proved.—No fact of which the Court will take judicial notice need be proved.

57. Facts of which Court must take judicial notice.—The Court shall take judicial notice of the following facts:—

⁵[(I) All laws in force in the territory of India;]

1. Ins. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 25 (w.e.f. 3-2-2013)

2. Subs. by Act 22 of 2018, s. 8, for “section 376A, section 376B, section 376C, section 376D” (w.e.f. 21-4-2018).

3. Subs. by Act 3 of 1891, s. 6 for “section 54”.

4. Ins. by s. 7, *ibid.*

5. Subs. by the A. O. 1950, for “the clause (I)”.

(2) All public Acts passed or hereafter to be passed by Parliament ¹[of the United Kingdom], and all local and personal Acts directed by Parliament ¹[of the United Kingdom] to be judicially noticed;

(3) Articles of War for ²[the Indian] Army ³[Navy or Air Force]

⁴[(4) The course of proceeding of Parliament of the United Kingdom, of the Constituent Assembly of India, of Parliament and of the legislatures established under any laws for the time being in force in a Province or in the States]

(5) The accession and the sign manual of the Sovereign for the time being of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland;

(6) All seals of which English Courts take judicial notice: the seals of all the ⁵[Courts in ⁶[India]] and of all Courts out of ⁶[India] established by the authority of ⁷[the Central Government or the Crown Representative]; the seals of Courts of Admiralty and Maritime Jurisdiction and of Notaries Public, and all seals which any person is authorised to use by ⁸[the Constitution or an Act of Parliament of the United Kingdom or an] Act or Regulation having the force of law in ⁶[India];

(7) The accession to office, names, titles, functions, and signatures of the persons filling for the time being any public office in any State, if the fact of their appointment to such office is notified in ⁹[any Official Gazette];

(8) The existence, title and national flag of every State or Sovereign recognised by ¹⁰[the Government of India];

(9) The divisions of time, the geographical divisions of the world, and public festivals, fasts and holidays notified in the Official Gazette;

(10) The territories under the dominion of ¹⁰[the Government of India];

(11) The commencement, continuance and termination of hostilities between ¹⁰[the Government of India] and any other State or body of persons;

(12) The names of the members and officers of the Court, and of their deputies and subordinate officers and assistants, and also of all officers acting in execution of its process, and of all advocates, attorneys, proctors, vakils, pleaders and other persons authorised by law to appear or act before it;

(13) The rule of the road ¹¹[on land or at sea].

In all these cases and also on all matters of public history, literature, science or art, the Court may resort for its aid to appropriate books or documents of reference.

If the Court is called upon by any person to take judicial notice of any fact, it may refuse to do so unless and until such person produces any such book or document as it may consider necessary to enable it to do so.

1. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “the clause (2)”.

2. Subs. *ibid.*, for “her Majesty’s”.

3. Subs. by Act 10 of 1927, s. 2 and the First Schedule, for “or Navy”.

4. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for the Former para. (4).

5. Subs. by the A.O. 1948, for “Courts of British India”.

6. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Schedule, for “the States”.

7. Subs. by the A.O. 1937, for “the G.G. or any L.G. in Council”.

8. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “any Act of Parliament or other”.

9. Subs. by the A.O. 1937, for “the Gazette of India or in the Official Gazette of any L.G.”.

10. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “the British Crown”.

11. Ins. by Act 18 of 1872, s. 5.

58. Facts admitted need not be proved.—No fact need be proved in any proceeding which the parties thereto or their agents agree to admit at the hearing, or which, before the hearing, they agree to admit by any writing under their hands, or which by any rule of pleading in force at the time they are deemed to have admitted by their pleadings:

Provided that the Court may, in its discretion, require the facts admitted to be proved otherwise than by such admissions.

CHAPTER IV.— OF ORAL EVIDENCE

59. Proof of facts by oral evidence. — All facts, except the ¹[contents of documents or electronic records], may be proved by oral evidence.

60. Oral evidence must be direct. — Oral evidence must, in all cases whatever, be direct; that is to say —

if it refers to a fact which could be seen, it must be the evidence of a witness who says he saw it;

if it refers to a fact which could be heard, it must be the evidence of a witness who says he heard it;

if it refers to a fact which could be perceived by any other sense or in any other manner, it must be the evidence of a witness who says he perceived it by that sense or in that manner;

if it refers to an opinion or to the grounds on which that opinion is held, it must be the evidence of the person who holds that opinion on those grounds:

Provided that the opinions of experts expressed in any treatise commonly offered for sale, and the grounds on which such opinions are held, may be proved by the production of such treatises if the author is dead or cannot be found, or has become incapable of giving evidence, or cannot be called as a witness without an amount of delay or expense which the Court regards as unreasonable:

Provided also that, if oral evidence refers to the existence or condition of any material thing other than a document, the Court may, if it thinks fit, require the production of such material thing for its inspection.

CHAPTER V. — OF DOCUMENTARY EVIDENCE

61. Proof of contents of documents. — The contents of documents may be proved either by primary or by secondary evidence.

62. Primary evidence. — Primary evidence means the document itself produced for the inspection of the Court.

Explanation 1. —Where a document is executed in several parts, each part is primary evidence of the document.

Where a document is executed in counterpart, each counterpart being executed by one or some of the parties only, each counterpart is primary evidence as against the parties executing it.

Explanation 2. — Where a number of documents are all made by one uniform process, as in the case of printing, lithography or photography, each is primary evidence of the contents of the rest; but, where they are all copies of a common original, they are not primary evidence of the contents of the original.

1. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule, for “Contents of documents” (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

Illustration

A person is shown to have been in possession of a number of placards, all printed at one time from one original. Any one of the placards is primary evidence of the contents of any other, but no one of them is primary evidence of the contents of the original.

63. Secondary evidence. — Secondary evidence means and includes —

- (1) certified copies given under the provisions hereinafter contained;
- (2) copies made from the original by mechanical processes which in themselves insure the accuracy of the copy, and copies compared with such copies;
- (3) copies made from or compared with the original;
- (4) counterparts of documents as against the parties who did not execute them;
- (5) oral accounts of the contents of a document given by some person who has himself seen it.

Illustrations

(a) A photograph of an original is secondary evidence of its contents, though the two have not been compared, if it is proved that the thing photographed was the original.

(b) A copy compared with a copy of a letter made by a copying machine is secondary evidence of the contents of the letter, if it is shown that the copy made by the copying machine was made from the original.

(c) A copy transcribed from a copy, but afterwards compared with the original, is secondary evidence; but the copy not so compared is not secondary evidence of the original, although the copy from which it was transcribed was compared with the original.

(d) Neither an oral account of a copy compared with the original, nor an oral account of a photograph or machine-copy of the original, is secondary evidence of the original.

64. Proof of documents by primary evidence. — Documents must be proved by primary evidence except in the cases hereinafter mentioned.

65. Cases in which secondary evidence relating to documents may be given. — Secondary evidence may be given of the existence, condition, or contents of a document in the following cases: —

(a) when the original is shown or appears to be in the possession or power —

of the person against whom the document is sought to be proved, or
of any person out of reach of, or not subject to, the process of the Court, or
of any person legally bound to produce it,

and when, after the notice mentioned in section 66, such person does not produce it;

(b) when the existence, condition or contents of the original have been proved to be admitted in writing by the person against whom it is proved or by his representative in interest;

(c) when the original has been destroyed or lost, or when the party offering evidence of its contents cannot, for any other reason not arising from his own default or neglect, produce it in reasonable time;

(d) when the original is of such a nature as not to be easily movable;

(e) when the original is a public document within the meaning of section 74;

(f) when the original is a document of which a certified copy is permitted by this Act, or by any other law in force in¹[India] to be given in evidence;

(g) when the originals consist of numerous accounts or other documents which cannot conveniently be examined in Court, and the fact to be proved is the general result of the whole collection.

In cases (a), (c) and (d), any secondary evidence of the contents of the document is admissible.

In case (b), the written admission is admissible.

In case (e) or (f), a certified copy of the document, but no other kind of secondary evidence, is admissible.

In case (g), evidence may be given as to the general result of the documents by any person who has examined them, and who is skilled in the examination of such documents.

²[65A. Special provisions as to evidence relating to electronic record.]—The contents of electronic records may be proved in accordance with the provisions of section 65B.

65B. Admissibility of electronic records. — (1) Notwithstanding anything contained in this Act, any information contained in an electronic record which is printed on a paper, stored, recorded or copied in optical or magnetic media produced by a computer (hereinafter referred to as the computer output) shall be deemed to be also a document, if the conditions mentioned in this section are satisfied in relation to the information and computer in question and shall be admissible in any proceedings, without further proof or production of the original, as evidence or any contents of the original or of any fact stated therein of which direct evidence would be admissible.

(2) The conditions referred to in sub-section (1) in respect of a computer output shall be the following, namely: —

(a) the computer output containing the information was produced by the computer during the period over which the computer was used regularly to store or process information for the purposes of any activities regularly carried on over that period by the person having lawful control over the use of the computer;

(b) during the said period, information of the kind contained in the electronic record or of the kind from which the information so contained is derived was regularly fed into the computer in the ordinary course of the said activities;

(c) throughout the material part of the said period, the computer was operating properly or, if not, then in respect of any period in which it was not operating properly or was out of operation during that part of the period, was not such as to affect the electronic record or the accuracy of its contents; and

(d) the information contained in the electronic record reproduces or is derived from such information fed into the computer in the ordinary course of the said activities.

(3) Where over any period, the function of storing or processing information for the purposes of any activities regularly carried on over that period as mentioned in clause (a) of sub-section (2) was regularly performed by computers, whether—

(a) by a combination of computers operating over that period; or

1. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Schedule, for “the States”.

2. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

- (b) by different computers operating in succession over that period; or
- (c) by different combinations of computers operating in succession over that period; or
- (d) in any other manner involving the successive operation over that period, in whatever order, of one or more computers and one or more combinations of computers,

all the computers used for that purpose during that period shall be treated for the purposes of this section as constituting a single computer; and references in this section to a computer shall be construed accordingly.

(4) In any proceedings where it is desired to give a statement in evidence by virtue of this section, a certificate doing any of the following things, that is to say,—

- (a) identifying the electronic record containing the statement and describing the manner in which it was produced;
- (b) giving such particulars of any device involved in the production of that electronic record as may be appropriate for the purpose of showing that the electronic record was produced by a computer;
- (c) dealing with any of the matters to which the conditions mentioned in sub-section (2) relate,

and purporting to be signed by a person occupying a responsible official position in relation to the operation of the relevant device or the management of the relevant activities (whichever is appropriate) shall be evidence of any matter stated in the certificate; and for the purposes of this sub-section it shall be sufficient for a matter to be stated to the best of the knowledge and belief of the person stating it.

(5) For the purposes of this section,—

- (a) information shall be taken to be supplied to a computer if it is supplied thereto in any appropriate form and whether it is so supplied directly or (with or without human intervention) by means of any appropriate equipment;
- (b) whether in the course of activities carried on by any official, information is supplied with a view to its being stored or processed for the purposes of those activities by a computer operated otherwise than in the course of those activities, that information, if duly supplied to that computer, shall be taken to be supplied to it in the course of those activities;
- (c) a computer output shall be taken to have been produced by a computer whether it was produced by it directly or (with or without human intervention) by means of any appropriate equipment.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this section any reference to information being derived from other information shall be a reference to its being derived therefrom by calculation, comparison or any other process.]

66. Rules as to notice to produce.— Secondary evidence of the contents of the documents referred to in section 65, clause (a), shall not be given unless the party proposing to give such secondary evidence has previously given to the party in whose possession or power the document is,¹ [or to his attorney or

1. Ins. by Act 18 of 1872, s. 6.

pleader,] such notice to produce it as is prescribed by law; and if no notice is prescribed by law, then such notice as the Court considers reasonable under the circumstances of the case:

Provided that such notice shall not be required in order to render secondary evidence admissible in any of the following cases, or in any other case in which the Court thinks fit to dispense with it: —

- (1) when the document to be proved is itself a notice;
- (2) when, from the nature of the case, the adverse party must know that he will be required to produce it;
- (3) when it appears or is proved that the adverse party has obtained possession of the original by fraud or force;
- (4) when the adverse party or his agent has the original in Court;
- (5) when the adverse party or his agent has admitted the loss of the document;
- (6) when the person in possession of the document is out of reach of, or not subject to, the process of the Court.

67. Proof of signature and handwriting of person alleged to have signed or written document produced. — If a document is alleged to be signed or to have been written wholly or in part by any person, the signature or the handwriting of so much of the document as is alleged to be in that person's handwriting must be proved to be in his handwriting.

¹[**67A. Proof as to ²[electronic signature].**—Except in the case of a secure ²[electronic signature], if the ²[electronic signature] of any subscriber is alleged to have been affixed to an electronic record the fact that such ²[electronic signature] is the ²[electronic signature] of the subscriber must be proved.]

68. Proof of execution of document required by law to be attested.—If a document is required by law to be attested, it shall not be used as evidence until one attesting witness at least has been called for the purpose of proving its execution, if there be an attesting witness alive, and subject to the process of the Court and capable of giving evidence:

³[Provided that it shall not be necessary to call an attesting witness in proof of the execution of any document, not being a will, which has been registered in accordance with the provisions of the Indian Registration Act, 1908 (16 of 1908), unless its execution by the person by whom it purports to have been executed is specifically denied.]

69. Proof where no attesting witness found.—If no such attesting witness can be found, or if the document purports to have been executed in the United Kingdom, it must be proved that the attestation of one attesting witness at least is in his handwriting, and that the signature of the person executing the document is in the hand writing of that person.

70. Admission of execution by party to attested document.—The admission of a party to an attested document of its execution by himself shall be sufficient proof of its execution as against him, though it be a document required by law to be attested.

71. Proof when attesting witness denies the execution.—If the attesting witness denies or does not recollect the execution of the document, its execution may be proved by other evidence.

72. Proof of document not required by law to be attested.—An attested document not required by law to be attested may be proved as if it was unattested.

1. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

2. Subs. by Act 10 of 2009, s. 52, for "digital signature" (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

3. Ins. by Act 31 of 1926, s. 2.

73. Comparison of signature, writing or seal with others admitted or proved.—In order to ascertain whether a signature, writing, or seal is that of the person by whom it purports to have been written or made, any signature, writing, or seal admitted or proved to the satisfaction of the Court to have been written or made by that person may be compared with the one which is to be proved, although that signature, writing, or seal has not been produced or proved for any other purpose.

The Court may direct any person present in Court to write any words or figures for the purpose of enabling the Court to compare the words or figures so written with any words or figures alleged to have been written by such person.

¹[This section applies also, with any necessary modifications, to finger-impressions.]

2[73A. Proof as to verification of digital signature.]—In order to ascertain whether a digital signature is that of the person by whom it purports to have been affixed, the Court may direct —

(a) that person or the Controller or the Certifying Authority to produce the Digital Signature Certificate;

(b) any other person to apply the public key listed in the Digital Signature Certificate and verify the digital signature purported to have been affixed by that person.

Explanation. — For the purposes of this section, “Controller” means the Controller appointed under sub-section (1) of section 17 of the Information Technology Act, 2000 (21 of 2000).]

PUBLIC DOCUMENTS

74. Public documents.—The following documents are public documents: —

(1) Documents forming the acts, or records of the acts —

(i) of the sovereign authority,

(ii) of official bodies and tribunals, and

(iii) of public officers, legislative, judicial and executive, ³[of any part of India or of the Commonwealth], or of a foreign country;

(2) Public records kept ⁴[in any State] of private documents.

75. Private documents.—All other documents are private.

76. Certified copies of public documents.—Every public officer having the custody of a public document, which any person has a right to inspect, shall give that person on demand a copy of it on payment of the legal fees there for, together with a certificate written at the foot of such copy that it is a true copy of such document or part thereof, as the case may be, and such certificate shall be dated and subscribed by such officer with his name and his official title, and shall be sealed, whenever such officer is authorized by law to make use of a seal; and such copies so certified shall be called certified copies.

Explanation.—Any officer who, by the ordinary course of official duty, is authorized to deliver such copies, shall be deemed to have the custody of such documents within the meaning of this section.

77. Proof of documents by production of certified copies.—Such certified copies may be produced in proof of the contents of the public documents or parts of the public documents of which they purport to be copies.

1. Ins. by Act 5 of 1899, s. 3.

2. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

3. The original words “whether of British India, or of any other part of Her Majesty’s Dominions” have successively been amended by the A.O. 1948 and the A.O. 1950 to read as above.

4. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “in any Province”.

78. Proof of other official documents.— The following public documents may be proved as follows:—

- (1) Acts, orders or notifications of ¹[the Central Government] in any of its departments, ²[or of the Crown Representative] or of any State Government or any department of any State Government,—
 - by the records of the departments, certified by the head of those departments respectively,
 - or by any document purporting to be printed by order of any such Government ³[or, as the case may be, of the Crown Representative];
- (2) the proceedings of the Legislatures,—
 - by the journals of those bodies respectively, or by published Acts or abstracts, or by copies purporting to be printed ³[by order of the Government concerned];
- (3) proclamations, orders or regulations issued by ⁴[Her Majesty] or by the Privy Council, or by any department of ⁴[Her Majesty's Government],—
 - by copies or extracts contained in the London Gazette, or purporting to be printed by the Queen's Printer;
- (4) the Acts of the Executive or the proceedings of the Legislature of a foreign country, —
 - by journals published by their authority, or commonly received in that country as such, or by a copy certified under the seal of the country or sovereign, or by a recognition thereof in some ⁵[Central Act]:
- (5) the proceedings of a municipal body in ⁶[a State], —
 - by a copy of such proceedings, certified by the legal keeper thereof, or by a printed book purporting to be published by the authority of such body;
- (6) public documents of any other class in a foreign country, —
 - by the original, or by a copy certified by the legal keeper thereof, with a certificate under the seal of a Notary Public, or of ⁷[an Indian Consul] or diplomatic agent, that the copy is duly certified by the officer having the legal custody of the original, and upon proof of the character of the document according to the law of the foreign country.

PRESUMPTIONS AS TO DOCUMENTS

79. Presumption as to genuineness of certified copies.— The Court shall presume ⁸[to be genuine] every document purporting to be a certificate, certified copy or other document, which is by Law declared to be admissible as evidence of any particular fact, and which purports to be duly certified by any officer ⁹[of the Central Government or of a State Government, or by any officer ¹⁰[in the State of Jammu and Kashmir] who is duly authorized thereto by the Central Government]:

1. Subs. by the A.O. 1937, for “the Executive Government of British India”.
2. Ins. *ibid.*
3. Subs. *ibid.*, for “by order of Government.”.
4. The words “her Majesty” shall stand unmodified, *vide* the A.O. 1950.
5. Subs. by the A.O. 1937, for “public Act of the Governor General of India in Council”.
6. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for “a Province”.
7. Subs. by *ibid.*, for “a British Consul”.
8. Ins. by the A.O. 1948.
9. The original words beginning from “in British India” and ending with the words “to be genuine” have been successively amended by the A.O. 1937, the A.O. 1948 and the A.O. 1950 to read as above.
10. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Schedule, for “in a Part B State”.

Provided that such document is substantially in the form and purports to be executed in the manner directed by law in that behalf.

The Court shall also presume that any officer by whom any such document purports to be signed or certified, held, when he signed it, the official character which he claims in such paper.

80. Presumption as to documents produced as record of evidence.—Whenever any document is produced before any Court, purporting to be a record or memorandum of the evidence, or of any part of the evidence, given by a witness in a judicial proceeding or before any officer authorized by law to take such evidence or to be a statement or confession by any prisoner or accused person, taken in accordance with law, and purporting to be signed by any Judge or Magistrate, or by any such officer as aforesaid, the Court shall presume—

that the document is genuine; that any statements as to the circumstances under which it was taken, purporting to be made by the person signing it, are true, and that such evidence, statement or confession was duly taken.

81. Presumption as to Gazettes, newspapers, private Acts of Parliament and other documents.—The Court shall presume the genuineness of every document purporting to be the London Gazette or ¹[any Official Gazette, or the Government Gazette] of any colony, dependency or possession of the British Crown, or to be a newspaper or journal, or to be a copy of a private Act of Parliament ²[of the United Kingdom] printed by the Queen's Printer, and of every document purporting to be a document directed by any law to be kept by any person, if such document is kept substantially in the form required by law and is produced from proper custody.

³[**81A. Presumption as to Gazettes in electronic forms.**—The Court shall presume the genuineness of every electronic record purporting to be the Official Gazette, or purporting to be electronic record directed by any law to be kept by any person, if such electronic record is kept substantially in the form required by law and is produced from proper custody.]

82. Presumption as to document admissible in England without proof of seal or signature.—When any document is produced before any Court, purporting to be a document which, by the law in force for the time being in England or Ireland, would be admissible in proof of any particular in any Court of Justice in England or Ireland, without proof of the seal or stamp or signature authenticating it, or of the judicial or official character claimed by the person by whom it purports to be signed, the Court shall presume that such seal, stamp or signature is genuine, and that the person signing it held, at the time when he signed it, the judicial or official character which he claims,

and the document shall be admissible for the same purpose for which it would be admissible in England or Ireland.

83. Presumption as to maps or plans made by authority of Government.—The Court shall presume that maps or plans purporting to be made by the authority of ⁴[the Central Government or any State Government] were so made, and are accurate; but maps or plans made for the purposes of any cause must be proved to be accurate.

84. Presumption as to collections of laws and reports of decisions.—The Court shall presume the genuineness of every book purporting to be printed or published under the authority of the Government of any country, and to contain any of the laws of that country,

and of every book purporting to contain reports of decisions of the Courts of such country.

1. Subs by the A.O. 1937, for "the Gazette of India, or the Government Gazette of any L.G., or".

2. Ins. by the A.O. 1950.

3. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92, and the Second Schedule (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

4. The original word "Government" has successively been amended by the A.O. 1937, the A.O. 1948, Act 40 of 1949 and the A.O. 1950 to read as above.

85. Presumption as to powers-of-attorney. — The Court shall presume that every document purporting to be a power-of-attorney, and to have been executed before, and authenticated by, a Notary Public, or any Court, Judge, Magistrate, ¹[Indian] Consul or Vice-Consul, or representative ^{2***} of the ³[Central Government], was so executed and authenticated.

⁴[85A. Presumption as to electronic agreements.] — The Court shall presume that every electronic record purporting to be an agreement containing the ⁵[electronic signature] of the parties was so concluded by affixing the ⁵[electronic signature] of the parties.

85B. Presumption as to electronic records and ⁵[electronic signatures]. — (1) In any proceedings involving a secure electronic record, the Court shall presume unless contrary is proved, that the secure electronic record has not been altered since the specific point of time to which the secure status relates.

(2) In any proceedings, involving secure digital signature, the Court shall presume unless the contrary is proved that—

(a) the secure ⁵[electronic signature] is affixed by subscriber with the intention of signing or approving the electronic record;

(b) except in the case of a secure electronic record or a secure ⁵[electronic signature], nothing in this section shall create any presumption, relating to authenticity and integrity of the electronic record or any ⁵[electronic signature].

85C. Presumption as to ⁶[Electronic Signature Certificates]. — The Court shall presume, unless contrary is proved, that the information listed in a ⁶[Electronic Signature Certificate] is correct, except for information specified as subscriber information which has not been verified, if the certificate was accepted by the subscriber.]

86. Presumption as to certified copies of foreign judicial records. The Court may presume that any document purporting to be a certified copy of any judicial record of ⁷[^{8*} * * any country not forming part of India or] of Her Majesty's Dominions is genuine and accurate, if the document purports to be certified in any manner which is certified by any representative of ^{9*} * * the ³[Central Government] ¹⁰[in or for] ¹¹[such country] to be the manner commonly in use in ¹²[that country] for the certification of copies of judicial records.

¹³[An officer who, with respect to ^{14***} any territory or place not forming part of ¹⁵[India or] Her Majesty's Dominions, is a Political Agent there for, as defined in section 3, ¹⁶[clause (43)], of the General

1. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for "British".

2. The Words "of Her Majesty, or" *Rep. ibid.*

3. Subs. by the A.O. 1937, for "Government of India".

4. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92, and the Second Schedule (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

5. Subs. by Act 10 of 2009, s. 52(e), for "digital signature" (w.e.f. 27-10-2009).

6. Subs. by *ibid.*, s. 52(f), for "Digital Signature Certificate" (w.e.f. 27.10.2009).

7. Subs. by the A.O. 1950, for "any country not forming part".

8. The words "a Part B State or of" omitted by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Schedule.

9. The words "Her Majesty or of" omitted by A.O. 1950.

10. Subs. by Act 3 of 1891, s. 8, for "resident in".

11. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Schedule, for "such Part B State or Country".

12. Subs. by s. 3 and the Schedule, *ibid.*, for "that State or Country".

13. Subs. by Act 5 of 1899, s. 4, for the para added by Act 3 of 1891, s. 3.

14. The words "a Part B State or" ins. by the A.O. 1950, omitted by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Schedule.

15. Ins. by the A.O. 1950.

16. Subs., *ibid.*, for "clause (40)".

Clauses Act, 1897 (10 of 1897), shall, for the purposes of this section, be deemed to be a representative of the ¹[Central Government] ²[in and for the country] comprising that territory or place].

87. Presumption as to books, maps and charts. — The Court may presume that any book to which it may refer for information on matters of public or general interest, and that any published map or chart, the statements of which are relevant facts, and which is produced for its inspection, was written and published by the person, and at the time and place, by whom or at which it purports to have been written or published.

88. Presumption as to telegraphic messages. — The Court may presume that a message, forwarded from a telegraph office to the person to whom such message purports to be addressed, corresponds with a message delivered for transmission at the office from which the message purports to be sent; but the Court shall not make any presumption as to the person by whom such message was delivered for transmission.

³[88A. Presumption as to electronic messages.] — The Court may presume that an electronic message, forwarded by the originator through an electronic mail server to the addressee to whom the message purports to be addressed corresponds with the message as fed into his computer for transmission; but the Court shall not make any presumption as to the person by whom such message was sent.

Explanation. — For the purposes of this section, the expressions “addressee” and “originator” shall have the same meanings respectively assigned to them in clauses (b) and (za) of sub-section (1) of section 2 of the Information Technology Act, 2000 (21 of 2000).]

89. Presumption as to due execution, etc., of documents not produced. — The Court shall presume that every document, called for and not produced after notice to produce, was attested, stamped and executed in the manner required by law.

90. Presumption as to documents thirty years old. — Where any document, purporting or proved to be thirty years old, is produced from any custody which the Court in the particular case considers proper, the Court may presume that the signature and every other part of such document, which purports to be in the handwriting of any particular person, is in that person’s handwriting, and, in the case of a document executed or attested, that it was duly executed and attested by the persons by whom it purports to be executed and attested.

Explanation. — Documents are said to be in proper custody if they are in the place in which, and under the care of the person with whom, they would naturally be; but no custody is improper if it is proved to have had a legitimate origin, or if the circumstances of the particular case are such as to render such an origin probable.

This *explanation* applies also to section 81.

Illustrations

(a) A has been in possession of landed property for a long time. He produces from his custody deeds relating to the land showing his titles to it. The custody is proper.

(b) A produces deeds relating to landed property of which he is the mortgagee. The mortgagor is in possession. The custody is proper.

1. Subs. by the A.O. 1937, for “G. of I.”

2. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Schedule, for “in and for that Part B State or country”.

3. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

(c) A, a connection of B, produces deeds relating to lands in B's possession, which were deposited with him by B for safe custody. The custody is proper.

¹[90A. Presumption as to electronic records five years old.] — Where any electronic record, purporting or proved to be five years old, is produced from any custody which the Court in the particular case considers proper, the Court may presume that the ²[electronic signature] which purports to be the ²[electronic signature] of any particular person was so affixed by him or any person authorised by him in this behalf.

Explanation. — Electronic records are said to be in proper custody if they are in the place in which, and under the care of the person with whom, they naturally be; but no custody is improper if it is proved to have had a legitimate origin, or the circumstances of the particular case are such as to render such an origin probable.

This *Explanation* applies also to section 81A.]

CHAPTER VI. — OF THE EXCLUSION OF ORAL BY DOCUMENTARY EVIDENCE

91. Evidence of terms of contracts, grants and other dispositions of property reduced to form of document. — When the terms of a contract, or of a grant, or of any other disposition of property, have been reduced to the form of a document, and in all cases in which any matter is required by law to be reduced to the form of a document, no evidence shall be given in proof of the terms of such contract, grant or other disposition of property, or of such matter, except the document itself, or secondary evidence of its contents in cases in which secondary evidence is admissible under the provisions hereinbefore contained.

Exception 1.—When a public officer is required by law to be appointed in writing, and when it is shown that any particular person has acted as such officer, the writing by which he is appointed need not be proved.

Exception 2.— Wills ³[admitted to probate in ⁴[India]] may be proved by the probate.

Explanation 1.—This section applies equally to cases in which the contracts, grants or dispositions of property referred to are contained in one document, and to cases in which they are contained in more documents than one.

Explanation 2.— Where there are more originals than one, one original only need be proved.

Explanation 3.— The statement, in any document whatever, of a fact other than the facts referred to in this section, shall not preclude the admission of oral evidence as to the same fact.

Illustrations

(a) If a contract be contained in several letters, all the letters in which it is contained must be proved.

(b) If a contract is contained in a bill of exchange, the bill of exchange must be proved.

(c) If a bill of exchange is drawn in a set of three, one only need be proved.

(d) A contracts, in writing, with B, for the delivery of indigo upon certain terms. The contract mentions the fact that B had paid A the price of other indigo contracted for verbally on another occasion.

1. Ins. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule (w.e.f. 17-10-2000).

2. Subs. by Act 10 of 2009, s. 52, for "Digital Signature" (w.e.f. 27.10.2009).

3. Subs. by Act 18 of 1872, s. 7, for "under the Indian Succession Act".

4. Subs. by Act 3 of 1951, s. 3 and the Schedule, for "the States".

Oral evidence is offered that no payment was made for the other indigo. The evidence is admissible.

(e) A gives B a receipt for money paid by B.

Oral evidence is offered of the payment.

The evidence is admissible.

92. Exclusion of evidence of oral agreement. — When the terms of any such contract, grant or other disposition of property, or any matter required by law to be reduced to the form of a document, have been proved according to the last section, no evidence of any oral agreement or statement shall be admitted, as between the parties to any such instrument or their representatives in interest, for the purpose of contradicting, varying, adding to, or subtracting from, its terms:

Proviso (1). — Any fact may be proved which would invalidate any document, or which would entitle any person to any decree or order relating thereto; such as fraud, intimidation, illegality, want of due execution, want of capacity in any contracting party,¹ [want or failure] of consideration, or mistake in fact or law.

Proviso (2). — The existence of any separate oral agreement as to any matter on which a document is silent, and which is not inconsistent with its terms, may be proved. In considering whether or not this proviso applies, the Court shall have regard to the degree of formality of the document.

Proviso (3). — The existence of any separate oral agreement, constituting a condition precedent to the attaching of any obligation under any such contract, grant or disposition of property, may be proved.

Proviso (4). — The existence of any distinct subsequent oral agreement to rescind or modify any such contract, grant or disposition of property, may be proved, except in cases in which such contract, grant or disposition of property is by law required to be in writing, or has been registered according to the law in force for the time being as to the registration of documents.

Proviso (5). — Any usage or custom by which incidents not expressly mentioned in any contract are usually annexed to contracts of that description, may be proved:

Provided that the annexing of such incident would not be repugnant to, or inconsistent with, the express terms of the contract.

Proviso (6). — Any fact may be proved which shows in what manner the language of a document is related to existing facts.

Illustrations

(a) A policy of insurance is effected on goods “in ships from Calcutta to London”. The goods are shipped in a particular ship which is lost. The fact that particular ship was orally excepted from the policy, cannot be proved.

(b) A agrees absolutely in writing to pay B Rs. 1,000 on the first March 1873. The fact that, at the same time, an oral agreement was made that the money should not be paid till the thirty-first March, cannot be proved.

(c) An estate called “the Rampore tea estate” is sold by a deed which contains a map of the property sold. The fact that land not included in the map had always been regarded as part of the estate and was meant to pass by the deed cannot be proved.

1. Subs. by Act 18 of 1872, s. 8, for “want of failure”.

(d) A enters into a written contract with B to work certain mines, the property of B, upon certain terms. A was induced to do so by a misrepresentation of B's as to their value. This fact may be proved.

(e) A institutes a suit against B for the specific performance of a contract, and also prays that the contract may be reformed as to one of its provisions, as that provision was inserted in it by mistake. A may prove that such a mistake was made as would by law entitle him to have the contract reformed.

(f) A orders goods of B by a letter in which nothing is said as to the time of payment, and accepts the goods on delivery. B sues A for the price. A may show that the goods were supplied on credit for a term still unexpired.

(g) A sells B a horse and verbally warrants him sound. A gives B a paper in these words: "Bought of A a horse of Rs. 500". B may prove the verbal warranty.

(h) A hires lodgings of B, and gives B a card on which is written —"Rooms, Rs. 200 a month." A may prove a verbal agreement that these terms were to include partial board.

A hires lodgings of B for a year, and a regularly stamped agreement, drawn up by an attorney, is made between them. It is silent on the subject of board. A may not prove that board was included in the term verbally.

(i) A applies to B for a debt due to A by sending a receipt for the money. B keeps the receipt and does not send the money. In a suit for the amount, A may prove this.

(j) A and B make a contract in writing to take effect upon the happening of a certain contingency. The writing is left with B, who sues A upon it. A may show the circumstances under which it was delivered.

93. Exclusion of evidence to explain or amend ambiguous document. — When the language used in a document is, on its face, ambiguous or defective, evidence may not be given of facts which would show its meaning or supply its defects.

Illustrations

(a) A agrees, in writing, to sell a horse to B for "Rs. 1,000 or Rs. 1,500". Evidence cannot be given to show which price was to be given.

(b) A deed contains blanks. Evidence cannot be given of facts which would show how they were meant to be filled.

94. Exclusion of evidence against application of document to existing facts. — When language used in a document is plain in itself, and when it applies accurately to existing facts, evidence may not be given to show that it was not meant to apply to such facts.

Illustration

A sells to B, by deed, "my estate at Rampur containing 100 bighas". A has an estate at Rampur containing 100 bighas. Evidence may not be given of the fact that the estate meant to be sold was one situated at a different place and of a different size.

95. Evidence as to document unmeaning reference to existing facts. — When language used in a document is plain in itself, but is unmeaning in reference to existing facts, evidence may be given to show that it was used in a peculiar sense.

Illustration

A sells to B, by deed, "my house in Calcutta".

A had no house in Calcutta, but it appears that he had a house at Howrah, of which B had been in possession since the execution of the deed.

These facts may be proved to show that the deed related to the house at Howrah.

96. Evidence as to application of language which can apply to one only of several persons. — When the facts are such that the language used might have been meant to apply to any one, and could not have been meant to apply to more than one, of several persons or things, evidence may be given of facts which show which of those persons or things it was intended to apply to.

Illustrations

(a) A agrees to sell to B, for Rs. 1,000, "my white horse". A has two white horses. Evidence may be given of facts which show which of them was meant.

(b) A agrees to accompany B to Haidarabad. Evidence may be given of facts showing whether Haidarabad in the Dekkhan or Haiderabad in Sind was meant.

97. Evidence as to application of language to one of two sets of facts, to neither of which the whole correctly applies. — When the language used applies partly to one set of existing facts, and partly to another set of existing facts, but the whole of it does not apply correctly to either, evidence may be given to show to which of the two it was meant to apply.

Illustration

A agrees to sell to B "my land at X in the occupation of Y". A has land at X, but not in the occupation of Y, and he has land in the occupation of Y but it is not at X. Evidence may be given of facts showing which he meant to sell.

98. Evidence as to meaning of illegible characters, etc. — Evidence may be given to show the meaning of illegible or not commonly intelligible characters, of foreign, obsolete, technical, local and provincial expressions, of abbreviations and of words used in a peculiar sense.

Illustration

A, sculptor, agrees to sell to B, "all my mods". A has both models and modelling tools. Evidence may be given to show which he meant to sell.

99. Who may give evidence of agreement varying terms of document. — Persons who are not parties to a document, or their representatives in interest, may give evidence of any facts tending to show a contemporaneous agreement varying the terms of the document.

Illustration

A and B make a contract in writing that B shall sell A certain cotton, to be paid for on delivery. At the same time they make an oral agreement that three months credit shall be given to A. This could not be shown as between A and B, but it might be shown by C, if it affected his interests.

100. Saving of provisions of Indian Succession Act relating to wills. — Nothing in this Chapter contained shall be taken to affect any of the provisions of the Indian Succession Act, 1865¹ (10 of 1865) as to the construction of wills.

PART III

PRODUCTION AND EFFECT OF EVIDENCE

CHAPTER VII. — OF THE BURDEN OF PROOF

101. Burden of proof. — Whoever desires any Court to give judgment as to any legal right or liability dependent on the existence of facts which he asserts, must prove that those facts exist. When a person is bound to prove the existence of any fact, it is said that the burden of proof lies on that person.

Illustrations

(a) A desires a Court to give judgment that B shall be punished for a crime which A says B has committed. A must prove that B has committed the crime.

1. See now the Indian Succession Act, 1925 (39 of 1925), Pt. VI, Ch. VI.

(b) A desires a Court to give judgment that he is entitled to certain land in the possession of B, by reason of facts which he asserts, and which B denies, to be true. A must prove the existence of those facts.

102. On whom burden of proof lies. — The burden of proof in a suit or proceeding lies on that person who would fail if no evidence at all were given on either side.

Illustrations

(a) A sues B for land of which B is in possession, and which, as A asserts, was left to A by the will of C, B's father.

If no evidence were given on either side, B would be entitled to retain his possession.

Therefore the burden of proof is on A.

(b) A sues B for money due on a bond.

The execution of the bond is admitted, but B says that it was obtained by fraud, which A denies.

If no evidence were given on either side, A would succeed, as the bond is not disputed and the fraud is not proved.

Therefore the burden of proof is on B.

103. Burden of proof as to particular fact. —The burden of proof as to any particular fact lies on that person who wishes the Court to believe in its existence, unless it is provided by any law that the proof of that fact shall lie on any particular person.

Illustrations

¹[(a)] A prosecutes B for theft, and wishes the Court to believe that B admitted the theft to C. A must prove the admission.

(b) B wishes the Court to believe that, at the time in question, he was elsewhere. He must prove it.

104. Burden of proving fact to be proved to make evidence admissible. — The burden of proving any fact necessary to be proved in order to enable any person to give evidence of any other fact is on the person who wishes to give such evidence.

Illustrations

(a) A wishes to prove a dying declaration by B. A must prove B's death.

(b) A wishes to prove, by secondary evidence, the contents of a lost document.

A must prove that the document has been lost.

105. Burden of proving that case of accused comes within exceptions. —When a person is accused of any offence, the burden of proving the existence of circumstances bringing the case within any of the General Exceptions in the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860), or within any special exception or proviso contained in any other part of the same Code, or in any law defining the offence, is upon him, and the Court shall presume the absence of such circumstances.

Illustrations

(a) A, accused of murder, alleges that, by reason of unsoundness of mind, he did not know the nature of the act.

The burden of proof is on A.

(b) A, accused of murder, alleges that, by grave and sudden provocation, he was deprived of the power of self-control.

1. See, in the Act as published in Gazette of India, 1872, Pt. IV, p. 1 there is no illustration (b).

The burden of proof is on A.

(c) Section 325 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860) provides that whoever, except in the case provided for by section 335, voluntarily causes grievous hurt, shall be subject to certain punishments.

A is charged with voluntarily causing grievous hurt under section 325.

The burden of proving the circumstances bringing the case under section 335 lies on A.

106. Burden of proving fact especially within knowledge. — When any fact is especially within the knowledge of any person, the burden of proving that fact is upon him.

Illustrations

(a) When a person does an act with some intention other than that which the character and circumstances of the act suggest, the burden of proving that intention is upon him.

(b) A is charged with travelling on a railway without a ticket. The burden of proving that he had a ticket is on him.

107. Burden of proving death of person known to have been alive within thirty years. — When the question is whether a man is alive or dead, and it is shown that he was alive within thirty years, the burden of proving that he is dead is on the person who affirms it.

108. Burden of proving that person is alive who has not been heard of for seven years. — ¹[Provided that when] the question is whether a man is alive or dead, and it is proved that he has not been heard of for seven years by those who would naturally have heard of him if he had been alive, the burden of proving that he is alive is ²[shifted to] the person who affirms it.

109. Burden of proof as to relationship in the cases of partners, landlord and tenant, principal and agent. — When the question is whether persons are partners, landlord and tenant, or principal and agent, and it has been shown that they have been acting as such, the burden of proving that they do not stand, or have ceased to stand, to each other in those relationships respectively, is on the person who affirms it.

110. Burden of proof as to ownership. — When the question is whether any person is owner of anything of which he is shown to be in possession, the burden of proving that he is not the owner is on the person who affirms that he is not the owner.

111. Proof of good faith in transactions where one party is in relation of active confidence. — Where there is a question as to the good faith of a transaction between parties, one of whom stands to the other in a position of active confidence, the burden of proving the good faith of the transaction is on the party who is in a position of active confidence.

Illustrations

(a) The good faith of a sale by a client to an attorney is in question in a suit brought by the client. The burden of proving the good faith of the transaction is on the attorney.

(b) The good faith of a sale by a son just come of age to a father is in question in a suit brought by the son. The burden of proving the good faith of the transaction is on the father.

³[111A. Presumption as to certain offences.] — (1) Where a person is accused of having committed any offence specified in sub-section (2), in —

1. Subs. by Act 18 of 1872, s. 9, for "when".

2. Subs. by s. 9, *ibid.*, for "on".

3. Ins. by Act 61 of 1984, s. 20 (w.e.f. 14-7-1984).

(a) any area declared to be a disturbed area under any enactment, for the time being in force, making provision for the suppression of disorder and restoration and maintenance of public order; or

(b) any area in which there has been, over a period of more than one month, extensive disturbance of the public peace,

and it is shown that such person had been at a place in such area at a time when firearms or explosives were used at or from that place to attack or resist the members of any armed forces or the forces charged with the maintenance of public order acting in the discharge of their duties, it shall be presumed, unless the contrary is shown, that such person had committed such offence.

(2) The offences referred to in sub-section (1) are the following, namely: —

(a) an offence under section 121, section 121A, section 122 or section 123 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860);

(b) criminal conspiracy or attempt to commit, or abetment of, an offence under section 122 or section 123 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).]

112. Birth during marriage, conclusive proof of legitimacy. — The fact that any person was born during the continuance of a valid marriage between his mother and any man, or within two hundred and eighty days after its dissolution, the mother remaining unmarried, shall be conclusive proof that he is the legitimate son of that man, unless it can be shown that the parties to the marriage had no access to each other at any time when he could have been begotten.

113. Proof of cession of territory. — A notification in the *Gazette of India* that any portion of British territory has ¹[before the commencement of Part III of the Government of India Act, 1935 (26 Geo. 5, c. 2)] been ceded to any Native State, Prince or Ruler, shall be conclusive proof that a valid cession of such territory took place at the date mentioned in such notification.

²[**113A. Presumption as to abetment of suicide by a married woman.** —When the question is whether the commission of suicide by a woman had been abetted by her husband or any relative of her husband and it is shown that she had committed suicide within a period of seven years from the date of her marriage and that her husband or such relative of her husband had subjected her to cruelty, the court may presume, having regard to all the other circumstances of the case, that such suicide had been abetted by her husband or by such relative of her husband.

Explanation. — For the purposes of this section, “cruelty” shall have the same meaning as in section 498A of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).]

³[**113B. Presumption as to dowry death.** —When the question is whether a person has committed the dowry death of a woman and it is shown that soon before her death such woman had been subjected by such person to cruelty or harassment for, or in connection with, any demand for dowry, the court shall presume that such person had caused the dowry death.

Explanation. — For the purposes of this section, “dowry death” shall have the same meaning as in section 304B of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).]

114. Court may presume existence of certain facts. — The Court may presume the existence of any fact which it thinks likely to have happened, regard being had to the common course of natural events, human conduct and public and private business, in their relation to the facts of the particular case.

1. Ins. by the A.O. 1937, Part III of the Government of India Act 1935, came into force on the 1st April, 1937.

2. Ins. by Act 46 of 1983, s. 7.

3. Ins. by Act 43 of 1986, s. 12 (w.e.f. 5-1-1986).

Illustrations

The Court may presume —

- (a) that a man who is in possession of stolen goods soon, after the theft is either the thief or has received the goods knowing them to be stolen, unless he can account for his possession;
- (b) that an accomplice is unworthy of credit, unless he is corroborated in material particulars;
- (c) that a bill of exchange, accepted or endorsed, was accepted or endorsed for good consideration;
- (d) that a thing or state of things which has been shown to be in existence within a period shorter than that within which such things or states of things usually cease to exist, is still in existence;
- (e) that judicial and official acts have been regularly performed;
- (f) that the common course of business has been followed in particular cases;
- (g) that evidence which could be and is not produced would, if produced, be unfavourable to the person who withholds it;
- (h) that if a man refuses to answer a question which he is not compelled to answer by law, the answer, if given, would be unfavourable to him;
- (i) that when a document creating an obligation is in the hands of the obligor, the obligation has been discharged.

But the Court shall also have regard to such facts as the following, in considering whether such maxims do or do not apply to the particular case before it: —

as to *illustration (a)* — a shop-keeper has in his bill a marked rupee soon after it was stolen, and cannot account for its possession specifically, but is continually receiving rupees in the course of his business;

as to *illustration (b)* — A, a person of the highest character, is tried for causing a man's death by an act of negligence in arranging certain machinery. B, a person of equally good character, who also took part in the arrangement, describes precisely what was done, and admits and explains the common carelessness of A and himself;

as to *illustration (b)* — a crime is committed by several persons. A, B and C, three of the criminals, are captured on the spot and kept apart from each other. Each gives an account of the crime implicating D, and the accounts corroborate each other in such a manner as to render previous concert highly improbable;

as to *illustration (c)* — A, the drawer of a bill of exchange, was a man of business. B, the acceptor, was a young and ignorant person, completely under A's influence;

as to *illustration (d)* — it is proved that a river ran in a certain course five years ago, but it is known that there have been floods since that time which might change its course;

as to *illustration (e)* — a judicial act, the regularity of which is in question, was performed under exceptional circumstances;

as to *illustration (f)* — the question is, whether a letter was received. It is shown to have been posted, but the usual course of the post was interrupted by disturbances;

as to *illustration (g)* — a man refuses to produce a document which would bear on a contract of small importance on which he is sued, but which might also injure the feelings and reputation of his family;
as to *illustration (h)* — a man refuses to answer a question which he is not compelled by law to answer, but the answer to it might cause loss to him in matters unconnected with the matter in relation to which it is asked;

as to *illustration (i)* — a bond is in possession of the obligor, but the circumstances of the case are such that he may have stolen it.

¹[**114A. Presumption as to absence of consent in certain prosecution for rape.** —In a prosecution for rape under clause (a), clause (b), clause (c), clause (d), clause (e), clause (f), clause (g), clause (h), clause (i), clause (j), clause (k), clause (l), clause (m) or clause (n) of sub-section (2) of section 376 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860), where sexual intercourse by the accused is proved and the question is whether it was without the consent of the woman alleged to have been raped and such woman states in her evidence before the court that she did not consent, the court shall presume that she did not consent.

Explanation.—In this section, “sexual intercourse” shall mean any of the acts mentioned in clauses (a) to (d) of section 375 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).]

STATE AMENDMENT

Chhattisgarh

Insertion of new Section 114B.—After section 114A of the Indian Evidence Act, the following shall be inserted, namely:—

114B. Presumption as to offences committed under section 354, section 354A, section 354B, section 354C, section 354D, section 509, section 509A or section 509B of the Indian Penal Code, 1860.-When the question is whether a person has committed an offence under Section 354, section 354A, section 354B, section 354C, section 354D, section 509, section 509A, or section 509B of the Indian Penal Code and if the victim deposes before the court that she has been subjected to sexual harassment or her modesty was outraged or she was disrobed or she was stalked or her privacy was intruded or she was sexually harassed by any means, as the case may be, the court may, unless contrary is proved, presume that such offence has been committed by that person.

[*Vide Chhattisgarh Act 25 of 2015, s. 14.*]

CHAPTER VIII. — ESTOPPEL

115. Estoppel.—When one person has, by his declaration, act or omission, intentionally caused or permitted another person to believe a thing to be true and to act upon such belief, neither he nor his representative shall be allowed, in any suit or proceeding between himself and such person or his representative, to deny the truth of that thing.

Illustration

A intentionally and falsely leads B to believe that certain land belongs to A, and thereby induces B to buy and pay for it.

The land afterwards becomes the property of A, and A seeks to set aside the sale on the ground that, at the time of the sale, he had no title. He must not be allowed to prove his want of title.

116. Estoppel of tenants and of licensee of person in possession. — No tenant of immovable property, or person claiming through such tenant, shall, during the continuance of the tenancy, be permitted to deny that the landlord of such tenant had, at the beginning of the tenancy, a title to such immovable property; and no person who came upon any immovable property by the licence of the person in possession thereof shall be permitted to deny that such person had a title to such possession at the time when such licence was given.

117. Estoppel of acceptor of bill of exchange, bailee or licensee. — No acceptor of a bill of exchange shall be permitted to deny that the drawer had authority to draw such bill or to endorse it; nor shall any bailee or licensee be permitted to deny that his bailor or licensor had, at the time when the bailment or licence commenced, authority to make such bailment or grant such licence.

Explanation (1). — The acceptor of a bill of exchange may deny that the bill was really drawn by the person by whom it purports to have been drawn.

Explanation (2). — If a bailee delivers the goods bailed to a person other than the bailor, he may prove that such person had a right to them as against the bailor.

1. Subs. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 26 (w.e.f. 3-2-2013). Earlier it was inserted by 43 of 1983, s. 6, (w.e.f. 25-12-1983).

CHAPTER IX. — OF WITNESSES

118. Who may testify. — All persons shall be competent to testify unless the Court considers that they are prevented from understanding the questions put to them, or from giving rational answers to those questions, by tender years, extreme old age, disease, whether of body or mind, or any other cause of the same kind.

Explanation. — A lunatic is not incompetent to testify, unless he is prevented by his lunacy from understanding the questions put to him and giving rational answers to them.

¹[**119. Witness unable to communicate verbally.** — A witness who is unable to speak may give his evidence in any other manner in which he can make it intelligible, as by writing or by signs; but such writing must be written and the signs made in open Court, evidence so given shall be deemed to be oral evidence:

Provided that if the witness is unable to communicate verbally, the Court shall take the assistance of an interpreter or a special educator in recording the statement, and such statement shall be video graphed.]

120. Parties to civil suit, and their wives or husbands. Husband or wife of person under criminal trial. — In all civil proceedings the parties to the suit, and the husband or wife of any party to the suit, shall be competent witnesses. In criminal proceedings against any person, the husband or wife of such person, respectively, shall be a competent witness.

121. Judges and Magistrates. — No Judge or Magistrate shall, except upon the special order of some Court to which he is subordinate, be compelled to answer any questions as to his own conduct in Court as such Judge or Magistrate, or as to anything which came to his knowledge in Court as such Judge or Magistrate; but he may be examined as to other matters which occurred in his presence whilst he was so acting.

Illustrations

(a) A, on his trial before the Court of Session, says that a deposition was improperly taken by B, the Magistrate. B cannot be compelled to answer questions as to this, except upon the special order of a superior Court.

(b) A is accused before the Court of Session of having given false evidence before B, a Magistrate. B cannot be asked what A said, except upon the special order of the superior Court.

(c) A is accused before the Court of Session of attempting to murder a police-officer whilst on his trial before B, a Sessions Judge. B may be examined as to what occurred.

122. Communications during marriage. — No person who is or has been married, shall be compelled to disclose any communication made to him during marriage by any person to whom he is or has been married; nor shall he be permitted to disclose any such communication, unless the person who made it, or his representative in interest, consents, except in suits between married persons, or proceedings in which one married person is prosecuted for any crime committed against the other.

123. Evidence as to affairs of State. — No one shall be permitted to give any evidence derived from unpublished official records relating to any affairs of State, except with the permission of the officer at the head of the department concerned, who shall give or withhold such permission as he thinks fit.

124. Official communications. — No public officer shall be compelled to disclose communications made to him in official confidence, when he considers that the public interests would suffer by the disclosure.

1. Subs. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 27 for s. 119 (w.e.f. 3-2-2013).

¹[**125. Information as to commission of offences.** — No Magistrate or police-officer shall be compelled to say whence he got any information as to the commission of any offence, and no revenue-officer shall be compelled to say whence he got any information as to the commission of any offence against the public revenue.]

Explanation.— “Revenue-officer” in this section means any officer employed in or about the business of any branch of the public revenue.]

126. Professional communications. — No barrister, attorney, pleader or vakil, shall at any time be permitted, unless with his client’s express consent, to disclose any communication made to him in the course and for the purpose of his employment as such barrister, pleader, attorney or vakil, by or on behalf of his client, or to state the contents or condition of any document with which he has become acquainted in the course and for the purpose of his professional employment, or to disclose any advice given by him to his client in the course and for the purpose of such employment:

Provided that nothing in this section shall protect from disclosure —

(1) any such communication made in furtherance of any ²[illegal] purpose,

(2) any fact observed by any barrister, pleader, attorney or vakil, in the course of his employment as such, showing that any crime or fraud has been committed since the commencement of his employment.

It is immaterial whether the attention of such barrister, ³[pleader], attorney or vakil was or was not directed to such fact by or on behalf of his client.

Explanation. — The obligation stated in this section continues after the employment has ceased.

Illustrations

(a) A, a client, says to B, an attorney — “I have committed forgery, and I wish you to defend me.”

As the defence of a man known to be guilty is not a criminal purpose, this communication is protected from disclosure.

(b) A, a client, says to B, an attorney — “I wish to obtain possession of property by the use of a forged deed on which I request you to sue.”

This communication, being made in furtherance of a criminal purpose, is not protected from disclosure.

(c) A, being charged with embezzlement, retains B, an attorney, to defend him. In the course of the proceedings, B observes that an entry has been made in A’s account book, charging A with the sum said to have been embezzled, which entry was not in the book at the commencement of his employment.

This being a fact observed by B in the course of his employment, showing that a fraud has been committed since the commencement of the proceedings, it is not protected from disclosure.

127. Section 126 to apply to interpreters, etc. — The provisions of section 126 shall apply to interpreters, and the clerks or servants of barristers, pleaders, attorneys and vakils.

128. Privilege not waived by volunteering evidence. — If any party to a suit gives evidence therein at his own instance or otherwise, he shall not be deemed to have consented thereby to such disclosure as is mentioned in section 126; and, if any party to a suit or proceeding calls any such barrister,

1. Subs. by Act 3 of 1887, s. 1, for the original s. 125.

2. Subs. by Act 18 of 1872, s. 10, for “criminal”.

3. Ins. by s. 10, *ibid.*

¹[pleader], attorney or vakil as a witness, he shall be deemed to have consented to such disclosure only if he questions such barrister, attorney or vakil on matters which, but for such question, he would not be at liberty to disclose.

129. Confidential communications with legal advisers. — No one shall be compelled to disclose to the Court any confidential communication which has taken place between him and his legal professional adviser, unless he offers himself as a witness, in which case he may be compelled to disclose any such communications as may appear to the Court necessary to be known in order to explain any evidence which he has given, but no others.

130. Production of title-deeds of witness not a party. — No witness who is not a party to a suit shall be compelled to produce his title-deeds to any property, or any document in virtue of which he holds any property as pledge or mortgagee or any document the production of which might tend to criminate him, unless he has agreed in writing to produce them with the person seeking the production of such deeds or some person through whom he claims.

²[**131. Production of documents or electronic records which another person, having possession, could refuse to produce.** — No one shall be compelled to produce documents in his possession or electronic records under his control, which any other person would be entitled to refuse to produce if they were in his possession or control, unless such last-mentioned person consents to their production.]

132. Witness not excused from answering on ground that answer will criminate. — A witness shall not be excused from answering any question as to any matter relevant to the matter in issue in any suit or in any civil or criminal proceeding, upon the ground that the answer to such question will criminate, or may tend directly or indirectly to criminate, such witness, or that it will expose, or tend directly or indirectly to expose, such witness to a penalty or forfeiture of any kind:

Proviso. — Provided that no such answer, which a witness shall be compelled to give, shall subject him to any arrest or prosecution, or be proved against him in any criminal proceeding, except a prosecution for giving false evidence by such answer.

133. Accomplice. — An accomplice shall be a competent witness against an accused person; and a conviction is not illegal merely because it proceeds upon the uncorroborated testimony of an accomplice.

134. Number of witnesses. — No particular number of witnesses shall in any case be required for the proof of any fact.

CHAPTER X. — OF THE EXAMINATION OF WITNESSES

135. Order of production and examination of witnesses. — The order in which witnesses are produced and examined shall be regulated by the law and practice for the time being relating to civil and criminal procedure respectively, and, in the absence of any such law, by the discretion of the Court.

136. Judge to decide as to admissibility of evidence. — When either party proposes to give evidence of any fact, the Judge may ask the party proposing to give the evidence in what manner the alleged fact, if proved, would be relevant; and the Judge shall admit the evidence if he thinks that the fact, if proved, would be relevant, and not otherwise.

If the fact proposed to be proved is one of which evidence is admissible only upon proof of some other fact, such last-mentioned fact must be proved before evidence is given of the fact first-mentioned, unless the party undertakes to give proof of such fact, and the Court is satisfied with such undertaking.

1. Ins. by Act 18 of 1872, s. 10.

2. Subs. by Act 21 of 2000, s. 92 and the Second Schedule, for “Section 131” (17-10-2000).

If the relevancy of one alleged fact depends upon another alleged fact being first proved, the Judge may, in his discretion, either permit evidence of the first fact to be given before the second fact is proved, or require evidence to be given of the second fact before evidence is given of the first fact.

Illustrations

(a) It is proposed to prove a statement about a relevant fact by a person alleged to be dead, which statement is relevant under section 32.

The fact that the person is dead must be proved by the person proposing to prove the statement, before evidence is given of the statement.

(b) It is proposed to prove, by a copy, the contents of a document said to be lost.

The fact that the original is lost must be proved by the person proposing to produce the copy, before the copy is produced.

(c) A is accused of receiving stolen property knowing it to have been stolen.

It is proposed to prove that he denied the possession of the property.

The relevancy of the denial depends on the identity of the property. The Court may, in its discretion, either require the property to be identified before the denial of the possession is proved, or permit the denial of the possession to be proved before the property is identified.

(d) It is proposed to prove a fact (A) which is said to have been the cause or effect of fact in issue. There are several intermediate facts (B, C and D) which must be shown to exist before the fact (A) can be regarded as the cause or effect of the fact in issue. The Court may either permit A to be proved before B, C or D is proved, or may require proof of B, C and D before permitting proof of A.

137. Examination-in-chief. — The examination of witness by the party who calls him shall be called his examination-in-chief.

Cross-examination. — The examination of a witness by the adverse party shall be called his cross-examination.

Re-examination. — The examination of a witness, subsequent to the cross-examination by the party who called him, shall be called his re-examination.

138. Order of examinations. — Witnesses shall be first examined-in-chief, then (if the adverse party so desires) cross-examined, then (if the party calling him so desires) re-examined.

The examination and cross-examination must relate to relevant facts, but the cross-examination need not be confined to the facts to which the witness testified on his examination-in-chief.

Direction of re-examination. — The re-examination shall be directed to the explanation of matters referred to in cross-examination; and, if new matter is, by permission of the Court, introduced in re-examination, the adverse party may further cross-examine upon that matter.

139. Cross-examination of person called to produce a document. — A person summoned to produce a document does not become a witness by the mere fact that he produces it, and cannot be cross-examined unless and until he is called as a witness.

140. Witnesses to character. — Witnesses to character may be cross-examined and re-examined.

141. Leading questions. — Any question suggesting the answer which the person putting it wishes or expects to receive, is called a leading question.

142. When they must not be asked. — Leading questions must not, if objected to by the adverse party, be asked in an examination-in-chief, or in a re-examination, except with the permission of the Court.

The Court shall permit leading questions as to matters which are introductory or undisputed, or which have, in its opinion, been already sufficiently proved.

143. When they may be asked. — Leading questions may be asked in cross-examination.

144. Evidence as to matters in writing. — Any witness may be asked, whilst under examination, whether any contract, grant or other disposition of property, as to which he is giving evidence, was not contained in a document, and if he says that it was, or if he is about to make any statement as to the contents of any document, which, in the opinion of the Court, ought to be produced, the adverse party may object to such evidence being given until such document is produced, or until facts have been proved which entitle the party who called the witness to give secondary evidence of it.

Explanation. — A witness may give oral evidence of statements made by other persons about the contents of documents if such statements are in themselves relevant facts.

Illustration

The question is, whether A assaulted B.

C deposes that he heard A say to D— “B wrote a letter accusing me of theft, and I will be revenged on him.” This statement is relevant, as showing A’s motive for the assault, and evidence may be given of it, though no other evidence is given about the letter.

145. Cross-examination as to previous statements in writing. — A witness may be cross-examined as to previous statements made by him in writing or reduced into writing, and relevant to matters in question, without such writing being shown to him, or being proved; but, if it is intended to contradict him by the writing, his attention must, before the writing can be proved, be called to those parts of it which are to be used for the purpose of contradicting him.

146. Questions lawful in cross-examination. — When a witness is cross-examined, he may, in addition to the questions hereinbefore referred to, be asked any questions which tend—

- (1) to test his veracity,
- (2) to discover who he is and what is his position in life, or
- (3) to shake his credit, by injuring his character, although the answer to such questions might tend directly or indirectly to criminate him, or might expose or tend directly or indirectly to expose him to a penalty or forfeiture:

²[Provided that in a prosecution for an offence under section 376, ³[section 376A, section 376AB section 376B, section 376C, section 376D, section 376DA, section 376DB] or section 376E of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860) or for attempt to commit any such offence, where the question of consent is an issue, it shall not be permissible to adduce evidence or to put questions in the cross-examination of the victim as to the general immoral character, or previous sexual experience, of such victim with any person for proving such consent or the quality of consent.]

1. As to the Application of s. 145 to police-diaries, *see* the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (2 of 1974), s. 172.

2. Subs. by Act 13 of 2013, s. 28, for the proviso (w.e.f. 3-2-2013).

3. Subs. by Act 22 of 2018, s. 9, for “section 376A, section 376B, section 376C, section 376D” (w.e.f. 21-4-2018).

147. When witness to be compelled to answer.—If any such question relates to a matter relevant to the suit or proceeding, the provisions of section 132 shall apply thereto.

148. Court to decide when question shall be asked and when witness compelled to answer.— If any such question relates to a matter not relevant to the suit or proceeding, except in so far as it affects the credit of the witness by injuring his character, the Court shall decide whether or not the witness shall be compelled to answer it, and may, if it thinks fit, warn the witness that he is not obliged to answer it. In exercising its discretion, the Court shall have regard to the following considerations:—

(1) such questions are proper if they are of such a nature that the truth of the imputation conveyed by them would seriously affect the opinion of the Court as to the credibility of the witness on the matter to which he testifies;

(2) such questions are improper if the imputation which they convey relates to matters so remote in time, or of such a character, that the truth of the imputation would not affect, or would affect in a slight degree, the opinion of the Court as to the credibility of the witness on the matter to which he testifies;

(3) such questions are improper if there is a great disproportion between the importance of the imputation made against the witness's character and the importance of his evidence;

(4) the Court may, if it sees fit, draw, from the witness's refusal to answer, the inference that the answer if given would be unfavourable.

149. Question not to be asked without reasonable grounds.— No such question as is referred to in section 148 ought to be asked, unless the person asking it has reasonable grounds for thinking that the imputation which it conveys is well-founded.

Illustrations

(a) A barrister is instructed by an attorney or vakil that an important witness is a dakait. This is a reasonable ground for asking the witness whether he is a dakait.

(b) A pleader is informed by a person in Court that an important witness is a dakait. The informant, on being questioned by the pleader, gives satisfactory reasons for his statement. This is a reasonable ground for asking the witness whether he is a dakait.

(c) A witness, of whom nothing whatever is known is asked at random whether he is a dakait. There are here no reasonable ground for the question.

(d) A witness, of whom nothing whatever is known, being questioned as to his mode of life and means of living, gives unsatisfactory answers. This may be a reasonable ground for asking him if he is a dakait.

150. Procedure of Court in case of question being asked without reasonable grounds.— If the Court is of opinion that any such question was asked without reasonable grounds, it may, if it was asked by any barrister, pleader, vakil or attorney, report the circumstances of the case to the High Court or other authority to which such barrister, pleader, vakil or attorney is subject in the exercise of his profession.

151. Indecent and scandalous questions.— The Court may forbid any questions or inquiries which it regards as indecent or scandalous, although such questions or inquiries may have some bearing on the questions before the Court, unless they relate to facts in issue, or to matters necessary to be known in order to determine whether or not the facts in issue existed.

152. Questions intended to insult or annoy.—The Court shall forbid any question which appears to it to be intended to insult or annoy, or which, though proper in itself, appears to the Court needlessly offensive in form.

153. Exclusion of evidence to contradict answers to questions testing veracity.—When a witness has been asked and has answered any question which is relevant to the inquiry only in so far as it tends to shake his credit by injuring his character, no evidence shall be given to contradict him; but, if he answers falsely, he may afterwards be charged with giving false evidence.

Exception 1.—If a witness is asked whether he has been previously convicted of any crime and denies it, evidence may be given of his previous conviction.

Exception 2.—If a witness is asked any question tending to impeach his impartiality, and answers it by denying the facts suggested, he may be contradicted.

Illustrations

(a) A claim against an underwriter is resisted on the ground of fraud.

The claimant is asked whether, in a former transaction, he had not made a fraudulent claim. He denies it.

Evidence is offered to show that he did make such a claim.

The evidence is inadmissible.

(b) A witness is asked whether he was not dismissed from a situation for dishonesty.

He denies it.

Evidence is offered to show that he was dismissed for dishonesty.

The evidence is not admissible.

(c) A affirms that on a certain day he saw B at Lahore.

A is asked whether he himself was not on that day at Calcutta. He denies it.

Evidence is offered to show that A was on that day at Calcutta.

The evidence is admissible, not as contradicting A on a fact which affects his credit, but as contradicting the alleged fact that B was seen on the day in question in Lahore.

In each of these cases the witness might, if his denial was false, be charged with giving false evidence.

(d) A is asked whether his family has not had a bloodfeud with the family of B against whom he gives evidence.

He denies it. He may be contradicted on the ground that the question tends to impeach his impartiality.

154. Question by party to his own witness.—¹[(1)] The Court may, in its discretion, permit the person who calls a witness to put any questions to him which might be put in cross-examination by the adverse party.

²[(2) Nothing in this section shall disentitle the person so permitted under sub-section (1), to rely on any part of the evidence of such witness.]

155. Impeaching credit of witness.—The credit of a witness may be impeached in the following ways by the adverse party, or, with the consent of the Court, by the party who calls him:—

1. Section 154 numbered as sub-section (1) thereof by Act 2 of 2006, s. 9 (w.e.f. 16-4-2006).

2. Ins. by s. 9, *ibid.* (w.e.f. 16-4-2006).

(1) By the evidence of persons who testify that they, from their knowledge of the witness, believe him to be unworthy of credit;

(2) By proof that the witness has been bribed, or has ¹[accepted] the offer of a bribe, or has received any other corrupt inducement to give his evidence;

(3) By proof of former statements inconsistent with any part of his evidence which is liable to be contradicted;

2*

*

*

*

*

Explanation. — A witness declaring another witness to be unworthy of credit may not, upon his examination-in-chief, give reasons for his belief, but he may be asked his reasons in cross-examination, and the answers which he gives cannot be contradicted, though, if they are false, he may afterwards be charged with giving false evidence.

Illustrations

(a) A sues B for the price of goods sold and delivered to B.

C says that he delivered the goods to B.

Evidence is offered to show that, on a previous occasion, he said that he had not delivered goods to B. The evidence is admissible.

(b) A is indicted for the murder of B.

C says that B, when dying, declared that A had given B the wound of which he died.

Evidence is offered to show that, on a previous occasion, C said that the wound was not given by A or in his presence.

The evidence is admissible.

156. Questions tending to corroborate evidence of relevant fact, admissible. — When a witness whom it is intended to corroborate gives evidence of any relevant fact, he may be questioned as to any other circumstances which he observed at or near to the time or place at which such relevant fact occurred, if the Court is of opinion that such circumstances, if proved, would corroborate the testimony of the witness as to the relevant fact which he testifies.

Illustration

A, an accomplice, gives an account of a robbery in which he took part. He describes various incidents unconnected with the robbery which occurred on his way to and from the place where it was committed.

Independent evidence of these facts may be given in order to corroborate his evidence as to the robbery itself.

157. Former statements of witness may be proved to corroborate later testimony as to same fact. — In order to corroborate the testimony of a witness, any former statement made by such witness relating to the same fact, at or about the time when the fact took place, or before any authority legally competent to investigate the fact, may be proved.

1. Subs. by Act 18 of 1872, s. 11, for "had"

2. Clause (4) omitted by Act 4 of 2003, s. 3 (w.e.f. 31-12-2002).

158. What matters may be proved in connection with proved statement relevant under section 32 or 33.—Whenever any statement, relevant under section 32 or 33, is proved, all matters may be proved either in order to contradict or to corroborate it, or in order to impeach or confirm the credit of the person by whom it was made, which might have been proved if that person had been called as a witness and had denied upon cross-examination the truth of the matter suggested.

159. Refreshing memory.—A witness may, while under examination, refresh his memory by referring to any writing made by himself at the time of the transaction concerning which he is questioned, or so soon afterwards that the Court considers it likely that the transaction was at that time fresh in his memory.

The witness may also refer to any such writing made by any other person, and read by the witness within the time aforesaid, if when he read it he knew it to be correct.

When witness may use copy of document to refresh memory.—Whenever a witness may refresh his memory by reference to any document, he may, with the permission of the Court, refer to a copy of such document:

Provided the Court be satisfied that there is sufficient reason for the non-production of the original. An expert may refresh his memory by reference to professional treatises.

160. Testimony to facts stated in document mentioned in section 159.—A witness may also testify to facts mentioned in any such document as is mentioned in section 159, although he has no specific recollection of the facts themselves, if he is sure that the facts were correctly recorded in the document.

Illustration

A book-keeper may testify to facts recorded by him in books regularly kept in the course of business, if he knows that the books were correctly kept, although he has forgotten the particular transactions entered.

161. Right of adverse party as to writing used to refresh memory.—Any writing referred to under the provisions of the two last preceding sections must be produced and shown to the adverse party if he requires it; such party may, if he pleases, cross-examine the witness thereupon.

162. Production of documents.—A witness summoned to produce a document shall, if it is in his possession or power, bring it to Court, notwithstanding any objection which there may be to its production or to its admissibility. The validity of any such objection shall be decided on by the Court.

The Court, if it sees fit, may inspect the document, unless it refers to matters of State, or take other evidence to enable it to determine on its admissibility.

Translation of documents.—If for such a purpose it is necessary to cause any document to be translated, the Court may, if it thinks fit, direct the translator to keep the contents secret, unless the document is to be given in evidence and, if the interpreter disobeys such direction, he shall be held to have committed an offence under section 166 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860).

163. Giving, as evidence, of document called for and produced on notice.—When a party calls for a document which he has given the other party notice to produce, and such document is produced and inspected by the party calling for its production, he is bound to give it as evidence if the party producing it requires him to do so.

1. As to the application of s. 161 to police diaries, *see* the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (Act 2 of 1974), s. 172.

164. Using, as evidence, of document production of which was refused on notice.— When a party refuses to produce a document which he has had notice to produce, he cannot afterwards use the document as evidence without the consent of the other party or the order of the Court.

Illustration

A sues B on an agreement and gives B notice to produce it. At the trial, A calls for the document and B refuses to produce it. A gives secondary evidence of its contents. B seeks to produce the document itself to contradict the secondary evidence given by A, or in order to show that the agreement is not stamped. He cannot do so.

165. Judge's power to put questions or order production.— The Judge may, in order to discover or to obtain proper proof of relevant facts, ask any question he pleases, in any form, at any time, of any witness, or of the parties about any fact relevant or irrelevant; and may order the production of any document or thing; and neither the parties nor their agents shall be entitled to make any objection to any such question or order, nor, without the leave of the Court, to cross-examine any witness upon any answer given in reply to any such question:

Provided that the judgment must be based upon facts declared by this Act to be relevant, and duly proved:

Provided also that this section shall not authorize any Judge to compel any witness to answer any question, or to produce any document which such witness would be entitled to refuse to answer or produce under sections 121 to 131, both inclusive, if the question were asked or the document were called for by the adverse party; nor shall the Judge ask any question which it would be improper for any other person to ask under section 148 or 149; nor shall he dispense with primary evidence of any document, except in the cases hereinbefore excepted.

166. Power of jury or assessors to put questions.— In cases tried by jury or with assessors, the jury or assessors may put any questions to the witnesses, through or by leave of the Judge, which the Judge himself might put and which he considers proper.

CHAPTER XI— OF IMPROPER ADMISSION AND REJECTION OF EVIDENCE

167. No new trial for improper admission or rejection of evidence.— The improper admission or rejection of evidence shall not be ground of itself for a new trial or reversal of any decision in any case, if it shall appear to the Court before which such objection is raised that, independently of the evidence objected to and admitted, there was sufficient evidence to justify the decision, or that, if the rejected evidence had been received, it ought not to have varied the decision.

THE SCHEDULE. — [Enactments repealed.] Rep. by the Repealing Act, 1938 (1 of 1938), s. 2 and the Schedule.